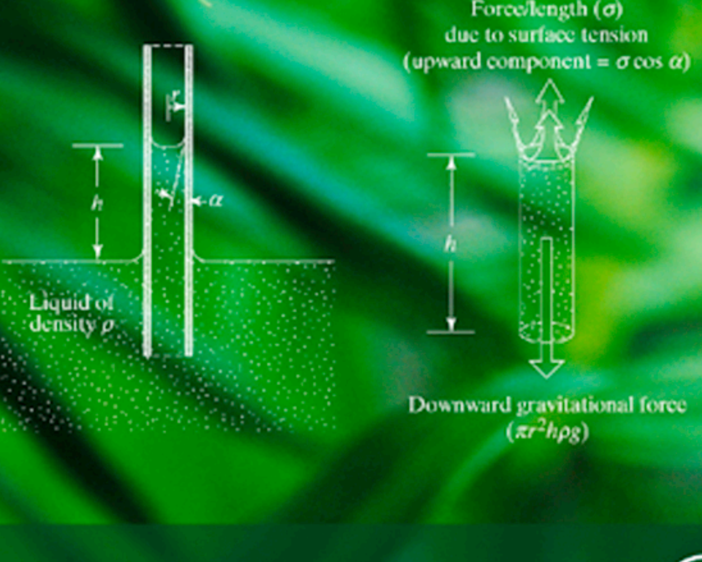
FOURTH EDITION

PHYSICOCHEMICAL AND ENVIRONMENTAL PLANT PHYSIOLOGY



PARK S. NOBEL

Physicochemical and Environmental

Plant Physiology

FOURTH EDITION

This page intentionally left blank

Physicochemical and Environmental

Plant Physiology

FOURTH EDITION

Park S. Nobel

Department of Ecology and Evolutionary Biology
University of California, Los Angeles
Los Angeles, California

ELSEVIER
ACADEMIC
PRESS

AMSTERDAM • BOSTON • HEIDELBERG • LONDON
NEW YORK • OXFORD • PARIS • SAN DIEGO
SAN FRANCISCO • SINGAPORE • SYDNEY • TOKYO
Academic Press is an imprint of Elsevier

Academic Press is an imprint of Elsevier
Linacre House, Jordan Hill, Oxford OX2 8DP, UK
30 Corporate Drive, Suite 400, Burlington, MA 01803, USA
525 B Street, Suite 1900, San Diego, CA 92101-4495, USA
32 Jamestown Road, London NW1 7BY, UK

Fourth Edition 2009

Copyright © 2009, Elsevier Inc. All rights reserved

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise without the prior written permission of the publisher

Permissions may be sought directly from Elsevier's Science & Technology Rights Department in Oxford, UK: phone (+44) (0) 1865 843830; fax (+44) (0) 1865 853333; email: permissions@elsevier.com. Alternatively you can submit your request online by visiting the Elsevier web site at http://www.elsevier.com/locate/permissions, and selecting: *Obtaining permission to use Elsevier material*

Notice
No responsibility is assumed by the publisher for any injury and/or damage to persons or property as a matter of products liability, negligence or otherwise, or from any use or operation of any methods, products, instructions or ideas contained in the material herein. Because of rapid advances in the medical sciences, in particular, independent verification of diagnoses and drug dosages should be made

ISBN: 978-0-12-374143-1

For information on all Academic Press publications
visit our website at www.elsevierdirect.com

Printed and bound in Canada

09 10 11 12 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Working together to grow
libraries in developing countries

www.elsevier.com | www.bookaid.org | www.sabre.org

ELSEVIER BOOK AID International Sabre Foundation

Contents

Preface xiii

Symbols and Abbreviations xv

1. Cells and Diffusion 3

1.1. Cell Structure 3
1.1A. Generalized Plant Cell 3
1.1B. Leaf Anatomy 5
1.1C. Vascular Tissue 7
1.1D. Root Anatomy 9
1.2. Diffusion 11
1.2A. Fick's First Law 12
1.2B. Continuity Equation and Fick's Second Law 14
1.2C. Time–Distance Relation for Diffusion 16
1.2D. Diffusion in Air 19
1.3. Membrane Structure 21
1.3A. Membrane Models 21
1.3B. Organelle Membranes 23
1.4. Membrane Permeability 25
1.4A. Concentration Difference Across a Membrane 26
1.4B. Permeability Coefficient 28
1.4C. Diffusion and Cellular Concentration 29
1.5. Cell Walls 31
1.5A. Chemistry and Morphology 33
1.5B. Diffusion Across Cell Walls 34
1.5C. Stress–Strain Relations of Cell Walls 37
1.5D. Elastic Modulus, Viscoelasticity 39
1.6. Problems 40
1.7. References and Further Reading 42

2. Water 45

2.1. Physical Properties 46
2.1A. Hydrogen Bonding—Thermal Relations 47
2.1B. Surface Tension 49
2.1C. Capillary Rise 50
2.1D. Capillary Rise in the Xylem 53

2.1E. Tensile Strength, Viscosity 54
2.1F. Electrical Properties 55
2.2. Chemical Potential 56
2.2A. Free Energy and Chemical Potential 56
2.2B. Analysis of Chemical Potential 60
2.2C. Standard State 63
2.2D. Hydrostatic Pressure 64
2.2E. Water Activity and Osmotic Pressure 65
2.2F. Van't Hoff Relation 66
2.2G. Matric Pressure 69
2.2H. Water Potential 71
2.3. Central Vacuole and Chloroplasts 72
2.3A. Water Relations of the Central Vacuole 73
2.3B. Boyle–Van't Hoff Relation 74
2.3C. Osmotic Responses of Chloroplasts 76
2.4. Water Potential and Plant Cells 78
2.4A. Incipient Plasmolysis 78
2.4B. Höfler Diagram and Pressure–Volume Curve 81
2.4C. Chemical Potential and Water Potential of Water Vapor 84
2.4D. Plant–Air Interface 87
2.4E. Pressure in the Cell Wall Water 88
2.4F. Water Flux 91
2.4G. Cell Growth 93
2.4H. Kinetics of Volume Changes 95
2.5. Problems 96
2.6. References and Further Reading 98

3. Solutes 101

3.1. Chemical Potential of Ions 102
3.1A. Electrical Potential 103
3.1B. Electroneutrality and Membrane Capacitance 104
3.1C. Activity Coefficients of Ions 106
3.1D. Nernst Potential 108
3.1E. Example of E_{N_K} 110
3.2. Fluxes and Diffusion Potentials 112
3.2A. Flux and Mobility 113
3.2B. Diffusion Potential in a Solution 116
3.2C. Membrane Fluxes 119
3.2D. Membrane Diffusion Potential—Goldman Equation 122
3.2E. Application of Goldman Equation 125
3.2F. Donnan Potential 127
3.3. Characteristics of Crossing Membranes 129
3.3A. Electrogenicity 130
3.3B. Boltzmann Energy Distribution and Q_{10}, a Temperature Coefficient 131
3.3C. Activation Energy and Arrhenius Plots 135
3.3D. Ussing–Teorell Equation 137
3.3E. Example of Active Transport 140

3.3F. Energy for Active Transport 142
3.3G. Speculation on Active Transport 143
3.4. Mechanisms for Crossing Membranes 144
3.4A. Carriers, Porters, Channels, and Pumps 145
3.4B. Michaelis–Menten Formalism 149
3.4C. Facilitated Diffusion 151
3.5. Principles of Irreversible Thermodynamics 153
3.5A. Fluxes, Forces, and Onsager Coefficients 154
3.5B. Water and Solute Flow 156
3.5C. Flux Densities, L_P, and σ 158
3.5D. Values for Reflection Coefficients 161
3.6. Solute Movement Across Membranes 163
3.6A. Influence of Reflection Coefficients on Incipient Plasmolysis 165
3.6B. Extension of the Boyle–Van't Hoff Relation 167
3.6C. Reflection Coefficients of Chloroplasts 169
3.6D. Solute Flux Density 169
3.7. Problems 170
3.8. References and Further Reading 173

4. Light 177

4.1. Wavelength and Energy 179
4.1A. Light Waves 179
4.1B. Energy of Light 182
4.1C. Illumination, Photon Flux Density, and Irradiance 185
4.1D. Sunlight 188
4.1E. Planck's and Wien's Formulae 190
4.2. Absorption of Light by Molecules 191
4.2A. Role of Electrons in Absorption Event 192
4.2B. Electron Spin and State Multiplicity 194
4.2C. Molecular Orbitals 195
4.2D. Photoisomerization 198
4.2E. Light Absorption by Chlorophyll 199
4.3. Deexcitation 201
4.3A. Fluorescence, Radiationless Transition, and Phosphorescence 202
4.3B. Competing Pathways for Deexcitation 203
4.3C. Lifetimes 206
4.3D. Quantum Yields 208
4.4. Absorption Spectra and Action Spectra 208
4.4A. Vibrational Sublevels 210
4.4B. The Franck–Condon Principle 211
4.4C. Absorption Bands, Absorption Coefficients, and Beer's Law 214
4.4D. Application of Beer's Law 216
4.4E. Conjugation 217
4.4F. Action Spectra 219
4.4G. Absorption and Action Spectra of Phytochrome 220

4.5. Problems 223
4.6. References and Further Reading 225

5. Photochemistry of Photosynthesis 229

5.1. Chlorophyll—Chemistry and Spectra 232
5.1A. Types and Structures 232
5.1B. Absorption and Fluorescence Emission Spectra 233
5.1C. Absorption in Vivo—Polarized Light 236
5.2. Other Photosynthetic Pigments 238
5.2A. Carotenoids 238
5.2B. Phycobilins 242
5.2C. General Comments 244
5.3. Excitation Transfers Among Photosynthetic Pigments 245
5.3A. Pigments and the Photochemical Reaction 246
5.3B. Resonance Transfer of Excitation 247
5.3C. Specific Transfers of Excitation 248
5.3D. Excitation Trapping 250
5.4. Groupings of Photosynthetic Pigments 253
5.4A. Photon Processing 253
5.4B. Excitation Processing 253
5.4C. Photosynthetic Action Spectra and Enhancement Effects 256
5.4D. Two Photosystems Plus Light-Harvesting Antennae 256
5.5. Electron Flow 260
5.5A. Electron Flow Model 260
5.5B. Components of the Electron Transfer Pathway 262
5.5C. Types of Electron Flow 268
5.5D. Assessing Photochemistry using Fluorescence 269
5.5E. Photophosphorylation 271
5.5F. Vectorial Aspects of Electron Flow 271
5.6. Problems 273
5.7. References and Further Reading 274

6. Bioenergetics 277

6.1. Gibbs Free Energy 278
6.1A. Chemical Reactions and Equilibrium Constants 280
6.1B. Interconversion of Chemical and Electrical Energy 283
6.1C. Redox Potentials 285
6.2. Biological Energy Currencies 286
6.2A. ATP—Structure and Reactions 287
6.2B. Gibbs Free Energy Change for ATP Formation 291
6.2C. $NADP^+$–NADPH Redox Couple 293
6.3. Chloroplast Bioenergetics 295
6.3A. Redox Couples 295
6.3B. H^+ Chemical Potential Differences Caused by Electron Flow 299
6.3C. Evidence for Chemiosmotic Hypothesis 300
6.3D. Coupling of Flows 302

6.4. Mitochondrial Bioenergetics 303
6.4A. Electron Flow Components—Redox Potentials 304
6.4B. Oxidative Phosphorylation 307
6.5. Energy Flow in the Biosphere 310
6.5A. Incident Light—Stefan–Boltzmann Law 311
6.5B. Absorbed Light and Photosynthetic Efficiency 313
6.5C. Food Chains and Material Cycles 314
6.6. Problems 315
6.7. References and Further Reading 317

7. Temperature and Energy Budgets 319

7.1. Energy Budget—Radiation 320
7.1A. Solar Irradiation 322
7.1B. Absorbed Infrared Irradiation 326
7.1C. Emitted Infrared Radiation 327
7.1D. Values for a, a_{IR}, and e_{IR} 328
7.1E. Net Radiation 330
7.1F. Examples for Radiation Terms 330
7.2. Heat Conduction and Convection 333
7.2A. Wind 334
7.2B. Air Boundary Layers 336
7.2C. Boundary Layers for Bluff Bodies 339
7.2D. Heat Conduction/Convection Equations 340
7.2E. Dimensionless Numbers 341
7.2F. Examples of Heat Conduction/Convection 345
7.3. Latent Heat—Transpiration 346
7.3A. Heat Flux Density Accompanying Transpiration 346
7.3B. Heat Flux Density for Dew or Frost Formation 347
7.3C. Examples of Frost and Dew Formation 348
7.4. Further Examples of Energy Budgets 350
7.4A. Leaf Shape and Orientation 350
7.4B. Shaded Leaves within Plant Communities 352
7.4C. Heat Storage 352
7.4D. Time Constants 354
7.5. Soil 355
7.5A. Thermal Properties 356
7.5B. Soil Energy Balance 357
7.5C. Variations in Soil Temperature 358
7.6. Problems 360
7.7. References and Further Reading 362

8. Leaves and Fluxes 365

8.1. Resistances and Conductances—Transpiration 366
8.1A. Boundary Layer Adjacent to Leaf 368
8.1B. Stomata 371
8.1C. Stomatal Conductance and Resistance 373

8.1D. Cuticle 376
8.1E. Intercellular Air Spaces 376
8.1F. Fick's First Law and Conductances 377
8.2. Water Vapor Fluxes Accompanying Transpiration 380
8.2A. Conductance and Resistance Network 380
8.2B. Values of Conductances 383
8.2C. Effective Lengths and Resistance 384
8.2D. Water Vapor Concentrations, Mole Fractions and Partial Pressures for Leaves 385
8.2E. Examples of Water Vapor Levels in a Leaf 387
8.2F. Water Vapor Fluxes 389
8.2G. Control of Transpiration 390
8.3. CO_2 Conductances and Resistances 392
8.3A. Resistance and Conductance Network 392
8.3B. Mesophyll Area 394
8.3C. Resistance Formulation for Cell Components 397
8.3D. Partition Coefficient for CO_2 398
8.3E. Cell Wall Resistance 399
8.3F. Plasma Membrane Resistance 400
8.3G. Cytosol Resistance 401
8.3H. Mesophyll Resistance 402
8.3I. Chloroplast Resistance 402
8.4. CO_2 Fluxes Accompanying Photosynthesis 403
8.4A. Photosynthesis 403
8.4B. Respiration and Photorespiration 406
8.4C. Comprehensive CO_2 Resistance Network 410
8.4D. Compensation Points 412
8.4E. Fluxes of CO_2 416
8.4F. CO_2 Conductances 418
8.4G. Photosynthetic Rates 420
8.4H. Environmental Productivity Index 420
8.5. Water-Use Efficiency 422
8.5A. Values for WUE 423
8.5B. Elevational Effects on WUE 425
8.5C. Stomatal Control of WUE 426
8.5D. C_3 versus C_4 Plants 429
8.6. Problems 432
8.7. References and Further Reading 434

9. Plants and Fluxes 439

9.1. Gas Fluxes above Plant Canopy 440
9.1A. Wind Speed Profiles 441
9.1B. Flux Densities 442
9.1C. Eddy Diffusion Coefficients 443
9.1D. Resistance of Air above Canopy 445
9.1E. Transpiration and Photosynthesis 445
9.1F. Values for Fluxes and Concentrations 446
9.1G. Condensation 448
9.2. Gas Fluxes within Plant Communities 449
9.2A. Eddy Diffusion Coefficient and Resistance 449

9.2B. Water Vapor 451
9.2C. Attenuation of the Photosynthetic Photon Flux 453
9.2D. Values for Foliar Absorption Coefficient 454
9.2E. Light Compensation Point 455
9.2F. CO_2 Concentrations and Fluxes 456
9.2G. CO_2 at Night 458
9.3. Water Movement in Soil 459
9.3A. Soil Water Potential 460
9.3B. Darcy's Law 462
9.3C. Soil Hydraulic Conductivity Coefficient 463
9.3D. Fluxes for Cylindrical Symmetry 465
9.3E. Fluxes for Spherical Symmetry 467
9.4. Water Movement in the Xylem and the Phloem 469
9.4A. Root Tissues 469
9.4B. Xylem 470
9.4C. Poiseuille's Law 471
9.4D. Applications of Poiseuille's Law 472
9.4E. Phloem 476
9.4F. Phloem Contents and Speed of Movement 478
9.4G. Mechanism of Phloem Flow 479
9.4H. Values for Components of the Phloem Water Potential 480
9.5. Soil–Plant–Atmosphere Continuum 483
9.5A. Values for Water Potential Components 483
9.5B. Resistances and Areas 485
9.5C. Values for Resistances and Resistivities 487
9.5D. Root–Soil Air Gap and Hydraulic Conductances 490
9.5E. Capacitance and Time Constants 492
9.5F. Daily Changes 495
9.5G. Global Climate Change 497
9.6. Problems 500
9.7. References and Further Reading 503

Solutions To Problems 507

Appendix I. Numerical Values of Constants and Coefficients 545

Appendix II. Conversion Factors and Definitions 553

Appendix III. Mathematical Relations 557
III.A. Prefixes (for units of measure) 557
III.B. Areas and Volumes 557
III.C. Logarithms 557
III.D. Quadratic Equation 558
III.E. Trignometric Functions 558
III.F. Differential Equations 558

Appendix IV. Gibbs Free Energy and Chemical Potential 561
IV.A. Entropy and Equilibrium 561
IV.B. Gibbs Free Energy 563
IV.C. Chemical Potential 565
IV.D. Pressure Dependence of μ_j 565
IV.E. Concentration Dependence of μ_j 568

Index 571

This page intentionally left blank

Preface

Let us begin with some comments on the title. "Physiology," which is the study of the function of cells, organs, and organisms, derives from the Latin *physiologia*, which in turn comes from the Greek *physi-* or *physio-*, a prefix meaning natural, and *logos*, meaning reason or thought. Thus *physiology* suggests natural science and is now a branch of biology dealing with processes and activities that are characteristic of living things. "Physicochemical" relates to physical and chemical properties, and "Environmental" refers to topics such as solar irradiation and wind. "Plant" indicates the main focus of this book, but the approach, equations developed, and appendices apply equally well to animals and other organisms.

We will specifically consider water relations, solute transport, photosynthesis, transpiration, respiration, and environmental interactions. A physiologist endeavors to understand such topics in physical and chemical terms; accurate models can then be constructed and responses to the internal and the external environment can be predicted. Elementary chemistry, physics, and mathematics are used to develop concepts that are key to understanding biology—the intent is to provide a rigorous development, not a compendium of facts. References provide further details, although in some cases the enunciated principles carry the reader to the forefront of current research. Calculations are used to indicate the physiological consequences of the various equations, and problems at the end of chapters provide further such exercises. Solutions to all of the problems are provided, and the appendixes have a large list of values for constants and conversion factors at various temperatures.

Chapters 1 through 3 describe water relations and ion transport for plant cells. In Chapter 1, after discussing the concept of diffusion, we consider the physical barriers to diffusion imposed by cellular and organelle membranes. Another physical barrier associated with plant cells is the cell wall, which limits cell size. In the treatment of the movement of water through cells in response to specific forces presented in Chapter 2, we employ the thermodynamic argument of chemical potential gradients. Chapter 3 considers solute movement into and out of plant cells, leading to an explanation of electrical potential differences across membranes and establishing the formal criteria for distinguishing diffusion from active transport. Based on concepts from irreversible thermodynamics, an important parameter called the reflection coefficient is derived, which permits a precise evaluation of the influence of osmotic pressures on flow.

The next three chapters deal primarily with the interconversion of various forms of energy. In Chapter 4 we consider the properties of light and

its absorption. After light is absorbed, its radiant energy usually is rapidly converted to heat. However, the arrangement of photosynthetic pigments and their special molecular structures allow some radiant energy from the sun to be converted by plants into chemical energy. In Chapter 5 we discuss the particular features of chlorophyll and the accessory pigments for photosynthesis that allow this energy conversion. Light energy absorbed by chloroplasts leads to the formation of ATP and NADPH. These compounds represent currencies for carrying chemical and electrical (redox potential) energy, respectively. How much energy they actually carry is discussed in Chapter 6.

In the last three chapters we consider the various forms in which energy and matter enter and leave a plant as it interacts with its environment. The physical quantities involved in an energy budget analysis are presented in Chapter 7 so that the relative importance of the various factors affecting the temperature of leaves or other plant parts can be quantitatively evaluated. The resistances (or their reciprocals, conductances) affecting the movement of both water vapor during transpiration and carbon dioxide during photosynthesis are discussed in detail for leaves in Chapter 8, paying particular attention to the individual parts of the pathway and to flux density equations. The movement of water from the soil through the plant to the atmosphere is discussed in Chapter 9. Because these and other topics depend on material introduced elsewhere in the book, the text is extensively cross-referenced.

This text is the fourth edition of *Physicochemical and Environmental Plant Physiology* (Academic Press, 3rd ed., 2005; 2nd ed., 1999; 1st ed., 1991), which evolved from *Biophysical Plant Physiology and Ecology* (Freeman, 1983), *Introduction to Biophysical Plant Physiology* (Freeman, 1974), and *Plant Cell Physiology: A Physicochemical Approach* (Freeman, 1970). The text has been updated based on the ever-increasing quality of plant research as well as comments of colleagues and students. The goal is to integrate the physical sciences, engineering, and mathematics to help understand biology, especially for plants. *Physicochemical and Environmental Plant Physiology*, 4th ed., thus continues a tradition to emphasize a quantitative approach that is suitable for existing situations and habitats as well as new applications.

Park S. Nobel
October 20, 2008

Symbols and Abbreviations

Where appropriate, typical units are indicated in parentheses.

Quantity	*Description*
a	absorptance or absorptivity (dimensionless)
a^{st}	mean area of stomata (m^2)
a_{IR}	absorptance or absorptivity in infrared region (dimensionless)
a_j	activity of species j (same as concentration)[a]
at	subscript indicating active transport
Å	Angstrom (10^{-10} m)
A	electron acceptor
A	area (m^2)
A^j	area of component j (m^2)
A_λ	absorbance (also called "optical density") at wavelength λ (dimensionless)
ABA	abscisic acid
ADP	adenosine diphosphate
ATP	adenosine triphosphate
b	nonosmotic volume (m^3)
b	optical path length (m)
bl	superscript for boundary layer
c	centi (as a prefix), 10^{-2}
c	superscript for cuticle
c_d	drag coefficient (dimensionless)
c_j	concentration of species j (mol m^{-3})[b]
$\overline{c}_s$	a mean concentration of solute s
cal	calorie

a. The activity, a_j, is often considered to be dimensionless, in which case the activity coefficient, γ_j, has the units of reciprocal concentration ($a_j = \gamma_j c_j$; Eq. 2.5).

b. We note that mol liter^{-1}, or molarity (M), is a concentration unit of widespread use, although it is not an SI unit.

Quantity	*Description*
chl	superscript for chloroplast
clm	superscript for chloroplast limiting membranes
cw	superscript for cell wall
cyt	superscript for cytosol
C	superscript for conduction
C	capacitance, electrical (F)
C^j	capacitance for water storage in component j (m^3 MPa^{-1})
C'	capacitance/unit area (F m^{-2})
Chl	chlorophyll
Cl	subscript for chloride ion
C_P	volumetric heat capacity (J m^{-3} $°C^{-1}$)
Cyt	cytochrome
d	deci (as a prefix), 10^{-1}
d	depth or distance (m)
d	diameter (m)
dyn	dyne
D	electron donor
D	dielectric constant (dimensionless)
D_j	diffusion coefficient of species j (m^2 s^{-1})
e	electron
e	superscript for water evaporation site
e	base of natural logarithm
e_{IR}	emissivity or emittance in infrared region (dimensionless)
eV	electron volt
E	light energy (J)
E	kinetic energy (J)
E	electrical potential (mV)
E_j	redox potential of species j (mV)
E_j^{*H}	midpoint redox potential of species j referred to standard hydrogen electrode (mV)
E_M	electrical potential difference across a membrane (mV)
E_{Nj}	Nernst potential of species j (mV)
f	femto (as a prefix), 10^{-15}
F	farad
F	subscript for fluorescence
F	Faraday's constant (C mol^{-1})
F	average cumulative leaf area/ground area (dimensionless)
FAD	flavin adenine dinucleotide (oxidized form)
$FADH_2$	reduced form of flavin adenine dinucleotide
FMN	flavin mononucleotide
g	gram
g_j	conductance of species j (mm s^{-1} with Δc_j, and mmol m^{-2} s^{-1} with ΔN_j)

Quantity	*Description*
G	giga (as a prefix), 10^9
G	Gibbs free energy (J)
Gr	Grashof number (dimensionless)
G/n_j	Gibbs free energy/mole of some product or reactant j (J mol^{-1})
h	height (m)
h_c	heat convection coefficient (W m^{-2} $°C^{-1}$)
$h\nu$	a quantum of light energy
H	subscript for heat
i	superscript for inside
i	electrical current (ampere)
ias	superscript for intercellular air spaces
in	superscript for inward
in vitro	in a test tube, beaker, flask (literally, in glass)
in vivo	in a living organism (literally, in the living)
I	electrical current (ampere)
IR	infrared
j	subscript for species j
J	joule
J_j	flux density of species j (mol m^{-2} s^{-1})
J^{in}	inward flux density (influx) of species j (mol m^{-2} s^{-1})
J^{out}	outward flux density (efflux) of species j (mol m^{-2} s^{-1})
J_{V_j}	volume flux density of species j (m^3 m^{-2} s^{-1}, i.e., m s^{-1})
J_V	total volume flux density (m s^{-1})
k	kilo (as a prefix), 10^3
k	foliar absorption coefficient (dimensionless)
k_j	first-order rate constant for the jth process (s^{-1})
K	temperature on Kelvin scale
K	subscript for potassium ion
K	equilibrium constant (concentration raised to some power)
K_h	hydraulic conductance per unit length (m^4 MPa^{-1} s^{-1})
K^j	thermal conductivity coefficient of region j (W m^{-1} $°C^{-1}$)
K_j	partition coefficient of species j (dimensionless)
K_j	concentration for half-maximal uptake rate of species j (Michaelis constant) (mol m^{-3}, or M)
K_j	eddy diffusion coefficient of gaseous species j (m^2 s^{-1})
$K_{pH\ 7}$	equilibrium constant at pH 7
l	liter
l	superscript for lower
l	length (m), e.g., mean distance across leaf in wind direction
ln	natural or Napierian logarithm (to the base e, where e is 2.71828...)
log	common or Briggsian logarithm (to the base 10)

Quantity	*Description*
L^{soil}	soil hydraulic conductivity coefficient ($m^2\ Pa^{-1}\ s^{-1}$)
L_{jk}	Onsager or phenomenological coefficient (flux density per unit force)
L_P	hydraulic conductivity coefficient (in irreversible thermodynamics) ($m\ Pa^{-1}\ s^{-1}$)
L_w	water conductivity coefficient ($m\ Pa^{-1}\ s^{-1}$)
m	milli (as a prefix), 10^{-3}
m	meter
m	molal (mol/kg solvent)
m_j	mass per mole of species *j* (molar mass) ($kg\ mol^{-1}$)
max	subscript for maximum
memb	superscript for membrane
mes	superscript for mesophyll
min	subscript for minimum
mol	mole, a mass equal to the molecular weight of the species in grams; contains Avogadro's number of molecules
M	mega (as a prefix), 10^6
M	molar ($mol\ liter^{-1}$)
M_j	amount of species *j* per unit area ($mol\ m^{-2}$)
n	nano (as a prefix), 10^{-9}
n	number of stomata per unit area (m^{-2})
$n(E)$	number of moles with energy of *E* or greater
n_j	amount of species *j* (mol)
N	newton
Na	subscript for sodium ion
NAD^+	nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (oxidized form)
NADH	reduced form of nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide
$NADP^+$	nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate (oxidized form)
NADPH	reduced form of nicotinamide dinucleotide phosphate
N_j	mole fraction of species *j* (dimensionless)
Nu	Nusselt number (dimensionless)
o	superscript for outside
0	subscript for initial value (at $t = 0$)
out	superscript for outside
p	pico (as a prefix), 10^{-12}
p	period (s)
pH	$-\log(a_{H^+})$
pm	superscript for plasma membrane
ps	superscript for photosynthesis
P	pigment
P	subscript for phosphorescence
P	hydrostatic pressure (MPa)
Pa	pascal

Quantity	*Description*
P_j	permeability coefficient of species *j* (m s^{-1})
P_j	partial pressure of gaseous species *j* (kPa)
PPF	photosynthetic photon flux (400–700 nm)
PPFD	photosynthetic photon flux density (same as PPF)
q	number of electrons transferred per molecule (dimensionless)
Q	charge (C)
Q_{10}	temperature coefficient (dimensionless)
r	radius (m)
r	reflectivity (dimensionless)
r + pr	superscript for respiration plus photorespiration
r_j	resistance for gaseous species *j* (s m^{-1})
R	electrical resistance (Ω)
R	gas constant (J mol^{-1} K^{-1})
R^j	resistance of component *j* across which water moves as a liquid (MPa s m^{-3})
Re	Reynolds number (dimensionless)
RH	relative humidity (%)
s	subscript for solute
s	second
s_j	amount of species *j* (mol)
st	superscript for stoma(ta)
surf	superscript for surface
surr	superscript for surroundings
S	singlet
$S_{(\pi,\pi)}$	singlet ground state
$S_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$	singlet excited state in which a π electron has been promoted to a π^* orbital
S	magnitude of net spin (dimensionless)
S	total flux density of solar irradiation, i.e., global irradiation (W m^{-2})
t	time (s)
t^{cw}	cell wall thickness (m)
ta	superscript for turbulent air
T	superscript for transpiration
T	triplet
$T_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$	excited triplet state
T	temperature (K, °C)
u	superscript for upper
u_j	mobility of species *j* (velocity per unit force)
u_+	mobility of monovalent cation
u_-	mobility of monovalent anion
U	kinetic energy (J mol^{-1})

Quantity	*Description*
U_B	minimum kinetic energy to cross barrier (J mol^{-1})
UV	ultraviolet
v	magnitude of velocity (m s^{-1})
v	wind speed (m s^{-1})
v^{wind}	wind speed (m s^{-1})
v_j	magnitude of velocity of species *j* (m s^{-1})
v_{CO_2}	rate of photosynthesis per unit volume (mol m^{-3} s^{-1})
vac	subscript for vacuum
V	volt
V	subscript for volume
V	volume (m^3)
$\overline{V}_j$	partial molal volume of species *j* (m^3 mol^{-1})
V_{max}	maximum rate of CO_2 fixation (mol m^{-3} s^{-1})
w	subscript for water
wv	subscript for water vapor
W	watt (J s^{-1})
x	distance (m)
z	altitude (m)
z_j	charge number of ionic species *j* (dimensionless)
α	contact angle (°)
γ_j	activity coefficient of species *j* (dimensionless, but see a_j)
$\gamma_\pm$	mean activity coefficient of cation–anion pair (dimensionless)
δ	delta, a small quantity of something, e.g., δ^- refers to a small fraction of an electronic charge
δ	distance (m)
δ^{bl}	thickness of air boundary layer (mm)
Δ	delta, the difference or change in the quantity that follows it
ε	volumetric elastic modulus (MPa)
ε_λ	absorption coefficient at wavelength λ (m^2 mol^{-1})
ε_0	permittivity of a vacuum
η	viscosity (N s m^{-2}, Pa s)
λ	wavelength of light (nm)
λ_{max}	wavelength position for the maximum absorption coefficient in an absorption band or for the maximum photon (or energy) emission in an emission spectrum
μ	micro (as a prefix), 10^{-6}
μ_j	chemical potential of species *j* (J mol^{-1})
ν	frequency of electromagnetic radiation (s^{-1}, hertz)
ν	kinematic viscosity (m^2 s^{-1})
π	ratio of circumference to diameter of a circle (3.14159...)
π	an electron orbital in a molecule or an electron in such an orbital

Quantity	*Description*
π^*	an excited or antibonding electron orbital in a molecule or an electron in such an orbital
Π	total osmotic pressure (MPa)
Π_j	osmotic pressure of species j (MPa)
Π_s	osmotic pressure due to solutes (MPa)
ρ	density (kg m^{-3})
ρ	resistivity, electrical (Ω m)
ρ^j	hydraulic resistivity of component j (MPa s m^{-2})
σ	surface tension (N m^{-1})
σ	reflection coefficient (dimensionless)
σ_j	reflection coefficient of species j (dimensionless)
σ_L	longitudinal stress (MPa)
σ_T	tangential stress (MPa)
τ	matric pressure (MPa)
τ	lifetime (s)
τ_j	lifetime for the jth deexcitation process (s)
φ_j	osmotic coefficient of species j (dimensionless)
Φ_i	quantum yield or efficiency for ith deexcitation pathway (dimensionless)
Ψ	water potential (MPa)
Ψ_Π	osmotic potential (MPa)
°C	degree Celsius
°	angular degree
*	superscript for a standard or reference state
*	superscript for a molecule in an excited electronic state
*	superscript for saturation of air with water vapor
∞	infinity

Physicochemical and Environmental

Plant Physiology

FOURTH EDITION

Major Equations

Fick's first law (1.1)

$$J_j = -D_j \frac{\partial c_j}{\partial x}$$

Solution to Fick's second law (1.5)

$$c_j = \frac{M_j}{2(\pi D_j t)^{1/2}} e^{-x^2 / 4D_j t}$$

Time–distance relation for diffusion (1.6)

$$x_{1/e}^2 = 4D_j t_{1/e}$$

Permeability coefficient (1.9)

$$P_j = \frac{D_j K_j}{\Delta x}$$

Elastic property (1.14)

$$\text{Young's modulus} = \frac{\text{stress}}{\text{strain}} = \frac{\text{force/area}}{\Delta l / l_0}$$

1

Cells and Diffusion

1.1. Cell Structure 3
1.1A. Generalized Plant Cell 3
1.1B. Leaf Anatomy 5
1.1C. Vascular Tissue 7
1.1D. Root Anatomy 9
1.2. Diffusion 11
1.2A. Fick's First Law 12
1.2B. Continuity Equation and Fick's Second Law 14
1.2C. Time–Distance Relation for Diffusion 16
1.2D. Diffusion in Air 19
1.3. Membrane Structure 21
1.3A. Membrane Models 21
1.3B. Organelle Membranes 23
1.4. Membrane Permeability 25
1.4A. Concentration Difference Across a Membrane 26
1.4B. Permeability Coefficient 28
1.4C. Diffusion and Cellular Concentration 29
1.5. Cell Walls 31
1.5A. Chemistry and Morphology 33
1.5B. Diffusion Across Cell Walls 34
1.5C. Stress–Strain Relations of Cell Walls 37
1.5D. Elastic Modulus, Viscoelasticity 39
1.6. Problems 40
1.7. References and Further Reading 42

1.1. Cell Structure

Before formally considering diffusion and related topics, we will outline the structures of certain plant cells and tissues, thus introducing most of the anatomical terms used throughout this book.

1.1A. Generalized Plant Cell

Figure 1-1 depicts a representative leaf cell from a higher plant and illustrates the larger subcellular structures. The living material of a cell, known as the *protoplast*, is surrounded by the *cell wall*. The cell wall is composed of cellulose and other polysaccharides, which helps provide rigidity to

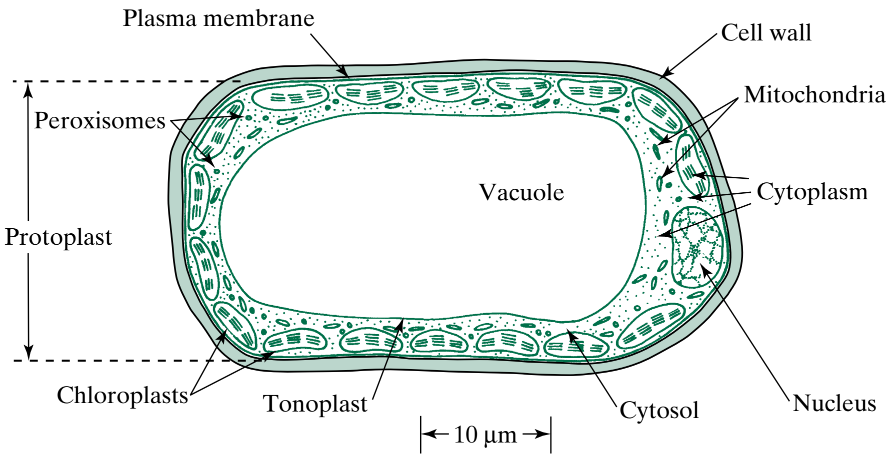


Figure 1-1. Schematic representation of a mature mesophyll cell from the leaf of a flowering plant, suggesting some of the complexity resulting from the presence of many membrane-surrounded subcellular compartments.

individual cells as well as to the whole plant. The cell wall contains numerous relatively large interstices, so it is not the main permeability barrier to the entry of water or small solutes into plant cells. The main barrier, known as the *plasma membrane* (or *plasmalemma*), is found inside the cell wall and surrounds the *cytoplasm*. The permeability of this membrane varies with the particular solute, so the plasma membrane can regulate what enters and leaves a plant cell. The cytoplasm contains organelles such as *chloroplasts* and *mitochondria*, which are membrane-surrounded compartments in which energy can be converted from one form to another. Chloroplasts, whose production and maintenance is a primary function of plants, are the sites for photosynthesis, and mitochondria are the sites for respiration. Microbodies, such as peroxisomes and ribosomes, are also found in the cytoplasm along with macromolecules and other structures that influence the thermodynamic properties of water. Thus, the term *cytoplasm* includes the organelles (but generally not the nucleus), whereas the term *cytosol* refers to the cytoplasmic solution delimited by the plasma membrane and the tonoplast (to be discussed next) but exterior to the organelles.

In mature cells of higher (evolutionarily advanced) plants and many lower plants, there is a large central aqueous compartment, the *central vacuole*, which is surrounded by a membrane called the *tonoplast*. The central vacuole is usually quite large and can occupy up to about 90% of the volume of a mature cell. Because of the large central vacuole, the cytoplasm occupies a thin layer around the periphery of a plant cell (Fig. 1-1). Therefore, for its volume, the cytoplasm has a relatively large surface area across which diffusion can occur. The aqueous solution in the central vacuole contains mainly inorganic ions or organic acids as solutes, although considerable amounts of sugars and amino acids may be present in some species. Water uptake by this central vacuole occurs during cell growth and helps lead to the support of a plant.

One immediate impression of plant cells is the great prevalence of membranes. In addition to surrounding the cytoplasm, membranes also separate various compartments in the cytoplasm. Diffusion of substances across these membranes is much more difficult than is diffusion within the compartments. Thus, organelle and vacuolar membranes can control the contents and consequently the reactions occurring in the particular compartments that they surround. Diffusion can also impose limitations on the overall size of a cell because the time for diffusion can increase with the square of the distance, as we will quantitatively consider in the next section.

Although many plant and algal cells share most of the features indicated in Figure 1-1, they are remarkably diverse in size. The cells of the green alga *Chlorella* are approximately 4×10^{-6} m (4 μm) in diameter. In contrast, some species of the intertidal green alga *Valonia* have multinucleated cells as large as 20 mm in diameter. The genera *Chara* and *Nitella* include fresh- and brackish-water green algae having large internodal cells (Fig. 3-13) that may be 100 mm long and 1 mm in diameter. Such large algal cells have proved extremely useful for studying ion fluxes, as we consider in Chapter 3 (e.g., Sections 3.2E; 3.3E,F).

1.1B. Leaf Anatomy

A cross section of a typical angiosperm (seed plant) leaf can illustrate various cell types and anatomical features that are important for photosynthesis and transpiration. Leaves are generally 4 to 10 cells thick, which corresponds to a few hundred micrometers (Fig. 1-2). An *epidermis* occurs on both the upper and the lower sides of a leaf and is usually one cell layer thick. Except for the *guard cells*, epidermal cells usually are colorless because their cytoplasm contains few, if any, chloroplasts (depending on the species). Epidermal cells have a relatively thick waterproof *cuticle* on the atmospheric side (Fig. 1-2). The cuticle contains *cutin*, which consists of a diverse group of complex polymers composed principally of esters of 16- and 18-carbon monocarboxylic acids that have two or three hydroxyl groups (esterification refers to the chemical joining of an acid and an alcohol resulting in the removal of a water molecule). Cutin is relatively inert and also resists enzymatic degradation by microorganisms, so it is often well preserved in fossil material. We will consider its role in minimizing water loss from a leaf.

Between the two epidermal layers is the *mesophyll* (literally, middle of the leaf) tissue, which is usually differentiated into chloroplast-containing "palisade" and "spongy" cells. The palisade cells are often elongated perpendicular to the upper epidermis and are found immediately beneath it (Fig. 1-2). The spongy mesophyll cells, located between the palisade mesophyll cells and the lower epidermis, are loosely packed, and intercellular air spaces are conspicuous. In fact, most of the surface area of both spongy and palisade mesophyll cells is exposed to air in the intercellular spaces, facilitating diffusion of gases into or out of the cells. A spongy mesophyll cell is often rather spherical, about 20 μm in radius, and can contain approximately

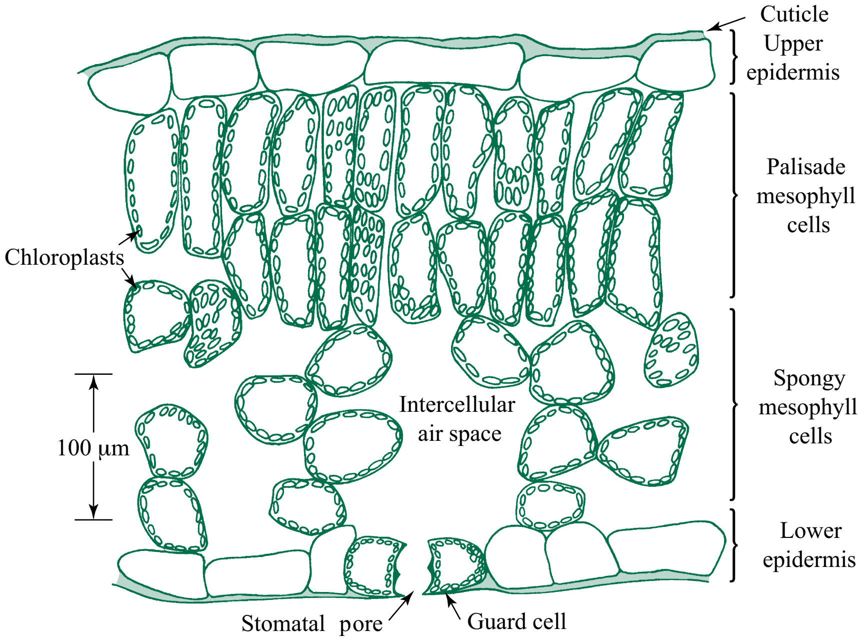


Figure 1-2. Schematic transverse section through a leaf, indicating the arrangement of various cell types. Often about 30 to 40 mesophyll cells occur per stoma.

40 chloroplasts. (As Fig. 1-2 illustrates, the cells are by no means geometrically regular, so dimensions here indicate only approximate size.) A neighboring palisade cell is usually more oblong; it can be 80 μm long, can contain 60 chloroplasts, and might be represented by a cylinder 15 μm in radius and 50 μm long with hemispherical ends. Based on the dimensions given, a spongy mesophyll cell can have a volume of

$$V = (4/3)(\pi)(20 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m})^3 = 3.4 \times 10^{-14}\ \text{m}^3$$

A palisade mesophyll cell can have a volume of

$$\begin{aligned} V &= (\pi)(15 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m})^2(50 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m}) + (4/3)(\pi)(15 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m})^3 \\ &= 4.9 \times 10^{-14}\ \text{m}^3 \end{aligned}$$

(formulas for areas and volumes of various geometric shapes are given in Appendix IIIB.) In many leaves, palisade mesophyll cells contain about 70% of the chloroplasts and often outnumber the spongy mesophyll cells nearly two to one.

The pathway of least resistance for gases to cross an epidermis—and thus to enter or to exit from a leaf—is through the adjustable space between a pair of guard cells (Fig. 1-2). This pore, and its two surrounding guard cells, is called a *stoma* or *stomate* (plural: stomata and stomates, respectively). When they are open, the stomatal pores allow for the entry of CO_2 into the leaf and for the exit of photosynthetically produced O_2. The inevitable loss of water vapor by transpiration also occurs mainly through the stomatal pores, as we will discuss in Chapter 8 (Section 8.1B). Stomata thus serve

as a control, helping to strike a balance between freely admitting the CO_2 needed for photosynthesis and at the same time preventing excessive loss of water vapor from the plant. Air pollutants such as ozone (O_3), nitrous oxide (NO), and sulfur dioxide (SO_2) also enter plants primarily through the open stomata.

1.1C. Vascular Tissue

The *xylem* and the *phloem* make up the vascular systems found contiguously in the roots, stems (Fig. 1-3), and leaves of plants. In a tree trunk the phloem constitutes a layer of the bark and the xylem constitutes almost all of the wood. The xylem provides structural support for land plants. Water conduction in the xylem of a tree often occurs only in the outermost annual ring,[1] which lies just inside the *vascular cambium* (region of meristematic activity from which xylem and phloem cells differentiate). Outside the functioning phloem are other phloem cells that can be shed as pieces of bark slough off. Phloem external to the xylem, as in a tree, is the general pattern for the stems of plants. As we follow the vascular tissue from the stem along a petiole and into a leaf, we observe that the xylem and the phloem often form a vein, which sometimes conspicuously protrudes from the lower surface of a leaf. Reflecting the orientation in the stem or the trunk, the phloem is found abaxial to the xylem in the vascular tissue of a leaf (i.e., the phloem is located on the side of the lower epidermis). The vascular system branches and rebranches as it crosses a dicotyledonous leaf, becoming smaller (in cross section) at each step. In contrast to the reticulate venation in dicotyledons, monocotyledons characteristically have parallel-veined leaves. Individual mesophyll cells in the leaf are never further than a few cells from the vascular tissue.

The movement of water and nutrients from the soil to the upper portions of a plant occurs primarily in the xylem. The xylem sap usually contains about 10 mol m^{-3} (10 mM)[2] inorganic nutrients plus organic forms of nitrogen that are metabolically produced in the root. The xylem is a tissue of various cell types that we will consider in more detail in the final chapter (Section 9.4B,D), when water movement in plants is discussed quantitatively. The conducting cells in the xylem are the narrow, elongated *tracheids* and the *vessel members* (also called *vessel elements*), which tend to be shorter and wider than the tracheids. Vessel members are joined end-to-end in long

1. The rings in trees are not always annual. In many desert species a ring forms when large xylem cells are produced after a suitable rainy period followed by smaller cells, and this can occur more than once or sometimes not at all in a particular year. Moreover, trees from the wet tropics can have no annual rings.

2. Molarity (moles of solute per liter of solution, symbolized by M) is a useful unit for concentration, but it is not recommended for highly accurate measurements by the international unit convention, *Le Système International d'Unités* or *Système International* (SI). Nevertheless, we will use molarity in addition to the SI unit of mol m^{-3}. We also note that SI as currently practiced allows the American spelling "liter" and "meter" as well as the British spelling "litre" and "metre."

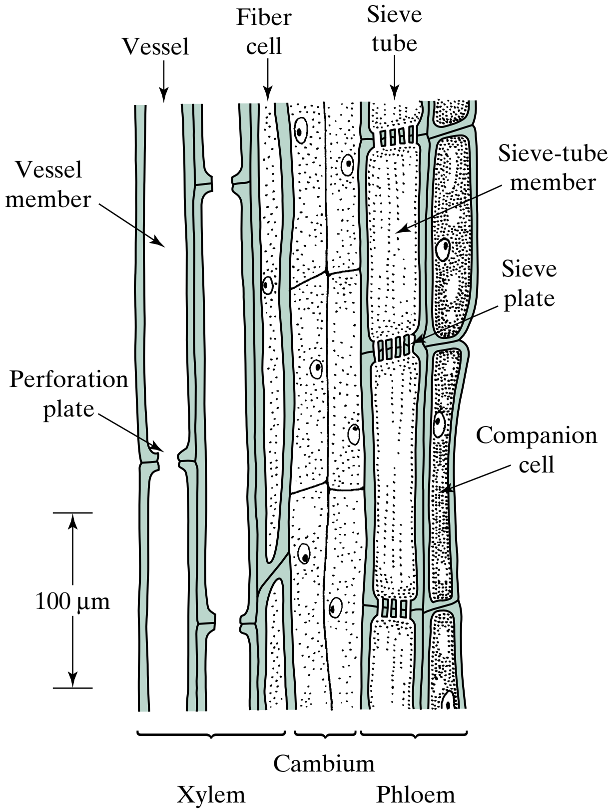


Figure 1-3. Idealized longitudinal section through part of a vascular bundle in a stem, illustrating various anatomical aspects of the xylem and the phloem. New cells forming in the xylem initially contain cytoplasm, which is lost as the cells mature and become conducting. Fiber cells, which occur in the xylem, are usually quite tapered and provide structural support. The nucleated companion cells are metabolically involved with the sieve-tube members of the phloem.

linear files; their adjoining end walls or *perforation plates* have from one large hole to many small holes. The conducting cells lose their protoplasts, and the remaining cell walls thus form a low-resistance channel for the passage of solutions. Xylem sap moves from the root, up the stem, through the petiole, and then to the leaves in these hollow dead xylem "cells," with motion occurring in the direction of decreasing hydrostatic pressure. Some solutes leave the xylem along the stem on the way to a leaf, and others diffuse or are actively transported across the plasma membranes of various leaf cells adjacent to the conducting cells of the xylem.

The movement of most organic compounds throughout the plant takes place in the other vascular tissue, the phloem. A portion of the photosynthetic products made in the mesophyll cells of the leaf diffuses or is actively transported across cellular membranes until it reaches the conducting cells of the leaf phloem. By means of the phloem, the photosynthetic products—which then are often mainly in the form of sucrose—are distributed throughout the plant. The carbohydrates produced by photosynthesis and certain other substances generally move in the phloem toward regions of lower

concentration, although diffusion is not the mechanism for the movement, as indicated in Chapter 9 (Section 9.4F,G). The phloem is a tissue consisting of several types of cells. In contrast to the xylem, however, the conducting cells of the phloem contain cytoplasm. They are known as *sieve cells* and *sieve-tube members* (Fig. 1-3) and are joined end-to-end, thus forming a transport system throughout the plant. Although these phloem cells often contain no nuclei at maturity, they remain metabolically active. Cells of the phloem, including companion cells, are further discussed in Chapter 9 (Section 9.4E).

1.1D. Root Anatomy

Roots anchor plants in the ground as well as absorb water and nutrients from the soil and then conduct these substances upward to the stem. Approximately half of the products of photosynthesis are allocated to roots for many plants. To help understand uptake of substances into a plant, we will examine the cell types and the functional zones that occur along the length of a root.

At the extreme tip of a root is the *root cap* (Fig. 1-4a), which consists of relatively undifferentiated cells that are scraped off as the root grows into new regions of the soil. Cell walls in the root cap are often mucilaginous, which can reduce friction with soil particles. Proximal to the root cap is a meristematic region where the cells rapidly divide. Cells in this *apical meristem* tend to be isodiametric and have thin cell walls. Next is a region of *cell elongation* in the direction of the root axis. Such elongation mechanically pushes the root tip through the soil, causing cells of the root cap to slough off by abrasion with soil particles. Sometimes the region of dividing cells is not

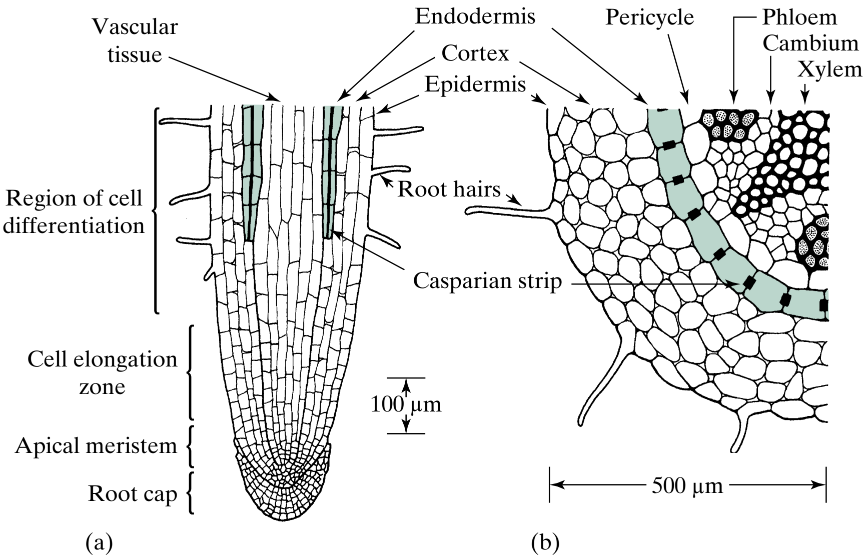


Figure 1-4. Schematic diagrams of a young root: (a) longitudinal section, indicating the zones that can occur near the root tip; and (b) cross-sectional view approximately 10 mm back from the tip, indicating the arrangement of the various cell types.

spatially distinct from the elongation zone. Also, cell size and the extent of the zones vary with both plant species and physiological status.

The next region indicated in Figure 1-4a is that of *cell differentiation,* where the cells begin to assume more highly specialized functions. The cell walls become thicker, and elongation is greatly diminished. The epidermal cells develop fine projections, radially outward from the root, called *root hairs*. These root hairs greatly increase the surface area across which water and nutrients can enter a plant. As we follow a root toward the stem, the root surface generally becomes less permeable to water and the root interior becomes more involved with conducting water toward the stem. Water movement into the root is discussed in Chapter 9 (Section 9.4A), so the discussion here is restricted to some of the morphological features.

The region of a young root where water absorption most readily occurs usually has little or no waxy cuticle. Figure 1-4b shows a cross section of a root at the level where root hairs are found. Starting from the outside, we observe first the root epidermis and then a number of layers of cells known as the *cortex*. There are abundant intercellular air spaces in the cortex, facilitating the diffusion of O_2 and CO_2 within this tissue (such air spaces generally are lacking in vascular tissue). Inside the cortex is a single layer of cells, the *endodermis*. The radial and transverse walls of the endodermal cells are impregnated with waxy material, including *suberin,* forming a band around the cells known as the *Casparian strip* (Fig. 1-4), which prevents passage of water and solutes across that part of the cell wall. Because there are no air spaces between endodermal cells, and the radial walls are blocked by the waterproof Casparian strip, water must pass through the lateral walls and enter the cytoplasm of endodermal cells to continue across a root. The endodermal cells can represent the only place in the entire pathway for water movement from the soil, through the plant, to the air where it is mandatory that the water enters a cell's cytoplasm.[3] In the rest of the pathway, water can move in cell walls or in the hollow lumens of xylem vessels, a region referred to as the *apoplast.*

Immediately inside the endodermis is the *pericycle*, which is typically one cell thick in angiosperms. The cells of the pericycle can divide and form a meristematic region that can produce lateral or branch roots in the region just above the root hairs. Radially inside the pericycle is the vascular tissue. The phloem generally occurs in two to eight or more strands located around the root axis. The xylem usually radiates out between the phloem strands, so water does not have to cross the phloem to reach the xylem of a young root. The tissue between the xylem and the phloem is the vascular cambium, which through cell division and differentiation produces xylem (to the inside in stems and older roots) and phloem (to the outside in stems and older roots).

3. In the roots of many species a subepidermal layer or layers of *hypodermis* occur. Radial walls of hypodermal cells can also be blocked with a waxy material analogous to the Casparian strip in the *endodermis*, in which case the layers are often termed an *exodermis*.

Our rather elementary discussion of leaves, vascular tissues, and roots leads to the following oversimplified but useful picture. The roots take up water from the soil along with nutrients required for growth. These are conducted in the xylem to the leaves. Leaves of a photosynthesizing plant lose the water to the atmosphere along with a release of O_2 and an uptake of CO_2. Carbon from the latter ends up in photosynthate translocated in the phloem back to the root. Thus, the xylem and the phloem serve as the "plumbing" that connects the two types of plant organs that are functionally interacting with the environment. To understand the details of such physiological processes we must turn to fields like calculus, physics, thermodynamics, and photochemistry. Our next step is to bring the abstract ideas of these fields into the realm of cells and plants, which means that we need to make calculations using appropriate assumptions and approximations.

We begin the text by describing diffusion (Chapter 1). To discuss water (Chapter 2) and solutes (Chapter 3), we will introduce the thermodynamic concept of chemical potential. This leads to a quantitative description of fluxes, electrical potentials across membranes, and the energy requirements for active transport of solutes. Some important energy conversion processes take place in the organelles. For instance, light energy is absorbed (Chapter 4) by photosynthetic pigments located in the internal membranes of chloroplasts (Chapter 5) and then converted into other forms of energy useful to a plant (Chapter 6) or dissipated as heat (Chapter 7). Leaves (Chapter 8) as well as groups of plants (Chapter 9) also interact with the environment through exchanges of water vapor and CO_2. In our problem-solving approach to these topics, we will pay particular attention to dimensions and ranges for the parameters as well as to the insights that can be gained by developing the relevant formulae and then making calculations.

1.2. Diffusion

Diffusion leads to the net movement of a substance from a region of higher concentration to an adjacent region of lower concentration of that substance (Fig. 1-5). It is a spontaneous process; that is, no energy input is required.

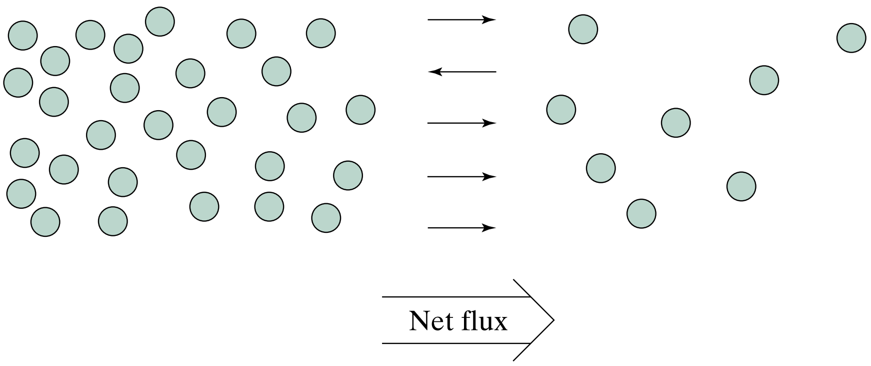


Figure 1-5. The random thermal motion of uncharged molecules of species *j* produces a net movement from a region of higher concentration (left-hand side) to a region of lower concentration (right-hand side).

Diffusion takes place in both the liquid and the gas phases associated with plants and is a result of the random thermal motion of the molecules—the solute(s) and the solvent in the case of a solution or of gases in the case of air. The net movement caused by diffusion is a statistical phenomenon—a greater probability exists for molecules to move from the concentrated region to the dilute region than vice versa (Fig. 1-5). In other words, more molecules per unit volume are present in the concentrated region than in the dilute one, so more are available for diffusing toward the dilute region than are available for movement in the opposite direction. If left isolated from external influences, diffusion of a neutral species tends to even out concentration differences originally present in adjoining regions of a liquid or a gas. In fact, the randomizing tendency of the generally small, irregular motion of particles by diffusion is a good example of the increase in entropy, or disorder, that accompanies all spontaneous processes. In 1905, Albert Einstein described such diffusion as a case of Brownian motion or movement, which was first observed microscopically by Robert Brown in 1827 for colloidal particles.

Diffusion is involved in many plant processes, such as gas exchange and the movement of nutrients toward root surfaces. For instance, diffusion is the mechanism for most, if not all, steps by which CO_2 from the air reaches the sites of photosynthesis in chloroplasts. CO_2 diffuses from the atmosphere up to the leaf surface and then diffuses through the stomatal pores. After entering a leaf, CO_2 diffuses within intercellular air spaces (Fig. 1-2). Next, CO_2 diffuses across the cell wall, crosses the plasma membrane of a leaf mesophyll cell, and then diffuses through the cytosol to reach the chloroplasts (Fig. 1-1). Finally, CO_2 enters a chloroplast and diffuses up to the enzymes that are involved in carbohydrate formation. If the enzymes were to fix all of the CO_2 in their vicinity, and no other CO_2 were to diffuse in from the atmosphere surrounding the plant, photosynthetic processes would stop (in solution, "CO_2" can also occur in the form of bicarbonate, HCO_3^-, and the crossing of membranes does not have to be by diffusion, refinements that we will return to in Chapter 8, Section 8.3D). In this chapter we develop the mathematical formulation necessary for understanding both diffusion across a membrane and diffusion in a solution.

1.2A. Fick's First Law

In 1855 Adolph Fick was one of the first to examine diffusion quantitatively. For such an analysis, we need to consider the concentration (c_j) of some solute species j in a solution or gaseous species j in air; the subscript j indicates that we are considering only one species of the many that could be present. We will assume that the concentration of species j in some region is less than in a neighboring one. A net migration of molecules occurs by diffusion from the concentrated to the dilute region (Fig. 1-5; strictly speaking, this applies to neutral molecules or in the absence of electrical potential differences, an aspect that we will return to in Chapter 3, Section 3.2). Such a molecular flow down a concentration gradient is analogous to the flow of

heat from a warmer to a cooler region. The analogy is actually good (especially for gases) because both processes depend on the random thermal motion of molecules. In fact, the differential equations and their solutions that are used to describe diffusion are those that had previously been developed to describe heat flow.

To express diffusion quantitatively, we will consider a diffusive flux or flow of species j. For simplicity, we will restrict our attention to diffusion involving planar fronts of uniform concentration, a situation that has widespread application to situations of interest in biology. We will let J_j be the amount of species j crossing a certain area per unit time, for example, moles of particles per meter squared in a second, which is termed the *flux density*.[4] Reasoning by analogy with heat flow, Fick deduced that the "force," or causative agent, leading to the net molecular movement involves the *concentration gradient*. A gradient indicates how a certain parameter changes with distance; the gradient in concentration of species j in the x-direction is represented by $\partial c_j/\partial x$. This partial derivative, $\partial c_j/\partial x$, indicates how much c_j changes as we move a short distance along the x-axis when other variables, such as time and position along the y-axis, are held constant. In general, *the flux density of some substance is proportional to an appropriate force*, a relation that we will use repeatedly in this text. In the present instance, the driving force is the negative of the concentration gradient of species j, which we will represent by $-\partial c_j/\partial x$ for diffusion in one dimension. To help appreciate why a negative sign occurs, recall that the direction of net (positive) diffusion is toward regions of lower concentration. We can now write the following relation showing the dependence of the flux density on the driving force:

$$J_j = -D_j \frac{\partial c_j}{\partial x} \tag{1.1}$$

where D_j is used to transform the proportionality between flux density and the negative concentration gradient into an equality.

Equation 1.1 is commonly known as Fick's first law of diffusion, where D_j is the *diffusion coefficient* of species j. For J_j in mol m^{-2} s^{-1} and c_j in mol m^{-3} (hence, $\partial c_j/\partial x$ in mol m^{-4}), D_j has units of m^2 s^{-1}. Because D_j varies with concentration, temperature, and the medium for diffusion, it is properly called a coefficient in the general case. In certain applications, however, we can obtain sufficient accuracy by treating D_j as a constant. The partial derivative is used in Equation 1.1 to indicate the change in concentration in the x-direction of Cartesian coordinates at some moment in time (constant t) and for specified values of y and z. For most of the cases that we will consider, the flux density in

4. Although the SI convention recommends the term *flux density*, much of the diffusion literature refers to J_j as a *flux*. Moreover, many symbols have been used for flux density (e.g., *A, D, E, F, I, J, M, Q, U*, and V), some of which (such as *A* for assimilation and *E* for evaporation) conflict with those used for other common variables (*A* for area and *E* for electric field or potential). We have chosen *J* because of its lack of conflict and the long precedent for its use (e.g., Lars Onsager used *J* for the flux densities of heat and mass in the early 1930s).

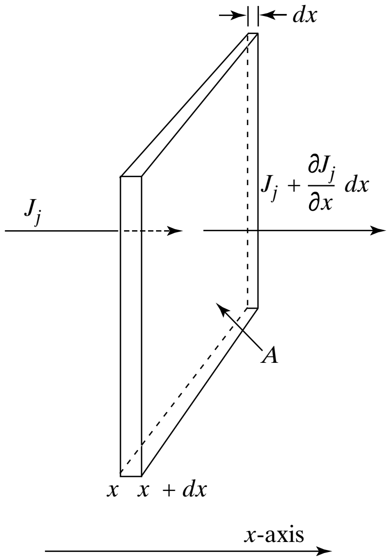


Figure 1-6. Diagram showing the dimensions and the flux densities that form the geometric basis for the continuity equation. The same general figure is used to discuss water flow in Chapter 2 (Section 2.4F) and solute flow in Chapter 3 (Section 3.3A).

the x-direction has the same magnitude at any value of y and z, meaning that we are dealing with one-dimensional, planar fluxes. By convention, a net flow in the direction of increasing x is positive (from left to right in Fig. 1-6). Because a net flow occurs toward regions of lower concentration, we again note that the negative sign is needed in Equation 1.1. Fick's first law indicates that diffusion is greater when the concentration gradient is steeper or the diffusion constant is larger. It has been amply demonstrated experimentally and is the starting point for our formal discussion of diffusion.

1.2B. Continuity Equation and Fick's Second Law

As we indicated earlier, diffusion in a solution is important for the movement of solutes across plant cells and tissues. How rapid are such processes? For example, if we release a certain amount of material in one location, how long will it take before we can detect that substance at various distances? To discuss such phenomena adequately, we must determine the dependence of the concentration on both time and distance. We can readily derive such a time–distance relationship if we first consider the conservation of mass, which is necessary if we are to transform Equation 1.1 into an expression that is convenient for describing the actual solute distributions caused by diffusion. In particular, we want to eliminate J_j from Equation 1.1 so that we can see how c_j depends on x and t.

The amount of solute or gaseous species j per unit time crossing a given area, here considered to be a planar area perpendicular to the x-axis

(Fig. 1-6), can change with position along the x-axis. Let us imagine a volume element of thickness dx in the direction of flow and of cross-sectional area A (Fig. 1-6). At x, we will let the flux density across the surface of area A be J_j. At $x + dx$, the flux density has changed to $J_j + (\partial J_j/\partial x)dx$, where $\partial J_j/\partial x$ is the gradient of the flux density of species j in the x-direction; that is, the rate of change of J_j with position, $\partial J_j/\partial x$, multiplied by the distance, dx, gives the overall change in the flux density, or $dJ_j = (\partial J_j/\partial x)\ dx$. The change in the amount of species j in the volume Adx in unit time for this one-dimensional case is the amount flowing into the volume element per unit time, J_jA, minus that flowing out, $[J_j + (\partial J_j/\partial x)dx]A$. The concentration of species j (c_j) is the amount of species j divided by the volume. Thus, the change in the amount of species j in the volume element in unit time can also be expressed as the change in the concentration of species j with time, $\partial c_j/\partial t$, multiplied by the volume in which the change in concentration occurs, Adx. Equating these two different expressions that describe the rate of change in the amount of species j in the volume Adx, we obtain the following relation:

$$J_jA - \left(J_j + \frac{\partial J_j}{\partial x}dx\right)A = \frac{\partial c_j}{\partial t}Adx \tag{1.2}$$

The two J_jA terms on the left-hand side of Equation 1.2 cancel each other. Then after division through by Adx, Equation 1.2 leads to the very useful expression known as the *continuity equation*:

$$-\frac{\partial J_j}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial c_j}{\partial t} \tag{1.3}$$

The continuity equation is a mathematical way of stating that matter cannot be created or destroyed under ordinary conditions. Thus, if the flux density of some species decreases as we move in the x-direction ($\partial J_j/\partial x < 0$), Equation 1.3 indicates that its concentration must be increasing with time, as the material is then accumulating locally. If we substitute Fick's first law (Eq. 1.1) into the continuity equation (Eq. 1.3), we obtain Fick's second law. For the important special case of constant D_j, this general equation for diffusion becomes

$$\frac{\partial c_j}{\partial t} = -\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(-D_j\frac{\partial c_j}{\partial x}\right) = D_j\frac{\partial^2 c_j}{\partial x^2} \tag{1.4}$$

The solution of Equation 1.4, which is the most difficult differential equation to be encountered in this book, describes how the concentration of some species changes with position and time as a result of diffusion. To determine the particular function that satisfies this important differential equation, we need to know the specific conditions for the situation under consideration. Nevertheless, a representative solution useful for the consideration of diffusion under simple conditions will be sufficient for the present purpose of describing the characteristics of solute diffusion in general terms. For example, we will assume that no obstructions occur in the x-direction and that species j is initially placed in a plane at the origin ($x = 0$). In this case,

the following expression for the concentration of species j satisfies the differential form of Fick's second law when D_j is constant[5]:

$$c_j = \frac{M_j}{2(\pi D_j t)^{1/2}} e^{-x^2/4D_j t} \tag{1.5}$$

In Equation 1.5, M_j is the total amount of species j per unit area initially ($t = 0$) placed in a plane located at the origin of the x-direction (i.e., at $x = 0$, whereas y and z can have any value, which defines the plane considered here), and c_j is its concentration at position x at any later time t. For M_j to have this useful meaning, the factor $1/[2(\pi D_j)^{1/2}] = 1/(2\sqrt{\pi D_j})$ is necessary in Equation 1.5 [note that $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} c_j(x,t)dx = M_j$, where $c_j(x, t)$ is the concentration function that depends on position and time as given by Eq. 1.5 and the probability integral $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-a^2u^2} du$ equals $\sqrt{\pi}/a$]. Moreover, the solute can be allowed to diffuse for an unlimited distance in either the plus or the minus x-direction and no additional solute is added at times $t > 0$. Often this idealized situation can be achieved by inserting a radioactive tracer in a plane at the origin of the x-direction. Equation 1.5 is only one of the possible solutions to the second-order partial differential equation representing Fick's second law. The form is relatively simple compared with other solutions, and, more important, the condition of having a finite amount of material released at a particular location is realistic for certain applications to biological problems.

1.2C. Time–Distance Relation for Diffusion

Although the functional form of c_j given by Equation 1.5 is only one particular solution to Fick's second law (Eq. 1.4) and is restricted to the case of constant D_j, it nevertheless is an extremely useful expression for understanding diffusion. It relates the distance a substance diffuses to the time necessary to reach that distance. The expression uses the diffusion coefficient of species j, D_j, which can be determined experimentally. In fact, Equation 1.5 is often used to determine a particular D_j.

Equation 1.5 indicates that the concentration in the plane at the origin of the x-direction ($x = 0$) is $M_j/[2(\pi D_j t)^{1/2}]$ or $M_j/(2\sqrt{\pi D_j t})$, which becomes infinitely large as t is turned back to 0, the starting time. Practically speaking, this extrapolated infinite value for c_j at x equals 0 corresponds to having all of the solute initially placed as close as possible to a plane at the origin. For t greater than 0, the solute diffuses away from the origin. The distribution of molecules along the x-axis at two successive times is indicated in Figures 1-7a and 1-7b, whereas Figures 1-7c and 1-7d explicitly show the movement of the

5. To show that Equation 1.5 is a possible solution of Fick's second law, it can be substituted into Equation 1.4 and the differentiations performed (M_j and D_j are constant; $\partial ax^n/\partial x = anx^{n-1}$, $\partial e^{ax^n}/\partial x = anx^{n-1}e^{ax^n}$, and $\partial uv/\partial x = u\partial v/\partial x + v\partial u/\partial x$). The solution of Equation 1.4 becomes progressively more difficult when more complex conditions or molecular interactions (which cause variations in D_j) are considered. Indeed, many books have been written on the solutions to Equation 1.4, where Equation 1.5 actually represents the first term of a power series [note that $(\pi D_j t)^{1/2}$ can be replaced by $\sqrt{\pi D_j t}$].

concentration profiles along the time axis. Because the total amount of species j does not change (it remains at M_j per unit area of the y–z plane, i.e., in a volume element parallel to the x-axis and extending from x values of $-\infty$ to $+\infty$), the area under each of the concentration profiles is the same.

Comparing Figures 1-7a and 1-7b, we can see that the average distance of the diffusing molecules from the origin increases with time. Also, Figures 1-7c and 1-7d show how the concentration profiles flatten out as time increases, as the diffusing solute or gaseous species is then distributed over a greater region of space. In estimating how far molecules diffuse in time t, a useful parameter is the distance $x_{1/e}$ at which the concentration drops to $1/e$ or 37% of its value in the plane at the origin. Although somewhat arbitrary, this parameter describes the shift of the statistical

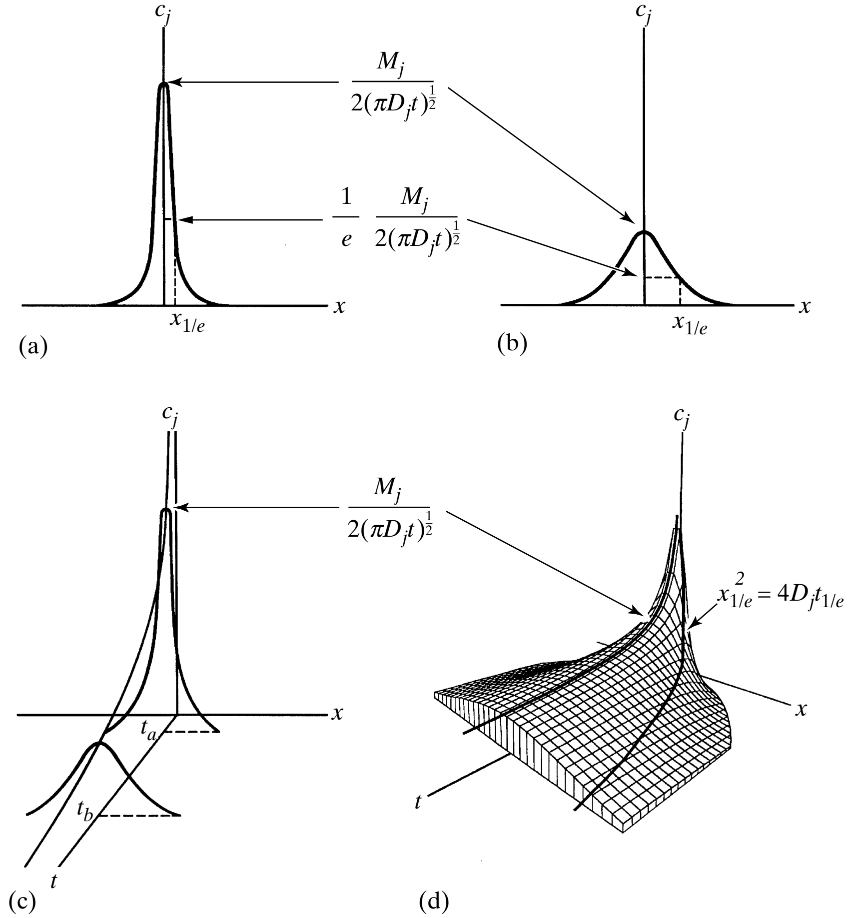


Figure 1-7. Concentration of species j, c_j, as a function of position x for molecules diffusing according to Fick's second law. The molecules were initially placed in a plane at the origin of the x-direction, that is, at $x = 0$. For a given value of x, c_j is the same throughout a plane in the y- and the z-directions. (a) Distribution of concentrations along the x-axis occurring at a time t_a, (b) distribution occurring at a subsequent time t_b, (c) portrayal of the concentration profiles at t_a and t_b, and (d) three-dimensional surface portraying change of concentration with time and position. Note that $x_{1/e}$ is the location at which the concentration of species j has dropped to $1/e$ of its value at the origin.

distribution of the population of molecules with time. From Equation 1.5, the concentration at the origin is $M_j/[2(\pi D_j t)^{1/2}]$ (Fig. 1-7). The concentration therefore drops to $1/e$ (= e^{-1}) of the value at the origin when the exponent of e in Equation 1.5 is −1. From Equation 1.5, −1 then equals $-x_{1/e}^2/4D_j t_{1/e}$, so the distance $x_{1/e}$ satisfies

$$x_{1/e}^2 = 4D_j t_{1/e} \tag{1.6}$$

The distance $x_{1/e}$ along the x-axis is indicated in Figures 1-7a, 1-7b, and 1-7d.

Equation 1.6 is an extremely important relationship that indicates a fundamental characteristic of diffusion processes: The distance a population of molecules of a particular solute or gaseous species diffuses—for the one-dimensional case in which the molecules are released in a plane at the origin—is proportional to the square root of both the diffusion coefficient of that species and the time for diffusion. In other words, the time to diffuse a given distance increases with the square of that distance. An individual molecule may diffuse a greater or lesser distance in time $t_{1/e}$ than is indicated by Equation 1.6 (Fig. 1-7), because the latter refers to the time required for the concentration of species j at position $x_{1/e}$ to become $1/e$ of the value at the origin; that is, we are dealing with the characteristics of a whole population of molecules, not the details of an individual molecule. Furthermore, the factor 4 is rather arbitrary because some criterion other than $1/e$ causes this numerical factor to be somewhat different, although the basic form of Equation 1.6 is preserved. For example, the numerical factor is (ln 2)(4) or 2.8 if the criterion is to drop to half of the value at the origin.

Table 1-1 lists the magnitudes of diffusion coefficients for various solutes in water at 25°C.[6] For ions and other small molecules, D_j's in aqueous solutions are approximately 10^{-9} m^2 s^{-1}. Because proteins have higher relative molecular masses (i.e., higher molecular weights)[7] than the small solutes, their diffusion coefficients are lower (Table 1-1). Also, because of the greater frictional interaction between water molecules and fibrous proteins than with the more compact globular ones, fibrous proteins often have diffusion coefficients that are approximately half of those of globular proteins of the same molecular weight.

To illustrate the time–distance consequences of Equation 1.6, we quantitatively consider the diffusion of small molecules in an aqueous solution. How long, on average, does it take for a small solute with a D_j of 1×10^{-9} m^2 s^{-1} to diffuse 50 μm, the distance across a typical leaf cell?

6. The symbol °C in this text represents degrees on the Celsius temperature scale. By the SI system, the Celsius degree as well as the kelvin unit or a kelvin (abbreviated K) is 1/273.16 of the thermodynamic temperature of the triple point of water (0.01000°C) and absolute zero is at −273.15°C. The term "centigrade" is no longer recommended.

7. Relative molecular mass, an expression that is preferred over the commonly used "molecular weight," is a dimensionless number indicating the molecular mass of a substance relative to that of a neutral carbon atom with six protons and six neutrons (^{12}C) taken as 12.00000. For proteins, the molecular mass is often expressed in kilodaltons (kDa), where 1 Da is $\frac{1}{12}$ the mass of ^{12}C. For instance, sucrose has a relative molecular mass, or molecular weight, of 342 and a molecular mass of 342 Da.

Table 1-1. Diffusion Coefficients in Aqueous Solutions and Air[a]

Small solutes in water		Globular proteins in water	
Substance	D_j ($m^2\ s^{-1}$)	Molecular mass (kDa)	D_j ($m^2\ s^{-1}$)
Alanine	0.92×10^{-9}	15	1×10^{-10}
Citrate	0.66×10^{-9}	1000	1×10^{-11}
Glucose	0.67×10^{-9}		
Glycine	1.1×10^{-9}	Gases in air	
Sucrose	0.52×10^{-9}	Gas	D_j ($m^2\ s^{-1}$)
Ca^{2+} (with Cl^-)	1.2×10^{-9}		
K^+ (with Cl^-)	1.9×10^{-9}	CO_2	1.51×10^{-5}
Na^+ (with Cl^-)	1.5×10^{-9}	H_2O	2.42×10^{-5}
CO_2	1.7×10^{-9}	O_2	1.95×10^{-5}

[a] Values are for dilute solutions at 25°C or air under standard atmospheric pressure at 20°C (sources: Fasman, 1989; Lide, 2008).

From Equation 1.6, the time required for the population of molecules to shift so that the concentration at this distance is $1/e$ of the value at the origin is

$$t_{1/e} = \frac{x_{1/e}^2}{4D_j} = \frac{(50 \times 10^{-6}\ \mathrm{m})^2}{(4)(1 \times 10^{-9}\ \mathrm{m^2\ s^{-1}})} = 0.6\ \mathrm{s}$$

Thus diffusion is fairly rapid over subcellular distances.

Next, let us consider the diffusion of the same substance over a distance of 1 m. The time needed is

$$t_{1/e} = \frac{(1\ \mathrm{m})^2}{(4)(1 \times 10^{-9}\ \mathrm{m^2\ s^{-1}})} = 2.5 \times 10^8\ \mathrm{s} \cong 8\ \mathrm{years}$$

Diffusion is indeed not rapid over long distances! Therefore, inorganic nutrients in xylary sap do not ascend a tree by diffusion at a rate sufficient to sustain growth. On the other hand, diffusion is often adequate for the movement of solutes within leaf cells and especially inside organelles such as chloroplasts and mitochondria. In summary, diffusion in a solution is fairly rapid over short distances (less than about 100 µm) but extremely slow for very long distances.

In living cells, *cytoplasmic streaming* (*cyclosis*) causes mechanical mixing, which leads to much more rapid movement than by diffusion. This cytoplasmic streaming, whose cessation is often a good indicator that cellular damage has occurred, requires energy, which is usually supplied in the form of adenosine triphosphate (ATP). The movement can involve a mechanism similar to that in muscle using actin microfilaments, or perhaps involves the use of microtubules. Also, chloroplasts can move around in some cells in response to changes in illumination.

1.2D. Diffusion in Air

Diffusion of gases in the air surrounding and within leaves is necessary for both photosynthesis and transpiration. For instance, water vapor evaporating from the cell walls of mesophyll cells diffuses across the intercellular air spaces (Fig. 1-2) to reach the stomata and from there diffuses across an air boundary layer into the atmosphere (considered in detail in Chapter 8,

Section 8.2). CO_2 diffuses from the atmosphere through the open stomata to the surfaces of mesophyll cells, and the photosynthetically evolved O_2 traverses the same pathway in the reverse direction, also by diffusion. The experimentally determined diffusion coefficients of these three gases in air at sea level (standard atmospheric pressure) and 20°C are about $2 \times 10^{-5}\ m^2\ s^{-1}$ (Table 1-1). Such diffusion coefficients in air are approximately 10^4 times larger than the D_j describing diffusion of a small solute in a liquid, indicating that diffusion coefficients depend markedly on the medium. In particular, many more intermolecular collisions occur per unit time in a liquid phase than in a less dense gas phase. Thus a molecule can move further and faster in air than in an aqueous solution before being influenced by other molecules. Most cells in animals are bathed by fluids, so larger animals require circulatory systems to transport O_2 to their cells and to remove CO_2. Plants, on the other hand, often have conspicuous intercellular air spaces in leaves, stems, and roots where the large values of D_{O_2} and D_{CO_2} in a gas-phase facilitate diffusion. Also, tissue known as *aerenchyma* with particularly large intercellular air spaces and even air channels can develop in the cortex of stems and roots; again, advantage is taken of the approximately 10,000-fold larger diffusion coefficients of gases in air compared with in water. Indeed, aerenchyma is crucial for plants in aquatic, wetland, and flood-prone habitats (insects also rely on internal air pathways to move O_2 and CO_2 around).

Although the relation between diffusion coefficients and molecular weight can be complex in a solution, molecules with higher molecular weights tend to have lower diffusion coefficients. For a gaseous phase, Thomas Graham in 1831 proposed a relation that in present terminology indicates that the diffusion coefficient of species *j* is inversely proportional to the square root of its mass (known as Graham's law). Thus, compared to CO_2 (molecular weight of 44), H_2O (molecular weight of 18) should have a diffusion coefficient that is $\sqrt{(44/18)}$ or 1.56 times higher, consistent with the measured ratio of 1.60 (Table 1-1). O_2 (molecular weight of 32) has a diffusion coefficient intermediate to those of H_2O and CO_2. Diffusion coefficients depend inversely on the viscosity of the medium (discussed in Chapter 3, Section 3.2A, where the temperature dependence of D_j is also considered). Because diffusion coefficients of gases in air are inversely proportional to ambient atmospheric pressure (Eq. 8.9), they become larger at higher altitudes.

The pathways for the movement of gas molecules in the intercellular air spaces of a leaf can be quite tortuous. Nevertheless, calculations using Equation 1.6 can give useful estimates of the diffusion times for the many processes involving gaseous movements in a leaf. An upper limit for the length of the diffusion pathway in such intercellular air spaces of a leaf might be 1000 μm. Using Equation 1.6 and the diffusion coefficients given in Table 1-1, we can calculate that the times needed for water vapor, O_2, and CO_2 to diffuse 1000 μm in air are from 10 to 17 ms. Diffusion of molecules in a gas is therefore relatively rapid. However, the rate of photosynthesis in plants is generally limited by the amount of CO_2 diffusing into the chloroplasts, and the rate of transpiration is determined by diffusion of water vapor from the cell walls within the leaf to the outside air. In the latter case, the limitation posed by diffusion helps prevent excessive water loss from the plant and therefore is physiologically useful.

1.3. Membrane Structure

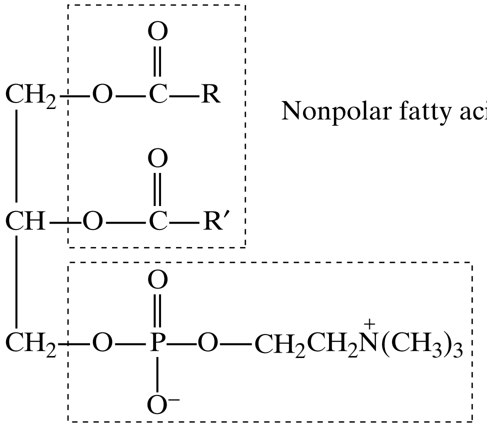
The plasma membrane is a major barrier to the diffusion of solutes into and out of plant cells, the organelle membranes play an analogous role for the various subcellular compartments, and the tonoplast performs this function for the central vacuole. For instance, although H_2O and CO_2 readily penetrate the plasma membrane, ATP and metabolic intermediates usually do not diffuse across it easily. Before we mathematically describe the penetration of membranes by solutes, we will briefly review certain features of the structure of membranes.

1.3A. Membrane Models

In 1925 Evert Gorter and F. Grendel estimated that the lipids from erythrocytes (red blood cells), when spread as a monomolecular layer, cover an area nearly twice the surface area of the cells. The amount of lipid present is apparently sufficient to form a double layer in the membrane. Moreover, the penetration of a series of substances across membranes often depends on the relative lipid solubility of the molecules. This circumstantial evidence led to the concept of a biological membrane composed primarily of a lipid bilayer.

To help understand the properties of lipid bilayers, we must consider the charge distribution within lipid molecules. The arrangement of atoms in the hydrocarbon (containing only C and H) region of lipid molecules leads to bonding in which no local charge imbalance develops. The hydrocarbon part of the molecule is nonpolar (no substantial, local, intramolecular separation of positive and negative charge), neutral, and tends to avoid water, and is therefore called *hydrophobic*. Most lipid molecules in membranes also have a phosphate or an amine group, or both, which becomes charged in an aqueous solution. Such charged regions interact electrostatically with the polar or charged parts of other molecules. Because they interact attractively with water, the polar or charged regions are termed *hydrophilic*.

Many of the phospholipids in membranes are glycerol derivatives that have two esterified fatty acids plus a charged side chain joined by a phosphate ester linkage. A typical example is phosphatidylcholine (lecithin), a major component of most membranes:



Nonpolar fatty acids

Polar region

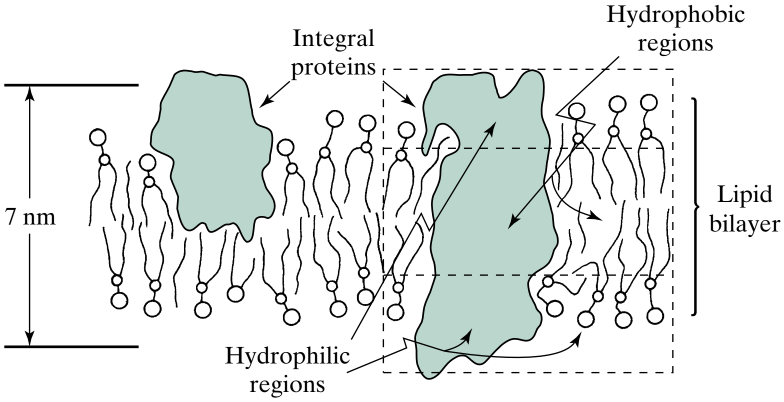


Figure 1-8. Membrane model with globular proteins interspersed within a lipid bilayer. The ionic "head" of phospholipids is represented by –O, and the fatty acid side chains leading to the nonpolar "tail" are indicated by the two wavy lines.

where R and R′ are the hydrocarbon parts of the fatty acids. Various fatty acids commonly esterified to this phospholipid include palmitic (16C and no double bonds, represented as 16:0), palmitoleic (16:1), stearic (18:0), oleic (18:1), linoleic (18:2), and linolenic (18:3) acid. For example, the major fatty acid in the membranes of higher plant chloroplasts is linolenic acid. The hydrocarbon side chains of the esterified fatty acids affect the packing of the lipid molecules in a membrane. As the number of double bonds in the fatty acid side chain increases, the side chain tends to be less straight, so the area occupied per lipid molecule in a monolayer increases. This change in intermolecular distances affects the permeability of such lipid layers and, presumably, that of biological membranes.

To form a bilayer in a membrane, the lipid molecules have their nonpolar (neutral) portions or "tails" adjacent to each other on the inside, facilitating hydrophobic interactions, and the hydrophilic "heads" on the outside (Fig. 1-8). Globular proteins occur embedded within the membranes and generally extend all of the way across. These integral proteins have their hydrophobic portions buried within the membrane, and their hydrophilic portions protrude out into the aqueous solutions next to the membrane (Fig. 1-8), where they interact attractively with water molecules. Specifically, amino acids whose side chains can become charged—aspartate, glutamate, arginine, and lysine—tend to be exposed to the aqueous solutions. Amino acids with hydrophobic side chains—leucine, isoleucine, and valine—tend to the interior of the membrane where they interact with the fatty acid side chains of the phospholipids, which are also hydrophobic. Membranes also contain a small amount of steroids and oligosaccharides (composed of 2–10 monosaccharide residues, often bound to proteins). Membranes can be about half water by weight. When the water content of membranes is reduced below about 20%, as can occur during prolonged desiccation, the lipid bilayer configuration and membrane integrity are lost. Thus a minimal water content is necessary to create the hydrophilic environment that stabilizes the lipid bilayer. The lipid bilayer arrangement between the globular

proteins (Fig. 1-8) helps account for the good correlation between lipid solubility and membrane permeation for many solutes.

1.3B. Organelle Membranes

Both mitochondria and chloroplasts are surrounded by two membranes, both have extensive internal membrane systems, and both are highly involved with cellular metabolism. Specific proteins implementing electron transfer in respiration and photosynthesis are embedded in the interior membranes of mitochondria and chloroplasts, respectively. Such membrane subunits move or vibrate thermally because of their own kinetic energy and yet remain in the membrane. Diffusion coefficients of globular proteins within the plane of the membrane are generally about 10^{-14} to 10^{-13} $m^2\ s^{-1}$, compared with nearly 10^{-10} $m^2\ s^{-1}$ for the same proteins in solution, suggesting that membranes have rather high viscosities. The diffusion of membrane proteins allows successive interactions of a bound substrate with various enzymes located in the membrane. The side-by-side location of various components involved with electron transfer in a semisolid part of the membrane can ensure an orderly, rapid, directed passage of electrons from enzyme to enzyme.

The proteins involved with electron transfer vary in size and shape. Thus the internal membranes of chloroplasts and mitochondria are not uniform and regular. Proteins taking part in ion transport and cell wall synthesis can be embedded in the plasma membrane, and other proteins involved with transport occur in the tonoplast. Many globular proteins in membranes serve a structural role.

Of the two mitochondrial membranes (Fig. 1-9), the outer one is more permeable to various small anions and cations (e.g., H^+), adenine nucleotides, and many other solutes than is the inner one. The inner membrane invaginates to form the mitochondrial *cristae*, in which the enzymes responsible for electron transfer and the accompanying ATP formation are embedded. For instance, the inner membrane system has various dehydrogenases, an ATPase, and cytochromes (discussed in Chapters 5 and 6). These proteins with enzymatic activity occur in a globular form, and they can be an integral part of the membrane (Fig. 1-8) or loosely bound

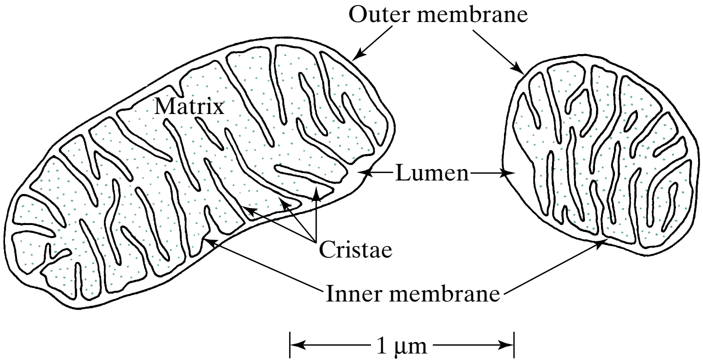


Figure 1-9. Representative mitochondria in cross section, as seen in an electron micrograph of a 30-nm-thick section of plant tissue.

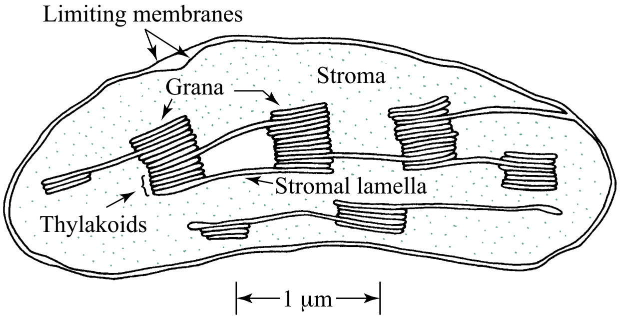


Figure 1-10. Generalized chloroplast in cross section from a leaf mesophyll cell.

to its periphery (as for cytochrome *c*). Electron microscopy has revealed small particles attached by stalks to the cristae; these particles are proteins involved in the phosphorylation accompanying respiration (Fig. 6-8).

Inside the inner membrane of a mitochondrion is a viscous region known as the *matrix* (Fig. 1-9). Enzymes of the tricarboxylic acid (TCA) cycle (also known as the citric acid cycle and the Krebs cycle), as well as others, are located there. For substrates to be catabolized by the TCA cycle, they must cross two membranes to pass from the cytosol to the inside of a mitochondrion. Often the slowest or rate-limiting step in the oxidation of such substrates is their entry into the mitochondrial matrix. Because the inner mitochondrial membrane is highly impermeable to most molecules, transport across the membrane using a "carrier" or "transporter" (Chapter 3, Section 3.4A) is generally invoked to explain how various substances get into the matrix. These carriers, situated in the inner membrane, might shuttle important substrates from the lumen between the outer and the inner mitochondrial membranes to the matrix. Because of the inner membrane, important ions and substrates in the mitochondrial matrix do not leak out. Such permeability barriers between various subcellular compartments improve the overall efficiency of a cell.

Chloroplasts (Fig. 1-10) are also surrounded by two *limiting* membranes, the outer one of which is more permeable than the inner one to small solutes. These limiting membranes are relatively high in galactolipid (containing galactose and a lipid) and low in protein. The internal *lamellar* membranes of chloroplasts are about half lipid and half protein by dry weight. Chlorophyll and most other photosynthetic pigments are bound to proteins. These proteins, as well as other components involved with photosynthetic electron transfer (Chapters 5 and 6), are anchored in the lamellar membranes, apparently by hydrophobic forces. Each lamella consists of a pair of closely apposed membranes that are 6 to 8 nm thick. In many regions of a chloroplast, the lamellae form flattened sacs called *thylakoids* (Fig. 1-10). When seen in an electron micrograph, a transverse section of a thylakoid shows a pair of apposed membranes joined at the ends.

The organization of lamellar membranes within chloroplasts varies greatly with environmental conditions during development and among taxonomic groups. The chloroplasts of red algae have a simple internal structure because the lamellae form single large thylakoids separated by appreciable distances from each other. For most higher plant chloroplasts,

the characteristic feature is stacks of about 10 or more thylakoids known as *grana* (Fig. 1-10); grana are typically 0.4 to 0.5 μm in diameter, with 10 to 100 occurring in a single chloroplast. The lamellar extensions between grana are called intergranal or stromal lamellae. The remainder of the chloroplast volume is the *stroma*, which contains the enzymes involved with the fixation of CO_2 into the various products of photosynthesis (Chapter 8, Section 8.4). Cyanobacteria and other photosynthetic bacteria do not contain chloroplasts, but their photosynthetic pigments are also usually located in membranes, often in lamellae immediately underlying the cell membrane. In some photosynthetic bacteria the lamellae can pinch off and form discrete subcellular bodies known as *chromatophores*, which are about 0.1 μm in diameter.

"Microbodies," which are generally divided into two classes, *glyoxysomes* and *peroxisomes*, are numerous in plant cells. For instance, peroxisomes are about three times as prevalent as mitochondria in many leaf cells. Microbodies are usually spherical and 0.4 to 1.5 μm in diameter. In contrast to mitochondria and chloroplasts, they are surrounded by a single membrane. Because both glyoxysomes and peroxisomes carry out only a portion of an overall metabolic pathway, these subcellular compartments depend on reactions in the cytosol and in other organelles. In Chapter 8 (Section 8.4B), we will consider the role of peroxisomes in photorespiration, where O_2 is consumed and CO_2 is released in the light in mesophyll cells. Glyoxysomes contain the enzymes necessary for the breakdown of fatty acids and are prevalent in fatty tissues of germinating seeds. Other membrane-containing structures in plant cells include the endoplasmic reticulum, the Golgi apparatus, and small vesicles associated with them that are involved in transport.

1.4. Membrane Permeability

With this knowledge of the structure of membranes, we turn to a quantitative analysis of the interactions between membranes and diffusing solutes. In Chapter 3 (Section 3.3E,F,G), we will discuss active transport, which is important for moving specific solutes across membranes, thereby overcoming limitations posed by diffusion.

The rate-limiting step for the movement of many molecules into and out of plant cells is diffusion across the plasma membrane. Because of the close packing and the interactions between the component molecules of a membrane (Fig. 1-8), such diffusion is greatly restricted compared with the relatively free movement in an aqueous phase like the cytosol. In other words, a solute molecule has great difficulty in threading its way between the molecules composing the membrane phase. The average diffusion coefficient of a small solute in a membrane is often 10^5 to 10^6 times lower than in the adjacent aqueous solutions. A membrane represents a different type of molecular environment than does an aqueous solution, so the relative solubility of a solute species in the two phases must also be taken into account to describe membrane permeability. As we will show, Fick's first law can be modified to describe the diffusion of molecules across a membrane. Once past the barrier presented by the membrane, the molecules may be distributed throughout the cell relatively rapidly by diffusion as well as by cytoplasmic streaming.

1.4A. Concentration Difference Across a Membrane

The driving force for diffusion of uncharged molecules into or out of plant cells can be regarded as the negative concentration gradient of that species across the plasma membrane. Because the actual concentration gradient of some solute species j is not known in the plasma membrane (or in any other membrane, for that matter), the driving force is usually approximated by the negative of the average gradient of that species across the membrane:

$$-\frac{\partial c_j}{\partial x} \cong -\frac{\Delta c_j}{\Delta x} = -\frac{c_j^{\mathrm{i}} - c_j^{\mathrm{o}}}{\Delta x} = \frac{c_j^{\mathrm{o}} - c_j^{\mathrm{i}}}{\Delta x} \tag{1.7}$$

where c_j^{o} is the concentration of species j outside the cell, c_j^{i} is its concentration in the cytosol, and Δx is the thickness of the plasma membrane that acts as the barrier restricting the penetration of the molecules into the cell (Fig. 1-11). The concentrations c_j^{o} and c_j^{i} in Equation 1.7 can also represent values in the phases separated by any other membrane, such as the tonoplast. If c_j^{i} is less than c_j^{o} as we move in the positive x-direction (Fig. 1-11), $\partial c_j/\partial x$ is negative, so $-\partial c_j/\partial x$ is positive; the net flux density then occurs in the positive x-direction (see Eq. 1.1; $J_j = -D_j \partial c_j/\partial x$). Alternatively, if we designate a net flow into a cell as positive, which is the usual convention, then the minus sign in $-\partial c_j/\partial x$ is incorporated into the concentration difference $(c_j^{\mathrm{o}} - c_j^{\mathrm{i}})$ used to describe the flux density, namely, $J_j = D_j(c_j^{\mathrm{o}} - c_j^{\mathrm{i}})/\Delta x$.

The magnitude of what may be called the "effective" concentration difference across a membrane is made somewhat uncertain by the existence of unstirred boundary layers (Fig. 1-11). Boundary layers, in which turbulent

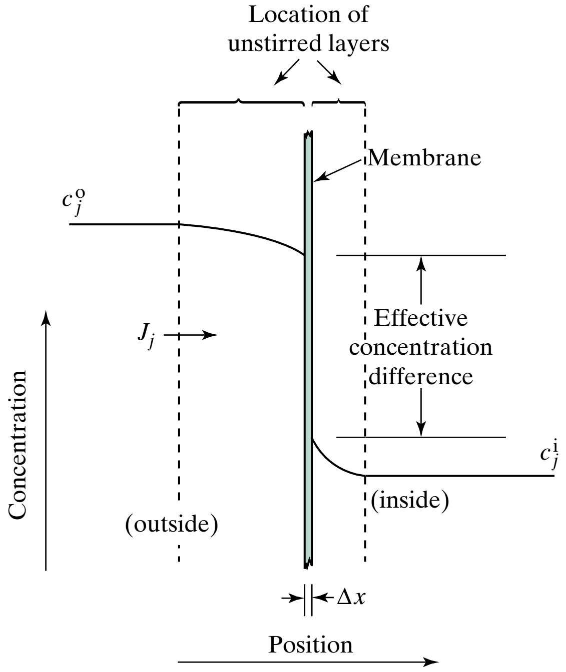


Figure 1-11. The effect of unstirred layers (see dashed lines) on the concentration of species j near a membrane across which the solute is diffusing.

mixing is absent, occur at the interface between any fluid (liquid or gas) and a solid, such as the air boundary layers on either side of a leaf (discussed in Chapter 7) or liquid layers next to a membrane. A substance moves across these relatively unstirred layers next to the membrane or other solid by diffusion, indicating that a concentration gradient must also exist in the boundary layers (Fig. 1-11). When mixing in the solutions adjacent to a membrane is increased—for example, by the turbulence resulting from cytoplasmic streaming on the inside of the cell or by rapid stirring on the outside—the unstirred layers are reduced in thickness. However, they are not eliminated. Under actual experimental conditions with vigorous stirring, the external unstirred layer may be 10 to 50 μm thick, which is much thicker than the membrane. Because of cytoplasmic streaming in plant cells, the internal unstirred layer is generally thinner than the external one (Fig. 1-11). Although diffusion is more rapid in aqueous solutions than in membranes, an unstirred layer can represent an appreciable distance for molecules to diffuse across. In some cases, diffusion through the unstirred layers can become the rate-limiting step for the entry into cells or organelles of those molecules that rapidly penetrate the membrane. For convenience, the difference in concentration across a membrane will be represented by $c_j^{\mathrm{o}} - c_j^{\mathrm{i}}$, but this is an overestimate of the effective concentration difference across the membrane, as is indicated in Figure 1-11.

The difference in concentration determining the diffusion of molecules across a membrane is the concentration just inside one side of the membrane minus that just within the other side. In Equation 1.7 the concentrations are those in the aqueous phases on either side of the membrane. Because membranes are quite different as solvents compared with aqueous solutions, the concentrations of a solute just inside the membrane can differ substantially from those just outside in the aqueous solutions. Therefore, a correction factor must be applied to Equation 1.7 to give the actual concentration difference existing in the membrane. This factor is the *partition coefficient,* K_j, which is defined as the ratio of the concentration of a solute in the material of the membrane to that in equilibrium outside in the aqueous phase (c_j^{o} or c_j^{i}), and so K_j is dimensionless.

As a guide to the situation in a membrane, the partition coefficient is usually determined by measuring the ratio of the equilibrium concentration of some solute in a lipid phase such as olive oil, which mimics the membrane lipids, to the concentration in an adjacent and immiscible aqueous phase, which mimics the solutions on either side of the membrane. This rather simple convention for partition coefficients is based on the high lipid content of membranes and the numerous experimental results showing that the relative ease of penetration of a membrane depends mainly on the lipid solubility of the molecules. Partition coefficients vary widely, most being between 10^{-6} and 10 (see Wright and Diamond, 1969, in which the effect on K_j of various lipids as solvents is described). For example, an inorganic ion might have a K_j near 10^{-5} for membranes, and a nonpolar hydrophobic substance might have a value near 1. K_j is assumed to be the same coming from either side of the membrane, so $K_j(c_j^{\mathrm{o}} - c_j^{\mathrm{i}})$ is used for the concentration difference leading to diffusion across a membrane, where K_j is characteristic of solute species *j*.

1.4B. Permeability Coefficient

We will next use Fick's first law ($J_j = -D_j\partial c_j/\partial x$; Eq. 1.1) to obtain an expression for describing the movement of a substance across a membrane. The negative concentration gradient will be replaced by $(c_j^{\mathrm{o}} - c_j^{\mathrm{i}})/\Delta x$ (Eq. 1.7). Because D_j is the diffusion coefficient of solute species j within the membrane, we must use the actual concentration drop within the membrane, $K_j(c_j^{\mathrm{o}} - c_j^{\mathrm{i}})$. These various considerations lead us to the following expression describing the diffusion of species j across a membrane or other barrier:

$$\begin{aligned} J_j &= D_j \frac{K_j(c_j^{\mathrm{o}} - c_j^{\mathrm{i}})}{\Delta x} \\ &= P_j(c_j^{\mathrm{o}} - c_j^{\mathrm{i}}) \end{aligned} \tag{1.8}$$

where P_j is called the *permeability coefficient* of species j.

Because permeability coefficients have so many applications in physiology, we will define P_j explicitly:

$$P_j = \frac{D_j K_j}{\Delta x} \tag{1.9}$$

which follows directly from Equation 1.8. The permeability coefficient conveniently replaces three quantities that describe the diffusion of some solute across a membrane or other barrier. The partition coefficients are usually determined by using a lipid phase such as olive oil or ether, not the actual lipids occurring in membranes, and thus K_j will have some uncertainty. Also, measurements of Δx and especially D_j for membranes tend to be rather indirect. On the other hand, P_j is a single, readily measured quantity characterizing the diffusion of some solute across a membrane or other barrier. The units of P_j are length per time (e.g., m s^{-1}).

A typical permeability coefficient for a small nonelectrolyte or uncharged molecule (e.g., isopropanol or phenol) is 10^{-6} m s^{-1} for a plasma membrane, whereas P_j for a small ion (e.g., K^+ or Na^+) is about 10^{-9} m s^{-1}. The lower permeability coefficients for charged particles, indicating a lesser ability to penetrate the plasma membrane, are mainly due to the much lower partition coefficients of these solutes compared with nonelectrolytes (recall that $P_j = D_jK_j/\Delta x$; Eq. 1.9). In other words, because of its charge, an electrolyte tends to be much less soluble in a membrane than is a neutral molecule, so the effective concentration difference driving the charged species across the membrane is generally much smaller for given concentrations in the aqueous phases on either side of the barrier. Because of its small size, water can rapidly enter or leave cells and can have a permeability coefficient of about 10^{-4} m s^{-1} for certain Characean algae, although lower values can occur for cells of flowering plants. (Actually, P_{water} is difficult to measure because of the relative importance of the unstirred layers.) Although adequate measurements on plant membranes have not been made for O_2 and CO_2, their P_j's for the plasma membrane are probably quite high. For instance, O_2, which is lipophilic and has a high partition coefficient of 4.4, has a very high permeability coefficient of about 0.3 m s^{-1} for erythrocyte membranes at 25°C (Fischkoff and Vanderkooi, 1975).

1.4C. Diffusion and Cellular Concentration

Instead of calculating the flux density of some species diffusing into a cell—the amount entering per unit area per unit time—we often focus on the total amount of that species diffusing in over a certain time interval. Let s_j be the amount of solute species j inside the cell, where s_j can be expressed in moles. If that substance is not involved in any other reaction, ds_j/dt represents the rate of entry of species j into the cell. The flux density J_j is the rate of entry of the substance per unit area or $(1/A)$ (ds_j/dt), where A is the area of the cellular membrane across which the substance is diffusing. Using this expression for J_j, we can re-express Equation 1.8 as follows:

$$ds_j/dt = J_jA = P_jA(c_j^{\rm o} - c_j^{\rm i}) \tag{1.10}$$

When the external concentration of species j ($c_j^{\rm o}$) is greater than the internal one ($c_j^{\rm i}$), species j will enter the cell and ds_j/dt is positive, as Equation 1.10 indicates.

A question that often arises in cell physiology is how the internal concentration of a penetrating solute changes with time. For example, how long does it take for the internal concentration of an initially absent species to build up to 50% of the external concentration? To solve the general case, we must first express s_j in Equation 1.10 in a suitable fashion and then integrate. It is useful to introduce the approximation—particularly appropriate to plant cells—that the cell volume does not change during the time interval of interest. In other words, because of the rigid cell wall, we will assume that the plant cell has a nearly constant volume (V) during the entry or the exit of the solute being considered.

The average internal concentration of species j ($c_j^{\rm i}$) is equal to the amount of that particular solute inside the cell (s_j) divided by the cellular volume (V), or s_j/V. Therefore, s_j can be replaced by $Vc_j^{\rm i}$; ds_j/dt in Equation 1.10 thus equals $Vdc_j^{\rm i}/dt$ if the cell volume does not change with time. We also assume that species j is not produced or consumed by any reaction within the cell, so the diffusion of species j into or out of the cell is the only process affecting $c_j^{\rm i}$. For simplicity, we are treating the concentration of species j as if it were uniform within the cell. (In a more complex case we might need a relation of the form of Eq. 1.10 for each membrane-surrounded compartment.) Moreover, we are presupposing either mechanical mixing or rapid diffusion inside the cell, so the drop in concentration ($c_j^{\rm o} - c_j^{\rm i}$) occurs essentially only across the membrane. Finally, let us assume that P_j is independent of concentration, a condition that is often satisfactorily met over a limited range of concentration. Upon replacement of ds_j/dt by $Vdc_j^{\rm i}/dt$, rearrangement to separate variables, and the insertion of integral signs, Equation 1.10 becomes

$$\int_{c_j^{\rm i}(0)}^{c_j^{\rm i}(t)} \frac{dc_j^{\rm i}}{c_j^{\rm o} - c_j^{\rm i}} = \frac{P_jA}{V}\int_0^t dt = \frac{P_jA}{V}t \tag{1.11}$$

where $c_j^{\rm i}(0)$ is the initial internal concentration of species j, that is, when $t = 0$, and $c_j^{\rm i}(t)$ is the concentration at a later time t.

The volume outside certain unicellular algae and other membrane-surrounded entities can be large compared with V so that the external

concentration (c_j^{o}) does not change appreciably. Such an approximation can also be appropriate for experiments of short duration or when special arrangements are made to maintain c_j^{o} at some fixed value. For those cases in which c_j^{o} is constant, the left-hand side of Equation 1.11 can be integrated to give the following expression [note that $\int dx/(a-x) = -\int d(a-x)/(a-x) = -\ln(a-x) + b$, where ln is the natural logarithm to the base e, and $-\ln[c_j^{\mathrm{o}} - c_j^{\mathrm{i}}(t)] + \ln[c_j^{\mathrm{o}} - c_j^{\mathrm{i}}(0)] = \ln[c_j^{\mathrm{o}} - c_j^{\mathrm{i}}(0)]/[c_j^{\mathrm{o}} - c_j^{\mathrm{i}}(t)]$; see Appendix III for certain logarithmic identities]:

$$\frac{P_j A t}{V} = \ln \frac{c_j^{\mathrm{o}} - c_j^{\mathrm{i}}(0)}{c_j^{\mathrm{o}} - c_j^{\mathrm{i}}(t)} \tag{1.12}$$

Starting with a known c_j^{o} outside a cell and determining the internal concentration both initially (i.e., for $t = 0$) and at some subsequent time t, we can calculate P_j from Equation 1.12 if A/V is known. Even when A/V is not known, the relative permeability coefficients for two substances can be determined from the time dependencies of the respective c_j^{i}'s. The previous derivation can be extended to the case in which c_j^{o} is zero. In that case, P_jAt/V equals $\ln[c_j^{\mathrm{i}}(0)/c_j^{\mathrm{i}}(t)]$, an expression that can be used to describe the diffusion of a photosynthetic product out of a chloroplast or some substance from a cell into a large external solution initially devoid of that solute. Such studies can be facilitated by using radioactive tracers, which usually are initially present only in one region.

When diffusion occurs from all directions across a membrane surrounding a cell (or an organelle), the time to reach a given internal concentration is directly proportional to the dimensions of the cell (Fig. 1-12). For convenience in illustrating this, let us consider a spherical cell of radius r. The volume V then equals $(4/3)\pi r^3$ and the surface area A is $4\pi r^2$ (see Appendix III), so V/A is $r/3$.. Equation 1.12 then becomes

$$t^{\mathrm{sphere}} = \frac{r}{3P_j} \ln \frac{c_j^{\mathrm{o}} - c_j^{\mathrm{i}}(0)}{c_j^{\mathrm{o}} - c_j^{\mathrm{i}}(t)} \tag{1.13}$$

For the same P_j, a particular concentration inside a small cell is reached sooner than inside a large cell. When diffusion across the membrane into a spherical cell occurs from all directions, the time to reach a particular concentration inside is linearly proportional to the radius (assuming a uniform c_j^{i}; Fig. 1-12). This contrasts with the time it takes for molecules in a planar front to diffuse in one direction, which is proportional to the square of the distance traveled ($x_{1/e}^2 = 4D_jt_{1/e}$; Eq. 1.6).

Using Equation 1.12 or 1.13, we can calculate the time required for a substance initially absent from a cell [$c_j^{\mathrm{i}}(0) = 0$] to achieve an internal concentration equal to half of the external concentration [$c_j^{\mathrm{i}}(t) = \frac{1}{2}c_j^{\mathrm{o}}$]. These conditions mean that

$$\frac{c_j^{\mathrm{o}} - c_j^{\mathrm{i}}(0)}{c_j^{\mathrm{o}} - c_j^{\mathrm{i}}(t)} = \frac{c_j^{\mathrm{o}} - 0}{c_j^{\mathrm{o}} - \frac{1}{2}c_j^{\mathrm{o}}} = \frac{c_j^{\mathrm{o}}}{\frac{1}{2}c_j^{\mathrm{o}}} = 2$$

Substituting this into Equation 1.13 indicates that the time needed is $(r/3)P_j$ ln 2, where ln 2 equals 0.693. Similarly, for an initially absent substance to reach 90% of the external concentration, the concentration ratio in

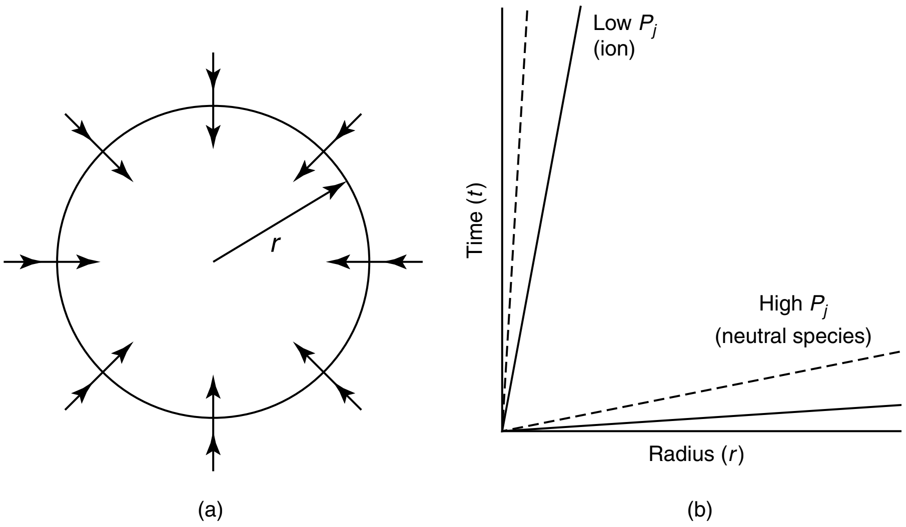


Figure 1-12. Solute diffusing into a spherical cell from all directions (a) and the resulting linear relationships between cell radius and the time necessary for an initially absent substance to reach half of the external concentration (solid lines) or 90% of the external concentration (dashed lines) for a readily penetrating neutral species and a small ion (b).

Equation 1.12 or 1.13 is

$$\frac{c_j^o - 0}{c_j^o - 0.9c_j^o} = \frac{c_j^o}{0.1c_j^o} = 10$$

so the time is (ln 10)/(ln 2) or 3.3 times longer than to reach half of the external concentration (Fig. 1-12). In this regard, an infinite amount of time is theoretically required for the internal concentration of an initially absent substance to reach the external concentration $[(c_j^o - 0)/(c_j^o - c_j^o) = c_j^o/0 = \infty]$.

For a spherical cell 25 μm in radius, which is a reasonable dimension for spongy mesophyll cells in many leaves (see Fig. 1-2), the time for an initially absent neutral molecule with a P_j of 1×10^{-6} m s^{-1} to reach half of the external concentration is

$$t_{\frac{1}{2}}^{\text{sphere}} = \frac{(25 \times 10^{-6}\text{ m})}{(3)(1 \times 10^{-6}\text{ m s}^{-1})}(0.693) = 6\text{ s}$$

and the time is 10^3 times longer (about 2 hours) for a charged molecule with a P_j of 1×10^{-9} m s^{-1}. Hence, the plasma membrane is an excellent barrier for ions and other charged molecules, markedly hindering their entry into or exit from a cell (Fig. 1-12). On the other hand, small neutral molecules can fairly readily diffuse in and out of plant cells, depending to a large extent on their relative lipid solubility.

1.5. Cell Walls

Cell walls play many roles in plants. Their rigidity helps determine the size and the shape of a cell and ultimately the morphology of a plant. This supportive role is performed in conjunction with the internal

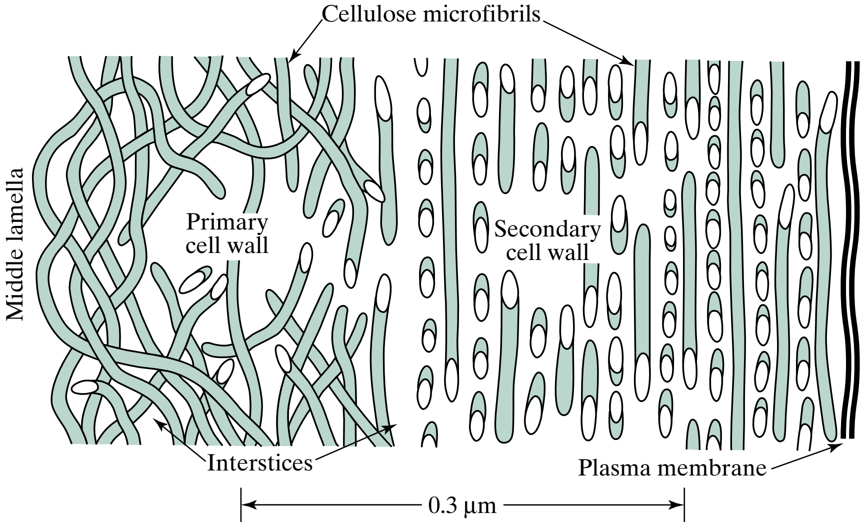


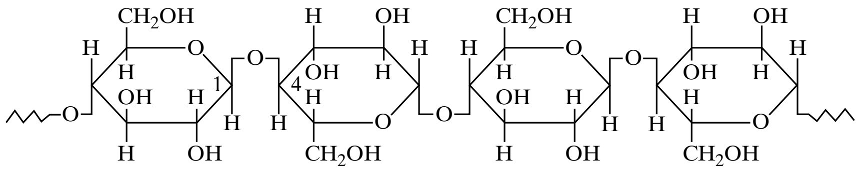
Figure 1-13. Hypothetical thin section through a cell wall, indicating the cellulose microfibrils in the primary and secondary cell walls. The interstices are filled with noncellulosic material, including an appreciable amount of water, the solvent for solute diffusion across the cell wall.

hydrostatic pressure, which causes a distension of the cell walls. The cell wall is also intrinsically involved in many aspects of the ion and the water relations of plant cells. Because it surrounds the plasma membrane of each cell, fluxes of water and solutes into or out of a plant cell protoplast must cross the cell wall, usually by diffusion. The cell wall generally has a large negative charge, so it can interact differently with positively charged cations than with negatively charged anions. Water evaporating from a plant during transpiration comes directly from cell walls (considered in Chapters 2 and 8). The space surrounded by the cell wall in certain specialized cells can act as a channel through which solutions move. In the xylem, for example, the conducting cells have lost their protoplasts, with the resulting pathway for the conduction of solutions in the xylem consisting essentially of hollow pipes, or conduits, made exclusively of cell walls (Fig. 1-3).

Cell walls vary from about 0.1 to 10 μm in thickness, and they are generally divided into three regions: primary cell wall, secondary cell wall, and middle lamella (Fig. 1-13). The *primary cell wall* surrounds dividing cells as well as elongating cells during the period of cell enlargement. The cell wall often becomes thickened by the elaboration of a *secondary cell wall* inside the primary one (Fig. 1-13), which makes the cell mechanically much less flexible. Hence, cells whose walls have undergone secondary thickening, such as xylem vessel members, are generally incapable of subsequent elongation. The cell wall also includes an amorphous region between adjacent cells called the *middle lamella.* Although it contains some cellulose, the middle lamella can be composed mainly of the calcium salts of pectic acids, which causes the cells to adhere to each other.

1.5A. Chemistry and Morphology

Cellulose [$(C_6H_{10}O_5)_n$] is the most abundant organic compound in living organisms. It is the characteristic substance of a plant cell wall, constituting 30 to 60% of the cell wall organic material. Cellulose is a polysaccharide consisting of D-glucose units linked by $\beta(1,4)$ glycosidic bonds, leading to a linear (unbranched) configuration:



The polymer is about 0.8 nm in its maximum width and 0.33 nm^2 in cross-sectional area, and can contain about 10,000 glucose residues with their rings in the same plane. In the cell wall these polymers are organized into *microfibrils* that can be 5 nm by 9 nm in cross section. These microfibrils apparently consist of an inner core of about 50 parallel chains of cellulose arranged in a crystalline array surrounded by a similar number of cellulose and other polymers in a paracrystalline array. Microfibrils are the basic unit of the cell wall and are readily observed in electron micrographs. Although great variation exists, they tend to be interwoven in the primary cell wall and parallel to each other in the secondary cell wall (Fig. 1-13).

Interstices between the cellulose microfibrils are usually 5 to 30 nm across. The interstices contain a matrix of amorphous components occupying a larger volume of the cell wall than do the microfibrils themselves. In fact, by weight, the main constituent of the cell wall is actually water, some consequences of which we will consider here and in Chapter 2.

The cell wall matrix contains noncellulosic polysaccharides such as pectin, lignins (secondary cell wall only), a small amount of protein, bound and free water, appreciable calcium, other cations, and sometimes silicates. Lignins are complex polymers based on phenylpropanoid subunits (a 6-carbon ring, with an attached 3-carbon chain as in phenylalanine, a lignin precursor) plus certain other residues. Lignins constitute the second most abundant class of organic molecules in living organisms and are about half as prevalent as cellulose. They are quite resistant to enzymatic degradation, so lignins are important in peat and coal formation. They also make the cell wall more rigid. Because a plant cannot break down the lignin polymers, cells are unable to expand after extensive lignification of their cell walls, as occurs in the secondary cell walls of xylem vessel members. Pectin consists primarily of 1,4-linked α-D-galacturonic acid residues, the carboxyl groups of which are normally dissociated and have a negative charge (galacturonic acid differs from galactose by having –COOH instead of –CH_2OH in the 6-carbon position). The negative charge of the dissociated carboxyl groups leads to the tremendous cation-binding capacity of cell walls. In particular, much of the divalent cation calcium (Ca^{2+}) is bound, which may help link the various polymers together. Polymers based on 1,4-linked

β-D-xylopyranose units (xylans), as well as on many other residues, can also be extracted from cell walls. They are loosely referred to as hemicelluloses (e.g., xylans, mannans, galactans, and glucans). In general, hemicelluloses tend to have lower molecular weights (in the ten thousands) than pectin (about 5–10 times higher) or cellulose (about 50 times higher). The presence of negatively charged pectins hinders the entry of anions into plant cells. However, as we will consider next, ions and other solutes generally pass through the cell wall much more easily than through the plasma membrane.

1.5B. Diffusion Across Cell Walls

How can we calculate the ease with which molecules diffuse across a cell wall? A good place to start is Equation 1.9, which indicates that the permeability coefficient of species j equals $D_jK_j/\Delta x$. We must first consider what we mean by D_j and K_j in a cell wall. The diffusion of solutes across a cell wall occurs mainly in the water located in the numerous interstices, which are often about 10 nm across. Thus, the movement from the external solution up to the plasma membrane is in aqueous channels through the cell wall. By the definition of a partition coefficient (solubility in barrier/solubility in water), we recognize that K_j is 1 for the water-filled interstices of the cell wall, very low for the solid phases (cellulose, lignin, and the other polymers present in the wall), and at some intermediate value for the cell wall as a whole. Because diffusion takes place primarily in the cell wall water, we will let K_j be 1. If we use this convenient definition for K_j in cell walls, we must define D_j on the basis of the whole cell wall and not on the much smaller area presented by the interstices. The value of D_j in the water of the interstices is very similar to that in a free solution, whereas its value averaged over the whole cell wall is considerably less because the interstices are not straight channels through the cell wall and because they do not occupy the entire cell wall volume. Such effective diffusion coefficients of small solutes are at least three times lower when averaged over the cell wall than are the D_j's of the same species in an extended aqueous solution.

Next, we calculate the permeability coefficient for a solute that has a diffusion coefficient of $2 \times 10^{-10}\ \mathrm{m^2\ s^{-1}}$ for a cell wall. We will assume a representative value of 1 μm for the cell wall thickness. Using Equation 1.9 ($P_j = D_jK_j/\Delta x$), we can thus estimate that P_j for the cell wall is

$$P_j^{\mathrm{cw}} = \frac{(2 \times 10^{-10}\ \mathrm{m^2\ s^{-1}})(1)}{(1 \times 10^{-6}\ \mathrm{m})} = 2 \times 10^{-4}\ \mathrm{m\ s^{-1}}$$

Most of the permeability coefficients for small solutes crossing the plasma membrane range from 10^{-10} to $10^{-6}\ \mathrm{m\ s^{-1}}$. Hence, a cell wall generally has a higher permeability coefficient than does a membrane, which means that the cell wall is usually more permeable for small solutes than is the plasma membrane. For comparison, let us consider a permeability coefficient appropriate for an unstirred liquid layer adjacent to a cell wall or membrane. Specifically, D_j for a small solute may be $1 \times 10^{-9}\ \mathrm{m^2\ s^{-1}}$ in water, K_j is 1 in the aqueous solution, and let us assume that Δx is 30 μm for the unstirred

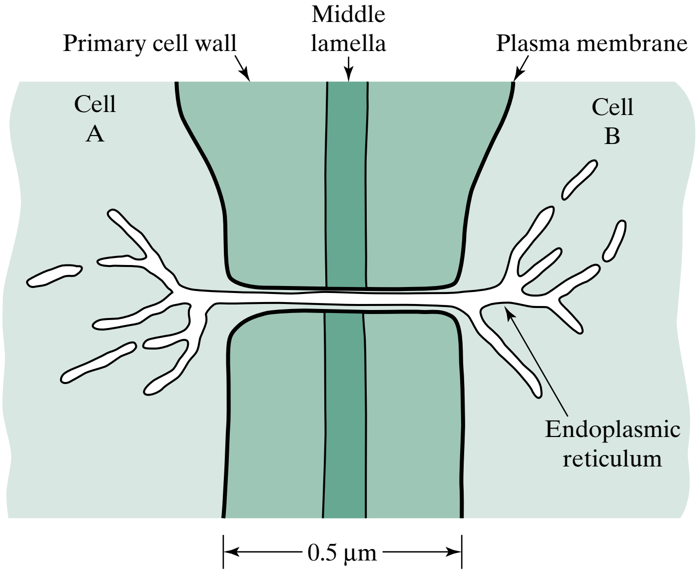


Figure 1-14. Longitudinal section through a simple (unbranched) plasmodesma, showing that the primary cell walls are locally thinner (which is usually the case) and that the plasma membranes of the two adjacent cells are continuous.

boundary layer. In such a case we have

$$P_j^{\mathrm{bl}} = \frac{(1 \times 10^{-9}\ \mathrm{m^2\ s^{-1}})(1)}{(30 \times 10^{-6}\ \mathrm{m})} = 3 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{m\ s^{-1}}$$

which is less than the value for a cell wall.

Molecules diffuse less readily across a given distance in a plasma membrane than in a cell wall or an adjacent unstirred water layer. For the previous numerical values, D_jK_j is $1 \times 10^{-9}\ \mathrm{m^2\ s^{-1}}$ in the aqueous solution and $2 \times 10^{-10}\ \mathrm{m^2\ s^{-1}}$ in the cell wall, but for a plasma membrane about 7 nm thick, D_jK_j is only 10^{-18} to $10^{-14}\ \mathrm{m^2\ s^{-1}}$. Membranes do indeed provide very effective barriers to the diffusion of solutes.

Secondary cell walls are often interrupted by localized pits. A pit in the wall of a given cell usually occurs opposite a complementary pit in an adjacent cell, so the cytoplasm of two adjacent cells is brought into close proximity at such a pit pair. The local absence of extensive cell wall substance facilitates the diffusion of molecules from one cell into the other. An easier way for molecules to move between plant cells is by means of the *plasmodesmata* (singular: *plasmodesma*). These are fine, membrane-flanked channels containing cytoplasmic threads that pass from a protoplast, through a pore in the cell wall, directly into the protoplast of a second cell (Fig. 1-14). The pores usually occur in locally thin regions of the primary cell wall, referred to as primary pit-fields, which can contain many plasmodesmata. Although plasmadesmata are usually absent in cells with extensive secondary cell walls, if a secondary cell wall is deposited, openings in that wall occur in the regions of the primary pit-fields. Plasmodesmata can be 50 nm in diameter (range, 20–200 nm) and

typically have a frequency of 2 to 10 per square micrometer of cell surface. They usually occupy about 0.1 to 0.5% of the surface area of a cell. The continuum of communicating cytoplasm created by such intercellular connections is commonly referred to as the *symplasm (symplast* is defined as the continuum of protoplasts together with the plasmodesmata that interconnect them, and hence means the same as symplasm; compare *apoplast).* The plasmodesmata are not simple aqueous channels between cells because they contain endoplasmic reticulum that is continuous from one cell to the adjacent cell (Fig. 1-14). The plasmodesmata provide a particularly effective pathway for movement of solutes with molecular masses often up to about 900 Da between adjacent cells because permeability barriers in the form of either cell walls or membranes are avoided. Actually, the size exclusion limit for plasmodesmata varies considerably among species and commonly decreases as tissues mature but increases during stress. Interestingly, guard cells (Fig. 1-2) have no plasmodesmata, so entry and exit of solutes and water can be specifically controlled (important for regulating stomatal opening and closing; Chapter 8, Section 8.1B).

Because solute movement from cell to cell through the symplasm is important physiologically, let us make a rather oversimplified calculation so that we can compare it with the concomitant diffusion across the plasma membrane. We will use Fick's first law presented in Equation 1.8, namely, $J_j = D_jK_j\Delta c_j/\Delta x = P_j\Delta c_j$. Let us consider two adjacent cells in which the glucose concentration differs by 1 mol m^{-3} (1 mM). Glucose is rather insoluble in membrane lipids and might have a permeability coefficient of about 1×10^{-9} m s^{-1} for a plasma membrane. For movement from cell to cell across the two plasma membranes in series, the effective P_j is 0.5×10^{-9} m s^{-1} (inclusion of the cell wall as another series barrier for diffusion only slightly reduces the effective P_j in this case; see Problem 1.4 for handling the permeability coefficient of barriers in series). Thus, the flux density of glucose across the plasma membranes toward the cell with the lower concentration is

$$J_{\text{glucose}}^{\text{plasma membrane}} = \left(0.5 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{m s}^{-1}\right)\left(1\ \text{mol m}^{-3}\right) = 5 \times 10^{-10}\ \text{mol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1}$$

Let us next consider the flux for the symplasm. In the aqueous part of the plasmodesmata, D_{glucose} should be similar to its value in water, 0.7×10^{-9} m^2 s^{-1} (Table 1-1), and K_{glucose} is 1. We will let the plasmodesmata be 0.5 μm long. The flux density in the pores thus is

$$J_{\text{glucose}}^{\text{pores}} = \frac{(0.7 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{m}^2\ \text{s}^{-1})(1)}{(0.5 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m})}\left(1\ \text{mol m}^{-3}\right) = 1.4 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{mol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1}$$

If the aqueous channels or pores occupy 10% of the area of the plasmodesmata, which in turn occupy 0.2% of the surface area of the cells, then the rate of glucose diffusion through the plasmodesmata per unit area of the cells is

$$J_{\text{glucose}}^{\text{plasmodesmata}} = (0.1)(0.002)J_{\text{glucose}}^{\text{pores}} = 3 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{mol m}^2\ \text{s}^{-1}$$

This is 600-fold greater than is the simultaneously occurring diffusion across the plasma membranes just calculated, $J_{\text{glucose}}^{\text{plasma membrane}}$.

The permeability coefficients of the plasma membranes for phosphorylated (charged) sugars like ribose-5-phosphate or ribulose-1,5-bisphosphate are less than that for glucose, and the diffusion coefficients in the plasmodesmata are about the same as for glucose. Thus the discrepancy between flux densities of charged species through the plasmodesmata and those across the plasma membranes is even greater than the difference calculated here for glucose. The joining of cytoplasms into a symplasm indeed facilitates the diffusion of solutes from one cell to another.

1.5C. Stress–Strain Relations of Cell Walls

Cell walls of mature plant cells are generally quite resistant to mechanical stretching, especially when appreciable thickening of the secondary cell walls occurs. Nevertheless, cell walls will stretch when a *stress* is applied, where stress equals a force per unit area. Stress can be caused by an external force, such as the pulling on cotton fibers in a shirt, or an internal force, such as that caused by the hydrostatic pressure in a cell. Such applied forces lead to deformation of cell walls, which is quantified as a strain. *Strain* is the length of the stressed material (l) minus the initial unstressed length (l_0) divided by the unstressed length; that is, strain is the fractional change in length ($\Delta l/l_0$) resulting when stresses occur in a material.

Reversible elastic properties are described by a measure of elasticity known as *Young's modulus*, which is the ratio of applied stress (force per unit area) to the resulting strain (fractional change in length):

$$\text{Young's modulus} = \frac{\text{stress}}{\text{strain}} = \frac{\text{force/area}}{\Delta l/l_0} \tag{1.14}$$

Because $\Delta l/l_0$ is dimensionless, Young's modulus has the dimensions of force per unit area, or pressure. A high value of this modulus of elasticity means that a large stress must be applied to produce an appreciable strain or stretching, meaning that the material is quite rigid. For instance, Young's modulus for dry cotton fibers, which are nearly pure cellulose, is quite large—about 10^{10} N m^{-2}, or 10,000 MPa, which is 5% of that for steel (Preston, 1974).[8] Because of both the complicated three-dimensional array of microfibrils in the cell wall and the presence of many other components besides cellulose, Young's modulus for a cell wall is considerably less than for pure cellulose. For example, the modulus of elasticity for the cell wall of *Nitella* is about 700 MPa (Kamiya et al., 1963). We will use this value when we indicate the fractional stretching that can occur for plant cells.

The hydrostatic (turgor) pressure (force per unit area in a liquid), P, acts uniformly in all directions in a cell. This internal pressure pushes against the

8. The newton, abbreviated N, and the pascal, abbreviated Pa, are the SI units for force and pressure, respectively (1 N m^{-2} = 1 Pa). Pressures in plant studies have been expressed in bars, where 1 bar = 10 dynes cm^{-2}, 0.987 atmosphere, or 0.1 MPa. See Appendix II for further conversion factors for pressure.

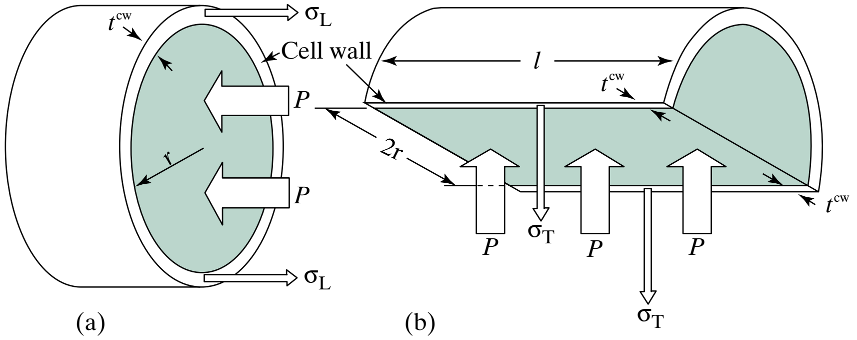


Figure 1-15. Schematic sections of a hypothetical cylindrical cell resembling the internodal cells of *Nitella* or *Chara*, illustrating various dimensions, the hydrostatic pressure, and the stresses existing in the cell wall: (a) section perpendicular to cylinder axis, and (b) section through cylinder axis. The colored region indicates an aqueous solution where the hydrostatic pressure P leads to the longitudinal stress σ_L, which acts in an annulus of area approximately equal to $2\pi r \times t^{cw}$, and the tangential stress σ_T, which acts along the two sides each of area $l \times t^{cw}$.

One way to calculate the stresses is to imagine that the cellular contents are removed, leaving only the cell wall, which has a uniform hydrostatic pressure acting perpendicular to its inside surface. The projection of this P over the appropriate area gives the force acting in a certain direction, and the reaction to this force is an equal force in the opposite direction in the cell wall. By dividing the force in the cell wall by the area over which it occurs, we can determine the cell wall stress.

plasma membrane, which itself is closely appressed to the cell wall. This causes the cell to expand and also leads to tensions (stresses) in the cell wall. The magnitude of these stresses varies with the physiological state of the plant as well as with direction, an aspect that we will consider next.

A cylinder, which closely approximates the shape of the large internodal cells of *Chara* or *Nitella* (Fig. 3-13), is a useful geometrical model for evaluating the various cell wall stresses. We will let the radius of the cylinder be r (Fig. 1-15). The force on an end wall is the pressure, P, times the area of the end wall, πr^2, so it equals $(P)(\pi r^2)$. This force is counteracted by an equal and opposite force arising from the *longitudinal stress,* σ_L, that occurs in the cell wall. The area over which σ_L acts is shown by the cut portion of the cell wall in Figure 1-15a. The longitudinal stress occurs in an annulus of circumference $2\pi r$ (approximately) and a width equal to the thickness of the cell wall, t^{cw}, so σ_L acts over an area $(2\pi r)(t^{cw})$. The longitudinal force in the cell wall is thus $(\sigma_L)(2\pi r t^{cw})$. This force is an equal and opposite reaction to $P\pi r^2$, so $\sigma_L 2\pi r t^{cw}$ equals $P\pi r^2$, or

$$\sigma_L = \frac{rP}{2t^{cw}} \tag{1.15}$$

The longitudinal stress acts parallel to the axis of the cylinder and resists the lengthwise deformation of the cell.

A *tangential stress,* σ_T, also exists in the cell wall in response to the internal pressure; it limits the radial expansion of the cell. To determine the magnitude of this stress, we will consider a cell split in half along its axis (Fig. 1-15b). The split part of the cell has an area of $2rl$ in the plane of the cut; this area is acted on by the pressure P, leading to a force of (P)

($2rl$). This force is resisted by the tangential stress in the cell wall. As shown in Figure 1-15b, σ_T acts along two cell wall surfaces, each of width t^{cw} and length l. The total tangential force in the cut part of the cell wall is thus the area ($2t^{cw}l$) times the tangential stress. Equating this force ($\sigma_T 2t^{cw}l$) to that due to the internal pressure in the cell ($P2rl$), we obtain the following relationship for the tangential stress:

$$\sigma_T = \frac{rP}{t^{cw}} \qquad (1.16)$$

The tangential stress in the cell wall given by Equation 1.16 is twice as large as the longitudinal stress given by Equation 1.15. This simple cylindrical model thus illustrates that the stresses in a cell wall can vary with direction. Young's modulus also varies with direction, reflecting the anisotropic orientation of the cellulose microfibrils in the cell wall.

To estimate the magnitudes of the stresses and the resulting strains in the cell wall, let us consider a *Nitella* or *Chara* cell that is 1 mm in diameter with a cell wall that is 5 μm thick. In this case, r/t^{cw} is

$$\frac{r}{t^{cw}} = \frac{(0.5 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m})}{(0.5 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m})} = 100$$

A reasonable value for P is 0.5 MPa. Using Equation 1.15, we can calculate the longitudinal stress in the cell wall of such a cell:

$$\sigma_L = \frac{(100)(0.5\ \text{MPa})}{(2)} = 25\ \text{MPa}$$

which is an appreciable tension. By Equation 1.16, the tangential stress is twice as great, or 50 MPa. Ignoring changes in the radial direction, we can calculate the strain produced by the longitudinal stress using the definition of Young's modulus (Eq. 1.14) and its value in the longitudinal direction for the cell wall of *Nitella*, 700 MPa. From Equation 1.14, the fractional change in length is then

$$\frac{\Delta l}{l_0} = \frac{(25\ \text{MPa})}{(700\ \text{MPa})} = 0.036$$

that is, about 4%. (If changes in the radial direction were included, the length change would be about 3% in the present case.) Hence, even with an internal hydrostatic pressure of 0.5 MPa, the cell wall (and consequently the whole cell) is not extended very much. The cell wall is indeed rigid and therefore well suited both for delimiting individual cells and for contributing to the structural support of a plant.

1.5D. Elastic Modulus, Viscoelasticity

Elastic properties of plant cell walls must be considered when analyzing the cell expansion accompanying growth and other features of water movement. For this, we are interested in what volume change (ΔV) is caused by a

particular pressure change (ΔP); this relation can be quantified using the *volumetric elastic modulus* (ε):

$$\varepsilon = \frac{\Delta P}{\Delta V/V} \tag{1.17}$$

Equation 1.17 indicates that $\Delta V/V$ equals $\Delta P/\varepsilon$, so cells with a higher ε will have a smaller fractional change in volume for a particular ΔP; that is, they are more rigid. Values of ε usually range from 1 to 50 MPa, as cells change in volume by 0.2 to 10% for each 0.1 MPa (approximately 1 atm) change in internal hydrostatic pressure. For a typical ε of 10 MPa, a 1% increase in volume due to water influx is accompanied by a 1% decrease in cellular solute concentration and a 0.1 MPa increase in internal hydrostatic pressure (Eq. 1.17). Also, ε depends on P (it is smaller at lower P), V, and the developmental stage of the cells. We will return to a consideration of the elastic modulus when discussing the water relations of cells in Chapter 2 (Section 2.4B,G). We note here that both Young's modulus (Eq. 1.14) and the volumetric elastic modulus (Eq. 1.17) represent an applied pressure divided by a fractional change in size.

Before concluding this discussion of cell walls, we note that the case of elasticity or reversible deformability is only one extreme of stress–strain behavior. At the opposite extreme is plastic (irreversible) extension. If the amount of strain is directly proportional to the time that a certain stress is applied, and if the strain persists when the stress is removed, we have viscous flow. The cell wall exhibits intermediate properties and is said to be *viscoelastic*. When a stress is applied to a viscoelastic material, the resulting strain is approximately proportional to the logarithm of time. Such extension is partly elastic (reversible) and partly plastic (irreversible). Underlying the viscoelastic behavior of the cell wall are the crosslinks between the various polymers. For example, if a bond from one cellulose microfibril to another is broken while the cell wall is under tension, a new bond may form in a less strained configuration, leading to an irreversible or plastic extension of the cell wall. The quantity responsible for the tension in the cell wall—which in turn leads to such viscoelastic extension—is the hydrostatic pressure within the cell.

1.6. Problems

1.1. A thin layer of some solution is inserted into a long column of water. One hour later the concentration of the solute is 100 mol m^{-3} (0.1 M) at the plane of insertion and 37 mol m^{-3} (0.037 M) at a distance 3 mm away.

A. What is its diffusion coefficient?

B. When the concentration 90 mm away is 37% of the value at the plane of insertion, how much time has elapsed?

C. How many moles of solute per unit area were initially inserted into the column of water?

D. Suppose that a trace amount of a substance having a diffusion coefficient 100 times smaller than that of the main solute was also initially introduced. For the time in B, where would its concentration drop to $1/e$ of the value at the plane of insertion?

1.2. Let us suppose that mitochondria with a volume of 0.30 μm^3 each and a density of 1110 kg m^{-3} (1.10 g cm^{-3}) diffuse like a chemical species.

A. What is the "molecular weight" of mitochondria?

B. Suppose that a chemically similar species of molecular weight 200 has a diffusion coefficient of 0.5×10^{-9} m^2 s^{-1}. If diffusion coefficients are inversely proportional to the cube root of molecular weights for this series of similar species, what is $D_{mitochondria}$?

C. If we assume that Equation 1.6 can adequately describe such motion, how long would it take on the average for a mitochondrion to diffuse 0.2 μm (a distance just discernible using a light microscope)? How long would it take for the mitochondrion to diffuse 50 μm (the distance across a typical leaf cell)?

D. If D_{ATP} is 0.3×10^{-9} m^2 s^{-1}, how long would it take ATP to diffuse 50 μm? Is it more expedient for mitochondria or ATP to diffuse across a cell?

1.3. Suppose that an unstirred air layer 1 mm thick is adjacent to a guard cell with a cell wall 2 μm thick.

A. Assume that an (infinitely) thin layer of $^{14}CO_2$ is introduced at the surface of the guard cell. If D_{CO_2} is 10^6 times larger in air than in the cell wall, what are the relative times for $^{14}CO_2$ to diffuse across the two barriers?

B. If it takes $^{14}CO_2$ just as long to cross an 8-nm-thick plasma membrane as it does to cross the cell wall, what are the relative sizes of the two diffusion coefficients (assume that the $^{14}CO_2$ was introduced in a plane between the two barriers)?

C. Assuming that the partition coefficient for CO_2 is 100 times greater in the cell wall than in the plasma membrane, in which barrier is the permeability coefficient larger, and by how much?

1.4. Without correcting for the effect of an unstirred layer 20 μm thick outside a membrane 7.5 nm in thickness, the apparent (total) permeability coefficients were measured to be 1.0×10^{-4} m s^{-1} for D_2O, 2.0×10^{-5} m s^{-1} for methanol, and 3.0×10^{-8} m s^{-1} for L-leucine. For barriers in series, the overall permeability coefficient for species j (P_j^{total}) is related to those of the individual barriers (P_j^i) as follows: $1/P_j^{total} = \sum_i 1/P_j^i$. For purposes of calculation, we will assume that in the present case the unstirred layer on the inner side of the membrane is negligibly thin.

A. What is P_j for the external unstirred layer for each of the compounds? Assume that D_{D_2O} is 2.6×10^{-9} m^2 s^{-1}, $D_{methanol}$ is 0.80×10^{-9} m^2 s^{-1}, and $D_{leucine}$ is 0.20×10^{-9} m^2 s^{-1} in water at 25°C.

B. What are the permeability coefficients of the three compounds for the membrane?

C. From the results in A and B, what are the main barriers for the diffusion of the three compounds in this case?

D. What are the highest possible values at 25°C of P_j^{total} for each of the three compounds moving across an unstirred layer of 20 μm and an extremely permeable membrane in series?

1.5. Consider a solute having a permeability coefficient of 10^{-6} m s^{-1} for the plasma membrane of a cylindrical *Chara* cell that is 100 mm long and 1 mm in diameter. Assume that its concentration remains essentially uniform within the cell.

A. How much time would it take for 90% of the solute to diffuse out into a large external solution initially devoid of that substance?

B. How much time would it take if diffusion occurred only at the two ends of the cell?

C. How would the times calculated in A and B change for 99% of the solute to diffuse out?

D. How would the times change if P_j were 10^{-8} m s^{-1}?

1.6. A cylindrical *Nitella* cell is 100 mm long and 1 mm in diameter, a spherical *Valonia* cell is 10 mm in diameter, and a spherical *Chlorella* cell is 4 µm in diameter.

A. What is the area/volume in each case?

B. Which cell has the largest amount of surface area per unit volume?

C. If it takes 1 s for the internal concentration of ethanol, which is initially absent from the cells, to reach half of the external concentration for *Chlorella*, how long would it take for *Nitella* and *Valonia*? Assume that P_{ethanol} is the same for all of the cells.

D. Assume that the cell walls are equal in thickness. For a given internal pressure, which cell would have the highest cell wall stress (consider only the lateral wall for *Nitella*)?

1.7. References and Further Reading

Beuling, E.E. 2001. Diffusion coefficients of metabolites. In: Wijffels, R.H. (Ed.). *Immobilized Cells.* Springer-Verlag, Berlin, pp. 44–64.

Brett, C.T., and Waldron, K.W. 1996. *Physiology and Biochemistry of Plant Cell Walls*, 2nd ed. Chapman & Hall, London.

Colmer, T.D. 2003. Long-distance transport of gases in plants: a perspective on internal aeration and radial oxygen loss from roots. *Plant Cell Environ.* **26:** 17–36.

Crank, J. 1975/1999. *The Mathematics of Diffusion*, 2nd ed. Clarendon/Oxford University Press, Oxford, UK.

Davson, H., and Danielli, J.F. 1952. *The Permeability of Natural Membranes*, 2nd ed. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK.

Diamond, J.M., and Wright, E.M. 1969. Biological membranes: The physical basis of ion and nonelectrolyte selectivity. *Annu. Rev. Physiol.* **31:** 581–646.

Dickison, W.C. 2000. *Integrative Plant Anatomy.* Academic Press, San Diego, CA.

Evert, R.F., and Eichorn, S.E. 2006. *Esau's Plant Anatomy: Meristems, Cells, and Tissues of the Plant Body: Their Structure, Function, and Development*, 3rd ed. Wiley InterScience, Hoboken, NJ.

Fasman, G.D. 1992. *Practical Handbook of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology.* CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.

Fick, A. 1855. Über Diffusion. *Poggendorffs Ann.* **94:** 59–86.

Fischkoff, S., and Vanderkooi, J.M. 1975. Oxygen diffusion in biological and artificial membranes determined by the fluorochrome pyrene. *J. Gen. Physiol.* **65:** 663–676.

Gebhart, B. 1993. *Heat Conduction and Mass Diffusion.* McGraw-Hill, New York.

Ghez, R. 2001. *Diffusion Phenomena: Cases and Studies.* Kluwer, Dordrecht.

Green, K., and Otori, T. 1970. Direct measurements of membrane unstirred layers. *J. Physiol.* **207:** 93–102.

Han, P. 1992. *Tensile Testing.* ASM International, Materials Park, OH.

Jones, M.N., and Chapman, P. 1995. *Micelles, Monolayers and Biomembranes.* Wiley-Liss, New York.

Kamiya, N., Tazawa, M., and Takata, T. 1963. The relation of turgor pressure to cell volume in *Nitella* with special reference to mechanical properties of the cell wall. *Protoplasma* **57:** 501–521.

Lamb, G.L. 1995. *Introductory Applications of Partial Differential Equations with Emphasis on Wave Propagation and Diffusion*. Wiley, New York.

Lide, D.R. (Ed.) 2008. *CRC Handbook of Chemistry and Physics*, 89th ed. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.

Linskens, H.F., and Jackson, J.F. (Eds.) 1996. *Plant Cell Wall Analysis.* Springer-Verlag, Berlin.

Lockhart, J.A. 1965. Cell extension. In: Bonner, J., and Varner, J.E. (Eds.), *Plant Biochemistry.* Academic Press, New York, pp. 826–849.

Mauseth, J.D. 2008. *Botany, An Introduction to Plant Biology*, 4th ed. Jones and Bartlett, Sudbury, MA.

Merz, K.M., and Roux, B. 1996. *Biological Membranes*: *A Molecular Perspective from Computation and Experiment*. Birkhaeuser, Boston, New York.

Moller, I.M., and Brodelius, R. (Eds.) 1996. *Plant Membrane Biology.* Oxford University Press, Oxford, UK.

Mouritsen, O.G., and Jrgensen, K. 1997. Small-scale lipid-membrane structure: Simulation versus experiment. *Curr. Opin. Struct. Biol.* **7:** 518–527.

Niklas, K.J. 1992. *Plant Biomechanics*: *An Engineering Approach to Plant Form and Function*. University of Chicago Press, Chicago, IL.

Oparka, K. (Ed.) 2005. *Plasmodesmata*. Blackwell, London.

Petty, H.R. 1993. *Molecular Biology of Membranes*: *Structure and Function*. Plenum, New York.

Preston, R.B. 1974. *The Physical Biology of Plant Cell Walls.* Chapman & Hall, London.

Roberts, A.G., and Oparka, K.J. 2003. Plasmodesmata and the control of symplastic transport. *Plant Cell Environ*. **26:** 103–124.

Stein, W.D. 1986. *Transport and Diffusion Across Cell Membranes.* Academic Press, Orlando, FL.

Sten-Knudsen, O. 2007. *Biological Membranes.* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK.

Taylor, B.N. (Ed.) 1995. *Guide for the International System of Units (SI)*. U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC.

Taylor, B.N. (Ed.) 2001. *The International System of Units (SI)*. U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC.

Williams, W.E., Gordon, H.L., and Witiak, S.M. 2003. Chloroplast movements in the field. *Plant Cell Environ*. **26:** 2005–2014.

Woolf, T.B. 2007. *Membrane Biophysics.* Oxford University Press, Oxford, UK.

Wright, E.M., and Diamond, J.M. 1969. Patterns of non-electrolyte permeability. *Proc. Roy. Soc. Lond. Ser. B* **172:** 227–271.

Ye, Q., Kim, Y., and Steudle, E. 2006. A re-examination of the minor role of unstirred layers during the measurement of transport coefficients of *Chara corallina* internodes with the pressure probe. *Plant Cell Environ*. **29:** 964–980.

Yeagle, P. 2005. *The Structure of Biological Membranes*, 2nd ed. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.

Major Equations

Height of capillary rise (2.2a)

$$h = \frac{2\sigma \cos\alpha}{r\rho g}$$

Chemical potential (2.4)

$$\mu_j = \mu_j^* + RT \ln a_j + \overline{V}_j P + z_j FE + m_j gh$$

Van't Hoff relation (2.10)

$$\Pi_s \cong RT \sum_j c_j$$

Water potential (2.13a)

$$\Psi = \frac{\mu_w - \mu_w^*}{\overline{V}_w} = P - \Pi + \rho_w gh$$

Boyle–Van't Hoff relation (2.15)

$$\Pi^O (V - b) = RT \sum_j \varphi_j n_j$$

Water potential of water vapor (2.24)

$$\Psi_{wv} = \frac{RT}{\overline{V}_w} \ln \frac{\%\text{ relative humidity}}{100} + \rho_w gh$$

A growth equation (2.33)

$$\frac{1}{V}\frac{dV}{dt} = \varphi \left(P^{\mathrm{i}} - P^{\mathrm{i}}_{\mathrm{threshold}} \right)$$

2

Water

2.1. Physical Properties 46
2.1A. Hydrogen Bonding—Thermal Relations 47
2.1B. Surface Tension 49
2.1C. Capillary Rise 50
2.1D. Capillary Rise in the Xylem 53
2.1E. Tensile Strength, Viscosity 54
2.1F. Electrical Properties 55
2.2. Chemical Potential 56
2.2A. Free Energy and Chemical Potential 56
2.2B. Analysis of Chemical Potential 60
2.2C. Standard State 63
2.2D. Hydrostatic Pressure 64
2.2E. Water Activity and Osmotic Pressure 65
2.2F. Van't Hoff Relation 66
2.2G. Matric Pressure 69
2.2H. Water Potential 71
2.3. Central Vacuole and Chloroplasts 72
2.3A. Water Relations of the Central Vacuole 73
2.3B. Boyle–Van't Hoff Relation 74
2.3C. Osmotic Responses of Chloroplasts 76
2.4. Water Potential and Plant Cells 78
2.4A. Incipient Plasmolysis 78
2.4B. Höfler Diagram and Pressure–Volume Curve 81
2.4C. Chemical Potential and Water Potential of Water Vapor 84
2.4D. Plant–Air Interface 87
2.4E. Pressure in the Cell Wall Water 88
2.4F. Water Flux 91
2.4G. Cell Growth 93
2.4H. Kinetics of Volume Changes 95
2.5. Problems 96
2.6. References and Further Reading 98

Water is the main constituent of plant cells, as our discussion of both central vacuoles and cell walls in Chapter 1 (Sections 1.1 and 1.5) has suggested. The actual cellular water content varies with cell type and physiological condition. For example, a carrot root is about 85% water by weight, and the young inner leaves of lettuce contain up to 95% water. Water makes up only 5% of certain dry seeds and spores, but when these become metabolically active, an increase in water content is essential for the transformation.

The physical and the chemical properties of water make it suitable for many purposes in plants. It is the medium in which diffusion of solutes takes place in plant cells. Its incompressibility means that water uptake can lead to cell expansion and also the generation of intracellular hydrostatic pressures, which can help support plants. It is well suited for temperature regulation because it has a high heat of vaporization, a high thermal capacity per unit mass, and a high thermal conductivity for a liquid. Water is also an extremely good general solvent, in part owing to the small size of its molecules. Its polar character makes water suitable for dissolving other polar substances. Its high dielectric constant (Eq. 2.3) makes it a particularly appropriate solvent for ions. This latter property has far-reaching consequences for life because nearly all biologically important solutes are electrically charged. The mineral nutrients needed for growth and the organic products of photosynthesis are transported throughout a plant in aqueous solutions. Indeed, in actively growing land plants, a continuous column of water exists from the soil, through the plant, to the evaporation sites in the leaves. Water is relatively transparent to visible irradiation, enabling sunlight to reach chloroplasts within the cells in leaves and to reach algae and plants submerged in rivers and lakes. Water is also intrinsically involved with metabolism. In photosynthesis it is the source of the O_2 evolved and the hydrogen used for CO_2 reduction. The generation of the important energy currency, adenosine triphosphate (ATP), involves the extraction of the components of water from adenosine diphosphate (ADP) plus phosphate; in other words, such a phosphorylation is a dehydration reaction taking place in an aqueous solution under biological conditions. At the ecological level, the facts that ice floats and that water is densest near 4°C are important for organisms living in streams, rivers, or lakes subject to freezing. Water existing as ice at low temperatures that nevertheless are within the biological realm also has many important consequences for water exchange, metabolism, and ultimately cell survival. Thus understanding the physical and chemical properties of water is crucial for understanding biology.

A number of isotopically different forms of water can be prepared, which greatly facilitates experimental studies. Replacing both of the usual hydrogen atoms with deuterium (^2H) results in "heavy water," or deuterium oxide, with a molecular weight of 20. The role of water in chemical reactions can then be studied by analyzing the deuterium content of substances involved as reactants or products. Tritium (^3H), a radioactive isotope with a half-life of 12.4 years, can also be incorporated into water. Tritiated water has been used to measure water diffusion in plant tissues. Another alternative for tracing the pathway of water is to replace the usual ^{16}O isotope with ^{18}O. This "labeling" of water with ^{18}O helped determine that the O_2 evolved in photosynthesis comes from H_2O and not from CO_2 (Chapter 5, Section 5.5A).

2.1. Physical Properties

The physical properties of water differ markedly from those of other substances having 10 protons and 10 electrons (Fig. 2-1). For instance, although the number of hydrogen atoms decreases along the series from methane to

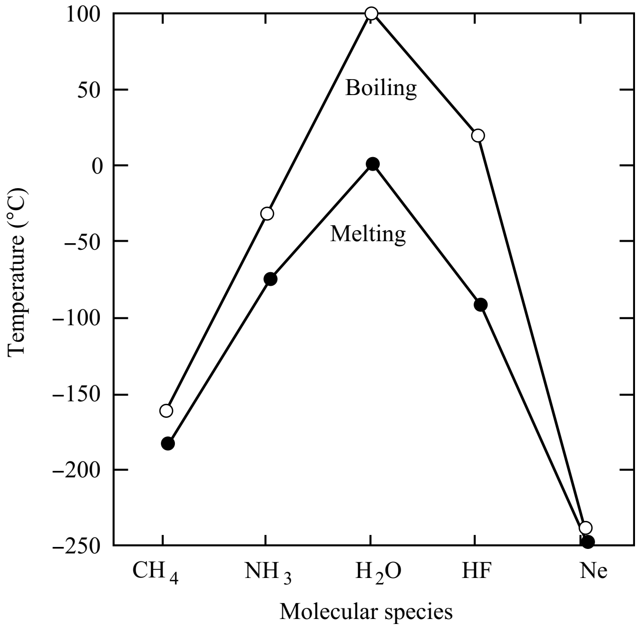


Figure 2-1. Boiling points and melting points for molecules with 10 protons and 10 electrons (arranged in the order of decreasing number of hydrogen atoms), showing the high values for water. Most biological processes take place between 0°C and 50°C, where water can be a liquid but the other substances cannot.

neon ($CH_4 > NH_3 > H_2O > HF > Ne$), the melting point and the boiling point are highest for water (Fig. 2-1). The high values for water compared to substances having a similar electron content are consequences of its strong intermolecular forces. In other words, thermal agitation does not easily disrupt the bonding between water molecules. This strong attraction among molecules is responsible for many properties of water.

2.1A. Hydrogen Bonding—Thermal Relations

The strong intermolecular forces in water result from the structure of the H_2O molecule (Fig. 2-2). The internuclear distance between the oxygen atom and each of the two hydrogen atoms is approximately 0.099 nm, and the HOH bond angle is about 105°. The oxygen atom is strongly electronegative and tends to draw electrons away from the hydrogen atoms. The oxygen atom thus has a partial negative charge (δ^- in Fig. 2-2), and the two hydrogens each have a partial positive charge (δ^+). These two positively charged hydrogens are electrostatically attracted to the negatively charged oxygens of two neighboring water molecules. This leads to *hydrogen bonding* between water molecules, with an energy of about 20 kJ mol^{-1} of hydrogen atoms in the hydrogen bonds (40 kJ mol^{-1} of water). Such bonding of water molecules to each other leads to increased order in aqueous solutions. In fact, liquid water becomes nearly crystalline in local regions, which affects the molecular interactions and orientations that occur in aqueous solutions.

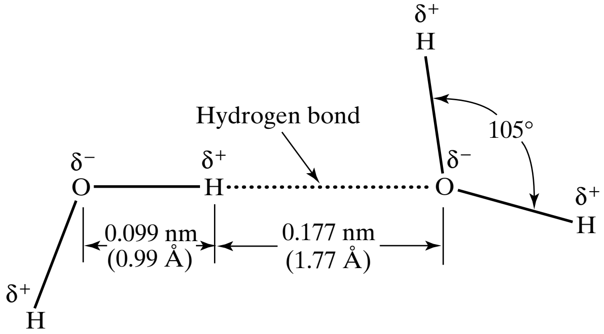


Figure 2-2. Schematic structure of water molecules, indicating the hydrogen bonding resulting from the electrostatic attraction between the net positive charge on a hydrogen (δ^+) in one molecule and the net negative charge on an oxygen (δ^-) in a neighboring water molecule. Depending on the model, δ^+ is about 0.3 of a protonic charge and δ^- is about −0.6.

Ice is a coordinated crystalline structure in which essentially all of the water molecules are joined by hydrogen bonds. When enough energy is added to melt ice, some of these intermolecular hydrogen bonds are broken. The *heat of fusion*, which is the energy required to melt a substance at a particular temperature, is 6.0 kJ mol^{-1} for ice at 0°C. Total rupture of the intermolecular hydrogen bonds involving both of its hydrogens would require 40 kJ mol^{-1} of water. This heat of fusion thus indicates that

$$\frac{6.0\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}}{40\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}} = 0.15$$

or at most 15% of the hydrogen bonds are broken when ice melts. Some energy is needed to overcome van der Waals attractions,[1] so less than 15% of the hydrogen bonds are actually broken upon melting. Conversely, over 85% of the hydrogen bonds remain intact for liquid water at 0°C.

The molar heat capacity (molar thermal capacity), which is the energy required to increase the temperature of 1 mol by 1°C, is 75.4 J mol^{-1} °C^{-1} for water. The energy to heat water from 0°C to 25°C therefore is

$$(0.0754\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}\ {}^\circ\text{C}^{-1})(25^\circ\text{C}) = 1.9\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}$$

If all of this energy were used to break hydrogen bonds (1.9 kJ mol^{-1} could break about 5% of the possible hydrogen bonds in water), over 80% of the bonds would remain intact at 25°C. Such bonding leads to the semicrystalline order in aqueous solutions. Indeed, the extensive intermolecular hydrogen bonding in the liquid state contributes to the unique and biologically important properties of water that we will discuss throughout this chapter.

1. Van der Waals forces are the electrostatic attractions between the electrons in one molecule and the nuclei of an adjacent molecule minus the molecules' interelectronic and internuclear repulsive forces. In about 1930, Fritz London showed that these forces are caused by the attraction between an electric dipole in some molecule and the electric dipole induced in an adjacent one. Therefore, van der Waals forces result from random fluctuations of charge and are important only for molecules that are very close together—in particular, for neighboring molecules.

The energy required to separate molecules from a liquid and move them into an adjacent vapor phase without a change of temperature is called the *heat of vaporization*. For water, the heat of vaporization at 100°C is 2.26 MJ kg^{-1}, or 40.7 kJ mol^{-1}. Per unit mass, this is the highest heat of vaporization of any known liquid and reflects the large amount of energy required to disrupt the extensive hydrogen bonding in aqueous solutions. More pertinent is the heat of vaporization of water at temperatures encountered by plants. At 25°C each mole of water evaporated requires 44.0 kJ (see Appendix I), so a substantial heat loss accompanies the evaporation of water in transpiration. Most of this vaporization energy is needed to break hydrogen bonds so that the water molecules can become separated in the gaseous phase. For example, if 80% of the hydrogen bonds remained at 25°C, then (0.80)(40 kJ mol^{-1}), or 32 kJ mol^{-1}, would be needed to rupture them. Additional energy is needed to overcome the van der Waals forces and for the expansion involved in going from a liquid to a gas. The heat loss accompanying the evaporation of water is one of the principal means of temperature regulation in land plants, dissipating much of the energy gained from the absorption of solar irradiation. (Energy budgets are considered in Chapter 7.)

2.1B. Surface Tension

Water has an extremely high *surface tension*, which is evident at an interface between water and air and is another result of the strong intermolecular forces in water. Surface tension can be defined as the force per unit length that can pull perpendicular to a line in the plane of the surface. Because of its high surface tension, water can support a steel pin or needle carefully placed on its surface. The surface tension at such an air–water interface is 0.0728 N m^{-1} at 20°C (see Appendix I for values at other temperatures). Surface tension is also the amount of energy required to expand a surface by unit area—surface tension has the dimensions of force per unit length and also of energy per unit area (1 N m^{-1} = 1 N m m^{-2} = 1 J m^{-2}).

To see why energy is required to expand the water surface, let us consider water molecules that are brought from the interior of an aqueous phase to an air–water interface. If this involves only moving water molecules to the surface (i.e., if there is no accompanying movement of other water molecules from the surface to the interior), then a loss in the water–water attraction from some of the intermolecular hydrogen bonds occurs with no compensating air–water attraction. Energy is thus needed to break the hydrogen bonds that are lost in moving water molecules from the interior of the solution to the air–water interface (0.0728 J for 1 m^2 of water molecules). In fact, the term "surface free energy" is more appropriate from a thermodynamic point of view than is the conventional term "surface tension."

The surface tension of an aqueous solution usually is only slightly influenced by the composition of an adjacent gas phase, but it can be greatly affected by certain solutes. Molecules are relatively far apart in a gas—dry air at 0°C and one standard atmosphere (0.1013 MPa, 1.013 bar, or 760 mmHg) contains 45 mol m^{-3} compared with 55,500 mol m^{-3} for liquid water—so the frequency of interactions between molecules in the gas phase and those in the

liquid phase is relatively low. Certain solutes, such as sucrose or KCl, do not preferentially collect at the air–liquid interface and consequently have little effect on the surface tension of an aqueous solution. However, because their hydrophobic regions tend to avoid water, fatty acids and other charged lipids may become concentrated at air–water interfaces, which can greatly reduce the surface tension. For example, 10 mol m^{-3} (~10 mM) caproic acid (a 6-carbon fatty acid) lowers the surface tension by 21% from the value for pure water, and only 0.05 mol m^{-3} capric acid (a 10-C fatty acid) lowers it by 34% (Bull, 1964). Substances such as soaps (salts of fatty acids), other emulsifiers, and denatured proteins with large hydrophobic side chains collect at the interface and can thereby reduce the surface tension of aqueous solutions by over 70%. Such "surfactant" molecules have both polar and nonpolar regions, with the polar region orienting toward the water phase.

2.1C. Capillary Rise

The intermolecular attraction between like molecules in the liquid state, such as the water–water attraction based on hydrogen bonds, is called *cohesion*. The attractive interaction between a liquid and a solid phase, such as water and the walls of a glass capillary (a cylindrical tube with a small internal diameter), is called *adhesion*. When the water–wall adhesion is appreciable compared with the water–water cohesion, the walls are said to be *wettable*, and water then rises in such a vertical capillary. At the opposite extreme, when the intermolecular cohesive forces within the liquid are substantially greater than is the adhesion between the liquid and the wall material, the upper level of the liquid in such a capillary is lower than the surface of the solution. Capillary depression occurs for liquid mercury in glass capillaries. For water in glass capillaries or in xylem vessels, the

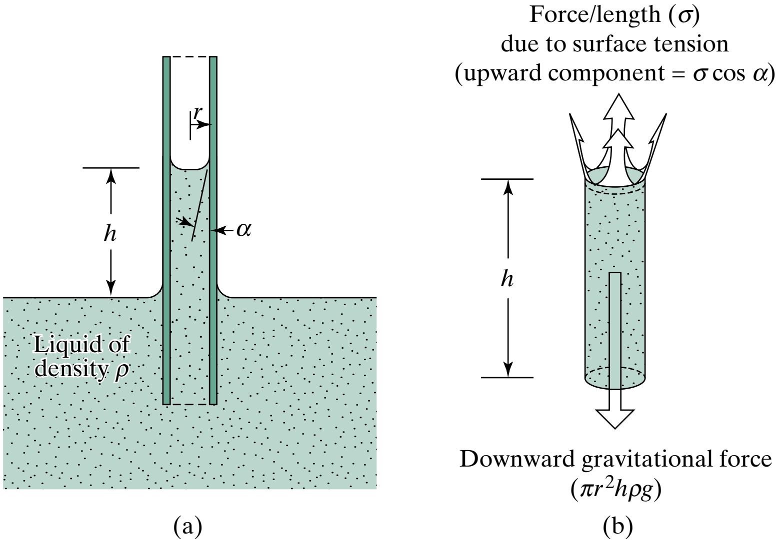


Figure 2-3. Capillary rise of a liquid: (a) variables involved, and (b) force diagram indicating that surface tension projected in the upward direction is balanced by gravity acting downward.

attraction between the water molecules and the walls is great, so the liquid rises. Because capillary rise has important implications in plant physiology, we will discuss its characteristics quantitatively.

As an example appropriate to the evaluation of water ascent in a plant, let us consider a capillary of inner radius r with a wettable wall dipping into some aqueous solution (Fig. 2-3a). The strong adhesion of water molecules to the wettable wall causes the fluid to rise along the inner wall of the capillary. Because a strong water–water cohesion occurs in the bulk solution, water is concomitantly pulled up into the lumen of the capillary as water rises along the wall. In particular, the air–water surface greatly resists being stretched, a property reflected in the high surface tension of water at air–water interfaces. Such resisting minimizes the area of the air–water interface, a condition achieved if water also moves up in the lumen as well as along the inner wall of the capillary. The effect of the rise of water along the wall of the capillary is thus transmitted to a volume of fluid. We will designate the height that the liquid rises in the capillary by h and the contact angle that the liquid makes with the inner capillary wall by α (Fig. 2-3). The extent of the rise depends on α, so the properties of the contact angle will now be examined more closely.

The size of the contact angle depends on the magnitude of the liquid–solid adhesive force compared with that of the liquid–liquid cohesive force. Specifically, Young's equation (also called the Young and Dupré equation) indicates that

$$\text{Adhesion} = \left(\frac{1 + \cos\alpha}{2}\right)\text{Cohesion} \qquad (2.1)$$

When the adhesive force equals (or exceeds) the cohesive force in the liquid, cos α is 1; the contact angle α then equals zero (cos 0° = 1; Fig. 2-4a). This is the case for water in capillaries made of clear, smooth glass or having walls with polar groups on the exposed surface. When the adhesive force equals

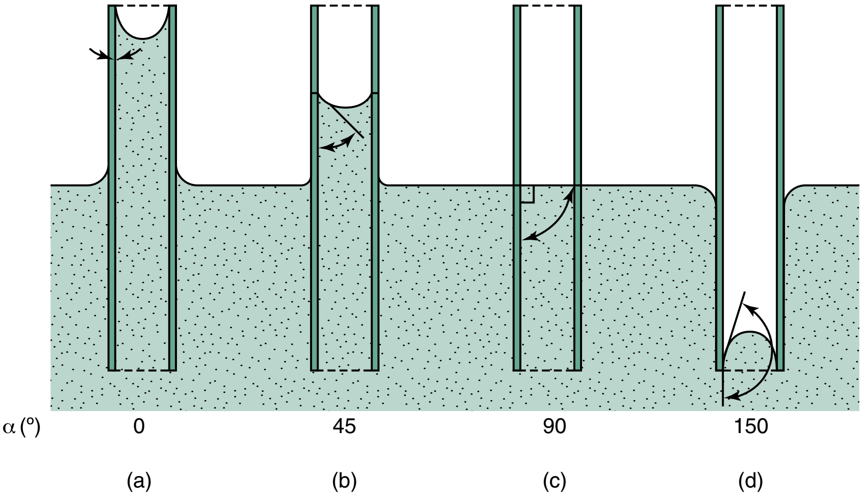


Figure 2-4. Various contact angles at air–solution interfaces (α). An α of 0° indicates wettable walls with Adhesion ≥ Cohesion (Eq. 2.1) leading to maximal capillary rise (a); an α of 150° indicates capillary depression, as occurs for mercury in glass capillaries (d).

half of the cohesive force, $\cos\alpha$ is zero and the contact angle is then 90° ($\cos 90° = 0$) by Equation 2.1. In this case, the level of the fluid in the capillary is the same as that in the bulk of the solution; that is, no capillary rise occurs (Fig. 2-4c). This latter condition is closely approached for water–polyethylene adhesion, where α equals 94°. As the liquid–solid adhesive force becomes relatively less compared with the intermolecular cohesion in the liquid phase, the contact angle increases toward 180°, and capillary depression occurs. For instance, water has an α of about 110° with paraffin, and the contact angle for mercury interacting with a glass surface is about 150° (Fig. 2-4d). In such cases, the level of the liquid is lower in the capillary than in the bulk solution.

Contact angles can also be considered for water on a leaf surface. For instance, when the surface is wettable (hydrophilic), the contact angle is small and a droplet of water spreads out. When the surface is hydrophobic, the contact angle is large, and the droplet becomes more spherical. For instance, for leaves of lotus (*Nelumbo nucifera*; Solga et al., 2007), the contact angle exceeds 150°. Rain droplets are then nearly spherical and can easily roll off, carrying with them small bits of "dirt," thereby cleaning the leaf surface.

We can calculate the extent of capillary rise by considering the balance of two forces: (1) gravity acting downward and (2) surface tension, which leads to an upward force in the case of a wettable wall in a vertical tube (Fig. 2-3b). The force pulling upward acts along the inside perimeter of the capillary, a distance of $2\pi r$, with a force per unit length represented by σ, the surface tension. The component of this force acting vertically upward is $2\pi r\sigma\cos\alpha$, where α is the contact angle illustrated in Figure 2-3a. This upward force is balanced by the gravitational force acting on a mass of liquid that has a volume of approximately $\pi r^2 h$ and a density of ρ, where mass equals volume times density (i.e., density = mass per volume). (Some liquid is also held in the "rim" of the meniscus, as is indicated in Figure 2-3a; for narrow capillaries, the liquid in the meniscus increases the effective height of the column by about $r/3$.) In particular, the gravitational force is the mass involved ($\pi r^2 h\rho$) times the gravitational acceleration g ($F = ma$, Newton's second law of motion). In the present case, the gravitational force is $\pi r^2 h\rho g$, acting downward (Fig. 2-3b). This force is balanced by $2\pi r\sigma\cos\alpha$ pulling in the opposite direction (upward), so the extent of rise, h, is given by equating the two forces ($\pi r^2 h\rho g = 2\pi r\sigma\cos\alpha$), which leads to

$$h = \frac{2\sigma\cos\alpha}{r\rho g} \qquad (2.2a)$$

Equation 2.2a indicates the readily demonstrated property that the height of liquid rise in a capillary is inversely proportional to the inner radius of the tube. In particular, the upward force increases with an increase in the radius and hence the perimeter of the capillary, but the amount of liquid to be supported increases with the square of the radius. For water in glass capillaries as well as in many of the fine channels encountered in plants where the cell walls have a large number of exposed polar groups, the contact angle can be near zero, in which case $\cos\alpha$ in

Equation 2.2a can be set equal to 1. The density of water at 20°C is 998 kg m^{-3} (actually, ρ in Eq. 2.2a is the difference between the liquid density and the density of the displaced air, the latter being about 1 kg m^{-3}), and the acceleration due to gravity, g, is about 9.80 m s^{-2} (see Appendix I). Using a surface tension for water at 20°C of 0.0728 N m^{-1} (Appendix I), we obtain the following relation between the height of the rise and the capillary radius when the contact angle is zero:

$$h_{(\mathrm{m})} = \frac{1.49 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{m}^2}{r_{(\mathrm{m})}} \tag{2.2b}$$

where the subscripts (m) in Equation 2.2b mean that the dimensions involved are expressed in meters.

2.1D. Capillary Rise in the Xylem

Although Equation 2.2 refers to the height of capillary rise only in a static sense, it still has important implications concerning the movement of water in plants. To be specific, let us consider a xylem vessel having a lumen radius of 20 μm. From Equation 2.2b, we calculate that water will rise in it to the following height:

$$h_{(\mathrm{m})} = \frac{(1.49 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{m}^2)}{(20 \times 10^{-6}\ \mathrm{m})} = 0.75\ \mathrm{m}$$

Such a capillary rise would account for the extent of the ascent of water in small plants, although it says nothing about the rate of such movement (to be considered in Chapter 9, Section 9.4D). For water to reach the top of a 30-m-tall tree by capillary action, however, the vessel would have to be 0.5 μm in radius. This is much smaller than observed for xylem vessels, indicating that capillary rise in channels of the size of xylem cells cannot account for the extent of the water rise in tall trees. Furthermore, the lumens of the xylem vessels are not open to air at the upper end, and thus they are not really analogous to the capillary depicted in Figure 2-3.

The numerous interstices in the cell walls of xylem vessels form a meshwork of many small, tortuous capillaries, which can lead to an extensive capillary rise of water in a tree. A representative "radius" for these channels in the cell wall might be 5 nm. According to Equation 2.2b, a capillary of 5 nm radius could support a water column of 3 km—far in excess of the needs of any plant. The cell wall could thus act as a very effective wick for water rise in its numerous small interstices, although such movement up a tree is generally too slow to replace the water lost by transpiration.

Because of the appreciable water–wall attraction that can develop both at the top of a xylem vessel and in the numerous interstices of its cell walls, water already present in the lumen of a xylem vessel can be sustained or supported at great heights. The upward force, transmitted to the rest of the solution in the xylem vessel by water–water cohesion, overcomes the gravitational pull downward. The key to sustaining water already present in the xylem vessel against the pull of gravity is the very potent attractive

interaction (adhesion) between water and the cell wall surfaces in the vessel. What happens if the lumen of the xylem vessel becomes filled with air? Will water then refill it? The capillary rise of water is not sufficient to refill most air-filled xylem vessels greater than about 1 m in length so that, in general, air-filled vessels are lost for conduction, such as the inner annual rings of most trees [a positive hydrostatic pressure can occur in the root xylem (termed *root pressure*; see Chapter 9, Section 9.5A), which can help refill vessels in herbaceous species as well as in certain woody species].

2.1E. Tensile Strength, Viscosity

The pulling on water columns that occurs in capillary rise and in the sustaining of water in the xylem requires that water be put under tension, or negative pressure. Water must therefore have substantial *tensile strength*—the maximum tension (force per unit area, or negative pressure) that can be withstood before breaking. The intermolecular hydrogen bonds lead to this tensile strength by resisting the pulling apart of water in a column. According to experiment, water in small glass tubes 0.6 mm in inner diameter can withstand negative hydrostatic pressures (tensions) of up to approximately 30 MPa at 20°C without breaking (higher values can occur in even smaller capillaries, and 1500 MPa is theoretically possible). A measured tensile strength of 30 MPa is nearly 10% of that of copper or aluminum and is high enough to meet the demands encountered for water movement in plants. The strong cohesive forces between water molecules thus allow a considerable tension to exist in an uninterrupted water column in a wettable capillary or tube such as a xylem vessel. This tension in the xylem is important for the continuous movement of water from the root through the plant to the surrounding atmosphere during transpiration (discussed in Chapter 9, Section 9.5).

In contrast to metals under tension, which are in a stable state, water under tension is in a *metastable state* (a situation in which a change is ready to occur but does not without some outside impulse). If gas bubbles form in the water under tension in the xylem vessels, the water column can be ruptured. Thus, the introduction of another phase can disrupt the metastable state describing water under tension. Minute air bubbles sometimes spontaneously form in the xylem sap. These usually adhere to the walls of the xylem vessel, and the gas in them slowly redissolves. If, however, they grow large enough or a number of small bubbles coalesce, forming an *embolism*, the continuity of water under tension can be interrupted and that xylem vessel ceases to function (i.e., it *cavitates*). Freezing of the solution in xylem vessels can lead to bubbles in the ice (the solubilities of gases like CO_2, O_2, and N_2 are quite low in ice), and these bubbles can interrupt the water columns upon thawing. Most plants are thus damaged by repeated freezing and thawing of xylem sap and the consequent loss of water continuity in the xylem vessels.

Hydrogen bonding also influences the *viscosity* of water. Viscosity indicates the resistance to flow, reflecting the cohesion within a fluid as well as transfer of molecular momentum between layers of the fluid. It is thus a

measure of the difficulty for one layer to slide past an adjacent layer when a shearing force is applied. Because hydrogen bonding can restrict the slipping of adjacent liquid layers, the viscosity of water is relatively high compared with solvents that have little or no hydrogen bonding, such as acetone, benzene, chloroform, and other organic solvents with small molecules. The decrease in the viscosity of water as the temperature rises reflects the breaking of hydrogen bonds and also the lessening of other attractive forces (e.g., van der Waals forces) accompanying the greater thermal motion of the molecules.

2.1F. Electrical Properties

Another consequence of the molecular structure of water is its extremely high dielectric constant, which lowers the electrical forces between charged solutes in aqueous solutions. To quantify the magnitude of electrical effects in a fluid, let us consider two ions having charges Q_1 and Q_2 and separated from each other by a distance r. The electrical force exerted by one ion on the other is expressed by Coulomb's law:

$$\text{Electrical force} = \frac{Q_1 Q_2}{4\pi\varepsilon_0 D r^2} \qquad (2.3)$$

where ε_0 is a proportionality constant known as the permittivity of a vacuum, and D is a dimensionless quantity called the dielectric constant. D equals unity in a vacuum and is 1.0006 in air at 0°C and a pressure of one atmosphere.

Any substance composed of highly polar molecules, such as water, generally has a high dielectric constant. Specifically, D for water is 80.2 at 20°C and 78.4 at 25°C—extremely high values for a liquid (the decrease in the dielectric constant of water with increasing temperature mainly reflects increased thermal motion and decreased hydrogen bonding). By contrast, the dielectric constant of the nonpolar liquid hexane at 20°C is only 1.87, a low value typical of many organic solvents. Based on these two vastly different dielectric constants and using Equation 2.3, the attractive electrical force between ions such as Na^+ and Cl^- is (80.2/1.87) or 43 times greater in hexane than in water. The much stronger attraction between Na^+ and Cl^- in hexane reduces the amount of NaCl that will dissociate, compared with the dissociation of this salt in aqueous solutions. Stated another way, the much weaker electrical forces between ions in aqueous solutions, compared with those in organic solvents, allow a larger concentration of ions to be in solution. Water with its high dielectric constant (Eq. 2.3) is thus a good solvent for charged particles.

The electrostatic interaction between ions and water partially cancels or screens out the local electrical fields of the ions (Fig. 2-5). Cations attract the negatively charged oxygen atom of a water molecule, and anions attract its positively charged hydrogen atoms. Water molecules orient around the charged particles and produce local electrical fields opposing the fields of the ions (Fig. 2-5). The resultant screening or shielding diminishes the electrical interaction between the ions and allows more of them to remain in solution, which is the molecular basis for water's high dielectric constant.

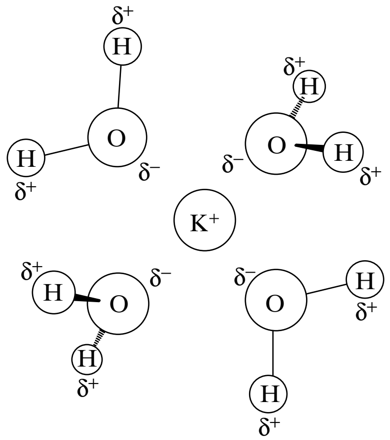


Figure 2-5. Orientation of water molecules around a potassium ion, indicating the charge arrangement that leads to screening of the local electrical field.

The energy of attraction between water and nonpolar molecules is usually less than the energy required to break water–water hydrogen bonds. Nonpolar compounds are therefore not very soluble in water. Certain substances, such as detergents, phospholipids (Chapter 1, Section 1.3A), and proteins (Fig. 1-8), can have a nonpolar and also a polar region in the same molecule. In aqueous solutions these compounds can form aggregates, called *micelles*, in which the nonpolar groups of the molecules are in the center, while the charged or polar groups are external and interact with water. The lack of appreciable attractive electrostatic interaction between polar or charged species and the nonpolar (hydrophobic) regions of membrane lipids underlies the low solubility of such solutes in biological membranes (low partition coefficient; Chapter 1, Section 1.4A), which in turn limits the passage of these solutes into and out of cells and organelles.

2.2. Chemical Potential

The chemical potential of species j indicates the free energy associated with that species and available for performing work. Because there are many concepts to be mastered before understanding such a statement, we first briefly explore the concept of free energy. (Further details are presented later in this chapter, in Chapters 3 and 6, and in Appendix IV.) We will introduce specific terms in the chemical potential of species j and then consider the extremely important case of water.

2.2A. Free Energy and Chemical Potential

Plants and animals require a continual input of free energy. If we were to remove the sources of free energy, organisms would drift toward equilibrium with the consequent cessation of life. The ultimate source of free energy is the sun. Photosynthesis converts its plentiful radiant energy into free energy, which is stored first in intermediate energy "currencies" like ATP and then

in the altered chemical bonds that result when CO_2 and H_2O react to form a carbohydrate and O_2. When the overall photosynthetic reactions are reversed during respiration, the available free energy is reconverted into suitable energy currencies such as ATP. In turn, this free energy can perform biological work, such as transporting amino acids into cells, pumping blood, powering electrical reactions in the brain, or lifting weights. For every such process on both a molecular and a global scale, the free energy decreases. In fact, the structure of cells, as well as that of ecosystems, is governed by the initial supply of free energy and by the inexorable laws of thermodynamics that describe the expenditure of free energy.

Instead of viewing the whole universe, a thermodynamicist focuses on some small part of it referred to as a "system." Such a system might be K^+ dissolved in water, a plant cell, a leaf, or even a whole plant. Something happens to the system—the K^+ concentration is increased, a chemical reaction occurs in a cell, a leaf abscises, or water moves up a tree. We say that the system changes from state A to state B. The minimum amount of work needed to cause the change from A to B is the free energy increase associated with it. Alternatively, the free energy decrease in going from state B back to state A represents the maximum amount of work that can be derived from the transition. If there were no frictional or other irreversible losses, we would not need the words "minimum" and "maximum." Thus the limits to the work done on or by a system when it undergoes a transition from one state to another involve changes in free energy. Knowledge of the free energy under one condition compared with another allows us to predict the direction of spontaneous change or movement: A spontaneous change in a system at constant temperature and pressure proceeds in the direction of decreasing free energy.

Most systems of interest in biology are subject to a constant pressure (atmospheric) and remain at a constant temperature, at least for short periods. In discussing the energetics of processes for systems at constant temperature and pressure, the appropriate quantity is the *Gibbs free energy*. The Gibbs free energy has a very useful property: It decreases for a spontaneous process at constant temperature and pressure. Under such conditions, the decrease in Gibbs free energy equals the maximum amount of energy available for work, whereas if it increases for some transition, the change in Gibbs free energy represents the minimum amount of work required. We will hence restrict our attention to changes that occur when the overall system is at a constant temperature and subjected to a constant pressure. (An equation for the Gibbs free energy is presented in Chapter 6, and Appendix IV deals with a number of formal matters associated with its use.) For present purposes, we note that the Gibbs free energy of an entire system is made up of additive contributions from each of the molecular species present. We will therefore shift our emphasis to the individual components of the system and the manner in which their free energy can be described.

To every chemical component in a system we can assign a free energy per mole of that species. This quantity is called the *chemical potential* of species j and is given the symbol μ_j. We can view μ_j as a property of species j, indicating how that species will react to a given change, for example, a

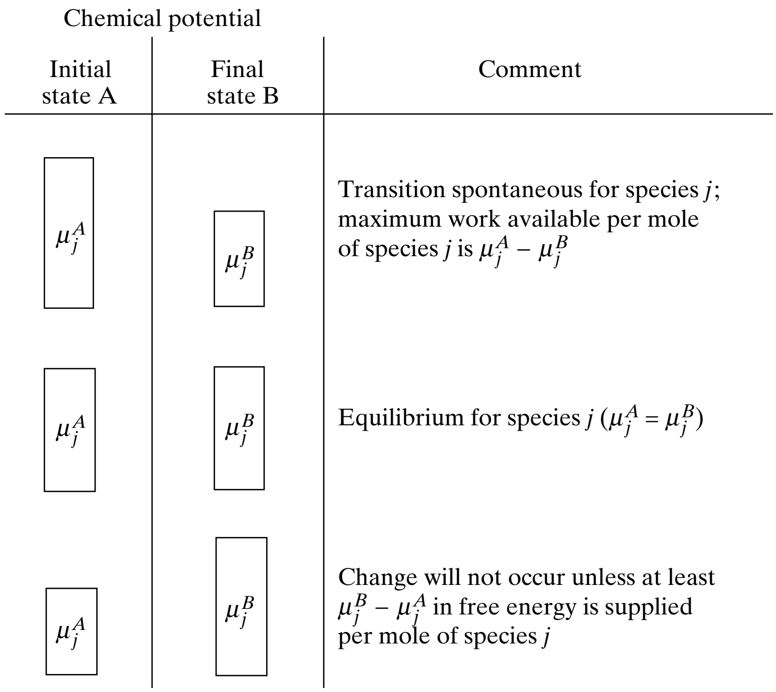


Figure 2-6. Possible changes in the chemical potential of species j that can accompany a transition from initial state A to final state B, as might occur in a chemical reaction or in crossing a membrane. The heights of the bars representing μ_j correspond to the relative values of the chemical potential.

transition of the system from state A to state B. During the transition, the chemical potential of species j changes from μ_j^A to μ_j^B. If μ_j^B is less than μ_j^A, then the free energy per mole of species j decreases. Such a process can take place spontaneously as far as species j is concerned—water flowing downhill is an example of such a spontaneous process. In principle we can harness the spontaneous change to do work. The maximum amount of work that can be done per mole of species j is $\mu_j^A - \mu_j^B$ (Fig. 2-6). Suppose that μ_j^B equals μ_j^A. As far as species j is concerned, no work is involved in the transition from state A to state B; species j is then in equilibrium between the two states (Fig. 2-6). We will show later that living systems as a whole are far from equilibrium and that many chemical species are not in equilibrium across cellular membranes. Finally, let us consider the case in which μ_j^B is greater than μ_j^A. A change increasing the chemical potential of a substance can occur only if some other change in the system supplies the free energy required. The pumping of blood along arteries, using ATP to cause contraction of the heart muscles, is an example in which the increase in chemical potential of water in the blood is accompanied by an even larger decrease in the free energy associated with ATP (we will consider ATP in detail in Chapter 6, Section 6.2A,B). The minimum amount of work that must be done per mole of species j to cause the energetically uphill transition is $\mu_j^B - \mu_j^A$ (Fig. 2-6).

The condition for a spontaneous change—a decrease in chemical potential—has important implications for discussing fluxes from one region to another. In particular, we can use the chemical potential difference between

Term	Description	Related flux or law
μ_j^*	Constant (cancels out in $\Delta\mu_j$)	—
$RT \ln a_j$	Concentration, Activity ($a_j = \gamma_j c_j$ or $\gamma_j N_j$)	Fick's first law (e.g., Chapter 1, Section 1.2)
$\bar{V}_j P$	Pressure (P in excess of atmospheric)	Darcy's law (Chapter 9, Section 9.3), Poiseuille's law (Chapter 9, Section 9.4)
$z_j FE$	Electrical ($z_w = 0$ for water)	Ohm's law (Chapter 3, Section 3.2; Chapter 8, Section 8.1)
$m_j gh$	Gravitational (Δh small for cells)	Downward flow

Figure 2-7. Contributions to the chemical potential of species j, μ_j (Eq. 2.4). The related fluxes are discussed throughout the text. Note that the Nernst–Planck equation (Eq. 3.8; Chapter 3, Section 3.2A) involves both the concentration term and the electrical term.

two locations as a measure of the "driving force" for the movement of that component. The larger is the chemical potential difference $\mu_j^A - \mu_j^B$, the faster the spontaneous change takes place—in this case, the larger is the flux density of species j from region A to region B.

The chemical potential of a substance depends on its chemical composition but is also influenced by other factors. Here we shall discuss in an intuitive way which environmental factors can influence μ_j. We begin by noting that chemical potential depends on the "randomness" (entropy) of the system and that concentration is a quantitative description of this randomness. For example, the passive process of diffusion discussed in Chapter 1 (Section 1.2) describes neutral molecules spontaneously moving from some region to another where their concentration is lower. In more formal terms, the net diffusion of species j proceeds in the direction of decreasing μ_j, which in this case is the same as that of decreasing concentration (Fig. 2-7). The concept of chemical potential was thus implicit in the development of Fick's equations in Chapter 1 (Section 1.2A,B). The importance of concentration gradients (or differences) to the movement of a substance was also established in the discussion of diffusion. Here we present the effect of concentration on chemical potential in a somewhat more sophisticated manner, using that part of the concentration that is thermodynamically active.

Chemical potential also depends on pressure, which for situations of interest in biology usually means hydrostatic pressure or air pressure (Fig. 2-7). (Although local pressure effects can be readily incorporated into μ_j, the system as a whole must experience a constant external pressure for the Gibbs free energy to have the useful properties discussed previously.) The existence of pressure gradients can cause movements of fluids—the flow of crude oil in long-distance pipelines, blood in arteries, sap in xylem vessels, and air in hurricanes—indicating that pressure differences can affect the direction for spontaneous changes.

Because electrical potential also affects the chemical potential of charged particles, it must be considered when predicting the direction of

their movement (Fig. 2-7). By definition, work must be done to move a positively charged particle to a higher electrical potential. Accordingly, if an electrical potential difference is imposed across an electrolyte solution initially containing a uniform concentration of ions, cations will spontaneously move in one direction (toward the cathode, i.e., to regions of lower electrical potential), and anions will move in the opposite direction (toward the anode). To describe the chemical potential of a charged species we must include an electrical term in μ_j.

Another contributor to chemical potential is gravity (Fig. 2-7). We can readily appreciate that position in a gravitational field affects μ_j because work must be done to move a substance vertically upward. Although the gravitational term can be neglected for ion and water movements across plant cells and membranes, it is important for water movement in a tall tree and in the soil.

In summary, the chemical potential of a substance depends on its concentration, the pressure, the electrical potential, and gravity. We can compare the chemical potentials of a substance on two sides of a barrier to decide whether it is in equilibrium. If μ_j is the same on both sides, we would not expect a net movement of species j to occur spontaneously across the barrier. The relative values of the chemical potential of species j at various locations are used to predict the direction for spontaneous movement of that chemical substance (toward lower μ_j), just as temperatures are compared to predict the direction for heat flow (toward lower T). We will also find that $\Delta\mu_j$ from one region to another gives a convenient measure of the driving force on species j.

2.2B. Analysis of Chemical Potential

Because it has proved experimentally valid, we will represent the chemical potential of any species j by the following sum:

$$\mu_j = \mu_j^* + RT\ln a_j + \overline{V}_j P + z_j F E + m_j g h \qquad (2.4)$$

One measure of the elegance of a mathematical expression is the amount of information that it contains. Based on this criterion, Equation 2.4 is an extremely elegant relation. After defining and describing the various contributions to μ_j indicated in Equation 2.4, we will consider the terms in greater detail for the important special case in which species j is water.

Chemical potential, like electrical and gravitational potentials, must be expressed relative to some arbitrary energy level. An unknown additive constant, or reference level, μ_j^*, is therefore included in Equation 2.4. Because it contains an unknown constant, the actual value of the chemical potential is not determinable. For our applications of chemical potential, however, we are interested in the difference in the chemical potential between two particular locations (Fig. 2-6), so only relative values are important. Specifically, because μ_j^* is added to each of the chemical potentials being compared, it cancels out when the chemical potential in one location is subtracted from that in another to obtain the chemical potential difference

between the two locations. Figure 2-6 illustrates the usefulness of considering differences in chemical potential instead of actual values. Note that the units of μ_j and of μ_j^* are energy per mole of the substance (e.g., J mol^{-1}).

In certain cases we can adequately describe the chemical properties of species *j* by using the concentration of that solute, c_j. Owing to molecular interactions, however, this usually requires that the total solute concentration be low. Molecules of solute species *j* interact with each other as well as with other solutes in the solution, and this influences the behavior of species *j*. Such intermolecular interactions increase as the solution becomes more concentrated. The use of concentrations for describing the thermodynamic properties of some solute thus indicates an approximation, except in the limiting case of infinite dilution for which interactions between solute molecules are negligible. Where precision is required, *activities*—which may be regarded as "corrected" concentrations—are used. Consequently, for general thermodynamic considerations, as in Equation 2.4, the influence of the amount of a particular species *j* on its chemical potential is handled not by its concentration but by its activity, a_j. The activity of solute *j* is related to its concentration by means of an *activity coefficient*, γ_j:

$$a_j = \gamma_j c_j \tag{2.5}$$

The activity coefficient is usually less than 1 because the thermodynamically effective concentration of a species—its activity—is usually less than its actual concentration.

For an ideal solute, γ_j is 1, and the activity of species *j* equals its concentration. This condition can be approached for real solutes in certain dilute aqueous solutions, especially for neutral species. Activity coefficients for charged species can be appreciably less than 1 because of the importance of their electrical interactions (discussed in Chapter 3, Section 3.1C).

The activity of a solvent is defined differently from that of a solute. The solvent is the species having the highest mole fraction in a solution; *mole fraction* indicates the fraction of the total number of moles in a system contributed by that species. For a solvent, a_j is $\gamma_j N_j$, where N_j is its mole fraction. An ideal solvent has γ_{solvent} equal to 1, meaning that the interactions of solvent molecules with the surrounding molecules are indistinguishable from their interactions in the pure solvent. An ideal solution has all activity coefficients equal to 1.

In the expression for chemical potential (Eq. 2.4), the term involving the activity is $RT \ln a_j$. Therefore, the greater the activity of species *j*—or, loosely speaking, the higher its concentration—the larger will be its chemical potential. The logarithmic form can be "justified" in a number of ways, all based on agreement with empirical observations (see Chapter 3, Section 3.2A, and Appendix IV). The factor RT multiplying $\ln a_j$ in Equation 2.4, where R is the gas constant (8.314 J mol^{-1} K^{-1}; see Appendix I) and T is temperature on the absolute scale, results in units of energy per mole for the activity term.

The term $\overline{V}_j P$ in Equation 2.4 represents the effect of pressure on chemical potential. Because essentially all measurements in biology are made on systems at atmospheric pressure, P is conveniently defined as the pressure in

excess of this, and we will adopt such a convention here. $\overline{V}_j$ is the differential increase in volume of a system when a differential amount of species j is added, with temperature, pressure, electrical potential, gravitational position, and other species remaining constant:

$$\overline{V}_j = \left(\frac{\partial V}{\partial n_j}\right)_{T,P,E,h,n_i} \tag{2.6}$$

Specifically, the subscript n_i on the partial derivative in Equation 2.6 means that the number of moles of each species present, other than species j, is held constant when the derivative is taken; the other four subscripts are included to remind us of the additional variables that are held constant.

$\overline{V}_j$ is called the *partial molal volume* of species j [μ_j is actually the partial molal Gibbs free energy, $(\partial G/\partial n_j)_{T,P,E,h,n_i}$ as discussed in Chapter 6, Section 6.1, and Appendix IV]. The partial molal volume of a substance is often nearly equal to the volume of a mole of that species. However, because there is in general a slight change in total volume when substances are mixed, the two are not exactly equal. Indeed, the addition of small concentrations of certain salts can cause an aqueous solution to contract—a phenomenon known as *electrostriction*—which in this special case results in a negative value for $\overline{V}_j$.

Because work is often expressed as pressure times change in volume, we note that $\overline{V}_jP$ has the correct units for μ_j—energy per mole ($\overline{V}_j$ represents the volume per mole). To help justify the form of the pressure term, let us imagine that the solution containing species j is built up by adding small volumes of species j while the system is maintained at a constant pressure P. The work done to add a mole of species j is then the existing pressure times some volume change of the system characterizing a mole of that species, namely, $\overline{V}_j$. (In Appendix IV the inclusion of the $\overline{V}_jP$ term in the chemical potential of species j is justified more formally.)

The influence of electrical potential on the chemical potential of an ion is expressed by the term z_jFE in Equation 2.4, where z_j is an integer representing the charge number of species j, F is a constant known as Faraday's constant (to be considered in Chapter 3, Section 3.1A), and E is the electrical potential. Because water is uncharged ($z_w = 0$), the electrical term does not contribute to its chemical potential. However, electrical potential is of central importance when discussing ions and the origin of membrane potentials; both of these are examined in detail in Chapter 3 (e.g., Section 3.1D), where we explicitly consider the z_jFE term.

Equation 2.4 also includes a gravitational term m_jgh expressing the amount of work required to raise an object of mass per mole m_j to a vertical height h, where g is the gravitational acceleration (about 9.8 m s^{-2}; see Appendix I for details). We recognize that work equals force times distance, where force is mass times acceleration (Newton's second law of motion) and here is m_jg; the distance involved for gravitational work relates to the vertical position, h. In the case of water, which is the primary concern of this chapter, the mass per mole m_w is 0.018016 kg mol^{-1} (18.016 g mol^{-1}). The gravitational term in the chemical potential of water is important for the fall of rain, snow, or hail and also affects the percolation of water downward

through porous soil and the upward movement of water in a tree. The gravitational term m_jgh can have units of $(\text{kg mol}^{-1})(\text{m s}^{-2})(\text{m})$, or $\text{kg m}^2\,\text{s}^{-2}\,\text{mol}^{-1}$, which is J mol^{-1}. (Conversion factors among energy units are given in Appendix II.)

2.2C. Standard State

The additive constant term μ_j^* in Equation 2.4 is the chemical potential of species j for a specific reference state. From the preceding definitions of the various quantities involved, this reference state is attained when the following conditions hold: The activity of species j is 1 ($RT \ln a_j = 0$); the hydrostatic pressure equals atmospheric pressure ($\bar{V}_jP = 0$); the species is uncharged or the electrical potential is zero ($z_jFE = 0$); we are at the zero level for the gravitational term ($m_jgh = 0$); and the temperature equals the temperature of the system under consideration. Under these conditions, μ_j equals μ_j^* (Eq. 2.4).

As already indicated, an activity of 1 is defined in different ways for the solute and the solvent. To describe liquid properties, such as the dielectric constant, the heat of vaporization, and the boiling point, the most convenient standard state is that of the pure solvent. For a solvent, a_{solvent} equals $\gamma_{\text{solvent}}N_{\text{solvent}}$, so the activity is 1 when the mole fraction N_{solvent} is 1 ($\gamma_{\text{solvent}} = 1$ for pure solvent). Specifically, the properties of a solvent are fully expressed when no solute is present. Thus the standard reference state for water is pure water at atmospheric pressure and at the temperature and gravitational level of the system under consideration.

Water has an activity of 1 when N_w (see Eq. 2.8) is 1. The concentration of water on a molality basis (number of moles of a substance per kilogram of water for aqueous solutions) is then $1/(0.018016\ \text{kg mol}^{-1})$ or 55.5 molal (m). The accepted convention for a solute, on the other hand, is that a_j is 1 when γ_jc_j equals 1 m. For example, if γ_j equals 1, a solution with a 1-m concentration of solute j has an activity of 1 m for that solute. Thus the standard state for an ideal solute is when its concentration is 1 m, in which case $RT \ln a_j$ is zero.[2] A special convention is used for the standard state of a gas such as CO_2 or O_2 in an aqueous solution—namely, the activity is 1 when the solution is in equilibrium with a gas phase containing that gas at a pressure of 1 atm. (At other pressures, the activity is proportional to the partial pressure of that gas in the gas phase.)

Conditions appropriate to the three conventions introduced for the standard state (solvent, solute, and gases) usually do not occur under biological situations. A solute is essentially never at a concentration of 1 m, neither is an important gas at a pressure of 1 atm, nor is a pure solvent present (except sometimes for water). Hence, care must be exercised when

2. Because molality involves the moles of a substance per kilogram of solvent, both SI quantities, it is a legitimate SI unit, whereas moles per liter (M) is not recommended (the analogous SI concentration unit is moles m^{-3} = moles per 1000 liters = mM).

accepting chemical data based on standard states and interpreting the consequences in a biological context.

The chemical potential for a solute in the standard state, μ_j^*, depends on the solvent. We will argue that μ_j^* for a polar molecule is smaller in an aqueous solution (in which the species readily dissolves) than in an organic phase such as olive oil (in which it is not as soluble). Consider a two-phase system consisting of water with an overlying layer of olive oil, similar to that discussed in Chapter 1 (Section 1.4B) in relation to measuring partition coefficients. If we add the polar solvent to our system, shake in order to mix the water and the olive oil together, and then wait for the two phases to separate, the solute concentration will be higher in the water phase at the bottom. Let us next analyze this event using symbols, where phase A represents water and phase B is olive oil. Waiting for phase separation is equivalent to waiting for equilibrium, so μ_j^A is then equal to μ_j^B. In the present case, $\mu_j^{*,A} + RT \ln a_j^A$ equals $\mu_j^{*,B} + RT \ln a_j^B$ by Equation 2.4. However, the polar solute is more soluble in water than in olive oil; hence, $RT\ln a_j^A$ is greater than $RT\ln a_j^B$. Because we are at equilibrium, $\mu_j^{*,A}$ must be less than $\mu_j^{*,B}$, as just indicated.

2.2D. Hydrostatic Pressure

Because of their rigid cell walls, large hydrostatic pressures can exist in plant cells, whereas hydrostatic pressures in animal cells generally are relatively small. Hydrostatic pressures are involved in plant support and also are important for the movement of water and solutes in the xylem and in the phloem. The effect of pressure on the chemical potential of water is expressed by the term $\overline{V}_w P$ (see Eq. 2.4), where $\overline{V}_w$ is the partial molal volume of water and P is the hydrostatic pressure in the aqueous solution in excess of the ambient atmospheric pressure. The density of water is about 1000 kg m^{-3} (1 g cm^{-3}); therefore, when 1 mol or 18.0×10^{-3} kg of water is added to water, the volume increases by 18.0×10^{-6} m^3. Using the definition of $\overline{V}_w$ as a partial derivative (see Eq. 2.6), we need to add only an infinitesimally small amount of water (dn_w) and then observe the infinitesimal change in volume of the system (dV). We thus find that $\overline{V}_w$ for pure water is 18.0×10^{-6} m^3 mol^{-1} (18.0 cm^3 mol^{-1}). Although $\overline{V}_w$ can be influenced by the solutes present, it is generally close to 18.0×10^{-6} m^3 mol^{-1} for a dilute solution, a value that we will use for calculations in this book.

Various units are used for expressing pressures (see Chapter 1, Footnote 8). A pressure of one standard atmosphere, or 0.1013 MPa, can support a column of mercury 760 mm high or a column of water 10.35 m high. As indicated in Chapter 1, the SI unit for pressure is the pascal (Pa), which is 1 N m^{-2}; an SI quantity of convenient size for hydrostatic pressures in plants is often the MPa (1 MPa = 10 bar = 9.87 atm). (An extensive list of conversion factors for pressure units is given in Appendix II, which also includes values for related quantities such as RT.) Pressure is force per unit area and so is dimensionally the same as energy per unit volume (e.g., 1 Pa = 1 N m^{-2} = 1 J m^{-3}). $\overline{V}_w$ has the units of m^3 mol^{-1}, so $\overline{V}_w P$ and hence μ_w can be expressed in J mol^{-1}.

2.2E. Water Activity and Osmotic Pressure

Solutes in an aqueous solution decrease the activity of water (a_w). As a first approximation, the decrease in a_w when increasing amounts of solutes are added is a dilution effect. In other words, the mole fraction of water decreases when solutes are added. As its activity thus decreases, the chemical potential of water is lowered (consider the $RT \ln a_j$ term in μ_j). The presence of solutes also leads to an *osmotic pressure* (Π) in the solution. An increase in the concentration of solutes raises the osmotic pressure, indicating that Π and a_w change in opposite directions. In fact, the osmotic pressure and the water activity are related:

$$RT \ln a_w = -\overline{V}_w \Pi \tag{2.7}$$

where subscript w refers to water. As solutes are added, a_w decreases from its value of 1 for pure water, $\ln a_w$ is therefore negative, and Π (defined by Eq. 2.7) is positive. Using Equation 2.7, $RT \ln a_w$ in the chemical potential of water (see Eq. 2.4) can be replaced by $\overline{V}_w \Pi$.

Unfortunately, the use of the terms *osmotic pressure* and *osmotic potential*, as well as their algebraic sign, varies in the literature. Osmotic pressures have been measured using an osmometer (Fig. 2-8), a device having a membrane that ideally is permeable to water but not to the solutes present. When pure water is placed on one side of the membrane and some solution on the other, a net diffusion of water occurs toward the side with the solutes. To counteract this tendency and establish equilibrium, a hydrostatic pressure is necessary on the solution side. This pressure is often called the osmotic

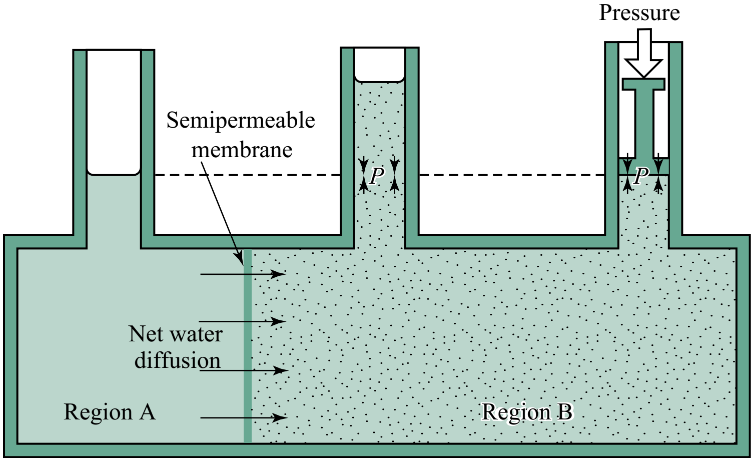


Figure 2-8. Schematic diagram indicating the principle underlying an osmometer in which a semipermeable membrane (permeable to water, but not to solutes) separates pure water (region A) from water containing solutes (region B). Water tends to diffuse toward regions where it has a lower mole fraction, in this case into region B (region of higher osmotic pressure). This causes the solution to rise in the open central column until, at equilibrium, the hydrostatic pressure (P) at the horizontal dashed line is equal to the osmotic pressure (Π) of the solution. Alternatively, we can apply a hydrostatic pressure P to the right-hand column to prevent a net diffusion of water into region B, this P again being equal to Π.

pressure.[3] It depends on the presence of the solutes. Does an isolated solution have an osmotic pressure? In the sense of requiring an applied hydrostatic pressure to maintain equilibrium, the answer is no. Yet the same solution when placed in an osmometer can manifest an osmotic pressure. Thus some physical chemistry texts say that a solution has an osmotic potential—that is, it could show an osmotic pressure if placed in an osmometer—and that osmotic potentials are a property of aqueous solutions. Many plant physiology texts define the negative of the same quantity as the osmotic potential so that the water potential (a quantity that we will introduce later) will depend directly on the osmotic potential, rather than on its negative. We will refer to Π, defined by Equation 2.7, as the osmotic pressure and to its negative as the osmotic potential. (The osmotic potential will be symbolized by Ψ_Π, a component of the water potential Ψ.) In any case, osmotic pressure and hydrostatic pressure are distinct—osmotic pressure is a property of solutions due to the presence of solutes. In contrast, hydrostatic pressure, which at a point in a column of water at rest reflects the weight of the water above that point, can mechanically lead to motion of a liquid, such as blood flow from the heart or water movement in household plumbing from regions of higher to regions of lower hydrostatic pressure.

A direct and convenient way of evaluating osmotic pressure and water activity as defined by Equation 2.7 is to use another *colligative* property. The four colligative properties of a solution—those that depend on the concentration of solutes regardless of their nature, at least in a dilute enough solution—are the freezing point depression, the boiling point elevation, the lowering of the vapor pressure of the solvent, and the osmotic pressure. Thus, if the freezing point of cell sap is measured, $\Pi^{\text{cell sap}}$ can be calculated using the freezing point depression of 1.86°C for a 1-molal solution together with the Van't Hoff relation.

2.2F. Van't Hoff Relation

For many purposes in biology, osmotic pressures are related to the concentration of solutes instead of expressing Π in terms of the water activity, a_w, as is done in Equation 2.7. In general, the greater is the concentration of solutes, the lower a_w becomes and hence the more negative is $\ln a_w$, and the larger is the osmotic pressure. Therefore, some way of expressing a_w in terms of the properties of the solutes is needed. The ensuing derivation not only will show how a_w can be so expressed but also will indicate the many approximations necessary to achieve a rather simple and common expression for Π.

3. If we represent the magnitude of this applied hydrostatic pressure by Π, then the chemical potential of water on the right-hand side of the semipermeable membrane in Figure 2-8 is $\mu_w^* + RT \ln a_w + \overline{V}_w\Pi$. This solution is in equilibrium with pure water on the left-hand side of the membrane, where $\mu_w = \mu_w^*$. Hence, $\mu_w^* + RT \ln a_w + \overline{V}_w\Pi = \mu_w^*$, or $RT \ln a_w + \overline{V}_w\Pi = 0$, which is the same as Equation 2.7.

The activity of water equals $\gamma_w N_w$, where γ_w is the activity coefficient of water and N_w is its mole fraction. Thus N_w is given by

$$N_w = \frac{n_w}{n_w + \sum_j n_j} = \frac{n_w + \sum_j n_j - \sum_j n_j}{n_w + \sum_j n_j} = 1 - \frac{\sum_j n_j}{n_w + \sum_j n_j} \qquad (2.8)$$

where n_w is the number of moles of water, n_j is the number of moles of solute species j, and the summation $\sum_j$ is over all solutes in the system considered. Equation 2.8 expresses the familiar relation that N_w equals 1 minus the mole fraction of solutes, or equivalently, the mole fraction of water plus the mole fraction of solutes equals 1.

For an ideal solution, γ_w equals 1. A water activity coefficient of 1 is approached for dilute solutions, in which case $n_w \gg \sum_j n_j$. (The expression $n_w \gg \sum_j n_j$ defines a dilute solution.) Using Equation 2.8 and assuming a dilute ideal solution, we obtain the following relations for ln a_w:

$$\ln a_w = \ln N_w = \ln\left(1 - \frac{\sum_j n_j}{n_w + \sum_j n_j}\right) \cong -\frac{\sum_j n_j}{n_w + \sum_j n_j} \cong -\frac{\sum_j n_j}{n_w} \qquad (2.9)$$

The penultimate step in Equation 2.9 is based on the series expansion of a logarithm: $\ln(1 - x) = -x - x^2/2 - x^3/3 - \cdots$, a series that converges rapidly for $|x| \ll 1$. The last two steps employ the approximation ($n_w \gg \sum_j n_j$) relevant to a dilute solution. Equation 2.9 is thus restricted to dilute ideal solutions; nevertheless, it is a useful expression indicating that, in the absence of solutes ($\sum_j n_j = 0$), ln a_w is zero and a_w is 1, and that solutes decrease the activity of water from the value of 1 for pure water.

To obtain a familiar form for expressing the osmotic pressure, we can incorporate the approximation for ln a_w given by Equation 2.9 into the definition of osmotic pressure given by Equation 2.7 ($RT \ln a_w = -\overline{V}_w \Pi$), which yields

$$\Pi_s \cong -\frac{RT}{\overline{V}_w}\left(-\frac{\sum_j n_j}{n_w}\right) = RT \sum_j \frac{n_j}{\overline{V}_w n_w} = RT \sum_j c_j \qquad (2.10)$$

where $\overline{V}_w n_w$ is the total volume of water in the system (essentially the total volume of the system for a dilute aqueous solution), $n_j/\overline{V}_w n_w$ is the number of moles of species j per volume of water and so is the concentration of species j (c_j), and the summations are over all solutes.

Osmotic pressure is often expressed by Equation 2.10, known as the Van't Hoff relation, but this is justified only in the limit of dilute ideal solutions. As we have already indicated, an ideal solution has ideal solutes dissolved in an ideal solvent. The first equality in Equation 2.9 assumes that γ_w is unity, so the subsequently derived expression (Eq. 2.10) strictly applies only when water acts as an ideal solvent ($\gamma_w = 1.00$). To emphasize that we are neglecting any factors that cause γ_w to deviate from 1 and thereby affect the measured osmotic pressure (such as the interaction between water and colloids that we will discuss later), Π_s instead of Π has been used in Equation 2.10, and we will follow this convention throughout the book. The increase in osmotic pressure with solute concentration described by Equation 2.10 is

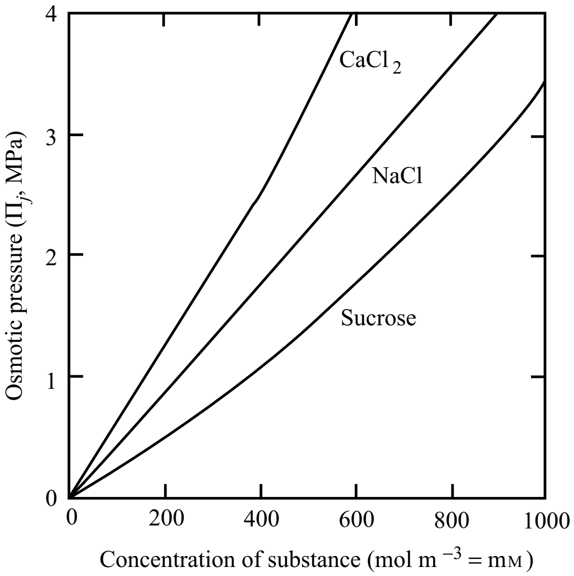


Figure 2-9. Relationship between concentration and osmotic pressure at 20°C for a nonelectrolyte (sucrose) and two readily dissociating salts (NaCl and $CaCl_2$). The different initial slopes indicate the different degrees of dissociation for the three substances and are consistent with the Van't Hoff relation (Eq. 2.10). Data for osmotic pressure are based on the freezing point depression. (Data source: Lide, 2008.)

portrayed in Figure 2-9 and was first clearly recognized by the botanist Wilhelm Pfeffer in 1877. Both the measurement of osmotic pressure and a recognition of its effects are crucial for an understanding of water relations in biology.

The cellular fluid expressed from young leaves of plants like pea or spinach often contains about 0.3 mol of osmotically active particles per kilogram of water. This fluid is referred to as 0.3 osmolal by analogy with molality, which refers to the total concentration. For example, 0.1 molal $CaCl_2$ is about 0.26 osmolal because most of the $CaCl_2$ is dissociated (Fig. 2-9). We note that molality (moles of solute/kilogram of solvent) is a concentration unit that is independent of temperature and suitable for colligative properties (e.g., the freezing point depression is 1.86°C for a 1 osmolal aqueous solution). However, mol m^{-3} and molarity (moles of solute/liter of solution, M) are often more convenient units. Below about 0.2 M, molarity and molality are nearly the same for low-molecular-weight solutes in an aqueous solution, but at high concentrations the molarity can be considerably less than the molality. In fact, the deviations from linearity in Figure 2-9 indicate the greater values for osmolality, to which osmotic pressure is proportional, compared with osmolarity. Such deviations are apparent at lower concentrations for sucrose, which has a relatively high molecular weight of 342, than for $CaCl_2$ or NaCl (molecular weights of 111 and 58, respectively). For instance, at 300 mM, sucrose is 321 m*m*, $CaCl_2$ is 303 m*m*, and NaCl is 302 m*m* (at these concentrations, $CaCl_2$ is about 78% dissociated and NaCl is about 83% dissociated, leading to the higher osmotic pressures than for sucrose; Fig. 2-9).

Using Equation 2.10 ($\Pi_s = RT\sum_j c_j$), we can calculate the osmotic pressure for the cell sap in a leaf. At 20°C, RT is 0.002437 m^3 MPa mol^{-1} (Appendix I), so Π_s for a 0.3-osmolar solution is[4]

$$\Pi_s = (0.002437 \text{ m}^3 \text{ MPa mol}^{-1})(300 \text{ mol m}^{-3}) = 0.73 \text{ MPa}$$

The osmotic pressure of the cell sap pressed out of mature leaves of most plants is 0.6 to 3 MPa; for comparison, seawater has a Π_s of about 2.7 MPa at 20°C.[5]

2.2G. Matric Pressure

For certain applications in plant physiology, another term is frequently included in the chemical potential of water, namely, $\overline{V}_w\tau$, where τ is the *matric pressure* (also called the *matric potential*). The matric pressure does not represent any new force (all related energetic considerations are already fully described by the terms in μ_w for water activity or hydrostatic pressure). However, use of this term is sometimes convenient for dealing explicitly with interactions occurring at interfaces, even though these interfacial forces can also be adequately represented by their contributions to Π or P. In other words, the matric pressure does not represent a new or a different force or a new or a different contribution to μ_w, but it can be used as a bookkeeping device for handling interfacial interactions. To help make this statement more meaningful, we will briefly consider the influence of liquid–solid interfaces on the chemical potential of water at the surfaces of colloids. "Colloid" is a generic term for solid particles approximately 0.002 to 1 μm in diameter suspended in a liquid, such as proteins, ribosomes, and even some membrane-bounded organelles.

When water molecules are associated with interfaces such as those provided by membranes or colloidal particles, they have less tendency either to react chemically in the bulk solution or to escape into a surrounding vapor phase. Interfaces thus lower the thermodynamic activity of the water (a_w), especially near their surfaces. Solutes also lower the water activity (Eq. 2.10). As a useful first approximation, we can consider that these two effects lowering water activity are additive in a

4. The concentration unit consistent with the conventional SI units for R is mol m^{-3}. In that regard, the derivation of the Van't Hoff relation (Eq. 2.10) uses the volume of water, not the volume of the solution, so technically a unit based on molality is implied. However, the Van't Hoff relation is only an approximate representation of the osmotic pressure appropriate for dilute solutions, for which the numerical difference between molality and molarity is usually minor, as indicated in the text. Thus, molarity of osmotically active particles (= osmolarity) is suitable for most calculations and is generally more convenient (note that concentration in moles per m^3 is numerically equal to mM).

5. The ionic content of seawater, which varies locally with agricultural and sewage runoff, upwelling, and other situations, averages about 546 mM Cl^-, 470 mM Na^+, 53 mM Mg^{2+}, 28 mM SO_4^{2-}, 10 mM K^+, and 10 mM Ca^{2+}, with lesser concentrations of other ions.

solution containing both ordinary solutes and colloids or other interfaces. Osmotic pressure (Π) depends on the activity of water regardless of the reason for the departure of a_w from 1; that is, Π still equals $-(RT/\overline{V}_w)\ \ln a_w$ (Eq. 2.7). Recalling that a_w equals $\gamma_w N_w$, and noting that $\ln xy = \ln x + \ln y$ (Appendix III), we can write the following relations:

$$\Pi = -\frac{RT}{\overline{V}_w} \ln \gamma_w N_w = -\frac{RT}{\overline{V}_w} \ln \gamma_w - \frac{RT}{\overline{V}_w} \ln N_w = \tau + \Pi_s \qquad (2.11)$$

where τ represents a matric pressure resulting from the water–solid interactions at the surfaces of the colloids and other interfaces that lower γ_w from 1. If we let τ equal $-(RT/\overline{V}_w)\ln\gamma_w$ (Eq. 2.11), then γ_w less than 1 means that τ is positive.

Π_s in Equation 2.11 is the osmotic pressure of all solutes, including the concentration of the colloids, as represented by Equation 2.10 ($\Pi_s \cong RT\sum_j c_j$). In other words, in the derivation of Π_s we dealt only with $-(RT/\overline{V}_w)\ln N_w$ because γ_w was set equal to 1. For an exact treatment when many interfaces are present (e.g., in the cytosol of a typical cell), we cannot set γ_w equal to 1 because the activity of water, and hence the osmotic pressure (Π), is affected by proteins, other colloids, and other interfaces. In such a case, Equation 2.11 suggests a simple way in which a matric pressure may be related to the reduction of the activity coefficient of water caused by the interactions at interfaces. Equation 2.11 should not be viewed as a relation defining matric pressures for all situations but rather for cases for which it might be useful to represent interfacial interactions by a separate term that can be added to Π_s, the effect of the solutes on Π.

Although Π and a_w may be the same throughout some system, both Π_s and τ in Equation 2.11 may vary. For example, water activity in the bulk of the solution may be predominantly lowered by solutes, whereas at or near the surface of colloids the main factor decreasing a_w from 1 could be the interfacial attraction and binding of water. As already indicated, such interfacial interactions reduce the activity coefficient of water, γ_w.

Other areas of plant physiology for which matric pressures or matric potentials have been invoked are descriptions of the chemical potential of water in soil and in cell walls. (Cell walls will be further considered at the end of this chapter, and soil matric potentials will be mentioned in Chapter 9, Section 9.3A) Surface tension at the numerous air–water interfaces for the interstices of a cell wall or among soil particles leads to a tension in the water. Such a tension is a negative hydrostatic pressure (i.e., $P < 0$). Although it is not necessary to do so, P is sometimes used to refer only to positive pressures, and a negative P in such pores has been called a positive matric pressure (or potential). Some books define this same negative hydrostatic pressure in the water in cell wall interstices or between soil particles as a negative matric potential. It is more straightforward and consistent to refer to the quantity that reduces μ_w in such pores as simply a negative P.

2.2H. Water Potential

From the definition of chemical potential (Eq. 2.4) and the formal expression for osmotic pressure (Eq. 2.7), we can express the chemical potential of water (μ_w) as

$$\mu_w = \mu_w^* - \overline{V}_w\Pi + \overline{V}_w P + m_w gh \qquad (2.12)$$

where the electrical term (z_jFE) is not included because water carries no net charge ($z_w = 0$). The quantity $\mu_w - \mu_w^*$ is important for discussing the water relations of plants. It represents the work involved in moving 1 mol of water from a pool of pure water at atmospheric pressure, at the same temperature as the system under consideration, and at the zero level for the gravitational term to some arbitrary point in the system (at constant pressure and temperature for the system). A difference between two locations in the value of $\mu_w - \mu_w^*$ indicates that water is not in equilibrium—water tends to flow toward the region where $\mu_w - \mu_w^*$ is lower.

A quantity proportional to $\mu_w - \mu_w^*$ that is commonly used in studies of plant water relations is the *water potential*, Ψ, defined as

$$\Psi = \frac{\mu_w - \mu_w^*}{\overline{V}_w} = P - \Pi + \rho_w gh \qquad (2.13a)$$

which follows directly from Equation 2.12 plus the identification of the mass per mole of water (m_w) divided by the volume per mole of water ($\overline{V}_w$), or mass/volume, as the density of water, ρ_w. Equation 2.13a indicates that an increase in hydrostatic pressure raises the water potential and an increase in osmotic pressure lowers it.

Because work must be performed to raise an object in the gravitational field of the earth, vertical position also affects the chemical potential. Consequently, the term $\rho_w gh$ is included in the water potential given by Equation 2.13a, at least when water moves an appreciable distance vertically in the gravitational field. The magnitude of $\rho_w g$ is 0.0098 MPa m^{-1}; if water moves 10 m vertically upward in a tree, the gravitational contribution to the water potential is increased by 0.10 MPa. For many applications in this text, such as considerations of chemical reactions or the crossing of membranes, little or no change occurs in vertical position, and the gravitational term can then be omitted from μ_j and Ψ.

As mentioned when introducing osmotic pressure, a number of conventions are used to describe the osmotic and other water potential terms. One such convention is to define Ψ as

$$\Psi = \Psi_P + \Psi_\Pi + \Psi_h \qquad (2.13b)$$

where Ψ_P (= P) is called the hydrostatic potential or pressure potential, Ψ_Π (= $-\Pi$) is the osmotic potential, and Ψ_h(= $\rho_w gh$) is the gravitational potential. Although uniformity of expression is a cherished ideal, one should not be too alarmed that various conventions are used because persons from many fields have contributed to our understanding of plants. Because Ψ is so important for understanding plant water relations, a method for measuring it is illustrated in Figure 2-10.

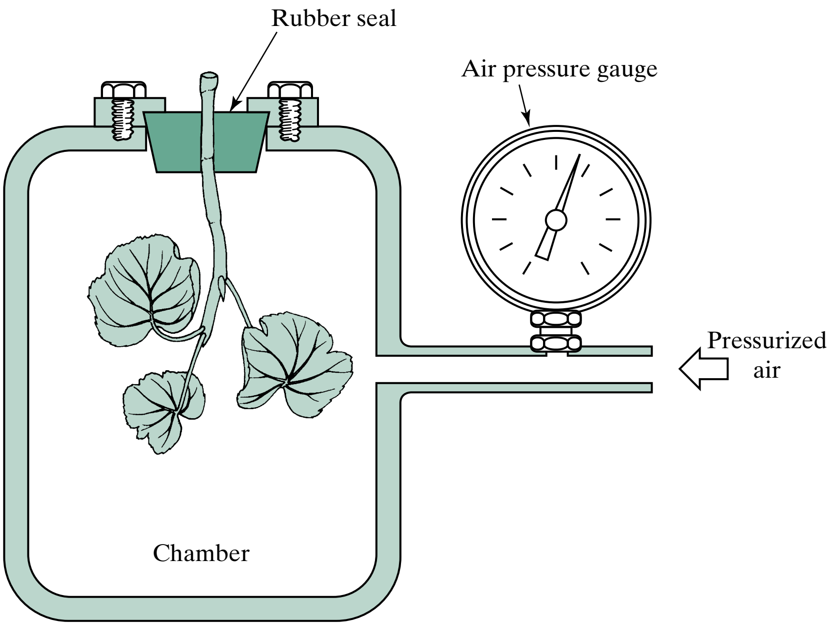


Figure 2-10. Schematic diagram of a "pressure bomb," which can be used to measure the xylem pressure, P^{xylem}, averaged over the material placed in the chamber. To make a measurement, a severed part of a plant is placed in the chamber with its freshly cut end protruding through a rubber seal. The air pressure (P^{air}) in the chamber is then gradually increased until it just causes the exudation of xylem sap at the cut end (usually viewed with a magnifying glass or a dissecting microscope). At this stage, the resulting pressure of the sap, which equals $P^{\text{xylem}} + P^{\text{air}}$, is zero, so P^{xylem} equals $-P^{\text{air}}$. If the xylem osmotic pressure can be ignored, P^{xylem} is approximately equal to Ψ^{xylem}, which can be the same as the water potential of the other tissue in the chamber (if water equilibration has been achieved). Thus, $-P^{\text{air}}$ can be used to estimate Ψ^{i}, the internal water potential of the plant part in the pressure bomb.

2.3. Central Vacuole and Chloroplasts

We next consider the water relations of both the large central vacuole and the chloroplasts, using the water potential just defined. Our focus will be on situations in which no net flow of water occurs across the limiting membranes surrounding these subcellular compartments and for the special case of nonpenetrating solutes. Hence, we will be considering the idealization of semipermeable membranes (see Fig. 2-8). The more general and biologically realistic case of penetrating solutes will be discussed in Chapter 3 after a consideration of the properties of solutes and the introduction of concepts from irreversible thermodynamics.

The central vacuole occupies up to 90% of the volume of a mature plant cell, so most of the cellular water is in this vacuole. The vacuolar volume is generally 2 to 4 × 10^4 µm^3 for the mesophyll cells in a leaf (Fig. 1-2) and can be much larger in certain algal cells. Because the vacuole is nearly as large as the cell containing it, special procedures are required to remove the vacuole from a plant cell without rupturing its surrounding membrane, the tonoplast. Chloroplasts are much smaller than the central vacuole, often having volumes near 30 µm^3 in vivo (sizes vary among plant species). When

chloroplasts are carefully isolated, suitable precautions will ensure that their limiting membranes remain intact. Such intact chloroplasts can be placed in solutions having various osmotic pressures, and the resulting movement of water into or out of the organelles can be precisely measured.

2.3A. Water Relations of the Central Vacuole

To predict whether and in what direction water will move, we need to know the value of the water potential in the various compartments under consideration. At equilibrium, the water potential is the same in all communicating phases, such as those separated by membranes. For example, when water is in equilibrium across the tonoplast, the water potential is the same in the vacuole as it is in the cytosol. No force then drives water across this membrane, and thus no net flow of water occurs into or out of the vacuole.

The tonoplast does not have an appreciable difference in hydrostatic pressure across it. A higher internal hydrostatic pressure would cause an otherwise slack (folded) tonoplast to be mechanically pushed outward. The observed lack of such motion indicates that ΔP is close to zero across a typical tonoplast. If the tonoplast were taut, ΔP would cause a stress in the membrane, analogous to the cell wall stresses discussed in Chapter 1 (Section 1.5C); namely, the stress would be $r\Delta P/2t$ for a spherical vacuole (see Eq. 1.15). However, the tensile strength of biological membranes is low—membranes can rupture when a stress of 0.2 to 1.0 MPa develops in them. For a tonoplast 7 nm thick with a maximum stress before rupturing of 0.5 MPa surrounding a spherical vacuole 14 μm in radius, the maximum hydrostatic pressure difference across the tonoplast is

$$\Delta P = \frac{2t\sigma}{r} = \frac{(2)(7 \times 10^{-9}\ \mathrm{m})(0.5\ \mathrm{MPa})}{(14 \times 10^{-6}\ \mathrm{m})} = 0.5 \times 10^{-3}\ \mathrm{MPa}$$

which is very small. Thus P is essentially the same in the cytosol as in the vacuole. With this simplifying assumption, and for the equilibrium situation when Ψ is the same in the two phases, Equation 2.13a ($\Psi = P - \Pi + \rho_w gh$, where $\Delta h = 0$ across a membrane) gives

$$\Pi^{\mathrm{cytosol}} = \Pi^{\mathrm{vacuole}} \tag{2.14}$$

where Π^{cytosol} is the osmotic pressure in the cytosol and Π^{vacuole} is that in the central vacuole.

The central vacuole is a relatively simple aqueous phase that can act as a storage reservoir for metabolites or toxic products. For example, the nocturnal storage of organic acids, such as malic acid, takes place in the central vacuoles of Crassulacean acid metabolism plants (mentioned in Chapter 8, Section 8.5A), and certain secondary chemical products, such as phenolics, alkaloids, tannins, glucosides, and flavonoids (e.g., anthocyanins), often accumulate in central vacuoles. Compared with the central vacuole, the cytoplasm is a more complex phase containing many colloids and membrane-bounded organelles. Because the central vacuole contains few colloidal or other interfaces, any matric pressure in it is

negligible compared with the osmotic pressure resulting from the vacuolar solutes. Expressing osmotic pressure by Equation 2.11 ($\Pi = \tau + \Pi_s$) and assuming that τ^{vacuole} is negligible, we can replace Π^{vacuole} in Equation 2.14 by Π_s^{vacuole} (i.e., the decrease in vacuolar water activity is due almost solely to solutes). Water is thus acting like an ideal solvent ($\gamma_w = 1$). On the other hand, water activity in the cytosol is considerably lowered both by solutes and by interfaces. Unlike the case for the central vacuole, individual water molecules in the cytosol are never far from proteins, organelles, or other colloids, so interfacial interactions can substantially affect a_w^{cytosol}. Thus both Π_s^{cytosol} and τ^{cytosol} contribute to Π^{cytosol}. Hence, Equation 2.14 indicates that $\tau^{\text{cytosol}} + \Pi_s^{\text{cytosol}} = \Pi_s^{\text{vacuole}}$. Because τ^{cytosol} is positive, we conclude that at equilibrium the osmotic pressure in the central vacuole due to solutes, Π_s^{vacuole}, must be larger than is Π_s^{cytosol}. Equation 2.14 thus leads to the prediction that the central vacuole has a higher concentration of osmotically active solutes than does the cytosol.

2.3B. Boyle–Van't Hoff Relation

The volume of a chloroplast or other membrane-bounded body changes in response to variations in the osmotic pressure of the external solution, Π^{o}. This is a consequence of the properties of membranes, which generally allow water to move readily across them but restrict the passage of certain solutes, such as sucrose. For example, if Π^{o} outside a membrane-bounded aqueous compartment were raised, we would expect that water would flow out across the membrane to the region of lower water potential and thereby decrease the compartment volume, whereas in general little movement of solutes occurs in such a case. This differential permeability leads to the "osmometric behavior" characteristic of many cells and organelles. The conventional expression quantifying this volume response to changes in the external osmotic pressure is the Boyle–Van't Hoff relation:

$$\Pi^{\text{o}}(V - b) = RT \sum_j \varphi_j n_j \tag{2.15}$$

where Π^{o} is the osmotic pressure of the external solution; V is the volume of the cell or organelle; b is the so-called nonosmotic volume (osmotically inactive volume), which is frequently considered to be the volume of a solid phase within volume V that is not penetrated by water; n_j is the number of moles of species j within $V - b$; and φ_j is the osmotic coefficient, a correction factor indicating the relative osmotic effect of species j.

In this chapter we will derive the Boyle–Van't Hoff relation using the chemical potential of water, and in Chapter 3 (Section 3.6B) we will extend the treatment to penetrating solutes by using irreversible thermodynamics. Although the Boyle–Van't Hoff expression will be used to interpret the osmotic responses only of chloroplasts, the equations that will be developed are general and can be applied equally well to mitochondria, whole cells, or other membrane-surrounded bodies.

The Boyle–Van't Hoff relation applies to the equilibrium situation for which the water potential is the same on either side of the two membranes surrounding a chloroplast. When Ψ^{i} equals Ψ^{o}, net water movement across the membranes ceases, and the volume of a chloroplast is constant. (The superscript i refers to the inside of the cell or organelle and the superscript o to the outside.) If we were to measure the chloroplast volume under such conditions, the external solution would generally be at atmospheric pressure ($P^{\mathrm{o}} = 0$). By Equation 2.13a ($\Psi = P - \Pi$, when the gravitational term is ignored), the water potential in the external solution is then

$$\Psi^{\mathrm{o}} = -\Pi^{\mathrm{o}} \tag{2.16}$$

Like Ψ^{o} (Eq. 2.16), the water potential inside the chloroplasts, Ψ^{i}, also depends on osmotic pressure. However, the internal hydrostatic pressure (P^{i}) may be different from atmospheric pressure and should be included in the expression for Ψ^{i}. In addition, macromolecules and solid–liquid interfaces inside the chloroplasts can lower the activity coefficient of water, which we can represent by a matric pressure τ^{i} (see Eq. 2.11). To allow for this possibility, the internal osmotic pressure (Π^{i}) is the sum of the solute and the interfacial contributions, in the manner expressed by Equation 2.11. Using Equation 2.13a, Ψ^{i} is therefore

$$\Psi^{\mathrm{i}} = P^{\mathrm{i}} - \Pi^{\mathrm{i}} = P^{\mathrm{i}} - \Pi_s^{\mathrm{i}} - \tau^{\mathrm{i}} \tag{2.17}$$

We will now reexpress Π_s^{i} and then equate Ψ^{o} to Ψ^{i}. For a dilute solution inside the chloroplasts, Π_s^{i} equals $RT\sum_j n_j^{\mathrm{i}}/(\bar{V}_w n_{\mathrm{w}}^{\mathrm{i}})$ by Equation 2.10. Equating the water potential outside the chloroplast (Eq. 2.16) to that inside (Eq. 2.17), the condition for water equilibrium across the limiting membranes is

$$\Pi^{\mathrm{o}} = RT\frac{\sum_j n_j^{\mathrm{i}}}{\bar{V}_w n_w^{\mathrm{i}}} + \tau^{\mathrm{i}} - P^{\mathrm{i}} \tag{2.18}$$

Although this expression may look a little frightening, it concisely states that at equilibrium the water potential is the same on both sides of the membranes and that we can explicitly recognize various possible contributors to the two Ψ's involved.

To appreciate the refinements that this thermodynamic treatment introduces into the customary expression describing the osmotic responses of cells and organelles, we compare Equation 2.18 with Equation 2.15, the conventional Boyle–Van't Hoff relation. The volume of water inside the chloroplast is $\bar{V}_w n_w^{\mathrm{i}}$, because n_w^{i} is the number of moles of internal water and $\bar{V}_w$ is the volume per mole of water. This factor in Equation 2.18 can be identified with $V - b$ in Equation 2.15. Instead of being designated the "nonosmotic volume," b is more appropriately called the "nonwater volume," as it includes the volume of the internal solutes, colloids, and membranes. In other words, the total volume (V) minus the nonwater volume (b) equals the volume of internal water ($\bar{V}_w n_w^{\mathrm{i}}$). We also note that the possible hydrostatic and matric contributions included in Equation 2.18 are neglected in the usual Boyle–Van't Hoff relation. In summary, although certain approximations and assumptions are incorporated into Equation 2.18 (e.g., that solutes do not cross the limiting membranes and that the

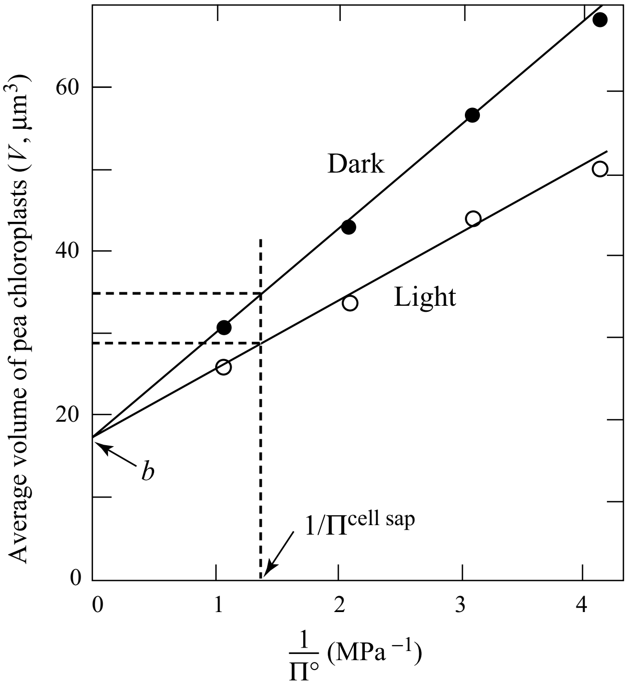


Figure 2-11. Volumes of pea chloroplasts at various external osmotic pressures, Π^{o}. The chloroplasts were isolated from plants in the light or the dark, indicating that illumination decreases chloroplast volume. [Source: Nobel (1969b); used by permission.]

solutions are dilute), it still describes osmotic responses of cells and organelles better than the conventional Boyle–Van't Hoff relation.

2.3C. Osmotic Responses of Chloroplasts

To illustrate the use of Equation 2.18 in interpreting osmotic data, we will consider osmotic responses of pea chloroplasts suspended in external solutions of various osmotic pressures. It is customary to plot the volume V versus the reciprocal of the external osmotic pressure, $1/\Pi^{o}$, so certain algebraic manipulations are needed to express Equation 2.18 in a more convenient form. After transferring $\tau^{i} - P^{i}$ to the left-hand side of Equation 2.18 and then multiplying both sides by $\overline{V}_w n_w^i/(\Pi^{o} - \tau^{i} + P^{i})$, $\overline{V}_w n_w^i$ can be shown to equal $RT\sum_j n_j^i/(\Pi^{o} - \tau^{i} + P^{i})$. The measured chloroplast volume V can be represented by $\overline{V}_w n_w^i + b$, that is, as the sum of the aqueous and nonaqueous contributions. We thus obtain

$$V = RT\frac{\sum_j n_j^i}{(\Pi^{o} - \tau^{i} + P^{i})} + b \qquad (2.19)$$

for the modified form of the Boyle–Van't Hoff relation.

Figure 2-11 indicates that the volume of pea chloroplasts varies linearly with $1/\Pi^{o}$ over a considerable range of external osmotic pressure. Therefore, $-\tau^{i} + P^{i}$ in Equation 2.19 must be either negligibly small for pea chloroplasts

compared with Π^{o} or perhaps proportional to Π^{o}. For simplicity, we will consider only the observed proportionality between V and $1/\Pi^{o}$. In other words, we will assume that $V - b$ equals $RT\sum_j n_j^{i}/\Pi^{o}$ for pea chloroplasts. We will return to such considerations in Chapter 3 (Section 3.6B,C), where we will further refine the Boyle–Van't Hoff relation to include the more realistic case in which solutes can cross the surrounding membranes.

The relatively simple measurement of the volumes of pea chloroplasts for various external osmotic pressures can yield a considerable amount of information about the organelles. If we measure the volume of the isolated chloroplasts at the same osmotic pressure as in the cytosol, we can determine the chloroplast volume that occurs in the plant cell. Cell "sap" expressed from young pea leaves can have an osmotic pressure of 0.70 MPa; such sap comes mainly from the central vacuole, but because we expect Π^{cytosol} to be essentially equal to Π^{vacuole} (Eq. 2.14), $\Pi^{\text{cell sap}}$ is about the same as Π^{cytosol} (some uncertainty exists because during extraction the cell sap can come into contact with water in the cell walls). At an external osmotic pressure of 0.70 MPa (indicated by an arrow and dashed vertical line in Fig. 2-11), pea chloroplasts have a volume of 29 μm^3 when isolated from illuminated plants and 35 μm^3 when isolated from plants in the dark (Fig. 2-11). Because these volumes occur at approximately the same osmotic pressure as found in the cell, they are presumably reliable estimates of pea chloroplast volumes in vivo.

The data in Figure 2-11 indicate that light affects the chloroplast volume in vivo. Although the basis for the size changes is not fully understood, chloroplasts in many plants do have a smaller volume in the light than in the dark. The decrease in volume upon illumination of the plants is observed by both phase contrast and electron microscopy as a flattening or decrease in thickness of the chloroplasts. This flattening, which amounts to about 20% of the thickness for pea chloroplasts in vivo, is in the vertical direction for the chloroplast depicted in Figure 1-10. We also note that the slopes of the osmotic response curves in Figure 2-11 are equal to $RT\sum_j n_j^{i}$ (see Eq. 2.19). The slope is 50% greater for pea chloroplasts from plants in the dark than from those in the light, suggesting that chloroplasts in the dark contain more osmotically active particles. In fact, illumination causes an efflux of K^{+} and Cl^{-} from the chloroplasts. Also, the 20% decrease in chloroplast volume in the light in vivo reflects an exodus of nearly 40% of the internal water, leading to a concentrating effect on the remaining solutes such as Mg^{2+}, an ion that is important for enzymes involved in photosynthesis.

The intercept on the ordinate in Figure 2-11 is the chloroplast volume theoretically attained in an external solution of infinite osmotic pressure—a $1/\Pi^{o}$ of zero is the same as a Π^{o} of infinity. For such an infinite Π^{o}, all of the internal water would be removed ($n_w^{i} = 0$), and the volume, which is obtained by extrapolation, is that of the nonaqueous components of the chloroplasts. (Some water is tightly bound to proteins and other substances and presumably remains bound even at the hypothetical infinite osmotic pressure; such water is not part of the internal water, $\overline{V}_w n_w^{i}$). Thus the intercept on the ordinate of a V-versus-$1/\Pi^{o}$ plot corresponds to b in the conventional Boyle–Van't Hoff relation (Eq. 2.15). This intercept (indicated by an arrow in Fig. 2-11) equals 17 μm^3 for chloroplasts both in the light and in the

dark. (The extra solutes in a chloroplast in the dark correspond to less than 0.1 μm^3 of solids.) Using the chloroplast volumes obtained for a Π^o of 0.70 MPa and 17 μm^3 for the nonwater volume b, we find that the fractional water content of pea chloroplasts in the dark is

$$\frac{V-b}{V} = \frac{(35\ \mu m^3 - 17\ \mu m^3)}{(35\ \mu m^3)} = 0.51$$

or 51%. In the light it is 41%. These relatively low water contents in the organelles are consistent with the extensive internal lamellar system (see Fig. 1-10) and the abundance of CO_2 fixation enzymes in chloroplasts. Thus osmometric responses of cells and organelles can also be used to provide information on their fractional water content.

2.4. Water Potential and Plant Cells

In this section we will shift our emphasis from a consideration of the water relations of subcellular bodies to those of whole cells and extend the development to include the case of water fluxes. Whether water enters or leaves a plant cell, how much, and the rate of movement all depend on the water potential outside compared with that inside. The external water potential Ψ^o can often be varied experimentally, and the direction as well as the magnitude of the resulting water movement will give information about Ψ^i. Moreover, the equilibrium value of Ψ^o can be used to estimate the internal osmotic pressure Π^i. We will also consider various ways of examining the relationships among Ψ^i, Π^i, and P^i.

A loss of water from plant shoots—indeed, sometimes even an uptake—occurs at cell–air interfaces. As we would expect, the chemical potential of water in cells compared with that in the adjacent air determines the direction for net water movement at such locations. Thus we must obtain an expression for the water potential in a vapor phase and then relate this Ψ_{wv} to Ψ for the liquid phases in a cell. We will specifically consider the factors influencing the water potential at the plant cell–air interface, namely, in the cell wall. We will find that $\Psi^{\text{cell wall}}$ is dominated by a negative hydrostatic pressure resulting from surface tension effects in the cell wall pores.

2.4A. Incipient Plasmolysis

For usual physiological conditions, a positive hydrostatic pressure exists inside a plant cell, meaning that the cell is under turgor. By suitably adjusting the solutes in an external solution bathing such a turgid cell, P^i can be reduced to zero, thereby enabling an estimate of Π^i, as the following argument will indicate (Fig. 2-12).

Let us place the cell in pure water ($\Pi^o = 0$) at atmospheric pressure ($P^o = 0$). Ψ^o is then zero (ignoring the gravitational term, $\Psi = P - \Pi$; Eq. 2.13a), and $\Psi^i = P^i - \Pi^i$ (the inner phase can be the cytosol). If the cell is in equilibrium with this external solution ($\Psi^o = \Psi^i$), P^i must then equal Π^i (Fig. 2-12). Suppose that Π^o is now gradually raised from its initial zero value—for example, by adding solute to the external solution. If the cell

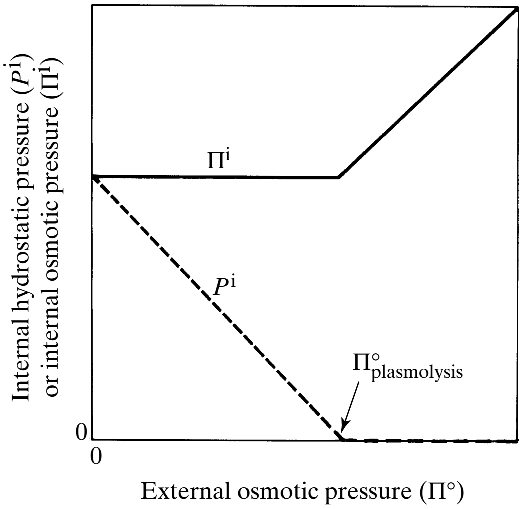


Figure 2-12. Responses of an initially turgid cell (internal hydrostatic pressure $P^i > 0$) placed in pure water ($\Pi^o = 0$) to changes in the external osmotic pressure (Π^o). As Π^o increases, P^i decreases. At the point of incipient plasmolysis (plasma membrane just beginning to pull away from the cell wall), P^i is reduced to zero, which is hence also called the turgor loss point. Constancy of cell volume and water equilibrium are assumed at each step as Π^o is raised (actually, Π^i increases a few percent as Π^o is raised from 0 to $\Pi^o_{plasmolysis}$ because the cell shrinks slightly accompanying the decrease of P^i to zero).

remains in equilibrium, then Π^o equals $\Pi^i - P^i$ ($P^o = 0$ because the external solution is at atmospheric pressure). As Π^o is increased, P^i will decrease, whereas Π^i usually does not change very much. More precisely, because the cell wall is quite rigid, the cell will not appreciably change its volume in response to small changes in P^i. [Because the cell wall has elastic properties (see Chapter 1, Section 1.5C), some water flows out as P^i decreases and the cell shrinks, a matter to which we will return shortly.] If the cell volume does not change in response to changes in P^i and no internal solutes leak out, Π^i will remain constant.

As the external osmotic pressure is raised, Π^o will eventually become equal to Π^i. In such a plant cell at equilibrium, P^i is 0, so no internal hydrostatic pressure is exerted against the cell wall when Π^o equals Π^i (Fig. 2-12). The cell will thus lose its turgidity. If Π^o is increased further, water will flow out of the cell, plasmolysis will occur as the plasma membrane pulls away from the rigid cell wall, and the internal osmotic pressure will increase (the same amount of solutes in less water). Ignoring for the moment any overall volume change of the protoplast, we find that the condition under which water just begins to move out of the cell and the plasma membrane just begins to pull away from the cell wall—referred to as the point of *incipient plasmolysis* and illustrated in Figures 2-12 and 2-13—is

$$\Pi^o_{plasmolysis} = \Pi^i_{plasmolysis} \tag{2.20}$$

Equation 2.20 suggests that a relatively simple measurement ($\Pi^o_{plasmolysis}$) is sufficient to estimate the osmotic pressure ($\Pi^i_{plasmolysis}$) occurring inside an individual plant cell at incipient plasmolysis. Under natural conditions, desiccation of plants can lead to cellular plasmolysis in leaves, roots, and stems,

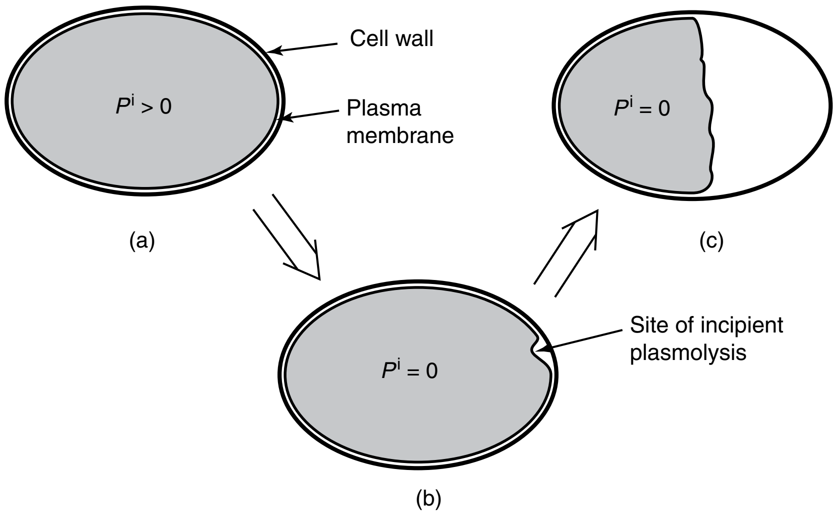


Figure 2-13. Relative position of the plasma membrane for a plant cell undergoing plasmolysis: (a) turgid cell with the plasma membrane pushing against the cell wall; (b) cell just undergoing plasmolysis, i.e., at incipient plasmolysis; and (c) cell with extensive plasmolysis, as the plasma membrane has pulled away from the cell wall over a large region.

in which case the space between the cell wall and the retracting plasma membrane is filled with air (Fig. 2-13); when plasmolysis is caused by increasing the osmotic pressure of a solution perfusing excised plant tissue, the space between the cell wall and the plasma membrane is generally filled with the external solution.

The existence of an internal hydrostatic pressure within a plant cell leads to stresses in its cell wall and a resulting elastic deformation or strain, as indicated in Chapter 1 (Section 1.5C). The decrease of P^i to 0, also known as the *turgor loss point* that occurs in taking a turgid plant cell to the point of incipient plasmolysis, must therefore be accompanied by a contraction of the cell as the cell wall stresses are relieved. This decrease in volume means that some water will flow out of the cell before the point of incipient plasmolysis is reached. If no internal solutes enter or leave as the cell shrinks, then the osmotic pressure inside will increase (the same amount of solutes in a smaller volume). As a useful first approximation, we can assume that the change in osmotic pressure reciprocally follows the change in volume; that is, the product of Π^i and the cellular volume is approximately constant (Π^i is approximately proportional to the amount of solutes per unit cell volume; Eq. 2.10). With this assumption, the osmotic pressure in the cell at incipient plasmolysis—described by Equation 2.20 and determined by the turgor loss point found when varying the external osmotic pressure—can be corrected to its original value by using the ratio of the initial volume to the final volume of the cell (final Π^i/initial Π^i = initial volume/final volume). The change in volume from full turgor to the turgor loss point is only a few percent for most plant cells, in which case fairly accurate estimates of Π^i can be obtained from plasmolytic studies alone.

Measurements of $\Pi^o_{\text{plasmolysis}}$ often give values near 0.7 MPa for cells in storage tissues like onion bulbs or carrot roots and in young leaves of pea or

spinach. These values of the external osmotic pressure provide information on various contributors to the water potential inside the cell, as Equation 2.20 indicates. When water is in equilibrium within the plant cell at the point of incipient plasmolysis, $\Pi^{\mathrm{i}}_{\mathrm{plasmolysis}}$ in Equation 2.20 is the osmotic pressure both in the cytosol and in the vacuole. Π^{i} can be replaced by $\Pi^{\mathrm{i}}_{s} + \tau^{\mathrm{i}}$ (Eq. 2.11), where Π^{i}_{s} is the osmotic pressure contributed by the internal solutes and τ^{i} is the matric pressure. This relation was invoked when the implications of Equation 2.14 ($\Pi^{\mathrm{cytosol}} = \Pi^{\mathrm{vacuole}}$) were discussed, and the various arguments presented at that time extend to the present case. Specifically, because the possible matric pressure in the vacuole is negligible, $\Pi^{\mathrm{o}}_{\mathrm{plasmolysis}}$ should be a good estimate of $\Pi^{\mathrm{vacuole}}_{\mathrm{s}}$. Moreover, τ^{cytosol} is most probably significant because the water activity in the cytosol can be lowered by the many interfaces present there. Thus, $\Pi^{\mathrm{o}}_{\mathrm{plasmolysis}}$ is an upper limit for $\Pi^{\mathrm{cytosol}}_{\mathrm{s}}$, as a matric pressure can exist in the cytosol. Determination of the external osmotic pressure at the point of incipient plasmolysis thus provides information on the osmotic pressure existing in different compartments within the plant cell.

2.4B. Höfler Diagram and Pressure–Volume Curve

We next examine the relationship between cellular water potential components and protoplast volume in a way introduced by Karl Höfler in 1920 and now referred to as a *Höfler diagram* (Fig. 2-14). The protoplast volume is maximal when the cell is in equilibrium with pure water, in which case the internal water potential Ψ^{i} is zero and P^{i} equals Π^{i} (left-hand side of Fig. 2-12, right-hand side of Fig. 2-14). As Ψ^{i} decreases, P^{i} decreases until the point of incipient plasmolysis and zero turgor is reached. The decrease in P^{i} causes a slight shrinkage of the cell and hence a slight concentrating of the solutes, so Π^{i} increases slightly as P^{i} decreases. Indeed, the product of protoplast volume and Π^{i} can be essentially constant if the amount of solutes in the cell does not change, as indicated previously, so the internal osmotic pressure reciprocally follows the protoplast volume. Figure 2-14 also shows that Ψ^{i} is equal to $-\Pi^{\mathrm{i}}$ when the protoplast volume decreases below the value for incipient plasmolysis, as P^{i} is then zero (based on Eq. 2.13, $\Psi^{\mathrm{i}} = P^{\mathrm{i}} - \Pi^{\mathrm{i}} = \Psi^{\mathrm{i}}_{P} + \Psi^{\mathrm{i}}_{\Pi}$ when the gravitational term is ignored). As the cell goes from incipient plasmolysis to full turgor, Figure 2-14 indicates that P^{i} increases slowly at first as the cell expands and then more rapidly as the cell wall approaches the limit of its expansion. Thus a Höfler diagram directly demonstrates how Ψ^{i}, P^{i}, and Π^{i} change as cell water content and hence volume change, such as during the drying and the wetting cycles experienced by plants.

We can readily extend our discussion to include a *pressure–volume*, or *P–V, curve*, which has proved useful for analyzing the water relations of plant organs such as leaves. In particular, the earliest calculations of internal hydrostatic pressure and cellular elastic modulus were based on *P–V* curves. To obtain such a curve, we can place an excised leaf in a pressure chamber (Fig. 2-10) and increase the air pressure in the chamber until liquid just becomes visible at the cut end of the xylem, which is viewed with a dissecting microscope or a hand-held magnifying lens so that water in individual conducting cells in the xylem can be observed. When the leaf is excised, the

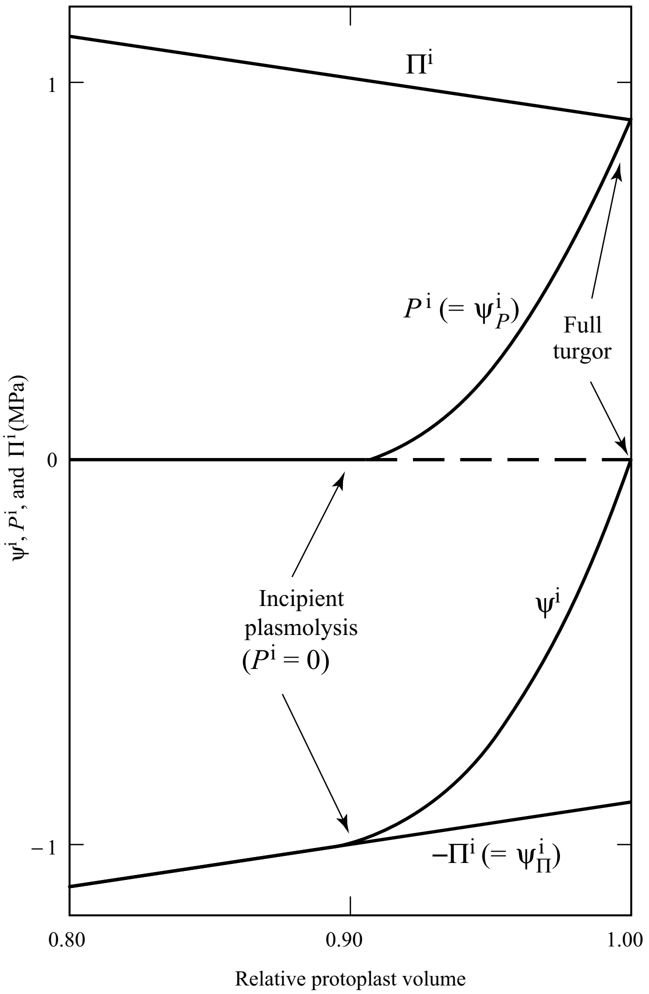


Figure 2-14. A Höfler diagram showing the relationship between the water potential (Ψ^i), the hydrostatic pressure (P^i), and the osmotic pressure (Π^i) in a plant cell for various protoplast volumes. Assuming that solutes do not enter or leave the cell, the internal osmotic pressure increases as the protoplast volume decreases. For a group of cells, relative water content is often used in such diagrams instead of relative protoplast volume. The nearly 10% decrease in volume from full turgor to incipient plasmolysis (at $\Psi^i = -1.0$ MPa) is characteristic of many plant cells. Note that Ψ^i_P and Ψ^i_Π are defined by Equation 2.13b.

tension in the xylem causes the water contained therein to recede into the leaf, so this applied air pressure is needed to force water back to the cut surface. We next increase the air pressure in the pressure chamber to force out some liquid, which is carefully collected so that its volume can be determined, and the new balancing air pressure is recorded. In this way, we obtain data step by step for a plot of the reciprocal of the balancing air pressure in the chamber, which corresponds approximately to the negative of the reciprocal of the tissue water potential (see legend, Fig. 2-10), versus the volume of extruded xylem sap, a pressure–volume curve (Fig. 2-15). After forcing out considerable liquid (the maximum air pressure used in pressure chambers can go up to about 10 MPa), we can extrapolate the

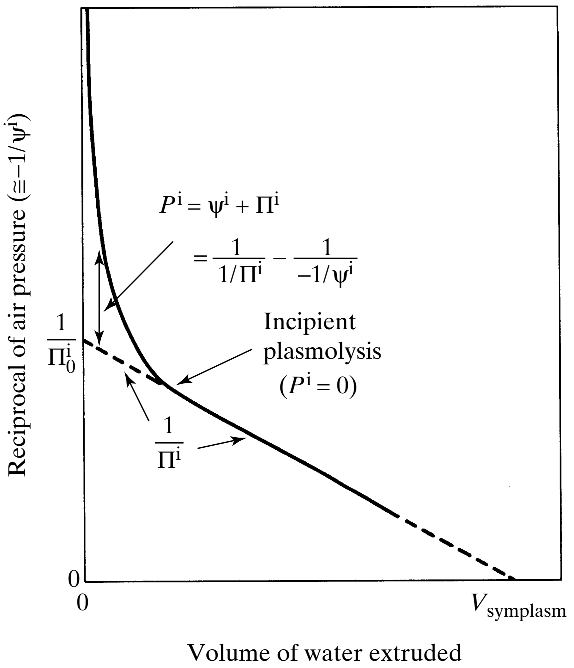


Figure 2-15. Relation between the reciprocal of leaf water potential determined with a pressure chamber (Fig. 2-10) and the volume of xylem sap extruded as the air pressure in the chamber is progressively increased. The solid line indicates a typical range for data points for material initially at full turgor ($\Psi^i_0 = 0$). The reciprocal of the internal osmotic pressure ($1/\Pi^i$) including the value at full turgor ($1/\Pi^i_0$), the internal hydrostatic pressure (P^i), the point of incipient plasmolysis and turgor loss, and the volume of symplastic water ($V_{symplasm}$) can all be determined from such a *P–V* curve.

straight-line portion of the curve to the right to obtain the extrudable liquid at an infinite applied air pressure (1/applied air pressure = 0 means that the pressure = ∞). This intercept, which occurs when $-1/\Psi^i$ equals 0, is generally considered to represent the water volume in the symplasm at full hydration. The apoplastic water volume is obtained as the difference between the total water volume in the tissue (determined from the fresh weight of the fully turgid tissue minus the dry weight obtained after drying the tissue in an oven at about 80°C until no further weight change occurs) minus this symplastic water volume, although some movement of water from the apoplasm to the symplasm may occur as the air pressure is increased in the pressure chamber.

The straight-line portion on the right-hand side of the pressure–volume curve in Figure 2-15 corresponds to the inverse relationship between internal osmotic pressure Π^i and the protoplast volume V^i discussed previously [$\Pi^i V^i$ = constant = Π^i ($V_{symplasm} - V_{extruded}$), where $V_{symplasm}$ is the symplastic water volume at full turgor ($\Psi^i = 0$) for all of the cells in the chamber and $V_{extruded}$ is the volume of water extruded]. When the cells are at full turgor and no sap has been extruded, the internal osmotic pressure has its minimum value, Π^i_0, which can be obtained by extrapolating the straight-line portion to the left in Figure 2-15. The hydrostatic pressure inside the cell ($P^i = \Psi^i + \Pi^i$) can be deduced from such a pressure–volume curve using the difference between $-1/\Psi^i$ and the extrapolated line for $1/\Pi^i$. Moreover, because the

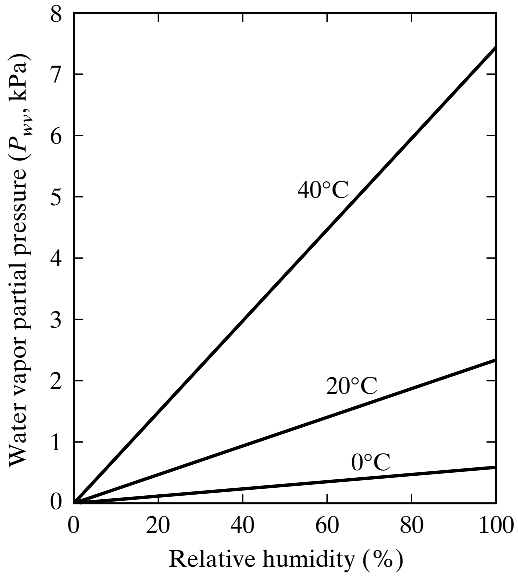


Figure 2-16. Relation between relative humidity and the partial pressure of water vapor at the indicated temperatures. The maximum water vapor partial pressure occurs at 100% relative humidity.

change in volume (ΔV) for a specific change in pressure (ΔP) can be determined from the left-hand part of the curve in Figure 2-15, we can also determine the volumetric elastic modulus ε averaged over the cells in the pressure chamber [$\varepsilon = \Delta P/(\Delta V/V)$; Eq. 1.17]. Because pressure–volume curves can be used to estimate symplastic water volume, apoplastic water volume, internal osmotic pressure, internal hydrostatic pressure, the point of incipient plasmolysis, and the volumetric elastic modulus, they have played a prominent role in the study of plant water relations.

2.4C. Chemical Potential and Water Potential of Water Vapor

Water molecules in an aqueous solution continually escape into a surrounding gas phase, and simultaneously water molecules condense back into the liquid phase, the two rates becoming equal at equilibrium. The gas phase adjacent to the solution then contains as much water as it can hold at that temperature and still be in equilibrium with the liquid. The partial pressure in the gas phase exerted by the water vapor in equilibrium with pure water is known as the *saturation vapor pressure*, P^*_{wv}.

The vapor pressure at equilibrium depends on the temperature and the solution, but it is independent of the relative or absolute amounts of liquid and vapor. When air adjacent to pure water is saturated with water vapor (100% relative humidity), the gas phase has the maximum water vapor pressure possible at that temperature—unless it is supersaturated, a metastable, nonequilibrium situation. This saturation vapor pressure in equilibrium with pure water (P^*_{wv}) increases markedly with temperature (Fig. 2-16); for example, it increases from 0.61 kPa at 0°C to 2.34 kPa at 20°C to 7.38 kPa at 40°C (see Appendix I). Thus, heating air at constant pressure and constant water content causes the relative humidity to drop dramatically, where

relative humidity quantifies the water vapor partial pressure at a particular temperature (P_{wv}) relative to its maximum value at that temperature (Fig. 2-16) as well as the water content per unit volume of air relative to its saturation value:

$$\frac{\text{Relative humidity}}{100} = \frac{P_{wv}}{P^*_{wv}} = \frac{\text{water vapor content}}{\text{saturation water vapor content}} \tag{2.21}$$

In this regard, drawing in moist cold outside air and then heating it can lead to dry environments inside buildings in the winter, leading to desiccation of our nasal passages when we are inside and subsequent susceptibility to colds.

As solutes are added to the liquid phase and the mole fraction of water is thereby lowered, water molecules have less tendency to leave the solution. Hence, the water vapor partial pressure in the gas phase at equilibrium becomes less—this is one of the colligative properties of solutions that we mentioned earlier. In fact, adjacent to dilute solutions P_{wv} at equilibrium depends linearly on the mole fraction of water (N_w) in the liquid phase. This is Raoult's law (also mentioned in Appendix IV). For pure water, N_w equals 1 and P_{wv} has its maximum value, namely P^*_{wv}, the saturation vapor pressure.

The chemical potential of water vapor μ_{wv}, which depends on the partial pressure of water vapor P_{wv}, can be represented as follows:

$$\mu_{wv} = \mu^*_{wv} + RT\ln\frac{P_{wv}}{P^*_{wv}} + m_{wv}gh \tag{2.22}$$

where P^*_{wv} is the saturation vapor pressure in equilibrium with pure liquid water at atmospheric pressure and at the same temperature as the system under consideration, and m_{wv} is the mass per mole of water vapor, which is the same as the mass per mole of water, m_w, namely, 18.0×10^{-3} kg mol^{-1}. To handle deviations from ideality, P_{wv} is replaced by $\gamma_{wv}P_{wv}$, where γ_{wv} is the activity coefficient (more properly, the "fugacity" coefficient) of water vapor. If water vapor obeyed the ideal gas law—$P_jV = n_jRT$, where P_j is the partial pressure of species j in a volume V containing n_j moles of that gas—γ_{wv} would equal 1. This is a good approximation for situations of interest in biology.

We next consider the various parameters in Equation 2.22 at the surface of pure water ($a_w = 1$) at atmospheric pressure ($P = 0$) in equilibrium with its vapor. In such a case, P_{wv} is equal to P^*_{wv}, and we can let the zero level of the gravitational term be the surface of the liquid. Hence, μ_w equals μ^*_w, and μ_{wv} equals μ^*_{wv}. Because there is no net gain or loss of water molecules from the liquid phase at equilibrium ($\mu_w = \mu_{wv}$), we conclude that the constant μ^*_w must equal the constant μ^*_{wv} when the two phases are at the same temperature. The arguments are unchanged at other elevations, so the same gravitational term must be included in μ_w and μ_{wv} ($m_wgh = m_{wv}gh$ because $m_w = m_{wv}$). The form for the pressure effects in the chemical potential for water vapor is more subtle and is discussed next and in Appendix IV.

Equations 2.4 and 2.12 indicate that μ_w contains a term dependent on the pressure P applied to the system ($\mu_w = \mu^*_w + RT\ln a_w + \overline{V}_wP + m_wgh$), whereas μ_{wv} has no such term apparent ($\mu_{wv} = \mu^*_{wv} + RT\ln P_{wv}/P^*_{wv} + m_wgh$; Eq. 2.22). Because μ_w equals μ_{wv} at equilibrium and a pressure can be

applied to such a system, P_{wv} must depend on P. This dependency is embodied in the Gibbs equation (see Appendix IV), one form of which is $RT \ln P_{wv}/P^0_{wv} = \overline{V}_w P$, where P^0_{wv} is the partial pressure of water vapor at atmospheric pressure. By adding and subtracting $RT\ln P^0_{wv}$ from the right-hand side of Equation 2.22 and substituting $\overline{V}_w P$ for $RT \ln P_{wv}/P^0_{wv}$, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \mu_{wv} &= \mu^*_{wv} + RT \ln \frac{P_{wv}}{P^*_{wv}} + RT \ln P^0_{wv} - RT \ln P^0_{wv} + m_{wv}gh \\ &= \mu^*_{wv} + RT \ln \frac{P^0_{wv}}{P^*_{wv}} + RT \ln \frac{P_{wv}}{P^0_{wv}} + m_w gh \\ &= \mu^*_{wv} + RT \ln \frac{P^0_{wv}}{P^*_{wv}} + \overline{V}_w P + m_w gh \end{aligned} \tag{2.23}$$

where the bottom line of Equation 2.23 contains the requisite $\overline{V}_w P$ term. In practice the $\overline{V}_w P$ term is usually ignored because most air phases considered for plants are at atmospheric pressure, so P equals 0 (P is conventionally defined as the pressure in excess of atmospheric). In any case, the difference between P_{wv} and P^0_{wv} is generally very small, as an increase of 0.01 MPa (0.1 atm) in P in the gas phase surrounding a plant increases P_{wv} by only 0.007%. To appreciate the motion of water vapor that can be induced by changes in P, we need only consider wind (recall that changes in any term of a chemical potential, which represent changes in energy, can lead to motion). We also note that different air pressures can occur within certain plants—ranging from water lilies to rice—which can lead to internal "winds" causing mass flow of gases (briefly considered in Chapter 8, Footnote 2).

We now consider the water potential of water vapor in a gas phase such as air, Ψ_{wv}. Using a definition of Ψ analogous to that in Equation 2.13a [$\Psi = (\mu_w - \mu^*_w)/\overline{V}_w$] and defining μ_{wv} by Equation 2.22, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \Psi_{wv} &= \frac{\mu_{wv} - \mu^*_w}{\overline{V}_w} = \frac{\mu_{wv} - \mu^*_{wv}}{\overline{V}_w} \\ &= \frac{RT}{\overline{V}_w} \ln \frac{P_{wv}}{P^*_{wv}} + \rho_w gh \\ &= \frac{RT}{\overline{V}_w} \ln \frac{\% \text{ relative humidity}}{100} + \rho_w gh \end{aligned} \tag{2.24}$$

where $m_{wv}/\overline{V}_w$ (the same in magnitude as $m_w/\overline{V}_w$) has been replaced by the density of water, ρ_w. We note that $\overline{V}_w$ not $\overline{V}_{wv}$ is used in the definition of Ψ_{wv} in Equation 2.24. This is necessary because the fundamental term representing free energy per mole is the chemical potential—we want to compare $\mu_j - \mu^*_j$ for the two phases when predicting changes at an interface—and thus the proportionality factor between $\mu_w - \mu^*_w$ or $\mu_{wv} - \mu^*_{wv} (= \mu_{wv} - \mu^*_w)$ and the more convenient terms, Ψ or Ψ_{wv}, must be the same in each case, namely, $\overline{V}_w$. Equation 2.24 also incorporates relative humidity (Eq. 2.21), which is a readily measured quantity and has been extensively used in studying the water relations of plants and animals.

What happens to P_{wv} as we move vertically upward from pure water at atmospheric pressure in equilibrium with water vapor in the air? If we let h

be zero at the surface of the water, Ψ is equal to 0 ($\Psi = P - \Pi + \rho_w gh$; Eq. 2.13a), and because the water vapor is by supposition in equilibrium with the liquid phase, Ψ_{wv} is also zero. Equation 2.24 indicates that, as we go vertically upward in the gas phase, $\rho_w gh$ makes an increasingly positive contribution to Ψ_{wv}. Because we are at equilibrium, the other term in Ψ_{wv}, $(RT/\overline{V}_w)\ \ln\ (P_{wv}/P^*_{wv})$, must make a compensating negative contribution. At equilibrium P_{wv} must therefore decrease with altitude. What decrease would occur over a vertical distance of 1 km? By Equation 2.24 and values at 20°C in Appendix I, we have

$$\ln\frac{P_{wv}}{P^*_{wv}} = -\frac{\overline{V}_w}{RT}\rho_w gh$$

$$= -\frac{1}{(135\ \text{MPa})}(0.0098\ \text{MPa m}^{-1})(1000\ \text{m}) = -0.073$$

so P_{wv} decreases only 7% from P^*_{wv} (its equilibrium value at the water surface at atmospheric pressure). We can further appreciate that P_{wv} decreases with altitude by noting that gravity attracts the molecules of water vapor and other gases toward the earth, so air pressure is higher at sea level than it is on the top of a mountain. We also note that not until a height of 1 km is reached does the partial pressure of water vapor at equilibrium decrease by 7% from its value at sea level, indicating that the gravitational term generally has relatively little influence on Ψ_{wv} over the distances involved for an individual plant.

2.4D. Plant–Air Interface

Water equilibrium across the plant–air interface occurs when the water potential in the leaf cells equals that of the surrounding atmosphere. (This presupposes that the leaf and the air are at the same temperature, an aspect that we will reconsider in Chapter 8.) To measure Ψ^{leaf}, the leaf can be placed in a closed chamber and the relative humidity adjusted until the leaf does not gain or lose water. Such a determination is experimentally difficult because small changes in relative humidity have large effects on Ψ_{wv}, as we will show next.

Extremely large negative values are possible for Ψ_{wv}. In particular, $RT/\overline{V}_w$ at 20°C is 135 MPa. In the expression for Ψ_{wv} (Eq. 2.24), this factor multiplies ln (% relative humidity/100), and a wide range of relative humidities can occur in the air. By Equation 2.24 with $\rho_w gh$ ignored, a relative humidity of 100% corresponds to a water potential in the vapor phase of 0 (ln 1 = 0). This Ψ_{wv} is in equilibrium with pure water at atmospheric pressure, which also has a water potential of 0. For a relative humidity of 99%, Ψ_{wv} given by Equation 2.24 is

$$\Psi_{wv} = (135\ \text{MPa})\ \ln\left(\frac{99}{100}\right) = -1.36\ \text{MPa}$$

Going from 100% to 99% relative humidity thus corresponds to a decrease in water potential of 1.36 MPa (Table 2-1). Small changes in relative humidity do indeed reflect large differences in the water potential of air! We also

Table 2-1. Magnitudes of Certain Water Vapor Parameters Useful for Understanding Water Movement at a Plant–Air Interface[a]

Relative humidity (%)	P_{wv} (kPa)	Ψ_{wv} (MPa)
100.0	2.34	0.00
99.6	2.33	−0.54
99.0	2.32	−1.36
96.0	2.25	−5.51
90.0	2.11	−14.2
80.6	1.89	−29.1
50.0	1.17	−93.6
0.0	0.00	−∞

[a] Data are for 20°C. Ψ_{wv} is calculated from Equation 2.24, ignoring the gravitational term. We note that $P_{wv}/P^*_{wv} \times 100$ is equal to relative humidity in %.

note that a relative humidity of 50% at 20°C leads to a Ψ_{wv} of −94 MPa (Table 2-1), a very negative value.

Because of the large negative values of Ψ_{wv} in air, water tends to diffuse out of leaves to the surrounding atmosphere. The actual values of Ψ^{leaf} depend on the ambient conditions as well as the plant type and its physiological status. The range of Ψ^{leaf} for most mesophytes is −0.3 to −3 MPa, with −0.5 MPa being typical under conditions of wet soil for leaves of a garden vegetable such as lettuce (*mesophyte* refers to a plant from a moderately moist environment and contrasts with *xerophyte*, one from a dry and often hot environment). From Equation 2.24, the relative humidity corresponding to a water potential of −0.5 MPa is 99.6%. Such an extremely high value for the relative humidity in equilibrium with a Ψ^{leaf} of −0.5 MPa indicates why it is difficult to determine Ψ^{leaf} by measuring the Ψ^{air} for which no water is gained or lost by the leaf. Even during a rainstorm, the relative humidity of the air rarely exceeds 99%. Because relative humidity is lower than 99.6% under most natural conditions, water is continually being lost from a leaf having a water potential of −0.5 MPa. A few desert plants have a Ψ^{leaf} as low as −5.5 MPa. Even in this case of adaptation to arid climates, water still tends to leave the plant unless the relative humidity is above 96% (Table 2-1). Structural modifications and physiological responses are generally more important than a low Ψ^{leaf} for adapting to xerophytic conditions (discussed in Chapters 7 and 8).

2.4E. Pressure in the Cell Wall Water

Plant cells come into contact with air where the cell walls are adjacent to the intercellular air spaces (see Fig. 1-2). Thus, the water potential in the cell walls must be considered with respect to Ψ_{wv} in the adjacent gas phase. The main contributing term for Ψ in cell wall water is usually the negative hydrostatic pressure arising from surface tension at the numerous air–liquid interfaces of the cell wall interstices near the cell surface. In turn, $P^{\text{cell wall}}$ can be related to the geometry of the cell wall pores and the contact angles.

The magnitude of the negative hydrostatic pressure that develops in cell wall water can be estimated by considering the pressure that occurs in a liquid within a cylindrical pore—the argument is similar to the one presented

earlier in this chapter in discussing capillary rise. One of the forces acting on the fluid in a narrow pore of radius r is the result of surface tension, σ (force per unit length at an air–water interface; Section 2.1B). This force equals $2\pi r\sigma \cos \alpha$ (see Fig. 2-3), where α is the contact angle, a quantity that can be essentially zero for wettable walls. Because the adhesive forces at the wall are transmitted to the rest of the fluid by means of cohesion, a tension or negative hydrostatic pressure develops in the fluid. The total force resisting the surface adhesion can be regarded as this tension times the area over which it acts, πr^2, and hence the force is $(-P)\ (\pi r^2)$. Equating the two forces gives the following expression for the pressure that can develop in fluid contained within a cylindrical pore:

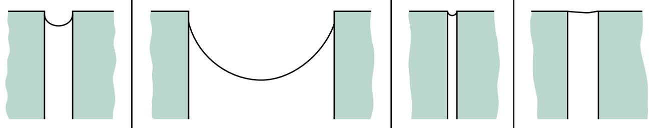
$$P = \frac{2\pi r\sigma \cos \alpha}{-\pi r^2} = -\frac{2\sigma \cos \alpha}{r} \tag{2.25}$$

Adhesion of water at interfaces generally creates negative hydrostatic pressures in the rest of the fluid (Eq. 2.25 describes this P near the air–water interface, where the gravitational term can be ignored). Such negative hydrostatic pressures arising from interfacial interactions have sometimes been treated in plant physiology as positive matric pressures, a convention that we mentioned earlier (Section 2.2G).

The strong water–wall adhesive forces, which are transmitted throughout the cell wall interstices by water–water hydrogen bonding, can lead to very negative hydrostatic pressures in the cell wall. At 20°C the surface tension of water is 7.28×10^{-8} MPa m (Appendix I), the voids between the microfibrils in the cell wall are often about 10 nm across (r = 5 nm), and $\cos \alpha$ can equal 1 for wettable walls. For water in such cylindrical pores, Equation 2.25 indicates that when the contact angle is zero P would be

$$P = -\frac{(2)(7.28 \times 10^{-8}\ \text{MPa m})(1)}{(5 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{m})} = -29\ \text{MPa}$$

(Fig. 2-17a). This is an estimate of the negative hydrostatic pressure or tension that could develop in the aqueous solution within cell wall interstices of typical dimensions, supporting the contention that $\Psi^{\text{cell wall}}$ can be markedly less than zero. Moreover, in such fine pores with hydrophilic



	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
r (nm)	5	26	1.5	5
α (°)	0	0	0	87
P (MPa)	–29	–5.5	–94	–1.36

Figure 2-17. Interrelationship among radius r, contact angle α, and hydrostatic pressure P near the surface of water contained in cylindrical pores that are open to the atmosphere. The pressures are in equilibrium with relative humidities of 50 to 99% (Table 2.1).

surfaces, the hydrogen bonding in water can withstand tensions exceeding 100 MPa. We will next consider the actual pressures that develop in the cell wall water.

Let us begin by considering a Ψ_{wv} of −5.5 MPa, which corresponds to a relative humidity of 96% (Table 2-1). According to Equation 2.25, water in cylindrical cell wall pores with radii of 26 nm and a contact angle of 0° has a P of −5.5 MPa (Fig. 2-17b), so such water is in equilibrium with air of 96% relative humidity in the intercellular air spaces of the leaf (Table 2-1). If the relative humidity near the cell wall surface were decreased, water in such interstices could be lost, but it would remain in the finer pores, where a more negative P or larger tension can be created (Figs. 2-17a and 2-17c). Hence, if excised plant material is exposed to air of moderate to low relative humidity—as can happen for herbarium specimens—then larger and larger tensions resulting from interfacial interactions develop in the cell walls as the plant material dries. Water is then retained only in finer and finer pores of the cell wall in which larger tensions can develop, as is consistent with Equation 2.25 and which leads to shrinkage of the drying material.

We will now show that the availability of water adjacent to that in wettable cell walls affects $P^{\text{cell wall}}$ and the contact angle in the interstices. Suppose that pure water in mesophyll cell wall interstices 10 nm across is in equilibrium with water vapor in the intercellular air spaces where the relative humidity is 99%. As we calculated previously, Ψ_{wv} for this relative humidity is −1.36 MPa at 20°C. Hence, at equilibrium the (pure) water in the cell wall interstices has a hydrostatic pressure of −1.36 MPa ($\Psi = P - \Pi + \rho_w gh$; Eq. 2.13a). Using Equation 2.25 we can calculate the contact angle for which P can be −1.36 MPa for pores 5 nm in radius:

$$\cos\alpha = -\frac{rP}{2\sigma} = -\frac{(5\times10^{-9}\ \text{m})(-1.36\ \text{MPa})}{(2)(7.28\times10^{-8}\ \text{MPa m})} = 0.0467$$

and so α is 87°. For the wettable cell walls, α can be 0°, in which case $\cos\alpha$ is 1 and the maximum negative hydrostatic pressure develops, namely, −29 MPa for the pores 5 nm in radius (Fig. 2-17a). On the other hand, when water is available, it can be pulled into the interstices by such possible tensions and thereby cause α for wettable walls to increase toward 90°, which leads to a decrease in $\cos\alpha$ and consequently a decrease in the tension developed (Eq. 2.25). In the present example, α is 87°, P is −1.36 MPa, and the pore 5 nm in radius is nearly filled (Fig. 2-17d). Thus the water in the interstices can be nearly flush with the cell wall surface. In fact, the large tensions that could be present in the cell wall usually do not occur in living cells because water is usually available within the plant and is "pulled" into the interstices, thus nearly filling them, depending of course on their dimensions (Eq. 2.25).

The only contribution to the water potential of the cell wall that we have been considering is the negative hydrostatic pressure resulting from air–liquid interfaces, as can be the case for pure water. When the gravitational term in Equation 2.13a is ignored, $\Psi^{\text{cell wall}} = P^{\text{cell wall}} - \Pi^{\text{cell wall}}$. The bulk

solution in the cell wall pores generally has an average osmotic pressure of 0.3 to 1.5 MPa. The local $\Pi^{\text{cell wall}}$ next to the solid Donnan phase (Chapter 3, Section 3.2F) of the cellulose microfibrils is considerably greater because of the many ions present there; to help compensate, $P^{\text{cell wall}}$ is also higher near the Donnan phase than it is in the bulk of the cell wall water (activity coefficients of both ions and water are also lower near the Donnan phase).

2.4F. Water Flux

When the water potential inside a cell differs from that outside, water is no longer in equilibrium and we can expect a net water movement from the region of higher water potential toward the region of lower water potential. This volume flux density of water, J_{V_w}, is generally proportional to the difference in water potential ($\Delta\Psi$) across the membrane or membranes restricting the flow. The proportionality factor indicating the permeability to water flow at the cellular level is expressed by a *water conductivity coefficient, L_w*:

$$J_{V_w} = L_w \Delta\Psi = L_w(\Psi^{\text{o}} - \Psi^{\text{i}}) \tag{2.26}$$

In Equation 2.26, J_{V_w} is the volume flow of water per unit area of the barrier per unit time. It can have units of $m^3\ m^{-2}\ s^{-1}$, or $m\ s^{-1}$, which are the units of velocity.

Actually, J_{V_w} in Equation 2.26 is the average velocity of water moving across the barrier being considered. To help see why this is so, let us consider a volume element of cross-sectional area A, extending back from the barrier for a length equal to the average water velocity $\bar{v}_w$ multiplied by dt; that is, let dx in Figure 1-6 be $\bar{v}_w\ dt$, which like dx is also a differential and also has the units of distance. In time dt this volume element, $A\bar{v}_w\ dt$, crosses area A of the barrier. For such a period the volume flow of water per unit area and per unit time, J_{V_w}, can be represented as

$$J_{V_w} = \frac{(A\bar{v}_w dt)}{(A)(dt)} = \bar{v}_w \tag{2.27}$$

that is, the volume flux density of water equals the mean velocity of water, which can be measured in various ways, such as using radioactive tracers.[6] In any case, L_w can have units of $m\ s^{-1}\ Pa^{-1}$, in which case the water potentials would be expressed in Pa. (Experimentally, L_w is usually the same as L_P, a coefficient describing water conductivity that we will introduce in Chapter 3, Section 3.5C, in a different manner.)

When Equation 2.26 is applied to cells, Ψ^{o} is the water potential in the external solution, and Ψ^{i} usually refers to the water potential in the vacuole. L_w then indicates the conductivity for water flow across the cell wall, the plasma membrane, and the tonoplast, all in series. For a group of barriers in series, the overall water conductivity coefficient of the pathway, L_w, is related

6. When water does not occupy the entire cross-section of the flow pathway, such as for water movement in the soil, then $J_{V_W} = \theta\bar{v}_w$, where θ is the fractional water content by volume.

to the conductivities of the individual barriers by

$$\frac{1}{L_w} = \sum_j \frac{1}{L_{w_j}} \tag{2.28a}$$

where L_{w_j} is the water conductivity coefficient of barrier j (see Problem 1.4 for the analogous case of the permeability coefficient for barriers in series). To see why this is so, let us go back to Equation 2.26 ($J_{V_w} = L_w\Delta\Psi$). When the barriers are in series, the same amount of water flows across each one, meaning that J_{V_w} is the same across each one. J_{V_w} equals $L_{w_j}\Delta\Psi_j$, where $\Delta\Psi_j$ is the drop in water potential across barrier j, and $\sum_j \Delta\Psi_j$ equals $\Delta\Psi$. We therefore obtain the following equalities:

$$\frac{J_{V_w}}{L_w} = \Delta\Psi = \sum_j \Delta\Psi_j = \sum_j \frac{J_{V_w}}{L_{w_j}} = J_{V_w} \sum_j \frac{1}{L_{w_j}} \tag{2.28b}$$

so $1/L_w$ is equal to $\sum_j 1/L_{w_j}$, as is indicated in Equation 2.28a. We also note that $1/L_w$ corresponds to a resistance, and the resistance of a group of resistors in series is the sum of the resistances, $\sum_j 1/L_{w_j}$.

We shall now consider a membrane separating two solutions that differ only in osmotic pressure. This will help us to relate L_w to the permeability coefficient of water, P_w, and also to view Fick's first law [$J_j = P_j(c_j^{\mathrm{o}} - c_j^{\mathrm{i}})$; Eq. 1.8] in a slightly different way. The appropriate form for Fick's first law when describing the diffusion of the solvent water is $J_{V_w} = P_w(N_w^{\mathrm{o}} - N_w^{\mathrm{i}})$, where N_w is the mole fraction of water. By Equation 2.26, J_{V_w} also equals $L_w(\Psi^{\mathrm{o}} - \Psi^{\mathrm{i}})$, which becomes $L_w(\Pi^{\mathrm{i}} - \Pi^{\mathrm{o}})$ in our case with P^{o} equal to P^{i} ($\Psi = \mathrm{P} - \Pi + \rho_w gh$; Eq. 2.13a). Thus a volume flux density of water toward a region with a lower water potential (Eq. 2.26) and a higher osmotic pressure is equivalent to J_{V_w} toward a region where water has a lower mole fraction (Fick's first law applied to water). Let us pursue this one step further. Using Equations 2.8 through 2.10, we can obtain the following:

$$N_w \cong 1 - \frac{\sum_j n_j}{n_w} \cong 1 - \frac{\bar{V}_w \Pi_s}{RT} \tag{2.29a}$$

so

$$N_w^{\mathrm{o}} - N_w^{\mathrm{i}} \cong \left(1 - \frac{\bar{V}_w \Pi_s^{\mathrm{o}}}{RT}\right) - \left(1 - \frac{\bar{V}_w \Pi_s^{\mathrm{i}}}{RT}\right) = \bar{V}_w \frac{(\Pi_s^{\mathrm{i}} - \Pi_s^{\mathrm{o}})}{RT} \tag{2.29b}$$

When we incorporate this last relation into our expression for the volume flux density of water, we obtain

$$J_{V_w} = L_w(\Pi^{\mathrm{i}} - \Pi^{\mathrm{o}}) = P_w(N_w^{\mathrm{o}} - N_w^{\mathrm{i}}) = P_w \frac{\bar{V}_w(\Pi_s^{\mathrm{i}} - \Pi_s^{\mathrm{o}})}{RT} \tag{2.29c}$$

(Π^{i} is here the same as Π_s^{i}). Hence, from Equation 2.29c we deduce the following relationship:

$$L_w = \frac{P_w \bar{V}_w}{RT} \tag{2.30}$$

which states that the water conductivity coefficient, L_w, is proportional to the water permeability coefficient, P_w.

Next, we will estimate a possible value for L_w. P_w can be 1×10^{-4} m s^{-1} for plasma membranes (Chapter 1, Section 1.4B), RT is 2.437×10^3 m^3 Pa mol^{-1} at 20°C (Appendix I), and $\overline{V}_w$ is 18.0×10^{-6} m^3 mol^{-1}. Thus, L_w can be

$$L_w = \frac{(1 \times 10^{-4}\ \mathrm{m\ s^{-1}})(18.0 \times 10^{-6}\ \mathrm{m^3\ mol^{-1}})}{(2.437 \times 10^3\ \mathrm{m^3\ Pa\ mol^{-1}})} = 7 \times 10^{-13}\ \mathrm{m\ s^{-1}\ Pa^{-1}}$$

L_w for plant cells ranges from about 1×10^{-13} to 2×10^{-12} m s^{-1} Pa^{-1}, so our calculated value is an intermediate one.

2.4G. Cell Growth

When the value of the water conductivity coefficient is known, the water potential difference necessary to give an observed water flux can be calculated using Equation 2.26. For the internodal cells of *Chara* and *Nitella*, L_w for water entry is about 7×10^{-13} m s^{-1} Pa^{-1}. For convenience of calculation, we will consider cylindrical cells 100 mm long and 1 mm in diameter as an approximate model for such algal cells (see Fig. 3-13). The surface area across which the water flux occurs is $2\pi rl$, where r is the cell radius and l is the cell length. Thus the area is

$$\text{Area} = (2\pi)(0.5 \times 10^{-3}\ \mathrm{m})(100 \times 10^{-3}\ \mathrm{m}) = 3.14 \times 10^{-4}\ \mathrm{m^2}$$

[The area of each end of the cylinder (πr^2) is much less than $2\pi rl$; in any case, a water flux from the external solution across them would not be expected because they are in contact with other cells, not the bathing solution; see Fig. 3-13.] The volume of a cylinder is $\pi r^2 l$, which in the present case is

$$\text{Volume} = (\pi)(0.5 \times 10^{-3}\ \mathrm{m})^2(100 \times 10^{-3}\ \mathrm{m}) = 7.9 \times 10^{-8}\ \mathrm{m^3}$$

Internodal cells of *Chara* and *Nitella* grow relatively slowly—a change in volume of about 1% per day is a possible growth rate for the fairly mature cells used in determining L_w. This growth rate means that the water content increases by about 1% of the volume per day (1 day = 8.64×10^4 s). The volume flux density for water is the rate of volume increase divided by the surface area across which water enters:

$$J_{V_w} = \frac{1}{A}\frac{dV}{dt} \tag{2.31}$$

Using the representative value of L_w and Equation 2.26, we can then calculate the drop in water potential involved:

$$\Delta\Psi = \frac{J_{V_w}}{L_w} = \frac{\frac{1}{A}\frac{dV}{dt}}{L_w} = \frac{\frac{1}{(3.14\times10^{-4}\ \mathrm{m^2})}\frac{(0.01)(7.9\times10^{-8}\ \mathrm{m^3})}{(8.64\times10^4\ \mathrm{s})}}{(7 \times 10^{-13}\ \mathrm{m\ s^{-1}\ Pa^{-1}})} = 42\ \mathrm{Pa}$$

In other words, the internal water potential (Ψ^i) needed to sustain the water influx accompanying a growth rate of about 1% per day is only 42 Pa less than the outside water potential (Ψ^o). *Chara* and *Nitella* can grow in pond water, which is a dilute aqueous solution often having a water potential near –7 kPa. Thus Ψ^i need be only slightly more negative than –7 kPa to account for the influx of water accompanying a growth of 1% per day.

The enlargement of cells during growth depends on two simultaneously occurring processes—the uptake of water and the increase in area of the cell wall, as was clearly recognized by James Lockhart in 1965. Because water uptake involves spontaneous water movement toward a lower water potential, the irreversible aspect of growth depends on the yielding of the cell wall material. To describe growth of cells, we often use the relative rate of volume increase, $(1/V)\ dV/dt$. For water entering a single cell, $(1/V)\ dV/dt$ can be represented by $(1/V)\ J_{V_w}A$ (see Eq. 2.31), which, using Equation 2.26, we can express as follows:

$$\frac{1}{V}\frac{dV}{dt} = \left(\frac{A}{V}\right)L_w(\Psi^o - \Psi^i) \tag{2.32}$$

Equation 2.32 is often called a *growth equation* (to put this into the form generally found in the literature, L_w should be replaced by L_P, and Ψ by $P - \sigma\Pi$, changes based on irreversible thermodynamics that we will introduce in Chapter 3, Section 3.5). If water also evaporates from the cell, such as for certain cells in leaves, we should include such water movement in Equation 2.32.

At the end of Chapter 1 (Section 1.5C) we indicated that cell enlargement requires yielding of the cell wall, an irreversible or *plastic* process that occurs when the internal hydrostatic pressure exceeds some critical or threshold value, $P^i_{\text{threshold}}$. This leads to another growth equation of the following form:

$$\frac{1}{V}\frac{dV}{dt} = \varphi(P^i - P^i_{\text{threshold}}) \tag{2.33}$$

where φ is a coefficient describing irreversible cell wall yielding ($P^i \geq P^i_{\text{threshold}}$). Our present calculation for *Chara* and *Nitella* growing at a rate of 1% per day indicates that Ψ^o is nearly the same as Ψ^i. In this case, cell extension is controlled primarily by yielding of the cell wall, without which P^i and Ψ^i would increase slightly with time and thereby decrease the rate of water entry.

For other cases, the uptake or internal production of osmotically active solutes can control cell growth, including effects that involve the reversible cell extension caused by changes in internal hydrostatic pressure and are quantitatively described by the volumetric elastic modulus ε (Eq. 1.17). For instance, when reversible or elastic changes in volume exist, then $(1/\varepsilon)dP/dt$ should be added to the right-hand side of Equation 2.33. Using Equation

1.17 [$\varepsilon = \Delta P/(\Delta V/V)$], this leads to

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{1}{\varepsilon}\frac{dP}{dt} &= \frac{\Delta V}{V\Delta P}\frac{dP}{dt} = \frac{1}{V}\frac{dV}{dP}\frac{dP}{dt} \\ &= \frac{1}{V}\frac{dV}{dt}\end{aligned} \tag{2.34}$$

which is the relative rate of *elastic* volume increase that can be added to the plastic volume increase (Eq. 2.33).

2.4H. Kinetics of Volume Changes

We next indicate how cell wall and membrane properties influence the kinetics of reversible swelling or shrinking of plant cells. When the water potential outside a cell or group of cells is changed, water movement will be induced. A useful expression describing the time constant for the resulting volume change is

$$t_{1/e} = \frac{V}{AL_w(\varepsilon + \Pi^{\mathrm{i}})} \tag{2.35}$$

where V is the volume of a cell, A is the area across which water enters or leaves, ε is the volumetric elastic modulus (Eq. 1.17), and Π^{i} is the initial internal osmotic pressure. The time constant $t_{1/e}$ represents the time to complete all but $1/e$ or 37% of the relatively small volume shift. (The half-time, which is the time required to shift halfway from the initial to the final volume, equals ln 2 times $t_{1/e}$; Chapter 1, Section 1.2C). Equation 2.35 indicates that $t_{1/e}$ for swelling or shrinking is small for a cell with a low V/A (i.e., a large available surface area per unit volume), a high L_w (which usually means a high permeability of the plasma membrane to water), or a high ε (a rigid cell wall). Figure 2-18 shows a device that can be used to measure ΔV and ΔP directly, thus allowing a determination of ε [consider Eq. 1.17, $\varepsilon = \Delta P/(\Delta V/V)$] as well as other water-relations parameters [a P–V curve (Fig. 2-15) gives an indirect way of determining P and ε].

We next estimate the time constant for volume changes that might occur for a mesophyll cell (see Fig. 1-2). We will assume that it has a volume of 2×10^4 µm^3 and that water enters from a neighboring cell over an area of 40 µm^2, so that V/A is 500 µm. We will let L_w be 7×10^{-13} m s^{-1} Pa^{-1}, ε be 20 MPa, and Π^{i} be 1 MPa (usually Π^{i} is much less than ε, so Π^{i} is often ignored when calculating $t_{1/e}$). From Equation 2.35 the time constant is

$$t_{1/e} = \frac{(500 \times 10^{-6}\ \mathrm{m})}{(7 \times 10^{-13}\ \mathrm{m\ s^{-1}\ Pa^{-1}})(21 \times 10^{6}\ \mathrm{Pa})} = 34\ \mathrm{s}$$

The volume changes caused by water transport between adjacent cells would occur more rapidly if their contacting area were larger and if L_w and ε were higher. Time constants for volume changes have important implications for the water exchanges underlying stomatal opening (discussed in Chapter 8, Section 8.1B) and capacitance effects (discussed in Chapter 9, Section 9.5D).

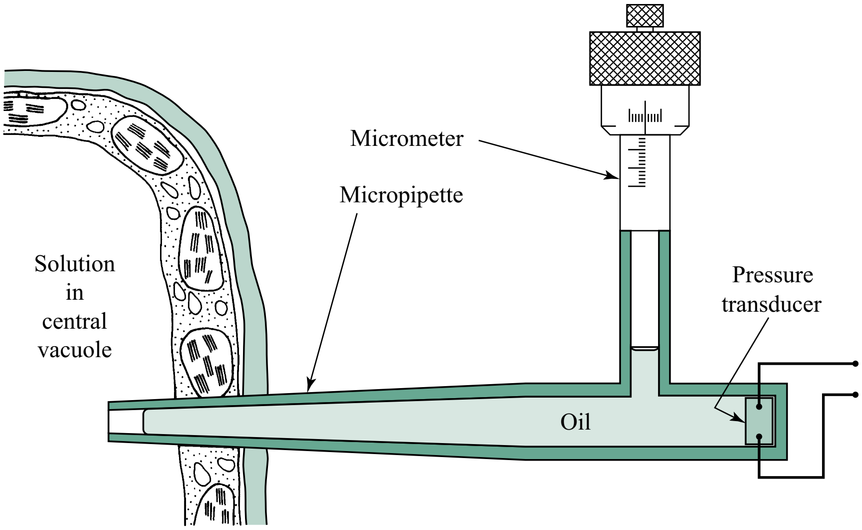


Figure 2-18. Schematic diagram of a "pressure probe," an apparatus used to measure P, L_w (or L_P, see Chapter 3, Section 3.5C), and ε for individual plant cells. The intracellular hydrostatic pressure is transmitted to the pressure transducer via an oil-filled microcapillary introduced into the cell. Volume can be changed by adjusting the micrometer and observing the motion of the interface between the solution in the central vacuole and the oil (in the drawing the cell region is greatly enlarged relative to the rest of the apparatus).

To produce the fine tip of the micropipette necessary for inserting into a cell, a microcapillary is put under tension in the axial direction and then the glass is heated near the middle until it becomes red-hot. Remarkably, as the heated glass flows and the microcapillary is thus stretched and "necks" down to the extremely fine diameter required (much less than the thickness of a human hair), the inside hole is maintained (the microcapillary eventually breaks where it was heated, forming two micropipettes). The inside of the micropipette is filled with oil for a pressure probe or filled with a conducting solution for electrical measurements (e.g., Fig. 3-6).

2.5. Problems

2.1. The rise of water in a long vertical capillary 2 mm in diameter with a wettable inner wall is 15 mm.

A. If the capillary is tilted 45° from the horizontal, what is the vertical height of the rise? Assume that the contact angle does not change upon tilting.

B. If sucrose is added to the solution so that the density becomes 1200 kg m^{-3} (1.2 g cm^{-3}), what is the height of the rise?

C. If the capillary extends only 7.5 mm above the main surface of the water, what is the contact angle in the capillary?

D. If the wall of the capillary is so treated that the contact angle becomes 60°, what is the height of the rise?

E. What is the rise of water in a capillary similar to the original one, but with a 1 μm radius?

F. In which of the five cases is the greatest weight supported by capillary (surface tension) forces?

G. For a horizontal capillary with wettable walls having water in the middle and open at both ends, at what inner radius would surface tension rupture the water column for a water tensile strength of 40 MPa?

2.2. A neutral solute at equilibrium has a concentration of 0.1 *m* on one side of a barrier permeable only to water and a c_{solute} of 1 *m* on the other side. Let the partial molal volume of the solute be 40×10^{-6} m^3 mol^{-1}, the temperature be 20°C, and the activity coefficients of the solute and the water be 1, except in C.

A. What is the hydrostatic pressure difference across the barrier?
B. What would it be if the barrier were permeable to solute only?
C. If γ_{solute} is 0.5 on the more concentrated side and if other conditions are unchanged, what is ΔP across the barrier permeable to the solute only?
D. What would happen at equilibrium if the barrier were permeable to both water and solute?
E. If P on the 0.1-*m* side is the same as atmospheric pressure, what is the chemical potential of the solute there?

2.3. A solution assumed to be ideal contains 80 g of sorbitol (molar mass of 0.182 kg mol^{-1}) in 1 kg of water at 20°C.

A. What are N_w and a_w in the solution?
B. What is the osmotic pressure of the sorbitol solution?
C. By what percent is the activity of water reduced for an osmotic pressure of 1 MPa at 20°C compared with the value of a_w for pure water?
D. If we assume that activity coefficients are 1, what concentration of a solute corresponds to a Π of 1 MPa at 20°C?
E. A 0.25 mol m^{-3} solution of a particular polymer has a measured osmotic pressure at 20°C of 0.01 MPa. What is the osmotic pressure predicted by the Van't Hoff relation (Eq. 2.10)? Explain any discrepancies.
F. In the vacuole of a certain cell, the mole fraction of water is 0.98, the hydrostatic pressure is 0.8 MPa, and the temperature is 20°C. Assuming activity coefficients are 1, what is the water potential in the vacuole?

2.4. A tank 10 m tall and open at the top is filled with an ideal solution at 20°C. We will assume that the system is in equilibrium and that the zero level for the gravitational term is at the top of the tank, where Ψ is –0.600 MPa.

A. What is the water potential 0.1 m below the surface and at the bottom of the tank?
B. What is Π at the upper surface, 0.1 m below the surface, and at the bottom of the tank?
C. What are P and the gravitational term at the three levels in B?
D. What relative humidity would be in equilibrium with the water in the tank?

2.5. Chloroplasts are isolated from a plant cell whose cytosol has an osmotic pressure of 0.4 MPa at 20°C. When the chloroplasts are placed in solutions at 20°C containing an impermeant solute, the volumes are 36 μm^3 at an external osmotic pressure of 0.33 MPa, 28 μm^3 at 0.5 MPa, and 20 μm^3 at 1.0 MPa. Assume that the activity coefficients are 1.

A. What is the volume of the chloroplasts in the plant cell?
B. What is the nonaqueous volume per chloroplast?
C. What volume fraction of the chloroplast is occupied by water in vivo?
D. What is the amount of osmotically active particles per chloroplast?

2.6. A spherical algal cell 1 mm in diameter has a water conductivity coefficient L_w equal to 10^{-12} m s^{-1} Pa^{-1}. Let the internal osmotic pressure be 1.0 MPa, the internal hydrostatic pressure be 0.6 MPa at 20°C, and the volumetric elastic modulus be 5 MPa.

A. What is the initial net volume flux density of water into or out of the cell when it is placed in pure water at atmospheric pressure?
B. What is the time constant for the change in A?
C. What is the water flux density at the point of incipient plasmolysis?
D. What is the water flux density when the external solution is in equilibrium with a gas phase at 97% relative humidity?
E. Assume that the water in the cell walls is in equilibrium with the internal cellular water. What are $\cos\alpha$ and the contact angle at the air–water interface for cylindrical cell wall pores 20 nm in diameter? Assume that $\Pi^{\text{cell wall}}$ is negligible.

2.6. References and Further Reading

Adamson, A.W., and Gast, A.P. 1999. *Physical Chemistry of Surfaces*, 6th ed. Wiley, New York.

Barkla, B.J., and Pantoja, O. 1996. Physiology of ion transport across the tonoplast of higher plants. *Annu. Rev. Plant Physiol. Plant Mol. Biol.* **47:** 159–184.

Boller, T., and Wiemken, A. 1986. Dynamics of vacuolar compartmentation. *Annu. Rev. Plant Physiol.* **37:** 137–164.

Boyer, J.S., and Kramer, P.J. 1995. *Measuring the Water Status of Plants and Soils.* Academic Press, San Diego, CA.

Bull, H.B. 1964. *An Introduction to Physical Biochemistry.* Davis, Philadelphia, PA.

Cosgrove, D. 1986. Biophysical control of plant growth. *Annu. Rev. Plant Physiol.* **37:** 377–405.

Dainty, J. 1976. Water relations of plant cells. *Adv. Bot. Res.* **1:** 279–326.

Deri Tomos, A., and Leigh, R.A. 1999. The pressure probe: A versatile tool in plant cell physiology. *Annu. Rev. Plant Physiol. Plant Mol. Biol.* **50:** 447–472.

Haines, T.H. 1994. Water transport across biological membranes. *FEBS Lett.* **346:** 115–122.

Haynie, D.T. 2008. *Biological Thermodynamics*, 2nd ed. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK.

Israelachvili, J.N. 2003. *Intermolecular and Surface Forces*, 3rd ed. Academic Press, San Diego, CA.

Kramer, P.J., and Boyer, J.S. 1995. *Water Relations of Plants and Soils.* Academic Press, San Diego, CA.

Lide, D.R. (Ed.) 2008. *CRC Handbook of Chemistry and Physics*, 89th ed. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.

Lockhart, J.A. 1965. An analysis of irreversible plant cell elongation. *J. Theor. Biol.* **8:** 264–275.

Marin, B. (Ed.) 1987. *Plant Vacuoles: Their Importance in Solute Compartmentation in Cells and Their Applications in Plant Biotechnology.* Plenum, New York.

Neumann, A.W., and Spelt, J.K. (Eds.) 1996. *Applied Surface Dynamics, Surfactant Science Series.* Vol. **63.** Dekker, New York.

Nobel, P.S. 1969a. The Boyle–Van't Hoff relation. *J. Theor. Biol.* **23:** 375–379.

Nobel, P.S. 1969b. Light-induced changes in the ionic content of chloroplasts in *Pisum sativum*. *Biochim. Biophys. Acta* **172:** 134–143.

Ortega, J.K.E. 1990. Governing equations for plant growth. *Physiol. Plant.* **79:** 116–121.

Pearcy, R.W., Ehleringer, J., Mooney, H.A., and Rundel, P.W. 1989. *Plant Physiological Ecology: Field Methods and Instrumentation*. Chapman & Hall, New York.

Pfeffer, W.F.P. 1877. *Osmotische Untersuchungen. Studien zur Zell Mechanik*. W. Engelmann, Leipzig.

Proseus, T.E. 2006. Identifying cytoplasmic input to the cell wall of growing *Chara corallina. J. Exp. Bot.* **57:** 3231–3242.

Raven, J.A. 1987. The role of vacuoles. *New Phytol.* **106:** 357–422.

Richter, C., and Dainty, J. 1989. Ion behavior in plant cell walls. 1. Characterization of the *Sphagnum russowii* cell wall ion exchanger. *Can. J. Bot.* **67:** 451–459.

Rosen, M.J. 2004. *Surfactants and Interfacial Phenomena*, 3rd ed. Wiley-Interscience, Hoboken, NJ.

Scholander, P.F., Hammel, H.T., Hemmingsen, E.A., and Bradstreet, E.D. 1964. Hydrostatic pressure and osmotic potential in leaves of mangroves and some other plants. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **52:** 119–125.

Silbey, R.J., and Alberty, R.A. 2004. *Physical Chemistry*, 4th ed. Wiley, New York.

Smith, J.A.C., and Nobel, P.S. 1986. Water movement and storage in a desert succulent: Anatomy and rehydration kinetics for leaves of *Agave deserti*. *J. Exp. Bot.* **37:** 1044–1053.

Solga, A., Cerman, Z., Striffler, F., Spaeth, M., and Barthlott, W. 2007. The dream of staying clean: Lotus and biomimetric surfaces. *Bioinspiration & Biomimetrics* **2:** S126–S134.

Spellman, F.R. 1998. *The Science of Water: Concepts and Applications*. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.

Tinoco, I., Wang, J.C., Sauer, K., and Puglisi, J.D. 2001. *Physical Chemistry: Principles and Applications in Biological Sciences*, 4th ed. Prentice Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ.

Tomos, A.D. 1988. Cellular water relations of plants. In: Franks, F. (Ed.). *Water Science Review 3*. Cambridge University Press, New York, pp. 186–277.

Tyree, M.T., Koh, S., and Sands, P. 2005. The determination of membrane transport parameters with the cell pressure probe: theory suggests that unstirred layers have significant impact. *Plant Cell Environ.* **28:** 1475–1486.

Wolfe, J., and Steponkus, P.L. 1981. The stress-strain relation of the plasma membrane of isolated plant protoplasts. *Biochim. Biophys. Acta* **643:** 663–668.

Zeuthen, T., and Stein, W.D. 2002. Molecular mechanisms of water transport across biological membranes. *Int. Rev. Cytol.* **215:** 1–442.

Major Equations

Debye–Hückel equation (3.4)

$$\ln\gamma_{\pm} \cong \frac{1.17 z_+ z_- \sqrt{\frac{1}{2}\sum_j c_j z_j^2}}{32 + \sqrt{\frac{1}{2}\sum_j c_j z_j^2}}$$

Nernst potential (3.6a)

$$E_{N_j} = \frac{RT}{z_j F} \ln \frac{a_j^{\mathrm{o}}}{a_j^{\mathrm{i}}} = 2.303 \frac{RT}{z_j F} \log \frac{a_j^{\mathrm{o}}}{a_j^{\mathrm{i}}}$$

Solution diffusion potential (3.11a)

$$E^{\mathrm{II}} - E^{\mathrm{I}} = \left(\frac{u_- - u_+}{u_- + u_+}\right) \frac{RT}{F} \ln \frac{c^{\mathrm{II}}}{c^{\mathrm{I}}}$$

Goldman equation (3.20)

$$E_M = \frac{RT}{F} \ln \frac{\left(P_{\mathrm{K}} c_{\mathrm{K}}^{\mathrm{o}} + P_{\mathrm{Na}} c_{\mathrm{Na}}^{\mathrm{o}} + P_{\mathrm{Cl}} c_{\mathrm{Cl}}^{\mathrm{i}}\right)}{\left(P_{\mathrm{K}} c_{\mathrm{K}}^{\mathrm{i}} + P_{\mathrm{Na}} c_{\mathrm{Na}}^{\mathrm{i}} + P_{\mathrm{Cl}} c_{\mathrm{Cl}}^{\mathrm{o}}\right)}$$

Boltzmann energy distribution (3.22b)

$$n(E) = n_{\mathrm{total}} e^{-E/RT} \qquad \text{mole basis}$$

Temperature coefficient (Q_{10}) (3.23)

$$Q_{10} = \frac{\text{rate of process at } T + 10°\mathrm{C}}{\text{rate of process at } T}$$

$$= \sqrt{\frac{T + 10}{T}}\, e^{10 U_{\min}/[RT(T+10)]}$$

Ussing–Teorell equation (3.25)

$$\frac{J_j^{\mathrm{in}}}{J_j^{\mathrm{out}}} = \frac{c_j^{\mathrm{o}}}{c_j^{\mathrm{i}} e^{z_j F E_M/RT}}$$

Influx in Michealis–Menten form (3.28a)

$$J_j^{\mathrm{in}} = \frac{J_{j\,\max}^{\mathrm{in}} c_j^{\mathrm{o}}}{K_j + c_j^{\mathrm{o}}}$$

Volume flux density (3.40)

$$J_V = L_P \left(\Delta P - \sum_j \sigma_j \Delta \Pi_j\right)$$

Reflection coefficient (3.43)

$$\sigma_j = \frac{\text{effective osmotic pressure of species } j}{\text{actual osmotic pressure of species } j}$$

3

Solutes

3.1. Chemical Potential of Ions 102
3.1A. Electrical Potential 103
3.1B. Electroneutrality and Membrane Capacitance 104
3.1C. Activity Coefficients of Ions 106
3.1D. Nernst Potential 108
3.1E. Example of E_{N_K} 110
3.2. Fluxes and Diffusion Potentials 112
3.2A. Flux and Mobility 113
3.2B. Diffusion Potential in a Solution 116
3.2C. Membrane Fluxes 119
3.2D. Membrane Diffusion Potential—Goldman Equation 122
3.2E. Application of Goldman Equation 125
3.2F. Donnan Potential 127
3.3. Characteristics of Crossing Membranes 129
3.3A. Electrogenicity 130
3.3B. Boltzmann Energy Distribution and Q_{10}, a Temperature Coefficient 131
3.3C. Activation Energy and Arrhenius Plots 135
3.3D. Ussing–Teorell Equation 137
3.3E. Example of Active Transport 140
3.3F. Energy for Active Transport 142
3.3G. Speculation on Active Transport 143
3.4. Mechanisms for Crossing Membranes 144
3.4A. Carriers, Porters, Channels, and Pumps 145
3.4B. Michaelis–Menten Formalism 149
3.4C. Facilitated Diffusion 151
3.5. Principles of Irreversible Thermodynamics 153
3.5A. Fluxes, Forces, and Onsager Coefficients 154
3.5B. Water and Solute Flow 156
3.5C. Flux Densities, L_P, and σ 158
3.5D. Values for Reflection Coefficients 161
3.6. Solute Movement Across Membranes 163
3.6A. Influence of Reflection Coefficients on Incipient Plasmolysis 165
3.6B. Extension of the Boyle–Van't Hoff Relation 167
3.6C. Reflection Coefficients of Chloroplasts 169
3.6D. Solute Flux Density 169
3.7. Problems 170
3.8. References and Further Reading 173

In this chapter we turn our attention to the properties of solutes. We will compare chemical potentials in the aqueous phases on the two sides of a membrane or across some other region to predict the direction of passive solute fluxes as well as the driving forces leading to such motion. We will also show how the fluxes of charged species can account for the electrical potential differences across biological membranes.

Many solute properties are intertwined with those of the ubiquitous solvent, water. For example, the osmotic pressure term in the chemical potential of water is due mainly to the decrease of the water activity caused by solutes ($RT \ln a_w = -\overline{V}_w \Pi$; Eq. 2.7). The movement of water through the soil to a root and then to its xylem can influence the entry of dissolved nutrients, and the subsequent distribution of these nutrients throughout the plant depends on water movement in the xylem (and the phloem in some cases). In contrast to water, however, solute molecules can carry a net positive or negative electrical charge. For such charged particles, the electrical term must be included in their chemical potential. This leads to a consideration of electrical phenomena in general and an interpretation of the electrical potential differences across membranes in particular. Whether an observed ionic flux of some species into or out of a cell can be accounted for by the passive process of diffusion depends on the differences in both the concentration of that species and the electrical potential between the inside and the outside of the cell. Ions can also be actively transported across membranes, in which case metabolic energy is involved.

When both solutes and water traverse the same barrier, we should replace the classical thermodynamic approach with one based on irreversible thermodynamics. The various forces and fluxes are then viewed as interacting with each other, so the movement of water across a membrane influences the movement of solutes, and vice versa. Using this more general approach, we will show that the osmotic pressure difference effective in causing a volume flux across a membrane permeable to both water and solutes is generally less than the actual osmotic pressure difference across that membrane.

3.1. Chemical Potential of Ions

We introduced the concept of chemical potential in Chapter 2, which we now will apply to ions. Because a substance spontaneously tends to move toward regions where its chemical potential is lower, this quantity is useful for analyzing passive movements of solutes. By summing the various contributing terms, in Chapter 2 we expressed the chemical potential of any species j by Equation 2.4: $\mu_j = \mu_j^* + RT \ln a_j + \overline{V}_j P + z_j FE + m_j gh$. Because water is uncharged ($z_w = 0$), the electrical term does not enter into its chemical potential. For ions, however, $z_j FE$ becomes important. In fact, for charged solutes under most conditions of biological interest, energetic differences in the electrical term are usually far larger than are energetic differences in the terms for hydrostatic pressure or gravity. In particular, for movements across membranes, Δh is effectively zero, so

we will omit the gravitational term in this chapter. Changes in the $\overline{V}_jP$ term can also usually be ignored because they are relatively small, as we will indicate later. Therefore, the chemical potential generally used when dealing with ions is $\mu_j^* + RT \ln a_j + z_jFE$, commonly referred to as the *electrochemical* potential. This phraseology emphasizes the role played by electrical potentials, but the expression "chemical potential" represents the sum of all of the contributors affecting a particular species, so the special term electrochemical potential when dealing with ions is not really necessary.

3.1A. Electrical Potential

The difference in electrical potential E between two locations indicates the amount of electrical work that is required to move a charge from one location to the other. Specifically, the work in joules (J) equals the charge Q in coulombs (C) times the electrical potential difference ΔE in volts (V):

$$\text{Electrical work} = Q\Delta E \tag{3.1}$$

Thus, coulombs times volts equals joules. The zero level of electrical potential is arbitrary. Because both the initial electrical potential and the final electrical potential must be expressed relative to the same zero level, this arbitrariness is of no consequence when the electrical potential difference (final potential – initial potential; Eq. 3.1) is determined. (In keeping with most biological literature, E in electrical terms throughout this book refers to electrical potentials, not electric field intensities, as it does in many physics texts.)

The charge carried by an ion of species j is a positive or negative integer z_j (the *charge number*) times the charge of a proton. For instance, z_j is +1 for potassium (K^+) and −2 for sulfate ($SO_4{}^{2-}$). The electrical charge carried by a proton is commonly called the *electronic charge* because it is the same in magnitude as the charge on an electron, although opposite in sign. A single proton has a charge of 1.602×10^{-19} C; thus one mole (Avogadro's number) of protons has a charge equal to

$$(6.022 \times 10^{23}\ \text{protons mol}^{-1})(1.602 \times 10^{-19}\text{C proton}^{-1}) = 9.65 \times 10^4\ \text{C mol}^{-1}$$

Such a unit, consisting of Avogadro's number of electronic charges (i.e., 1 mole of single, positive charges), is called Faraday's constant, F. This quantity, which appears in the electrical term of the chemical potential (Eq. 2.4), equals 9.65×10^4 C mol^{-1} or 9.65×10^4 J mol^{-1} V^{-1}.

To illustrate the rather small contribution that the pressure term, $\overline{V}_jP$, makes to differences in the chemical potential of a charged substance across a membrane, we will compare $\overline{V}_j\Delta P$ with the contribution of the electrical term, $z_jF\Delta E$. We will use a typical electrical potential difference (ΔE) across a biological membrane of 100 mV and a hydrostatic pressure difference (ΔP) of 0.5 MPa (= 0.5×10^6 Pa = 0.5×10^6 N m^{-2} = 0.5×10^6 J m^{-3}), and we

will consider a small monovalent cation [$z_j = +1, \overline{V}_j = 40 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m}^3\ \text{mol}^{-1}$ ($40\ \text{cm}^3\ \text{mol}^{-1}$)]. Here $\overline{V}_j \Delta P$ is

$$\overline{V}_j \Delta P = (40 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m}^3\ \text{mol}^{-1})(0.5 \times 10^6\ \text{J m}^{-3}) = 20\ \text{J mol}^{-1}$$

and $z_j F \Delta E$ is

$$z_j F \Delta E = (1)(9.65 \times 10^4\ \text{J mol}^{-1}\ \text{V}^{-1})(0.100\ \text{V}) = 9650\ \text{J mol}^{-1}$$

Thus, the electrical contribution to $\Delta\mu_j$ is nearly 500 times larger than the pressure contribution. Contributions of the pressure term to the chemical potential differences of ions across biological membranes therefore are usually negligible compared with electrical contributions and hence can generally be ignored.

3.1B. Electroneutrality and Membrane Capacitance

Another consequence of the relatively large magnitude of electrical effects is the general occurrence of *electroneutrality*—in most aqueous regions that are large compared with atomic dimensions, the total electrical charge carried by the cations is essentially equal in magnitude to that carried by the anions. What is the situation for typical plant cells? Do we ever have an excess of negative or positive charges in cells or organelles? If there were a net charge in some region, such as near a membrane, an electrical potential difference would exist from one part of the region to another. Can we relate the size of the electrical potential difference (ΔE) to the net charge?

To relate charges and ΔE's, we need to introduce *capacitance* (Fig. 3-1). Electrical capacitance (C) of a region is the coefficient of proportionality between a net charge (Q) and the resulting electrical potential difference:

$$Q = C\Delta E \qquad (3.2)$$

A high capacitance means that the region has the capacity to have many uncompensated charges separated across it without developing a large electrical potential difference across that region.The unit for capacitance is the farad (F), which equals $1\ \text{C V}^{-1}$. The capacitance of most biological membranes is approximately the same per unit area—about $10\ \text{mF m}^{-2}$ ($1\ \mu\text{F cm}^{-2}$). The lipid bilayer of the membrane represents the dielectric phase (Fig. 3-1).

For convenience in estimating the net charge inside a cell that would lead to a typical membrane potential, we will consider a spherical cell of radius r. Suppose that the uncancelled or net charges have a concentration equal to c. For a conductor—a body in which electrical charges can freely move, such as an aqueous solution—the uncancelled or net charges do not remain uniformly distributed. Rather, they repel each other and hence collect at the inner surface of the sphere, which is the lowest energy configuration (Fig. 3-1b). The quantity c is therefore the hypothetical concentration of the net charge if it were uniformly distributed throughout the interior of the sphere. This concentration can be expressed in mol m^{-3} and here refers to the average net concentration of uncompensated singly charged

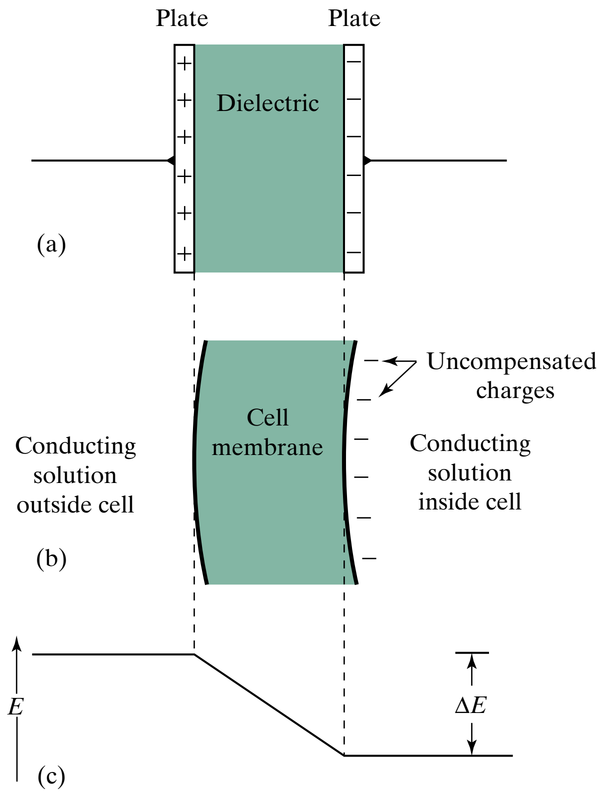


Figure 3-1. (a) A parallel plate capacitor. Each plate represents a conductor in which charges can freely move, so each plate has a particular electrical potential, reflecting its uncompensated positive or negative charges; between the plates is a region (often called the *dielectric*) that charges cannot readily cross, so an electrical potential difference ΔE occurs across this region. (b) Cell membrane as a capacitor. Membranes act as dielectrics (the dielectric constant D, introduced in Chapter 2, Section 2.1F, is about 3 for the lipid phase) separating the aqueous conducting phases on either side; uncompensated negative charges accumulate on the inner side of a typical cell membrane. (c) Electrical potential difference across dielectric. The higher the capacitance, the greater is the charge on the plates (a) or the more uncompensated charges adjacent to the membrane (b) for a given ΔE across the dielectric; electrical capacitance is proportional to D.

particles; multiplying this c by F, which is expressed in C mol^{-1}, leads to cF, which is the charge concentration (C m^{-3}). The amount of charge Q within the sphere of radius r is then the volume of a sphere, $(4/3)\pi r^3$, times cF, or $(4/3)\pi r^3 cF$. The capacitance C of the sphere is $4\pi r^2 C'$, where $4\pi r^2$ is the surface area and C' is the capacitance per unit area. Substituting these values of Q and C into Equation 3.2 yields

$$Q = (4/3)\pi r^3 cF = C\Delta E = 4\pi r^2 C' \Delta E$$

which leads to the following expression for the electrical potential difference in the case of a spherical capacitor:

$$\Delta E = \frac{rcF}{3C'} \tag{3.3}$$

Equation 3.3 gives the electrical potential difference from the center of the sphere to just outside its surface. For a conductor, the internal uncompensated charges are found near the surface. In that case, ΔE actually occurs close to the bounding surface (such as a membrane) surrounding the spherical body under consideration. Equation 3.3 indicates that the electrical potential difference is directly proportional to the average concentration of net charge enclosed and inversely proportional to the capacitance per unit area of the sphere.

To apply Equation 3.3 to a specific situation, let us consider a spherical cell with a radius (r) of 30 μm and an electrical potential difference (ΔE) across the membrane of −100 mV (inside negative), a value close to that occurring for many cells. If the membrane capacitance per unit area (C') has a typical value of 10 mF m^{-2} (10^{-2} C V^{-1} m^{-2}), to what net charge concentration in the cell does this electrical potential difference correspond? Using Equation 3.3, we obtain

$$c = \frac{3C'\Delta E}{rF} = \frac{(3)(10^{-2}\ \text{C V}^{-1}\ \text{m}^{-2})(-0.100\ \text{V})}{(30 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m})(9.65 \times 10^{4}\ \text{C mol}^{-1})} = -1.0 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{mol m}^{-3}$$

The sign of the net charge concentration is negative, indicating more internal anions than cations. The average concentration of the net (uncancelled) charge leading to a considerable electrical potential difference is rather small, an important point that we consider next.

It is instructive to compare the net charge concentration averaged over the volume of a cell (c in Eq. 3.3) with the total concentration of anions and cations in the cell. Specifically, because the positive and the negative ions in plant cells can each have a total concentration of about 100 mol m^{-3} (0.1 M), the calculated excess of 1.0 × 10^{-3} mol m^{-3} (1 μM) is only about one extra negative charge per 10^{5} anions. Expressed another way, the total charge of the cations inside such a cell equals or compensates that of the anions to within about 1 part in 100,000. When cations are taken up by a cell to any appreciable extent, anions must accompany them or cations must be released from inside the cell, or both must occur. Otherwise, marked departures from electrical neutrality would occur in some region, and sizable electrical potential differences would develop.

3.1C. Activity Coefficients of Ions

We now turn our attention to the activity term in the chemical potential—specifically, to the chemical activity itself. As indicated in Chapter 2, the activity of species j, a_j, is its thermodynamically effective concentration. For charged particles in an aqueous solution, this activity can be much less than the actual concentration c_j—a fact that has not always been adequately recognized in dealing with ions. (By Eq. 2.5, a_j equals $\gamma_j c_j$, where γ_j is the activity coefficient of species j.)

A quantitative description of the dependence of the activity coefficients of ions on the concentration of the various species in a solution was developed by Peter Debye and Erich Hückel in the 1920s. In a local region around

a particular ion, the electrostatic forces, which can be described by relations such as Equation 2.3 [Electrical force = $Q_1Q_2/(4\pi\epsilon_0 Dr^2)$], constrain the movement of other ions. As the concentration increases, the average distance between the ions decreases, thereby facilitating ion–ion interactions. Equation 2.3 indicates, for example, that the electrostatic interaction between two charged particles varies inversely as the square of the distance between them, so electrical forces greatly increase as the ions get closer together. When ions of opposite sign attract each other, the various other interactions of both ions are restricted, thus lowering their thermodynamically effective concentration or activity.

An approximate form of the Debye–Hückel equation appropriate for estimating the values of activity coefficients of ions in relatively dilute aqueous solutions at 25°C is

$$\ln\gamma_\pm \cong \frac{1.17 z_+ z_- \sqrt{\frac{1}{2}\sum_j c_j z_j^2}}{32 + \sqrt{\frac{1}{2}\sum_j c_j z_j^2}} \tag{3.4}$$

where z_+ is the charge number of the cation and z_- is that of the anion, concentrations are expressed in mol m^{-3} (numerically equal to mM), and the summations are over all charged species.[1] Because we cannot have a solution of one type of ion by itself in which to measure or to calculate γ_+ or γ_-, activity coefficients of ions occur as the products of those of cations and anions. Hence, $\gamma_\pm$ in Equation 3.4 represents the mean activity coefficient of some cation–anion pair with charge numbers z_+ and z_-. Because z_- is negative (and so is z_+z_-), Equation 3.4 indicates that ln $\gamma_\pm$ is also negative, and thus $\gamma_\pm$ is less than 1. Therefore, the activities of ions in aqueous solutions are less than their concentrations, as expected.

To estimate $\gamma_\pm$ under conditions approximating those that might occur in a plant or animal cell, let us consider an aqueous solution containing 100 mol m^{-3} (100 mM) of both monovalent cations and anions and 25 mol m^{-3} of both divalent cations and anions. For this solution, $\frac{1}{2}\sum_j c_j z_j^2$, which is known as the *ionic strength*, is

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{1}{2}\sum_j c_j z_j^2 &= \frac{1}{2}\Big[\left(100\text{ mol m}^{-3}\right)(1)^2 + \left(100\text{ mol m}^{-3}\right)(-1)^2 \\ &\quad + \left(25\text{ mol m}^{-3}\right)(2)^2 + \left(25\text{ mol m}^{-3}\right)(-2)^2\Big] \\ &= 200\text{ mol m}^{-3}\end{aligned}$$

From Equation 3.4, we can calculate $\gamma_\pm$ for the monovalent ions as

$$\ln\gamma_\pm \cong \frac{1.17(1)(-1)\sqrt{200}}{32 + \sqrt{200}} = -0.359$$

1. For very dilute aqueous solutions (much more dilute than those that typically occur in plant or animal cells), $\sqrt{\frac{1}{2}\sum_j c_j z_j^2}$ is neglected compared with 32 in the denominator of Equation 3.4, leading to $\ln\gamma_\pm \cong 0.037 z_+ z_- \sqrt{\frac{1}{2}\sum_j c_j z_j^2}$, which is known as the Debye–Hückel limiting law.

This corresponds to a mean activity coefficient of $e^{-0.359}$ or only 0.70, a value considerably less than 1.

The activity coefficient of a particular ionic species depends on all of the ions in the solution, as indicated by the ionic strength terms in Equation 3.4. Therefore, even when a particular ionic species is itself dilute, its activity coefficient can nevertheless be much less than 1 because of the many electrostatic interactions with other ions. The departure from 1 for activity coefficients is even greater for divalent and trivalent ions than for monovalent ions, as the z_+z_- factor in Equation 3.4 indicates. Although activity coefficients of ions are often set equal to 1 for convenience, this is not always justified. A practical difficulty arising under most experimental situations is that c_j is much easier to determine than is a_j, especially for compartments such as the cytosol or the interior of a chloroplast. For circumstances in which a_j has been replaced by c_j, caution must be exercised in the interpretations or conclusions. The activity coefficients for nonelectrolytes are generally much closer to 1 than are those for ions; hence the assumption involved in replacing a_j by c_j for such neutral species is not as severe as it is for the charged substances. For instance, γ_{sucrose} is about 0.96 for 300 mol m^{-3} sucrose. Equation 3.4 illustrates that activity coefficients of ions can be substantially less than 1.00 under conditions in cells. An all-inclusive theory for activity coefficients is quite complicated and beyond the scope of this text.

3.1D. Nernst Potential

Now that we have considered the electrical and the activity terms in some detail, we turn to the role of these quantities in the chemical potential of ions. Specifically, we will consider the deceptively simple yet extremely important relationship between the electrical potential difference across a membrane and the accompanying distribution of ions across it at equilibrium.

When ions of some species j are in equilibrium across a membrane, its chemical potential outside (o) is the same as that inside (i), that is, μ_j^{o} equals μ_j^{i}. Differences in the hydrostatic pressure term generally make a negligible contribution to the chemical potential differences of ions across membranes, so $\overline{V}_jP$ can be omitted from μ_j in the present case. With this approximation and the definition of chemical potential (Eq. 2.4 without the pressure and the gravitational terms), the condition for equilibrium of ionic species j across the membrane ($\mu_j^{\text{o}} = \mu_j^{\text{i}}$) is

$$\mu_j^* + RT\ln a_j^{\text{o}} + z_jFE^{\text{o}} = \mu_j^* + RT\ln a_j^{\text{i}} + z_jFE^{\text{i}} \tag{3.5}$$

The term μ_j^* in Equation 3.5 is a constant referring to the same standard state of species j in the aqueous solutions on both sides of the membrane, so it can be cancelled from the two sides of the equation.

Upon solving Equation 3.5 for the electrical potential difference $E^{\text{i}} - E^{\text{o}}$ across the membrane at equilibrium, we obtain the following important relationship:

$$E^{\text{i}} - E^{\text{o}} = E_{N_j} = \frac{RT}{z_jF}\ln\frac{a_j^{\text{o}}}{a_j^{\text{i}}} = 2.303\frac{RT}{z_jF}\log\frac{a_j^{\text{o}}}{a_j^{\text{i}}} \tag{3.6a}$$

As indicated, the natural logarithm (ln) can be replaced by 2.303 log, where log is the common logarithm to the base 10 (Appendix III). Using values in Appendix I, RT/F in Equation 3.6a is 25.7 mV at 25°C and 2.303 RT/F is 58.2 mV at 20°C, 59.2 mV at 25°C, and 60.2 mV at 30°C. For instance, at 25°C Equation 3.6a with electrical potentials in millivolts becomes

$$E_{N_j} = \frac{25.7}{z_j} \ln \frac{a_j^{\mathrm{o}}}{a_j^{\mathrm{i}}} \ \mathrm{mV} = \frac{59.2}{z_j} \log \frac{a_j^{\mathrm{o}}}{a_j^{\mathrm{i}}} \ \mathrm{mV} \tag{3.6b}$$

The electrical potential difference E_{N_j} in Equation 3.6 is called the *Nernst potential* of species j, i.e., $E^{\mathrm{i}} - E^{\mathrm{o}} = \Delta E = E_{N_j}$ in this case, where the subscript N stands for Nernst, who first derived this relation in about 1900.[2] We derived it by assuming equality of the chemical potentials of some charged species on two sides of a membrane.

Equation 3.6, the Nernst equation, is an equilibrium statement showing how the internal and the external activities of ionic species j are related to the electrical potential difference across a membrane (Fig. 3-2). At equilibrium, a 10-fold difference in the activity of a monovalent ion across some membrane is energetically equivalent to and can balance a 59-mV difference in electrical potential (at 25°C). Hence, a relatively small electrical potential difference can energetically balance a large difference in activity or concentration across a membrane. For instance, if the external activity were 1% of the internal activity ($a_j^{\mathrm{o}}/a_j^{\mathrm{i}} = 0.01$), the Nernst potential would be −118 mV for K^+ and +118 mV for Cl^- (Fig. 3-2). For some calculations, $\gamma_j^{\mathrm{o}}/\gamma_j^{\mathrm{i}}$ is set equal to 1 (a less stringent assumption than setting both γ_j^{o} and γ_j^{i} equal to 1). Under this condition, $a_j^{\mathrm{o}}/a_j^{\mathrm{i}}$ in Equation 3.6 becomes the ratio of the concentrations, $c_j^{\mathrm{o}}/c_j^{\mathrm{i}}$ ($a_j = \gamma_j c_j$; Eq. 2.5). Such a substitution may be justified when the ionic strengths on the two sides of a membrane are approximately the same, but it can lead to errors when the outside solution is much more dilute than the internal one, as occurs for *Chara* or *Nitella* in pond water.

Throughout the rest of this book we will represent the actual electrical potential difference across a membrane, $E^{\mathrm{i}} - E^{\mathrm{o}}$, by E_M, where M refers to membrane. Hence, for both equilibrium and nonequilibrium situations, we have $E^{\mathrm{i}} - E^{\mathrm{o}} = \Delta E = E_M$. When a particular ionic species j is in equilibrium across some membrane, E_M equals E_{N_j}, which is the Nernst potential for that species. However, regardless of the actual electrical potential difference across a membrane (E_M), a Nernst potential for each individual ionic species j can always be calculated from Equation 3.6 by using the ratio of the outside to the inside activity ($a_j^{\mathrm{o}}/a_j^{\mathrm{i}}$) or concentration ($c_j^{\mathrm{o}}/c_j^{\mathrm{i}}$), e.g., $E_{N_j} = (RT/z_jF)\ln(c_j^{\mathrm{o}}/c_j^{\mathrm{i}})$.

If some ionic species cannot penetrate a membrane or is actively transported across it, E_{N_j} can differ markedly from E_M. In fact, the minimum amount of energy needed to transport ions across a membrane is proportional to the difference between E_{N_j} and E_M. The aqueous phases designated

2. Walter Nernst made many important contributions to the understanding of the physical chemistry of solutions; he was awarded the Nobel Prize in chemistry in 1920.

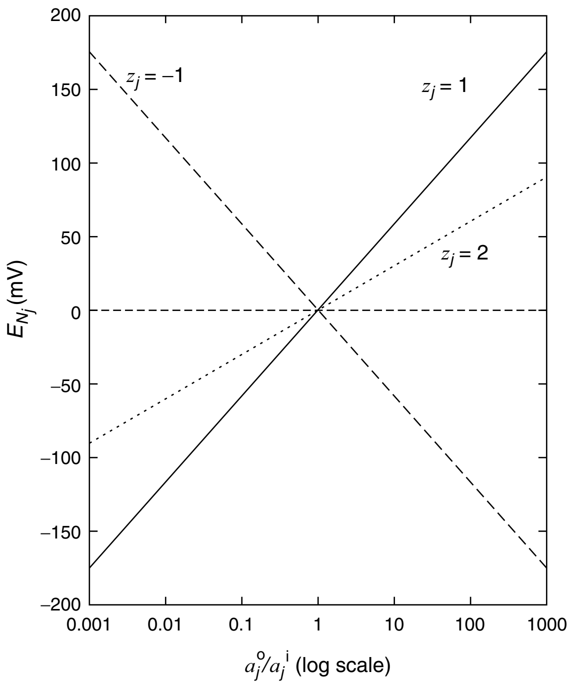


Figure 3-2. Variation of the Nernst potential with the ratio of external to internal activity of species j for a monovalent cation ($z_j = 1$; e.g., K^+), a divalent cation ($z_j = 2$; e.g., Ca^{2+}), and a monovalent anion ($z_j = -1$; e.g., Cl^-). Data are for 25°C and were determined using Equation 3.6b.

as inside and outside can have more than one membrane intervening between them. For instance, the sap in the central vacuole (Fig. 1-1) and an external solution—the regions often considered experimentally—have two membranes separating them, the plasma membrane and the tonoplast. The thermodynamic arguments remain the same in the case of multiple membranes, with E_M and E_{N_j} referring to the electrical potential differences between the two regions under consideration, regardless of how many membranes occur between them.

3.1E. Example of E_{N_K}

Data obtained on K^+ for the large internodal cells of the green freshwater alga *Chara corallina* are convenient for illustrating the use of the Nernst equation (Vorobiev, 1967). The K^+ activity in the medium bathing the cells, a_K^o (where the element symbol K as a subscript is the conventional notation for K^+), is 0.096 mol m^{-3}, and a_K^i in the central vacuole is 48 mol m^{-3}. By Equation 3.6b (with a factor of 58.2 because the measurement was made at 20°C), the Nernst potential for K^+ is

$$E_{N_K} = \frac{(58.2\ \text{mV})}{(1)} \log\left(\frac{0.096\ \text{mol m}^{-3}}{48\ \text{mol m}^{-3}}\right) = -157\ \text{mV}$$

The measured electrical potential of the central vacuole relative to the external solution, E_M, is −155 mV, which is very close to the calculated Nernst potential for K^+. Thus K^+ in this case may be in equilibrium between the external solution and the central vacuole. The K^+ concentration in the central vacuole of these *Chara* cells is 60 mol m^{-3}. The activity coefficient for K^+ in the central vacuole (γ_K^i) equals a_K^i/c_K^i ($a_j = \gamma_j c_j$; Eq. 2.5), so $\gamma_K^i$is (48 mol m^{-3})/(60 mol m^{-3}), or 0.80, and the K^+ activity coefficient in the bathing solution (γ_K^o) is about 0.96. For this example, in which there are large differences in the internal and the external concentrations, the ratio γ_K^o/γ_K^i is (0.96)/(0.80), or 1.20, which differs appreciably from 1.00. If concentrations instead of activities are used in Equation 3.6, then E_{N_K} is −162 mV, which is somewhat lower than the measured potential of −155 mV. Calculating from the concentration ratio, the suggestion that K^+ is in equilibrium from the bathing solution to the vacuole could not be made with much confidence, if at all.

The condition of equilibrium does not require that the various forces acting on a substance are zero; rather, it requires that they balance each other. In the example for *C. corallina*, the factors that tend to cause K^+ to move are the differences in both its activity (or concentration) and the electrical potential across the membranes. The activity of K^+ is much higher in the central vacuole than in the external solution ($a_K^i \gg a_K^o$; see Fig. 3-3). The activity term in the chemical potential therefore represents a driving force on K^+ that is directed from inside the cell to the bathing solution.

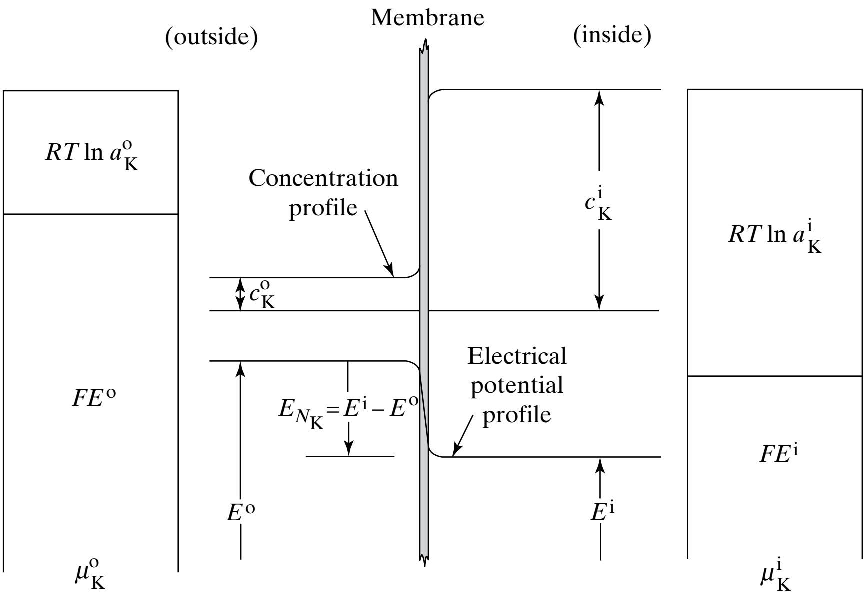


Figure 3-3. Equilibrium of K^+ across a membrane. When K^+ is in equilibrium across some membrane, the side with the higher concentration must be at a lower electrical potential for its chemical potential to be unchanged ($\mu_K^o = \mu_K^i$) in crossing the membrane (μ_K^* is the same on the two sides of the membrane). The electrical potential difference across the membrane is then the Nernst potential for K^+, E_{N_K}Note that E^o and E^i must be expressed relative to some arbitrary baseline for electrical potentials.

The electrical potential is lower inside the cell than outside ($E^{\text{i}} < E^{\text{o}}$), as is also indicated in Figure 3-3. Hence, the electrical driving force on the positively charged K^+ tends to cause its entry into the cell. At equilibrium these two tendencies for movement in opposite directions are balanced, and no net K^+ flux occurs. As indicated previously, the electrical potential difference existing across a membrane when K^+ is in equilibrium is the Nernst potential for K^+, E_{N_K}. Generally, c_K^{i} and a_K^{i} for both plant and animal cells are much higher than are c_K^{o} and a_K^{o}, and K^+ is often close to equilibrium across the cellular membranes. From these observations, we expect that the interiors of cells are usually at negative electrical potentials compared with the outside solutions, as is indeed the case. The chemical potentials of ions are usually not equal in all regions of interest, so passive movements toward lower μ_j's occur, the topic that we consider next.

3.2. Fluxes and Diffusion Potentials

Fluxes of many different solutes occur across biological membranes. Inward fluxes move mineral nutrients into cells, while certain products of metabolism flow out of cells. The primary concern in this section is the passive fluxes of ions toward lower chemical potentials. First, we indicate that the passive flux density of a solute is directly proportional to the driving force causing the movement. Next, the driving force is expressed in terms of the relevant components of the chemical potential. We then examine the consequences of electroneutrality when there are simultaneous passive fluxes of more than one type of ion. This leads to an expression describing the electrical potential difference across a membrane in terms of the properties of the ions penetrating it.

Before discussing the relation between fluxes and chemical potentials, let us briefly consider fluxes already mentioned or which may be familiar from other contexts (see Fig. 2-7). In Chapter 1 we discussed Fick's first law of diffusion (Eq. 1.1), which says that the flux density of (neutral) solute species j equals $-D_j \partial c_j / \partial x$, where we can consider that the driving force is the negative gradient of the concentration. In Chapter 9 we will use Darcy's law (Eq. 9.7) and Poiseuille's law (Eq. 9.11), both of which indicate that the volume flux density of a solution is proportional to $-\partial P / \partial x$. Ohm's law, which describes electrical effects, can be written as $\Delta E = IR$, where I is the current (charge moving per unit time) and R is the resistance across which the electrical potential difference is ΔE. The current per unit area A is the charge flux density, J_c, which equals $-(1/\rho)\partial E / \partial x$, where ρ is the electrical resistivity and the negative gradient of the electrical potential represents the driving force. We usually replace $-\partial E / \partial x$ by $\Delta E / \Delta x$, which leads to $I/A = (1/\rho)\ \Delta E / \Delta x$. For this to conform with the usual expression of Ohm's law ($\Delta E = IR$), $\rho \Delta x / A$ needs to be replaced by R. The gravitational force, $-m_j g$, is the negative gradient of the potential energy in a gravitational field; that is, $-\partial m_j g h / \partial h$ equals $-m_j g$, where the minus sign indicates that the force is directed toward decreasing altitudes or heights, namely, toward the center of the earth. The gravitational force leads to the various forms of precipitation as well as to the percolation of water down through the soil.

We have just considered examples of fluxes depending on each of the four variable terms in the chemical potential ($\mu_j = \mu_j^* + RT \ln a_j + \bar{V}_j P + z_j FE + m_j gh$; Eq. 2.4). Specifically, the activity term ($RT \ln a_j$) leads to Fick's first law, the pressure term ($\bar{V}_j P$) accounts for Darcy's law and Poiseuille's law, the electrical term ($z_j FE$) yields Ohm's law, and the gravitation term ($m_j gh$) is responsible for fluxes caused by gravity (Fig. 2-7). In each case, experiments show that the flux density is directly proportional to an appropriate driving force. We can generalize such relationships because nearly all transport phenomena are represented by the following statement: *Flux density is proportional to an appropriate force*. Force is represented by the negative gradient of a suitable potential, which for convenience is often taken as the change in potential over some finite distance. Moreover, we have already shown that the chemical potential is an elegant way of summarizing all the factors that can contribute to the motion of a substance. Therefore, it should not be surprising that, in general, the flux density of species j (J_j) is proportional to the negative gradient of its chemical potential, $-\partial\mu_j/\partial x$.

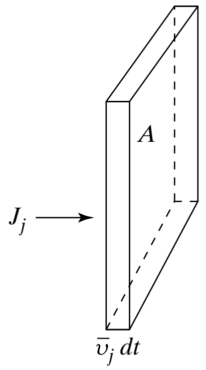
3.2A. Flux and Mobility

We now consider a charged substance in a solution or crossing a particular membrane. When its μ_j depends on position, a net passive movement or flux of that species is expected toward the region where its chemical potential is lower. The negative gradient of the chemical potential of solute species j, $-\partial\mu_j/\partial x$, acts as the driving force for this flux. (As in Chapter 1, our discussion applies to the one-dimensional case, so we will let $\partial\mu_j/\partial y = \partial\mu_j/\partial z = 0$.) The greater is $-\partial\mu_j/\partial x$, the larger is the flux of species j in the x-direction. As a useful approximation, we will assume that the flux density is proportional to $-\partial\mu_j/\partial x$, where the minus sign means that a net positive flux density occurs in the direction of decreasing chemical potential. The magnitude of a flux density across some plane is also proportional to the local concentration of that species, c_j. That is, for a particular driving force on species j, the amount of the substance that moves is proportional to how much of it is actually present—the greater is the concentration, the greater is the flux density. Thus, for the one-dimensional case of crossing a plane perpendicular to the x-axis, the flux density J_j can be expressed as

$$\begin{aligned} J_j &= u_j c_j \left(-\frac{\partial\mu_j}{\partial x} \right) \\ &= \bar{v}_j c_j \end{aligned} \tag{3.7}$$

where u_j is a coefficient called the *mobility* of species j. A mobility is generally the ratio of some velocity to the force causing the motion.

As we have already indicated, the upper line of Equation 3.7 is a representative example from the large class of expressions relating various flows to their causative forces. In this particular case, J_j is the rate of flow of moles of species j across unit area of a plane and can be expressed in mol m^{-2} s^{-1}. Such a molar flux density of a species j divided by its local



Slab thickness $= \bar{v}_j\,dt$

Slab area $= A$

Slab volume $= \bar{v}_j\,dt\,A$

Concentration in slab $= c_j$

Amount in slab $= \bar{v}_j\,dt\,A\,c_j$

$$\text{Flux density} = \frac{\text{(amount)}}{\text{(area)(time)}} = \frac{\bar{v}_j\,dt\,A\,c_j}{A\,dt} = \bar{v}_j\,c_j$$

Figure 3-4. Geometrical argument showing that the flux density J_j across surface area A equals $\bar{v}_j c_j$, where $\bar{v}_j$ is the mean velocity of species *j*. Note that $\bar{v}_j dt$ is an infinitesimal distance representing the slab thickness (see Fig. 1-6 as well as Sections 1.2B and 2.4F for analogous uses of such a thin slab in derivations). By the definition of $\bar{v}_j$, all of the molecules of species *j* in the slab cross area A in time *dt*.

concentration, c_j, gives the mean velocity, $\bar{v}_j$, with which this species moves across the plane; when c_j is in mol m^{-3}, J_j/c_j can have units of (mol m^{-2} s^{-1})/(mol m^{-3}), or m s^{-1}. Perhaps this important point can be better appreciated by considering it in the following way. Suppose that the average velocity of species *j* moving perpendicularly toward area A of the plane of interest is $\bar{v}_j$, and consider a volume element of cross-sectional area A extending back from the plane for a distance $\bar{v}_j dt$ (Fig. 3-4). In time *dt*, all molecules in the volume element $(\bar{v}_j dt) \times (A)$ will cross area A, so the number of moles of species *j* crossing the plane in this interval is $[(\bar{v}_j dt)A] \times (c_j)$, where c_j is the number of moles of species *j* per unit volume. Hence, the molar flux density J_j (which is the number of moles crossing unit area per unit time) is $(\bar{v}_j dtAc_j)/(Adt)$, or $\bar{v}_j c_j$ (Fig. 3-4). In other words, the mean velocity of species *j* moving across the plane, $\bar{v}_j$, times the number of those molecules per unit volume that can move, c_j, equals the flux density of that species, J_j, as the lower line of Equation 3.7 indicates. The upper line of Equation 3.7 states that this average velocity, which equals J_j/c_j, is the mobility of species *j*, u_j, times $-\partial\mu_j/\partial x$, the latter being the force on species *j* that causes it to move. Thus mobility is the proportionality factor between the mean velocity of motion $(\bar{v}_j = J_j/c_j)$ and the causative force $(-\partial\mu_j/\partial x)$. The greater is the mobility of some species, the higher is its velocity in response to a particular force.

The particular form of the chemical potential to be substituted into Equation 3.7 depends on the application. For charged particles moving across biological membranes, the appropriate μ_j is $\mu_j^* + RT\ln a_j + z_jFE$. (As we mentioned before, the $\bar{V}_jP$ term makes only a relatively small contribution to the $\Delta\mu_j$ of an ion, so it is not included, and the m_jgh term in Eq. 2.4 can also be ignored here.) For treating the one-dimensional case described by Equation 3.7, μ_j must be differentiated with respect to x, $\partial\mu_j/\partial x$, which equals $RT\partial\ln a_j/\partial x + z_jF\partial E/\partial x$ when T is constant. [Actually, we

must assume isothermal conditions for $-\partial\mu_j/\partial x$ to represent the force precisely; that is, T is constant, and hence $\partial(RT\ln a_j)/\partial x = RT\partial\ln a_j/\partial x$.] The quantity $\partial\ln a_j/\partial x$ equals $(1/a_j)\ \partial a_j/\partial x$, which is $(1/\gamma_j c_j)\partial\gamma_j c_j/\partial x$ ($a_j = \gamma_j c_j$; Eq. 2.5). Using the previous form of μ_j appropriate for charged solutes and this expansion of $\partial\ln a_j/\partial x$, the net flux density of species j in Equation 3.7 can be written

$$J_j = -\frac{u_j RT}{\gamma_j}\frac{\partial\gamma_j c_j}{\partial x} - u_j c_j F\frac{\partial E}{\partial x} \tag{3.8}$$

Equation 3.8, which is often called the Nernst–Planck equation, is a general expression for the one-dimensional flux density of species j either across a membrane or in a solution in terms of two components of the driving force—the gradients in activity and in electrical potential.

Before proceeding, let us examine the first term on the right-hand side of Equation 3.8. When γ_j varies across a membrane, $\partial\gamma_j/\partial x$ can be considered to represent a driving force on species j. In keeping with common practice, we will ignore this possible force. That is, we will assume that γ_j is constant (a less severe restriction than setting it equal to 1); in any case, $\partial\gamma_j/\partial x$ is extremely difficult to measure. For constant γ_j, the first term on the right-hand side of Equation 3.8 becomes $-u_jRT\ (\partial c_j/\partial x)$, meaning that it is proportional to the concentration gradient. In the absence of electrical potential gradients ($\partial E/\partial x = 0$), or for neutral solutes ($z_j = 0$), Equation 3.8 indicates that J_j equals $-u_jRT(\partial c_j/\partial x)$, so that the concentration gradient represents the driving force. This is the flux described by Fick's first law ($J_j = -D_j\partial c_j/\partial x$; Eq. 1.1), with u_jRT taking the place of the diffusion coefficient, D_j.

Because D_j is equal to u_jRT, we can conclude that diffusion coefficients depend on temperature. Moreover, u_j usually is inversely proportional to the viscosity, which decreases as T increases. Thus the dependence of D_j on T can be substantial. For gases in air, D_j depends approximately on $T^{1.8}$. Consequently, the temperature should be specified when the value of a diffusion coefficient is given. In the absence of electrical effects and for constant γ_j, the net flux of species j given by Equation 3.8 equals $-D_j\partial c_j/\partial x$ when u_jRT is replaced by D_j, as we have just indicated. Fick's first law ($J_j = -D_j\partial c_j/\partial x$; Eq. 1.1) is hence a special case of our general flux relation, the Nernst–Planck equation (Eq. 3.8), for which we first ignored the pressure and the gravitational effects and then omitted the electrical effects. This eventual reduction of Equation 3.8 to Fick's first law is expected because the only driving force considered when we presented Fick's first law (Chapter 1, Section 1.2A) was the concentration gradient. Such agreement between our present thermodynamic approach and the seemingly more empirical Fick's first law is quite important. It serves to justify the logarithmic term for activity in the chemical potential ($\mu_j = \mu_j^* + RT\ln a_j + \overline{V}_jP + z_jFE + m_jgh$; Eq. 2.4). In particular, if the activity of species j appeared in Equation 2.4 in a form other than $\ln a_j$, Equation 3.8 would not reduce to Fick's first law under the appropriate conditions (see Fig. 2-7). Because Fick's first law has been amply demonstrated experimentally, such a disagreement between

theory and practice would necessitate some modification in the expression used to define chemical potential.[3]

In contrast to the case for a neutral solute, the flux of an ion also depends on an electrical driving force, represented in Equation 3.8 by $-\partial E/\partial x$. A charged solute spontaneously tends to move in an electrical potential gradient; for example, a cation moves in the direction of lower or decreasing electrical potential. Of course, the concentration gradient also affects charged particles. If cations and anions were present in some region but absent in an adjacent one, then these ions would tend to diffuse into the latter region. As such charged particles diffuse toward regions of lower concentration, an electrical potential difference is created, which is referred to as a "diffusion potential." Most membrane potentials can be treated as diffusion potentials resulting from different rates of movement of the various ions across a membrane, as embodied in the Goldman equation (Eq. 3.20).

3.2B. Diffusion Potential in a Solution

We will now use Equation 3.8 to derive the electrical potential difference created by ions diffusing down a concentration gradient in a solution containing one type of cation and its accompanying anion. This case is simpler than the biologically more realistic one that follows and thus more clearly illustrates the relationship between concentration gradients and the accompanying electrical potential differences. We will assume that the cations and the anions are initially placed at one side of the solution. In time, they will diffuse across the solution toward regions of lower concentration. In general, one ionic species will have a higher mobility, u_j, than the other. The more mobile ions will tend to diffuse faster than their oppositely charged partners, resulting in a microscopic charge separation. This slight separation of oppositely charged ions sets up an electrical potential gradient leading to a *diffusion potential.* Using certain simplifying assumptions, we will calculate the magnitude of the electrical potential difference created.

For convenience of analysis, consider a solution containing only a monovalent cation (indicated by subscript +) and its accompanying monovalent anion (indicated by subscript − ; Fig. 3-5). We will assume that their activity coefficients are constant. As our previous calculations of electrical effects

3. As indicated in Chapter 2 (Section 2.2B), the terms in the chemical potential can be justified or "derived" by various methods. The forms of some terms in μ_j can be readily appreciated because they follow from familiar definitions of work, such as the electrical term and the gravitational term. The comparison with Fick's first law indicates that $RT \ln a_j$ is the appropriate form for the activity term. Another derivation of the $RT \ln a_j$ term is in Appendix IV, together with a discussion of the pressure term for both liquids and gases. Some of these derivations incorporate conclusions from empirical observations. Moreover, the fact that the chemical potential can be expressed as a series of terms that can be added together agrees with experiment. Thus a thermodynamic expression for the chemical potential such as Equation 2.4 does the following: (1) summarizes the results of previous observations, (2) withstands the test of experiments, and (3) leads to new and useful predictions.

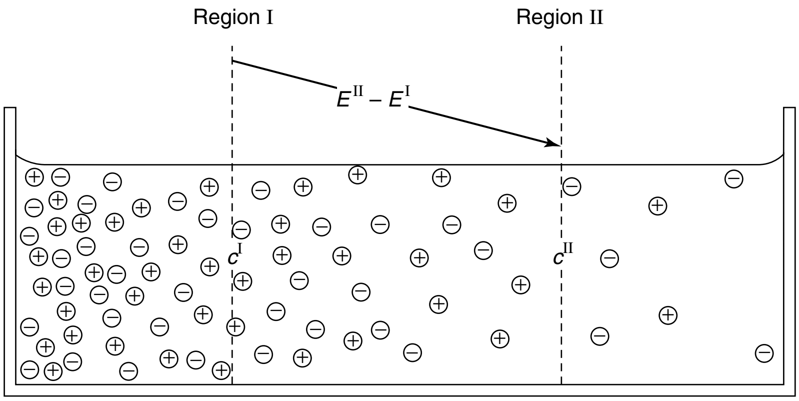


Figure 3-5. Diffusion potential created across a solution as ions diffuse toward regions of lower chemical potential caused by lower concentration. The anions (⊕) are schematically indicated to have a higher mobility and hence get slightly ahead of the cations (⊖; see right-hand side of figure), so region II has a lower electrical potential than region I ($E^{II} < E^{I}$; also, $c^{II} < c^{I}$).

have indicated, solutions are essentially neutral in regions that are large compared with atomic dimensions. Thus, c_+ is equal to c_-, so the concentration of either species can be designated as c. Furthermore, no charge imbalance develops in time, which means that the flux density of the cation across some plane in the solution, J_+, equals the flux density of the anion across the same plane, J_- (a very small charge imbalance develops initially, which sets up the electrical potential gradient, but this uncompensated flux density is transitory and in any case is negligible compared with J_+ or J_-). Both flux densities, J_+ and J_-, can be expressed by Equation 3.8 and then equated to each other, which gives

$$J_+ = -u_+RT\frac{\partial c}{\partial x} - u_+cF\frac{\partial E}{\partial x} = J_- = -u_-RT\frac{\partial c}{\partial x} + u_-cF\frac{\partial F}{\partial x} \tag{3.9}$$

where the plus sign in the last term occurs because the monovalent anion carries a negative charge ($z_- = -1$).

Rearranging Equation 3.9 and then solving for $\partial E/\partial x$ yields the following expression for the electrical potential gradient:

$$\frac{\partial E}{\partial x} = \left(\frac{u_- - u_+}{u_- + u_+}\right)\frac{RT}{Fc}\frac{\partial c}{\partial x} \tag{3.10}$$

Equation 3.10 indicates that a nonzero $\partial E/\partial x$ occurs when the mobility of the cation differs from that of the anion and also a concentration gradient exists (Fig. 3-5). If u_- is greater than u_+, the anions move (diffuse) faster than the cations toward regions of lower concentration. As some individual anion moves ahead of its "partner" cation, an electric field is set up in such a direction as to speed up the cation and slow down the anion until they both move at the same speed, thus preserving electrical neutrality.

To obtain the difference in electrical potential produced by diffusion between planes of differing concentration, we must integrate Equation 3.10. We will restrict our consideration to the *steady-state* case in which neither E nor c_j changes with time, and hence μ_j does not change with time. At

equilibrium, μ_j does not change with time or position for communicating regions and no net flux of that solute occurs ($J_j = 0$). In a steady state, on the other hand, μ_j changes with position but not with time; J_j is then constant with time and position. This condition is often used to approximate situations of biological interest.

A total differential such as dE equals $(\partial E/\partial x)dx + (\partial E/\partial t)dt$, and dc equals $(\partial c/\partial x)dx + (\partial c/\partial t)dt$. For the steady-state condition, both $\partial E/\partial t$ and $\partial c/\partial t$ are zero. Consequently, dE is then equal to $(\partial E/\partial x)dx$ and dc is equal to $(\partial c/\partial x)dx$. Actually, it is a matter of judgment whether μ_j is constant enough in time to warrant describing the system as being in a steady state. Similarly, constancy of μ_j for appropriate time and distance intervals is necessary before indicating that a system is in equilibrium.

In going along the x-axis from region I to region II (Fig. 3-5), the change in the electrical potential term in Equation 3.10 is the definite integral $\int_{\rm I}^{\rm II}(\partial E/\partial x)dx$, which becomes $\int_{\rm I}^{\rm II} dE$ for the steady-state condition and so equals $E^{\rm II} - E^{\rm I}$. The integral of the concentration term is $\int_{\rm I}^{\rm II}(1/c)(\partial c/\partial x)dx$, which becomes $\int_{\rm I}^{\rm II} dc/c$, or $\ln c^{\rm II} - \ln c^{\rm I}$, which equals $\ln (c^{\rm II}/c^{\rm I})$. Using these two relations, integration of Equation 3.10 leads to

$$E^{\rm II} - E^{\rm I} = \left(\frac{u_- - u_+}{u_- + u_+}\right)\frac{RT}{F}\ln\frac{c^{\rm II}}{c^{\rm I}} \tag{3.11a}$$

or, at 25°C

$$E^{\rm II} - E^{\rm I} = 59.2\left(\frac{u_- - u_+}{u_- + u_+}\right)\log\frac{c^{\rm II}}{c^{\rm I}} \qquad \text{mV} \tag{3.11b}$$

where ln has been replaced by 2.303 log, and the value 59.2 mV has been substituted for $2.303RT/F$ at 25°C (see Appendix I). In the general case, the anions have different mobilities than the cations. As such ions diffuse to regions of lower chemical potential, an electrical potential difference—given by Equation 3.11 and called a diffusion potential—is set up across the section where the concentration changes from $c^{\rm I}$ to $c^{\rm II}$ (Fig. 3-5).

An example of a diffusion potential that be can described by Equation 3.11 occurs at the open end of the special micropipettes used for measuring electrical potential differences across membranes (Fig. 3-6). The fine tip of the glass micropipette provides an electrically conducting pathway into the cell or tissue. Ions diffusing through this fine tip give rise to a diffusion potential between the interior of the micropipette and the aqueous compartment into which the tip is inserted. To estimate the magnitude of this potential for KCl as the electrolyte, we will assume that there is 3000 mol m^{-3} (3 M) KCl in the micropipette (Fig. 3-6) and 100 mol m^{-3} KCl in the cell. The chloride mobility, $u_{\rm Cl}$, is about 1.04 times $u_{\rm K}$, so the diffusion potential calculated from Equation 3.11b at 25°C is

$$E^{\rm cell} - E^{\rm micropipette} = (59.2\,\text{mV})\left(\frac{1.04u_K - u_K}{1.04u_K + u_K}\right)\log\left(\frac{100\,\text{mol m}^{-3}}{3000\,\text{mol m}^{-3}}\right) = -2\,\text{mV}$$

For NaCl as the electrolyte, $u_{\rm Cl}$ is 1.52 $u_{\rm Na}$, and the diffusion potential for the same concentration ratio is −18 mV (the higher mobility for Cl^- than

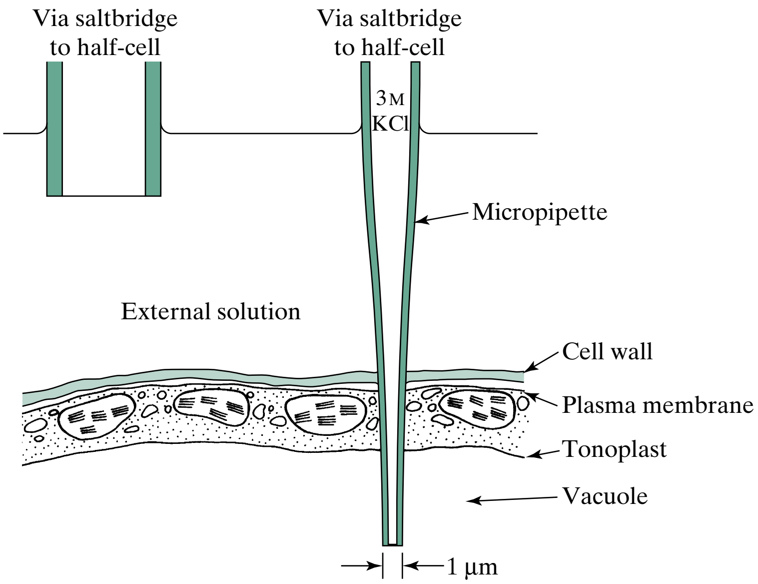


Figure 3-6. Glass micropipette filled with 3 M KCl (a highly conducting solution) and inserted into the central vacuole of a plant cell so that the electrical potential difference across the plasma membrane and the tonoplast in series can be measured. The micropipette is carefully inserted into the cell with a micromanipulator while being observed with a light microscope (see also Fig. 2-18). The micropipette tip must be strong enough to penetrate the cell wall and yet fine enough not to disturb the cell substantially either mechanically or electrically. The finer the tip, the higher is its resistance—a 1-μm-diameter tip usually has a resistance of about 10^6 ohms, which is generally acceptable. The micropipette is connected through a saltbridge containing an electrically conducting solution to a half-cell (discussed in Chapter 6, Section 6.1B). This half-cell plus another one in electrical contact with the external solution are connected to a voltmeter with a high input resistance (usually at least 10^{10} ohms) so that the membrane potentials can be measured without drawing much current.

for K^+ or Na^+ reflects the smaller size of the hydrated Cl^-). Thus, to minimize the diffusion potential across the fine tip, KCl is a much more suitable electrolyte for micropipettes than is NaCl. Moreover, c_K inside cells is also higher than c_{Na}, and it does not vary as much from cell to cell as does c_{Na}. Thus, nearly all micropipettes used for measuring membrane potentials contain KCl. In any case, the closer u_- is to u_+, the smaller will be the diffusion potential for a given concentration ratio from one region to another.

3.2C. Membrane Fluxes

As is the case for diffusion potentials in a solution, membrane potentials also depend on the different mobilities of the various ions and on their concentration gradients. In this case, however, the "solution" in which the diffusion toward regions of lower chemical potential takes place is the membrane itself. We noted in Chapter 1 that a membrane is often the main barrier, and thus the rate-limiting step, for the diffusion of

molecules into and out of cells or organelles. We would therefore expect it to be the phase across which the diffusion potential is expressed. Under biological conditions, a number of different types of ions are present, so the situation is more complex than for the single cation–anion pair analyzed previously. Furthermore, the quantities of interest, such as $\partial E/\partial x$ and γ_j, are within the membrane, where they are not readily measurable.

To calculate membrane diffusion potentials, we must make certain assumptions. As a start, we will assume that the electrical potential (E) varies linearly with distance across a membrane. Thus $\partial E/\partial x$ is a constant equal to $E_M/\Delta x$, where E_M is the electrical potential difference across the membrane (i.e., $E^{\mathrm{i}} - E^{\mathrm{o}} = \Delta E = E_M$) and Δx is the membrane thickness. This assumption of a constant electric field across the membrane—the electric field equals $-\partial E/\partial x$ in our one-dimensional case—was originally suggested by David Goldman in 1943. It appreciably simplifies the integration conditions leading to an expression describing the electrical potential difference across membranes. As another useful approximation, we will assume that the activity coefficient of species j, γ_j, is constant across the membrane. As noted in Chapter 1 (Section 1.4A), a partition coefficient is needed to describe concentrations within a membrane, because the solvent properties of a membrane differ from those of the adjoining aqueous solutions where the concentrations are actually determined. Thus c_j in Equation 3.8 should be replaced by K_jc_j, where K_j is the partition coefficient for species j. Incorporating these various simplifications and conditions, we can rewrite the Nernst–Planck equation (Eq. 3.8) as follows:

$$J_j = -u_jRTK_j\frac{\partial c_j}{\partial x} - u_jK_jc_jz_jF\frac{E_M}{\Delta x} \tag{3.12}$$

Because the two most convenient variables for integration are c_j and x, their symbols should appear on opposite sides of the equation. We therefore transfer the electrical term to the left-hand side of Equation 3.12, factor out $u_jz_jFE_M/\Delta x$, and divide both sides by $K_jc_j + J_j\Delta x/(u_jz_jFE_M)$, which puts all terms containing concentration on the same side of the equation (see chart at end of this section). After multiplying each side by $dx/(u_jRT)$, we transform Equation 3.12 to the following:

$$\frac{z_jFE_M}{RT\Delta x}dx = -\frac{K_jdc_j}{K_jc_j + \frac{J_j\Delta x}{u_jz_jFE_M}} \tag{3.13}$$

where $(\partial c_j/\partial x)dx$ has been replaced by dc_j in anticipation of the restriction to steady-state conditions.

When $J_j\Delta x/(u_jz_jFE_M)$ is constant, Equation 3.13 can be readily integrated from one side of the membrane to the other. The factors Δx, z_j, F, and E_M are all constants. For convenience, the mobility (u_j) of each species is assumed to be constant within the membrane. When the flux of species j does not change with time or position (i.e., constant J_j), J_j across any plane parallel to and within the membrane is the same, and species j is neither accumulating nor being depleted in any of the regions of interest.

Consequently, $\partial c_j/\partial t$ is zero, whereas $\partial c_j/\partial x$ is nonzero—which is the steady-state condition. Our restriction to a steady state therefore means that J_j is constant and $(\partial c_j/\partial x)dx = dc_j$, a relation already incorporated into Equation 3.13. With these restrictions, the quantity $J_j\Delta x/(u_jz_jFE_M)$ is constant and we can integrate Equation 3.13 from one side of the membrane (the outside, o) to the other side of the membrane (the inside, i). Because $\int K_jdc_j/(K_jc_j + b)$ equals ln $(K_jc_j + b)$ and $\int_{x^{\text{o}}}^{x^{\text{i}}} dx$ is Δx, integration of Equation 3.13 gives

$$\frac{z_jFE_M}{RT} = \ln\frac{\left(K_jc_j^{\text{o}} + \frac{J_j\Delta x}{u_jz_jFE_M}\right)}{\left(K_jc_j^{\text{i}} + \frac{J_j\Delta x}{u_jz_jFE_M}\right)} \tag{3.14}$$

After taking exponentials of both sides of Equation 3.14 to put it into a more convenient form, and then multiplying by $K_jc_j^{\text{i}} + J_j\Delta x/(u_jz_jFE_M)$, it becomes

$$K_jc_j^{\text{i}}e^{z_jFE_M/RT} + \frac{J_j\Delta x}{u_jz_jFE_M}e^{z_jFE_M/RT} = K_jc_j^{\text{o}} + \frac{J_j\Delta x}{u_jz_jFE_M} \tag{3.15}$$

A quantity of considerable interest in Equation 3.15 is J_j, the net flux density of species j. This equation can be solved for J_j, giving

$$\begin{aligned} J_j &= J_j^{\text{in}} - J_j^{\text{out}} \\ &= \left(\frac{K_ju_jz_jFE_M}{\Delta x}\right)\left(\frac{1}{e^{z_jFE_M/RT} - 1}\right)\left(c_j^{\text{o}} - c_j^{\text{i}}e^{z_jFE_M/RT}\right) \end{aligned} \tag{3.16}$$

where J_j^{in} is the influx or inward flux density of species j, J_j^{out} is its efflux, and their difference is the net flux density. (The net flux density can represent either a net influx or a net efflux, depending on which of the unidirectional components, J_j^{in} or J_j^{out}, is larger.) We will use Equation 3.16 to derive the Goldman equation, describing the diffusion potential across membranes, and later to derive the Ussing–Teorell equation, a relation obeyed by certain passive fluxes.

Equation 3.16 shows how the passive flux of some charged species j depends on its internal and its external concentrations as well as on the electrical potential difference across the membrane. For most cell membranes, E_M is negative; that is, the inside of the cell is at a lower electrical potential than the outside. For a cation (z_j a positive integer) and a negative E_M, the terms in the first two parentheses on the right-hand side of Equation 3.16 are both negative; hence their product is positive. For an anion (z_j a negative integer) and a negative E_M, both parentheses are positive; hence their product is also positive. For a positive E_M, the product of the first two parentheses is again positive for both anions and cations. Thus the sign of J_j depends on the value of c_j^{o} relative to that of $c_j^{\text{i}}e^{z_jFE_M/RT}$. When c_j^{o} is greater than $c_j^{\text{i}}e^{z_jFE_M/RT}$, the expression in the last parentheses of Equation 3.16 is positive, and a net inward flux density of species j occurs ($J_j > 0$). Such a condition should be contrasted with Equation 1.8 [$J_j = P_j(c_j^{\text{o}} - c_j^{\text{i}})$], where the net flux density in the absence of electrical effects is inward when c_j^{o} is larger than c_j^{i}, as adequately describes the situation for neutral solutes. However, knowledge of the

concentration difference alone is not sufficient to predict the magnitude or even the direction of the flux of ions—we must also consider the electrical potential difference between the two regions.[4]

Although the mathematical manipulations necessary to get from Equation 3.12 to Equation 3.16 are lengthy and cumbersome, the resulting expression is extremely important for our understanding of both membrane potentials and passive fluxes of ions. Moreover, throughout this text we have usually presented the actual steps involved in a particular derivation to avoid statements such as "it can easily be shown" that such and such follows from so and so—expressions that can be frustrating and often are untrue. In the present case of the derivation of the Goldman equation, the steps and the equations involved are as follows:

Step	Eq. No.
Basic flux equation (Nernst–Planck equation)	3.8, 3.12
Transformation for integration	3.13
Integration and rearrangement	3.14, 3.15
Net flux density for a single ionic species	3.16
Restriction to three major ionic fluxes	3.17
Insertion of flux densities and rearrangement	3.18, 3.19
Goldman equation	3.20

3.2D. Membrane Diffusion Potential—Goldman Equation

Passive fluxes of ions, which can be described by Equation 3.16 and are caused by gradients in the chemical potentials of the various solute species, lead to an electrical potential difference (a diffusion potential) across a membrane. We can determine the magnitude of this electrical potential difference by considering the contributions from all ionic fluxes across the membrane and the condition of electroneutrality. Certain assumptions are needed, however, to keep the equations manageable. Under usual biological situations, not all anions and cations can easily move through membranes. Many divalent cations do not readily enter or leave plant cells passively, meaning that their mobility in membranes is low. Such ions usually do not make a large enough contribution to the fluxes into or out of plant cells to influence markedly the diffusion potentials across the membranes. Thus we will omit them in the present analysis, which nevertheless is rather complicated.

4. We might ask what happens to the flux density expressed by Equation 3.16 as E_M approaches zero. In particular, the quantity within the first parentheses goes to zero and that within the second parentheses goes to infinity. To resolve this ambiguous situation, we can use the series expansion for an exponential ($e^x = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \cdots$; Appendix III) and keep only the first two terms. The denominator within the second parentheses then becomes $1 + z_jFE_M/RT - 1$, or z_jFE_M/RT. Hence, the product of the quantities within the first two parentheses becomes $K_ju_jRT/\Delta x$, which is P_j. Now setting E_M to zero in the last term, Equation 3.16 becomes $J_j = P_j(c_j^{\text{o}} - c_j^{\text{i}})$, which is Equation 1.8, the appropriate form for the flux density in the absence of electrical effects ($E_M = 0$ and/or $z_j = 0$).

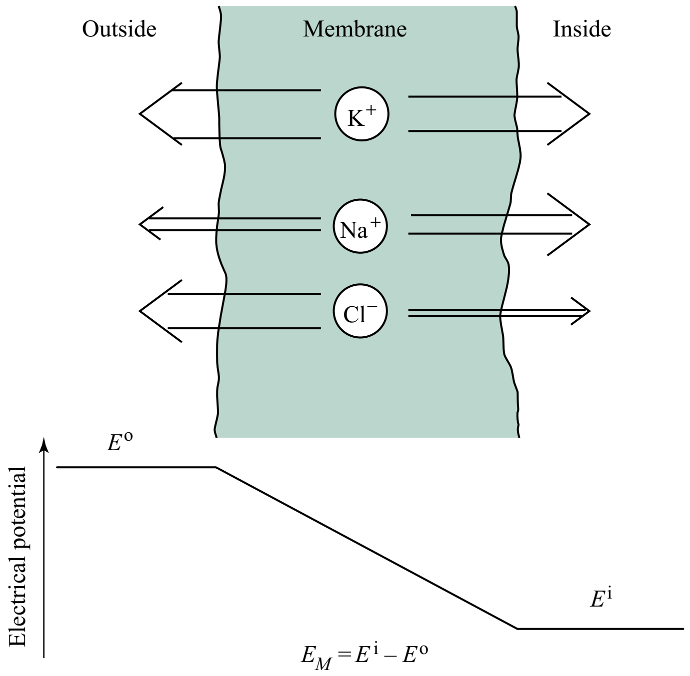


Figure 3-7. Passive movements of K^+, Na^+, and Cl^- across a membrane can account for the electrical potential difference across that membrane, as predicted by the Goldman equation (Eq. 3.20). Usually K^+ fluxes make the largest contribution to E_M.

For many plant cells, the total ionic flux consists mainly of movements of K^+, Na^+, and Cl^- (Fig. 3-7). These three ions generally have fairly high concentrations in and near plant cells and therefore are expected to make substantial contributions to the total ionic flux density. More specifically, the flux density of species j depends on the product of its concentration and its mobility ($J_j = -u_j c_j \partial\mu_j/\partial x$; Eq. 3.7); ions that have relatively high local concentrations (high c_j) or that move in the membrane fairly easily (high u_j) will therefore tend to be the major contributors to the total ionic flux density. In some cases there may be a sizable flux density of H^+ or OH^- (which can have high u_j's) as well as of other ions, the restriction here to three ions being partially for algebraic simplicity. However, the real justification for considering only K^+, Na^+, and Cl^- is that the diffusion potentials calculated for the passive fluxes of these three ions across various membranes are in good agreement with the measured electrical potential differences.

Our previous electrical calculations indicated that aqueous solutions are essentially electrically neutral. Thus, because of the large effects on electrical potentials resulting from small amounts of uncancelled charge, the net charge needed to cause the electrical potential difference across a membrane (E_M) is negligible compared with the ambient concentrations of the ions. Furthermore, the steady-state fluxes of the ions across the membrane do not change this condition of electrical neutrality because no net charge is transported by the algebraic sum of the various charge movements across

the membrane (i.e., $\sum_j z_j J_j = 0$). When the bulk of the ionic flux density consists of K^+, Na^+, and Cl^- movements, this important condition of electroneutrality can be described by equating the net cationic flux densities ($J_K + J_{Na}$) to the net anionic one (J_{Cl}), which leads to the following relation (as mentioned previously, the various ions are indicated by using only their element symbols as subscripts):

$$J_K + J_{Na} - J_{Cl} = 0 \tag{3.17}$$

Equation 3.17 describes the net ionic flux densities leading to the electrical potential differences across a membrane (Fig. 3-7). After substituting the expressions for the various J_j's into Equation 3.17, we will solve the resulting equation for the diffusion potential across a membrane, E_M.

To obtain a useful expression for E_M in terms of measurable parameters, it is convenient to introduce the permeability coefficient for species j, P_j. In Chapter 1, such a permeability coefficient was defined as $D_jK_j/\Delta x$, where D_j is the diffusion coefficient of species j, K_j is its partition coefficient, and Δx is the membrane thickness (Eq. 1.9). Upon comparing Equation 3.8 with Equation 1.1 ($J_j = -D_j\partial c_j/\partial x$), we see that u_jRT takes the place of the diffusion coefficient of species j, D_j, as already indicated (Section 3.2A). The quantity $K_ju_jRT/\Delta x$ can thus be replaced by the permeability coefficient, P_j. In this way, the unknown mobility of species j in a particular membrane, the thickness of the membrane, and the unknown partition coefficient for the solute can all be replaced by one parameter describing the permeability of the solute crossing that membrane.

With all of the preliminaries out of the way, let us now derive the expression for the diffusion potential across a membrane for the case in which most of the net passive ionic flux density is due to K^+, Na^+, and Cl^- movements. Using the permeability coefficients of the three ions and substituting in the net flux density of each species as defined by Equation 3.16, Equation 3.17 becomes

$$\begin{aligned} &P_K\left(\frac{1}{e^{FE_M/RT}-1}\right)\left(c_K^o - c_K^i e^{FE_M/RT}\right) \\ &\quad + P_{Na}\left(\frac{1}{e^{FE_M/RT}-1}\right)\left(c_{Na}^o - c_{Na}^i e^{FE_M/RT}\right) \\ &\quad + P_{Cl}\left(\frac{1}{e^{-FE_M/RT}-1}\right)\left(c_{Cl}^o - c_{Cl}^i e^{-FE_M/RT}\right) = 0 \end{aligned} \tag{3.18}$$

where z_K and z_{Na} have been replaced by 1, z_{Cl} has been replaced by -1, and FE_M/RT has been cancelled from each of the terms for the three net flux densities. To simplify this unwieldy expression, the quantity $1/(e^{FE_M/RT} - 1)$ can be cancelled from each of the three terms in Equation 3.18—note that $1/(e^{FE_M/RT} - 1)$ in the last term is the same as $-e^{FE_M/RT}/(e^{FE_M/RT} - 1)$. Equation 3.18 then assumes a more manageable form:

$$\begin{aligned} &P_Kc_K^o - P_Kc_K^i e^{FE_M/RT} + P_{Na}c_{Na}^o - P_{Na}c_{Na}^i e^{FE_M/RT} \\ &\quad - P_{Cl}c_{Cl}^o e^{FE_M/RT} + P_{Cl}c_{Cl}^i = 0 \end{aligned} \tag{3.19}$$

After solving Equation 3.19 for $e^{FE_M/RT}$ and taking logarithms, we obtain the following expression for the electrical potential difference across a membrane:

$$E_M = \frac{RT}{F} \ln \frac{(P_K c_K^o + P_{Na} c_{Na}^o + P_{Cl} c_{Cl}^i)}{(P_K c_K^i + P_{Na} c_{Na}^i + P_{Cl} c_{Cl}^o)} \quad (3.20)$$

Equation 3.20 is generally known as the Goldman equation or the constant field equation. As mentioned previously, the electrical field equals $-\partial E/\partial x$, which Goldman in 1943 set equal to a constant (here $-E_M/\Delta x$) to facilitate the integration across a membrane.[5] In 1949 Alan Hodgkin and Bernhard Katz applied the general equation derived by Goldman to the specific case of K^+, Na^+, and Cl^- diffusing across a membrane, so Equation 3.20 is sometimes referred to as the Goldman–Hodgkin–Katz equation.

The Goldman equation (Eq. 3.20) gives the diffusion potential across a membrane. We derived it by assuming independent passive movements of K^+, Na^+, and Cl^- across a membrane in which $\partial E/\partial x$, γ_j, J_j, and u_j are all constant. We used the negative gradient of its chemical potential as the driving force for the passive net flux density of each ion. Thus, Equation 3.20 gives the electrical potential difference arising from the different tendencies of K^+, Na^+, and Cl^- to diffuse across a membrane to regions of lower chemical potential. When other ions cross a membrane in substantial amounts, they will also make a contribution to the membrane potential. However, the inclusion of divalent and trivalent ions in the derivation of an expression for E_M complicates the algebra considerably (e.g., if Ca^{2+} is also considered, Eq. 3.19 has 14 terms on the left-hand side instead of 6, and the equation becomes a quadratic in powers of $e^{FE_M/RT}$). However, the flux densities of such ions are often small, in which case Equation 3.20 can be adequate for describing the membrane potential.

3.2E. Application of Goldman Equation

In certain cases, all of the quantities in Equation 3.20—namely, the permeabilities and the internal and the external concentrations of K^+, Na^+, and Cl^-—have been measured. The validity of the Goldman equation can then be checked by comparing the predicted diffusion potential with the actual electrical potential difference measured across the membrane.

As a specific example, we will use the Goldman equation to evaluate the membrane potential across the plasma membrane of *Nitella translucens*. The concentrations of K^+, Na^+, and Cl^- in the external bathing solution and in its

5. The assumption of a constant electric field in the membrane is actually not essential for obtaining Equation 3.20; we could invoke Gauss's law and perform a more difficult integration. See Goldman (1943) for a consideration of the constant field situation in a general case.

Table 3-1. Concentrations, Potentials, and Fluxes of Various Ions for *Nitella translucens* in the Light and the Dark[a]

Ion	c_j^o (mol m^{-3} = mM)	c_j^i (mol m^{-3} = mM)	E_{N_j}(mV)	$\frac{c_j^o}{c_j^i e^{z_j F E_M/RT}}$	Light J_j^{in}	Light J_j^{out} (nmol m^{-2} s^{-1})	Dark J_j^{in}	Dark J_j^{out}
K+	0.1	119	−179	0.20	8.5	8.5	2.0	8.5
Na+	1.0	14	−67	17	5.5	5.5	5.5	1.0
Cl^-	1.3	65	99	0.000085	8.5	8.5	0.5	–

[a] The superscript o refers to concentrations in the external bathing solution, and the superscript i refers to the cytosol. The Nernst potentials (E_{N_j}) were calculated from Equation 3.6 using concentration ratios and a numerical factor of 58.2 mV because the temperature was 20°C. The potential across the plasma membrane (E_M) was −138 mV. The fluxes indicated for the dark refer to values soon after cessation of illumination. (Sources: MacRobbie, 1962; Spanswick and Williams, 1964.)

cytosol are given in Table 3-1. The ratio of the permeability of Na^+ to that of K^+, P_{Na}/P_K, is about 0.18 for *N. translucens*. Its plasma membrane is much less permeable to Cl^- than to K^+, probably only 0.1 to 1% as much. Thus, for purposes of calculation, we will let P_{Cl}/P_K be 0.003. Using these relative permeability coefficients and the concentrations given in Table 3-1, the Goldman equation (Eq. 3.20) predicts the following membrane potential (RT/F = 25.3 mV at 20°C; Appendix I):

$$E_M = (25.3\text{ mV})\ln\frac{(P_K)(0.1\text{ mM}) + (0.18\,P_K)(1.0\text{ mM}) + (0.003\,P_K)(65\text{ mM})}{(P_K)(119\text{ mM}) + (0.18\,P_K)(14\text{ mM}) + (0.003\,P_K)(1.3\text{ mM})}$$
$$= -140\text{ mV}$$

Thus, we expect the cytosol to be electrically negative with respect to the external bathing solution, as is indeed the case. In fact, the measured value of the electrical potential difference across the plasma membrane of *N. translucens* is −138 mV at 20°C (Table 3-1). This close agreement between the observed electrical potential difference and that calculated from the Goldman equation supports the contention that the membrane potential is a diffusion potential. This can be checked by varying the external concentration of K^+, Na^+, and/or Cl^- and seeing whether the membrane potential changes in accordance with Equation 3.20.

As discussed previously, the different ionic concentrations on the two sides of a membrane help set up the passive ionic fluxes creating the diffusion potential. However, the actual contribution of a particular ionic species to E_M also depends on the ease with which that ion crosses the membrane, namely, on its permeability coefficient. Based on the relative permeabilities and concentrations, the major contribution to the electrical potential difference across the plasma membrane of *N. translucens* comes from the K^+ flux, with Na^+ and Cl^- fluxes playing secondary roles. If the Cl^- terms are omitted from Equation 3.20 (i.e., if P_{Cl} is set equal to zero), the calculated membrane potential is −154 mV, compared with −140 mV when Cl^- is included. This relatively small difference between the two potentials is a reflection of the relatively low permeability coefficient for chloride crossing the plasma membrane of *N. translucens*, so the Cl^- flux has less effect on E_M than does the K^+ flux. The relatively high permeability and the high concentration of K^+ ensure that it

will have a major influence on the membrane potential. However, Cl^- must be included in the Goldman equation to predict accurately the membrane potential for many plant cells (Cl^- is less important for the membrane potentials of most animal cells).

Restriction to the three ions indicated has proved adequate for treating the diffusion potential across many membranes, and the Goldman or constant field equation in the form of Equation 3.20 has found widespread application. However, changes in the amount of Ca^{2+} or H^+ in the external medium cause some deviations from the predictions of Equation 3.20 for the electrical potential differences across various plasma membranes. Thus the diffusion potential is influenced by the particular membrane being considered, and ions other than K^+, Na^+, and Cl^- may have to be included in specific cases. To allow for the influence of the passive flux of H^+ on E_M, for example, we could include $P_{\mathrm{H}}c_{\mathrm{H}}^{\mathrm{o}}$ in the numerator of the logarithm in the Goldman equation (Eq. 3.20) and $P_{\mathrm{H}}c_{\mathrm{H}}^{\mathrm{i}}$ in the denominator (note that a movement of H^+ in one direction has the same effect on E_M as a movement of OH^- in the other). In fact, H^+ can be the most important ion influencing the electrical potential difference across certain membranes, although its main effect on E_M may be through an electrogenic pump (discussed later), not the passive diffusion described by the Goldman equation. Such a pump actively transports H^+ from the cytosol out across the plasma membrane.

3.2F. Donnan Potential

Another type of electrical potential difference is a *Donnan potential*. It is associated with immobile or fixed charges in some region adjacent to an aqueous phase containing small mobile ions. When a plant cell is placed in a KCl solution, for example, a Donnan potential arises between the cell wall and the bulk of the bathing fluid. The electrical potential difference arising from electrostatic interactions at such a solid–liquid interface can be regarded as a special type of diffusion potential. In particular, pectin and other macromolecules in the cell wall have a large number of carboxyl groups (–COOH) from which hydrogen ions dissociate. This gives the cell wall a net negative charge, as indicated in Chapter 1 (Section 1.5A). Cations such as Ca^{2+} are electrostatically attracted to negatively charged components of the cell wall, and the overall effect is an exchange of H^+ for Ca^{2+} and other cations. Such an attraction of positively charged species to the cell wall can increase the local concentration of solutes up to about 600 mol m^{-3} (0.6 M), so a greater osmotic pressure can exist in the cell wall water than in a surrounding aqueous solution.

The region containing the immobile charges—such as dissociated carboxyl groups in the case of the cell wall—is usually referred to as the *Donnan phase* (Fig. 3-8). At equilibrium, a distribution of oppositely charged ions electrostatically attracted to these immobile charges occurs in the aqueous region adjacent to the Donnan phase. This sets up an ion concentration gradient, so a Donnan potential is created between the center of the Donnan phase and the bulk of the solution next to it. The sign of the electrical

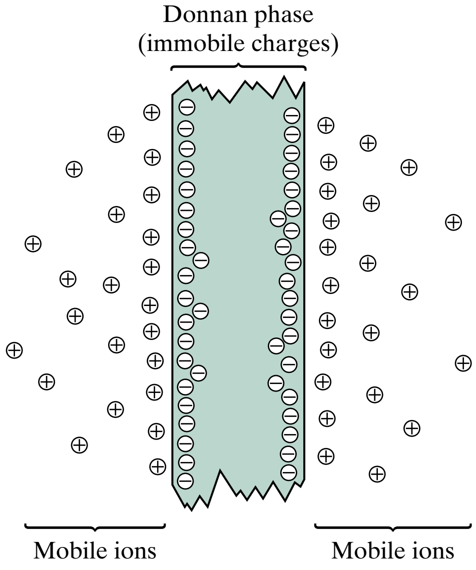


Figure 3-8. Spatial distribution of positively charged mobile ions (⊕) in aqueous solutions occurring on either side of a Donnan phase in which immobile negative charges (⊖) are embedded.

potential in the Donnan phase relative to the surrounding aqueous solution is the same as the sign of the charge of the immobile ions. For example, because of the dissociated carboxyl groups, the electrical potential in the cell wall is negative with respect to an external solution. Membranes also usually act as charged Donnan phases. In addition, Donnan phases occur in the cytoplasm, where the immobile charges are due to proteins and other large polymers (e.g., RNA and DNA) that have many carboxyl and phosphate groups from which protons can dissociate, leaving the macromolecules with a net negative charge. Because the net electrical charge attracts ions of the opposite charge, locally higher osmotic pressures can occur. Actually, all small ions in the immediate vicinity of a Donnan phase are affected, including H^+ (i.e., the local pH).

Figure 3-8 illustrates a negatively charged, immobile Donnan phase with mobile, positively charged ions on both sides. For example, layers containing cations often occur in the aqueous solutions on each side of biological membranes, which generally act as Donnan phases with a net negative charge at physiological pH's. The electrical potential differences or Donnan potentials on either side of a membrane are in opposite directions and are assumed to cancel each other when a diffusion potential across the membrane is calculated. At equilibrium no net movement of the ions occurs, so the chemical potentials of each of the mobile ions (e.g., K^+, Na^+, Cl^-, and Ca^{2+}) have the same values up close to the Donnan phase as they do in the adjacent aqueous phase. The electrical potential difference (Donnan potential) can then be calculated by assuming constancy of the chemical potential. This is exactly the same principle that we used in deriving the Nernst potential (Eq. 3.6), $E_{N_j} = E^{\mathrm{II}} - E^{\mathrm{I}} = (RT/z_jF)\ln(a_j^{\mathrm{I}}/a_j^{\mathrm{II}})$, between two aqueous compartments. In fact, because the argument again depends on the constancy of the chemical potential, the equilibrium distribution of any ion from the

Donnan phase to the aqueous phase extending away from the barrier must satisfy the Nernst potential (E_{N_j}) for that ion.

The Donnan potential can also be regarded as a special case of a diffusion potential. We can assume that the mobile ions are initially in the same region as the immobile ones. In time, some of the mobile ions will tend to diffuse away. This tendency, based on thermal motion, causes a slight charge separation, which sets up an electrical potential difference between the Donnan phase and the bulk of the adjacent solution. For the case of a single species of mobile cations with the anions fixed in the membrane (both assumed to be monovalent), the diffusion potential across that part of the aqueous phase next to the membrane can be described by Equation 3.11 $\{E^{II} - E^{I} = [(u_- - u_+)/(u_- + u_+)](RT/F)\ln(c^{II}/c^{I})\}$ that we derived for diffusion toward regions of lower chemical potential in a solution. Fixed anions have zero mobility ($u_- = 0$); hence $(u_- - u_+)/(u_- - u_+)$ here is $-u_+/u_+$, or -1. Equation 3.11 then becomes $E^{II} - E^{I} = -(RT/F)\ln(c^{II}/c^{I})$, which is the same as the Nernst potential (Eq. 3.6) for monovalent cations $[-\ln(c^{II}/c^{I}) = \ln(c^{I}/c^{II})]$. Thus the Donnan potential can also be regarded as a diffusion potential occurring as the mobile ions tend to diffuse away from the immobile charges of opposite sign, which remain fixed in the Donnan phase (Fig. 3-8).

3.3. Characteristics of Crossing Membranes

Entry of solutes into cells is crucial for many plant functions, including nutrient uptake by roots, cell elongation during growth, and the opening of stomatal pores that allows CO_2 uptake from the environment. Solutes cross membranes either passively, by diffusing toward regions of lower chemical potential, or actively, in which case energy is needed for the movement. Specifically, *active transport* implies that energy derived from metabolic processes is used to move a solute across a membrane toward a region of higher chemical potential. There are three different aspects to this description of active transport: (1) a supply of energy, (2) movement, and (3) an increase in chemical potential. Although it is not absolutely necessary, the expression "active transport" has conventionally been restricted to the case of movement in the energetically uphill direction, and we will likewise follow such a restriction here.

A difference in chemical potential of a certain substance across a membrane does not necessarily imply that active transport of that substance is occurring. For example, if the solute cannot penetrate the membrane, the solute is unable to attain equilibrium across it, and so μ_j would not be expected to be the same on the two sides. For ions moving across some membrane, the ratio of the influx to the efflux of that ion provides information on whether or not active transport is taking place. A simple but often effective approach for determining whether fluxes are active or passive is to remove possible energy sources. For photosynthesizing plant tissue, this can mean comparing the fluxes in the light with those in the dark. (In addition, we should check whether the permeability of the membrane changes as illumination changes.) Compounds or treatments that disrupt metabolism can also be useful for ascertaining whether metabolic energy is being used for the active transport of various solutes.

We begin by showing how active transport can directly affect membrane potentials. We then compare the temperature dependencies of metabolic reactions with those for diffusion processes across a barrier to show that a marked enhancement of solute influx caused by increasing the temperature does not necessarily indicate that active transport is taking place. Next we will consider a more reliable criterion for deciding whether fluxes are passive or not—namely, the Ussing–Teorell, or flux ratio, equation. We will then examine a specific case in which active transport is involved, calculate the energy required, and finally speculate on why K^+ and Cl^- are actively transported into plant cells and Na^+ is actively transported out.

3.3A. Electrogenicity

One of the possible consequences of actively transporting a certain ionic species into a cell or organelle is the development of an excess of electrical charge inside. If the active transport involves an accompanying ion of opposite charge or an equal release of a similarly charged ion, the total charge in the cell or organelle is unaffected. However, if the charge of the actively transported ion is not directly compensated for, the process is *electrogenic*; that is, it tends to generate an electrical potential difference across the membrane. An electrogenic uptake of an ion that produces a net transport of charge into some cell or organelle will thus affect its membrane potential. We can appreciate this effect by referring to Equation 3.2 ($Q = C\Delta E$), which indicates that the difference in electrical potential across a membrane, ΔE, equals Q/C, where Q is the net charge enclosed within the cell or organelle and C is the membrane capacitance. The initial movement of net charge across a membrane by active transport leads to a fairly rapid change in the electrical potential difference across the membrane.

To be specific, we will consider a spherical cell of radius r into which an electrogenic influx of chloride ions occurs by active transport, $J^{\text{in}}_{\text{at}_{\text{Cl}}}$. The amount of charge transported in time t across the surface of the sphere (area of $4\pi r^2$) is $J^{\text{in}}_{\text{at}_{\text{Cl}}}\,4\pi r^2 t$. This active uptake of Cl^- increases the internal concentration of negative charge by the amount moved in divided by the cellular volume, or $J^{\text{in}}_{\text{at}_{\text{Cl}}}\,4\pi r^2 t/(4\pi r^3/3)$, which is $3J^{\text{in}}_{\text{at}_{\text{Cl}}}t/r$. Let us suppose that $J^{\text{in}}_{\text{at}_{\text{Cl}}}$ has a typical value of 10 nmol m^{-2} s^{-1} and that the cell has a radius of 30 μm. In 1 second the concentration of Cl^- actively transported in is

$$
\begin{aligned}
c_{\text{at}_{\text{Cl}}} &= \frac{3J^{\text{in}}_{\text{at}_{\text{Cl}}}t}{r} = \frac{(3)\left(10 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{mol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1}\right)(1\ \text{s})}{(30 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m})} \\
&= 1.0 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{mol m}^{-3}
\end{aligned}
$$

Assuming a membrane capacitance of 10 mF m^{-2}, we calculated (Section 3.1B) that such a cell has 1.0×10^{-3} mol m^{-3} (1 μM) uncompensated negative charge when the interior is 100 mV negative with respect to the external solution. If no change were to take place in the other ionic fluxes, the electrogenic uptake of Cl^- into this cell would cause its interior to become more negative at the rate of 100 mV s^{-1}. The non-steady-state charging of the membrane capacitance is indeed a rapid process.

The initiation of an electrogenic process causes an adjustment of the passive ionic fluxes across the membrane. In particular, the net charge actively brought in is soon electrically compensated by appropriate passive movements of that ion and other ions into or out of the cell. The actual electrical potential difference across the membrane then results from the diffusion potential caused by these new passive fluxes plus a steady-state contribution from the electrogenic process involving the active transport of various charged species. We can represent the electrical potential difference generated by the active transport of species j, E_{at_j}, by

$$E_{\mathrm{at}_j} = z_j F J_{\mathrm{at}_j} R_j^{\mathrm{memb}} \tag{3.21}$$

where z_j is the charge number of species j, F is Faraday's constant, J_{at_j} is the flux density of species j due to active transport, and R_j^{memb} is the membrane resistance for the specific pathway along which species j is actively transported. FJ_{at_j} in Equation 3.21—which is a form of Ohm's law (Section 3.2)—is the charge flux density and can have units of (C mol^{-1})(mol m^{-2} s^{-1}), or C m^{-2} s^{-1}, which is ampere m^{-2}, or current per unit area (1 ampere = 1 C s^{-1}). R_j^{memb} can be expressed in ohm m^2, so $z_j F J_{\mathrm{at}_j} R_j^{\mathrm{memb}}$ in Equation 3.21 can have units of ampere ohm, which is volts, the proper unit for electrical potentials.

For many plant cells, $R_{\mathrm{H}}^{\mathrm{memb}}$ is 2 to 20 ohm m^2 for the active transport of H^+ ions (protons) out across the plasma membrane (Spanswick, 1981). How large is $E_{\mathrm{at_H}}$ given by Equation 3.21 for such a proton "pump?" The electrical potential difference created by the active transport of 20 nmol m^{-2} s^{-1} of H^+ out across a typical membrane resistance for H^+ of 10 ohm m^2 is

$$\begin{aligned} E_{\mathrm{at_H}} &= (1)\left(9.65 \times 10^4\ \mathrm{C\,mol^{-1}}\right)\left(-20 \times 10^{-9}\ \mathrm{mol\,m^{-2}\,s^{-1}}\right)\left(10\ \mathrm{ohm\,m^2}\right) \\ &= -1.9 \times 10^{-2}\ \mathrm{V} \quad (-19\ \mathrm{mV}) \end{aligned}$$

Because the active transport of H^+ is out of the cell in the case considered, $J_{\mathrm{at_H}}$ is negative, which leads to a decrease in the membrane potential ($E_{\mathrm{at_H}} < 0$). Measurements in the presence and the absence of metabolic inhibitors have indicated that an electrogenic efflux of H^+ can decrease E_M of certain plant cells by 50 mV or more. On the other hand, R_j^{memb} for ions such as K^+, Na^+, and Cl^- generally is only 0.1 to 1 ohm m^2 (Hope, 1971), so active transport of these ions does not generate much of an electrical potential difference (actually, algebraically their E_{at_j}'s mostly cancel). In any case, the actual electrical potential difference across a membrane can be obtained by adding the potential difference caused by active transport of uncompensated charge (Eq. 3.21) to that caused by passive fluxes (predicted by the Goldman equation, Eq. 3.20), namely, $E_M + \sum_j E_{at_j}$.

3.3B. Boltzmann Energy Distribution and Q_{10}, a Temperature Coefficient

Most metabolic reactions are markedly influenced by temperature, whereas processes such as light absorption are essentially insensitive to temperature. What temperature dependence do we expect for diffusion? Can we decide

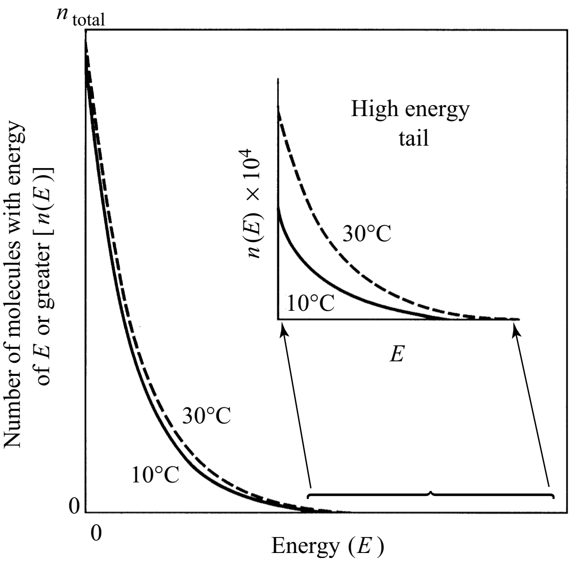


Figure 3-9. Boltzmann energy distributions at 10°C (solid line) and 30°C (dashed line). The inset is a continuation of the right-hand portion of the graph with the scale of the abscissa (E) unchanged and that of the ordinate [$n(E)$] expanded by 10^4. The difference between the two curves is extremely small, except at high energies; although very few molecules are in this "high-energy tail," there are many more such molecules at the higher temperature.

whether the movement of some solute into a cell is by active transport or by passive diffusion once we know how the fluxes depend on temperature? To answer these questions, we need an expression describing the distribution of energy among molecules as a function of temperature. This will allow us to determine what fraction of the molecules has the requisite energy for a particular process. In aqueous solutions the relevant energy is usually the kinetic energy of motion of the molecules involved. Hence, we will begin by relating the distribution of kinetic energy among molecules to temperature. The topics introduced here are important for a basic understanding of many aspects of biology—from biochemical reactions to the consequences of light absorption.

Very few molecules possess extremely high kinetic energies. In fact, the probability that a molecule has the kinetic energy E decreases exponentially as E increases (Fig. 3-9). The precise statement of this is the *Boltzmann energy distribution*, which describes the frequency with which specific kinetic energies are possessed by molecules at equilibrium at absolute temperature T:

$$n(E) = n_{\text{total}}e^{-E/kT} \qquad \text{molecule basis} \qquad (3.22a)$$

where $n(E)$ is the number of molecules possessing an energy of E or more per molecule out of the total number of molecules, n_{total}, and k is Boltzmann's constant (energy molecule^{-1} K^{-1}). The quantity $e^{-E/kT}$, which by Equation 3.22a equals $n(E)/n_{\text{total}}$, is the *Boltzmann factor*. Equation 3.22a

and Figure 3-9 indicate that the number of molecules with an energy of zero or greater, $n(0)$, equals $n_{\mathrm{total}}e^{-0/kT}$ or $n_{\mathrm{total}}e^{-0}$, which is n_{total}, the total number of molecules present.

Because of collisions based on thermal motion, energy is continually being gained or lost by individual molecules in a random fashion. Hence, a wide range of kinetic energies is possible, although very high energies are less probable (see Eq. 3.22a). As the temperature is raised, not only does the average energy per molecule become higher, but also the relative number of molecules in the "high-energy tail" of the exponential Boltzmann distribution increases substantially (Fig. 3-9).

In this text we use two analogous sets of expressions: (1) molecule, mass of molecule, photon, electronic charge, k, and kT; and (2) mole, molar mass, mole of photons, Faraday's constant, R, and RT (see Appendix I for numerical values of k, kT, R, and RT). A quantity in the second set, which is more appropriate for most of our applications, is Avogadro's number N (6.022×10^{23} molecules or other entities per mole) times the corresponding quantity in the first set. In particular, to change the Boltzmann distribution from a molecule to a mole basis, we multiply Boltzmann's constant k (energy molecule^{-1} K^{-1}) by Avogadro's number N (molecules mol^{-1}), which gives the gas constant R (energy mol^{-1} K^{-1}), i.e., $R = kN$. If $n(E)$ and n_{total} are numbers of moles and E is energy per mole, we simply replace k in the Boltzmann energy distribution (Eq. 3.22a) by R:

$$n(E) = n_{\mathrm{total}}e^{-E/RT} \qquad \text{mole basis} \tag{3.22b}$$

Returning to the topic of the temperature dependence of processes, we note that for diffusion across a membrane, the appropriate Boltzmann energy distribution indicates that the number of molecules with a kinetic energy per mole of U or greater, resulting from velocities in some particular direction, is proportional to $\sqrt{T}e^{-U/RT}$ (Davson and Danielli, 1952). A minimum kinetic energy (U_{min}) is often necessary to diffuse across some barrier or to cause a specific reaction. In such circumstances, any molecule with a kinetic energy of this U_{min} or greater has sufficient energy for the particular process. For the Boltzmann energy distribution appropriate to this case, the number of such molecules is proportional to $\sqrt{T}e^{-U_{\mathrm{min}}/RT}$. (The factor $\sqrt{T}$ applies to diffusion in one dimension, e.g., for molecules diffusing across a membrane.) At a temperature 10°C higher, the number is proportional to $\sqrt{(T+10)}e^{-U_{\mathrm{min}}/[R(T+10)]}$. The ratio of these two quantities is the Q_{10}, or *temperature coefficient*, of the process:

$$Q_{10} = \frac{\text{rate of process at } T + 10°\text{C}}{\text{rate of process at } T} = \sqrt{\frac{T+10}{T}}\, e^{10U_{\mathrm{min}}/[RT(T+10)]} \tag{3.23}$$

where the last equality requires that temperatures be expressed in Kelvin units. To obtain the form in the exponent of e in Equation 3.23, we note that

$$\frac{-U_{\mathrm{min}}}{R(T+10)} - \frac{-U_{\mathrm{min}}}{RT} = \frac{-U_{\mathrm{min}}T + U_{\mathrm{min}}(T+10)}{RT(T+10)} = \frac{10U_{\mathrm{min}}}{RT(T+10)}$$

Determining the Q_{10} is an excellent way of assessing the minimum energy required. For instance, a Q_{10} near 1 is characteristic of passive processes with no energy barrier to surmount (i.e., where $U_{min} = 0$). On the other hand, most enzymatic reactions take place only when the reactants have a considerable kinetic energy, so such processes tend to be quite sensitive to temperature. A value of 2 or greater for Q_{10} is often considered to indicate the involvement of metabolism, as occurs for active transport of a solute into a cell or organelle. However, Equation 3.23 indicates that any process having an appreciable energy barrier can have a large temperature coefficient.

The Q_{10} for a particular process indicates the minimum kinetic energy required (U_{min}), and vice versa. A membrane often represents an appreciable energy barrier for the diffusion of charged solutes—U_{min} for ions crossing passively can be 50 kJ mol^{-1} (12 kcal mol^{-1} or 0.52 eV molecule^{-1}; Stein, 1986). By Equation 3.23, this leads to the following temperature coefficient at 20°C:

$$Q_{10} = \sqrt{\frac{(303\ \text{K})}{(293\ \text{K})}}\, e^{(10\ \text{K})\left(50\times10^3\ \text{J mol}^{-1}\right)/\left[\left(8.3143\ \text{J mol}^{-1}\text{K}^{-1}\right)(293\ \text{K})(303\ \text{K})\right]}$$

$$= 1.02e^{0.68} = 2.01$$

As the Q_{10} indicates, the passive uptake of this ion doubles with only a 10°C increase in temperature. Therefore, a passive process can have a rather high Q_{10} if there is a substantial energy barrier, so such a Q_{10} for ion uptake does not necessarily indicate active transport.

A kinetic energy of 50 kJ mol^{-1} or greater is possessed by only a small fraction of the molecules (Eq. 3.22b). For instance, at 20°C the Boltzmann factor then is

$$e^{-E/RT} = e^{-\left(50\times10^3\ \text{J mol}^{-1}\right)/\left[\left(8.3143\ \text{J mol}^{-1}\ \text{K}^{-1}\right)(293\ \text{K})\right]} = 1.2\times10^{-9}$$

As T is raised, the fraction of molecules in the high-energy part of the Boltzmann distribution increases greatly (Fig. 3-9). Many more molecules then have the requisite kinetic energy, U_{min}, and consequently can take part in the process considered. In particular, at 30°C the Boltzmann factor here becomes 2.4×10^{-9}. Thus the Boltzmann factor for a U_{min} of 50 kJ mol^{-1} essentially doubles for a 10°C rise in temperature, consistent with our Q_{10} calculation for this case.

For diffusion in water at 20°C, U_{min} is 17 to 21 kJ mol^{-1} for solutes with molecular weights from 20 to 1000 (Stein, 1986). Using Equation 3.23, we calculate that the Q_{10} for such diffusion is about 1.3. This is a substantial Q_{10}, which is a consequence of the appreciable thermal energy required for a solute to move through the semicrystalline order in aqueous solutions resulting from the extensive hydrogen bonding (see Chapter 2, Section 2.1A). U_{min} for the passive efflux of K^+ from many cells is about 60 kJ mol^{-1} near 20°C, which corresponds to a Q_{10} of 2.3. We again conclude that a purely passive process, such as diffusion across membranes, can have a substantial temperature dependence.

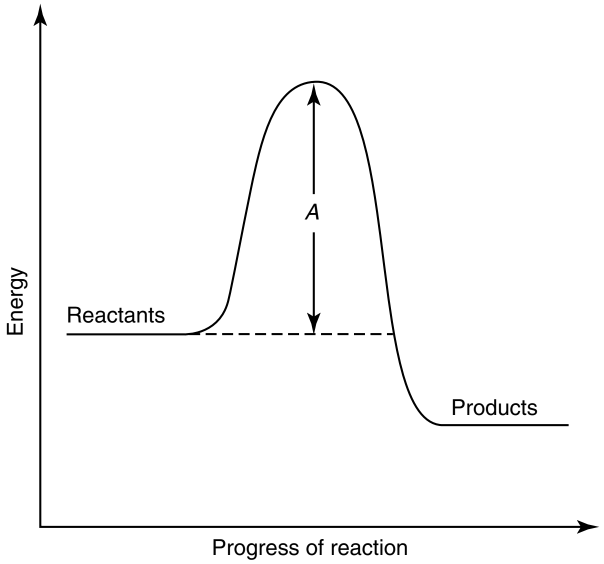


Figure 3-10. Schematic representation of the progress of a chemical reaction in the forward direction. The barrier height to be overcome is the activation energy A (analogous to $U_{\min}$ for crossing membranes). Only reactant molecules possessing sufficient energy to get over the barrier, whose fraction can be described by a Boltzmann energy distribution (Fig. 3-9), are converted into products.

3.3C. Activation Energy and Arrhenius Plots

An energy barrier requiring a minimum energy ($U_{\min}$) to cross it is related to the concept of *activation energy*, which refers to the minimum amount of energy necessary for some reaction to take place. Specifically, activation energy can be viewed as the minimum or threshold energy needed to overcome the barrier separating the products from the reactants so that the chemical reaction can proceed in the forward direction (Fig. 3-10). In the case of a membrane, the minimum kinetic energy required corresponds to the activation energy for crossing the barrier. We can evaluate $U_{\min}$ by determining how the number of molecules diffusing across the membrane varies with temperature (e.g., by invoking Eq. 3.23). For a chemical reaction, we can also experimentally determine how the process is influenced by temperature. If we represent the activation energy per mole by A, the rate constant for such a reaction varies with temperature as follows[6]:

$$\text{Rate constant} = Be^{-A/RT} \tag{3.24}$$

where B is often a constant.[7]

6. For a first-order process, the rate of decrease of quantity y, dy/dt, is proportional to the amount of y present, or $dy/dt = -ky$, where k is the rate constant (see Appendix III, Eq. III.1).

7. B can depend on temperature. For diffusion in one dimension, the number of molecules with an energy of at least $U_{\min}$ per mole is proportional to $\sqrt{T}e^{-U_{\min}/RT}$; B is then proportional to $\sqrt{T}$.

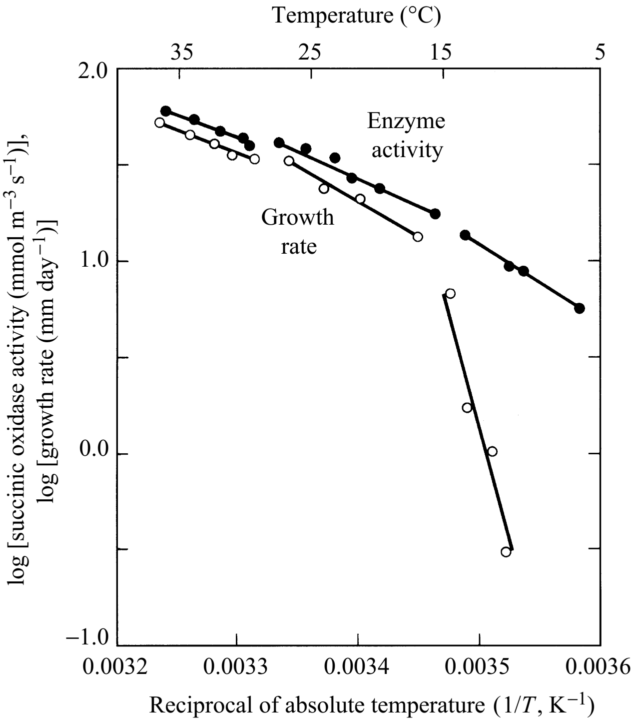


Figure 3-11. Arrhenius plots of mitochondrial succinate oxidase activity (●) and growth rate (○) of the hypocotyl plus radicle of *Vigna radiata*. [Data are from Raison and Chapman (1976); used by permission.].

Equation 3.24 is the Arrhenius equation. It was originally proposed on experimental grounds by Svante Arrhenius at the end of the 19th century and subsequently interpreted theoretically. A plot of the logarithm of the rate constant (or rate of some reaction) versus $1/T$ is commonly known as an *Arrhenius plot* (Fig. 3-11); by Equation 3.24, ln (rate constant) equals $\ln B - A/RT$. The slope of an Arrhenius plot ($-A/R$) can hence be used to determine the activation energy.

An enzyme greatly increases the rate of the reaction that it catalyzes by reducing the value of the activation energy needed (see Eq. 3.24 and Fig. 3-10). Consequently, many more molecules then have enough energy to get over the energy barrier separating the reactants from the products. For instance, the activation energy A for the hydrolysis of sucrose to glucose plus fructose at 37°C is about 107 kJ mol^{-1} in the absence of the enzyme invertase but only 34 kJ mol^{-1} when the enzyme catalyzes the reaction. Such a lowering of A by invertase thus increases the rate constant (see Eq. 3.24) by $e^{\Delta A/RT}$ or $e^{\left(107\text{ kJ mol}^{-1} - 34\text{ kJ mol}^{-1}\right)/\left[\left(8.314\text{ J mol}^{-1}\text{K}^{-1}\right)(310\text{ K})\right]}$, which equals 2.0×10^{12}. Thus, by lowering the activation energy, the enzyme greatly speeds up the reaction. Many reactions of importance in biochemistry have large values for A, even when catalyzed by enzymes, and are therefore extremely sensitive to temperature.

Arrhenius plots have been used to identify processes that change markedly over the range of temperatures that injure chilling-sensitive plants,

such as banana, corn, cotton, cucumber, mung bean, rice, soybean, and tomato. Such plants are often severely injured by exposure to temperatures that are low but above freezing (e.g., 5–10°C); prolonged exposure can even result in death. Visible symptoms include wilting, surface pitting of the leaves, and loss of chlorophyll. Damage at the cellular level caused by chilling can be manifested by the loss of cytoplasmic streaming, inhibition of respiration, metabolic dysfunction leading to the accumulation of toxic products, and enhanced membrane permeability.

Figure 3-11 suggests that the temperature dependence of the growth rate for the chilling-sensitive *Vigna radiata* (mung bean) may change near 15°C and 28°C. The activation energy for a mitochondrial enzyme (succinate oxidase) also may change at these two temperatures (Fig. 3-11), as apparently does the organization of membrane lipids in both mitochondria and chloroplasts. In fact, transitions in the physical properties of membranes (such as a change to a more fluid state) may underlie the changes in slope seen in Figure 3-11. Changes in the membranes can affect the catalytic properties of enzymes located in them, the permeability of solutes, and the general regulation of cellular metabolism, which in turn affects plant growth.[8]

3.3D. Ussing–Teorell Equation

We now consider ways of distinguishing between active and passive fluxes that are more reliable than determining Q_{10}'s. One of the most useful physicochemical criteria for deciding whether a particular ionic movement across a membrane is active or passive is the application of the Ussing–Teorell, or flux ratio, equation. For ions moving passively, this expression shows how the ratio of the influx to the efflux depends on the internal and the external concentrations of that species and on the electrical potential difference across the membrane. If the Ussing–Teorell equation is satisfied, passive movements can account for the observed flux ratio, so active transport of the ions need not be invoked. Even when the Ussing–Teorell equation is not obeyed, it can still indicate the ratio of the passive influx to the passive efflux of some substance. We can readily derive this expression by considering how the influx and the efflux could each be determined experimentally, as the following argument indicates.

8. Apparent breaks in Arrhenius plots for enzyme activity (e.g., Fig. 3-11) most directly reflect changes in protein activation energies, not membrane phase transitions, which are best identified using X-ray diffraction or microcalorimetry. No change in the slope of an Arrhenius plot can occur at a phase transition (e.g., the diffusion of a small solute may be unaffected by the rearrangement of membrane lipids), and sharp breaks may occur in the absence of membrane phase transitions when temperature affects the conformation of a protein. Complicated processes such as growth involve many enzyme-catalyzed reactions and usually lead to continuous changes with temperature that cannot be analyzed with a single rate constant.

For measuring the unidirectional inward component, or influx, of a certain ion (J_j^{in}), the plant cell or tissue can be placed in a solution containing a radioactive isotope of species j. Initially, none of the radioisotope is inside the cells, so the internal specific activity for this isotope equals zero at the beginning of the experiment. (As for any radioisotope study, only some of the molecules of species j are radioactive. This particular fraction is known as the *specific activity*, and it must be determined for both c_j^{o} and c_j^{i} in the current experiment.) Because originally none of the radioisotope is inside, its initial unidirectional outward component, or efflux (J_j^{out}), is zero, and the initial net flux density (J_j) of the radioisotope indicates J_j^{in}. From Equation 3.16, this influx of the radioisotope can be represented by $(K_j u_j z_j F E_M/\Delta x)[1/(e^{z_j F E_M/RT} - 1)]c_j^{\text{o}}$. After the isotope has entered the cell, some of it will begin to come out. Therefore, only the initial net flux will give an accurate measure of the influx of the radioisotope of species j.

Once the radioactivity has built up inside to a substantial level, we may remove the radioisotope from the external solution. The flux of the radioisotope is then from inside the cells to the external solution. In this case, the specific activity for c_j^{o} equals zero, and c_j^{i} determines the net flux of the radioisotope. By Equation 3.16, this efflux of the radioisotope of species j differs in magnitude from the initial influx only by having the factor c_j^{o} replaced by $c_j^{\text{i}} e^{z_j F E_M/RT}$, the quantities in the first two parentheses remaining the same. The ratio of these two passive flux densities—each of which can be separately measured—takes the following relatively simple form:

$$\frac{J_j^{\text{in}}}{J_j^{\text{out}}} = \frac{c_j^{\text{o}}}{c_j^{\text{i}} e^{z_j F E_M/RT}} \tag{3.25}$$

Equation 3.25 was independently derived by both Hans Ussing and Torston Teorell in 1949 and is known as the Ussing–Teorell equation or the flux ratio equation. It is strictly valid only for ions moving passively without interacting with other substances that may also be moving across a membrane. Our derivation uses Equation 3.16, which gives the passive flux of some charged substance across a membrane in response to differences in its chemical potential. Equation 3.16 considers only one species at a time, so possible interactions between the fluxes of different species are not included in Equation 3.25. The Ussing–Teorell equation can thus be used to determine whether the observed influxes and effluxes are passive (i.e., responses to the chemical potentials of the ions on the two sides of a membrane), or whether additional factors such as interactions between species or active transport are involved. For example, when active transport of species j into a cell is taking place, J_j^{in} is the passive inward flux density (i.e., the one predicted by Eq. 3.25) plus the influx due to active transport.

The ratio of the influx of species j to its efflux, as given by Equation 3.25, can be related to the difference in its chemical potential across a membrane. This difference causes the passive flux ratio to differ from 1. Moreover, we will use the chemical potential difference to estimate the minimum amount

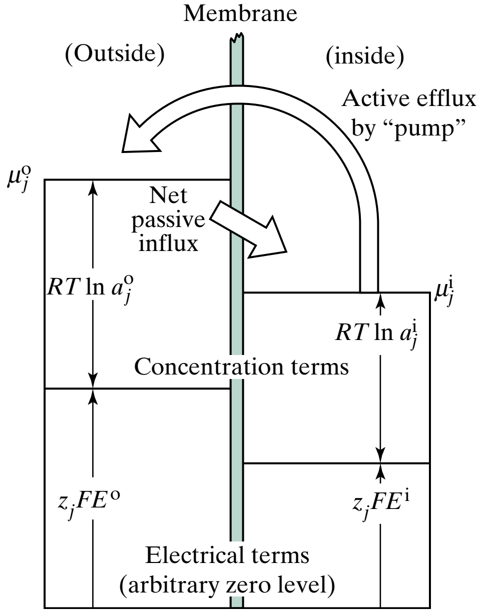


Figure 3-12. Diagram illustrating the situation for an ion not in equilibrium across a membrane. Because μ_j^o is greater than μ_j^i, there is a net passive flux density into the cell. In the steady state, this net influx is balanced by an equal efflux caused by active transport of species j out of the cell.

of energy needed for active transport of that ionic species across the membrane. After taking logarithms of both sides of the Ussing–Teorell equation (Eq. 3.25) and multiplying by RT, we obtain the following equalities:

$$\begin{aligned} RT \ln \frac{J_j^{in}}{J_j^{out}} &= RT \ln \frac{c_j^o}{c_j^i} - z_jFE_M \\ &= RT \ln a_j^o + z_jFE^o - RT \ln a_j^i - z_jFE^i \\ &= \mu_j^o - \mu_j^i \end{aligned} \tag{3.26}$$

where the membrane potential E_M has been replaced by $E^i - E^o$ in keeping with our previous convention. The derivation is restricted to the case of constant $\gamma_j(\gamma_j^o = \gamma_j^i)$, so $\ln(c_j^o/c_j^i)$ equals $\ln\left(\gamma_j^o c_j^o/\gamma_j^i c_j^i\right)$, or $\ln(a_j^o/a_j^i)$, which is $\ln a_j^o - \ln a_j^i$. Finally, the $\overline{V}_jP$ term in the chemical potential is ignored for these charged species (actually, we need only to assume that $\overline{V}_jP^o$ is equal to $\overline{V}_jP^i$) so that μ_j then equals $\mu_j^* + RT \ln a_j + z_jFE$, where μ_j^* is the same on the both sides of the membrane. Thus $\mu_j^o - \mu_j^i$ equals $RT \ln a_j^o + z_jFE^o - RT \ln a_j^i - z_jFE^i$, as is indicated in Equation 3.26.

A difference in chemical potential of species j across a membrane causes the ratio of the passive flux densities to differ from 1 (Fig. 3-12), a conclusion that follows directly from Equation 3.26. When μ_j^o is equal to μ_j^i, the influx balances the efflux, so no net passive flux density of species j occurs across the membrane ($J_j = J_j^{in} - J_j^{out}$ by Eq. 3.16). This condition ($\mu_j^o = \mu_j^i$) is also described by Equation 3.5, which was used to derive the Nernst equation (Eq. 3.6). In fact, the electrical potential difference across a membrane when

the chemical potentials are equal across it is the Nernst potential, as given by Equation 3.6: $E_{N_j} = (RT/z_jF)\ln(a_j^o/a_j^i)$. Thus, when E_M equals E_{N_j} for some species, that species is in equilibrium across the membrane, J_j^{in} is the same as J_j^{out}, and no net passive flux density of that ion is expected across the membrane, nor is any energy expended in moving the ion from one side of the membrane to the other. When Equations 3.25 and 3.26 are not satisfied for some species, then such ions are not moving across the membrane passively, or perhaps not moving independently from other fluxes. One way that this may occur is for the various fluxes to be interdependent, a condition describable by irreversible thermodynamics (Section 3.5). Another way is through active transport of the ions, whereby energy derived from metabolism is used to move solutes to regions of higher chemical potential.

3.3E. Example of Active Transport

The previous criteria for deciding whether active transport of certain ions is taking place can be illustrated by using data obtained with the internodal cells of *Nitella translucens* for which all of the parameters in the Ussing–Teorell equation have been measured for K^+, Na^+, and Cl^- (Table 3-1). For experimental purposes, this freshwater alga is often placed in a dilute aqueous solution containing 0.1 mM KCl, 1 mM NaCl, plus 0.1 mM $CaCl_2$ (1 mM = 1 mol m^{-3}), which establishes the values for all three c_j^o's (this solution is similar to the pond water in which *N. translucens* grows and is referred to as "artificial pond water"). The concentrations of K^+, Na^+, and Cl^- measured in the cytosol, the c_j^i's, are given in the third column of Table 3-1. Assuming that activities can be replaced by concentrations, we can calculate the Nernst potentials across the plasma membrane from these concentrations using Equation 3.6, $E_{N_j} = (58.2/z_j)\log(c_j^o/c_j^i)$ in mV (the numerical factor is 58.2 because the measurements were at 20°C). We thus get

$$E_{N_{\mathrm{Na}}} = \frac{58.2\ \mathrm{mV}}{(1)} \log \frac{(1.0\ \mathrm{mM})}{(14\ \mathrm{mM})} = -67\ \mathrm{mV}$$

Similarly, E_{N_K} is -179 mV and $E_{N_{Cl}}$ is 99 mV (Table 3-1). Direct measurement of the electrical potential difference across the plasma membrane (E_M) gives -138 mV, as indicated earlier in discussing the Goldman equation (Eq. 3.20). Because E_{N_j} differs from E_M in all three cases, none of these ions is in equilibrium across the plasma membrane of *N. translucens*.

A difference between E_M and E_{N_j} for a particular ion indicates departure from equilibrium for that ionic species; it also tells us in which compartment μ_j is higher. Specifically, if the membrane potential is algebraically more negative than the calculated Nernst potential, the chemical potential in the inner aqueous phase (here the cytosol) is lower for a cation (Fig. 3-12) but higher for an anion, compared with the values in the external solution (consider the effect of z_j in the electrical term of the chemical potential, z_jFE). Because E_M (-138 mV) is more negative than $E_{N_{Na}}$ (-67 mV), Na^+ is at a lower chemical potential in the cytosol than outside in the external solution. Analogously, we find that K^+ (with $E_{N_K} = -179$ mV) has a higher chemical potential inside, and the oppositely charged Cl^- (with

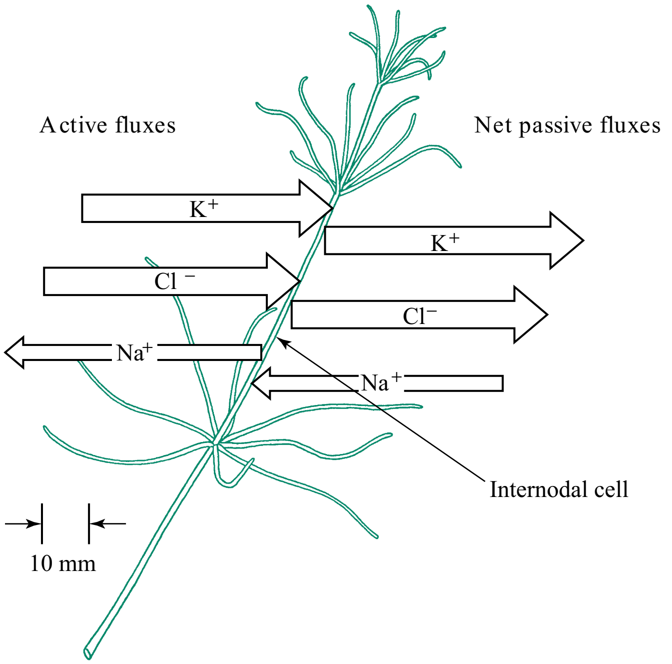


Figure 3-13. For the steady-state condition in the light, the three active fluxes across the plasma membrane of the large internodal cells of *Nitella translucens* are balanced by net passive K^+ and Cl^- effluxes and a net passive Na^+ influx (see Fig. 3-7).

$E_{N_{Cl}} = 99$ mV) has a much higher chemical potential inside. If these ions can move across the plasma membrane, this suggests an active transport of K^+ and Cl^- into the cell and an active extrusion of Na^+ from the cell, as is schematically indicated in Figure 3-13.

We can also consider the movement of specific ions into and out of *N. translucens* in terms of the Ussing–Teorell equation to help determine whether active transport needs to be invoked to explain the fluxes. The Ussing–Teorell equation predicts that the quantity on the right-hand side of Equation 3.25 $(c_j^{\mathrm{o}}/c_j^{\mathrm{i}}e^{z_jFE_M/RT})$ equals the ratio of the influx to the efflux of the various ions, if the ions are moving passively in response to gradients in their chemical potential. Using the values given in Table 3-1 and noting that RT/F is 25.3 mV at 20°C (Appendix I), we find that this ratio for Na^+ is

$$\frac{J_{\mathrm{Na}}^{\mathrm{in}}}{J_{\mathrm{Na}}^{\mathrm{out}}} = \frac{(1.0\ \mathrm{mM})}{(14\ \mathrm{mM})e^{(1)(-138\ \mathrm{mV})/(25.3\ \mathrm{mV})}} = 17$$

Similarly, the expected flux ratio is 0.20 for K^+ and 0.000085 for Cl^- (values given in Table 3-1, column 5). However, the observed influxes in the light equal the effluxes for each of these three ions (Table 3-1, columns 6 and 7). Equal influxes and effluxes are quite reasonable for mature cells of *N. translucens*, which are in a steady-state condition. On the other hand, if J_j^{in} equals J_j^{out}, the flux ratios given by Equation 3.25 are not satisfied for K^+, Na^+, or Cl^-. In fact, active transport of K^+ and Cl^- in and Na^+ out accounts for the marked deviations from the Ussing–Teorell equation for *N. translucens*, as is summarized in Figure 3-13.

As mentioned earlier, another approach for studying active transport is to remove the supply of energy. In the case of *N. translucens*, cessation of illumination causes a large decrease in the K^+ influx, the Na^+ efflux, and the Cl^- influx (last two columns of Table 3-1). These are the three fluxes that are toward regions of higher chemical potential for the particular ions involved, so we expect all three to be active. On the other hand, some fluxes remain essentially unchanged upon placing the cells in the dark (values in the last two columns of Table 3-1 refer to the fluxes soon after extinguishing the light, not the steady-state fluxes in the dark). For instance, the K^+ efflux and the Na^+ influx are initially unchanged when the *Nitella* cells are transferred from the light to the dark; that is, these unidirectional fluxes toward lower chemical potentials do not depend on energy derived from photosynthesis.

The passive diffusion of ions toward regions of lower chemical potential helps create the electrical potential difference across a membrane; to maintain the asymmetrical ionic distributions that sustain the passive fluxes, active transport is needed. Thus, the passive and the active fluxes are interdependent in the ionic relations of cells, and both are crucial for the generation of the observed diffusion potentials. Moreover, active and passive fluxes can occur simultaneously in the same direction. For example, we calculated that $J_{\mathrm{Na}}^{\mathrm{in}}$ should equal 17 times $J_{\mathrm{Na}}^{\mathrm{out}}$, if both flux densities were passive ones obeying the Ussing–Teorell equation. Because $J_{\mathrm{Na}}^{\mathrm{out}}$ is passive and equal to 5.5 nmol m^{-2} s^{-1}, we expect a passive efflux of Na^+ equaling (5.5)/(17), or 0.3 nmol m^{-2} s^{-1}. The active component of the Na^+ efflux in the light may be 5.5 – 0.3, or 5.2 nmol m^{-2} s^{-1}. At cessation of illumination, $J_{\mathrm{Na}}^{\mathrm{out}}$ decreases from 5.5 to 1.0 nmol m^{-2} s^{-1} (Table 3-1). Extinguishing the light removes photosynthesis as a possible energy source for active transport, but respiration could still supply energy in the dark. This can explain why $J_{\mathrm{Na}}^{\mathrm{out}}$ in the dark does not decrease all the way to 0.3 nmol m^{-2} s^{-1}, the value predicted for the passive efflux.

3.3F. Energy for Active Transport

Suppose that the chemical potential of some species is higher outside than inside a cell, as is illustrated in Figure 3-12. The minimum amount of energy needed to transport a mole of that species from the internal aqueous phase on one side of some membrane to the external solution on the other side is the difference in chemical potential of that solute across the membrane, $\mu_j^{\mathrm{o}} - \mu_j^{\mathrm{i}}$ (here $\mu_j^{\mathrm{o}} > \mu_j^{\mathrm{i}}$), so the transport is energetically uphill. As we noted when considering Equation 3.26, the quantity $\mu_j^{\mathrm{o}} - \mu_j^{\mathrm{i}}$ for ions equals $RT\ln(a_j^{\mathrm{o}}/a_j^{\mathrm{i}}) - z_jFE_M$. Because the Nernst potential E_{N_j} is $(RT/z_jF)\ln(a_j^o/a_j^i)$ (Eq. 3.6), we can express the difference in chemical potential across the membrane as

$$\begin{aligned}\mu_j^{\mathrm{o}} - \mu_j^{\mathrm{i}} &= z_jFE_{N_j} - z_jFE_M \\ &= z_jF\left(E_{N_j} - E_M\right)\end{aligned} \tag{3.27a}$$

and

$$\mu_j^{\mathrm{i}} - \mu_j^{\mathrm{o}} = z_jF\left(E_M - E_{N_j}\right) \tag{3.27b}$$

Using E_M and the Nernst potentials of Na^+, K^+, and Cl^- for *N. translucens* (Table 3-1), we can calculate $z_j(E_M - E_{N_j})$ for the transport of these ions across the plasma membrane of this alga. For Na^+ this quantity is

$$z_j(E_M - E_{N_j}) = (+1)[(-138 \text{ mV}) - (-67 \text{ mV})] = -71 \text{ mV}$$

Similarly, it is 41 mV for K^+ and 237 mV for Cl^-. By Equation 3.27b, these values for $z_j(E_M - E_{N_j})$ mean that Na^+ is at a lower chemical potential and K^+ as well as Cl^- are at higher chemical potentials inside the cell than in the external bathing solution, as we previously concluded (see also Figs. 3-12 and 3-13).

By Equation 3.27a, the minimum energy required for actively transporting or "pumping" Na^+ out across the plasma membrane of the *Nitella* cell is

$$\begin{aligned}\mu_{\text{Na}}^{\text{o}} - \mu_{\text{Na}}^{\text{i}} &= (1)\left(9.65 \times 10^{-2} \text{ kJ mol}^{-1} \text{ mV}^{-1}\right)[-67 \text{ mV} - (-138 \text{ mV})] \\ &= 6.9 \text{ kJ mol}^{-1}\end{aligned}$$

Similarly, pumping K^+ inward requires 4.0 kJ mol^{-1}. The active extrusion of Na^+ from certain algal cells is linked to the active uptake of K^+, with adenosine triphosphate (ATP) being implicated as the energy source for this coupled exchange process. As discussed in Chapter 6 (Section 6.2B), the hydrolysis of ATP under biological conditions usually releases at least 40 kJ mol^{-1} (10 kcal mol^{-1}). For a *Nitella* cell this is more than sufficient energy per mole of ATP hydrolyzed to pump 1 mol of Na^+ out and 1 mol of K^+ in. The transport of Cl^- inward takes a minimum of 23 kJ mol^{-1} according to Equation 3.27, which is a large amount of energy. Although the mechanism for actively transporting Cl^- into *Nitella* or other plant cells is not fully understood at the molecular level, exchanges with OH^- or cotransport with H^+ apparently are involved. The involvement of proton chemical potential differences across membranes in chloroplast and mitochondrial bioenergetics is discussed in Chapter 6.

3.3G. Speculation on Active Transport

The active uptake of K^+ and Cl^-, together with an active extrusion of Na^+, as for *Nitella* (Fig. 3-13), occurs for many plant cells. We might ask: Why does a cell actively transport K^+ and Cl^- in and Na^+ out? Although no definitive answer can be given to such a question, we shall speculate on possible reasons, based on the principles that we have been considering.

Let us imagine that a membrane-bounded cell containing negatively charged proteins is placed in an NaCl solution, possibly reflecting primeval conditions when life on earth originated. When Na^+ and Cl^- are both in equilibrium across a membrane, E_M is equal to $E_{N_{\text{Na}}}$ and $E_{N_{\text{Cl}}}$. Using concentrations (instead of activities) in Equation 3.6 $[E_{N_j} = 2.303(RT/z_jF)\log(a_j^{\text{o}}/a_j^{\text{i}})]$, $\log\left(c_{\text{Na}}^{\text{o}}/c_{\text{Na}}^{\text{i}}\right)$ then equals – $\log(c_{\text{Cl}}^{\text{o}}/c_{\text{Cl}}^{\text{i}})$, or $c_{\text{Na}}^{\text{o}}/c_{\text{Na}}^{\text{i}}$ equals $c_{\text{Cl}}^{\text{i}}/c_{\text{Cl}}^{\text{o}}$, and hence $c_{\text{Na}}^{\text{o}}c_{\text{Cl}}^{\text{o}}$ is equal to $c_{\text{Na}}^{\text{i}}c_{\text{Cl}}^{\text{i}}$. For electroneutrality in an external solution containing only NaCl, c_{Na}^{o} equals c_{Cl}^{o}. Because $a^2 = bc$ implies that $2a \le b + c$,[9] we conclude that $c_{\text{Na}}^{\text{o}} + c_{\text{Cl}}^{\text{o}} \le c_{\text{Na}}^{\text{i}} + c_{\text{Cl}}^{\text{i}}$. However, the

9. To show this, consider that $0 \le \left(\sqrt{b} - \sqrt{c}\right)^2 = b + c - 2\sqrt{bc}$, or $2\sqrt{bc} \le b + c$; hence, if $a^2 = bc$, then $2a \le b$ + c. Here, we let $c_{\text{Na}}^{\text{o}} = c_{\text{Cl}}^{\text{o}} = a$, $c_{\text{Na}}^{\text{i}} = b$, and $c_{\text{Cl}}^{\text{i}} = c$.

proteins, which cannot diffuse across the membrane, also make a contribution to the internal osmotic pressure (Π^i), so Π^i is greater than Π^o. When placed in an NaCl solution, water therefore tends to enter such a membrane-bounded cell containing proteins, causing it to swell without limit. An outwardly directed active transport of Na^+ would lower c^i_{Na} and thus prevent excessive osmotic swelling of primitive cells.

An energy-dependent uptake of solutes into a plant cell tends to increase Π^i, which can raise P^i. This higher internal hydrostatic pressure favors cell enlargement and consequently cell growth. For a plant cell surrounded by a cell wall, we might therefore expect an active transport of some species into the cell, such as Cl^-. (Animal cells do not have to push against a cell wall to enlarge and generally do not have an active uptake of Cl^-.) Many enzymes operate efficiently when exposed to relatively high concentrations of K^+ and Cl^-. In fact, many require K^+ for their activity, so an inwardly directed K^+ pump is probably necessary for cellular metabolism as we know it. The presence of a substantial concentration of such ions ensures that electrostatic effects adjacent to a Donnan phase can largely be screened out—otherwise, a negatively charged substrate (e.g., an organic acid or a phosphorylated sugar) might be electrostatically repelled from the catalytic site on an enzyme (proteins are usually negatively charged at cytosolic pH's). Once active transport has set up certain concentration differences across a membrane, the membrane potential is an inevitable consequence of the tendency of such ions to diffuse passively toward regions of lower chemical potential. The roles that such diffusion potentials play in the physiology of plant cells are open to question. It is known, however, that they are essential for the transmission of electrical impulses in excitable cells of animals and certain plants.

3.4. Mechanisms for Crossing Membranes

The possible involvement of a "carrier" molecule in the active transport of solutes across plant cell membranes was first suggested by Winthrop Osterhout in the 1930s. A *carrier* can selectively bind certain molecules and then carry them across a membrane. Carriers provide a cell with the specificity or selectivity needed to control the entry and the exit of various solutes. Thus certain metabolites can be specifically taken into a cell, and photosynthetic products as well as metabolic waste products can be selectively moved out across the membranes. At the organelle level, such selectivity plays a key role in maintaining cellular compartmentation. At the organ level, active transport of certain inorganic nutrients into epidermal cells in a root allows a plant to obtain and accumulate these solutes from the soil. Carriers also exhibit competition phenomena when similar solutes are present; because of their limited number, carriers can become saturated at high solute concentrations. Even though all of the details for binding and moving solutes through membranes are not known, the carrier concept has found widespread application in the interpretation of experimental observations.

A great proliferation of terminology describing how solutes cross membranes has occurred, and new conceptual insights have greatly stimulated

research efforts. Carriers are often referred to as transporters, or simply *porters*. A *symporter* is a porter that causes two different substances to move in the same direction across a membrane, and an *antiporter* causes them to move in opposite directions. Proton (H^+) fluxes appear to be involved with most symporters and antiporters in plant membranes. Also, transmembrane channels with complex and specific properties are increasingly implicated in the movement of ions across plant membranes.

3.4A. Carriers, Porters, Channels, and Pumps

Most transporters are proteins. Small proteins can bind some substance on one side of a membrane, diffuse across the membrane, and then release that substance on the other side. Such mobile carriers may bind a single substance, or they may bind two different substances, like the proton–solute symporter portrayed in Figure 3-14a. Candidates for transport by a proton symporter in plants include inorganic ions such as Cl^- and metabolites such as sugars and amino acids. Many substances apparently move in pores or channels, which can be membrane-spanning proteins. Some channels can have a series of binding sites, where the molecule or molecules transported go from site to site through the membrane (Fig. 3-14b). As another

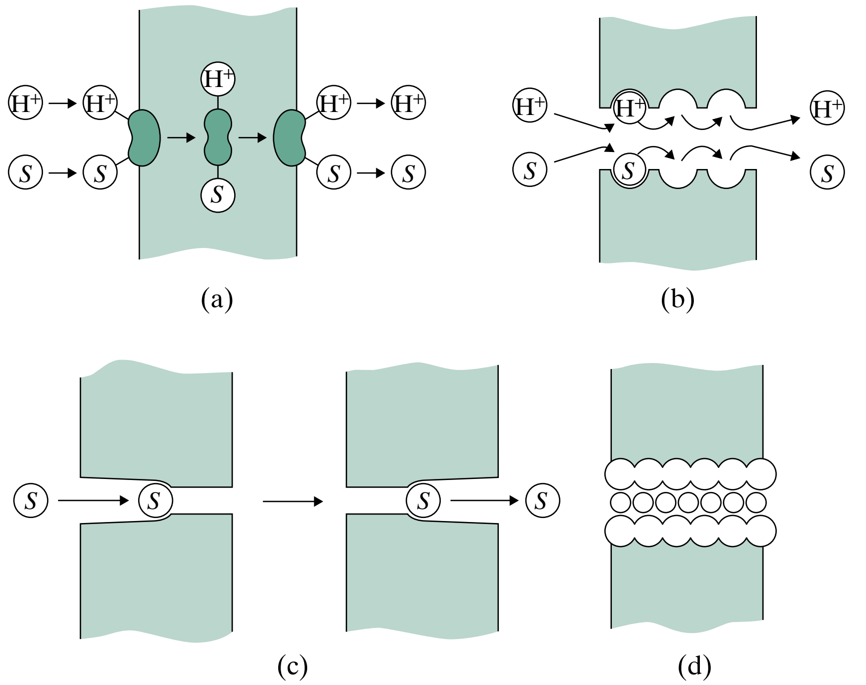


Figure 3-14. Hypothetical structures indicating possible mechanisms for transporters and channels in cell membrane (shaded region): (a) mobile carrier or porter acting as a symporter for protons (H^+) and some transported solute (S); (b) series of binding sites in a channel across a membrane, acting as a symporter for H^+ and S; (c) sequential conformations of a channel, leading to unidirectional movement of solute; and (d) a protein-lined pore with multiple solute or water molecules in single file, the most accepted version of ion or water (aquaporin) channels.

alternative, the substance to be transported can first bind to a site accessible from one side of the membrane. After a conformational change of the protein involved, the substance can subsequently be exposed to the solution on the other side of the membrane (Fig. 3-14c; e.g., molecular details such as binding sites are being elucidated for the symporter that transports two Na^+ and one glucose into cells lining the small intestine). For mechanisms as speculative as these, there are various ways that metabolic energy can be involved—such as using ATP to cause protein conformational changes or for active transport of H^+ to maintain an H^+ chemical potential difference across the membrane so that solute transport can be coupled to the passive, energetically downhill flow of protons.

Channels (Figs. 3-14b and 3-14d) can allow more solutes to cross membranes per unit time than carriers. Individual carrier proteins have maximal processing rates of 10^3 to 10^5 transported solutes per second, whereas an open channel can allow 10^6 to 10^8 or more ions to cross a membrane per second. Even though many solute molecules can cross the membrane in a channel, flowing passively in the energetically downhill direction, the channel is still selective for a particular type of ion, possibly because of specific binding sites that depend on ion size and/or charge. Moreover, a "patch–clamp" technique has allowed the recording of electrophysical responses of single ion channels.[10] Specifically, a glass micropipette with a tip diameter of about 1 μm is pressed against some membrane (not through the membrane as in Fig. 3-6), a slight suction is applied to the micropipette such that a small piece of the membrane seals to its tip, and a voltage is then fixed or clamped across this patch of membrane. Opening of a channel or channels for such a patch–clamp preparation leads to ion movements that can be detected as a small current by a sensitive electronic amplifier. Indeed, the opening and the closing of even a single channel mediated by the conformational changes of a single protein can be detected. Such studies have indicated that channel conformation can rapidly change from the open (transporting) to the closed (nontransporting) configuration, with such "gating" responses controlling what enters or leaves a plant cell.

Water can also move across membranes in channels, which are often called *aquaporins*.[11] These water channels are individual proteins with a molecular mass of about 30 kDa that span a membrane six times. The pore in the aquaporin is 0.3 to 0.4 nm in diameter, which allows the passage of water molecules in single file (a water molecule occupies a space about 0.28 nm in diameter; Fig. 2-2). About 3×10^9 water molecules s^{-1} can cross the plasma membrane or the tonoplast through a water channel. Although such channels are basically specific for water, some small solutes, such as CO_2, methanol, and ethanol, can also cross membranes in them.

10. The Nobel Prize in physiology or medicine was awarded to Erwin Neher and Bert Sakmann in 1991 for their invention of the patch–clamp technique.

11. The Nobel Prize in chemistry for 2003 went to Peter Agre for research on aquaporins and to Roderick MacKinnon for research on potassium channels.

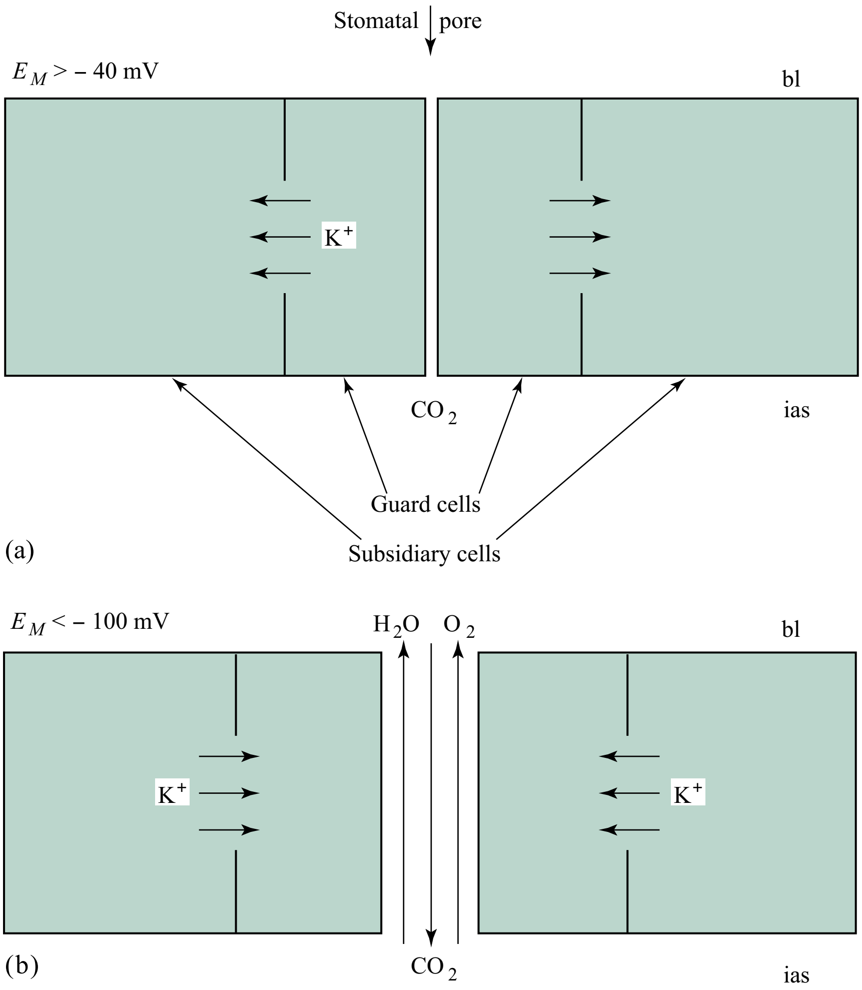


Figure 3-15. Influence of potassium channels on stomatal functioning, emphasizing the effect of the plasma membrane potential, E_M: (a) when E_M of the guard cells rises above −40 mV, potassium ions exit the swollen guard cells, causing them to shrink and the stomatal pores to close; (b) when E_M of guard cells falls below −100 mV, K^+ channels open so that potassium ions enter from the adjacent epidermal cells (known as *subsidiary cells*), causing the guard cells to swell, thus opening the stomatal pores and allowing the exchange of gases between the leaf and the ambient air. (Stomatal control is discussed in Chapter 8, Section 8.1B; e.g., see Fig. 8-2). Abbreviations: bl, boundary layer; ias, intercellular air spaces.

Potassium-conducting channels, which are the predominant ion channels in plant membranes, are apparently involved in the pulvinus motor cells controlling the diurnal leaf movement for *Samanea saman*. They are also involved in the opening and the closing of stomatal pores mediated by K^+ uptake and K^+ release across the plasma membrane of guard cells (Fig. 3-15), which is a universal phenomenon among plants. The opening of channels is visualized to occur by the opening of "gates," which can be regulated by the membrane potential. In particular, as E_M rises above −40 mV, gates for K^+ channels open so that K^+ can readily cross the

membranes of pulvinus motor cells or guard cells (Fig. 3-15a). In such cases μ_K is higher in the guard cells than outside the cells, so K^+ is released from the cells. When E_M for the plasma membrane of guard cells becomes more negative than −100 mV, K^+ channels also open, but in this case μ_K is lower in the guard cells and so K^+ enters (Fig. 3-15b). The ensuing entry of an accompanying anion and then water (diffusing toward regions of higher Π, a process called *osmosis*) apparently leads to the swelling of guard cells and the opening of stomatal pores (discussed in Chapter 8, Section 8.1B).

Potassium channels can have a frequency of one or more channels per square micrometer of membrane surface area. Cellular control can be exerted on the opening of such K^+ channels, because concentrations of cytosolic Ca^{2+} above 3×10^{-4} mol m^{-3} (0.3 μM) can inhibit channel opening. Other ion channels in plant membranes are specific for Ca^{2+} or Cl^-. Besides being sensitive to the electrical potential difference across a membrane, some channels apparently open upon stretching of a membrane. Also, many plant cells are excitable and can transmit action potentials, a process in which ion channels are undoubtedly involved. For example, action potentials have been measured for plants responsive to tactile stimuli, such as rapid leaf movements in *Mimosa pudica* and insectivorous plants (*Dionaea* spp., *Drosera* spp.), as well as along the phloem for many species. In addition, ion channels are involved in the long-term maintenance of specific ion concentrations in plant cells.

Because of electroneutrality and electrogenicity, which have been discussed previously (Sections 3.1.B and 3.3.A), electrically uncompensated transport of charged solutes can have major impacts on the membrane potential, which in turn can control many of the properties of ion channels (Fig. 3-15). An H^+-extruding ATPase (a porter protein that is linked to the hydrolysis of ATP), which is referred to as an *H^+* or *proton pump*, can rapidly influence E_M for the plasma membrane by controlling the opening of K^+ and other channels (a pump couples transmembrane solute movement with chemical energy, such as is provided by ATP hydrolysis). A blue-light-activated H^+ pump has been identified in the plasma membrane of guard cells that is apparently involved in stomatal opening. The hyperpolarization (negative shift of E_M) caused by outwardly directed H^+ pumps in the plasma membrane can also subsequently affect symporters using cotransport of H^+ and various solutes (Fig. 3-14b). An inwardly directed H^+ pump in the tonoplast will tend to lower the pH and to raise the electrical potential in the central vacuole relative to values in the cytosol. Indeed, the most prevalent active transport processes in higher plant cells may be electrogenic proton pumps taking H^+ out of the cytosol across the plasma membrane and across the tonoplast into the vacuole, leading to cytosolic pH's near 7 and vacuolar pH's below 6. The tonoplast H^+–ATPase, which may transport two H^+'s per ATP hydrolyzed, can lead to passive ion uptake into the vacuole, an important process for cell expansion and hence plant growth. Thus H^+ pumps, depending on ATP to move protons to regions of higher chemical potential, can generate changes in the electrical potential across membranes that in turn affect many cellular processes. Various actions of plant hormones also most likely involve H^+ pumps.

3.4B. Michaelis–Menten Formalism

When an ion is attached to a particular transporter, a similar ion (of the same or a different solute) competing for the same binding site cannot also be bound. For example, the similar monovalent cations K^+ and Rb^+ appear to bind in a competitive fashion to the same site on a transporter. For some cells, the same carrier might transport Na^+ out of the cell and K^+ in—such as the sodium–potassium pump alluded to previously. Ca^{2+} and Sr^{2+} apparently compete with each other for binding sites on another common carrier. The halides (Cl^-, I^-, and Br^-) may also be transported by a single carrier.

One of the most important variables in the study of carrier-mediated uptake is the external concentration. As the external concentration of a transported solute increases, the rate of uptake increases and eventually reaches an upper limit. We may then presume that all of the binding sites on the carriers for that particular solute have become filled or saturated. In particular, the rate of active uptake of species j, J_j^{in}, is often proportional to the external concentration of that solute, c_j^{o}, over the lower range of concentrations. As c_j^{o} is raised, a maximum rate, $J_{j\,\text{max}}^{\text{in}}$, is eventually reached. We can describe this kind of behavior by

$$J_j^{\text{in}} = \frac{J_{j\,\text{max}}^{\text{in}} c_j^{\text{o}}}{K_j + c_j^{\text{o}}} \tag{3.28a}$$

where the constant K_j characterizes the affinity of the carrier used for solute species j crossing a particular membrane and is expressed in the units of concentration. For the uptake of many ions into roots and other plant tissues, $J_{j\,\text{max}}^{\text{in}}$ is 30 to 300 nmol m^{-2} s^{-1}. Often two different K_j's are observed for the uptake of the same ionic species into a root. The lower K_j is generally between 6 and 100 μM (6 and 100 mmol m^{-3}), which is in the concentration range of many ions in soil water and hence is important ecologically and agronomically; the higher K_j can be above 10 mM.

Equation 3.28a is similar in appearance to the equation proposed by Leonor Michaelis and Maud Menten in 1913 to describe enzyme kinetics in biochemistry, $v = v_{\text{max}}s/(K_M + s)$. The substrate concentration, s, in the latter relation is analogous to c_j^{o} in Equation 3.28a, and the enzyme reaction velocity, v, is analogous to J_j^{in}. The term in the Michaelis–Menten equation equivalent to K_j in Equation 3.28a is the substrate concentration for half-maximal velocity of the reaction, K_M (the Michaelis constant). The lower is the K_M, the greater is the reaction velocity at low substrate concentrations. Likewise, a low value for K_j indicates that the ion or other solute is more readily bound to some carrier and then transported across the membrane. In particular, Equation 3.28a describes a rectangular hyperbola (Fig. 3-16a), a class of equations that has been used to describe many adsorption and other binding phenomena. When c_j^{o} is small relative to K_j, J_j^{in} is approximately equal to $J_{j\,\text{max}}^{\text{in}} c_j^{o}/K_j$ by Equation 3.28a. The influx of species j is then not only proportional to the external concentration, as already indicated, but also inversely proportional to K_j. Hence, a low K_j, representing a high affinity for a carrier, indicates that species j is favored or selected for active transport into the cell, even when its external concentration is relatively low. We note

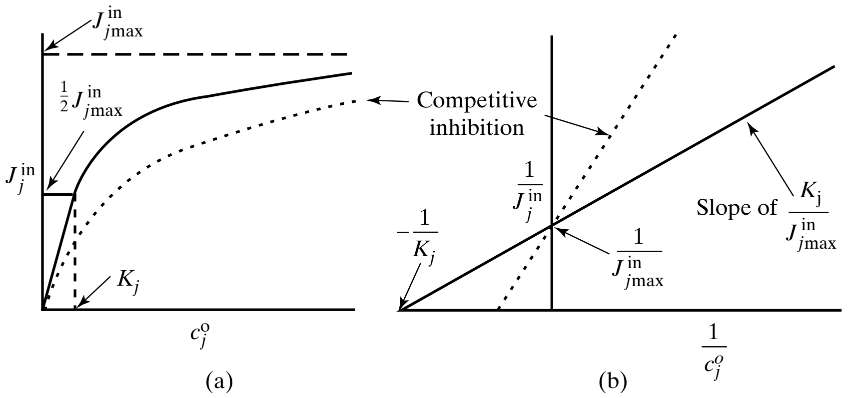


Figure 3-16. Relationship between the external solute concentration ($c^{\rm o}_j$) and the rate of influx ($J^{\rm in}_j$) for active uptake according to Michaelis–Menten kinetics, as given by Equation 3.28: (a) linear plot and (b) double-reciprocal plot.

that Equation 3.28a even applies to ions moving in channels where solute binding can occur. Hence, the Michaelis–Menten formalism has found widespread application in describing movement of solutes across membranes.

The two most common ways of graphing data on solute uptake that fit Equation 3.28a are illustrated in Figure 3-16. Figure 3-16a shows that when the external concentration of species j, $c^{\rm o}_j$, is equal to K_j, $J^{\rm in}_j$ then equals $\frac{1}{2}J^{\rm in}_{j\,\max}$, as we can see directly from Equation 3.28a:

$$J^{\rm in}_j = \frac{J^{\rm in}_{j\,\max}K_j}{K_j + K_j} = \tfrac{1}{2}J^{\rm in}_{j\,\max}$$

Thus K_j is the external concentration at which the rate of active uptake is half-maximal—in fact, the observed values of K_j are convenient parameters for describing the uptake of various solutes. If two different solutes compete for the same site on some carrier, $J^{\rm in}_j$ for species j will be decreased by the presence of the second solute, which is known as *competitive inhibition* of the uptake of species j. In the case of competitive inhibition, the asymptotic value for the active influx, $J^{\rm in}_{j\,\max}$, is not affected because in principle we can raise $c^{\rm o}_j$ high enough to obtain the same maximum rate for the active uptake of species j. However, the half-maximum rate occurs at a higher concentration, so the apparent K_j is raised if a competing solute is present; that is, $J^{\rm in}_j$ is half-maximal at a higher $c^{\rm o}_j$ when a competitive inhibitor is present (Fig. 3-16a).

Usually the experimental data are plotted such that a linear relationship is obtained when Equation 3.28a is satisfied for the active uptake of species j. Taking reciprocals of both sides of Equation 3.28a, we note that

$$\frac{1}{J^{\rm in}_j} = \frac{K_j + c^{\rm o}_j}{J^{\rm in}_{j\,\max}c^{\rm o}_j} = \frac{K_j}{J^{\rm in}_{j\,\max}c^{\rm o}_j} + \frac{1}{J^{\rm in}_{j\,\max}} \qquad (3.28b)$$

When $1/J^{\rm in}_j$ is plotted against $1/c^{\rm o}_j$ (Fig. 3-16b), Equation 3.28b yields a straight line with a slope of $K_j/J^{\rm in}_{j\,\max}$, an intercept on the ordinate of $1/J^{\rm in}_{j\,\max}$, and an intercept on the abscissa of $-1/K_j$ (in biochemistry, the analogous figure is known as a Lineweaver–Burk plot). This latter method of treating the

Characteristic	Diffusion	Facilitated diffusion	Active transport
Energy required	No (to lower μ_j, i.e., spontaneous)	No (to lower μ_j)	Yes (to higher μ_j)
Concentration dependence	Linear	Asymptotic	Asymptotic
Selective	No	Yes	Yes
Competitive (with similar solute)	No	Yes	Yes
Saturable (at high concentrations)	No	Yes	Yes
Equation(s)	1.8 (neutral solute), 3.6 (charged solute)	3.28	3.28
Relative rate	Depends primarily on lipid solubility	Usually much greater than diffusion	Variable, depends on energy and carriers available

Figure 3-17. Characteristics of three ways of crossing biological membranes.

experimental results is widely applied to solute uptake by plant tissues, especially roots, as it leads to a linear relationship instead of the rectangular hyperbola in Equation 3.28a. Because the apparent K_j increases and $J_{j\,\max}^{\text{in}}$ remains the same for competitive inhibition, the presence of a competing species causes the slope of the line (i.e., $K_j/J_{j\,\max}^{\text{in}}$) to be greater, whereas the intercept on the y-axis $(1/J_{j\,\max}^{\text{in}})$ is unchanged (Fig. 3-16b). A *noncompetitive* inhibitor, which is more common in biochemistry than in ion transport, does not bind to the site used for transporting species j across a membrane, so K_j is unaffected. However, the effectiveness of transport of species j and hence its maximum rate of influx ($J_{j\,\max}^{\text{in}}$) are lowered, so the slope and the intercept on the ordinate in Figure 3-16b are increased, whereas the intercept on the abscissa is unchanged when a noncompetitive inhibitor is present.

3.4C. Facilitated Diffusion

Equation 3.28 describes the competitive binding of solutes to a limited number of specific sites. In other words, active processes involving metabolic energy do not have to be invoked; if a solute were to diffuse across a membrane only when bound to a carrier, the expression for the influx could also be Equation 3.28. This passive, energetically downhill entry of a solute mediated by a carrier is termed *facilitated diffusion*.

Because facilitated diffusion is important in biology and yet is often misunderstood, we will briefly elaborate on it (Fig. 3-17). Certain molecules passively enter cells more readily than expected from consideration of their molecular structure or from observations with analogous substances, so some mechanism is apparently facilitating their entry. The net flux density is still toward lower chemical potential and hence is in the same direction as for ordinary diffusion. (The term *diffusion* often refers to net thermal

motion toward regions of lower concentration; it is used here with a broader meaning—namely, net motion toward regions of lower chemical potential.) To help explain facilitated diffusion, transporters are proposed to act as shuttles for a net passive movement of the specific molecules across the membrane toward regions of lower chemical energy for that solute. Instead of the usual diffusion across the barrier—based on random thermal motion of the solutes—transporters selectively bind certain molecules and then release them on the other side of the membrane without an input of metabolic energy. Such facilitation of transport may also be regarded as a special means of lowering the activation energy (Section 3.3C) needed for the solute to cross the energy barrier represented by the membrane. Thus, transporters facilitate the influx of solutes in the same way that enzymes facilitate biochemical reactions.

Facilitated diffusion has certain general characteristics. As already mentioned, the net flux is toward a lower chemical potential. (According to the usual definition, active transport is in the energetically uphill direction; active transport may use the same carriers as those used for facilitated diffusion.) Facilitated diffusion causes fluxes to be larger than those expected for ordinary diffusion. Furthermore, the transporters can exhibit selectivity (Fig. 3-17); that is, they can be specific for certain molecules solute and not bind closely related ones, similar to the properties of enzymes. In addition, carriers in facilitated diffusion become saturated when the external concentration of the solute transported is raised sufficiently, a behavior consistent with Equation 3.28. Finally, because carriers can exhibit competition, the flux density of a solute entering a cell by facilitated diffusion can be reduced when structurally similar molecules are added to the external solution. Such molecules compete for the same sites on the carriers and thereby reduce the binding and the subsequent transfer of the original solute into the cell.

For convenience, we have been discussing facilitated diffusion into a cell, but the same principles apply for exit and for fluxes at the organelle level. Let us assume that a transporter for K^+ exists in the membrane of a certain cell and that it is used as a shuttle for facilitated diffusion. Not only does the carrier lead to an enhanced net flux density toward the side with the lower chemical potential, but also both the unidirectional fluxes J_K^{in} and J_K^{out} can be increased over the values predicted for ordinary diffusion. This increase in the unidirectional fluxes by a carrier is often called *exchange diffusion*. In such a case, the molecules are interacting with a membrane component, namely, the carrier; hence the Ussing–Teorell equation [Eq. 3.25; $J_j^{in}/J_j^{out} = c_j^o/(c_j^i e^{z_j F E_M/RT})$] is not obeyed because it does not consider interactions with other substances. In fact, observations of departures from predictions of the Ussing–Teorell equation are often how cases of exchange diffusion are discovered.[12]

12. The term "exchange diffusion" has another usage in the literature—namely, to describe the carrier-mediated movement of some solute in one direction across a membrane in exchange for a different solute being transported in the opposite direction. Again, the Ussing–Teorell equation is not obeyed.

Both active and passive fluxes across the cellular membranes can occur simultaneously, but these movements depend on concentrations in different ways (Fig. 3-17). For passive diffusion, the unidirectional component J_j^{in} is proportional to c_j^{o}, as is indicated by Equation 1.8 for neutral solutes $[J_j = P_j(c_j^{\text{o}} - c_j^{\text{i}})]$ and by Equation 3.16 for ions. This proportionality strictly applies only over the range of external concentrations for which the permeability coefficient is essentially independent of concentration, and the membrane potential must not change in the case of charged solutes. Nevertheless, ordinary passive influxes do tend to be proportional to the external concentration, whereas an active influx or the special passive influx known as facilitated diffusion—either of which can be described by a Michaelis–Menten type of formalism—shows saturation effects at higher concentrations. Moreover, facilitated diffusion and active transport exhibit selectivity and competition, whereas ordinary diffusion does not (Fig. 3-17).

3.5. Principles of Irreversible Thermodynamics

So far we have been using classical thermodynamics—although, it may have been noticed, often somewhat illegitimately. For example, let us consider Equation 2.26 ($J_{V_w} = L_w\Delta\Psi$). Because the chemical potential changes, represented here by a change in water potential, we expect a net (and irreversible) flow of water from one region to another, which is not an equilibrium situation. Strictly speaking, however, classical thermodynamics is concerned solely with equilibria, not with movement. Indeed, classical thermodynamics might have been better named "thermostatics." Thus we have frequently been involved in a hybrid enterprise—appealing to classical thermodynamics for the driving forces but using nonthermodynamic arguments and analogies to discuss fluxes. One of the objectives of irreversible thermodynamics is to help legitimize the arguments. However, as we shall see, legitimizing them brings in new ideas and considerations.

Irreversible thermodynamics uses the same parameters as classical thermodynamics—namely, temperature, pressure, free energy, activity, and so on. However, these quantities are strictly defined for macroscopic amounts of matter only in equilibrium situations. How can we use them to discuss processes not in equilibrium, the domain of irreversible thermodynamics? This dilemma immediately circumscribes the range of validity of the theory of irreversible thermodynamics: It can deal only with "slow" processes or situations that are not very far from equilibrium, for only in such circumstances can equilibrium-related concepts such as temperature and free energy retain their validity—at least approximately. We have to assume from the outset that we can talk about and use parameters from classical thermodynamics even in nonequilibrium situations. We must also avoid situations of high kinetic energy, for in such cases the chemical potential of species j, μ_j, does not adequately represent its total energy (kinetic plus potential energy). Kinetic energy equals $\frac{1}{2}m_jv_j^2$, where m_j is the mass per mole of species j and v_j is its velocity; v_j must exceed 1 m s^{-1} before the kinetic energy becomes relatively important, but such speeds do not occur for solutions in plants.

Another refinement is to recognize that the movement of one species may affect the movement of a second species. A particular flux of some solute may interact with another flux by way of collisions, each species flowing under the influence of its own force. For example, water, ions, and other solutes moving through a membrane toward regions of lower chemical potentials can exert frictional drags on each other. The magnitude of the flux of a solute may then depend on whether water is also flowing. In this way, the fluxes of various species across a membrane become interdependent. Stated more formally, the flux of a solute not only depends on the negative gradient of its own chemical potential, which is the sole driving force that we have recognized up to now, but also may be influenced by the gradient in the chemical potential of water. Again using Equation 2.26 as an example, we have considered that the flow of water depends only on the difference in its own chemical potential between two locations and have thus far ignored any coupling to concomitant fluxes of solutes.

A quantitative description of interdependent fluxes and forces is given by irreversible thermodynamics, a subject that treats nonequilibrium situations such as those actually occurring under biological conditions. (The concepts of nonequilibrium and irreversibility are related, because a system in a nonequilibrium situation left isolated from external influences will spontaneously and irreversibly move toward equilibrium.) In this brief introduction to irreversible thermodynamics, we will emphasize certain underlying principles and then introduce the *reflection coefficient.* To simplify the analysis, we will restrict our attention to constant temperature (isothermal) conditions, which approximate many biological situations in which fluxes of water and solutes are considered.

3.5A. Fluxes, Forces, and Onsager Coefficients

In our previous discussion of fluxes, the driving force leading to the flux density of species j, J_j, was the negative gradient in its chemical potential, $-\partial\mu_j/\partial x$. Irreversible thermodynamics takes a more general view—namely, the flux of species j depends not only on the chemical potential gradient of species j, but also potentially on any other force occurring in the system, such as the chemical potential gradient of some other species. A particular force, X_k, can likewise influence the flux of any species. Thus the various fluxes become interdependent, or coupled, because they can respond to changes in any of the forces. Another premise of irreversible thermodynamics is that J_j is linearly dependent on the various forces, so we can treat only those cases that are not too far from equilibrium. Even with this simplification, the algebra often becomes cumbersome, owing to the coupling of the various forces and fluxes. Using a linear combination of terms involving all of the forces, we represent the flux density of species j by

$$J_j = \sum_k^n L_{jk}X_k = L_{j1}X_1 + L_{j2}X_2 + \ldots + L_{jj}X_j + \ldots + L_{jn}X_n \qquad (3.29)$$

where the summation Σ_k^n is over all forces (all n X_k's), and the L_{jk}'s are referred to as the *Onsager coefficients,* or the phenomenological coefficients,

	Species j	Species k
Conjugate force	$X_j = \Delta\mu_j$	$X_k = \Delta\mu_k$
Flux term with proper or straight coefficient	$L_{jj}\Delta\mu_j$	$L_{kk}\Delta\mu_k$
Flux term with coupling or cross coefficient	$L_{jk}\,\Delta\mu_k$	$L_{kj}\Delta\mu_j$
Onsager reciprocity relation	$L_{jk} = L_{kj}$	

Figure 3-18. Forces, flux terms, and phenomenological coefficients in irreversible thermodynamics (see Eq. 3.29). L_{jj} and L_{kk} are positive. The cross coefficients (L_{jk} with $j \neq k$) can be positive (meaning that force X_k will increase flux J_j), negative, or zero (meaning no interaction between X_k and J_j).

in this case for conductivity (Fig. 3-18).[13] The first subscript on these coefficients (j on L_{jk}) identifies the flux density J_j that we are considering; the second subscript (k on L_{jk}) designates the force, such as the gradient in chemical potential of species k. Each term, $L_{jk}X_k$, is thus the partial flux density of species j due to the particular force X_k. The individual Onsager coefficients in Equation 3.29 are therefore the proportionality factors indicating what contribution each force X_k makes to the flux density of species j. Equation 3.29 is sometimes referred to as the *phenomenological equation.* Phenomenological equations are used to describe observable phenomena without regard to explanations in terms of atoms or molecules. For instance, Ohm's law and Fick's laws are also phenomenological equations. They also assume linear relations between forces and fluxes.

The phenomenological coefficient L_{jk} equals L_{kj}, which is known as the *reciprocity relation* (Fig. 3-18). Such an equality of cross coefficients was derived in 1931 by Onsager from statistical considerations utilizing the principle of "detailed balancing." The argument involves microscopic reversibility—that is, for local equilibrium, any molecular process and its reverse will be taking place at the same average rate in that region. The Onsager reciprocity relation means that the proportionality coefficient giving the partial flux density of species k caused by the force on species j equals the proportionality coefficient giving the partial flux density of species j caused by the force on species k. (Strictly speaking, conjugate forces and fluxes must be used, as we will here.) The fact that L_{jk} equals L_{kj} can be further appreciated by considering Newton's third law—equality of action and reaction. For example, the frictional drag exerted by a moving solvent on a solute is equal to the drag exerted by the moving solute on the solvent. The pairwise equality of cross coefficients given by the Onsager reciprocity relation reduces the number of coefficients needed to describe the interdependence of forces and fluxes in irreversible

13. Lars Onsager received the Nobel Prize in chemistry in 1968 for his contributions to irreversible thermodynamics, as did Ilya Prigogine in 1977.

thermodynamics and consequently leads to a simplification in solving the sets of simultaneous equations.

In the next section we will use Equation 3.29 as the starting point for developing the expression from irreversible thermodynamics that describes the volume flux density. Because the development is lengthy and the details may obscure the final objective, namely, the derivation of Equation 3.40 for the volume flux density in terms of convenient parameters, the steps and the equations involved are summarized first:

Step	Eq. No.
Flux equation for a particular species	3.29
Flux equation for water (J_w) and a single solute (J_s) in terms of $\Delta\mu_w$ and $\Delta\mu_s$	3.30, 3.31
Expression of $\Delta\mu_w$ and $\Delta\mu_s$ in terms of ΔP and $\Delta\Pi$	3.32, 3.33
Volume flux density (J_V)	3.34a, 3.34b
Diffusional flux density (J_D)	3.35
J_V and J_D in terms of ΔP and $\Delta\Pi$	3.36, 3.37
Reflection coefficient (σ)	3.38
J_V in terms of ΔP, $\Delta\Pi$, and σ	3.39, 3.40

3.5B. Water and Solute Flow

As a specific application of the principles just introduced, we will consider the important coupling of water and solute flow. The driving forces for the fluxes are the negative gradients in chemical potential, which we will assume to be proportional to the differences in chemical potential across some barrier, here considered to be a membrane. In particular, we will represent $-\partial\mu_j/\partial x$ by $\Delta\mu_j/\Delta x$, which in the current case is $(\mu_j^{\rm o} - \mu_j^{\rm i})/\Delta x$. (For convenience, the thickness of the barrier, Δx, will be incorporated into the coefficient multiplying $\Delta\mu_j$ in the flux equations.) To help keep the algebra relatively simple, the development will be carried out for a single nonelectrolyte. The fluxes are across a membrane permeable to both water (w) and the single solute (s), thereby removing the restriction in Chapter 2, for which membranes permeable only to water were considered. Using Equation 3.29, we can represent the flux densities of water (J_w) and a solute (J_s) by the following linear combination of the differences in chemical potential:

$$J_w = L_{ww}\Delta\mu_w + L_{ws}\Delta\mu_s \tag{3.30}$$

$$J_s = L_{sw}\Delta\mu_w + L_{ss}\Delta\mu_s \tag{3.31}$$

Equations 3.30 and 3.31 allow for the possibility that each of the flux densities can depend on the differences in both chemical potentials, $\Delta\mu_w$ and $\Delta\mu_s$. Four phenomenological coefficients are used in these two equations (Table 3-2). However, by the Onsager reciprocity relation, L_{ws} equals L_{sw}. Thus, three different coefficients (L_{ww}, L_{ws}, and L_{ss}) are needed to describe the relationship of these two flux densities to the two driving forces. Contrast this with Equation 3.7 [$J_j = u_jc_j(-\partial\mu_j/\partial x)$] in which a flux density depends on but one force; accordingly, only two coefficients are then needed to describe J_w and J_s. If the solute were a salt dissociable into two ions, we would have three flux equations (for J_w, J_+, and J_-) and three forces ($\Delta\mu_w$, $\Delta\mu_+$, and $\Delta\mu_-$);

Table 3-2. Number of coefficients needed to describe relationships between forces (represented by differences in chemical potential) and fluxes in irreversible thermodynamics for systems with one, two, or three components.

System	Forces	Fluxes	Coefficients
Water	$\Delta\mu_w$	J_w	One
Water + solute	$\Delta\mu_w$, $\Delta\mu_s$	J_w, J_s	Four (three different)
Water + dissociable solute	$\Delta\mu_w$, $\Delta\mu_+$, $\Delta\mu_-$	J_w, J_+, J_-	Nine (six different)

using the approach of irreversible thermodynamics, this leads to nine phenomenological coefficients. Invoking the Onsager reciprocity relations, three pairs of coefficients are equal, so we would then have six different phenomenological coefficients to describe the movement of water, a cation, and its accompanying anion (Table 3-2).

To obtain more convenient formulations for the fluxes of water and the single solute, we usually express $\Delta\mu_w$ and $\Delta\mu_s$ in terms of the differences in the osmotic pressure and the hydrostatic pressure, $\Delta\Pi$ and ΔP. In particular, it is usually easier to measure $\Delta\Pi$ and ΔP than it is to measure $\Delta\mu_w$ and $\Delta\mu_s$. The expression for $\Delta\mu_w$ is straightforward; the only possible ambiguity is deciding on the algebraic sign. In keeping with the usual conventions for this specific case, $\Delta\mu_w$ is the chemical potential of water on the outside minus that on the inside, $\mu_w^{\text{o}} - \mu_w^{\text{i}}$. From Equation 2.12 ($\mu_w = \mu_w^* - \overline{V}_w\Pi + \overline{V}_w P + m_w gh$), $\Delta\mu_w$ is given by

$$\Delta\mu_w = -\overline{V}_w\Delta\Pi + \overline{V}_w\Delta P \tag{3.32}$$

where $\Delta\Pi$ equals $\Pi^{\text{o}} - \Pi^{\text{i}}$ and ΔP equals $P^{\text{o}} - P^{\text{i}}$ ($\Delta h = 0$ across a membrane).

To express $\Delta\mu_s$ in terms of $\Delta\Pi$ and ΔP, we first consider the activity term, $RT\ln a_s$. The differential $RT\,d(\ln a_s)$ equals $RT\,da_s/a_s$, which is $RT\,d(\gamma_s c_s)/(\gamma_s c_s)$. When γ_s is constant, this latter quantity becomes $RT\,dc_s/c_s$. By Equation 2.10 ($\Pi_s = RT\sum_j c_j$), $RT\,dc_s$ is equal to $d\Pi$ for a dilute solution of a single solute. Hence, $RT\,d(\ln a_s)$ can be replaced by $d\Pi/c_s$ as a useful approximation. In expressing the difference in chemical potential across a membrane we are interested in macroscopic changes, not in the infinitesimal changes given by differentials. To go from differentials to differences, $RT\,d(\ln a_s)$ becomes $RT(\Delta\ln a_s)$ and so $d\Pi/c_s$ can be replaced by $\Delta\Pi/\bar{c}_s$, where $\bar{c}_s$ is essentially the mean concentration of solute s, in this case across the membrane. Alternatively, we can simply define $\bar{c}_s$ as that concentration for which $RT(\Delta\ln a_s)$ exactly equals $\Delta\Pi/\bar{c}_s$. In any case, we can replace $RT\,(\Delta\ln a_s)$ in $\Delta\mu_s$ by $\Delta\Pi/\bar{c}_s$. By Equation 2.4, μ_s equals $\mu_s^* + RT\ln a_s + \overline{V}_s P$ for a neutral species, and the difference in its chemical potential across a membrane, $\Delta\mu_s$, becomes

$$\Delta\mu_s = \frac{1}{\bar{c}_s}\Delta\Pi + \overline{V}_s\Delta P \tag{3.33}$$

The two expressions representing the driving forces, $\Delta\mu_w$ (Eq. 3.32) and $\Delta\mu_s$ (Eq. 3.33), are thus expressed as functions of the same two pressure differences, $\Delta\Pi$ and ΔP, which are experimentally more convenient to measure than are $\Delta\mu_w$ and $\Delta\mu_s$.

3.5C. Flux Densities, L_P, and σ

Now that we have appropriately expressed the chemical potential differences of water and the solute, we direct our attention to the fluxes. Expressed in our usual units, the flux densities J_w and J_s are the moles of water and of solute, respectively, moving across 1 m^2 of membrane surface in a second. A quantity of considerable interest is the volume flux density J_V, which is the rate of movement of the total volume of both water and solute across unit area of the membrane; J_V has the units of volume per unit area per unit time (e.g., $m^3\ m^{-2}\ s^{-1}$, or $m\ s^{-1}$).

The molar flux density of species j (J_j) in mol $m^{-2}\ s^{-1}$ multiplied by the volume occupied by each mole of species j ($\overline{V}_j$) in $m^3\ mol^{-1}$ gives the volume flux density for that component (J_{V_j}) in m s^{-1}. Hence, the total volume flux density is

$$J_V = \sum_j J_{V_j} = \sum_j \overline{V}_j J_j \tag{3.34a}$$

For solute and water both moving across a membrane, J_V is the volume flow of water plus that of solute per unit area, which in the case of a single solute can be represented as

$$J_V = \overline{V}_w J_w + \overline{V}_s J_s \tag{3.34b}$$

It is generally simpler and more convenient to measure the total volume flux density (such as that given in Eq. 3.34) than one of the component volume flux densities ($J_{V_j} = \overline{V}_j J_j$). For instance, we can often determine the volumes of cells or organelles under different conditions and relate any changes in volume to J_V. [The volume flux density of water J_{V_w} used in Chapter 2 (e.g., Eq. 2.26) is $\overline{V}_w J_w$.]

Although straightforward, the algebraic substitutions necessary to incorporate the various forces and fluxes (Eqs 3.30 through 3.33) into the volume flow (Eq. 3.34b) lead to a rather cumbersome expression for J_V as a linear function of ΔP and $\Delta\Pi$. Hence, the conventional approach, introduced by Ora Kedem and Aharon Katchalsky in 1958 and adopted by essentially all subsequent treatments of irreversible thermodynamics, is to change to a more convenient set of conjugate forces and fluxes. A discussion of the criteria for deciding whether a particular force–flux pair is conjugate would take us into a consideration of the dissipation function and the rate of entropy production, topics outside the scope of this text. Here we note that the total volume flux density, J_V, is conjugate to ΔP, and the diffusional flux density, J_D, is conjugate to $\Delta\Pi$, where J_D can be represented as

$$\begin{aligned} J_D &= \frac{J_s}{\bar{c}_s} - J_w \overline{V}_w \\ &\cong \frac{J_s}{\bar{c}_s} - \frac{J_w}{c_w} \\ &= v_s - v_w \end{aligned} \tag{3.35}$$

To obtain the second line of Equation 3.35, we note that $\overline{V}_w c_w$ is essentially 1 for a dilute aqueous solution, so $\overline{V}_w$ is approximately $1/c_w$ (for a solution of a

single solute, $\overline{V}_w c_w + \overline{V}_s c_s = 1$, where $\overline{V}_s c_s \ll 1$ or $\overline{V}_w c_w \cong 1$ defines a dilute solution). To obtain the bottom line in Equation 3.35, we note that the average velocity of species j, v_j, is J_j/c_j (see Eq. 3.7 and Fig. 3-4).

The diffusional flux density (Eq. 3.35) is the difference between the mean velocities of solute and water. In mass flow (such as that described by Poiseuille's law; Eq. 9.11), v_s equals v_w, so J_D is then zero; such flow is independent of $\Delta\Pi$ and depends only on ΔP. On the other hand, let us consider $\Delta\Pi$ across a membrane that greatly restricts the passage of some solute relative to the movement of water, i.e., a barrier that acts as a differential filter; v_s is then considerably less than v_w, so J_D has a nonzero value in response to its conjugate "force," $\Delta\Pi$. Thus J_D helps express the tendency of the solute relative to water to diffuse in response to a difference in osmotic pressure.

Next we will use J_V and J_D to express the linear interdependence of conjugate forces and fluxes in irreversible thermodynamics (Eq. 3.29; $J_j = \sum_k L_{jk} X_k$):

$$J_V = L_P \Delta P + L_{PD} \Delta\Pi \tag{3.36}$$

$$J_D = L_{DP} \Delta P + L_D \Delta\Pi \tag{3.37}$$

where the subscripts in both equations are those generally used in the literature. (Although these subscripts—P referring to pressure and D to diffusion—are not consistent with the L_{jk} convention, four coefficients are still needed to describe the dependence of two fluxes on their conjugate forces.) By the Onsager reciprocity relation, which is applicable in the current case of conjugate forces and fluxes, L_{PD} equals L_{DP}, and again only three different coefficients are needed to describe the movement of water and a single solute across a membrane.

L_P is the *hydraulic conductivity coefficient* and can have units of m s^{-1} Pa^{-1}. It describes the mechanical filtration capacity of a membrane or other barrier; namely, when $\Delta\Pi$ is zero, L_P relates the total volume flux density, J_V, to the hydrostatic pressure difference, ΔP. When ΔP is zero, Equation 3.37 indicates that a difference in osmotic pressure leads to a diffusional flow characterized by the coefficient L_D. Membranes also generally exhibit a property called *ultrafiltration*, whereby they offer different resistances to the passage of the solute and water.[14] For instance, in the absence of an osmotic pressure difference ($\Delta\Pi = 0$), Equation 3.37 indicates a diffusional flux density equal to $L_{DP}\Delta P$. Based on Equation 3.35, v_s is then

14. An extreme and illustrative case of ultrafiltration is *reverse osmosis*, so-named because water moves toward regions of lower osmotic pressure (osmosis is net water movement to regions of higher osmotic pressure). In particular, a hydrostatic pressure is applied to a solution containing undesirable solutes (e.g., much lake or spring water destined for domestic consumption, brackish water, seawater, wastewater) adjacent to a semipermeable membrane (cf. Fig. 2-8) containing various synthetic fibers that allow passage of water molecules but not solute molecules. Because the reflection coefficient (Eq. 3.38) for the solutes is 1.00, reverse osmosis requires that ΔP be greater than $\Delta\Pi$ for the solutes involved (Eq. 3.40) so that pure water can be forced through the membrane and collected.

different from v_w, which results if a membrane restricts the passage of solute more than the passage of water. Thus the phenomenological coefficient L_{DP} helps describe the relative ease with which solute crosses a membrane compared with water. Such a property of relative selectivity by a barrier is embodied in the *reflection coefficient*, σ, defined by Albert Staverman in 1951 as

$$\sigma = -\frac{L_{DP}}{L_P} = -\frac{L_{PD}}{L_P} \tag{3.38}$$

When a membrane is nonselective, both water and the solute move across it at the same velocity; that is, v_s is then equal to v_w and $\Delta\Pi$ is zero. (Admittedly, the idea of a solution containing a single solute is not realistic from a biological point of view, but it is convenient for illustrating the minimum value for σ.) If v_s equals v_w, then J_D must be zero by Equation 3.35. For this to be true for any ΔP and a zero $\Delta\Pi$, Equation 3.37 indicates that L_{DP} must be zero; hence the reflection coefficient is zero in this case ($\sigma = -L_{DP}/L_P$; Eq. 3.38). Thus σ is zero when the membrane does not select between solute and solvent. At the opposite extreme, the solute does not cross the membrane ($v_s = 0$); hence J_D is $-v_w$ ($J_D = v_s - v_w$; Eq. 3.35). When J_s is zero, J_V equals $\overline{V}_w J_w$ (Eq. 3.34b), which is simply v_w (see Eq. 3.35). Therefore, J_V equals $-J_D$ when the solute does not cross the membrane, and $L_P\Delta P + L_{PD}\Delta\Pi$ equals $-L_{DP}\Delta P - L_D\Delta\Pi$ by Equations 3.36 and 3.37. Because this is true for any ΔP, L_P must equal $-L_{DP}$, so $-L_{DP}/L_P$ then equals 1. The reflection coefficient is therefore 1 ($\sigma = -L_{DP}/L_P$; Eq. 3.38) when the solute does not cross the membrane, indicating that all solute molecules in that case are reflected by the barrier.

Using the definition of σ (Eq. 3.38), we can rewrite Equation 3.36 to obtain the following form for the total volume flux density:

$$\begin{aligned} J_V &= L_P\Delta P - L_P\sigma\Delta\Pi \\ &= L_P(\Delta P - \sigma\Delta\Pi) \end{aligned} \tag{3.39}$$

We note that L_P is essentially the same as and hence usually replaces L_w, the water conductivity coefficient that we introduced in Chapter 2 (e.g., in Eqs. 2.26 and 2.35; see Fig. 3-19). In the absence of a hydrostatic pressure

Quantity from irreversible thermodynamics	Classical thermodynamic counterpart	Importance of difference
L_P (hydraulic conductivity coefficient)	L_w (water permeability coefficient)	Minor; both indicate water permeability
σ, σ_j (reflection coefficients)	None	Major; σ quantifies osmotic pressure effects, and σ_j quantifies relative solute permeability of species j
ω_s	P_s/RT	Both indicate solute permeability, but the solute flux in irreversible thermodynamics can be influenced by other concomitant fluxes (Eq. 3.48)

Figure 3-19. Comparison of terms from classical versus irreversible thermodynamics.

difference across a membrane, the volume flux density J_V equals $-L_P\sigma\Delta\Pi$ by Equation 3.39. Thus the magnitude of the dimensionless parameter σ determines the volume flux density expected in response to a difference in osmotic pressure across a membrane (Fig. 3-19). It is this use that is most pertinent in biology.

Many different solutes can cross a membrane under usual conditions. Each such species j can be characterized by its own reflection coefficient, σ_j, for that particular membrane. The volume flux density given by Equation 3.39 can then be generalized to

$$J_V = L_P\left(\Delta P - \sum_j \sigma_j \Delta\Pi_j\right) \tag{3.40}$$

where $\Delta\Pi_j$ is the osmotic pressure difference across the membrane for species j (e.g., $\Delta\Pi_j = RT\Delta c_j$ by Eq. 2.10). Although interactions with water are still taken into account, the generalization represented by Equation 3.40 introduces the assumption that the solutes do not interact with each other as they cross a membrane. Moreover, J_V in Equation 3.40 refers only to the movement of neutral species—otherwise we would also need a current equation to describe the flow of charge. Nevertheless, Equation 3.40 is a useful approximation of the actual situation describing the multi-component solutions encountered by cells, and we will use it as the starting point for our general consideration of solute movement across membranes. Before discussing such movement, however, let us again consider the range of values for reflection coefficients.

3.5D. Values for Reflection Coefficients

A reflection coefficient characterizes some particular solute interacting with a specific membrane. In addition, σ_j depends on the solvent on either side of the membrane—water is the only solvent that we will consider. Two extreme conditions can describe the passage of solutes: impermeability, which leads to the maximum value of 1 for the reflection coefficient, and nonselectivity, where σ_j is 0. A reflection coefficient of zero may describe the movement of a solute across a very coarse barrier (one with large pores) that cannot distinguish or select between solute and solvent molecules; also, it may refer to the passage through a membrane of a molecule very similar in size and structure to water. Impermeability describes the limiting case in which water can cross some membrane but the solute cannot.

Let us consider the realistic situation of ΔP equaling zero across a membrane bathed on either side by aqueous solutions (e.g., Chapter 2, Section 2.3A). By Equation 3.39 [$J_V = L_P(\Delta P - \sigma\Delta\Pi)$], the volume flux density (J_V) is then equal to $-L_P\sigma\Delta\Pi$. For a solute having a reflection coefficient equal to zero for that particular membrane, the volume flux density is zero. By Equation 3.34b ($J_V = \overline{V}_w J_w + \overline{V}_s J_s$), a zero J_V implies that $\overline{V}_w J_w$ equals $-\overline{V}_s J_s$. In words, the volume flux density of water must be equal and opposite to the volume flux density of the solute to result in no net volume flux density. Conversely, the absence of a net volume flux density

across a membrane permeable to both water and the single solute when ΔP is zero but $\Delta\Pi$ is nonzero indicates that the reflection coefficient for that solute is zero. Again, this condition occurs when the volume of water flowing toward the side with the higher Π is balanced by an equal volume of solute diffusing across the membrane in the opposite direction toward the side where the solute is less concentrated (lower Π). Such a situation of zero volume flux density anticipates the concept of a "stationary state" to be introduced in the next section.

In their interactions with biological membranes, solutes exhibit properties ranging from freely penetrating ($\sigma_j = 0$), indicating nonselectivity by the membrane, to being unable to penetrate ($\sigma_j = 1$), indicating membrane impermeability. Substances retained in or excluded from plant cells have reflection coefficients close to 1 for the cellular membranes. For instance, the σ_j's for sucrose and amino acids are usually near 1.0 for plant cells. Methanol and ethanol enter cells very readily and can have reflection coefficients of 0.2 to 0.4 for the plasma membranes of *Chara* and *Nitella* internodal cells. On the other hand, σ_j can essentially equal zero for solutes crossing porous barriers, such as those presented by cell walls, or for molecules penetrating very readily across membranes, such as D_2O (^2H_2O). Just as for a permeability coefficient, the reflection coefficient of a species is the same for traversal in either direction across a membrane.

For many small neutral solutes not interacting with carriers in a membrane, the reflection coefficients are correlated with the partition coefficients. For example, when K_j for nonelectrolytes is less than about 10^{-4}, σ_j is usually close to 1. Thus, compounds that do not readily enter the lipid phase of a membrane (low K_j) also do not cross the membrane easily (σ_j near 1). When the partition coefficient is 1 or greater, the solutes can enter the membrane in appreciable amounts, and σ_j is usually close to zero. Considering the intermediate case, the reflection coefficient can be near 0.5 for a small nonelectrolyte having a K_j of about 0.1 for the membrane lipids, although individual molecules differ depending on their molecular weight, branching, and atomic composition. Neglecting frictional effects with other solutes, we see that the intermolecular interactions affecting partition coefficients are similar to those governing the values of reflection coefficients, and therefore the permeability coefficient of a solute ($P_j = D_jK_j/\Delta x$; Eq. 1.9) is correlated with its reflection coefficient for the same membrane. In fact, as Figure 3-20 illustrates, there is even a correlation between the reflection coefficients of a series of nonelectrolytes determined with animal membranes and the permeability coefficients of the same substances measured using plant membranes (exceptions occur for certain solutes, e.g., those that hydrogen bond to membrane components). Therefore, as the permeability coefficient goes from small to large values, the reflection coefficient decreases from 1 (describing relative impermeability) to 0 (for the opposite extreme of nonselectivity; Fig. 3-20). In the next section, we will consider some of the consequences of reflection coefficients differing from 1 for solutes crossing cellular and organelle membranes.

Osmotic pressures play a key role in plant physiology, so σ_j's are important parameters for quantitatively describing the solute and water relations of plants (Fig. 3-19). In particular, reflection coefficients allow the role of

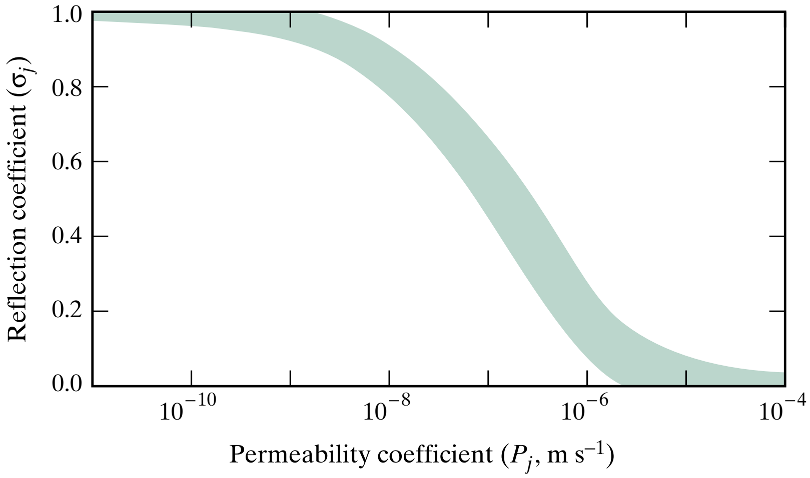


Figure 3-20. Correlation between the reflection coefficients for a series of nonelectrolytes (determined using rabbit gallbladder epithelium) and the permeability coefficients for the same compounds (measured by Runar Collander using *Nitella mucronata*). Most of the measurements are in the area indicated. [The curve is adapted from Diamond and Wright (1969); used by permission.]

osmotic pressure to be precisely stated. For Poiseuille's law [$J_V = -(r^2/8\eta)\,\partial P/\partial x$; Eq. 9.11], which can adequately describe movement in the xylem and the phloem—as well as in veins, arteries, and household plumbing—the flow is driven by the gradient in hydrostatic pressure. An alternative view of the same situation is that σ equals zero for the solutes. In that case, osmotic pressures have no direct effect on the movement described by Poiseuille's law, indicating nonselectivity. At the opposite extreme of impermeability, σ is 1, so Equation 3.39 becomes $J_V = L_P\,(\Delta P - \Delta\Pi) = L_P\Delta\Psi$ (recall that the water potential, Ψ, can be $P - \Pi$; Eq. 2.13a). This is similar to Equation 2.26, $J_{V_w} = L_w\Delta\Psi$, which we obtained when only water fluxes were considered. This correspondence is expected, because when the solutes are nonpenetrating, J_V equals J_{V_w} and L_w equals L_P. The real usefulness of reflection coefficients comes when σ_j is not at one of its two extremes of 0 and 1. For such cases—intermediate between nonselectivity and impermeability—the volume flux density does not depend on the full osmotic pressure difference across the barrier, but ignoring the osmotic contribution of species j would also be invalid (Fig. 3-21).

3.6. Solute Movement Across Membranes

We can profitably reexamine certain aspects of the movement of solutes into and out of cells and organelles by using the more general equations from irreversible thermodynamics. One particularly important situation amenable to relatively uncomplicated analysis occurs when the total volume flux density J_V is zero, an example of a *stationary state*. This stationary state, in which the volume of the cell or organelle does not change over the time period of interest, can be brought about by having the net volume flux

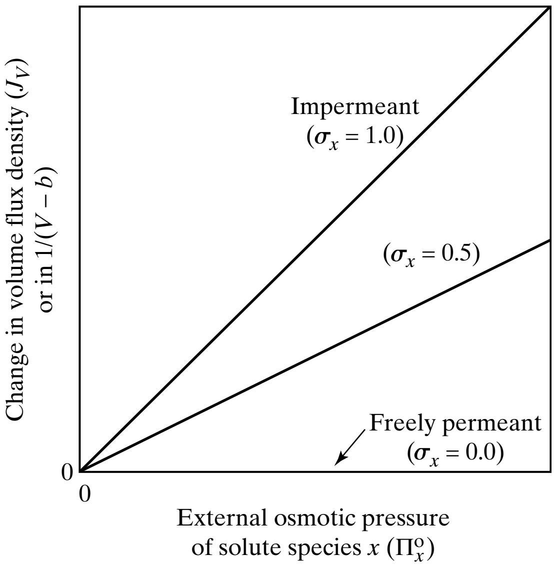


Figure 3-21. Changes in the volume flux density (J_V) across a root or in the reciprocal of the water volume in an organelle [$1/(V-b)$] as the osmotic pressure of a specific solute in the external bathing solution Π_x^o is increased. An increase in Π_x^o for a nonzero reflection coefficient of solute species x ($\sigma_x > 0$) decreases the influx or increases the efflux from the root [$J_V = L_P(\Delta P - \sum_j \sigma_j \Delta\pi_j)$; Eq. 3.40] or decreases the volume for the organelle [$\sigma_x \Pi_x^o + \alpha = \frac{\beta}{V-b}$; Eq. 3.45].

density of water in one direction across the membrane equal to the net volume flux density of solutes in the opposite direction. A stationary state is therefore not the same as a steady state or equilibrium for the cell or organelle; it represents a situation occurring only at a particular time or under some special experimental arrangement. In fact, μ_j can depend on both position and time for a stationary state, but only on position for a steady state and on neither position nor time at equilibrium. Thus, at equilibrium, passive fluxes in opposing directions are equal; in a steady state, μ_j, c_j, and E_M do not vary with time, although passive fluxes can occur; and for a stationary state, such parameters can change with time and position but some other property does not change with time, such as the volume of a cell or organelle. For instance, when water is moving into a cell, $\Delta\mu_w$ is nonzero (we are not at equilibrium) and, in general, μ_w^i will be increasing with time (we are not even in a steady state). However, we still might have a stationary state for which the volume is not changing. Our restriction here to cases of zero net volume flux density considerably simplifies the algebra and emphasizes the role played by reflection coefficients. Moreover, a stationary state of no volume change often characterizes the experimental situations under which the Boyle–Van't Hoff relation (Eqs. 2.15 and 2.18) or the expression describing incipient plasmolysis (Eq. 2.20) is invoked. Thus, the derivation of both of these relationships is reconsidered in terms of irreversible thermodynamics, and the specific role of reflection coefficients is discussed.

What is the relationship between the internal and the external P's and Π's for a stationary state? Our point of departure is Equation 3.40,

$J_V = L_P(\Delta P - \sum_j \sigma_j \Delta \Pi_j)$, where the stationary state condition of zero net volume flux density ($J_V = 0$) leads to the following equalities: $0 = \Delta P - \sum_j \sigma_j \Delta \Pi_j = P^{\text{o}} - P^i - \sum_j \sigma_j \left(\Pi_j^{\text{o}} - \Pi_j^{\text{i}}\right)$. Here, the osmotic pressures indicate the effect of solutes on water activity, whereas in general both osmotic contributions from solutes (Π_s, represented by Π_j for species j) and matric pressures resulting from the presence of interfaces (τ) might occur (Eq. 2.11). Volume measurements for osmotic studies involving incipient plasmolysis or the Boyle–Van't Hoff relation are usually made when the external solution is at atmospheric pressure ($P^{\text{o}} = 0$) and when there are no external interfaces ($\tau^{\text{o}} = 0$). The stationary state condition of J_V equaling zero then leads to

$$\sum_j \sigma_j \Pi_j^{\text{o}} = \sigma^{\text{o}} \Pi^{\text{o}} = \sum_j \sigma_j \Pi_j^{\text{i}} + \tau^{\text{i}} - P^{\text{i}} \tag{3.41}$$

where the possibilities of interactions at surfaces and hydrostatic pressures within the cell or organelle are explicitly recognized by the inclusion of τ^{i} and P^{i}. Equation 3.41 applies when the solutes are capable of crossing the barrier, as when molecules interact with real—not idealized—biological membranes. Equation 3.41 also characterizes the external solutes by a mean reflection coefficient, σ^{o}, and the total external osmotic pressure, $\Pi^{\text{o}} = \sum_j \Pi_j^{\text{o}}$, the latter being relatively easy to measure ($\sigma^{\text{o}} = \sum_j \sigma_j \Pi_j^{\text{o}} / \sum_j \Pi_j^{\text{o}}$, so σ^{o} represents a weighted mean, with the weights based on the osmotic pressure of each solute species j, Π_j^{o}).

3.6A. Influence of Reflection Coefficients on Incipient Plasmolysis

In Chapter 2 we used classical thermodynamics to derive the condition for incipient plasmolysis ($\Pi^{\text{o}}_{\text{plasmolysis}} = \Pi^{\text{i}}_{\text{plasmolysis}}$, Eq. 2.20; also see Fig. 2-13), which occurs when the hydrostatic pressure inside a plant cell P^{i} just becomes zero. The derivation assumed equilibrium of water (i.e., equal water potentials) across a membrane impermeable to solutes. However, the assumptions of water equilibrium and solute impermeability are often not valid. We can remedy this situation using an approach based on irreversible thermodynamics.

Measurements of incipient plasmolysis can be made for zero volume flux density ($J_V = 0$) and for a simple external solution ($\tau^{\text{o}} = 0$) at atmospheric pressure ($P^{\text{o}} = 0$). In this case, Equation 3.41 is the appropriate expression from irreversible thermodynamics, instead of the less realistic condition of water equilibrium that we used previously. For this stationary state condition, the following expression describes incipient plasmolysis ($P^{\text{i}} = 0$) when the solutes can cross the cell membrane:

$$\sigma^{\text{o}} \Pi^{\text{o}}_{\text{plasmolysis}} = \sum_j \sigma_j \Pi^{\text{i}}_{j\ \text{plasmolysis}} + \tau^{\text{i}} \tag{3.42}$$

Because σ^{o} depends on the external solutes present, Equation 3.42 (a corrected version of Eq. 2.20) indicates that the external osmotic pressure Π^{o} at incipient plasmolysis can vary with the particular solute in the solution surrounding the plant cells. Suppose that solute i cannot penetrate the membrane, so σ_i equals 1, a situation often true for sucrose. Suppose that

another solute, j, can enter the cells ($\sigma_j < 1$), as is the case for many small nonelectrolytes. If we are at the point of incipient plasmolysis for each of these two solutes in turn as the sole species in the external solution, $\sigma_i \Pi^{\text{o}}_{i\ \text{plasmolysis}}$ must equal $\sigma_j \Pi^{\text{o}}_{j\ \text{plasmolysis}}$ by Equation 3.42. However, solute i is unable to penetrate the membrane ($\sigma_i = 1$). Hence we obtain the following relationships:

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma_j &= \frac{\sigma_i \Pi^{\text{o}}_{i\ \text{plasmolysis}}}{\Pi^{\text{o}}_{j\ \text{plasmolysis}}} = \frac{\Pi^{\text{o}}_{i\ \text{plasmolysis}}}{\Pi^{\text{o}}_{j\ \text{plasmolysis}}} \\ &= \frac{\text{effective osmotic pressure of species } j}{\text{actual osmotic pressure of species } j}\end{aligned} \tag{3.43}$$

where the effective and the actual osmotic pressures are discussed next.

Equation 3.43 suggests a straightforward way of describing σ_j. Because by supposition solute species j can cross the cell membrane, σ_j is less than 1. Therefore, by Equation 3.43, $\Pi^{\text{o}}_{j\ \text{plasmolysis}}$ is greater than $\Pi^{\text{o}}_{i\ \text{plasmolysis}}$, where the latter refers to the osmotic pressure of the nonpenetrating solute at the point of incipient plasmolysis. In other words, a higher external osmotic pressure is needed to cause plasmolysis if that solute is able to enter the plant cell. The "actual osmotic pressure" indicated in Equation 3.43 can be defined by Equation 2.7 [$\Pi = -(RT/\overline{V}_w) \ln a_w$] or by Equation 2.10 ($\Pi_j = RTc_j$) and also can be measured. When the membrane is impermeable to the solute, σ_j is equal to 1, and the apparent or effective osmotic pressure of species j equals its actual osmotic pressure. Effective osmotic pressure recognizes that many solutes can cross biological membranes ($\sigma_j < 1$) and hence that the $\Delta\Pi_j$ effective in leading to a net volume flux density is less than its actual value [see Eq. 3.40; $J_V = L_P(\Delta P - \sum_j \sigma_j \Delta\Pi_j)$]. In summary, the reflection coefficient of species j indicates how effectively the osmotic pressure of that solute can be exerted across a particular membrane or other barrier.

We can use the condition of incipient plasmolysis to evaluate specific reflection coefficients. Replacing one external solution by another with none of the previous solution adhering to the cells is experimentally difficult. Also, although easy in principle and requiring only a light microscope, determination of when the plasma membrane just begins to pull away from the cell wall is a subjective judgment. Nevertheless, Equation 3.43 suggests a simple way of considering individual reflection coefficients for various solutes entering plant cells.

To indicate relationships among reflection coefficients, osmotic pressures, and plasmolysis, let us consider Figure 3-22. The cell in the upper left of the figure is at the point of incipient plasmolysis ($P^{\text{i}} = 0$) for a nonpenetrating solute ($\sigma^{\text{o}} = 1.0$) in the external solution ($\Pi^{\text{o}} = A$, where A is a constant); that is, the plasma membrane is just beginning to pull away from the cell wall. By Equation 3.42 and ignoring τ^{i}, $\sigma^{\text{i}}\Pi^{\text{i}}$ then also equals A. If we place the cell in a second solution containing a penetrating solute ($\sigma^{\text{o}} < 1$), Equation 3.43 indicates that the external solution must have a higher osmotic pressure for the cell to remain at the point of incipient plasmolysis. For instance, for a second solute with a σ_j of 0.5, the external osmotic pressure at the point of incipient plasmolysis is $2A$ (Fig. 3-22b). Thus, when the external solute can enter a cell, Π^{o} is less effective in balancing the internal osmotic pressure or in leading to a flow of water (Eq. 3.43).

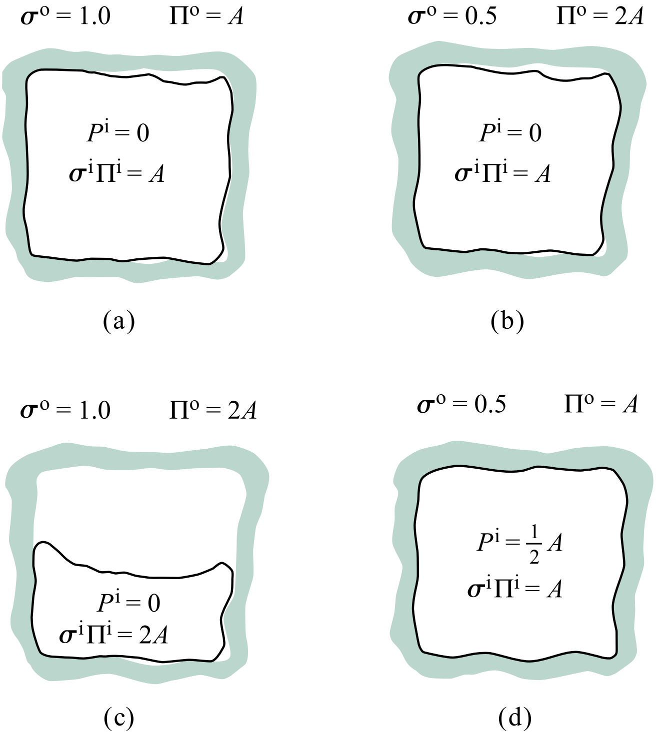


Figure 3-22. Diagrams of sections through a cell showing a cell wall (shaded region) and a plasma membrane (line) for various external osmotic pressures: (a) point of incipient plasmolysis in the presence of a nonpenetrating solute (for clarity of showing the location of the plasma membrane, a slight amount of plasmolysis is indicated), (b) point of incipient plasmolysis with a penetrating solute, (c) extensive plasmolysis, and (d) cell under turgor. Consider Equation 3.41 with τ^i equal to 0.

On the other hand, if Π^o were $2A$ for a nonpenetrating external solute, extensive plasmolysis of the cell would occur, as is illustrated in Figure 3-22c. Because $\sigma^o\Pi^o$ is $2A$ in this case, Equation 3.41 ($\sigma^o\Pi^o = \sigma^i\Pi^i - P^i$, when $\tau^i = 0$) indicates that $\sigma^i\Pi^i$ must also be $2A$, so essentially half of the internal water has left the cell. Finally, if the reflection coefficient were 0.5 and the external osmotic pressure were A, $\sigma^o\Pi^o$ would be $\frac{1}{2}A$, and we would not be at the point of incipient plasmolysis. In fact, the cell would be under turgor with an internal hydrostatic pressure equal to $\frac{1}{2}A$ (Fig. 3-22d), at least until the concentration of the penetrating solute begins to build up inside. We must take into account the reflection coefficients of both external and internal solutes to describe conditions at the point of incipient plasmolysis and, by extension, to predict the direction and the magnitude of volume fluxes across membranes.

3.6B. Extension of the Boyle–Van't Hoff Relation

In Chapter 2 (Section 2.3B) we derived the Boyle–Van't Hoff relation assuming that the water potential was the same on both sides of the cellular or organelle membrane under consideration. Not only were

equilibrium conditions imposed on water, but also we implicitly assumed that the membrane was impermeable to the solutes. However, zero net volume flux density ($J_V = 0$) is a better description of the experimental situations under which the Boyle–Van't Hoff relation is applied. No volume change during the measurement is another example of a stationary state, so the Boyle–Van't Hoff relation will be reexamined from the point of view of irreversible thermodynamics. In this way we can remove two of the previous restrictions—equilibrium for water and impermeability of solutes.

When molecules cross the membranes bounding cells or organelles, the reflection coefficients of both internal and external solutes should be included in the Boyle–Van't Hoff relation. Because σ^{o} is less than 1 when the external solutes can penetrate, the effect of the external osmotic pressure on J_V is then reduced. Likewise, the reflection coefficients for solutes within the cell or organelle can lessen the contribution of the internal osmotic pressure of each solute. Replacing Π_j^{i} by $RTn_j^i/(\overline{V}_w n_{\text{w}}^{\text{i}})$ (Eq. 2.10) in Equation 3.41 and dividing by σ^{o} leads to the following Boyle–Van't Hoff relation for the stationary state condition ($J_V = 0$ in Eq. 3.40):

$$\Pi^{\text{o}} = RT\frac{\sum_j \sigma_j n_j^{\text{i}}}{\sigma^{\text{o}}\overline{V}_w n_w^{\text{i}}} + \frac{\tau^{\text{i}} - P^{\text{i}}}{\sigma^{\text{o}}} \tag{3.44}$$

We note that the reflection coefficients of a membrane for both internal and external solutes enter into this extension of the expression relating volume and external osmotic pressure.

As indicated in Chapter 2 (Section 2.3B), $V - b$ in the conventional Boyle–Van't Hoff relation [$\Pi^{\text{o}}(V - b) = RT\sum_j \varphi_j n_j$ (Eq. 2.15)] can be identified with $\overline{V}_w n_w^{\text{i}}$, the volume of internal water. Comparing Equation 2.15 with Equation 3.44, the osmotic coefficient of species j, φ_j, can be equated to $\sigma_j/\sigma^{\text{o}}$ as an explicit recognition of the permeation properties of solutes, both internal and external. Indeed, failure to recognize the effect of reflection coefficients on φ_j has led to misunderstandings of osmotic responses.

As discussed in Chapter 2, the volume of pea chloroplasts (as well as other organelles and many cells) responds linearly to $1/\Pi^{\text{o}}$ (Fig. 2-11), indicating that $\tau^{\text{i}} - P^{\text{i}}$ in such organelles may be negligible compared with the external osmotic pressures used. To analyze experimental observations, $\sigma^{\text{o}}\Pi^{\text{o}}$ can be replaced by $\sigma_x\Pi_x^{\text{o}} + \alpha$, where Π_x^{o} is the external osmotic pressure of solute x whose reflection coefficient (σ_x) is being considered, and α is the sum of $\sigma_j\Pi_j^{\text{o}}$ for all of the other external solutes. We can replace $RT\sum_j\sigma_j n_j^{\text{i}}$ by β and $\overline{V}_w n_w^{\text{i}}$ by $V - b$. Making these substitutions into Equation 3.44, we obtain the following relatively simple form for testing osmotic responses in the case of penetrating solutes:

$$\sigma_x\Pi_x^{\text{o}} + \alpha = \frac{\beta}{V - b} \tag{3.45}$$

If we vary Π_x^{o} and measure V, we can then use Equation 3.45 to obtain the reflection coefficients for various nonelectrolytes in the external solution.

Table 3-3. Reflection Coefficients of Chloroplasts from *Pisum sativum* for Alcohols Varying in C content.[a]

Substance	σ_x	Substance	σ_x
Methanol	0.00	Adonitol	1.00
Ethylene glycol	0.40	Sorbitol	1.00
Glycerol	0.63	Mannitol	1.00
Erythritol	0.90	Sucrose	1.00

[a] The reflection coefficients here apply to the pair of membranes surrounding the organelles, which is the barrier to solute entry or exit encountered in a plant cell. (Source: Wang and Nobel, 1971.)

3.6C. Reflection Coefficients of Chloroplasts

When the refinements introduced by reflection coefficients are taken into account, we can use osmotic responses of cells and organelles to describe quantitatively the permeability properties of their membranes (see Table 3-3, Fig. 3-20, and Fig. 3-21). As a specific application of Equation 3.45, we note that the progressive addition of hydroxymethyl groups (replacing a hydrogen) in a series of polyhydroxy alcohols causes the reflection coefficients to increase steadily from 0.00 to 1.00 for pea chloroplasts (Table 3-3). In this regard, the lipid:water solubility ratio decreases from methanol to ethylene glycol to glycerol to erythritol to adonitol; that is, the partition coefficient K_x decreases. Because the permeability coefficient P_x is equal to $D_x K_x / \Delta x$ (Eq. 1.9), we expect a similar decrease in P_x as hydroxymethyl groups are added. Figure 3-20 shows that, as the permeability coefficient decreases, the reflection coefficient generally increases. Consequently, the increase in σ_x of alcohols as $-CH_2OH$ groups are added can be interpreted as a lowering of K_x. (As we go from the one-C methanol to the five-C adonitol, D_x also decreases, perhaps by a factor of 3, whereas K_x decreases about 1000-fold, so changes in K_x are the predominant influence on P_x and σ_x in this case.) The reflection coefficients of six-C polyhydroxy alcohols, such as sorbitol and mannitol, are 1.00 for pea chloroplasts. This indication of relative impermeability suggests that these compounds could serve as suitable osmotica in which to suspend chloroplasts, as is indeed the case. From these examples, we see that the esoteric concepts of irreversible thermodynamics can be applied in a relatively simple manner to gain insights into the physiological attributes of membranes surrounding cells or organelles.

3.6D. Solute Flux Density

Our final objective in this chapter is to obtain an expression for the solute flux density, J_s, that takes into consideration the coupling of forces and fluxes introduced by irreversible thermodynamics. Using Equations 3.34b and 3.35, we note that

$$J_V + J_D = J_w \bar{V}_w + J_s \bar{V}_s + \frac{J_s}{\bar{c}_s} - J_w \bar{V}_w \tag{3.46}$$

$$= J_s \left(\bar{V}_s + \frac{1}{\bar{c}_s} \right) \cong \frac{J_s}{\bar{c}_s}$$

where the last step applies to a dilute solution ($\overline{V}_s\bar{c}_s \ll 1$ or $\overline{V}_s \ll 1/\bar{c}_s$). After multiplying both sides of Equation 3.46 by $\bar{c}_s$ and using Equation 3.37 for J_D, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} J_s &\cong \bar{c}_s J_V + \bar{c}_s\left(L_{DP}\Delta P + L_D\Delta\Pi\right) \\ &= \bar{c}_s J_V + \bar{c}_s L_{DP}\frac{(J_V - L_{PD}\Delta\Pi)}{L_P} + \bar{c}_s L_D\Delta\Pi \\ &= \bar{c}_s J_V\left(1 + \frac{L_{DP}}{L_P}\right) + \bar{c}_s\Delta\Pi\left(L_D - \frac{L_{DP}L_{PD}}{L_P}\right) \end{aligned} \tag{3.47}$$

where Equation 3.36 is used to eliminate ΔP. Upon combining the factors multiplying $\Delta\Pi$ into a new coefficient for solute permeability, ω_s, and using the previous definition of σ (Eq. 3.38), we can rewrite the last line of Equation 3.47 as

$$J_s = \bar{c}_s(1 - \sigma_s)J_V + \omega_s\Delta\Pi \tag{3.48}$$

where σ_s, ω_s, and $\Delta\Pi$ all refer to a specific solute. We note that L_P, σ_s, and ω_s are the three experimentally convenient parameters introduced by irreversible thermodynamics, replacing the two parameters of classical thermodynamics for characterizing the movement of water and a single solute across a membrane (Table 3-2).

Equation 3.48 indicates that not only does J_s depend on $\Delta\Pi$, as expected from classical thermodynamics, but also that the solute flux density can be affected by the overall volume flux density, J_V. In particular, the classical expression for J_s for a neutral solute is $P_j\Delta c_j$ (Eq. 1.8), which equals $(P_j/RT)\Delta\Pi_j$ using the Van't Hoff relation (Eq. 2.10; $\Pi_s = RT\sum_j c_j$). Thus ω_s is analogous to P_j/RT of the classical thermodynamic description (Fig. 3-19). The classical treatment indicates that J_s is zero if $\Delta\Pi$ is zero. On the other hand, when $\Delta\Pi$ is zero, Equation 3.48 indicates that J_s is then equal to $\bar{c}_s(1 - \sigma_s)J_V$; solute molecules are thus dragged across the membrane by the moving solvent, leading to a solute flux density proportional to the local solute concentration and to the deviation of the reflection coefficient from 1. Hence, P_j may not always be an adequate parameter by which to describe the flux of species j, because the interdependence of forces and fluxes introduced by irreversible thermodynamics indicates that water and solute flow can interact with respect to solute movement across membranes.

3.7. Problems

3.1. At the beginning of this chapter we calculated that an average concentration of 1 mmol m^{-3} (1 μM) of excess monovalent anions can lead to a −100 mV potential change across the surface of a spherical cell 30 μm in radius.

A. If the same total amount of charge were concentrated in a layer 3 nm thick at the surface of the sphere, what would be its average concentration there?

B. If 10^7 sulfate ions are added inside the sphere, what is the new electrical potential difference across the surface?

C. Approximately how much electrical work in joules is required to transport the 10^7 sulfate ions across the surface of the cell?

3.2. For purposes of calculation, let us assume that an external solution is 1 mol m^{-3} (1 mM) KCl, and that the solution inside a cell is 160 mol m^{-3} KCl at 20°C.

A. If K^+ is in equilibrium across the membrane and activity coefficients are 1, what is the electrical potential difference across the membrane?

B. If K^+ is in equilibrium and the mean activity coefficients are calculated from Equation 3.4, what would the membrane potential be?

C. If 1 mol m^{-3} K_3ATP, which fully dissociates to 3 K^+ and ATP^{3-}, is added inside the cell, and if K^+–ATP^{3-} can be considered to act as an ion pair, what are $\gamma_{\text{K-ATP}}$ and a_{ATP}?

3.3. Consider a cell with a membrane potential E_M of −118 mV at 25°C. Suppose that the external solution contains 1 mM KCl, 0.1 mM NaCl, and 0.1 mM $MgCl_2$, and the internal concentration of K^+ is 100 mM, that of Ca^{2+} is 1 mM, and that of Mg^{2+} is 10 mM (1 mM = 1 mol m^{-3}). Assume that activity coefficients are 1.

A. Are K^+ and Mg^{2+} in equilibrium across the membrane?

B. If Na^+ and Ca^{2+} are in equilibrium, what are their concentrations in the two phases?

C. If Cl^- is 177 mV away from equilibrium, such that the passive driving force on it is outward, what is its Nernst potential, and what is the internal concentration of Cl^-?

D. What is $J_{\text{Cl}}^{\text{in}}/J_{\text{Cl}}^{\text{out}}$ for passive fluxes?

E. What are $\Delta\mu_{\text{Cl}}$ and $\Delta\mu_{\text{Mg}}$ across the membrane?

3.4. A 10 mM KCl solution at 25°C is placed outside a cell formerly bathed in 1 mM KCl (1 mM = 1 mol m^{-3}).

A. Assuming that some of the original solution adheres to the cell and that the ratio of mobilities ($u_{\text{Cl}}/u_{\text{K}}$) is 1.04, what diffusion potential would be present?

B. Assume that equilibrium is reached in the bathing solution after a sufficient lapse of time. The membrane may contain many carboxyl groups (–COOH) whose H^+'s will dissociate. The ensuing negative charge will attract K^+, and its concentration near the membrane may reach 200 mM. What type of and how large a potential would be associated with this situation?

C. Suppose that 10 mM NaCl is also in the external solution (with the 10 mM KCl), and that internally there is 100 mM K^+, 10 mM Na^+, and 100 mM Cl^-. Assume that $P_{\text{Na}}/P_{\text{K}}$ is 0.20 and $P_{\text{Cl}}/P_{\text{K}}$ is 0.01. What diffusion potential would be expected across the membrane?

D. What would E_M be if $P_{\text{Cl}}/P_{\text{K}}$ were 0.00? If $P_{\text{Na}}/P_{\text{K}}$ and $P_{\text{Cl}}/P_{\text{K}}$ were both 0.00? Assume that other conditions are as in C.

3.5. Consider an illuminated spherical spongy mesophyll cell 40 μm in diameter containing 50 spherical chloroplasts that are 4 μm in diameter.

A. Some monovalent anion produced by photosynthesis has a steady-state net flux density out of the chloroplasts of 10 nmol m^{-2} s^{-1}. If this photosynthetic product is not changed or consumed in any of the cellular

compartments, what is the net passive flux density out of the cell in the steady state?

B. If the passive flux density of the previous substance into the cell at 25°C is 1 nmol m^{-2} s^{-1}, what is the difference in its chemical potential across the cellular membrane?

C. Suppose that, when the cell is placed in the dark, the influx and the efflux both become 0.1 nmol m^{-2} s^{-1}. If the plasma membrane potential is −118 mV (inside negative) and the same concentration occurs on the two sides of the membrane, what can be said about the energetics of the two fluxes?

D. If one ATP is required per ion transported, what is the rate of ATP consumption in C? Express your answer in μmol s^{-1} per m^3 of cellular contents.

3.6. The energy of activation for crossing biological membranes can represent the energy required to break hydrogen bonds between certain nonelectrolytes and the solvent water; for example, to enter a cell the solute must first dissolve in the lipid phase of the membrane, and thus the hydrogen bonds with water must be broken.

A. What will be the Q_{10} for the influx of a solute that forms one H bond per molecule with water if we increase the temperature from 10°C to 20°C?

B. How many hydrogen bonds would have to be ruptured per molecule to account for a Q_{10} of 3.2 under the conditions of A?

3.7. Suppose that transporters in the plasma membrane can shuttle K^+ and Na^+ into a cell. We will let the Michaelis constant K_j be 0.010 mM for the K^+ transporter and 1.0 mM for the Na^+ transporter (1 mM = 1 mol m^{-3}), and the maximum influx of either ion is 10 nmol m^{-2} s^{-1}.

A. What is the ratio of influxes, J_K^{in}/J_{Na}^{in}, when the external concentration of each ion is 0.010 mM?

B. What is J_K^{in}/J_{Na}^{in} when the external concentration of each ion is 100 mM?

C. If the entry of K^+ is by facilitated diffusion only, what is the rate of K^+ entry when c_K^o is 0.1 mM and ATP is being hydrolyzed at the rate of 10 mmol m^{-2} s^{-1}?

3.8. Consider a cell whose membrane has a hydraulic conductivity coefficient L_P of 10^{-12} m s^{-1} Pa^{-1}. Initially, no net volume flux density occurs when the cell is placed in a solution having the following composition: sucrose (Π_j^o = 0.2 MPa, σ_j = 1.00), ethanol (0.1 MPa, 0.30), and glycerol (0.1 MPa, 0.80). The external solution is at atmospheric pressure, and P^i is 0.5 MPa. Inside the cell the osmotic pressure caused by glycerol is 0.2 MPa, sucrose and ethanol are initially absent, and other substances having an osmotic pressure of 1.0 MPa are present.

A. What is the mean reflection coefficient for the external solution?

B. What is the mean reflection coefficient for the internal solutes other than glycerol?

C. Suppose that some treatment makes the membrane nonselective for all solutes present. What is the net volume flux density then?

D. If another treatment makes the membrane impermeable to all solutes present, what is the net volume flux density?

3.9. Consider a cell at the point of incipient plasmolysis in an external solution containing 0.3 *m* sucrose, a nonpenetrating solute. The concentration of glycine that just causes plasmolysis is 0.4 *m*. Assume that no water enters or leaves the cell during the plasmolytic experiments.

A. What is the reflection coefficient of glycine for the cellular membrane?

B. Suppose that chloroplasts isolated from such a cell have the same osmotic responses as in Problem 2.5. What is the volume of such chloroplasts in vivo? Assume that activity coefficients are 1 and that the temperature is 20°C.

C. Suppose that chloroplasts are isolated in 0.3 *m* sucrose, which has a reflection coefficient of 1.00 for the chloroplasts. If 0.1 mol of glycine is then added per kilogram of water in the isolation medium, and if the chloroplast volume is 23 μm^3, what is the reflection coefficient of glycine for the chloroplast membranes?

D. What is the external concentration of glycerol ($\sigma_j = 0.60$) in which the chloroplasts have the same initial volume as in 0.3 *m* sucrose? What is the chloroplast volume after a long time in the glycerol solution?

3.8. References and Further Reading

Atkins, P.W., and de Paula, J. 2006. *Atkins' Physical Chemistry*, 8th ed. W. H. Freeman, New York.

Chung, S.H., and Kuyucak, S. 2002. Recent advances in ion channel research. *Biochim. Biophys. Acta Biomembr.* **1565:** 67–286.

Davson, H., and Danielli, J.F. 1952. *The Permeability of Natural Membranes*, 2nd ed. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK.

DeFelice, L.J. 1997. *Electrical Properties of Cells: Patch Clamp for Biologists.* Plenum, New York.

Demirel, Y., and Sandler, S.I. 2002. Thermodynamics and bioenergetics. *Biophys. Chem.* **97:** 87–111.

Diamond, J.M., and Wright, E.M. 1969. Biological membranes: The physical basis of ion and nonelectrolyte selectivity. *Annu. Rev. Physiol.* **31:** 581–646.

Epstein, E., and Bloom, A.J. 2005. *Mineral Nutrition of Plants; Principles and Perspectives*, 2nd ed. Sinauer, Sunderland, MA.

Feher, J.J., and Ford, G.D. 1995. A simple student laboratory on osmotic flow, osmotic pressure, and the reflection coefficient. *Adv. Physiol. Educ.* **13:** S10–S20.

Fromm, J., and Lautner, S. 2007. Electrical signals and their physiological significance in plants. *Plant Cell Environ.* **30:** 249–257.

Goldman, D.E. 1943. Potential, impedance, and rectification in membranes. *J. Gen. Physiol.* **27:** 37–60.

Hodgkin, A.L., and Katz, B. 1949. The effect of sodium ions on the electrical activity of the giant axon of the squid. *J. Physiol.* **108:** 37–77.

Hohmann, S., Nielsen, S., and Agre, P. (Eds.) 2001. Aquaporins. *Current Topics Membr.* **51:** 1–380.

Hope, A.B. 1971. *Ion Transport and Membranes.* Butterworths, London.

Hope, A.B., and Walker, N.A. 1975. *The Physiology of Giant Algal Cells.* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK.

Jou, D., Casas-Vazquez, J., and Lebron, B. 2007. *Understanding Non-equilibrium Thermodynamics.* Springer-Verlag, Berlin.

Kaldenhoff, R., Ribas-Carbo, M., Flexas, S.J., Lovisolo, C., Heckwolf, M., and Uehlein, N. 2008. Aquaporins and water balance. *Plant Cell Environ.* **31:** 658–666.

Kedem, O., and Katchalsky, A. 1958. Thermodynamic analysis of the permeability of biological membranes to nonelectrolytes. *Biochim. Biophys. Acta* **27:** 229–246.

Keizer, J. 1987. *Statistical Thermodynamics of Nonequilibrium Processes.* Springer-Verlag, New York.

Kuiken, G.D.C. 1994. *Thermodynamics of Irreversible Processes: Applications to Diffusion and Rheology.* Wiley, New York.

MacRobbie, E.A.C. 1962. Ionic relations of *Nitella translucens. J. Gen. Physiol.* **45:** 861–878.

McGill, P., and Schumaker, M.F. 1996. Boundary conditions for single-ion diffusion. *Biophys. J.* **71:** 1723–1742.

Murphy, R., and Smith, J.A.C. 1994. Derivation of a weighted-average reflection coefficient for mesophyll cell membranes of *Kalanchoë diagremontiana. Planta* **193:** 145–147.

Neher, E., and Sakmann, B. 1976. Single-channel currents recorded from membrane of denervated frog muscle fibers. *Nature* **260:** 799–802.

Nelson, D.L., Lehninger, A.L., and Cox, M.M. 2008. *Lehninger Principles of Biochemistry*, 5th ed. W.H. Freeman, New York.

Nobel, P.S. 1969. The Boyle–Van't Hoff relation. *J. Theor. Biol.* **23:** 375–379.

Onsager, L. 1931. Reciprocal relations in irreversible processes. II. *Phys. Rev.* **38:** 2265–2279.

Osterhout, W.J.V. 1935. How do electrolytes enter the cell? *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **21:** 125–132.

Prigogine, I. 1967. *Introduction to Thermodynamics of Irreversible Processes*, 3rd ed. Wiley (Interscience), New York.

Pytkowicz, R.M. 1979. *Activity Coefficients in Electrolyte Solutions.* CRC Press, Cleveland, OH.

Raison, J.K., and Chapman, E.A. 1976. Membrane phase changes in chilling-sensitive *Vigna radiata* and their significance to growth. *Aust. J. Plant Physiol.* **3:** 291–299.

Richter, C., and Dainty, J. 1989. Ion behavior in plant cell walls. I. Characterization of the *Sphagnum russowii* cell wall ion exchanger. *Can. J. Bot.* **67:** 451–459.

Silbey, R.J., and Alberty, R.A. 2004. *Physical Chemistry*, 4th ed. Wiley, New York.

Smallwood, M., Knox, J.P., and Bowles, D.J. (Eds.) 1996. *Membranes: Specialized Functions in Plants.* BIOS Scientific, Oxford, UK.

Spanswick, R.M. 1981. Electrogenic ion pumps. *Annu. Rev. Plant Physiol.* **32:** 267–289.

Spanswick, R.M., and Williams, E.J. 1964. Electrical potentials and Na, K, and Cl concentrations in the vacuole and cytoplasm of *Nitella translucens. J. Exp. Bot.* **15:** 193–200.

Staverman, A.J. 1951. The theory of measurement of osmotic pressure. *Recueil Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas.* **70:** 344–352.

Stein, W.D. 1986. *Transport and Diffusion Across Cell Membranes.* Academic Press, Orlando, FL.

Stein, W.D. 1990. *Channels, Carriers, and Pumps: An Introduction to Membrane Transport.* Academic Press, San Diego, CA.

Tazawa, M., Shimmen, T., and Mimura, T. 1987. Membrane control in the Characeae. *Annu. Rev. Plant Physiol.* **38:** 95–117.

Teorell, T. 1949. Membrane electrophoresis in relation to bio-electrical polarization effects. *Arch. Sci. Physiol.* **3:** 205–219.

Ussing, H.H. 1949. The distinction by means of tracers between active transport and diffusion. *Acta Physiol. Scand.* **19:** 43–56.

van Holde, K.E., Johnson, W.C., and Ho, P.S. 2006. *Principles of Physical Biochemistry*, 2nd ed. Pearson Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, NJ.

Very, A.A., and Sentenac, H. 2002. Cation channels in the Arabidopsis plasma membrane. *Trends Plant Sci.* **7:** 168–175.

Volkov, A.G., Deamer, D.W., Tanelian, D.L., and Martin, V.S. 1997. *Liquid Interfaces in Chemistry and Biology.* Wiley, New York.

Vorobiev, V.N. 1967. Potassium ion activity in the cytoplasm and the vacuole of cells of *Chara* and *Griffithsia. Nature* **216:** 1325–1327.

Wang, C.-t., and Nobel, P.S. 1971. Permeability of pea chloroplasts to alcohols and aldoses as measured by reflection coefficients. *Biochim. Biophys. Acta* **241:** 200–212.

Ward, J.M. 1997. Patch-clamping and other molecular approaches for the study of plasma membrane transporters demystified. *Plant Physiol.* **114:** 1151–1159.

Yeo, A., and Flowers, T.J. (Eds.) 2007. *Plant Solute Transport.* Blackwell, Oxford, UK.

This page intentionally left blank

Major Equations

Energy of light (4.2b)

$$E_\lambda = Nh\nu = Nhc/\lambda_{vac} \quad \text{mole basis}$$

Wien's displacement law (4.4a)

$$\lambda_{max}T = 3.67 \times 10^6 \text{ nm K} \quad \text{photon basis}$$

Deexcitation (first order) (4.11)

$$S_{(\pi,\pi^*)}(t) = S_{(\pi,\pi^*)}(0)e^{-(k_1+k_2+k_3+k_4+k_5)t}$$

Lifetimes/rate constants (4.14)

$$\frac{1}{\tau} = k = \sum_j k_j = \sum_j \frac{1}{\tau_j}$$

Quantum yield (4.16)

$$\Phi_i = \frac{k_i}{\sum_j k_j} = \frac{\tau}{\tau_i}$$

Beer's law (4.19a)

$$A_\lambda = \log \frac{J_0}{J_b} = \varepsilon_\lambda c b$$

4

Light

4.1. Wavelength and Energy ... 179
4.1A. Light Waves ... 179
4.1B. Energy of Light ... 182
4.1C. Illumination, Photon Flux Density, and Irradiance ... 185
4.1D. Sunlight ... 188
4.1E. Planck's and Wien's Formulae ... 190
4.2. Absorption of Light by Molecules ... 191
4.2A. Role of Electrons in Absorption Event ... 192
4.2B. Electron Spin and State Multiplicity ... 194
4.2C. Molecular Orbitals ... 195
4.2D. Photoisomerization ... 198
4.2E. Light Absorption by Chlorophyll ... 199
4.3. Deexcitation ... 201
4.3A. Fluorescence, Radiationless Transition, and Phosphorescence ... 202
4.3B. Competing Pathways for Deexcitation ... 203
4.3C. Lifetimes ... 206
4.3D. Quantum Yields ... 208
4.4. Absorption Spectra and Action Spectra ... 208
4.4A. Vibrational Sublevels ... 210
4.4B. Franck–Condon Principle ... 211
4.4C. Absorption Bands, Absorption Coefficients, and Beer's Law ... 214
4.4D. Application of Beer's Law ... 216
4.4E. Conjugation ... 217
4.4F. Action Spectra ... 219
4.4G. Absorption and Action Spectra of Phytochrome ... 220
4.5. Problems ... 223
4.6. References and Further Reading ... 225

Through a series of nuclear reactions taking place within the sun, mass is converted into energy in accordance with Albert Einstein's famous relation proposed in 1905, $E = mc^2$, undoubtedly the best-known equation of all time. By such conversion of mass to energy, the sun maintains an extremely high surface temperature and thus radiates a great amount of energy into space. Some of this radiant energy is incident on the earth, only a small fraction of which is absorbed by plants (discussed in Chapter 6, Section 6.5B). This absorption initiates a flow of energy through the biosphere (all living things and the portion of the earth that they inhabit).

The first step in the utilization of sunlight for this energy flow is the conversion of its radiant energy into various forms of chemical energy by the primary processes of photosynthesis. This chemical energy may then be stored in plants, mainly in the form of carbohydrates. The stored energy may later be acquired by animals—directly by herbivores, indirectly by carnivores, or both directly and indirectly by omnivores like us. No matter how the energy is acquired, its ultimate source is the solar radiation captured by photosynthesis. Without this continuous energy input from the sun, living organisms would drift toward equilibrium and hence death.

Sunlight also regulates certain activities of plants and animals by acting as a causative agent or "trigger." The energy to carry out these activities is supplied by metabolic reactions, not directly by the light itself. Examples of light acting as a trigger include vision, phototaxis, phototropism, heliotropism, and the phytochrome regulation of various plant processes (Gates, 2003; McDonald, 2003; Whitelam and Halliday, 2007; Kohen et al., 2008).

As an introduction to the topic of light, let us we consider certain historical developments in the understanding of its nature. In 1666 Sir Isaac Newton showed that a prism can disperse white light into a multi-colored spectrum, suggesting that such radiation is a mixture of many components. Soon thereafter, Christiaan Huygens proposed that the propagation of light through space is by wave motion. From 1801 to 1804, Thomas Young attributed interference properties to the wave character of light. However, a wave theory of light was not generally accepted until about 1850, when Jean Foucault demonstrated that light travels more slowly in a dense medium such as water than in a rarefied medium such as air, one of the predictions of the wave theory. James Clerk Maxwell in 1865 combined various discoveries into a general theory about electromagnetic fields, indicating that light was an electromagnetic wave whose velocity equaled the product of wavelength and frequency. In 1887 Heinrich Hertz discovered that light striking the surface of a metal can cause the release of electrons from the solid—the "photoelectric" effect. However, he also found that wavelengths above a certain value did not eject any electrons at all, no matter what the total energy in the light beam. This important result was contrary to the then-accepted wave theory of light. In an important departure from wave theory, Max Planck in 1901 proposed that radiation was particle-like; that is, light was describable as consisting of discrete packets, or quanta, each of a specific energy. In 1905 Einstein explained the photoelectric effect of Hertz as a special example of the particle nature of light; he indicated that the absorption of a photon of sufficiently short wavelength by an electron in the metal can supply enough energy to cause the ejection or release of that electron, whereas if the wavelengths were longer, then the individual photons were not energetic enough to eject any electrons. The intriguing wave–particle duality of light has subsequently been described in a consistent manner through the development of quantum mechanics. Both wave and particle attributes of light are necessary for a complete description of radiation, and we will consider both aspects. (Although this text does not require a background in quantum mechanics, some knowledge of this field is essential for a comprehensive understanding of light.)

In this chapter we are concerned primarily with the physical nature of light and the mechanism of light absorption by molecules. We will discuss

how molecular states excited by light absorption can promote endergonic (energy-requiring) reactions or be dissipated by other deexcitation processes. In Chapter 5 we will consider the photochemistry of photosynthesis and in Chapter 6 the bioenergetics of energy conversion, especially that taking place in organelles. In Chapter 7 we will demonstrate how the net energy input by radiation is dissipated by a leaf.

4.1. Wavelength and Energy

Light is often defined as electromagnetic radiation that is perceivable by the human eye. Although such a definition may be technically correct, the word *light* is frequently used to refer to a wider range of electromagnetic radiation, which refers to propagating waves that have both electric and magnetic components. In this section we discuss the range of electromagnetic radiation important in biology, including the subdivisions into various wavelength intervals. The wavelength of light will be shown to be inversely proportional to its energy. After noting various conventions used to describe and measure radiation, we will briefly consider some of the characteristics of solar radiation reaching the earth.

4.1A. Light Waves

The regular and repetitive changes in the local intensity of the minute electric and magnetic fields indicate the passage of a light wave (Fig. 4-1). Light can travel in a solid (e.g., certain plastics), a liquid (water), a gas (air),

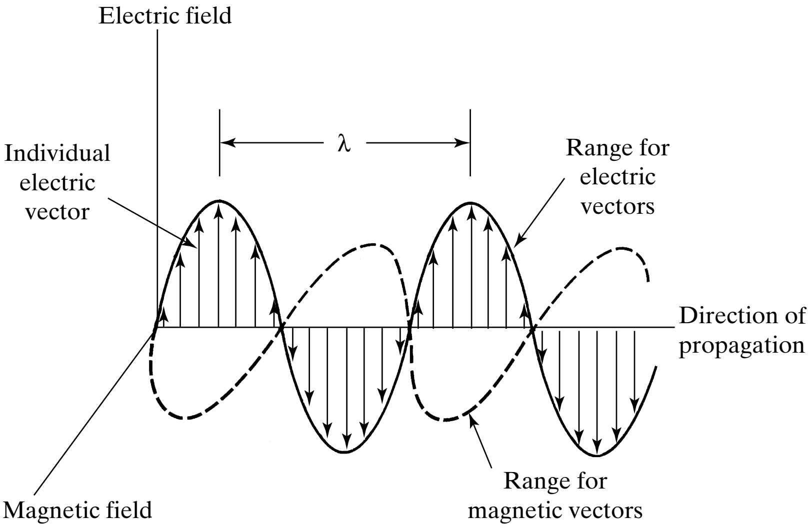


Figure 4-1. Light can be represented by an electromagnetic wave corresponding to oscillations of the local electric and magnetic fields. The oscillating electric vectors at a particular instant in time are indicated by arrows in the diagram. A moment later, the entire pattern of electric and magnetic fields will shift in the direction of propagation of the wave. The wavelength λ is shown.

Table 4-1. Definitions and Characteristics of the Various Wavelength Regions of Light[a]

Color	Approximate wavelength range (nm)	Representative wavelength (nm)	Frequency (cycles s^{-1}, or hertz)	Energy (kJ mol^{-1})
Ultraviolet	Below 400	254	11.80×10^{14}	471
Violet	400–425	410	7.31×10^{14}	292
Blue	425–490	460	6.52×10^{14}	260
Green	490–560	520	5.77×10^{14}	230
Yellow	560–585	570	5.26×10^{14}	210
Orange	585–640	620	4.84×10^{14}	193
Red	640–740	680	4.41×10^{14}	176
Infrared	Above 740	1400	2.41×10^{14}	85

[a] The ranges of wavelengths leading to the sensation of a particular color are somewhat arbitrary (they are defined psychologically) and vary slightly with individuals. Both frequencies and energies in the table refer to the particular wavelength indicated in column 3 for each wavelength interval. Wavelength magnitudes are those in a vacuum.

and even in a vacuum (the space between the sun and the earth's atmosphere). One way to characterize light is by its *wavelength*—the distance between successive points of the same phase, such as between two successive peaks of a wave (Fig. 4-1). A wavelength is thus the distance per cycle of the wave. The biologically preferred unit for the wavelengths of light is the nanometer (nm, 10^{-9} m; 1 nm = 0.001 μm = 10 Å).

The wavelength regions of major interest in biology are the ultraviolet, the visible, and the infrared (Table 4-1). Wavelengths immediately below about 400 nm are referred to as ultraviolet (UV)—meaning beyond violet in the sense of having shorter wavelengths (X rays and gamma rays occur at even shorter wavelengths, Fig. 4-2). The lower limit for UV is somewhat arbitrary, often near 3 nm, but very little solar radiation occurs at wavelengths less than 150 nm. The visible region extends from approximately 400 to 740 nm and is subdivided into various bands or colors, such as blue, green, and red (Table 4-1; Fig. 4-2). These divisions are based on the subjective color experienced by humans. The infrared (IR) region has wavelengths longer than those of the red end of the visible spectrum, extending up to approximately 300 μm (microwaves and radio waves occur at even longer wavelengths; Fig. 4-2).

Besides wavelength, we can also characterize a light wave by its frequency of oscillation, ν, and by the magnitude of its velocity of propagation, v (i.e., v is the speed of light). These three quantities are related as follows:

$$\lambda\nu = v \tag{4.1}$$

where λ is the wavelength (Cutnell and Johnson, 2007; Pedrotti et al., 2007).

In a vacuum the speed of light for all wavelengths is a constant, usually designated as c, which experimentally equals 299,800 km s^{-1}, or about 3.00×10^8 m s^{-1}. Light passing through a medium other than a vacuum has a speed less than c. For example, the speed of light that has a wavelength of 589 nm in a vacuum is decreased 0.03% by air, 25% by water, and 40% by dense flint glass (the speed of light traveling in a specific medium is c divided by the refractive index of that medium). The more optically

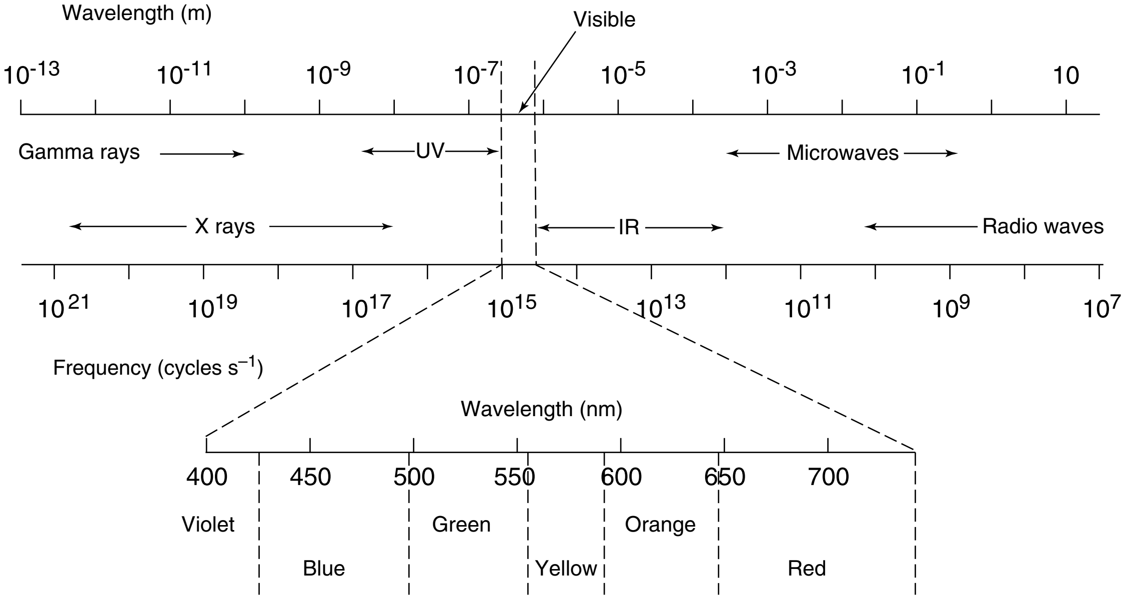


Figure 4-2. Electromagnetic spectrum on a logarithmic scale, indicating the wavelengths and the frequencies together with their qualitative description. The wavelengths and colors of visible light (see Table 4-1) are emphasized.

dense a material is, the more electrons that are encountered by the light wave per unit path length traversed, hence slowing the wave more. Shorter wavelengths have a higher frequency and hence interact more frequently with electrons, so they are decreased in speed more than longer wavelengths in traveling through a particular medium. The wavelength undergoes a decrease in magnitude equal to the decrease in the speed of propagation in these various media because the unchanging property of a wave propagating through different media is the frequency (see Eq. 4.1). We also note that ν is the frequency of the oscillations of the local electric and magnetic fields of light (Fig. 4-1).

For light, $\lambda_{vac}\nu$ equals v_{vac} by Equation 4.1, where v_{vac} is the constant c. Therefore, if we know the wavelength in a vacuum, we can calculate the frequency of the light. In fact, the wavelengths given for light generally refer to values in a vacuum, as is the case for columns 2 and 3 in Table 4-1 (λ's in air differ only slightly from the magnitudes listed). As a specific example, let us select a wavelength in the blue region of the spectrum, namely, 460 nm. By Equation 4.1, the frequency of this blue light is

$$\nu = \frac{(3.00 \times 10^8 \text{ m s}^{-1})}{(460 \times 10^{-9} \text{ m cycle}^{-1})} = 6.52 \times 10^{14} \text{ cycles s}^{-1}$$

Because ν does not change from medium to medium, it is often desirable to describe light by its frequency, as has been done in column 4 of Table 4-1. The wavelength of light is usually expressed in nm, not nm cycle^{-1}; ν is then considered to have units of s^{-1} (not cycles s^{-1}).

4.1B. Energy of Light

In addition to its wavelike properties, light also exhibits particle-like properties, such as for the photoelectric effect. Thus light can act as if it were divided—or quantized—into discrete units, which we call *photons*. The light energy (E_λ) carried by a photon is

$$E_\lambda = h\nu = \frac{hc}{\lambda_{vac}} \qquad \text{photon basis} \qquad (4.2a)$$

where h is a fundamental physical quantity called *Planck's constant*. By Equation 4.2a, a photon of light has an energy directly proportional to its frequency and inversely proportional to its wavelength in a vacuum (λ_{vac}). For most applications in this book, we will describe light by its wavelength λ. To emphasize that the energy of a photon depends on its wavelength, we have used the symbol E_λ in Equation 4.2a. A *quantum* (plural: quanta) refers to the energy carried by a photon; that is, $h\nu$ represents a quantum of electromagnetic energy. The terms "photon" and "quantum" are sometimes used interchangeably, a usage that is generally clear but not strictly correct.

Planck's introduction of the constant h in the early 1900s represented a great departure from the accepted wave theory of light. It substantially

modified the classical equations describing radiation and provided a rational basis for determining the energy of photons. Because frequency has the units of time^{-1}, Equation 4.2a indicates that the dimensions of Planck's constant are energy × time; specifically, h equals 6.626×10^{-34} J s (see Appendix I). We note that hc is 1240 eV nm (Appendix I; an eV is the energy change when a singly charged particle moves through 1 volt), so we can readily calculate the energy per photon if the wavelength is known. Using Equation 4.2a, the energy per photon of blue light at 460 nm is:

$$E_\lambda = \frac{(1240\,\text{eV nm})}{(460\,\text{nm})} = 2.70\,\text{eV}$$

Instead of energy per photon, we are usually more interested in the energy per Avogadro's number N (the number of molecules per mole, 6.022×10^{23}) of photons (N photons is sometimes called an einstein, but the correct SI unit is mole). On a mole basis, Equation 4.2a becomes

$$E_\lambda = Nh\nu = \frac{Nhc}{\lambda_{\text{vac}}} \qquad \text{mole basis} \qquad (4.2b)$$

Let us consider blue light of 460 nm, which has a frequency of 6.52×10^{14} cycles s^{-1} (Table 4-1). Using Equation 4.2b, we calculate that the energy per mole of 460-nm photons is

$$\begin{aligned} E_\lambda &= (6.022 \times 10^{23}\,\text{mol}^{-1})(6.626 \times 10^{-34}\,\text{J s})(6.52 \times 10^{14}\,\text{s}^{-1}) \\ &= 2.60 \times 10^{5}\,\text{J mol}^{-1} = 260\,\text{kJ mol}^{-1} \end{aligned}$$

Alternatively, we can calculate the energy of light by dividing Nhc (119,600 kJ mol^{-1} nm) by the wavelength in a vacuum. In any case, Equation 4.2 indicates that as the wavelength of light increases, its energy decreases, so per photon IR has less energy than visible light, which in turn has less energy than UV (Table 4-1).

Quanta of visible light represent relatively large amounts of energy. For instance, the hydrolysis of adenosine triphosphate (ATP), the main currency for chemical energy in biology, yields about 40 to 50 kJ mol^{-1} under physiological conditions (discussed in Chapter 6, Section 6.2B), whereas, as we have just calculated, blue light has five or six times as much energy per mole of photons. Quanta of UV light represent even higher energies than do those of visible light; for example, 254-nm light has 471 kJ of radiant energy per mole of photons (Table 4-1; 254 nm is the wavelength for a major mercury line in discharge lamps used for their bactericidal action). This is greater than the carbon–carbon bond energy (348 kJ mol^{-1}) or the oxygen–hydrogen bond energy (463 kJ mol^{-1}). The high quantum energy of UV radiation underlies its mutagenic and bactericidal action, because it is energetic enough to cause disruption of various covalent bonds.

The photoelectric effect, for which light leads to the ejection of electrons from the surface of a metal, clearly illustrates the distinction between light energy and the energy of its photons. In about 1915 Robert Millikan found that photons with at least 175 kJ mol^{-1}, representing wavelengths of 683 nm

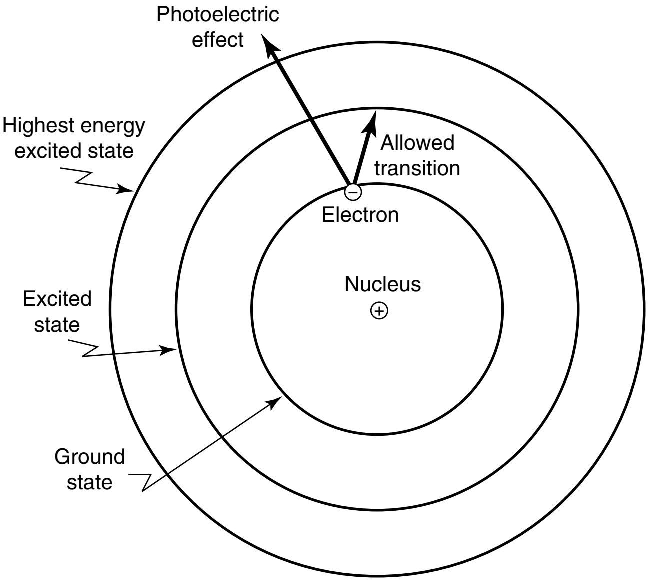


Figure 4-3. Classical portrayal of a sodium atom with circular electron orbits for the ground state and two excited states. An electron absorbing a photon with an energy greater than the energy difference between the ground state and the highest energy allowed orbital (175 kJ) will be ejected from the Na atom, a process know as the photoelectric effect. Also illustrated is an allowed transition of the electron to a higher energy orbital.

or less, can lead to a photoelectric effect when incident on sodium (Fig. 4-3).[1] For wavelengths beyond 683 nm, however, no matter how much light energy is absorbed, electrons are not ejected from the surface. Hence, a photon of a specific minimum energy can be necessary for a certain reaction. Measurement of the total light energy does not indicate how many photons are involved or their individual energies, unless the wavelength distribution and hence energies of individual photons are known.

Absorption of radiation by an atom or a molecule leads to a more energetic state of the absorbing species. Such energetic states can also be produced by collisions resulting from the random thermal motion of molecules. As the temperature increases, the greater is the average kinetic energy of the atoms and molecules, and the greater is the probability of achieving a relatively energetic state by collision. The number of molecules having a particular kinetic energy can often be approximated by the Boltzmann energy distribution (Chapter 3, Section 3.3B). By Equation 3.22b [$n(E) = n_{\text{total}}e^{-E/RT}$], the fraction of atoms or molecules having a kinetic energy

1. For his experimental work on the photoelectric effect, Millikan was awarded the Nobel Prize in physics in 1923. Others whose contributions to the understanding of radiation led to Nobel Prizes in physics include Wilhelm Wien in 1911 for heat radiation laws, Planck in 1918 for the quantum concept, Johannes Stark in 1919 for spectral properties, Einstein in 1921 in part for interpreting the photoelectric effect, Niels Bohr in 1922 for atomic radiation, James Franck and Gustav Hertz in 1925 for atom–electron interactions, and Wolfgang Pauli in 1945 for atomic properties.

of molecular Brownian motion of E or greater at thermal equilibrium equals the Boltzmann factor $e^{-E/RT}$, where we have expressed energy on a mole basis. Based on the kinetic theory of gases, the average kinetic energy of translational motion for molecules in a gas phase is (3/2)RT, which equals 3.72 kJ mol^{-1} at 25°C. What fraction of the molecules exceeds this average energy? The Boltzmann factor becomes $e^{-(3RT/2)/(RT)}$, or $e^{-1.5}$, which is 0.22. Thus 22% of the molecules have kinetic energies that are higher than the average. At what temperature would 44% have such kinetic energies? The Boltzmann factor then equals 0.44, so T would be

$$T = \frac{1}{-\ln(0.44)}\frac{E}{R} = \frac{1}{(0.82)}\frac{(3720\text{ J mol}^{-1})}{(8.3143\text{ J mol}^{-1}\text{ K}^{-1})} = 546\text{ K} \quad (273°\text{C})$$

Raising the temperature clearly increases the fraction of molecules with higher energies. However, temperature can be raised only to a limited extent under biological conditions before causing cellular damage.

As we just calculated, blue light of wavelength 460 nm possesses an energy E of 260 kJ mol^{-1}. The fraction of molecules possessing at least this energy thermally is $e^{-E/RT}$, which equals $e^{-(260\text{ kJ mol}^{-1})/(2.48\text{ kJ mol}^{-1})}$, or only 3×10^{-46} at 25°C! For comparison, the total number of atoms in the biomass of all living organisms is about 3×10^{41}. Thus, the chance that a particular molecule can gain the equivalent of 260 kJ mol^{-1} by means of thermal collisions is vanishingly small. Hence, the absorption of blue light can lead to energetic states that otherwise do not occur at temperatures encountered by plants and animals. Absorption of the relatively high quantum energy of light thus promotes the attainment of very improbable energetic states, a key point in the understanding of photobiology.

4.1C. Illumination, Photon Flux Density, and Irradiance

Three common classes of instruments are used for measuring the amount of incident light: (1) *photometers* or *light meters*, which measure the available illuminating power, a quantity related to the wavelength sensitivity of the human eye; (2) *quantum* or *photon meters*, which measure the number of photons; and (3) *radiometers*, which measure the total energy of the radiation (Fig. 4-4).

By definition, photometers do not respond to radiation in the infrared or the ultraviolet (Fig. 4-4a). They are "light" meters in the sense that they mimic human vision; that is, they respond to photons in the visible region, similar to the light meter on a camera. A candle is a unit of luminous intensity, originally based on a standard candle or lamp. The current international unit is called a *candela* (sometimes still referred to as a "candle"), which was previously defined as the total light intensity of 1.67 mm^2 of a *blackbody* radiator (one that radiates maximally) at the melting temperature of pure platinum (2042 K). In 1979 the candela was redefined as the luminous intensity of a monochromatic source with a frequency of 5.40×10^{14} cycles s^{-1} (λ of 555 nm) emitting 0.01840 J s^{-1} or 0.01840 W (1.464 mW $steradian^{-1}$, where W is the abbreviation for watt and steradian

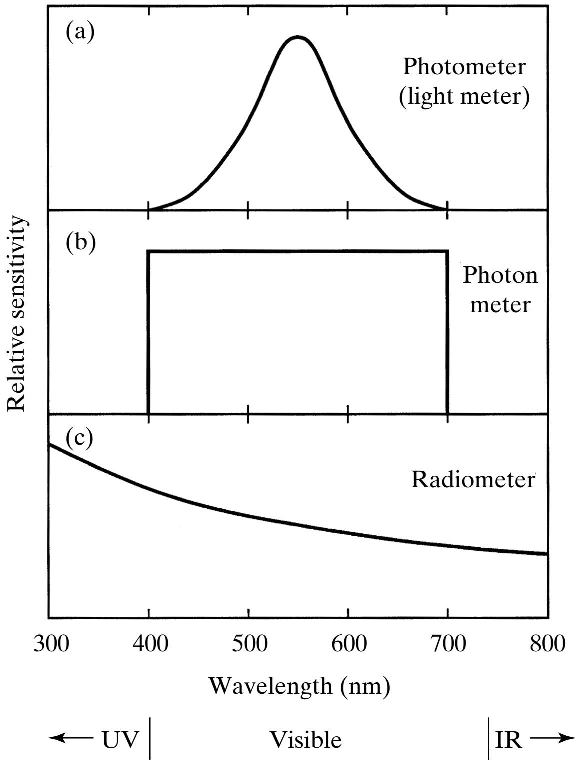


Figure 4-4. Wavelength sensitivities for instruments measuring illumination (a), photon flux density (b), and irradiance (c). Photometers or light meters, which are used for measuring illumination levels (a), are usually calibrated in lux (or footcandles) and are most sensitive in the middle of the visible spectrum where the human eye is also most sensitive. Photon or quantum meters for determining PPF [PPFD; (b)] are typically calibrated in μmol photons m^{-2} s^{-1} and often respond essentially uniformly from 400 to 700 nm, the region where photosynthetic pigments absorb maximally (Chapter 5, Sections 5.1 and 5.2), and ideally do not respond outside of this range (the UV and the IR). Radiometers (c) ideally respond to radiant energy of all wavelengths (energy is greater per photon at shorter wavelengths; Eq. 4.2) and typically are calibrated in W m^{-2} (J m^{-2} s^{-1}).

is the unit for solid angle).[2] The total light emitted in all directions by a source of 1 candela is 4π lumens; 1 lumen m^{-2} is the photometric illuminance unit, *lux*. Hence, 1 lux is the luminous flux density (illuminance) 1 m from a spherically uniform source of 1 candela, which is pretty dim (similar to the lighting in a movie theater during the picture); the minimum illumination recommended for reading is about 200 lux. Measurement in lux is adequate for certain purposes where human vision is involved, but it is not appropriate for studies with plants. [A "footcandle" is the illumination at a distance of 1 ft from a source of 1 candle (1 candela) and equals 1 lumen ft^{-2};

2. A solid angle is the three-dimensional counterpart of the more familiar planar angle. It can be interpreted as a region of space defined by a series of lines radiating from a point, the lines forming a smooth surface (such as a conical surface viewed from its apex). The region delimits a certain surface area A on a sphere of radius r; the solid angle in steradians equals A/r^2. For instance, a hemisphere viewed from its center subtends $2\pi r^2/r^2$ or 2π steradians.

to convert to lux, multiply by 10.76, the number of square feet per square meter (Appendix I). Thus, 20 footcandles is about 200 lux.]

For many purposes in plant studies, it is important to know the photon flux density. For instance, the rate of photosynthesis depends on the rate of absorption of photons, not on the rate of absorption of energy. Some instruments are sensitive only to photosynthetically useful photons (e.g., wavelengths basically from 400 to 700 nm), the so-called *photosynthetic photon flux* (PPF) or *photosynthetic photon flux density* (PPFD), both of which are expressed in μmol m^{-2} s^{-1} (Fig. 4-4b).

Radiometers (e.g., thermocouples, thermopiles, or thermistors that have been treated to absorb all wavelengths) respond to radiant energy and thus are sensitive to irradiation in the ultraviolet and the infrared as well as the visible (Fig. 4-4c). Readings are expressed in energy per unit area and time, such as J m^{-2} s^{-1}, which is W m^{-2} (conversion factors for radiometric units are given in Appendix II). If the irradiance or radiant energy flux density at a specified wavelength is measured in radiometric units, the value can be converted to a photon flux density by using the energy carried by individual photons (see Eq. 4.2).[3] In general, radiometric units, photometric units, and photon flux densities cannot be unambiguously interconverted (unless the frequency distribution is known), although empirical relations exist among them for certain light sources. For instance, the human eye and photometric devices are far less sensitive at the two extremes of the visible range of wavelengths compared with the center, whereas the photon flux density incident on leaves can be absorbed relatively equally throughout the visible region (see Fig. 7-4). Thus more PPF (or energy in W m^{-2}) is required at the extremes of the visible spectrum than is required at 555 nm, where the candela is defined, to give the same response in lux (see Fig. 4-4).

In choosing a lamp for a controlled-environment chamber for growing plants, both the total energy emitted and the wavelength distribution of the photons should be considered. Tungsten lamps are comparatively poor sources of visible radiation because about 90% of their radiant energy is emitted in the IR—the actual amount depends on the operating temperature

3. Various terms are used to describe electromagnetic radiation:
Emittance is the flux density at the emitting surface, e.g., radiant emittance (expressed in J m^{-2} s^{-1} = W m^{-2}).
Illuminance is the luminous flux density or "illumination" at some surface (lux).
Intensity refers to a property of a source; e.g., light intensity designates the rate of light emission for a photometric source (lumens per unit solid angle, or candelas), and radiant intensity is the power emitted per unit solid angle (W $steradian^{-1}$).
Irradiance (commonly termed *irradiation*) is the radiant energy flux density received on some surface (W m^{-2}).
Radiance is the rate of radiant energy emission (power emitted) per unit solid angle per unit area (W $steradian^{-1}$ m^{-2}).
Radiant flux is the radiant energy emitted or received per unit time (W).
Radiant flux density is the radiant flux per unit area (W m^{-2}).
Fluence is sometimes used for amount per area, so radiant energy per unit area is the energy fluence (J m^{-2}).
Fluence rate is the fluence per unit time, e.g., the photon fluence rate (mol m^{-2} s^{-1}) is the same as the photon flux density.

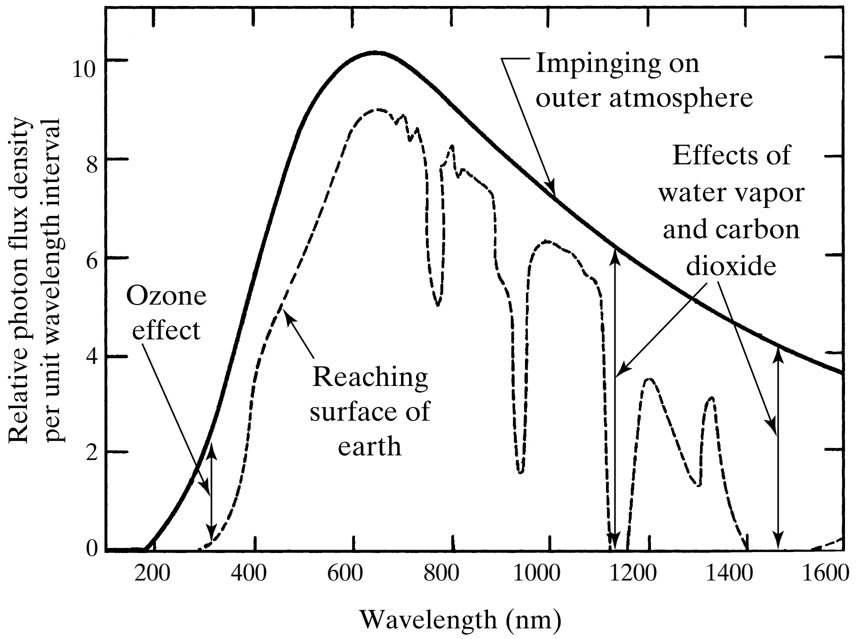


Figure 4-5. Wavelength distributions of the sun's photons incident on the earth's atmosphere and its surface. The curve for the solar irradiation on the atmosphere is an idealized one based on Planck's radiation distribution formula (Eq. 4.3a). The spectral distribution and the amount of solar irradiation reaching the earth's surface depend on clouds, other atmospheric conditions, altitude, and the sun's angle in the sky. The pattern indicated by the lower curve is appropriate at sea level on a clear day with the sun overhead.

of the filaments—creating appreciable cooling problems when using large numbers of such lamps. Typical fluorescent lamps emit only about 10% of their energy in the IR, so cooling problems are less severe than with tungsten lamps. On the other hand, the wavelength distribution of the sun's photons in the visible region (Fig. 4-5) is matched far better by tungsten lamps than by fluorescent ones. A close match can be important because the wavelength distribution affects the relative amounts of the two forms of phytochrome discussed at the end of this chapter.

4.1D. Sunlight

Essentially all of the energy for life originates in the form of electromagnetic radiation from the sun. In radiometric units the radiant flux density of solar irradiation (irradiance) perpendicularly incident on the earth's atmosphere—the "*solar constant*"—is about 1366 W m^{-2}. The solar constant varies by up to ±3.4% from the average due to the earth's elliptical orbit. The value given is for the mean distance between the earth and the sun (the earth is closest to the sun on January 3, at 1.471×10^8 km, and furthest away on July 4, at 1.521×10^8 km). There are additional variations in solar irradiation based on changes in solar activity, such as occur for sun spots, which lead to the 11-year solar cycle (Pap and Frölich, 1999). In Chapter 6 (Section 6.5) we will consider the solar constant in terms of the annual photosynthetic yield and in Chapter 7 (Section 7.1) in terms of the energy balance of a leaf.

Based on the solar constant and averaged for all latitudes, the total daily amount of radiant energy from the sun incident on a horizontal surface just outside the earth's atmosphere averages 29.6 MJ m^{-2} day^{-1}. Atmospheric conditions, such as clouds, permit an average of only 58% or 17.0 MJ m^{-2} day^{-1} of this sunlight to reach the earth's surface (at mid-latitudes the amount at the earth's surface on a relatively clear day in the summer can be about 30 MJ m^{-2} day^{-1}). The irradiance in the visible region at noon on a cloudless day with the sun approximately overhead can be 420 W m^{-2} (total irradiance of about 850 W m^{-2}—equivalent to about 100,000 lux). If we represent sunlight by yellow light of 570 nm, which by Table 4-1 carries 210 kJ mol^{-1}, then 420 W m^{-2} in the visible region from the sun is a photon flux of about

$$\frac{(420\,\mathrm{J\,m^{-2}\,s^{-1}})}{(210{,}000\,\mathrm{J\,mol^{-1}})} = 2.0 \times 10^{-3}\,\mathrm{mol\,m^{-2}\,s^{-1}} \quad (2000\,\mu\mathrm{mol\,m^{-2}\,s^{-1}})$$

on the earth's surface at sea level. (For comparison, full moonlight leads to an illumination of about 0.23 lux, a PPF of 0.004 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1}, and an irradiance of 2 mW m^{-2}.)

Figure 4-5 shows the relative number of the sun's photons impinging on the earth's atmosphere and reaching its surface as a function of wavelength. About 5% of the photons incident on the earth's atmosphere are in the UV (below 400 nm), 28% in the visible, and 67% in the IR (beyond 740 nm). Most of the UV component of sunlight incident on the atmosphere is prevented from reaching the surface of the earth by ozone (O_3) present in the stratosphere, 20 to 30 km above the earth's surface (absorption of sunlight by this O_3 leads to a pronounced heating of the upper atmosphere). Ozone absorbs some visible radiation (e.g., near 600 nm) and effectively screens out the shorter UV rays by absorbing strongly below 300 nm. Much of the IR from the sun is absorbed by atmospheric water vapor and CO_2 (see Fig. 4-5). Water absorbs strongly near 900 nm and 1100 nm, and above 1200 nm, having a major IR absorption band at 1400 nm (1.4 μm). Although the amount of water vapor in the air varies with latitude, longitude, and season, the mean water vapor concentration is equivalent to approximately 20 mm of liquid water. The substantial absorption of UV and IR by atmospheric gases causes the solar irradiation at the earth's surface to have a larger fraction in the visible region than that incident on the outer atmosphere. In the example in Figure 4-5, about 2% of the photons at the earth's surface are in the UV, 45% in the visible, and 53% in the IR.

The radiation environment in water is quite different from that on land. For instance, absorption by water removes most of the IR after sunlight penetrates less than 1 m in lakes or oceans. This, coupled with greater scattering at shorter wavelengths in the UV, causes a larger fraction of the photons to be in the visible region at greater depths. However, water also attenuates (reduces) the visible region, so even at the wavelengths for greatest penetration (approximately 500 nm) in the clearest oceans, only about 1% of the solar photon flux incident on the water surface penetrates to 200 m. Light is also considerably attenuated with depth in typical freshwater lakes and reservoirs, where substances in the water reduce the flux density of

the wavelengths penetrating most readily (near 550 nm) to 1% of the surface values usually by a depth of 10 m.

The wavelength distribution of photons reaching the earth's surface profoundly influences life. For example, the substantial absorption of UV by ozone reduces the potential hazard of mutagenic effects caused by this short-wavelength irradiation. In this regard, before the build up of significant amounts of ozone in the upper atmosphere, UV irradiation from the sun would have been a potent factor affecting genetic processes. Even now, exposure to the UV in sunlight can inhibit photosynthesis and decrease leaf expansion. As another example, the peak near 680 nm for photons reaching the earth's surface (Fig. 4-5) coincides with the red absorption band of chlorophyll (Fig. 5.3), thereby favoring photosynthesis. Vision also utilizes the wavelength region where most of the sunlight reaches the earth. Selective pressure has favored the evolution of photochemical systems capable of using the most abundant wavelengths in the visible while avoiding the highly energetic UV and the energetically weak IR.

4.1E. Planck's and Wien's Formulae

The shape of the curve depicting the wavelength distribution of photons incident upon the earth's atmosphere can be closely predicted using Planck's radiation distribution formula:

$$\begin{array}{l}\text{Relative photon flux density}\\ \text{per unit wavelength interval}\end{array} \propto \frac{\lambda^{-4}}{\left(e^{hc/\lambda kT}-1\right)} \tag{4.3a}$$

where T is the surface temperature of the radiation source (in kelvin units). Such a formula applies exactly to a perfectly efficient emitter, a so-called "blackbody" (often "black body"). A blackbody is a convenient idealization describing an object that absorbs all wavelengths—it is uniformly "black" at all wavelengths—and emits in accordance with Planck's radiation distribution formula. This formula is a good approximation for describing radiation from the sun—T is its surface temperature (about 5800 K)—so Equation 4.3a was used to obtain the upper curve in Figure 4-5. Also, the radiation from a tungsten lamp of a few hundred watts can be fairly well described by Planck's radiation distribution formula using a T of 2900 K. The curve for the relative photon flux density from a tungsten lamp has the same shape as the solid curve in Figure 4-5, but it is shifted toward longer wavelengths because the temperature of a tungsten filament is less than that of the sun's surface. Indeed, Planck's radiation distribution formula (Eq. 4.3a) indicates that any object with a temperature greater than 0 K will emit electromagnetic radiation.

When considering the number of photons available for absorption by pigment molecules, as is relevant for discussing photosynthesis, we usually use the spectral distribution of photons per unit wavelength interval (see Fig. 4-5). On the other hand, for applications such as describing the energy gain by leaves exposed to sunlight, we are usually more interested in the spectral distribution of energy per unit wavelength interval. To recast Figure 4-5 on an energy basis, we need to divide each point on the curves by its wavelength—the ordinate then becomes "Relative energy flux density

per unit wavelength interval." Planck's radiation distribution formula on an energy basis is as follows:

$$\begin{array}{l}\text{Relative energy flux density}\\ \text{per unit wavelength interval}\end{array} \propto \frac{\lambda^{-5}}{(e^{hc/\lambda kT} - 1)} \quad (4.3b)$$

If we know the surface temperature of a blackbody, we can predict the wavelength for maximal radiation from it. To derive such an expression, we differentiate Planck's radiation distribution formula with respect to wavelength and set the derivative equal to zero.[4] The relation obtained is known as Wien's displacement law:

$$\lambda_{max}T = 3.67 \times 10^6 \text{ nm K} \qquad \text{photon basis} \quad (4.4a)$$

where λ_{max} is the wavelength position for maximum photon flux density and T is the surface temperature of the source. Because the surface of the sun is about 5800 K, Wien's displacement law (Eq. 4.4a) predicts that

$$\lambda_{max} = \frac{(3.67 \times 10^6 \text{ nm K})}{(5800 \text{ K})} = 630 \text{ nm}$$

as the upper curve in Figure 4-5 indicates. For a tungsten lamp operating at a temperature of 2900 K (half of the temperature of the sun's surface), the position for maximum photon flux density shifts to 1260 nm (a doubling of λ_{max} compared with the sun), consistent with tungsten lamps emitting primarily IR radiation. From Wien's displacement law, the λ_{max} for the maximum photon flux density from a body at 298 K (25°C) occurs at 1.23×10^4 nm, which is 12 μm, or far into the IR. Plants emit such IR radiation, which is a crucial aspect of their overall energy balance, as we will consider in Chapter 7. We note that on an energy basis, Wien's displacement law for maximum energy output is

$$\lambda_{max}T = 2.90 \times 10^6 \text{ nm K} \qquad \text{energy basis} \quad (4.4b)$$

4.2. Absorption of Light by Molecules

Only light that is absorbed can produce a chemical change, a principle embodied in the Grotthuss–Draper law of photochemistry. This is true whether radiant energy is converted to some other form and then stored or is used as a trigger. Another important principle of photochemistry is the Stark–Einstein law, which specifies that each absorbed photon activates only one molecule. Einstein further postulated that all of the

4. Using the relations for differentiation in Chapter 1, Footnote 5, we obtain: $\delta(\text{Radiation})/\delta\lambda = \delta\left[\lambda^{-4}\frac{\text{constant}}{(e^{hc/\lambda kT}-1)}\right]/\delta\lambda = -4\lambda^{-5}\frac{\text{constant}}{(e^{hc/\lambda kT}-1)} - \lambda^{-4}\frac{\text{constant}}{(e^{hc/\lambda kT}-1)^2}\left(-\frac{hc}{kT}\frac{1}{\lambda^2}e^{hc/\lambda kT}\right) = 0$. We next multiply everything by $-\lambda^5(e^{hc/\lambda kT} - 1)^2/\text{constant}$, leading to $4(e^{hc/\lambda kT} - 1) - \frac{hc}{\lambda kT}e^{hc/\lambda kT} = 0$. Upon setting hc/k equal to 1.439×10^7 nm K (Appendix I), the latter relation can be solved numerically, yielding $\lambda T = 3.67 \times 10^6$ nm K, which is Wien's displacement law on a photon basis (Eq. 4.4a).

energy of the photon is transferred to a single electron during an absorption event, resulting in the movement of this electron to a higher energy state. To help understand light absorption, we first consider some of the properties of electrons. The fate of the excited electrons will be discussed in the next section.

4.2A. Role of Electrons in Absorption Event

From a classical viewpoint, an electron is a negatively charged particle that can move in some orbit around an atomic nucleus. Its energy depends on both the distance of the orbit from the nucleus (Fig. 4-3) and the speed of the electron in its orbit. The increase in energy of an electron upon absorbing a photon could transfer that electron into a higher energy orbit further from the nucleus than the original orbit (Fig. 4-3) or could cause the electron to move more rapidly about the nucleus than it did before excitation. The locations of various possible electron orbits and the speeds of electrons in them are both limited to certain discrete, or "allowed," values, a phenomenon that has been interpreted by quantum mechanics. Thus the energy of an electron in an atom or a molecule can change only by certain specific amounts. Light of the appropriate wavelength will have the proper energy to cause the electron to move from one possible energetic state to another. Therefore, for light absorption to occur, the energy of a photon as given by Equation 4.2 must equal the difference in energy between some allowed excited state of the atom or molecule and the initial state, the latter usually being the ground (lowest energy) state.

During light absorption, the electromagnetic field of the light interacts with an electron (Fig. 4-6). Because electrons are charged particles, they experience a force in an electric field. The oscillating electric field of light (Fig. 4-1) thus represents a periodic driving force acting on the electrons. This electric field—a vector having a specific direction in space, such as along the vertical axis in Figure 4-1—causes or induces the electrons to move. If the frequency of the electromagnetic radiation causes a large sympathetic oscillation or beating of some electron, that electron is said to be in *resonance* with the light wave. Such a resonating electron leads to an *electric dipole* (local separation of positive and negative charge) in the molecule, as the electron is forced to move first in a certain direction and then in the opposite one in response to the oscillating electric field of light (Fig. 4-6). The displacement of the electron back and forth requires energy—in fact, it may take the entire energy of the photon, in which case the quantum is captured or absorbed. The direction and the magnitude of the induced electric dipole will depend on the resisting, or restoring, forces on the electron provided by the rest of the molecule. These restoring forces depend on the other electrons and the atomic nuclei in the molecule, so they are not the same in different types of molecules. Indeed, the electric dipoles that can be induced are characteristic of a particular molecule, which helps to explain why each molecular species has its own unique absorption spectrum.

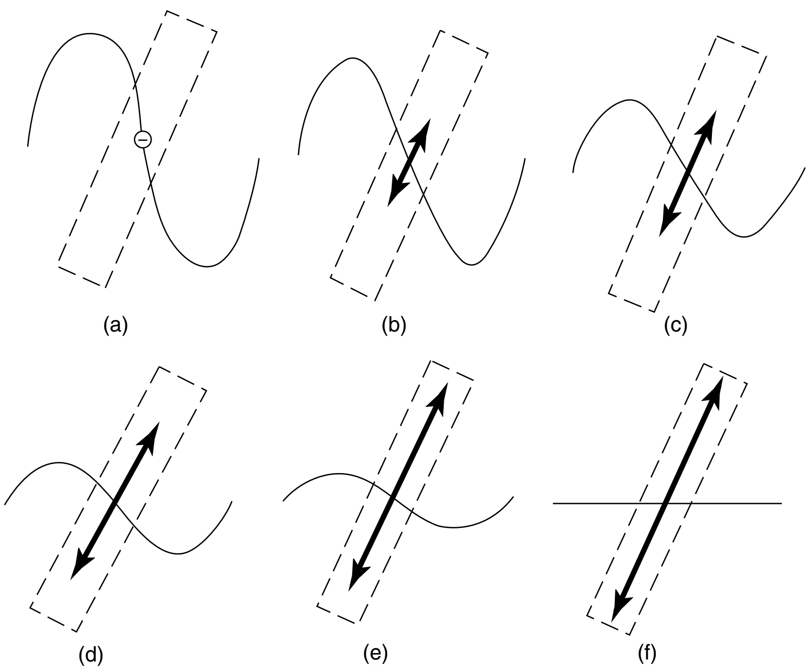


Figure 4-6. Highly schematic representation of the transfer of energy from a light wave (here indicated by a single cycle) to an electron that can be induced to oscillate in a certain direction in some molecule. The dashed rectangular box indicates the position of the inducible electric dipole in the molecule (at an angle of about 25° to the electric vectors). The diminishing amplitude of the electromagnetic wave from (a) to (f) indicates a diminution of the light energy, which can occur during one or a few cycles of the wave. The increasing length of the two-headed arrow indicates an increase in the electron's energy, eventually leading to the transfer or capture of the photon's energy by the electron in resonance with a light wave.

The probability that light will be absorbed depends on both its wavelength and the relative orientation of its electromagnetic field with respect to the inducible oscillations of electrons in the molecules (Fig. 4-6). Absorption of a photon without ejection of an electron from the absorbing species can take place only if the following two conditions exist: (1) The photon has the proper energy to reach a discrete excited state of the molecule (i.e., has a specific wavelength; see Eq. 4.2), and (2) the electric-field vector associated with the light (Fig. 4-1) has a component parallel to the direction of some potential electric dipole in the molecule so that an electron can be induced to oscillate. In other words, the electric field of light must exert a force on some electron in the direction of a potential electric dipole to induce electron movement and thus enable the electron to accept the energy of the photon. The probability for absorption is proportional to the square of the cosine of the angle between the electric-field vector of light and the direction of the inducible electric dipole in the molecule. Thus, when the electric vector is parallel to the inducible dipole, absorption is maximal, but when it is perpendicular, absorption is minimal. Within the limits set by the wavelength and the orientation, light energy can be captured by the molecule, placing it in an excited state (Fig. 4-6).

4.2B. Electron Spin and State Multiplicity

Light absorption is affected by the arrangement of electrons in an atom or a molecule, which depends among other things on a property of the individual electrons known as their *spin*. We can view each electron as a charged particle spinning about an axis in much the same way as the earth spins about its axis. Such rotation has an angular momentum, or spin, associated with it. The magnitude of the spin of all electrons is the same, but because spin is a vector quantity, it can have different directions in space. For an electron, only two orientations occur—the spin of the electron is aligned either parallel or antiparallel to the local magnetic field, that is, either in the same direction or in the opposite direction to the magnetic field. Even in the absence of an externally applied magnetic field, such as that of the earth or some electromagnet, a local internal magnetic field is provided by both the moving charges in the nucleus and the motion of the electrons. A magnetic field therefore always exists with which the electron spin can be aligned.

Angular momentum and hence spin have units of energy $\times$ time. The spin of electrons is conveniently and customarily expressed in units of $h/(2\pi)$, where h is Planck's constant (which has units of energy $\times$ time, e.g., J s). In units of $h/(2\pi)$, the projection along the magnetic field of the spin for a single electron is either $+\frac{1}{2}$ (e.g., when the spin is parallel to the local magnetic field) or $-\frac{1}{2}$ (when the spin is in the opposite direction, or antiparallel). The net spin of an atom or molecule is the vector sum of the spins for all of the electrons, each individual electron having a spin of either $+\frac{1}{2}$ or $-\frac{1}{2}$. The magnitude of this net spin is represented by the symbol S, an extremely important quantity in spectroscopy.

To discuss the spectroscopic properties of various molecules, we introduce the *spin multiplicity*. The spin multiplicity of an electronic state is defined as $2S + 1$, where S is the magnitude of the net spin for the whole atom or molecule. For example, if S is equal to 0, indicating that the spin projections of all of the electrons taken along the magnetic field cancel each other, then $2S + 1$ equals 1, and the state is called a *singlet*. On the other hand, if S is equal to 1, $2S + 1$ equals 3, and the state is a *triplet*. Singlets and triplets are the two most important spin multiplicities encountered in biology. When referring to an absorbing species, the spin multiplicity is usually indicated by S for singlet and T for triplet. When S is equal to $\frac{1}{2}$, as can occur when there are an odd number of electrons in a molecule, then $2S + 1$ equals 2; such *doublets* occur for free radicals (molecules with a single unpaired electron—such molecules are generally quite reactive).

Electrons are found only in certain "allowed" regions of space; the particular locus in which some electron can move is referred to as its *orbital*. In the 1920s Pauli noted that, when an electron is in a given atomic orbital, a second electron having its spin in the same direction is excluded from that orbital. This led to the enunciation of the *Pauli exclusion principle* of quantum mechanics: When two electrons are in the same orbital, their spins must be in opposite directions. When a molecule has all of its electrons paired in orbitals with their spins in opposite directions, the total spin of the molecule is zero ($S = 0$), and the molecule is in a singlet state ($2S + 1 = 1$; Fig. 4-7a).

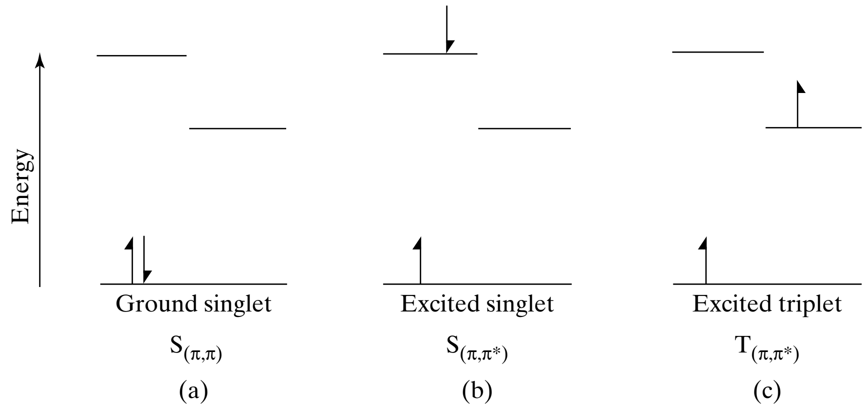


Figure 4-7. Effect of light on a pair of electrons in a molecular orbital. The arrows indicate the directions of the electron spins with respect to the local magnetic field. (a) In the ground state (a singlet), the two electrons in a filled orbital have their spins in opposite directions. (b) The absorption of a photon can cause the molecule to go to an excited singlet state where the spins of the electrons are still in opposite directions. (c) In an excited triplet state, the spins of the two electrons are in the same direction (but in different orbitals).

The ground, or unexcited, state of essentially all molecules is a singlet; that is, all of the electrons are then in pairs in the lowest energy orbitals. When some electron is excited to an unoccupied orbital, two spin possibilities exist. The spins of the two electrons (which are now in different orbitals) may be in opposite directions, as they were when paired in the ground state (Fig. 4-7b); this electronic configuration is still a singlet state. The two electrons may also have their spins in the same direction—a triplet state ($2S + 1 = 3$; Fig. 4-7c). (Because the electrons are in different orbitals, their spins can be in the same direction without violating the Pauli exclusion principle.) An important rule—first enunciated by Friedrich Hund in the 1920s based on empirical observations and later explained using quantum mechanics—is that the level with the greatest spin multiplicity has the lowest energy. Thus an excited triplet state is lower in energy than its corresponding excited singlet state, as is illustrated in Fig. 4-7c.

4.2C. Molecular Orbitals

For a discussion of the light absorption event involving the interaction of an electromagnetic wave with some electron, it is easiest to visualize the electron as a small point located at some specific position in the atom or molecule. For the classical description of an electron's energy, we can imagine the electron as moving in some fixed trajectory or orbit about the nucleus. However, to describe the role of electrons in binding atoms together to form a molecule, it is more convenient to imagine the electron as spatially distributed like a cloud of negative charge surrounding the nuclei of adjacent atoms in the molecule. In this last description, which involves probability considerations introduced by quantum mechanics, we say that the electrons are located in *molecular orbitals*. Such considerations lead us into a different

way of looking at things. Our common experience yields relations such as Newton's laws of motion, which describe events on a scale much larger than atomic or molecular dimensions. In contrast, the main application of quantum mechanics involves molecular, atomic, and subatomic dimensions. At this scale our intuition often fails us. Moreover, many things that otherwise seem to be absolute, such as the position of an object, are describable only on a relative basis or as a probability. We cannot say that an electron is located at a specific place or point in space. Instead, we must be satisfied with knowing only the probability of finding an electron in some region about a nucleus (Turro et al., 2006).

A logical way to begin our discussion of molecular orbitals is to consider the probabilities of finding electrons in given regions about a single atomic nucleus. The simplest atom is that of hydrogen, which has a single electron. If we were to determine the probability of finding that electron in the various regions of space about its nucleus, we would find that it spends most of its time fairly close to the nucleus (within about 0.1 nm), and that the probability distribution is *spherically symmetric* in space. In other words, the chance of finding the electron is the same in all directions about the nucleus. In atomic theory, this spherically symmetric distribution of the electron about an H nucleus is called an *s* orbital, and the electron is an *s* electron.

The next simplest atom is that of helium; He has two *s* electrons moving in the *s* orbital about its nucleus. By the Pauli exclusion principle these two electrons must have their spins in opposite directions. What happens for lithium, which contains three electrons? Two of its electrons are in the same type of orbital as that of He. This orbital is known as the *K* shell and represents the spherically symmetric orbital closest to the nucleus. The third electron is excluded from the *K* shell but occurs in another orbital with spherical symmetry whose probability description indicates that on average its electrons are farther away from the nucleus than is the case for the *K* shell. Electrons in this new orbital are still *s* electrons, but they are in the *L* shell. Beryllium, which has an atomic number of four, can have two *s* electrons in its *K* shell and two more in its *L* shell. What happens when we have five electrons moving about a nucleus, as for an uncharged boron atom? The fifth electron is in an orbital that is not spherically symmetric about the nucleus. Instead, the probability distribution has the shape of a dumbbell, although it is still centered about the nucleus (similar in appearance to the distributions depicted in Fig. 4-8b). This new orbital is referred to as a *p* orbital, and electrons in it are called *p* electrons. The probability of finding a *p* electron in various regions of space is greatest along some axis passing through the nucleus, although vanishingly small at the nucleus itself.

How do these various atomic orbitals relate to the spatial distribution of electrons in molecules? A molecule contains more than one atom (except for "molecules" like helium or neon), and certain electrons can move between the atoms—this interatomic motion is crucial for holding the molecule together. Fortunately, the spatial localization of electrons in molecules can be described using suitable linear combinations of the spatial distributions of electrons in various atomic orbitals centered about the nuclei involved. In fact, molecular orbital theory is concerned with giving the correct quantum-mechanical, or wave-mechanical, description

of the probability of finding electrons in various regions of space in molecules by using the probabilities of finding electrons in atomic orbitals.

Some of the electrons in molecules are localized about a single nucleus, and others are delocalized, or shared, between nuclei. For the delocalized electrons, the combination of the various atomic orbitals used to describe the spatial positions of the electrons in three dimensions is consistent with a sharing of the electrons between adjacent nuclei. In other words, the molecular orbitals of the delocalized electrons spatially overlap more than one nucleus. This sharing of electrons is responsible for the chemical bonds that prevent the molecule from separating into its constituent atoms; that is, the negative electrons moving between the positive nuclei hold the molecule together by attracting the nuclei of different atoms. Moreover, these delocalized electrons are usually the electrons involved in light absorption by molecules.

The lowest-energy molecular orbital is a σ orbital, which can be constructed by linear combinations of s atomic orbitals. The spatial distribution of the electron cloud for a σ orbital is cylindrically symmetric about the internuclear axis for the pair of atoms involved in the σ bond. Nonbonding or lone-pair electrons contributed by atoms such as oxygen or nitrogen occur in n orbitals and retain their atomic character in the molecule. These n electrons are essentially physically separate from the other electrons in the molecule and do not take part in the bonding between nuclei. We shall devote most of our attention to electrons in π molecular orbitals (Fig. 4-8), which are the molecular equivalent of p electrons in atoms. These π electrons are delocalized in a bond joining two or more atoms and are of prime importance in light absorption. In fact, most photochemical reactions and spectroscopic properties of biological importance result from the absorption of photons by π electrons. With respect to orbital nomenclature, σ and π are the Greek transliterations for s and p, respectively, and n derives from nonbonding (s and p refer to *sharp* and *principal*, terms used by spectroscopists to describe the associated atomic absorption spectra).

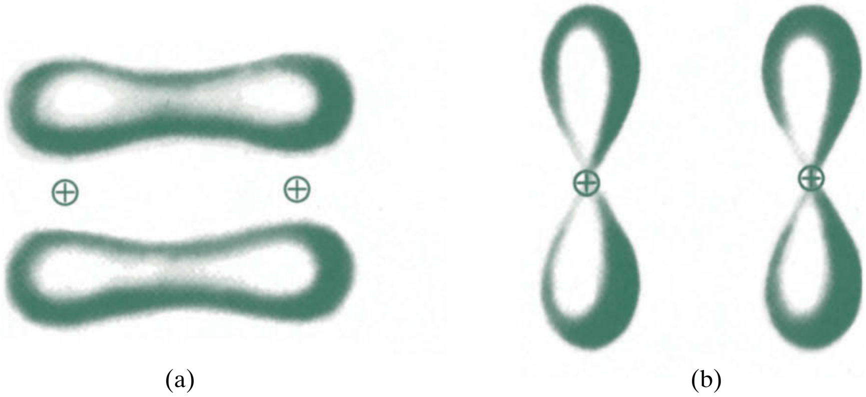


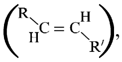
Figure 4-8. Typical π and π^* orbitals, indicating the spatial distribution about the nuclei ($\oplus$) where the greatest probability of finding the electrons occurs: (a) π orbital (bonding) and (b) π^* orbital (antibonding).

The excitation of a π electron by light absorption can lead to an excited state of the molecule in which the electron moves into a π* orbital, the asterisk referring to an excited, or high-energy, molecular orbital. Figure 4-8 illustrates the probability distributions for electrons in both π and π* orbitals (the circumscribed regions indicate where the electrons are most likely to be found). In Figure 4-8a, a π orbital is delocalized between two nuclei; the same clouds of negative charge electrostatically attract both nuclei. Such sharing of electrons in the π orbital helps join the atoms together, so we refer to this type of molecular orbital as *bonding*. As shown in Figure 4-8b, electrons in a π* orbital do not help join atoms together; rather, they tend to decrease bonding between atoms in the molecule because the electronic clouds of negative charge around adjacent atoms repel each other. A π* orbital is therefore referred to as *antibonding*. The decrease in bonding when going from a π to a π* orbital results in a less stable (higher energy) electronic state for the molecule, indicating that a π* orbital is at a higher energy than a π orbital.

The energy required to move an electron from the attractive (bonding) π orbital to the antibonding π* orbital is obtained by the absorption of a photon of the appropriate wavelength. For molecules such as chlorophylls and carotenoids, the π* orbitals are often 160 to 300 kJ mol^{-1} higher in energy than are the corresponding π orbitals. For such molecules, the absorption of visible light (see Table 4-1 for the energy available) can lead to the excitation of π electrons into the π* orbitals.

4.2D. Photoisomerization

Light energy can cause molecular changes known as *photoisomerizations*, meaning that light ("photo-") leads to a different spatial arrangement of the chemical bonds ("isomerization"). The three main types of photoisomerization are (1) *cis–trans*[5] isomerization about a double bond; (2) a double bond shift; and (3) a molecular rearrangement involving changes in carbon–carbon bonds, such as ring cleavage or formation. *Cis–trans* photoisomerization—which illustrates the consequences of the different spatial distribution of electrons in π and π* orbitals—makes possible the generally restricted rotation about a double bond. A double bond has two π electrons; light absorption leads to the excitation of one of them to a π* orbital. The attraction between the two carbon atoms caused by the remaining π electron is then mostly canceled by the antibonding, or repulsive, contribution from this π* electron (see Fig. 4-8). Thus the molecular orbitals of the original two π electrons that prevented rotation about the double bond have been replaced by an electronic configuration permitting relatively easy rotation about the carbon–carbon axis (the most stable configuration in the excited state can be rotated 90° about the C–C axis compared to the orientation in the unexcited state).

5. In the *trans* configuration, the two large groups are on opposite sides of the double bond between them , and in the *cis* form they are on the same side.

We next consider the absorption of light by a molecule in the *cis* form. When the excited π^* electron drops back to a π orbital, the two large groups can be on the same side (the original *cis* isomer) or on opposite sides (the *trans* isomer) of the double bond. Because the two isomers can have markedly different chemical properties, the use of light to trigger their interconversion can be biologically important. For example, light can cause the photoisomerization of a *cis* isomer of retinal (a carotenoid attached to the lipoprotein opsin in a complex referred to as rhodopsin), yielding a *trans* isomer, which is the basic photochemical event underlying vision.

4.2E. Light Absorption by Chlorophyll

We will use chlorophyll to help illustrate some of the terms just introduced describing the absorption of light by molecules. (Chlorophyll is discussed in more detail in Chapter 5, Section 5.1.) The principal energy levels and electronic transitions of chlorophyll are presented in Figure 4-9. Chlorophyll is a singlet in the ground state, as are all of the other biologically important pigments. When a photon is absorbed, a π electron is excited to a π^* orbital. If this excited state is a singlet, it is represented by $S_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ (Figs. 4-7 and 4-9). The first symbol in the subscript is the type of electron (here a π electron) that has been excited to the antibonding orbital indicated by the second

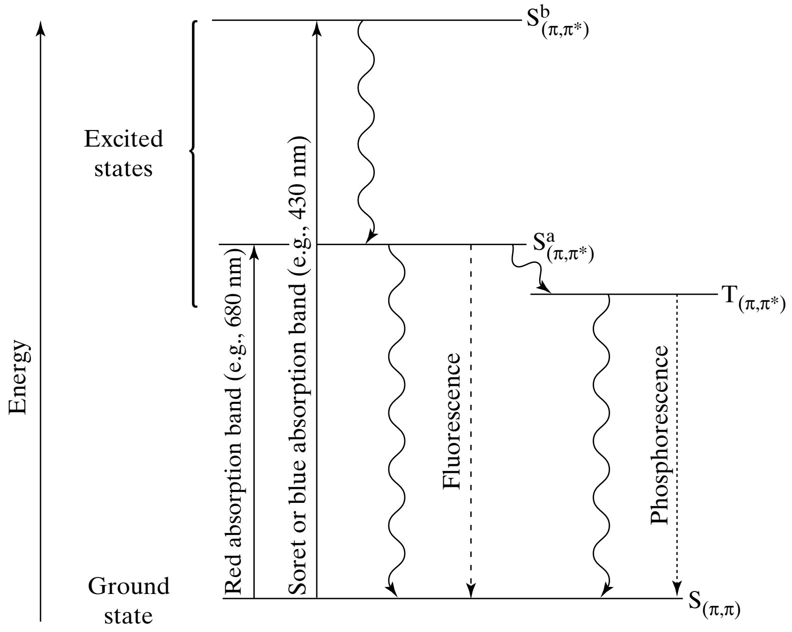


Figure 4-9. Energy level diagram indicating the principal electronic states and some of the transitions of chlorophyll. Straight vertical lines represent the absorption of light; wavy lines indicate radiationless transitions, for which the energy is eventually released as heat; and broken lines indicate those deexcitations accompanied by radiation. In the literature, $S_{\pi,\pi}$ for chlorophyll is also referred to as S_0, $S^a_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ as S_1, $S^b_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ as S_2, and $T_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ as T_1 (similar symbols occur for carotenoids).

symbol (here π^*). We will represent the ground state by $S_{(\pi,\pi)}$, indicating that no electrons are then in excited, or antibonding, orbitals. If the orientation of the spin of the excited π electron became reversed during excitation, it would be in the same direction as the spin of the electron that remained in the π orbital (see Fig. 4-7c). (Each filled orbital contains two electrons whose spins are in opposite directions.) In this case, the net spin of the molecule in the excited state is 1, so $2S + 1$ is 3; that is, the state is a triplet. The excited triplet state of chlorophyll is represented by $T_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ in Figure 4-9.

Chlorophyll has two principal excited singlet states that differ considerably in energy. One of these states, designated $S^a_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ in Figure 4-9, can be reached by absorption of red light, such as a wavelength of 680 nm. The other state, $S^b_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$, involves a π^* orbital that lies higher in energy and is reached by absorption of blue light (e.g., 430 nm). The electronic transitions caused by the absorption of photons are indicated by solid vertical arrows in Figure 4-9, and the vertical distances correspond approximately to the differences in energy involved. Excitation of a singlet ground state to an excited triplet state is usually only about 10^{-5} times as probable as going to an excited singlet state, so the transition from $S_{(\pi,\pi)}$ to $T_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$) has not been indicated for chlorophyll in Figure 4-9. To go from $S_{(\pi,\pi)}$ to $T_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$, the energy of an electron must be substantially increased and the orientation of its spin must be simultaneously reversed. The coincidence of these two events is improbable, so very few chlorophyll molecules are excited directly from the ground state to $T_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ by the absorption of light.

We now briefly compare the two most important excitations in photobiology—the transitions of n and π electrons to π^* orbitals. The n electrons have very little spatial overlap with other electrons, and they tend to be higher in energy than the π electrons, which are reduced in energy (stabilized) by being delocalized over a number of nuclei. Therefore, the excitation of an n electron to a π^* orbital generally takes less energy than the transition of a π electron to the same antibonding orbital (Fig. 4-10). Hence, an $S_{(n,\pi^*)}$ state usually occurs at a lower energy—a longer wavelength is required for its excitation—than does the analogous $S_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$. Another

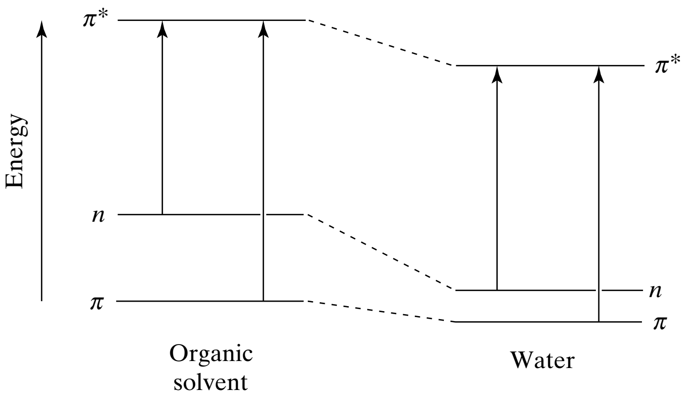


Figure 4-10. Influence of the solvent on the energies of n, π, and π^* orbitals. The indicated n-to-π^* transition takes more energy in water than in an organic solvent (shorter wavelength in water), and the π-to-π^* transition takes less energy (longer wavelength in water, as for chlorophyll).

difference is that π and π^* orbitals can overlap spatially (see Fig. 4-8), but n and π^* orbitals generally do not. Consequently, the n-to-π^* transition is not as favored, or probable, as the π-to-π^* one. Thus transitions to $S_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ states tend to dominate the absorption properties of a molecular species (as evidenced by an absorption spectrum) compared with excitations yielding $S_{(n,\pi^*)}$ states.

We next consider the effect of the molecular environment on n, π, and π^* orbitals (Fig. 4-10). The n electrons can move relatively far from the nucleus and generally interact strongly with water (e.g., by participating in stabilizing hydrogen bonding), and therefore the energy level of n electrons is considerably lower in water than in an organic solvent. The energy of π^* electrons is also lowered by water, but to a lesser extent than for n electrons. Compared with n and π^* orbitals, the π orbitals are physically deeper within the molecule and hence are the least affected by the solvent. A transition from an n to a π^* orbital therefore takes more energy in water than in an organic solvent (Fig. 4-10). On the other hand, the π-to-π^* transition takes less energy in an aqueous environment than in an organic one. As an example, let us consider the transition of chlorophyll to an excited singlet state in different solvents. The excitation to its excited singlet state takes less energy in water than in an organic solvent (Fig. 4-10); that is, when chlorophyll is in water, the required photons have a longer wavelength than when the chlorophyll is dissolved in an organic solvent such as acetone. This lower energy requirement in water is consistent with our statement that the transition for chlorophyll corresponds to the promotion of a π electron to a π^* orbital.

4.3. Deexcitation

The primary processes of photochemistry involve the light absorption event, which we have already discussed, together with the subsequent deexcitation reactions. We can portray such transitions on an energy level diagram, as in Figure 4-9 for chlorophyll. In this section we discuss the various deexcitation processes, including a consideration of their rate constants and lifetimes.

One characteristic of the various excitation and deexcitation processes is the time needed for the transitions. A useful estimate of the absorption time for a photon is the time required for one cycle of the light wave to pass an electron (Fig. 4-6). This time is the distance per cycle of the wave divided by the speed with which light travels, or λ/v, which equals $1/\nu$ by Equation 4.1; $1/\nu$ is known as the period, which is thus the time for one cycle of the electromagnetic wave to pass by a particular point. Hence the time required for the absorption of a photon is approximately equal to the reciprocal of the frequency of the light, $1/\nu$, which is the time necessary for one complete oscillation of the electromagnetic field. During one oscillation, the electric vector of light can induce an electron to move in one direction during the first half of the period and then in the opposite direction during the second half of the period. This can set up a beating or resonating of the electron (Fig. 4-6; actually, a few cycles of the electromagnetic radiation may be necessary). To be specific, let us consider blue light with a wavelength of 460 nm in a vacuum. From its frequency

(6.52×10^{14} cycles s^{-1}; Table 4-1), we can calculate that the time for one cycle is $1/(6.52 \times 10^{14}\ s^{-1})$, or 1.5×10^{-15} s. Light absorption is indeed extremely rapid!

Times for deexcitation reactions are usually expressed in *lifetimes*. A lifetime, denoted τ, is the time required for the number of molecules in a given state to decrease to $1/e$, or 37%, of the initial number (i.e., τ is the time for 63% of the molecules to become deexcited). Lifetimes are extremely convenient for describing first-order processes because the initial species in such processes decay (disappear) exponentially with time (see Chapter 3, Footnote 6; Eq. 4.10; and Appendix III for examples of first-order processes). A *half-time*, the time necessary for the number of species in a given state to decrease by 50%, can also be used to describe deexcitation processes; for an exponential decay, one half-time equals ln 2, or 0.693, times the duration of a lifetime.

4.3A. Fluorescence, Radiationless Transition, and Phosphorescence

The excess energy of the excited state can be dissipated by various competing pathways. One deexcitation process is the emission of light known as *fluorescence* (indicated by a dashed line in Fig. 4-9 for the principal transitions of chlorophyll). Fluorescence describes the electromagnetic radiation emitted when a molecule goes from an excited singlet state to a singlet ground state. Fluorescence lifetimes for most organic molecules range from 10^{-9} to 10^{-6} s. We shall see in Chapter 5 (e.g., Sections 5.1B and 5.3B) that the properties of chlorophyll fluorescence are crucial for understanding the primary events of photosynthesis.

Deexcitation of an excited state often occurs without the emission of any radiation, termed a nonradiative or *radiationless* transition (indicated by wavy lines in Fig. 4-9). In a radiationless transition to a lower-energy excited state or to the ground state, the energy of the absorbed photon is eventually converted to heat, which is passed on by collisions with the surrounding molecules. Radiationless transitions can be extremely rapid from some excited singlet state to a lower-energy excited singlet state in the same molecule. For example, the radiationless transition from $S^{b}_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ to $S^{a}_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ indicated for chlorophyll in Figure 4-9 takes about 10^{-12} s. This transition is so rapid that hardly any fluorescence can be emitted from $S^{b}_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$, so no fluorescence emission from the upper excited singlet state of chlorophyll is indicated in Figure 4-9. The lower-energy excited singlet state, $S^{a}_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$, can decay to the ground state by a radiationless transition. As another alternative, $S^{a}_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ can go to $T_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$, also by a radiationless transition (Fig. 4-9). In fact, excited triplet states in molecules are mainly formed by radiationless transitions from higher-energy excited singlet states. The deexcitation of $T_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ to $S_{(\pi,\pi)}$ can be radiationless, or it can be by radiation known as *phosphorescence* (dotted line in Fig. 4-9), which we consider next.

Phosphorescence is the electromagnetic radiation that can accompany the transition of a molecule from an excited triplet state to a ground state singlet. Because the molecule goes from a triplet to a singlet state, its net spin must change during the emission of this radiation. The lifetimes for

phosphorescence usually range from 10^{-3} to 10 s, which are long compared with those for fluorescence (10^{-9} to 10^{-6} s).[6] The relatively long times for deexcitation by phosphorescence occur because the molecule goes from one electronic state to another and, simultaneously, the electron spin is reversed—the coincidence of these two events is rather improbable. In fact, the low probability of forming $T_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ from $S_{(\pi,\pi)}$ by light absorption has the same physical basis as the long lifetime for deexcitation from the excited triplet state to the ground state by emitting phosphorescence.

Another, although usually minor, way for an excited molecule to emit radiation is by "delayed" fluorescence. Specifically, a molecule in the relatively long-lived $T_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ can sometimes be supplied enough energy thermally by collisions to put it into the higher-energy $S_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ (see Fig. 4-9). Subsequent radiation, as the molecule goes from this excited singlet state to $S(_{\pi,\pi})$, has the characteristics of fluorescence. However, it is considerably delayed after light absorption compared with normal fluorescence because the excitation spent some time as $T_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$. In any case, the lifetime of an excited state indicates the time course for the deexcitation processes, not the time required for the deexcitation event per se; for example, the time required for the emission of a photon is essentially the same as for its capture.

4.3B. Competing Pathways for Deexcitation

Each excited state has both a definite energy and a specific lifetime, the length of which depends on the particular processes competing for the deexcitation of that state. In addition to fluorescence, phosphorescence, and the radiationless transitions, the excitation energy can also be transferred to another molecule, putting this second molecule into an excited state while the originally excited molecule returns to its ground state. In another type of deexcitation process, an excited (energetic) electron can leave the molecule that absorbed the photon, as occurs for certain excited chlorophyll molecules. The excited state of pivotal importance in photosynthesis is the lower excited singlet state of chlorophyll, indicated by $S^a_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ in Figure 4-9. We will use this state to illustrate some of the possible ways for the deexcitation of an excited singlet state, $S_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$. The competing pathways and their equations presented in this section are summarized as follows:

Pathway	Eq. No.
Fluorescence	4.5
Radiationless transitions	4.6, 4.7
Excitation transfer	4.8
Electron donation	4.9

6. The lifetimes for the various excitation and deexcitation processes hence vary over many orders of magnitude (Appendix III, Section A)—femtoseconds for light absorption, picoseconds for radiationless transitions between excited electronic states, nano- to microseconds for fluorescence, and milliseconds to seconds for phosphorescence.

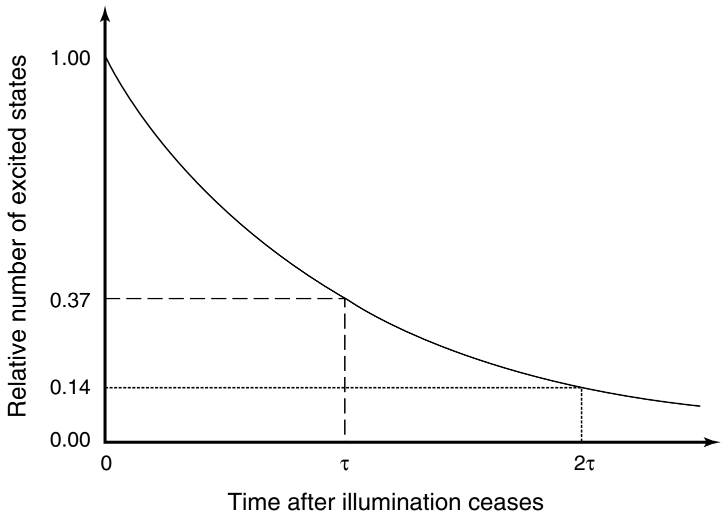


Figure 4-11. Exponential decrease with time in the number of excited states, such as can occur for the emission of fluorescence after the illumination ceases or for radioactive decay, illustrating the relationship with the lifetime (τ) for a first-order process. Note that 0.37 equals $1/e$, where e is the base of the natural logarithms.

The absorbed quantum can be reradiated as electromagnetic energy, $h\nu$, causing the excited molecule $S_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ to drop back to its ground state $S_{(\pi,\pi)}$:

$$S_{(\pi,\pi^*)} \xrightarrow{k_1} S_{(\pi,\pi)} + h\nu \tag{4.5}$$

Such fluorescence decays exponentially with time after the light is removed (Fig. 4-11), indicating a first-order process with a rate constant k_1 in Equation 4.5 (first-order rate constants have units of s^{-1}). In particular, for a first-order process, the rate of disappearance of the excited state, $dS_{(\pi,\pi^*)}/dt$, is linearly proportional to the amount of $S_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ present at any time (also see Appendix III). The fluorescence lifetime of $S_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$, which is typically about 10^{-8} s, would be the actual lifetime of $S_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ if no other competing deexcitation processes occurred. When the energy of the absorbed photon is dissipated as fluorescence, no photochemical work can be done. Therefore, the fluorescence lifetime is an upper time limit within which any biologically useful reactions can be driven by the lowest excited singlet state of a molecule. If the reactions take longer than the fluorescence lifetime, most of the absorbed energy will have already been dissipated.

The next deexcitation processes that we consider are the radiationless transitions by which $S_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ eventually dissipates its excess electronic energy as heat. As for fluorescence, radiationless transitions generally obey first-order kinetics. Two different states can be reached by radiationless transitions from $S_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$:

$$S_{(\pi,\pi^*)} \xrightarrow{k_2} S_{(\pi,\pi)} + \text{heat} \tag{4.6}$$

$$S_{(\pi,\pi^*)} \xrightarrow{k_3} T_{(\pi,\pi^*)} + \text{heat} \tag{4.7}$$

Radiationless transitions such as those in Equations 4.6 and 4.7 involve deexcitations in which the excess energy is often first passed on to other parts of the same molecule. This causes the excitation of certain vibrational modes for other pairs of atoms within the molecule—we will discuss such vibrational modes in conjunction with the Franck–Condon principle (see Fig. 4-12). This energy, which has become distributed over the molecule, is subsequently dissipated by collisions with other molecules in the randomizing interchanges that are the basis of temperature.

When an excited molecule returns directly to its ground state by a radiationless transition (Eq. 4.6), all of the radiant energy of the absorbed light is eventually converted into the thermal energy of motion of the surrounding molecules. In Equation 4.7 only some of the excess electronic energy appears as the quantity designated "heat," which in that case represents the difference in energy between $S_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ and $T_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$. Although the dissipation of excitation energy as heat during a transition to the ground state (Eq. 4.6) is photochemically wasteful in that no biological work is performed, the transition to $T_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ (Eq. 4.7) can be quite useful. The lowest excited triplet state usually lasts 10^4 to 10^8 times longer than does $S_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$, allowing time for many more intermolecular collisions. Because each collision increases the opportunity for a given reaction to occur, $T_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ can be an important excited state in photobiology.

The absorption of light can lead to a photochemical reaction initiated by a molecule other than the one that absorbed the photon. This phenomenon suggests that electronic excitation can be transferred between molecules, resulting in the excitation of one and the deexcitation of the other. For instance, the excitation energy of $S_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ might be transferred to a second molecule, represented in the ground state by $S_{2(\pi,\pi)}$:

$$S_{(\pi,\pi^*)} + S_{2(\pi,\pi)} \xrightarrow{k_4} S_{(\pi,\pi)} + S_{2(\pi,\pi^*)} \tag{4.8}$$

This second molecule thereby becomes excited, indicated by $S_{2(\pi,\pi^*)}$, and the molecule that absorbed the photon becomes deexcited and is returned to its ground state. Such transfer of electronic excitation from molecule to molecule underlies the energy migration among the pigments involved in photosynthesis (see Chapter 5, Sections 5.3 and 5.4). We will assume that Equation 4.8 represents a first-order reaction, as it does for the excitation exchanges between chlorophyll molecules in vivo (in certain cases, Eq. 4.8 can represent a second-order reaction, i.e., $dS_{(\pi,\pi^*)}/dt$ then equals $k'S^2_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$).

As another type of deexcitation process, $S_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ can take part in *a photochemical* reaction. For example, the excited π^* electron can be donated to a suitable acceptor:

$$S_{(\pi,\pi^*)} \xrightarrow{k_5} D_{(\pi)} + e^* \tag{4.9}$$

where the ejected electron is represented by e^*. The electron removed from $S_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ is replaced by another one donated from some other compound; $D_{(\pi)}$ in Equation 4.9, which represents a doublet because one of the π orbitals contains an unpaired electron ($2S + 1 = 2$), then goes back to its original ground state, $S_{(\pi,\pi)}$. Photochemical reactions of the form of Equation 4.9

serve as the crucial link in the conversion of radiant energy into chemical or electrical energy (Chapters 5 and 6). Indeed, Equation 4.9 can be used to represent the photochemical reaction taking place at the special chlorophyll molecules P_{680} and P_{700} that we will discuss later.

4.3C. Lifetimes

Equations 4.5 through 4.9 represent five competing pathways for the deexcitation of the excited singlet state, $S_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$, and they must all be considered when predicting its lifetime We also note that while all reactions are theoretically reversible, the transitions represented by these equations involve substantial decreases in free energy, so they are rarely reversed due to the energy barrier that would have to be overcome. In this section we will use rate constants and lifetimes of the individual competing pathways to predict the rate constant and lifetime of the excited state. The development and the equations are as follows:

Development	Eq. No.
Disappearance of excited singlet state	4.10
Integration	4.11
Reexpression using lifetime	4.12
Relation between rate constants and lifetimes	4.13, 4.14
Reexpression of general deexcitation equation	4.15

Assuming that each deexcitation process is first order and that no reaction leads to the formation of $S_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$, the disappearance of the excited singlet state then satisfies the following first-order relation:

$$-\frac{dS_{(\pi,\pi^*)}}{dt} = (k_1 + k_2 + k_3 + k_4 + k_5)S_{(\pi,\pi^*)} \tag{4.10}$$

where the various k_j's in Equation 4.10 are the rate constants for the five individual decay reactions (Eqs. 4.5 through 4.9). After multiplying both sides of Equation 4.10 by $-dt/S_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$, leading to $dS_{(\pi,\pi^*)}/S_{(\pi,\pi^*)} = -(k_1 + k_2 + k_3 + k_4 + k_5)dt$, we then integrate, leading to $\ln S_{(\pi,\pi^*)}|_0^t = -(k_1 + k_2 + k_3 + k_4 + k_5)t$ (see Appendix III, Section III.F). We next take exponentials of both sides followed by rearrangement, which leads to the following expression for the time dependence of the number of molecules in the excited singlet state:

$$S_{(\pi,\pi^*)}(t) = S_{(\pi,\pi^*)}(0)e^{-(k_1 + k_2 + k_3 + k_4 + k_5)t} \tag{4.11}$$

where $S_{(\pi,\pi^*)}(0)$ represents the number of molecules in the excited singlet state when the illumination ceases ($t = 0$), and $S_{(\pi,\pi^*)}(t)$ is the number of excited singlet states remaining at a subsequent time t. Relations such as Equation 4.11—showing the amount of some state remaining at various times after illumination or other treatment—are extremely important for describing processes with first-order rate constants.

Because the lifetime of an excited state is the time required for the number of excited molecules to decrease to 1/*e* of the initial value (Fig. 4-11), $S_{(\pi,\pi^*)}(t)$ in Equation 4.11 equals $(1/e)S_{(\pi,\pi^*)}(0)$ when *t* equals the lifetime τ; that is,

$$S_{(\pi,\pi^*)}(\tau) = e^{-1}S_{(\pi,\pi^*)}(0) = S_{(\pi,\pi^*)}(0)e^{-(k_1 + k_2 + k_3 + k_4 + k_5)\tau} \quad (4.12)$$

which, considering the two exponent of *e*, leads to the following relationship:

$$(k_1 + k_2 + k_3 + k_4 + k_5)\tau = 1 \quad (4.13)$$

Equation 4.13 indicates that the greater is the rate constant for any particular deexcitation process, the shorter is the lifetime of the excited state.

Equation 4.13 can be generalized to include all competing reactions, leading to the following expression for the lifetime:

$$\frac{1}{\tau} = k = \sum_j k_j = \sum_j \frac{1}{\tau_j} \quad (4.14)$$

where k_j is the first-order rate constant for the *j*th deexcitation process and τ_j is its lifetime ($\tau_j = 1/k_j$). Also, τ is the lifetime of the excited state, and *k* in Equation 4.14 is the overall rate constant for its decay. Using Equation 4.14 we can reexpress Equation 4.11 as follows:

$$S_{(\pi,\pi^*)}(t) = S_{(\pi,\pi^*)}(0)e^{-kt} = S_{(\pi,\pi^*)}(0)e^{-t/\tau} \quad (4.15)$$

Equations 4.13 and 4.14 indicate that, when more than one deexcitation process is possible, τ is less than the lifetime of any individual competing reaction acting alone. In other words, because each deexcitation reaction is independent of the others, the observed rate of decay or disappearance of an excited state is faster than deactivation by any single competing reaction acting by itself.

If the rate constant for a particular reaction is much larger than for its competitors, the excited state becomes deexcited predominantly by that process. As an example, we will consider an excited triplet state of a molecule that shows delayed fluorescence. Suppose that the lifetime for phosphorescence, τ_P, is 10^{-2} s, in which case k_P is 100 s^{-1}. When sufficient thermal energy is supplied, $T_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ can be raised in energy to an excited singlet state, which could then emit "delayed" fluorescence if $S_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ decays to the ground state by emitting electromagnetic radiation. Suppose that the rate constant ($k_{T^* \to S^*}$) for the transition from $T_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ to $S_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ is 20 s^{-1}. By Equation 4.14, *k* for these two competing pathways is 100 s^{-1} + 20 s^{-1}, or 120 s^{-1}, which corresponds to a lifetime of 1/(120 s^{-1}), or 0.008 s. Suppose that another molecule, which can readily take on the excitation of $T_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ of the original species, is introduced into the solution—k_{transfer} might be 10^4 s^{-1}. Because of the relatively large rate constant, such a molecule "quenches" the phosphorescence and delayed fluorescence originating from $T_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ (i.e., its decay pathway predominates over the other competing processes), so it is generally referred to as a *quencher*. For the three pathways indicated, the overall rate constant is 100 s^{-1} + 20 s^{-1} + 10^4 s^{-1}, or

essentially $10^4\ s^{-1}$. The deexcitation here is dominated by the quencher because $k_{transfer}$ is much greater than $k_P + k_{T^* \to S^*}$.

4.3D. Quantum Yields

A *quantum yield* (or *quantum efficiency*), Φ, is often used to describe the deexcitation processes following absorption of light. Here Φ_i represents the fraction of molecules in some excited state that will decay by the ith deexcitation reaction out of all the possible competing pathways (each molecule must use some pathway):

$$\Phi_i = \frac{\text{number of molecules using } i\text{th deexcitation reaction}}{\text{number of excited molecules}} = \frac{k_i}{\sum_j k_j} = \frac{\tau}{\tau_i} \tag{4.16}$$

Equation 4.16 indicates that the rate constant for a particular pathway determines what fraction of the molecules in a given excited state will use that deexcitation process. Hence k_i determines the quantum yield for the ith deexcitation pathway. From Equation 4.14 and the definition of τ_j given previously, we can also indicate such competition among pathways using lifetimes (see Eq. 4.16). The shorter the lifetime for a particular deexcitation pathway, the larger will be the fraction of the molecules using that pathway, and hence the higher will be its quantum yield. Finally, by Equations 4.14 and 4.16, the sum of the quantum yields for all the competing deexcitation pathways, $\sum_i \Phi_i$, equals 1.

To illustrate the use of Equation 4.16, let us consider the quantum yield for chlorophyll fluorescence, Φ_F. The fluorescence lifetime τ_F of the lower excited singlet state of chlorophyll is 1.5×10^{-8} s, and the observed lifetime τ for deexcitation of this excited state in ether is 0.5×10^{-8} s. By Equation 4.16, the expected quantum yield for fluorescence is $(0.5 \times 10^{-8}\ \text{s})/(1.5 \times 10^{-8}\ \text{s})$, or 0.33, which is consistent with the observed Φ_F of 0.32 for the fluorescence deexcitation of chlorophyll in ether.

4.4. Absorption Spectra and Action Spectra

The absorption of radiation causes a molecule to go from its ground state to an excited state in which one of the electrons enters an orbital of higher energy. We have so far considered that both the ground state and the excited states occur at specific energy levels, as is indicated by the horizontal lines in Figure 4-9 for chlorophyll. This leads to a consideration of whether only a very limited number of wavelengths are absorbed. For instance, are 430 nm and 680 nm the only wavelengths absorbed by chlorophyll (Fig. 4-9)? We will find that each electronic energy level is divided or split into various discrete levels that differ in energy. The largest splitting is due to *vibrational sublevels*. Vibrational sublevels affect the wavelengths of light involved in photosynthesis and other photochemical processes.

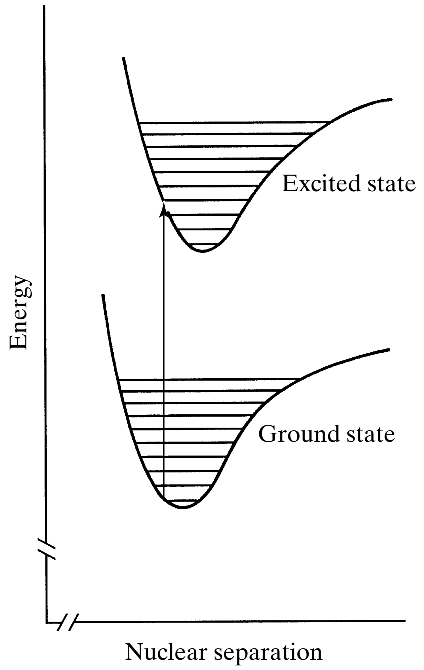


Figure 4-12. Energy curves for the ground state and an excited state, showing the range of nuclear separations and the different energies for the various vibrational sublevels. The vertical arrow represents a transition that is caused by the absorption of a photon and that is consistent with the Franck–Condon principle. In this text we will use the same energy spacing between vibrational sublevels in both the ground state and the excited state of some molecular species (the spacing actually tends to decrease for the higher excited sublevels).

Vibrational sublevels are the result of the vibration of atoms in a molecule, which affects the total energy of the molecule. We can describe this atomic oscillation by the accompanying change in the internuclear distance. Therefore, we will refer to an energy level diagram indicating the range of positions, or trajectories, for the vibrating nuclei (Fig. 4-12). The trajectories of such nuclear vibrations are quantized; that is, only specific vibrations can occur, so only certain energies are possible for the vibrational sublevels of a given state.

For usual plant temperatures, essentially all of the molecules are in the ground or unexcited state. Moreover, these molecules are nearly all in the lowest vibrational sublevel of the ground state—another consequence of the Boltzmann energy distribution (see Eq. 3.22). The absorption of a photon can cause a transition of the molecule from the lowest vibrational sublevel of the ground state to one of the vibrational sublevels of the excited state. The specific sublevel reached depends on the energy of the absorbed photon. The probability that a photon will be absorbed also depends on its energy. Consideration of this absorption probability as a function of wavelength yields an *absorption spectrum* for that particular molecule. The effect of light absorption on some response or on the rate of a process, when presented as a function of wavelength, is an *action spectrum*.

4.4A. Vibrational Sublevels

Various vibrational sublevels of both the ground state and an excited state of a molecule are schematically indicated in Figure 4-12. In principle, such an energy level diagram can be prepared for any pigment, such as chlorophyll, carotenoid, or phytochrome. Energy level diagrams are extremely useful for predicting which electronic transitions are most likely to accompany the absorption of light. They can also help explain why certain wavelengths predominate in the absorption process.

The abscissa in Figure 4-12 represents the distance between a pair of adjacent nuclei in some molecule that are vibrating back and forth with respect to each other. It can be obtained by imagining that one nucleus is situated at the origin of the coordinate system while the position of the other nucleus is plotted relative to this origin. The ordinate represents the total energy of an electron that can absorb a photon plus the pair of nuclei involved. Figure 4-12 shows that the excited state is at a higher energy than the ground state and that the two states are split into many vibrational sublevels differing in energy.

Internuclear and interelectronic repulsive forces act against the electrostatic attraction between nuclei and shared electrons, so only a certain range of internuclear separations can occur for a particular bond in a molecule. As the distance between the two nuclei decreases, the nuclei repel each other more and more, and the energy of the molecule increases. Moreover, the clouds of negative charge representing electrons localized on each nucleus have a greater overlap as the internuclear separation decreases, resulting in interelectronic repulsion and likewise an increase in molecular energy. These effects account for the steep rise of the energy curves in Figure 4-12 as nuclear separation becomes less (left-hand side of the figure). At the other extreme, the delocalized (bonding) electrons shared by the two nuclei resist an unlimited increase in nuclear separation, which diminishes the attractive electrostatic interaction between nuclei and electrons—such an increase in internuclear distance corresponds to a stretching of the chemical bond. Thus the energy curves in Figure 4-12 also rise as the internuclear distance becomes greater (right-hand side of the figure). Because of these two opposing tendencies, the range of possible nuclear separations is confined to an energy trough. It is within these energy curves—one for the ground state and another one for the excited state—that the trajectories of the nuclear vibrations occur.

A horizontal line in Figure 4-12 represents the range of nuclear separations corresponding to a specific vibrational sublevel; that is, nuclei vibrate back and forth along the distance indicated by a horizontal line. As is evident in the figure, both the ground and the excited states have many vibrational sublevels differing in energy. For the upper vibrational sublevels of a given state, the nuclei vibrate over longer distances (i.e., there is a more extensive range of nuclear separations in Fig. 4-12), which also corresponds to higher vibrational energies. Because the excited state has an electron in an antibonding orbital, it has a greater mean internuclear separation than does the ground state. This increase in bond length is shown in Figure 4-12 by a slight

displacement to greater nuclear separations, namely, to the right, for the upper curve.

The direction of nuclear motion is reversed at the extremities of the vibrational pathways (horizontal lines in Fig. 4-12), so the velocity of the nuclei must be zero at these turning points. As the turning point at either end of the oscillation range is approached, the nuclei begin to slow down and eventually stop before reversing their direction of motion. Consequently, the nuclei spend most of their time at or near the extreme ends of their trajectory. Therefore, a photon is most likely to arrive at the molecule when the nuclei are at or near the extremes of their vibrational range.[7] Because of our probability consideration, the electronic transition resulting from the absorption of a photon, represented by the vertical arrow in Figure 4-12, has been initiated from one of the ends of the nuclear oscillation range for the lowest vibrational sublevel of the ground state. This arrow begins from the lowest sublevel because nearly all ground state molecules are in the lowest vibrational sublevel at the temperatures encountered in plants, which, as we noted previously, is a consequence of the Boltzmann energy distribution.

During light absorption, the energy of the photon is transferred to some electron in the molecule. Because the molecular orbital describing the trajectory of an electron in the excited state has a small, but finite, probability of spatially overlapping with the nuclei, an interaction is possible between the excited electron and the nuclei over which it is delocalized. Such interactions generally take place over a rather short time period ($\sim 10^{-13}$ s). An interaction between an energetic electron and the nuclei can cause the excitation of nuclei to higher energy vibrational states. In fact, the transition represented by the arrow in Figure 4-12 corresponds to both the excitation of an electron leading to an excited state of the molecule and the subsequent excitation of the nuclei to some excited vibrational sublevel. Thus, part of the energy of the photon is rapidly passed to nuclear vibrations. The length of the arrow in Figure 4-12 is proportional to the light energy (or quantum) added to the molecule and therefore represents the energy distributed to the nuclei plus that remaining with the excited electron. Next, we will argue about which vibrational sublevel of the excited state has the highest probability of being reached by the excitation process.

4.4B. Franck–Condon Principle

In 1926 James Franck and Edward Condon each enunciated a principle, based mainly on classical mechanics, to help rationalize the various bands in absorption spectra and fluorescence emission spectra. We will direct our attention to the nuclei to discuss the effect of the quantized modes of nuclear

7. Quantum-mechanical calculations beyond the scope of this text lead to somewhat different conclusions, especially for the lowest vibrational sublevel.

vibration (see the energy level diagram in Fig. 4-12). The Franck–Condon principle states that the nuclei change neither their *position* nor their *velocity* during the transitions for which the absorption of a photon is most probable. We can use this principle to predict which vibrational sublevels of the excited state are most likely to be involved in the electronic transitions accompanying light absorption.

First we consider that part of the Franck–Condon principle stating that nuclei do not change their relative position for the most probable electronic transition caused by light absorption. Because a vertical line in Figure 4-12 represents no change in nuclear separation, the absorption of a photon has been indicated by a vertical arrow. This condition of constant internuclear distance during light absorption is satisfied most often when the nuclei are moving slowly or have stopped at the extremes of their oscillation range. Thus in Figure 4-12 the origin of the arrow indicating an electronic transition is at one of the turning points or ends of the lowest vibrational sublevel of the ground state, and the tip is drawn to an extremity of one of the vibrational sublevels in the excited state (the fourth vibrational sublevel for the particular case illustrated).

The other condition embodied in the Franck–Condon principle is that a photon has the greatest chance of being absorbed when the velocity (a vector) of the vibrating nuclei does not change. In other words, absorption is maximal when the nuclei are moving in the same direction and at the same speed in both the ground state and the excited state. Again, this condition has the greatest probability of being met when the nuclei are moving slowly or not at all, as occurs at the turning points for a nuclear oscillation, because the nuclei spend the most time at a particular velocity under such conditions. Therefore, the most probable electronic transition represented in a diagram such as Figure 4-12 is a vertical line that originates from one of the ends of the horizontal line representing the range of nuclear separations for the lowest vibrational sublevel of the ground state and terminates at the end of the vibrational trajectory for some sublevel of the excited state.

Another way to view the Franck–Condon principle is to consider that the light absorption event is so rapid that the nuclei do not have a chance to move during it. The absorption of a photon requires about 10^{-15} s (Section 4.3). In contrast, the period for one nuclear vibration back and forth along an oscillation range (such as those represented by horizontal lines in Fig. 4-12) is generally somewhat longer than 10^{-13} s. Therefore, the nuclei cannot move an appreciable distance during the time necessary for the absorption of a photon, especially when the nuclei are moving relatively slowly near the ends of their vibrational trajectory. Also, nuclear velocity would not change appreciably in a time interval as short as 10^{-15} s.

The time frame for nuclear oscillations has far-reaching consequences for energy dissipation. In particular, as the nuclei oscillate back and forth along their trajectories, they can interact with other nuclei. These encounters make possible the transfer of energy from one nucleus to another (within the same molecule or to adjacent molecules). Thus the time for one cycle of a nuclear vibration, approximately 10^{-13} s, is an estimate of the time in which excess vibrational energy can be dissipated as heat by interactions with other

nuclei. As excess energy is exchanged by such processes, the part of the molecule depicted in Figure 4-12 soon reaches the lowest vibrational sublevel of the excited state; these transitions within the same electronic state (e.g., $S_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$) are usually complete in about 10^{-12} s. Fluorescence lifetimes generally are on the order of 10^{-8} s, so an excited singlet state gets to its lowest vibrational sublevel before appreciable deexcitation can occur by fluorescence. The rapid dissipation of excess vibrational energy causes some of the energy of the absorbed photon to be released as heat. Therefore, fluorescence is generally of lower energy (longer wavelength) than the absorbed light, as we will show for chlorophyll in Chapter 5 (Section 5.1B).

The Franck–Condon principle predicts the most likely transition caused by the absorption of light, but others do occur. These other transitions become statistically less probable the more that the nuclear position or velocity changes during the absorption of the photon. Transitions from the ground state to either higher or lower vibrational sublevels in the excited state occur with a lower probability than transitions to the optimal sublevel. Therefore, the absorption of light is not as great at the wavelengths that excite the molecule to such vibrational sublevels of the excited state. Moreover, some transitions begin from an excited vibrational sublevel of the ground state. We can calculate the fraction of the ground state molecules in the various vibrational sublevels from the Boltzmann energy distribution, $n(E) = n_{\text{total}}e^{-E/RT}$ (Eq. 3.22b).

For many molecules the vibrational sublevels of both the ground state and the excited state are 10 to 20 kJ mol^{-1} apart in energy. Consequently, as the wavelength of incident light is increased or decreased from that for the most intense absorption, transitions involving other vibrational sublevels become important, e.g., at approximately 15 kJ mol^{-1} intervals. An energy difference of 15 kJ mol^{-1} between two photons corresponds to a difference in wavelength of about 40 nm near the middle of the visible region (green or yellow; Table 4-1). Such wavelength spacings can be seen by the various peaks near the major absorption bands of chlorophyll (Fig. 5-3) or the three peaks in the absorption spectra of typical carotenoids (Fig. 5-5). In summary, the amount of light absorbed is maximal at a certain wavelength corresponding to the most probable transition predicted by the Franck–Condon principle. Transitions from other vibrational sublevels of the ground state and to other sublevels of the excited state occur less frequently and help create an absorption spectrum, with various absorption bands, that is characteristic of a particular molecule.[8]

8. Electromagnetic radiation in the far infrared region does not have enough energy to cause an electronic transition, but its absorption can excite a molecule to an excited vibrational sublevel of the ground state. For instance, by Equation 4.2b ($E_\lambda = Nhc/\lambda_{vac}$) IR at 4 μm has an energy of (119,600 kJ mol^{-1} nm)/(4000 nm) or 30 kJ mol^{-1}. Absorption of such radiation can excite a molecule from the lowest vibrational sublevel of the ground state to its third vibrational sublevel when the vibration sublevels have a typical energy spacing of 15 kJ mol^{-1}.

4.4C. Absorption Bands, Absorption Coefficients, and Beer's Law

Our discussion of light absorption has so far been primarily concerned with transitions from the ground state energy level to energy levels of excited states, which we just expanded to include the occurrence of vibrational sublevels of the states. In addition, vibrational sublevels are subdivided into *rotational* states. In particular, the motion of the atomic nuclei within a molecule can be described by quantized rotational states of specific energy, leading to the subdivision of a given vibrational sublevel into a number of rotational sub-sublevels. The energy increments between rotational states are generally about 1 kJ mol^{-1} (approximately 3 nm in wavelength in the visible region). Further broadening or blurring of absorption lines because of a continuum of *translational* energies due to thermal motion of the whole molecule is generally much less, often about 0.1 kJ mol^{-1}. Moreover, interactions with the solvent or other neighboring molecules can affect the distribution of electrons in a particular molecule and, consequently, can shift the position of the various energy levels. The magnitude of the shifts caused by intermolecular interactions varies considerably and can be 5 kJ mol^{-1} or more. For example, most biological pigments are associated with proteins, which affects the energies of both the ground state and the excited states.

The photons absorbed in an electronic transition involving specific vibrational sublevels—including the range of energies due to the various rotational sub-sublevels and other shifts—give rise to an *absorption band*. These wavelengths represent the transition from a vibrational sublevel of the ground state to some vibrational sublevel of an excited state. A plot of the relative efficiency for light absorption as a function of wavelength is an *absorption spectrum*, which usually includes more than one absorption band. Such bands represent transitions to different vibrational sublevels and possibly to different excited states. The smoothness of the absorption bands of most pigment molecules indicates that a great range of photon energies can correspond to the transition of an electron from the ground state to some excited state (see absorption spectra in Figs. 4-16, 5-3, 5-5, and 5-8).[9] Because of the large effects that intermolecular interactions can have on electronic energy levels, the solvent should always be specified when presenting an absorption band or spectrum.

Absorption bands and spectra indicate how light absorption varies with wavelength. The absorption at a particular wavelength by a certain species is quantitatively described using an *absorption coefficient,* ε_λ (ε_λ is also

9. To "sharpen" an absorption spectrum, the translational broadening of absorption bands can be reduced by substantially decreasing the temperature, such as by using liquid nitrogen (boiling point of −196°C) to cool the sample. Also, the reduction in temperature decreases the number of the absorbing molecules in excited vibrational sublevels and higher energy rotational sub-sublevels of the ground state—we can predict the relative populations of these states using the Boltzmann factor (see Eq. 3.22).

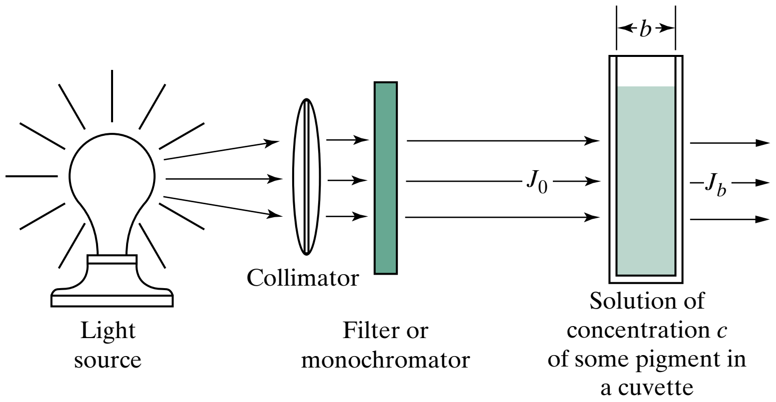


Figure 4-13. Quantities involved in light absorption by a solution as described by Beer's law, $\log(J_0/J_b) = \varepsilon_\lambda cb$ (Eq. 4.19a).

referred to as an *extinction coefficient*). Because of its usefulness, we next derive an expression incorporating ε_λ.

Let us consider a monochromatic beam of parallel light with flux density J. Because "monochromatic" refers to light of a single wavelength, J can be expressed as either a photon or an energy flux density. Some of the light can be absorbed in passing through a solution, so the emerging beam will generally have a lower flux density. We will assume that scattering and reflection are negligible, an assumption that must be checked when absorption properties are determined. In a small path length dx along the direction of the beam, J decreases by dJ due to absorption by a substance having a concentration c. Johann Lambert is often credited with recognizing in 1768 that $-dJ/J$ is proportional to dx—actually, Jean Bouguer had expressed this in 1729—and in 1852 August Beer noted that $-dJ/J$ is proportional to c. Upon putting these two observations together, we obtain the following expression:

$$-\frac{dJ}{J} = k_\lambda c dx \tag{4.17}$$

where k_λ is a proportionality coefficient referring to a particular wavelength, and the negative sign indicates that the flux density is decreased by absorption. We can integrate Equation 4.17 across a solution of a particular concentration, which leads to

$$-\int_{J_0}^{J_b} \frac{dJ}{J} = -\ln\frac{J_b}{J_0} = \int_0^b k_\lambda c dx = k_\lambda cb \tag{4.18}$$

where J_0 is the flux density of the incident beam, and J_b is its flux density after traversing a distance b through the solution (see Fig. 4-13).

Equation 4.18 is usually recast into a slightly more convenient form. We can replace the natural logarithm by the common logarithm (ln = 2.303 log; also, $\ln(x/y) = -\ln(y/x)$; see Appendices II and III) and can replace $k_\lambda/2.303$

by the absorption coefficient at a specific wavelength, ε_λ. Equation 4.18 then becomes

$$A_\lambda = \log \frac{J_0}{J_b} = \varepsilon_\lambda cb \tag{4.19a}$$

where A_λ is the absorbance (colloquially, the "optical density") of the solution at a particular wavelength. When more than one absorbing substance is present in a solution, we can generalize Equation 4.19a to give

$$A_\lambda = \log \frac{J_0}{J_b} = \sum_j \varepsilon_{\lambda_j} c_j b \tag{4.19b}$$

where c_j is the concentration of substance j and ε_{λ_j} is its absorption coefficient at wavelength λ. Equation 4.19 is usually referred to as Beer's law, although it is also called the Beer–Lambert law, the Lambert–Beer law, and even the Bouguer–Lambert–Beer law.

According to Beer's law, the absorbance at some wavelength is proportional to the concentration of the absorbing substance, to its absorption coefficient at that wavelength, and to the optical path length b (Fig. 4-13). Values of ε_λ for organic compounds can equal or exceed 10^4 m^2 mol^{-1} in the visible region. If ε_λ at some wavelength is known for a particular solute, we can determine its concentration from the measured absorbance at that wavelength by using Beer's law (Eq. 4.19a). For laboratory absorption studies, the optical path length b is often 1 cm and c_j is expressed in mol liter^{-1} (i.e., molarity), in which case ε_{λ_j} has units of liter mol^{-1} cm^{-1} and is referred to as the *molar absorption* (or *extinction*) *coefficient* (1 liter mol^{-1} cm^{-1} = 1 M^{-1} cm^{-1} = 10^{-3} mM^{-1} cm^{-1} = 10^3 cm^2 mol^{-1} = 10^{-1} m^2 mol^{-1}). The absorbing solute is usually dissolved in a solvent that does not absorb at the wavelengths under consideration.

4.4D. Application of Beer's Law

As an application of Beer's law, we will estimate the average chlorophyll concentration in leaf cells. The palisade and the spongy mesophyll cells in the leaf section portrayed in Figure 1-2 can correspond to an average thickness of chlorophyll-containing cells of about 200 μm. The maximum molar absorption coefficient ε_λ in the red or the blue bands of chlorophyll (see Figs. 4-9 and 5-3) is about 10^4 m^2 mol^{-1}. At the peaks of the absorption bands, about 99% of the incident red or blue light can be absorbed by chlorophyll in a leaf. This corresponds to having an emergent flux density J_b equal to 1% of the incident flux density J_0, so the absorbance A_λ in Equation 4.19a equals log(100/1) or 2—for simplicity, we are ignoring absorption by pigments other than chlorophyll. Using Beer's law (Eq. 4.19a), we find that the average chlorophyll concentration is

$$\begin{aligned} c &= \frac{A_\lambda}{\varepsilon_\lambda b} = \frac{(2)}{(10^4\ \text{m}^2\ \text{mol}^{-1})(200 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m})} \\ &= 1\ \text{mol m}^{-3} \qquad (1\ \text{mM}) \end{aligned}$$

a value that is characteristic of the average chlorophyll concentration in the photosynthesizing cells of many leaves.

Chlorophyll is located only in the chloroplasts, which occupy about 3 or 4% of the volume of a mesophyll cell in a leaf of a higher plant. The average concentration of chlorophyll in chloroplasts is thus about 30 times higher than the estimate of the chlorophyll concentration in a leaf, or approximately 30 mol m^{-3}. A typical light path across the thickness of a chloroplast (Fig. 1-10) is about 2 μm. Using Beer's law (Eq. 4.19a), we find that the absorbance of a single chloroplast in the red or the blue bands is about

$$\begin{aligned} A_\lambda &= (10^4\ \mathrm{m^2\ mol^{-1}})(30\ \mathrm{mol\ m^{-3}})(2 \times 10^{-6}\ \mathrm{m}) \\ &= 0.6 = \log \frac{J_0}{J_b} \end{aligned}$$

Hence, J_b equals J_0/(antilog 0.6), or $0.25J_0$. Therefore, approximately 75% of the incident red or blue light at the peak of absorption bands is absorbed by a single chloroplast, which helps to explain why individual chloroplasts appear green under a light microscope.

4.4E. Conjugation

Light absorption by organic molecules generally involves transitions of π electrons to excited states for which the electrons are in π^* orbitals. These π electrons occur in double bonds. The more double bonds that there are in some molecule, the greater is the probability for light absorption by that substance. Indeed, both the effectiveness in absorbing electromagnetic radiation and the wavelengths absorbed are affected by the number of double bonds in *conjugation*, where conjugation refers to the alternation of single and double bonds (e.g., C—C═C—C═C—C═C—C) along some part of the molecule. For the molecules that we will consider, this alternation of single and double bonds involves mostly C atoms, but it also includes N atoms and O atoms. The absorption coefficient ε_λ increases with the number of double bonds in conjugation because more delocalized (shared) π electrons can then interact with light (each π bond contains two electrons, so the number of excitable electrons increases proportionally with the number of double bonds in conjugation). Moreover, as the number of double bonds in the conjugated system increases, the absorption bands shift to longer wavelengths.

To help understand why the number of double bonds in conjugation affects the wavelength position for an absorption band, let us consider the shifts in energy for the various orbitals as the number of π electrons in a conjugated system increases. The various π orbitals in a conjugated system occur at different energy levels, with the average energy remaining about the same as for the π orbital in an isolated double bond not part of a conjugated system (Fig. 4-14). The more double bonds that are in a conjugated system, the more π orbitals that there are in it, and the greater is the energy range from the lowest- to the highest-energy π orbital. Because the average energy of the π orbitals in a conjugated system does not markedly depend on the number of double bonds, the energy of the highest energy π orbital increases

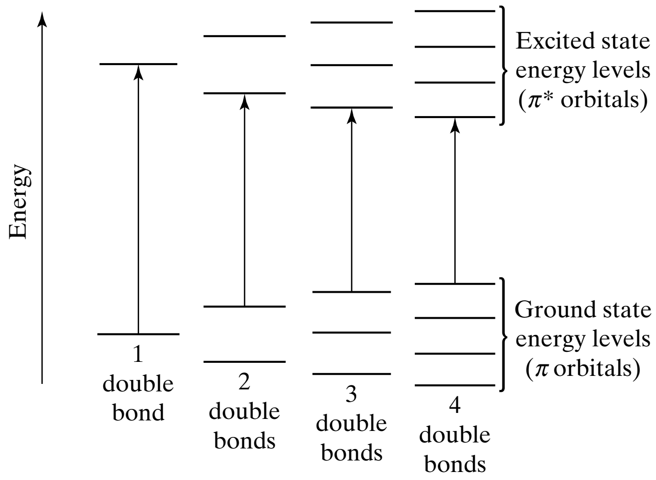


Figure 4-14. Effect on the energy levels of π and π^* orbitals as the number of double bonds in conjugation increases. The vertical arrows represent the most probable transitions caused by the absorption of photons. Note that the energy required decreases and hence the wavelength increases as the number of double bonds in conjugation increases.

as the number of double bonds in conjugation increases. The π^* orbitals are similarly split into various energy levels (also diagrammed in Fig. 4-14). Again, the range of energy levels about the mean for these π^* orbitals increases as the number of double bonds in the conjugated system increases. Consequently, the more π^* orbitals that are available in the conjugated system, the lower in energy will be the lowest of these.

In Figure 4-14 we present transitions from the highest-energy π orbital to the lowest-energy π^* orbital for a series of molecules differing in the number of double bonds in conjugation. We note that the more delocalized π electrons that there are in the conjugated system, the less is the energy that is required for a transition. This is illustrated in Figure 4-14 by a decrease in the length of the vertical arrow (which represents an electronic transition) as the number of double bonds in conjugation increases. Moreover, the most likely or probable electronic transition in this case is the one involving the least amount of energy; that is, the excitation from the highest-energy π orbital to the lowest-energy π^* orbital is the transition that predominates (the transition probability depends on the spatial overlap between the quantum-mechanical wave functions describing the trajectories of the electrons in the two states, and such overlap is relatively large between the highest-energy π orbital and the lowest-energy π^* one).

The decrease in energy separation within a molecule between the π orbitals and the π^* orbitals as the number of double bonds in conjugation increases (Fig. 4-14) accounts for the accompanying shift of the peaks of the absorption bands toward longer wavelengths. For example, an isolated double bond (C—C=C—C) generally absorbs maximally near 185 nm in the ultraviolet and has a maximum absorption coefficient of nearly $10^3\ m^2\ mol^{-1}$. For two double bonds in conjugation (C—C=C—C=C—C), the maximum absorption coefficient doubles,

and the wavelength position for maximum absorption shifts to about 225 nm, that is, toward longer wavelengths. As the number of double bonds in conjugation in straight-chain hydrocarbons increases from three to five to seven to nine, the center of the absorption band for these hydrocarbons (when they are dissolved in hexane) shifts from approximately 265 to 325 to 375 to 415 nm, respectively. The maximum absorption coefficient is approximately proportional to the number of double bonds in the conjugated system, so it increases to almost 10^4 m^2 mol^{-1} for the hydrocarbon containing nine double bonds in conjugation. For molecules to absorb strongly in the visible region, an extensive conjugated system of double bonds is necessary, as is the case for pigments such as the chlorophylls and the carotenoids discussed in Chapter 5 (Sections 5.1A and 5.2A).

4.4F. Action Spectra

The relative effectiveness of various wavelengths in producing a specified response is of basic importance in photobiology and is presented in an *action spectrum*. An action spectrum is complementary to an absorption spectrum, the latter being the relative probability for the absorption of different wavelengths (e.g., ε_λ versus λ). When many different types of pigments are present, the action spectrum for a particular response can differ greatly from the absorption spectrum of the entire system. However, the Grotthuss–Draper law implies that an action spectrum should resemble the absorption spectrum of the substance that absorbs the light responsible for the specific effect or action being considered.

To obtain an action spectrum for some particular response, we could expose the system to the same photon flux density at each of a series of wavelength intervals and measure the resulting effect or action. The action could be the amount of O_2 evolved, the fraction of seeds germinating, or some other measured change. We could then plot the responses obtained as a function of their respective wavelength intervals to see which wavelengths are most effective in leading to that "action." Another way to obtain an action spectrum is to plot the reciprocal of the number of photons required in the various wavelength intervals to give a particular response. If twice as many photons are needed at one wavelength compared with a second wavelength, the action spectrum has half the height at the first wavelength, and thus the relative effectiveness of various wavelengths can be presented (see Fig. 4-17). Using the latter approach, the photon flux density is varied until the response is the same for each wavelength interval. This is an important point—if it is to be a true action spectrum, the action or effect measured must be linear with photon flux density for each of the wavelength intervals used; that is, we must not approach light saturation, where the measured action per photon becomes similar at the various wavelengths (see Fig. 3-16a for the analogous saturation of solute uptake or enzyme reaction rate). In the extreme case of light saturation at all wavelengths, the action spectrum is flat because the response is then the same at each wavelength.

We can compare the action spectrum of some response with the absorption spectra of the various pigments suspected of being involved to see which pigment is responsible. If the measured action spectrum closely matches the known absorption spectrum of some molecule, light absorbed by that molecule may be leading to the action considered. Examples for which action spectra have been important in understanding the photochemical aspects of plant physiology include the study of photosynthesis (Chapter 5, Section 5.4C) and investigations of the responses mediated by the pigment phytochrome, to which we now turn.

4.4G. Absorption and Action Spectra of Phytochrome

Phytochrome is an important pigment that regulates photomorphogenic aspects of plant growth and development, such as seed germination, stem elongation, leaf expansion, formation of certain pigments, chloroplast development, and flowering. Many of these processes can be saturated by low amounts of light, such as 500 μmol m^{-2} of red light (the photons in the visible for $\frac{1}{4}$ second of full sunlight). High irradiance levels can also lead to effects mediated by phytochrome. We will direct our attention first to the structure of phytochrome and then to the absorption spectra for two of its forms. The absorption spectra will subsequently be compared with the action spectra for the promotion and for the inhibition of seed germination of lettuce (*Lactuca sativa*).

Phytochrome consists of a protein to which the *chromophore*, or light-absorbing part of the pigment, is covalently bound (Fig. 4-15a). The chro-

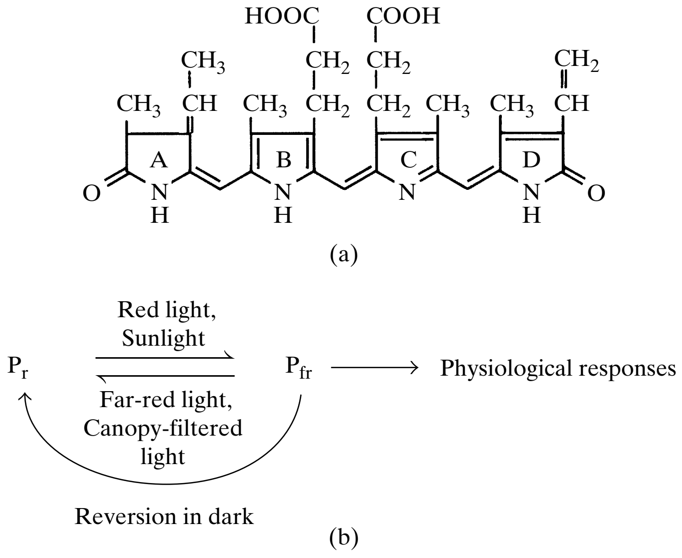
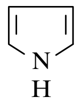


Figure 4-15. Phytochrome structure, interconversions, and associated physiological responses. (a) Structure for P_r, indicating the tetrapyrrole forming the chromophore and the convention for lettering the rings; and (b) light and dark interconversions of phytochrome, indicating reactions promoted by the physiologically active form, P_{fr}, such as promotion of seed germination, inhibition of *etiolation* (excess stem elongation in low light), promotion of leaf expansion, and inhibition of flowering.

mophore is a *tetrapyrrole*, as also occurs for the chlorophylls and the phycobilins that we will discuss in Chapter 5 (Sections 5.1A and 5.2B). *Pyrrole* refers to a five-membered ring having four carbons, one nitrogen, and two double bonds:



Light absorption leads to a photoisomerization about the double bond between rings C and D, which apparently underlies the conversion of phytochrome to its physiologically active form (Fig. 4-15b).

The chromophore of phytochrome is highly conjugated, as the structure for P_r in Figure 4-15a indicates (P stands for pigment and the subscript r indicates that it absorbs in the red region). P_r has nine double bonds in conjugation. Other double bonds are not in the conjugated system, because only those alternating with single bonds along the molecule are part of the main conjugation. For instance, the double bond at the top of pyrrole ring C is a branch, or cross-conjugation, to the main conjugation and only slightly affects the wavelength position for maximum absorption (semi-empirical rules exist for predicting the wavelength position of maximum absorption based on all double bonds that occur, including those in branches to the main conjugated system). Because of its extensive conjugation, phytochrome absorbs in the visible region.

P_r has a major absorption band in the red (Fig. 4-16), with a peak near 667 nm (the exact location varies with the plant species). Upon absorption of red light, P_r can be converted to a form having an absorption band in the so-called "far-red," P_{fr}, with a peak near 725 nm (Figs. 4-15 and 4-16). Actually, the absorption bands of both pigments are rather broad, and many different wavelengths can be absorbed by each of them. As is indicated in Figure 4-16, the maximum absorption coefficients are about 10^4 m^2 mol^{-1} for both P_r

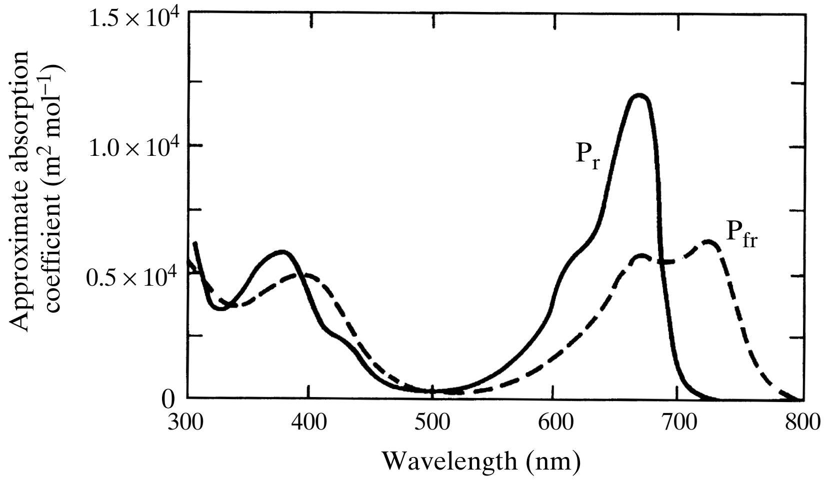


Figure 4-16. Absorption spectra for the red (P_r) and the far-red (P_{fr}) absorbing forms of phytochrome in aqueous solutions. Note that the absorption spectra presented in this text were obtained at or near room temperature. [Data are replotted from Butler et al., 1965; used by permission.]

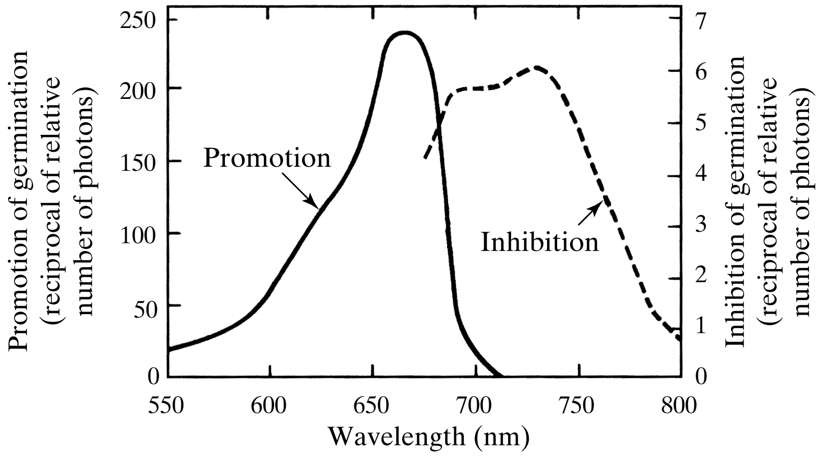


Figure 4-17. Action spectra for the promotion of lettuce seed germination and its reversal, or "inhibition," by subsequent illumination. [Data are replotted from Hendricks and Borthwick, 1965; used by permission.]

and P_{fr}. The plant pigments that we will consider in Chapter 5 (Sections 5.1 and 5.2) have similar high values of ε_λ.

An action spectrum for seed germination (Fig. 4-17) indicates that a pigment absorbing in the red region promotes the germination of lettuce seeds. Comparing this action spectrum with the absorption spectra given in Figure 4-16, we see that the pigment absorbing the light that promotes seed germination most likely is the P_r form of phytochrome. In particular, light absorption converts P_r to P_{fr}, which leads to the physiological response (Fig. 4-15b). This enhancement can be reversed or inhibited by subsequent irradiation of the seeds with far-red light (Fig. 4-17), which is most efficient (requires the fewest photons) at wavelengths near 725 to 730 nm, similar to the position of the peak in the absorption spectrum of P_{fr} (Fig. 4-16). In summary, both the promotion of lettuce seed germination and the reversal of this promotion are apparently controlled by two forms of phytochrome, P_r and P_{fr}, which can be reversibly interconverted by light. (Germination is not enhanced by red light for seeds of all species; enhancement tends to be more common in small seeds rich in fat that come from wild plants.)

To illustrate the ecological consequences of the phytochrome control of seed germination, let us consider a seed present on the surface of the soil under a dense canopy of leaves. Because of their chlorophyll, leaves absorb red light preferentially to far-red light; thus, very little red light compared with far-red light reaches the seed. The phytochrome in the seed hence occurs predominantly in the P_r form. If this seed were to become exposed to sunlight—as can happen because of a fire or the removal of a shading tree—a larger fraction of the P_r would be converted to the active form, P_{fr} (see Fig. 4-15b). Seed germination would then proceed under light conditions favorable for photosynthesis and thus for growth.

Studies using action spectra have indicated that, on a photon basis, the maximum sensitivity is quite different for the opposing responses attributable to the two forms of phytochrome. (Because the expression of phytochrome action involves a multistep process including intermediates and biochemical reactions, the two responses need not have the same sensitivity; also, at least five different types of phytochrome have been identified.) For lettuce seed germination, about 30 times more far-red photons (e.g., at 730 nm) are required to cause a 50% inhibition than the number of red photons (e.g., at 660 nm) needed to promote seed germination by 50%—compare the different scales used for the ordinates in Figure 4-17. Thus ordinary sunlight is functionally equivalent to red light, because much of the phytochrome is converted to the active form, P_{fr}. Also, P_r has a much larger absorption coefficient in the red region than does P_{fr} (Fig. 4-16). Because light reflected by leaves has a different spectral distribution than that absorbed (Fig. 7-4), the ratio of P_r to P_{fr} can vary between adjacent plants, allowing the "detection" of neighboring plants.

Our discussion of phytochrome leads us to the concept of a *photostationary state*. A photostationary state refers to the relative amounts of interconvertible forms of some pigment that occur in response to a particular steady illumination—such a state might more appropriately be called a "photosteady" state. When illumination is constant, the conversion of P_r to P_{fr} eventually achieves the same rate as the reverse reaction (see Fig. 4-15). The ratio of P_r to P_{fr} for this photostationary state depends on the absorption properties of each form of the pigment for the incident wavelengths (note that the absorption spectra overlap; Fig. 4-16), the number of photons in each wavelength interval, the kinetics of the competing deexcitation reactions, and the kinetics of pigment synthesis or degradation. If the light quality (wavelength distribution) or quantity (amount) were to change to another constant condition, we would shift to a new photostationary state for which P_r/P_{fr} is generally different. Because the ratio of P_r to P_{fr} determines the overall effect of the phytochrome system, a description in terms of photostationary states can be useful for discussing the influences of this developmentally crucial pigment.

4.5. Problems

4.1. Consider electromagnetic radiation with the indicated wavelengths in a vacuum.

A. If λ is 400 nm, how much energy is carried by 10^{20} photons?

B. If a mole of 1800-nm photons is absorbed by 10^{-3} m^3 (1 liter) of water at 0°C, what is the final temperature? Assume that there are no other energy exchanges with the external environment; the volumetric heat capacity of water averages 4.19×10^6 J m^{-3} °C^{-1} over the temperature range involved.

C. A certain optical filter, which passes all wavelengths below 600 nm and absorbs all those above 600 nm, is placed over a radiometric device. If the meter indicates 1 W m^{-2}, what is the maximum photon flux density?

D. What is the illuminance in C expressed in lux (lumens m^{-2})?

4.2. Consider electromagnetic radiation having a frequency of 0.9×10^{15} cycles s^{-1}.

A. The speed of the radiation is 2.0×10^8 m s^{-1} in dense flint glass. What are the wavelengths in a vacuum, in air, and in such glass?

B. Can such radiation cause an $S_{(\pi,\pi)}$ ground state of a pigment to go directly to $T_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$?

C. Can such radiation cause the transition of a π electron to a π^* orbital in a molecule having six double bonds in conjugation?

D. Electromagnetic radiation is often expressed in "wave numbers," which is the frequency divided by the speed of light in a vacuum (i.e., ν/c), which equals $1/\lambda_{vac}$. What is the wave number in m^{-1} in the current case?

4.3. Suppose that the quantum yield for ATP formation—molecules of ATP formed/number of excited chlorophyll molecules—is 0.40 at 680 nm, and the rate of ATP formation is 0.20 mol m^{-2} $hour^{-1}$.

A. What is the minimum photon flux density in μmol m^{-2} s^{-1} at 680 nm?

B. What is the energy flux density under the conditions of A?

C. If light of 430 nm is used, the ground state of chlorophyll, $S_{(\pi,\pi)}$, is excited to $S^b_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$. Suppose that 95% of $S^b_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ goes to $S^a_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ in 10^{-12} s and that the rest of the upper excited singlet state returns to the ground state. What is the energy conversion efficiency of 430-nm light as an energy source for ATP formation compared with 680-nm light?

D. The hydrolysis of ATP to ADP and phosphate under physiological conditions can yield about 45 kJ of free energy mol^{-1}. What wavelength of light has the same amount of energy mol^{-1}?

4.4. Assume that some excited singlet state can become deexcited by three competing processes: (1) fluorescence (lifetime = 10^{-8} s), (2) a radiationless transition to an excited triplet state (5×10^{-9} s), and (3) a radiationless transition to the ground state (10^{-8} s).

A. What is the lifetime of the excited singlet state?

B. What is the maximum quantum yield for all deexcitations that can lead directly or indirectly to electromagnetic radiation?

C. Suppose that the molecule is inserted into a membrane, which adds a deexcitation pathway involving intermolecular transfer of energy from the excited singlet state (rate constant = 10^{12} s^{-1}). What is the new lifetime of the excited singlet state?

4.5. The *cis* isomer of some species has an absorption coefficient of 2.0×10^3 m^2 mol^{-1} at 450 nm, where the spectrophotometer has a photon flux density of 1.0×10^{17} photons m^{-2} s^{-1}.

A. What concentration of the *cis* isomer will absorb 65% of the incident 450-nm light for a cuvette (a transparent vessel used in a spectrophotometer; Fig. 4-13) with an optical path length of 10 mm?

B. What is the absorbance of the solution in A? What would be the absorbance if the flux density at 450 nm were halved?

C. Suppose that the 450-nm light causes a photoisomerization of the *cis* isomer to the *trans* isomer with a quantum yield of 0.50, the other deexcitation pathway being the return to the *cis* form. If the *trans* isomer

did not absorb at 450 nm, what would be the initial rate of decrease of the *cis* isomer and the initial rate of change of absorbance at 450 nm under the conditions of A?

D. If ε_{450} for the *trans* isomer were 10^3 m^2 mol^{-1}, and the 450-nm light led to a photoisomerization of the *trans* isomer with a quantum yield of 0.50 for forming the *cis* isomer, what would be the ratio of *cis* to *trans* after a long time?

4.6. Suppose that the spacing in wave numbers (see Problem 4.2) between vibrational sublevels for the transition depicted in Figure 4-12 is 1.2×10^5 m^{-1} and that the most probable absorption predicted by the Franck–Condon principle occurs at 500 nm (the main band).

A. What are the wavelength positions of the satellite bands that occur for transitions to the vibrational sublevels just above and just below the one for the most probable transition?

B. Suppose that the main band has a maximum absorption coefficient of 5×10^3 m^2 mol^{-1}, and each satellite band has an ε_λ one-fifth as large. If 20% of the incident light is absorbed at the wavelengths of either of the satellite bands, what percentage is absorbed at the main-band wavelength?

C. When the pigment is placed in a cuvette with an optical path length of 5 mm, the maximum absorbance is 0.3. What is the concentration?

4.7. A straight-chain hydrocarbon has 11 double bonds in conjugation. Suppose that it has three absorption bands in the visible region, one at 450 nm ($\varepsilon_{450} = 1.0 \times 10^4$ m^2 mol^{-1}), one at 431 nm ($\varepsilon_{431} = 2.0 \times 10^3$ m^2 mol^{-1}), and a minor band near 470 nm ($\varepsilon_{470} \cong 70$ m^2 mol^{-1}). Upon cooling from 20°C to liquid helium temperatures, the minor band essentially disappears.

A. What is the splitting between vibrational sublevels in the excited state?

B. What transition could account for the minor band? Support your answer by calculation.

C. If the λ_{max} for fluorescence is at 494 nm, what transition is responsible for the 450-nm absorption band?

D. If the double bond in the middle of the conjugated system is reduced by adding two H's so that it becomes a single bond and the rest of the molecule remains unchanged, calculate the new λ_{max} for the main absorption band and its absorption coefficient. Assume that for every double bond added to the conjugated system, λ_{max} shifts by 25 kJ mol^{-1}, and that $\varepsilon_{\lambda_{max}}$ is directly proportional to the number of double bonds in conjugation.

4.6. References and Further Reading

Butler, W.L., Hendricks, S.B., and Siegelman, H.W. 1965. Purification and properties of phytochrome. In: Goodwin, T.W. (Ed.). *Chemistry and Biochemistry of Plant Pigments.* Academic Press, London, pp. 197–210.

Clayton, R.K. 1981. *Photosynthesis: Physical Mechanisms and Chemical Patterns.* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK.

Condon, E. 1926. A theory of intensity distribution in band systems. *Phys. Rev.* **28:** 1182–1201.

Cutnell, J.D., and Johnson, K.W. 2007. *Physics*, 7th ed. Wiley, New York.

Franck, J. 1926. Elementary processes of photochemical reactions. *Trans. Faraday Soc.* **21:** 536–542.

Gates, D.M. 2003. *Biophysical Ecology.* Dover, Mineola, NY.

Hendricks, S.B., and Borthwick, H.A. 1965. The physiological functions of phytochrome. In: Goodwin, T.W. (Ed.). *Chemistry and Biochemistry of Plant Pigments.* Academic Press, London, pp. 405–436.

Horspool, W., and Lenci, F. (Eds.) 2004. *CRC Handbook of Organic Photochemistry and Photobiology*, 2nd ed. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.

Kagan, J. 1993. *Organic Photochemistry: Principles and Applications.* Academic Press, San Diego, CA.

Kirk, J.T.O. 1994. *Light and Photosynthesis in Aquatic Ecosystems*, 2nd ed. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK.

Klessinger, M. 1995. *Excited States and Photochemistry of Excited Molecules.* VCH, New York.

Kohen, E., Santus, R., and Hirschberg, J.G. 2008. *Photobiology*, 2nd ed. Academic Press, San Diego, CA.

Langhans, R.W., and Tibbitts, T.W. 1997. *Plant Growth Chamber Handbook.* Iowa State University Press, Ames, IA.

McDonald, M.S. 2003. *Photobiology of Higher Plants.* Wiley, New York.

Nagy, F., and Schafer, E. 2002. Phytochromes control photomorphogenesis by differentially regulated, interacting signaling pathways in higher plants. *Annu. Rev. Plant Biol.* **53:** 329–355.

Nalwa, H.S. (Ed.) 2003. *Handbook of Photochemistry and Photobiology.* American Scientific, Los Angeles.

Pap, J.M., and Frölich, C. 1999. Total solar irradiance variations. *J. Atmosph. Solar-Terrestrial Phys.* **61:** 15–24.

Pearcy, R.W. 1989. Radiation and light measurements. In: Pearcy, R.W., Ehleringer, J., Mooney, H.A., and Rundel, P.W. (Eds.), *Plant Physiological Ecology: Field Methods and Instrumentation.* Chapman & Hall, London, pp. 97–116.

Pedrotti, F.L., Pedrotti, L.S., and Pedrotti, L.M. 2007. *Introduction to Optics*, 3rd ed. Prentice Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ.

Ramamurthy, V., and Schanze, K.S. (Eds.) 1999. *Organic Molecular Photochemistry.* Dekker, New York.

Rea, M.S. (Ed.) 2000. *Lighting Handbook*, 9th ed. Illuminating Engineering Society of North America, New York.

Sage, L.C. 1992. *Pigment of the Imagination: A History of Phytochrome Research.* Academic Press, San Diego, CA.

Schäfer, E., and Nagy, F. (Eds.) 2006. *Photomorphogenesis in Plants and Bacteria.* Springer, Heidelberg, Germany.

Silbey, R.J., Alberty, R.A., and Bawendi, M.G. 2005. *Physical Chemistry*, 4th ed. Wiley, New York.

Smith, H. 1995. Physiological and ecological function within the phytochrome family. *Annu. Rev. Plant Physiol. Plant Mol. Biol.* **46:** 289–315.

Turro, N.J., Ramamurthy, V., and Scaiano, J. 2006. *Modern Molecular Photochemistry.* University Science Books, Mill Valley, CA.

Walker, J., Halliday, D., and Resnick, R. 2008. *Fundamentals of Physics*, 8th ed. Wiley, Hoboken, NJ.

Wayne, C.E., and Wayne, R.P. 1999. *Photochemistry.* Oxford University Press, Oxford, UK.

Whitelam, G.C., and Halliday, K.J. 2007. *Light and Plant Development, Annual Plant Reviews* Vol. **30**. Blackwell Publishing, Oxford, UK.

Winn, J.S. 1995. *Physical Chemistry.* HarperCollins, New York.

This page intentionally left blank

Major Equations

Net photosynthetic reaction (5.1)

$$\mathrm{H}\overset{463}{\text{---}}\mathrm{O}\overset{463}{\text{---}}\mathrm{H} + \mathrm{O}\overset{800}{=\!=}\mathrm{C}\overset{800}{=\!=}\mathrm{O} \longrightarrow$$

$$\begin{array}{l} \quad \tfrac{1}{2}(348)\,\vert \\ \mathrm{H}\overset{413}{\text{---}}\mathrm{C}\overset{350}{\text{---}}\mathrm{O}\overset{463}{\text{---}}\mathrm{H} + \mathrm{O}\overset{498}{=\!=}\mathrm{O} \\ \quad \tfrac{1}{2}(348)\,\vert \end{array} \qquad (5.1)$$

Basic photochemical reaction (5.7)

$$A + D + h\nu \longrightarrow A^- + D^+$$

Assessing photochemistry (5.10)

$$\Phi_{\text{photochem}} = \frac{k_{\text{photochem}}}{k_{\text{photochem}} + k_{\text{F}} + k_{\text{other}}}$$

5

Photochemistry of Photosynthesis

5.1. Chlorophyll—Chemistry and Spectra 232
5.1A. Types and Structures 232
5.1B. Absorption and Fluorescence Emission Spectra 233
5.1C. Absorption in Vivo—Polarized Light 236
5.2. Other Photosynthetic Pigments 238
5.2A. Carotenoids 238
5.2B. Phycobilins 242
5.2C. General Comments 244
5.3. Excitation Transfers Among Photosynthetic Pigments 245
5.3A. Pigments and the Photochemical Reaction 246
5.3B. Resonance Transfer of Excitation 247
5.3C. Specific Transfers of Excitation 248
5.3D. Excitation Trapping 250
5.4. Groupings of Photosynthetic Pigments 253
5.4A. Photon Processing 253
5.4B. Excitation Processing 253
5.4C. Photosynthetic Action Spectra and Enhancement Effects 256
5.4D. Two Photosystems Plus Light-Harvesting Antennae 256
5.5. Electron Flow 260
5.5A. Electron Flow Model 260
5.5B. Components of the Electron Transfer Pathway 262
5.5C. Types of Electron Flow 268
5.5D. Assessing Photochemistry using Fluorescence 269
5.5E. Photophosphorylation 271
5.5F. Vectorial Aspects of Electron Flow 271
5.6. Problems 273
5.7. References and Further Reading 274

Photosynthesis is the largest-scale synthetic process on earth. About 1.06×10^{14} kg (106 billion tons) of carbon are fixed annually into organic compounds by photosynthetic organisms (a quantity often called the *net primary productivity*). This equals about 1% of the world's known reserves of fossil fuels (coal, gas, and oil), or 10 times the world's current annual

energy consumption. The carbon source used in photosynthesis is the 0.04% CO_2 contained in the air (about 8×10^{14} kg carbon) and the CO_2 or HCO_3^- dissolved in lakes and oceans (about 400×10^{14} kg carbon). In addition to the organic compounds, another product of photosynthesis essential for all respiring organisms is oxygen, O_2. At the current rate, the entire atmospheric content of O_2 is replenished by photosynthesis every 2000 years.

Photosynthesis is composed of many individual steps that work together with a remarkably high overall efficiency. We can divide the process into three stages: (1) the photochemical steps, our primary concern in this chapter; (2) electron transfer to which is coupled ATP formation, which we consider in both this chapter and Chapter 6; and (3) the biochemical reactions involving the incorporation of CO_2 into carbohydrates, which are covered in detail in many other texts. Figure 5-1 summarizes the processes involved in photosynthesis and introduces the relative amounts of the various reactants and products taking part in its three stages. The photochemical reactions, which are often referred to as the *primary events* of photosynthesis, lead to electron transfer along a sequence of molecules, resulting in the formation of NADPH and ATP.

In the chemical reactions for photosynthesis (Fig. 5-1), two H_2O's are indicated as reactants in the O_2 evolution step, and one H_2O is a product in the biochemical stage. Hence, the overall net chemical reaction describing photosynthesis is CO_2 plus H_2O yields carbohydrate plus O_2. Considering the energy of each of the chemical bonds in these

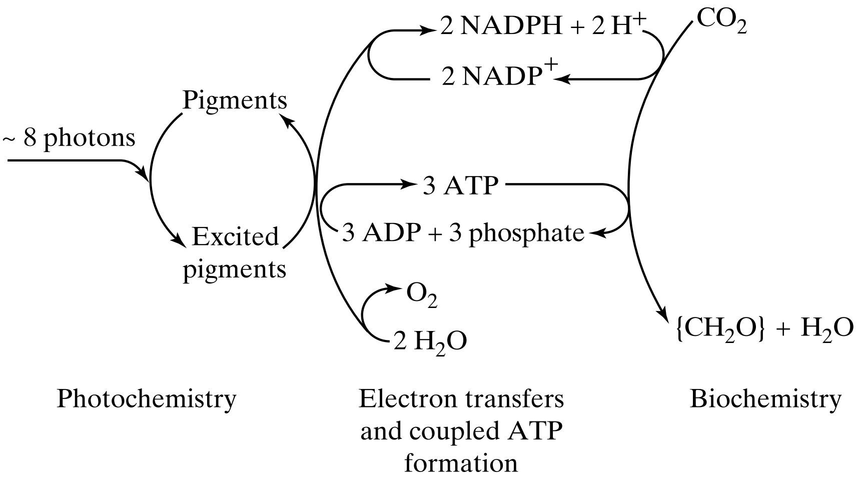


Figure 5-1. Schematic representation of the three stages of photosynthesis in chloroplasts: (1) The absorption of light can excite photosynthetic pigments, leading to the photochemical events in which electrons are donated by special chlorophylls. (2) The electrons are then transferred along a series of molecules, causing the oxidized form of nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate ($NADP^+$) to become the reduced form (NADPH); ATP formation is coupled to the electron transfer steps. (3) The biochemical reactions of photosynthesis can proceed in the dark and requires 3 mol of ATP and 2 mol of NADPH per mole of CO_2 fixed into a carbohydrate, represented in the figure by $\{CH_2O\}$.

compounds leads to the following representation for the net photosynthetic reaction (bonds are elongated to display their energies):

$$\mathrm{H}\overset{463}{\text{——}}\mathrm{O}\overset{463}{\text{——}}\mathrm{H} + \mathrm{O}\overset{800}{=\!=}\mathrm{C}\overset{800}{=\!=}\mathrm{O} \longrightarrow$$

$$\begin{array}{c} \tfrac{1}{2}(348)\,| \\ \mathrm{H}\overset{413}{\text{——}}\mathrm{C}\overset{350}{\text{——}}\mathrm{O}\overset{463}{\text{——}}\mathrm{H} + \mathrm{O}\overset{498}{=\!=}\mathrm{O} \\ \tfrac{1}{2}(348)\,| \end{array} \qquad (5.1)$$

where the numbers represent the approximate bond energies in kJ mol^{-1}. A C—C bond, which occurs on two sides of the carbon in the carbohydrate $\{CH_2O\}$, has an energy of 348 kJ mol^{-1}, so $\frac{1}{2}(348)$ has been indicated in the appropriate places in Equation 5.1.

The formulation of photosynthesis in Equation 5.1 fails to do justice to the complexity of the reactions but does estimate the amount of Gibbs free energy that is stored. The total chemical bond energy is 2526 kJ mol^{-1} for the reactants in Equation 5.1 (463 + 463 + 800 + 800 = 2526), and it is 2072 kJ mol^{-1} for the products (413 + 348 + 350 + 463 + 498 = 2072). Thus the reactants H_2O and CO_2 represent lower energy (i.e., they are more "tightly" bonded, or stable), because 2526 – 2072 or 454 kJ mol^{-1} is necessary for the bond changes to convert them to the products $\{CH_2O\}$ plus O_2. This energy change actually represents the increase in enthalpy required, ΔH, although we are really more concerned here with the change in Gibbs free energy, ΔG [see Chapter 6 (Section 6.1) and Appendix IV]. (For a reaction at constant temperature, $\Delta G = \Delta H - T\Delta S$, where S is the entropy; ΔG is about the same as ΔH for Eq. 5.1.) Although the actual ΔG per mole of C depends somewhat on the particular carbohydrate involved, 454 kJ is approximately the increase in Gibbs free energy per mole of CO_2 that reacts according to Equation 5.1. For instance, the Gibbs free energy released when glucose is oxidized to CO_2 and H_2O is 479 kJ mol^{-1} of C. In discussing photosynthesis we will frequently use this latter ΔG, which refers to standard state conditions (25°C, pH 7, 1 molal concentrations, 1 atm pressure).

About eight photons are required in photosynthesis per CO_2 fixed and O_2 evolved (see Fig. 5-1). Red light at 680 nm has 176 kJ mol^{-1} (Table 4-1), so 8 mol of such photons have (8 mol photons)(176 kJ mol^{-1}) or 1408 kJ of radiant energy. Using this as the energy input and 479 kJ as the energy stored per mole of CO_2 fixed, the efficiency of energy conversion by photosynthesis is (479 kJ/1408 kJ)(100%), or 34%. Actually, slightly more than eight photons may be required per CO_2 fixed. Furthermore, the energy for wavelengths less than 680 nm, which are also used in photosynthesis, is higher than 176 kJ mol^{-1}. Both of these considerations reduce the efficiency for the utilization of absorbed energy. Nevertheless, photosynthesis is an extremely efficient energy conversion process considering all of the steps that are involved, each with its inherent energy loss.

Nearly all of the enzymes involved in the synthetic reactions of photosynthesis are also found in nonphotosynthetic tissue. Therefore, the unique feature of photosynthesis is the conversion of radiant energy into chemical

energy. This chapter will emphasize the light absorption and the excitation transfer aspects of photosynthesis, including the times of the various steps and the historical events involved in elucidating the properties of the two photosystems. We will consider the structures and the absorption characteristics of the photosynthetic pigments and the means by which radiant energy is trapped, transferred, and eventually used. Thus the emphasis is on the *photo* part of photosynthesis.

5.1. Chlorophyll—Chemistry and Spectra

Chlorophylls represent the principal class of pigments responsible for light absorption in photosynthesis and are found in all photosynthetic organisms. The word “chlorophyll” derives from the Greek *chloros* for light green and *phyllon* for leaf; green is near the middle of the visible spectrum (Table 4-1, Fig. 4-2) and is both reflected and transmitted by leaves (Fig. 7-4). Different types of chlorophyll occur, as Mikhail Tswett demonstrated in 1906 using adsorption chromatography. For instance, chlorophylls designated *a* and *b* comprise about 1.0% of the dry weight of green leaves. The empirical formulas were first given by Richard Willstätter around 1910; Hans Fischer established the structures of various chlorophylls by 1940. These two investigators, as well as Robert Woodward, who synthesized chlorophyll in vitro, all received the Nobel Prize in chemistry for their studies on this important pigment and other plant pigments (in 1915, 1930, and 1965, respectively). We will first consider the structure of chlorophyll *a* (Chl *a*) and then its absorption and fluorescence characteristics.

5.1A. Types and Structures

The many types of chlorophyll are identified by letters or by the taxonomic group of the organisms in which they occur. The most important is Chl *a*, which has a relative molecular mass of 893.5 and the structure indicated in Figure 5-2. Chl *a* is found in all photosynthetic organisms for which O_2 evolution accompanies photosynthesis. It is a tetrapyrrole with a relatively flat porphyrin “head” about 1.4 nm × 1.4 nm (14 Å × 14 Å) in the center of which a magnesium atom is coordinately bound. Attached to the head is a long-chain terpene alcohol, phytol, which acts like a “tail” about 2 nm in length containing 20 carbon atoms (Fig. 5-2). This tail provides a nonpolar region that helps bind the chlorophyll molecules to chlorophyll–protein complexes in the chloroplast lamellar membranes (Fig. 1-10), but it makes no appreciable contribution to the absorption of light in the visible region by chlorophyll. The system of rings in the porphyrin head of Chl *a* is highly conjugated, having nine double bonds in the main conjugation (plus three other double bonds in branches to the main conjugated system; see Chapter 4, Section 4.4E for a discussion of conjugation). These alternating single and double bonds of the conjugated system of the porphyrin ring provide many delocalized π electrons that can take part in light absorption.

Other chlorophyll types structurally similar to Chl *a* occur in nature. For instance, Chl *b* differs from Chl *a* by having a formyl group (—CHO) in place

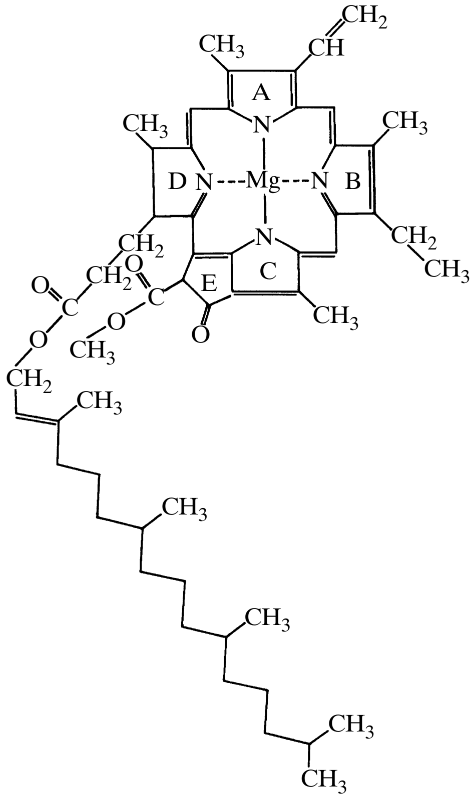


Figure 5-2. Structure of Chl *a*, illustrating the highly conjugated porphyrin "head" (a closed chain tetrapyrrole) to which is attached a hydrocarbon phytol "tail." The convention for numbering the various rings is also indicated with capital letters (formerly labeled as I through V). The solid lines to Mg indicate a resonating form with shared electrons in the bonds, and the dashed lines indicate bonds with little electron sharing at that moment (electron sharing varies over time).

of a methyl group ($-CH_3$) on ring B. Chl *b* is found in virtually all land plants (including ferns and mosses), the green algae, and the *Euglenophyta*; the ratio of Chl *a* to Chl *b* in these organisms is usually about 3:1. Chl *b* is not essential for photosynthesis; for example, a barley mutant containing only Chl *a* carries out photosynthesis satisfactorily. Another type is Chl *c*, which occurs in the dinoflagellates, diatoms, golden algae, and brown algae. The purple photosynthetic bacteria contain bacteriochlorophyll *a* (BChl *a*; BChl *b* occurs in some species), and BChl *a* occurs in green photosynthetic bacteria. These bacterial pigments differ from green plant chlorophylls by containing two more hydrogens in the porphyrin ring and different substituents around the periphery of the porphyrin ring (Grimm et al., 2006). The pigment of principal interest in this text is Chl *a*.

5.1B. Absorption and Fluorescence Emission Spectra

The absorption spectrum of Chl *a* has a blue band and a red band, so the characteristic color of chlorophyll is green. The band in the blue part of the spectrum has a peak at 430 nm for Chl *a* in ether (Fig. 5-3). This band is

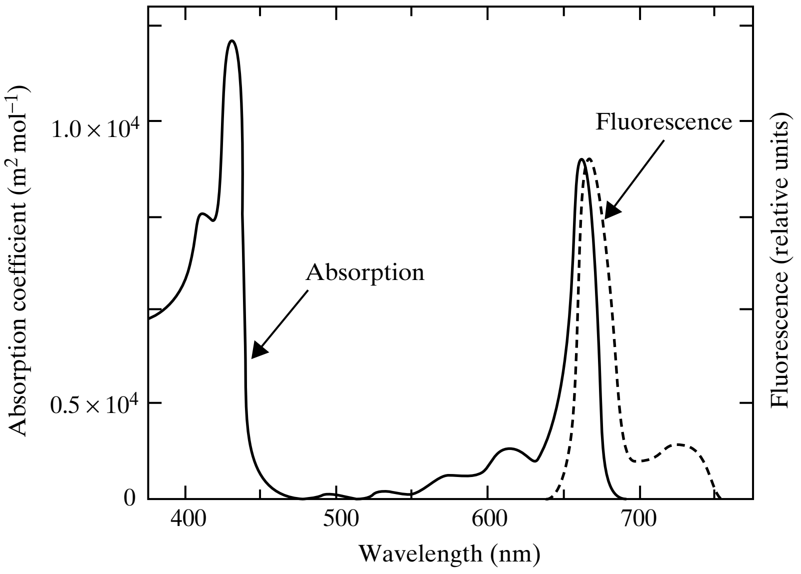


Figure 5-3. Absorption (—) and fluorescence emission (---) spectra of Chl *a* dissolved in ether. [Data are from Holt and Jacobs (1954); used by permission.]

known as the *Soret band*; it occurs in the ultraviolet (UV), the violet, or the blue region for all tetrapyrroles. We will let λ_{max} represent the wavelength for the maximum absorption coefficient in an absorption band. Figure 5-3 indicates that the absorption coefficient at the λ_{max} for the Soret band of Chl *a* is just over 1.2×10^4 m^2 mol^{-1} (1.2×10^5 M^{-1} cm^{-1}). Such a large value is a consequence of the many double bonds in the conjugated system of the porphyrin ring of chlorophyll. Chl *a* has a major band in the red region with a λ_{max} at 662 nm when the pigment is dissolved in ether (Fig. 5-3).

Chl *a* also has minor absorption bands. For instance, Chl *a* dissolved in ether has a small absorption band at 615 nm, which is a wavelength that is 47 nm shorter than the λ_{max} of the main red band (Fig. 5-3). Absorption of light at 615 nm leads to an electronic transition requiring 14 kJ mol^{-1} more energy than the main band at 662 nm, as can be calculated using Equation 4.2b for the two wavelengths involved (E_λ equals 194.5 kJ mol^{-1} at 615 nm and 180.7 kJ mol^{-1} at 662 nm). This extra energy is similar to the energy spacing between vibrational sublevels. In fact, this small band on the shorter-wavelength (higher-energy) side of the red band corresponds to electrons going to the vibrational sublevel in the excited state immediately above the sublevel for the λ_{max} at 662 nm—an aspect to which we will return.

Although chlorophyll absorbs strongly in both the red and the blue regions, its fluorescence is essentially all in the red region (Fig. 5-3). This is because the upper singlet state of chlorophyll excited by blue light ($S^b_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ in Fig. 4-9) is extremely unstable and goes to the lower excited singlet state ($S^a_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$) by a radiationless transition in about 10^{-12} s, before any appreciable blue fluorescence can take place ($S^b_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ and $S^a_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ are distinct excited electronic states; each has its own energy curve in a diagram such as Fig. 4-12). Because of such rapid energy degradation by a radiationless

transition, the higher-energy photons absorbed in the Soret band of chlorophyll are just as effective for photosynthesis as the lower-energy photons absorbed in the red region, an important conclusion with many conceptual and experimental ramifications. We can observe the red fluorescence of chlorophyll accompanying light absorption by the Soret band if we illuminate a leaf with blue or shorter wavelength light in the dark. With a microscope we can see the red fluorescence emanating from individual chloroplasts in the leaf cells when using such exciting light (the red fluorescence is often masked by scattering when using red exciting light, so shorter wavelengths are used in most fluorescence studies).

The transition having a λ_{max} at 662 nm in the absorption spectrum for Chl *a* dissolved in ether corresponds to the excitation of the molecule from the lowest vibrational sublevel of the ground state to some vibrational sublevel of the lower excited state. We can use the Boltzmann factor $[n(E)/n_{total} = e^{-E/RT}$; Eq. 3.22b] to estimate the fraction of chlorophyll molecules in the first excited vibrational sublevel of the ground state when light arrives. Because RT is 2.48 kJ mol^{-1} at 25°C (Appendix II), and the energy separation between vibrational sublevels is about 14 kJ mol^{-1} for chlorophyll, the Boltzmann factor equals $e^{-\left(14\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}\right)/\left(2.48\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}\right)}$, or $e^{-5.65}$, which is 0.0035. Therefore, only about 1 in 300 chlorophyll molecules is in the first excited vibrational sublevel of the ground state when light arrives. Consequently, the absorption of a photon nearly always occurs when chlorophyll is in the lowest vibrational sublevel of the ground state.

In Chapter 4 (Section 4.4B) we argued that fluorescence generally occurs from the lowest vibrational sublevel of the excited singlet state. In other words, any excess vibrational energy is usually dissipated before the rest of the energy of the absorbed photon can be reradiated as fluorescence. In this regard, Figure 5-3 shows that the wavelength region for most of the fluorescence is nearly coincident with the red band in the chlorophyll absorption spectrum (the difference in energy or wavelength between absorption and fluorescence bands is often called the Stokes shift). In particular, the λ_{max} for fluorescence occurs at 666 nm, which is only 1 kJ mol^{-1} lower in energy than the λ_{max} of 662 nm for the red band in the absorption spectrum. The slight shift, which is much less than the separation between vibrational sublevels of 14 kJ mol^{-1} for chlorophyll, can represent the loss of some rotational energy (rotational sub-sublevels of a vibrational sublevel are generally about 1 kJ mol^{-1} apart). Thus the transition from the lowest vibrational sublevel of the ground state up to the lower excited state (the red absorption band) has essentially the same energy as a transition from the lowest vibrational sublevel of that excited state down to the ground state (the red fluorescence band). The only way for this to occur is to have the lowest vibrational sublevels of both the ground state and the excited state involved in each of the transitions. Hence, the red absorption band corresponds to a transition of the chlorophyll molecule from the lowest vibrational sublevel of the ground state to the lowest vibrational sublevel of the lower excited state, as is depicted in Figure 5-4.

The participation of the lowest vibrational sublevels of both the ground state and the lower excited state of Chl *a* in the major red band can also be appreciated by considering the minor band adjacent to the major red band in

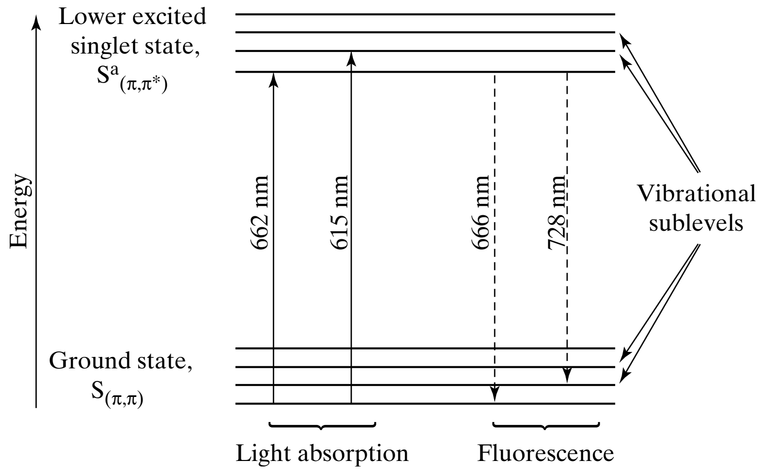


Figure 5-4. Energy level diagram indicating the vibrational sublevels of the ground state ($S_{(\pi,\pi)}$) and the lower excited singlet state ($S^a_{(\pi\pi^*)}$) of Chl *a*. Solid vertical lines indicate the absorption of light by Chl *a* dissolved in ether (Fig. 5-3); dashed lines represent fluorescence at the specified wavelengths (also Fig. 5-3). The lengths of the arrows are proportional to the energy involved in the various transitions.

both the absorption spectrum and the fluorescence emission spectrum (Figs. 5-3 and 5-4). The shorter-wavelength absorption band at 615 nm in ether—14 kJ mol^{-1} higher in energy than the 662-nm band—corresponds to a transition to the first excited vibrational sublevel in the lower excited state. Deexcitations from the lowest vibrational sublevel of the lower excited state to excited vibrational sublevels of the ground state correspond to fluorescence at wavelengths longer than 700 nm. In fact, a small band in the fluorescence emission spectrum of Chl *a* (Fig. 5-3) occurs at 728 nm, about 62 nm longer in wavelength than the main fluorescence band, indicating an electronic transition with 15 kJ mol^{-1} less energy than the 666-nm band. This far-red band corresponds to fluorescence emitted as the chlorophyll molecule goes from the lowest vibrational sublevel of the lower excited state to the first excited vibrational sublevel of the ground state (Fig. 5-4). In summary, we note that (1) excitations from excited vibrational sublevels of the ground state are uncommon, which is a reflection of the Boltzmann energy distribution; (2) fluorescence from excited vibrational sublevels of an excited state is also uncommon, because radiationless transitions to the lowest vibrational sublevel are so rapid; and (3) transitions to excited vibrational sublevels of the excited state and the ground state can be significant (see Figs. 5-3 and 5-4 for Chl *a*).

5.1C. Absorption in Vivo—Polarized Light

The values of λ_{max} for Chl *a* in vivo result from interactions between a chlorophyll molecule and the surrounding molecules, such as the proteins and the lipids in the chloroplast lamellar membranes (Fig. 1-10) as well as adjacent water molecules. Indeed, all Chl *a* molecules are associated with proteins in chlorophyll–protein complexes. Hydrophobic interactions among

the phytol tails of adjacent chlorophylls and with hydrophobic regions in the proteins help stabilize these chlorophyll–protein complexes. Because of the interactions of the porphyrin ring with the other molecules in the complex, and especially with the polar amino acids of the proteins, the red bands for Chl *a* in vivo are shifted toward longer wavelengths (lower energy) than for Chl *a* dissolved in ether (λ_{max} at 662 nm), e.g., a λ_{max} at 670 to 680 nm. This is an example of the pronounced effect that the solvent or other neighboring molecules can have in determining the electronic energy levels of a pigment. The red absorption band of Chl *b* in vivo occurs as a "shoulder" on the short-wavelength side of the Chl *a* red band, usually near 650 nm, and its Soret band occurs at slightly longer wavelengths than for Chl *a*.

A small amount of Chl *a* occurs in special sites that play a particularly important role in photosynthesis. These Chl *a*'s have λ_{max}'s at approximately 680 nm and 700 nm and are referred to as P_{680} and P_{700}, respectively (P indicating pigment). P_{700} and P_{680} are dimers of Chl *a* molecules (i.e., two Chl *a*'s acting as a unit).

We can define the *bandwidth* of an absorption band as the difference in wavelength between photons on the two sides of the band where the absorption has dropped to half of that for λ_{max}. Such bandwidths of the red absorption bands of the various Chl *a*'s in vivo are fairly narrow—often about 10 nm at 20°C. At 680 nm, a bandwidth of 10 nm is equivalent to 3 kJ of energy mol^{-1}; specifically, a photon having a wavelength of 675 nm has an energy that is 3 kJ mol^{-1} greater than a photon with a wavelength of 685 nm (Eq. 4.2b). An energy of 3 kJ mol^{-1} is smaller than the spacing between vibrational sublevels of 14 kJ mol^{-1} for Chl *a*. Thus a bandwidth of 3 kJ mol^{-1} results from interactions with adjacent molecules and the rotational and the translational broadening of an electronic transition to a single vibrational sublevel in the excited state of Chl *a*.

The absorption of polarized light by chlorophyll in vivo can provide information on the orientations of individual chlorophyll molecules. [*Polarized* means that the oscillating electric vector of light (Fig. 4-1) is in some specified direction.] The electronic transition of chlorophyll to the excited singlet state that is responsible for the red absorption band has its electric dipole in the plane of the porphyrin ring—actually, there are two dipoles in the plane in mutually perpendicular directions. Polarized light of the appropriate wavelength with its oscillating electric vector parallel to one of the dipoles is therefore preferentially absorbed by chlorophyll—recall that the probability for absorption is proportional to the square of the cosine of the angle between the induced dipole and the electric field vector of light (see Chapter 4, Section 4.2A). Absorption of polarized light indicates that the porphyrin rings of a few percent of the Chl *a* molecules, probably including P_{680}, are nearly parallel to the plane of the chloroplast lamellae (Fig. 1-10). However, most of the chlorophyll molecules have their porphyrin heads randomly oriented in the internal membranes of chloroplasts.

The degree of polarization of fluorescence after the absorption of polarized light can tell us whether the excitation has been transferred from one molecule to another. If the same chlorophyll molecules that absorbed polarized light later emit photons when they go back to the ground state, the

fluorescence would be polarized to within a few degrees of the direction of the electric vector of the incident light. However, the chlorophyll fluorescence after absorption of polarized light by chloroplasts is not appreciably polarized. This fluorescence depolarization indicates that the excitation energy has been transferred from one chlorophyll molecule to another so many times that the directional aspect has become randomized; that is, the chlorophyll molecule emitting fluorescence is randomly aligned relative to the chlorophyll molecule that absorbed the polarized light.

When unpolarized light is incident on chloroplast lamellae that have been oriented in some particular direction, the fluorescence is polarized. The plane of polarization is similar to the plane of the lamellar membranes, indicating that the porphyrin rings of the emitting chlorophyll molecules have about the same orientation as the membrane. However, the porphyrin rings of the absorbing chlorophyll molecules are randomly oriented. Again, we conclude that the excitation has been transferred from the absorbing to the emitting molecule.

5.2. Other Photosynthetic Pigments

Besides Chl *a*, other molecules in photosynthetic organisms also absorb light in the visible region. If these molecules pass their electronic excitations to Chl *a* (or to BChl *a*), they are referred to as auxiliary or *accessory* pigments. In particular, Chl *b* is an important accessory pigment that is about one-third as prevalent as Chl *a* in leaves. Its red absorption band occurs at slightly shorter wavelengths than the red band of Chl *a* (Fig. 5-3) and its Soret band occurs at slightly longer wavelengths, so it helps absorb wavelengths that are not substantially absorbed by Chl *a*, to which it passes the excitations. In addition to Chl *b*, two other groups of accessory pigments that are important to photosynthesis are the *carotenoids* and the *phycobilins*. These two classes of accessory pigments can absorb yellow or green light, wavelengths for which absorption by chlorophyll is not substantial (Fig. 5-3).

Fluorescence studies have indicated the sequence of excitation transfer to and from the accessory pigments. For example, light absorbed by carotenoids, phycobilins, and Chl *b* leads to the fluorescence of Chl *a*. However, light absorbed by Chl *a* does not lead to the fluorescence of the accessory pigments, suggesting that excitation energy is not transferred from Chl *a* to the accessory pigments. Thus, accessory pigments can increase the photosynthetic use of white light and sunlight by absorbing at wavelengths where Chl *a* absorption is low; the excitations are then transferred to Chl *a* before the photochemical reactions take place (Eq. 5.7).

5.2A. Carotenoids

Carotenoids occur in essentially all green plants, algae, and photosynthetic bacteria, with over 600 types occurring in nature (150 types may be involved in photosynthesis). The dominant pigments for plant leaves are the

chlorophylls, which absorb strongly in the red and the blue regions, and the carotenoids, which absorb mostly in the blue and somewhat in the green region of the spectrum (Fig. 4-2; Table 4-1). The predominant colors reflected or transmitted by leaves are therefore green and yellow. In the autumn, chlorophylls in the leaves of deciduous plants can bleach and are usually not replaced, thereby greatly reducing absorption in the red and the blue regions. The remaining carotenoids absorb only in the blue and the green regions, leading to the well-known fall colors of such leaves, namely, yellow, orange, and red. Animals apparently do not synthesize carotenoids (only plants, algae, some bacteria, and certain fungi do). Hence, brightly colored birds such as canaries and flamingoes, as well as many invertebrates, obtain their yellow or reddish colors from the carotenoids in the plants and certain other organisms that they eat.

Carotenoids involved in photosynthesis are bound to and help stabilize chlorophyll–protein complexes, of which various types occur in the lamellar membranes of chloroplasts (Fig. 1-10). Carotenoids also are found in organelles known as *chromoplasts*, which are about the size of chloroplasts and are often derived from them. For instance, lycopene (red) is in tomato fruit chromoplasts, and α- and β-carotenes (orange) occur in carrot root chromoplasts. A great diversity of carotenoids occurs in the chromoplasts of flower petals, which is important for attracting pollinators, and fruits, which aids in seed dispersal by attracting other animals.

Carotenoids are 40-carbon terpenoids, also known as isoprenoids. They are composed of eight *isoprene units*, which are five-carbon compounds having two double bonds:

$$\begin{array}{c} CH_2 = \underset{\displaystyle CH_3}{\underset{|}{C}} - CH = CH_2 \end{array}$$

In many carotenoids, the isoprene units at one or both ends of the molecule are part of six-membered rings. Carotenoids are about 3 nm long, and those involved in photosynthesis usually have 9 to 12 double bonds in conjugation.

The wavelength position of the λ_{max} for carotenoids depends on the solvent, on the substitutions on the hydrocarbon backbone, and on the number of double bonds in the conjugated system. We can illustrate this latter point for carotenoids in *n*-hexane, in which the central maxima of the three observed peaks in the absorption spectra are at 286 nm for 3 double bonds in conjugation, at 347 nm for 5, at 400 nm for 7, at 440 nm for 9, at 472 nm for 11, and at 500 nm for 13 double bonds in conjugation. Thus, the greater the degree of conjugation, the longer is the wavelength representing λ_{max}, as we discussed in Chapter 4 (Section 4.4E; e.g., Fig. 4-14). For the 9 to 12 double bonds occurring in the conjugated systems of photosynthetically important carotenoids, the maximum absorption coefficient is greater than $10^4\ m^2\ mol^{-1}$.

The carotenoids that serve as accessory pigments for photosynthesis absorb strongly in the blue region (425–490 nm; Table 4-1) and moderately in the green region (490–560 nm), usually having triple-banded spectra from 400 to 550 nm. For β-carotene in hexane, the three bands are centered at

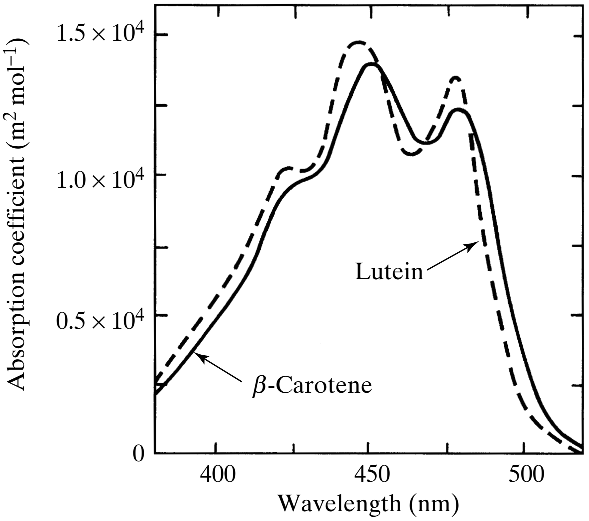


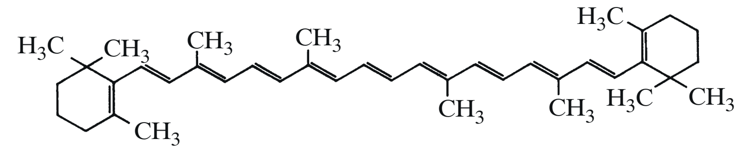
Figure 5-5. Absorption spectra for the two major carotenoids of green plants. [Data for β-carotene (in *n*-hexane) and lutein (in ethanol) are from Zscheile et al. (1942); used by permission.]

425 nm, 451 nm, and 483 nm; another major carotenoid in plants, lutein, has peaks at 420 nm, 447 nm, and 477 nm when dissolved in ethanol (absorption spectra in Fig. 5-5). The absorption spectra of the carotenoids in vivo are shifted about 20 to 30 nm toward longer wavelengths (lower energy) compared with absorption when the pigments are dissolved in organic solvents such as hexane or ethanol.

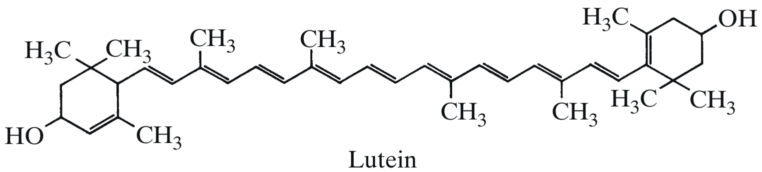
Carotenoids are subdivided into two groups: (1) the *carotenes*, which are hydrocarbons; and (2) the *xanthophylls*, which are oxygen-containing derivatives of carotenes. The major carotene in green plants is β-carotene (absorption spectrum in Fig. 5-5; structure in Fig. 5-6); α-carotene is also abundant (α-carotene has the double bond in the right-hand ring shifted one carbon clockwise compared with β-carotene; Fig. 5-6). The xanthophylls exhibit much greater structural diversity than do the carotenes, because the oxygen atoms can be in hydroxy (—OH), methoxy (—OCH_3), carboxy (—COOH), keto (>C=O), or epoxy (>C(—O—)C<) groups. The most abundant xanthophyll in green plants is lutein (absorption spectrum in Fig. 5-5; structure in Fig. 5-6); antheraxanthin, neoxanthin, violaxanthin, and zeaxanthin are also common.

The major carotene of algae is also β-carotene, and lutein is the most common xanthophyll, although great variation in the type and the amount of xanthophylls is characteristic of algae. For instance, golden algae, diatoms, and brown algae contain considerable amounts of the xanthophyll fucoxanthin (Fig. 5-6), which functions as the main accessory pigment in these organisms. The distribution and the types of carotenoids in plants and algae have evolutionary implications as well as taxonomic usefulness.

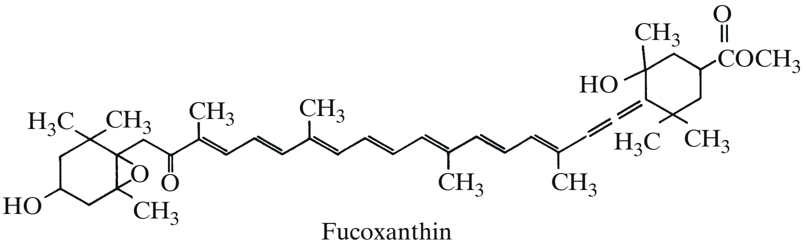
The three absorption bands that are characteristic of absorption spectra of carotenoids (Fig. 5-5) are about 17 kJ mol^{-1} apart, a reasonable energy spacing between adjacent vibrational sublevels (Fig. 5-7). Specifically, the



β-Carotene



Lutein



Fucoxanthin

Figure 5-6. Structure of three carotenoids that act as important accessory pigments. The upper structure is a carotene, whereas the lower two structures contain oxygen and are xanthophylls.

triple-banded spectra represent transitions to three adjacent vibrational sublevels in the upper excited singlet state. Radiationless transitions from this $S^{b}_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ to the lower excited singlet, $S^{a}_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ (Fig. 5-7), are very rapid, occurring within 10^{-10} s after light absorption. The excited singlet states of carotenoids can take part in various photochemical reactions.

In addition to functioning as accessory pigments for photosynthesis, carotenoids are also important for protecting photosynthetic organisms from the destructive photooxidations that can occur in the presence of light and O_2 ("photoprotection" in Fig. 5-7). In particular, light absorbed by chlorophyll can lead to its excited triplet state, which in turn can lead to highly reactive states of O_2. These states of O_2 can damage chlorophyll, but their interactions with carotenoids, leading directly to their triplet state (Fig. 5-7), prevent harmful effects to the organism. (Carotenoids can also act as antioxidants without the intervention of chlorophyll.) Because photosynthesis in the green and the purple bacteria does not lead to O_2 evolution, it can proceed in the absence of carotenoids. A mutant of the purple photosynthetic bacterium *Rhodopseudomonas spheroides* that lacks carotenoids performs photosynthesis in a normal manner in the absence of O_2; when O_2 is introduced in the light, the bacteriochlorophyll becomes photooxidized and the bacteria are killed, a sensitivity not present in related strains containing carotenoids. On the other hand, cyanobacteria, algae, and higher plants produce O_2 as a photosynthetic product, so they must contain carotenoids to survive in the light. Because such oxidations tend to increase with time, the fraction of carotenoids in the form of xanthophylls generally increases in

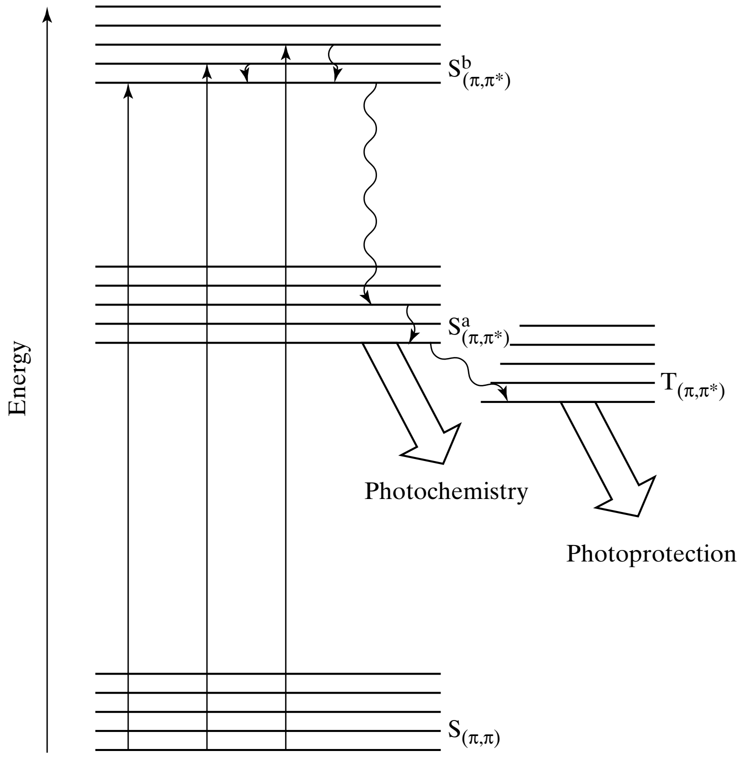


Figure 5-7. Energy level diagram including vibrational sublevels, indicating the principal electronic states and some of the transitions for carotenoids. The three straight vertical lines represent the three absorption bands observed in absorption spectra, the wavy lines indicate possible radiationless transitions, and the broad arrows indicate deexcitation processes (see Fig. 4-9 for an analogous diagram for chlorophyll).

leaves as the growing season progresses. In addition, certain xanthophylls are reduced during the daytime, especially when the light level is excessive (such as direct sunlight) or photosynthesis is inhibited by stress, and then oxidized back to the original form at night. In particular, plants and green algae (as well as some brown and red algae) possess a *xanthophyll cycle*, in which violaxanthin is reduced to antheraxanthin, which in turn is reduced to zeaxanthin (both steps are actually de-epoxidations) during the daytime accompanying excitation transfer from the lower excited singlet state of chlorophyll, and the reduction steps are reversed at night. Such a cycle tends to dissipate excess light energy or excess reductant when the absorption of photons outpaces their use in photosynthesis, thereby avoiding production of free radicals and preventing chlorophyll bleaching. Finally, we note that zeaxanthin can even act as a photoreceptor for stomatal opening and certain phototropic responses, currently active research areas.

5.2B. Phycobilins

The other main group of accessory pigments in photosynthesis is the *phycobilins*. Rudolf Lemberg in the 1920s termed these molecules phycobilins because they occur in algae (red algae and blue–green algae, the latter now

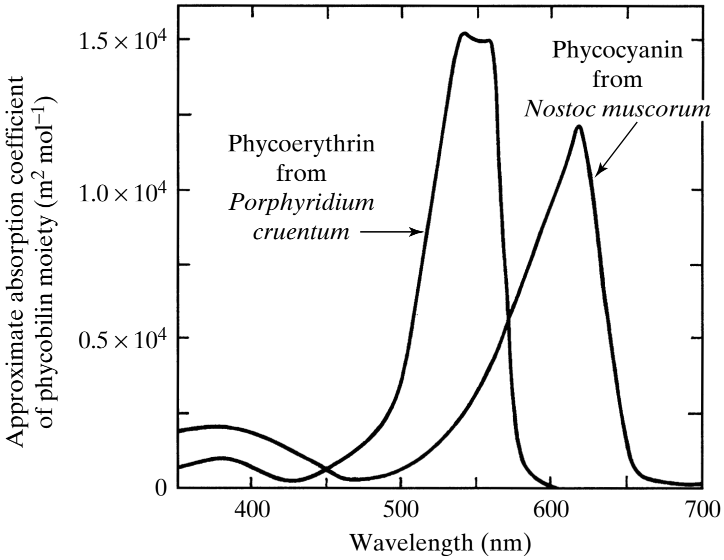


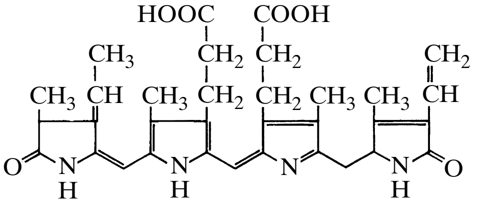
Figure 5-8. Absorption spectra of phycoerythrin from a red alga and phycocyanin from a cyanobacterium in aqueous solutions. [Data are from Ó hEocha (1965); used by permission.]

classified as cyanobacteria; *phyco* is derived from the Greek for seaweed), but they structurally resemble bile pigments. Like the chlorophylls, the phycobilins are tetrapyrroles. However, the four pyrroles in the phycobilins occur in an open chain, as is the case for phytochrome (Fig. 4-15), and not in a closed porphyrin ring, as is the case for the chlorophylls (e.g., Fig. 5-2). Phycobilins have a relative molecular mass of 586. They occur covalently bound to proteins with molecular masses of 30 to 35 kDa. These assemblies containing 300 to 800 phycobilins are organized into phycobilisomes, which are about 40 nm in diameter and are associated with the outer (stromal) surfaces of lamellar membranes in cyanobacteria and red algae, where they function as the main accessory pigments.

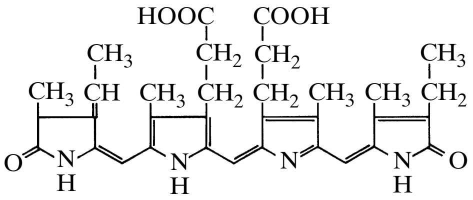
Phycobilins usually have their major absorption bands from 520 to 670 nm, with a relatively small Soret band in the UV (Fig. 5-8). These pigments are higher in concentration in many cyanobacteria and red algae than are the chlorophylls and are responsible for the color of certain species (Kirk, 1994; Goodwin, 2002; Falkowski and Raven, 2007).

Four major phycobilins occur in photosynthetic organisms, the main ones being phycocyanobilin and phycoerythrobilin (structures in Fig. 5-9; note the great structural similarity between the phycobilins and the chromophore for phytochrome in Fig. 4-15). Phycoerythrobilin plus the protein to which it is covalently attached is called phycoerythrin.[1] Phycoerythrin is

1. The phycobilins are covalently bound to their proteins (referred to as apoproteins) to form phycobiliproteins, whereas chlorophylls and carotenoids are joined to their apoproteins by weaker bonds, such as H bonds and hydrophobic interactions.



Phycoerythrobilin



Phycocyanobilin

Figure 5-9. Structure of two phycobilins that act as important accessory pigments. Phycoerythrobilin has fewer double bonds in conjugation than phycocyanobilin, so its λ_{max} occurs at shorter wavelengths (Fig. 5-8). Phycobilins occur covalently bound to proteins; that is, they are the chromophores for phycobiliproteins.

soluble in aqueous solutions, so we can obtain absorption spectra for it under conditions similar to those in vivo. Phycoerythrin is reddish because it absorbs green and has at least one main band between 530 and 570 nm (see absorption spectrum in Fig. 5-8). It occurs throughout the red algae and in some cyanobacteria. Phycocyanin (phycocyanobilin plus protein) appears bluish because it absorbs strongly from 610 to 660 nm (Fig. 5-8). It is the main phycobilin in the cyanobacteria and also is found in the red algae. As is the case for other pigments, the greater the number of double bonds in conjugation in the phycobilins, the longer is the wavelength for λ_{max} and the lower is the energy involved for electronic transitions. For example, phycoerythrobilin has seven double bonds in the main conjugated system and absorbs maximally in the green region of the spectrum; phycocyanobilin has nine such double bonds and its λ_{max} occurs in the red region (see the structures of these compounds in Fig. 5-9). The maximum absorption coefficients of both phycobilins exceed 10^4 m^2 mol^{-1} (Fig. 5-8).

5.2C. General Comments

As we indicated in Chapter 4 (Section 4.1 D), both the quantity and the quality of radiation change as a function of depth in water; wavelengths near 500 nm penetrate the deepest. For instance, only about 10% of the blue and the red parts of the spectrum penetrate to a depth of 50 m in clear water, so chlorophyll is not a very useful light-harvesting pigment below that depth (see Fig. 5-3 for a chlorophyll absorption spectrum). Changes in the spectral quality (relative amounts of various wavelengths) with depth can affect the

Table 5-1. Approximate Relative Amounts and Structural Locations of Photosynthetic Pigments[a]

Pigment	Number	Location
Chl *a*	450	Approximately 40% in the cores of Photosystems I and II, with the remainder in the light-harvesting antennae
Chl *b*	150	In light-harvesting antennae
P_{680}	1.6	Trap for Photosystem II
P_{700}	1.0	Trap for Photosystem I
Carotenoids	120	Most in light-harvesting antennae of Photosystem II
Phycobilins	500	Covalently bound to proteins on the outer surface of photosynthetic membranes in cyanobacteria and red algae; serve in light-harvesting antennae of Photosystem II

[a] Data are expressed per 600 chlorophylls and are for representative leaves of green plants (except for the phycobilins) growing at moderate sunlight levels. Photosystems and the light-harvesting antennae are discussed later in this chapter.

distribution of photosynthetic organisms according to their pigment types. The predominant accessory pigment in green algae is Chl *b*, which absorbs mainly in the violet (400–425 nm; see Table 4-1) and the red (640–740 nm). Green algae as well as sea grasses and freshwater plants grow in shallow water, where the visible spectrum is not changed much from that of the incident sunlight. Fucoxanthin (Fig. 5-6) is the major accessory pigment in brown algae, such as the kelps, and it absorbs strongly in the blue and the green regions (425–560 nm; Table 4-1), helping to extend its range downward to over 20 m. Marine red algae can occur at even greater depths (e.g., 100 m), and their phycoerythrin absorbs the green light (490–560 nm) that penetrates to such distances. Changes in spectral quality can also induce changes in the synthesis of biliproteins within an organism. For instance, green light induces the synthesis of the green-absorbing phycoerythrin, and red light induces the synthesis of the red-absorbing phycocyanin (Fig. 5-8) in certain cyanobacteria and red algae.

Interestingly, only two types of pigments appear to be involved in all known photochemical reactions in plants and algae. These are the carotenoids and the tetrapyrroles, the latter class including the chlorophylls, the phycobilins, and phytochrome. The maximum absorption coefficients for the most intense absorption bands are slightly over 10^4 m^2 mol^{-1} in each case, with 7 to 12 double bonds in the main conjugated system. Cytochromes, which are involved in the electron transport reactions in chloroplasts and mitochondria, are also tetrapyrroles (considered later in this chapter). Table 5-1 summarizes the relative frequency of the main types of photosynthetic pigments.

5.3. Excitation Transfers Among Photosynthetic Pigments

Chlorophyll is at the very heart of the primary events of photosynthesis. It helps convert the sun's radiant energy into chemical free energy that can be stored in various ways. In this section we will represent light absorption, excitation transfer, and the photochemical step as chemical reactions; this will serve as a prelude to a further consideration of certain molecular details of photosynthesis.

5.3A. Pigments and the Photochemical Reaction

The first step in photosynthesis is light absorption by one of the pigments. The absorption event (discussed in Chapter 4, e.g., Section 4.2E) for the various types of photosynthetic pigments described in this chapter can be represented as follows:

$$\left.\begin{matrix}\text{accessory pigment}\\ \text{or}\\ \text{Chl } a\\ \text{or}\\ \text{trap chl}\end{matrix}\right\} + h\nu \rightarrow \left\{\begin{matrix}\text{accessory pigment}^*\\ \text{or}\\ \text{Chl } a^*\\ \text{or}\\ \text{trap chl}^*\end{matrix}\right. \tag{5.2}$$

where the asterisk refers to an excited state of the pigment molecule caused by the absorption of a light quantum, $h\nu$. Trap chl indicates a special type of Chl *a* (e.g., P_{680} or P_{700}) that occurs much less frequently than do the other chlorophylls (see Table 5-1); we will consider its important excitation-trapping properties at the end of this section.

Because the photochemical reactions take place only at the trap chl molecules, the excitations resulting from light absorption by either the accessory pigments or the other Chl *a*'s must be transferred to the trap chl before they can be used for photosynthesis. The relative rarity of trap chl compared with the other photosynthetic pigments means that it absorbs only a small fraction of the incident light. In fact, for green plants under natural conditions, over 99% of the photons are absorbed by either the accessory pigments or Chl *a*. The migration of excitations from the initially excited species to the trap chl—the mechanism for which we will discuss later—can be represented as follows:

$$\text{accessory pigment}^* + \text{Chl } a \rightarrow \text{accessory pigment} + \text{Chl } a^* \tag{5.3}$$

$$\text{Chl } a^* + \text{trap chl} \rightarrow \text{Chl } a + \text{trap chl}^* \tag{5.4}$$

In other words, the direction of excitation transfer or migration is from the accessory pigments to Chl *a* (Eq. 5.3) and from Chl *a* to the special "trap" chlorophylls (Eq. 5.4) where the photochemical reactions take place. Hence, the overall effect of the steps described by Equations 5.2 to 5.4 is to funnel the excitations caused by the absorption of light to the trap chl.

A prerequisite for the conversion of radiant energy into a form that can be stored chemically is the formation of reducing and oxidizing species. The *reducing* (electron-donating) and the *oxidizing* (electron-accepting) species that result from light absorption must be fairly stable and located in such a way that they do not interact. (We will discuss the energetics of oxidation and reduction in Chapter 6.) If we denote the molecule that accepts an electron from the excited trap chl by *A*, this electron transfer step can be represented by

$$\text{trap chl}^* + A \rightarrow \text{trap chl}^+ + A^- \tag{5.5}$$

where trap chl$^+$ means that the special chlorophyll has lost an electron and A^- indicates the reduced state of the electron acceptor. Equation 5.5 represents a photochemical reaction because the absorption of a light quantum (Eq. 5.2) has led to the transfer of an electron away from a special type of chlorophyll, representing a chemical change in that molecule. The electron removed from trap chl* (Eq. 5.5) can be replaced by one coming from a donor, D, which leads to the oxidation of this latter species, D^+, and the return of the trap chl to its unexcited state:

$$\text{trap chl}^+ + D \rightarrow \text{trap chl} + D^+ \tag{5.6}$$

The generation of stable reduced (A^-) and oxidized (D^+) intermediates completes the conversion of light energy into chemical potential energy. Combining Equations 5.2 to 5.6 gives us the following relation for the net reaction describing the primary events of photosynthesis:

$$A + D + hv \rightarrow A^- + D^+ \tag{5.7}$$

The light-driven change in chemical free energy represented by the conversion of $A + D$ to $A^- + D^+$ (Eq. 5.7) eventually causes chemical reactions leading to the evolution of O_2 from water, the production of a reduced compound (NADPH), and the formation of a high-energy phosphate (ADP + phosphate → ATP). Such a conversion of light energy into chemical energy represented by Equation 5.7 is the cornerstone of photosynthesis.

5.3B. Resonance Transfer of Excitation

We have already mentioned examples of excitation transfer among photosynthetic pigments. For instance, light absorbed by the accessory pigments can lead to the fluorescence of Chl *a*. Studies on the absorption of polarized light by chlorophyll in vivo, where the resulting fluorescence is not polarized, provide further evidence that excitations can migrate from molecule to molecule before the energy is emitted as radiation. In this regard, the excitation of the lower excited singlet state of chlorophyll can be passed to a second chlorophyll molecule. This causes the deactivation of the originally excited molecule and the attainment of the lower excited singlet state in the second chlorophyll, a process described by Equation 4.8, $S_{(\pi,\pi^*)} + S_{2(\pi,\pi)} \rightarrow S_{(\pi,\pi)} + S_{2(\pi,\pi^*)}$. The most widely accepted mechanism for such exchange of electronic excitation between chlorophyll molecules is *resonance transfer* (also called inductive resonance, the Förster mechanism that was proposed by Thomas Förster in the 1940s, or weak coupling), which we next consider qualitatively.

On the basis of our discussion in the previous chapter, we might expect that an excited molecule can induce an excited state in a second molecule in close proximity. In particular, the oscillating electric dipole representing the energetic electron in the excited state of the first molecule leads to a varying electric field. This field can cause a similar oscillation or resonance of some electron in a second molecule. A transfer of electronic excitation energy takes place when an electron in the second molecule is induced to oscillate.

When excitation transfer is completed, the previously excited electron in the first molecule has ceased oscillating, and some electron in the second molecule is now oscillating, leading to an excited state of that molecule. Resonance transfer of excitation between molecules is thus analogous to the process by which light is originally absorbed (Fig. 4-6), because an oscillation of some electron in the molecule is induced by a locally varying electric field. Resonance transfer of excitation is most probable when (1) the molecules are close together; (2) the electric dipole in the excited molecule is aligned similarly to the potential dipole in the second molecule; and (3) the energy of the original dipole is appropriate, an aspect that we will consider next.

For resonance transfer of electronic excitation to occur, the energy available in the excited molecule must match the energy that can be accepted by a second molecule. The wavelengths for fluorescence indicate the energy of the excited singlet state of a molecule (at least after the very rapid radiationless transitions to the lowest vibrational sublevel of that excited state have occurred). Although fluorescence itself is not involved in this type of excitation transfer, the fluorescence emission spectrum gives the range of energies available for transfer to a second molecule. The range of wavelengths of light that can sympathetically induce an oscillation of some electron in a second molecule is given by the absorption spectrum of that molecule (see Chapter 4, Sections 4.2A and 4.4C), and therefore the absorption spectrum shows the energies that can be accepted by a molecule. As might be expected from these two considerations, the probability for resonance transfer is high when the overlap in wavelength between the fluorescence band for the excited oscillator (available energy) and the absorption band of an unexcited oscillator (acceptable energy) in a neighboring molecule is large. Because the overlap in the red region between the absorption spectrum and the fluorescence emission spectrum of Chl *a* is large (Fig. 5-3), excitations can be efficiently exchanged between Chl *a* molecules by resonance transfer. Figure 5-10 illustrates the various energy considerations involved in resonance transfer of excitation between two dissimilar molecules.

The probability for resonance transfer of electronic excitation decreases as the distance between the two molecules increases. If chlorophyll molecules were uniformly distributed in three dimensions in the lamellar membranes of chloroplasts (Fig. 1-10), they would have a center-to-center spacing of approximately 2 nm, an intermolecular distance over which resonance transfer of excitation can readily occur (resonance transfer is effective up to about 10 nm for chlorophyll). Thus both the spectral properties of chlorophyll and its spacing in the lamellar membranes of chloroplasts are conducive to an efficient migration of excitation from molecule to molecule by resonance transfer.

5.3C. Specific Transfers of Excitation

In addition to the transfer from one Chl *a* molecule to another, excitations can also migrate by resonance transfer from the accessory pigments to Chl *a*. The transfers of excitation among Chl *a*'s can be nearly 100% efficient (i.e., $k_{\text{transfer}} \gg$ rate constants for competing pathways; see Eq. 4.16), whereas the

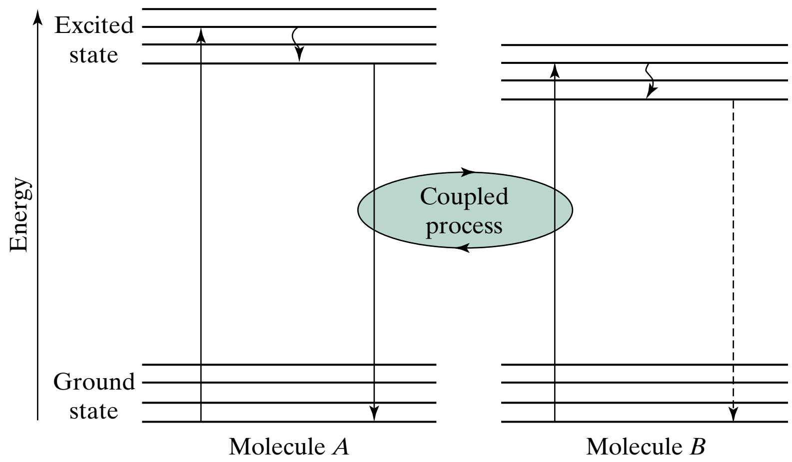


Figure 5-10. Resonance transfer of excitation from molecule *A* to molecule *B*. After light absorption by molecule *A*, a radiationless transition occurs to the lowest vibrational sublevel of its excited state. Next, resonance transfer of the excitation takes place from *A* to *B*, causing the second molecule to go to an excited state, while molecule *A* returns to its ground state. After a radiationless transition to the lowest vibrational sublevel in the excited state, fluorescence can then be emitted by molecule *B* as it returns to its ground state. Based on the energy level diagrams (which include the vibrational sublevels for each of these two different pigments), we can conclude that generally the excitation rapidly decreases in energy after each intermolecular transfer between dissimilar molecules.

fraction of excitation transfers between dissimilar molecules varies but is usually above 70% from carotenoids to Chl *a*. For instance, the transfer of excitation from β-carotene to Chl *a* is very efficient in certain algae, as is the transfer from fucoxanthin. Also, most excitations of phycobilins and Chl *b* can be transferred to Chl *a*. In red algae, over 90% of the electronic excitations produced by the absorption of photons by phycoerythrin can be passed on to phycocyanin and then to Chl *a*; these transfers require about 4×10^{-10} s each. We next consider the direction for excitation transfer between various photosynthetic pigments and then the times involved for intermolecular excitation transfers of chlorophyll.

Some energy is generally lost by each molecule to which the excitation is transferred. Specifically, any excess vibrational or rotational energy is usually dissipated rapidly as heat (see Fig. 5-10). The λ_{max} for each type of pigment involved in the sequential steps of excitation transfer thus tends to become longer in the direction in which the excitation migrates. In particular, the fluorescence emission spectrum of some molecule—which must appreciably overlap the absorption spectrum of the receiving molecule for resonance transfer to take place efficiently—occurs at longer wavelengths than the absorption spectrum of that molecule (see Fig. 5-3 for Chl *a*). Therefore, for a second type of molecule to become excited by resonance transfer, it should have an absorption band at longer wavelengths (lower energy) than the absorption band for the molecule from which it receives the excitation. Thus, the direction for excitation migration by resonance transfer among photosynthetic pigments is usually toward pigments with longer λ_{max}. We can appreciate this important aspect by considering Figure 5-10. If excitation

to the second excited vibrational sublevel of the excited state is the most probable transition predicted by the Franck–Condon principle for each molecule, then the excitation of molecule *A* requires more energy than that of *B* (the pigment to which the excitation is transferred). Hence, λ_{max_B} must be longer than λ_{max_A} in the two absorption spectra, consistent with our statement that the excitation migrates toward the pigment with the longer λ_{max}.

As a specific example of the tendency for excitations to migrate toward pigments with longer λ_{max}'s in their absorption spectra, we will consider the transfer of excitations from accessory pigments to Chl *a*. In red algae and in some cyanobacteria, phycoerythrin has a λ_{max} at about 560 nm and passes the excitation to phycocyanin, which has an absorption maximum near 630 nm. This excitation can then be transferred to a Chl *a* with a λ_{max} near 670 nm. The biliprotein allophycocyanin absorbs maximally near 660 nm and can intervene in the transfer of excitation between phycocyanin and Chl *a*. Because some of the excitation energy is usually dissipated as heat by each molecule (see Fig. 5-10), the excitation represents less energy (longer λ) after each pigment in the sequence. Consequently, the overall direction for excitation migration is essentially irreversible.

As the nuclei vibrate back and forth after the absorption of a photon by some electron, their collisions with other nuclei every 10^{-13} s or so can lead in such short times to the dissipation of any excess energy in the excited vibrational sublevels. In addition, the radiationless transition from the upper excited singlet to the lower excited singlet of Chl *a*—$S^{b}_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ to $S^{a}_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ in Figure 4-9—is essentially completed within about 10^{-12} s. The time for the transfer of the excitation between two Chl *a* molecules in vivo is somewhat longer—1 or 2×10^{-12} s. Thus the originally excited chlorophyll molecule usually attains the lowest vibrational sublevel of the lower excited singlet state before the excitation is transferred to another molecule. The amount of energy resonantly transferred from one Chl *a* to another Chl *a* therefore generally corresponds to the energy indicated by the fluorescence emission spectrum (Fig. 5-3). An excitation representing this amount of energy can, in principle, be transferred many times by resonance transfer with essentially no further degradation of the energy.

In Chapter 4 (Section 4.3B) we noted that an upper time limit within which processes involving excited singlet states must occur is provided by the kinetics of fluorescence deexcitation. The lifetime for chlorophyll fluorescence from the lower excited singlet state is about 1.5×10^{-8} s. Time is therefore sufficient for approximately 10,000 transfers of excitation among the Chl *a* molecules—each transfer requiring 1 or 2×10^{-12} s—before the loss of the excitation by the emission of fluorescence. The number of excitation transfers among Chl *a* molecules is actually much less than this for reasons that will shortly become clear.

5.3D. Excitation Trapping

The special Chl *a*'s, P_{680} and P_{700}, can absorb at longer wavelengths in the red region than the other types of Chl *a*, so their excited singlet states are at lower energies. The other Chl *a*'s can excite such trap chl's by resonance

transfer, but P_{680} and P_{700} usually do not pass the excitation back; that is, they rapidly lose some excitation energy (within 10^{-12} s), so they do not retain enough energy to reexcite the other Chl *a*'s by resonance transfer. The excited singlet states of other Chl *a* molecules therefore can have their excitations readily passed on to the trap chl's, but not vice versa—analogous to the irreversibility of the migration of excitations from the accessory pigments to Chl *a*. The excitations resulting from the absorption of radiation by the various photosynthetic pigments are thereby funneled into P_{680} or P_{700}. Such collecting of excitations by one molecular type is the net effect of Equations 5.2 through 5.4 (with the term trap chl replaced by P_{680} or P_{700}).

Because one of the trap chl's is present per approximately 230 chlorophylls (Table 5-1), on average only a few hundred transfers are necessary to get an excitation from Chl *a* to P_{680} or P_{700}. Thus the calculated 10,000 transfers of excitation from one Chl *a* to another possible within the fluorescence lifetime do not occur. Because each excitation transfer takes 1 or 2×10^{-12} s, 200 transfers require about 3×10^{-10} s. In agreement with this, both calculations from mathematical models and ingenious experimentation have shown that over 95% of the excitations of Chl *a* migrate to P_{680} or P_{700} in less than 10^{-9} s.

The characteristics of fluorescence also provide information on the lifetime of the excited singlet state of chlorophyll in vivo and thus on the time available for migration of excitations. Specifically, approximately 1 to 3% of the light absorbed by Chl *a* in vivo is lost by fluorescence. The amount reradiated depends on the competing deexcitation reactions and hence is higher at higher incident light levels for which the photochemical reactions become saturated. The quantum yield for fluorescence in vivo, Φ_F, can thus be 0.02. Equation 4.16 ($\Phi_i = \tau/\tau_i$) indicates that this quantum yield is equal to τ/τ_F, where τ is the lifetime of the excited singlet state and τ_F is its fluorescence lifetime. A reasonable assumption is that τ_F in vivo is similar to the fluorescence lifetime of Chl *a* in vitro, 1.5×10^{-8} s. Therefore, Equation 4.16 predicts a lifetime for the excited state of Chl *a* in vivo of (0.02) (1.5×10^{-8} s), or 3×10^{-10} s. This is another estimate of the average time necessary for the excitation to migrate to the trap chl (at least for P_{680}).

P_{680} and P_{700} act as traps for excitations in chloroplast lamellae, and a special type of bacteriochlorophyll *a* with a λ_{max} between 870 and 890 nm (depending on the species) acts in an analogous manner for the green and the purple photosynthetic bacteria. One of the useful features of such excitation traps is to have an excited singlet state lower in energy than the excited singlet states in the other pigment molecules. This lower-energy state (longer λ_{max} for absorption) is a consequence of the molecular environment in which the chlorophyll molecules acting as excitation traps are located. Moreover, the longer λ_{max} ensures the directionality for the migration of excitations. Another characteristic of the trap chl's is their relative rarity. Thus most of the photosynthetic pigments act as light harvesters, which collect the radiation and channel the excitations toward the trap chl, as is illustrated in Figure 5-11. Processing of the excitation originally caused by light takes place only at the trap chl's. This participation in the essentially irreversible electron-transfer process is the crucial feature of an excitation trap.

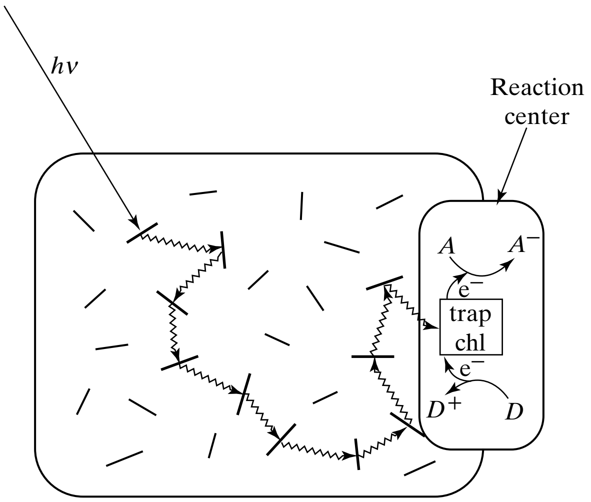


Figure 5-11. Schematic representation of a group of pigments in a photosystem "core" that harvests a light quantum (*hv*) and passes the excitation to a special trap chlorophyll. Short straight lines indicate the inducible dipoles of chlorophyll molecules and the wavy lines indicate resonance transfer. In the reaction center an electron (e^-) is transferred from the trap chl to some acceptor (A^- in the reduced form) and is then replaced by another electron coming from a suitable donor (D^+ in the oxidized form).

When the excitation migrates to a trap such as P_{680} or P_{700}, this special Chl *a* dimer goes to an excited singlet state, as would any other Chl *a*. Because the trap chl cannot readily excite other chlorophylls by resonance transfer, it might become deexcited by the emission of fluorescence. However, very little fluorescence from the trap chl's is observed in vivo. This is explained by the occurrence of a relatively rapid photochemical event (see Eq. 5.5; trap $\text{chl}^* + A \rightarrow \text{trap chl}^+ + A^-$); the donation within 10^{-10} s of an electron to an acceptor prevents the deexcitation of the trap chl's by fluorescence, which has a longer lifetime.

As we have just indicated, an excited trap chl can rapidly donate an electron to some acceptor molecule, which is part of the photochemistry of photosynthesis. The donation of the electron initiates the chemical reactions of photosynthesis and the subsequent storage of energy in stable chemical bonds. Moreover, once the trap chl has lost an electron, it can take on another electron from some donor, indicated by *D* in Equation 5.6 (trap $\text{chl}^+ + D \rightarrow \text{trap chl} + D^+$) and in Figure 5-11. Thus, the photochemical reactions of photosynthesis lead to electron flow. An excitation trap, such as P_{680} or P_{700}, plays a key role in the conversion of radiant energy into forms of energy that are biologically useful. We generally refer to the trap chl plus *A* and *D* as a *reaction center* (illustrated in Fig. 5-11), which is the locus for the photochemistry of photosynthesis (Eq. 5.5).[2]

2. The Nobel Prize in chemistry was awarded to Johan Deisenhofer, Robert Huber, and Hartmut Michel in 1988 for unraveling the structure of the reaction center from the purple photosynthetic bacterium *Rhodopseudomonas viridis* using X-ray crystallography.

5.4. Groupings of Photosynthetic Pigments

We have discussed the absorption of light by photosynthetic pigments and the ensuing transfers of excitation among these molecules, which leads us to a consideration of whether there are special groups of such pigments acting together in some concerted fashion. Such an ensemble is presented in Figure 5-11, in which the light-harvesting photosynthetic pigments greatly outnumber the special trap chl molecules, the latter occurring in a one-to-one relationship with suitable electron acceptors and donors. In this section we will consider the kinetics of both photon and excitation processing as well as the organization of photosynthetic pigments into functional groups.

5.4A. Photon Processing

At low light levels, one CO_2 can be fixed and one O_2 evolved for approximately every eight photons absorbed by any of the photosynthetic pigments. Is one O_2 evolved for every eight photons absorbed at high light levels? Data to answer this question were provided in 1932 by Robert Emerson and William Arnold, who exposed the green alga *Chlorella pyrenoidosa* to a series of repetitive intense flashes of light. These flashes excited nearly all of the chlorophyll molecules and other photosynthetic pigments simultaneously. However, the maximum yield was only 1 evolved O_2 for approximately every 2000 chlorophyll molecules. Assuming that each chlorophyll molecule absorbs 1 photon, 250 times more photons are needed than the 8 needed to produce one O_2 at low light levels. At low light levels, sufficient time elapses between the arrival of individual photons for the excitations of the accessory pigments and Chl *a* to be efficiently collected in trap chl's and used for the chemical reactions of photosynthesis. At high light levels, however, many photosynthetic pigments become excited at the same time, and only 1 excited chlorophyll out of about 250 leads to any photochemical reaction.

The previous conclusions can also be considered in terms of Figure 5-11, in which the trap chl is shown interacting with the electron acceptor *A* and the donor *D*. At high light levels, the rate-limiting step for photosynthesis is not light absorption, excitation transfer, or photochemistry (electron donation by trap chl*), but the subsequent steps leading to O_2 evolution and CO_2 fixation. A brief intense illumination thus leads to more excitations than can be processed by the electron transfer reactions and subsequent biochemical events. In the limit of a very intense flash exciting all photosynthetic pigments simultaneously, one excitation is processed photochemically by each reaction center; all others are dissipated by various nonphotochemical deexcitation processes, such as those discussed in Chapter 4 (Section 4.3).

5.4B. Excitation Processing

The electron excitation caused by the absorption of a photon can be processed by the chemical reactions leading to CO_2 fixation about once every 5×10^{-3} s (5 ms). This processing time has important consequences for both

the efficiency of light use at different photon flux densities and the optimal number of chlorophylls per reaction center, as we consider next.

The highest photon flux density normally encountered by plants occurs when the sun is directly overhead on a cloudless day, in which case the photosynthetic photon flux (PPF) for wavelengths from 400 to 700 nm is about 2000 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1} on a horizontal plane (Chapter 4, Section 4.1D). The average chlorophyll concentration in chloroplasts is approximately 30 mol m^{-3} (Chapter 4, Section 4.4D), and in passing through a chloroplast 2 μm thick about 30% of the incident PPF is absorbed. We can therefore estimate how often an individual chlorophyll molecule absorbs a photon:

$$(0.3)\left(2000 \times 10^{-6} \text{ mol photons m}^{-2}\text{ s}^{-1}\right) = 600 \times 10^{-6} \text{ mol photons m}^{-2}\text{ s}^{-1}$$

are absorbed by

$$\left(30 \text{ mol chlorphyll m}^{-3}\right)\left(2 \times 10^{-6} \text{ m}\right) = 60 \times 10^{-6} \text{ mol chlorophyll m}^{-2}$$

which is

$$\frac{600 \times 10^{-6} \text{ mol photons m}^{-2}\text{ s}^{-1}}{60 \times 10^{-6} \text{ mol chlorophyll m}^{-2}} = 10 \text{ mol photons (mol chlorophyll)}^{-1}\text{ s}^{-1}$$

Thus on average 10 photons are absorbed per second by each chlorophyll molecule in a chloroplast exposed to full sunlight.

As we have just calculated, each chlorophyll molecule in an unshaded chloroplast can absorb a photon about once every 0.1 s. When there are 250 chlorophylls per reaction center, 12.5 of these molecules are excited every 5 ms (250 chlorophylls × 10 excitations per chlorophyll/1 s × 0.005 s). However, because the average processing time per reaction center is about 5 ms, only one of these 12.5 excitations can be used photochemically—the others are dissipated by nonphotochemical deexcitation reactions. Consequently, although the biochemical reactions leading to CO_2 fixation operate at their maximum rates under such conditions of high PPF, over 90% of the electronic excitations caused by light absorption are not used for photosynthesis (Fig. 5-12).

Full midday sunlight is seldom incident on a chloroplast under natural conditions, because chloroplasts are usually shaded by other chloroplasts in the same cell, by chloroplasts in other cells, and by overlying leaves. Furthermore, the amount of sunlight incident on a plant is much less at sunrise or sunset, during overcast periods, or during the winter than near noon on a clear day in the summer. Let us consider that the PPF incident on a chloroplast is 10% of that from the direct midday sun, namely 200 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1}. In this case, each chlorophyll molecule in the chloroplast absorbs a photon once every second. When individual chlorophylls are excited every 1 s at this moderate illumination, 1 chlorophyll of the 250 per reaction center is excited on average every 4 ms (1000 ms per 250 excitations). This excitation frequency is such that the photons can be efficiently used for photosynthesis with its processing time of 5 ms (Fig. 5-12 indicates that 80% of the excitations are processed photochemically at a PPF of 200 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1}). In other words, the photons are arriving at a rate such that the excitations produced by nearly all of them can be used for photosynthesis. Moreover, the chemical

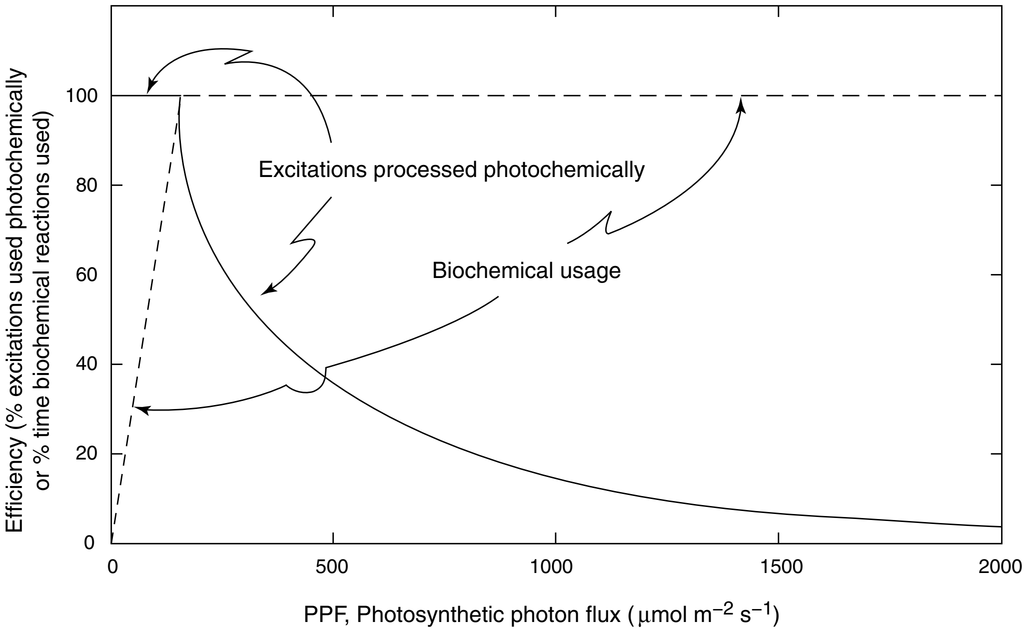


Figure 5-12. Efficiency of photosynthesis at various PPF levels directly incident on a chloroplast. The lines were calculated assuming 250 chlorophyll molecules per reaction center, 30% absorption of the incident PPF, and a 5 ms processing time for the biochemical reactions (see text). Under these specific assumptions, below a PPF of 160 µmol m^{-2} s^{-1}, all excitations are used photochemically (solid line) and the fraction of the time that the biochemical reactions are used increases with the PPF (dashed line); above this PPF, the biochemical reactions are used all of the time (dashed line) but the fraction of excitations processed photochemically decreases (solid line).

reactions are working at their maximum capacity. Consequently, a reaction center, with its photochemistry and associated enzymatic reactions, functions very effectively at a moderate illumination.

What happens if there were only one light-harvesting chlorophyll molecule per reaction center? This single pigment molecule would be excited about once per second at a PPF of 200 µmol m^{-2} s^{-1}. If the chemical reactions required 5 ms as used previously, the excitation could easily be processed by the chemical reactions. However, the photochemical step plus the subsequent enzymatic reactions leading to CO_2 fixation would be working at only 0.5% of capacity—$(5 \times 10^{-3}$ s)/(1 s), or 0.005, is the fraction of time they could be used. In other words, although all the absorbed photons would be used for photosynthesis, even the slowest of the biochemical steps would be idle more than 99% of the time.

Given the 5-ms processing time for the biochemical reactions, having approximately 250 chlorophylls per reaction center connected with the appropriate enzyme machinery thus provides a plant with a mechanism for efficiently handling the usual illuminations found in nature—both for harvesting the photons and for using the biochemical reactions at a substantial fraction of their capacity. For instance, averaged over the earth's surface and the year, the mean PPF reaching the ground during the daytime on clear days is about 800 µmol m^{-2} s^{-1}. The total area of all leaves divided by the total land area where vegetation occurs is about 4.3 (this ratio, called the *leaf area*

index, will be discussed in Chapter 9, Section 9.2C), so the average PPF on a leaf is somewhat less than 200 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1}. At this PPF, which can also occur for chloroplasts in cells on the side away from the fully sunlit side of a leaf, the rate of photon absorption is well matched to the rate of excitation processing (Fig. 5-12).

In addition to interspecific variations, the number of chlorophylls per reaction center can depend on the PPF present during leaf development. Some algae and leaves of land plants developing under low illumination can have over 700 chlorophyll molecules per reaction center, whereas certain leaves developing under full sunlight can have as few as 100, an example of phenotypic plasticity. The ratio is fairly low in bacteria, where there are 40 to 100 bacteriochlorophyll molecules per reaction center.

5.4C. Photosynthetic Action Spectra and Enhancement Effects

The electron excitations resulting from light absorption by any photosynthetic pigment can be transferred to a trap chl and thus lead to photochemical reactions. The absorption spectrum of chloroplasts might therefore be expected to match the action spectrum for photosynthesis. However, the action spectrum for CO_2 fixation or O_2 evolution and the overall absorption spectrum for the photosynthetic pigments in the same organism do not always coincide (for the earlier such studies, O_2 evolution was easier to measure than was CO_2 fixation or carbohydrate production, cf. Fig. 5-1 or Eq. 5.1 for photosynthetic reactants and products). Among other things, a "red drop" occurs—the photosynthetic action spectrum drops off much more rapidly in the red region beyond 690 nm than does the absorption spectrum for chlorophylls and other pigments (illustrated in Fig. 5-13 for the case of a green alga).

In 1957 Emerson demonstrated that the relatively low photosynthetic efficiency of *Chlorella* in far-red light—a red drop such as that illustrated in Figure 5-13—can be increased by simultaneously using light of a shorter wavelength along with the far-red light. The photosynthetic rate with the two beams can be 30 to 40% greater than the sum of the rates of the far-red light and the shorter wavelength light used separately. Also, the quantum yield (Eq. 4.16) for O_2 evolution by *Chlorella* using the 700-nm radiation is higher when the 650-nm light is present. Such synergism, or enhancement, suggests that photosynthesis involves the cooperation of two distinct photochemical reactions. Light of wavelengths longer than 690 nm mainly powers only one of the two necessary reactions, and thus photosynthesis does not proceed at an appreciable rate. When shorter wavelengths are also used, however, the other necessary reaction takes place, resulting in a marked enhancement of the photosynthetic rate or quantum yield.

5.4D. Two Photosystems Plus Light-Harvesting Antennae

We can use the photosynthetic enhancement effect to study the pigments associated with each of the two photochemical systems involved in photosynthesis. The system containing the pigments absorbing beyond 690 nm was

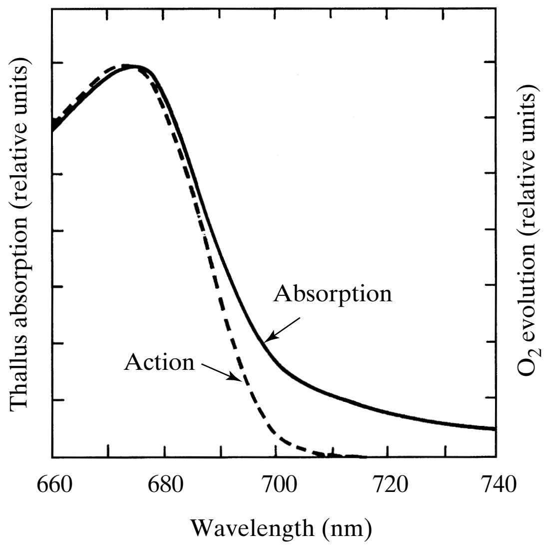


Figure 5-13. Absorption spectrum for an algal thallus and the action spectrum for its O_2 evolution, illustrating the "red drop" in photosynthesis. [Data for *Ulva taeniata* are from Haxo and Blinks (1950). Reproduced from *The Journal of General Physiology* by copyright permission of The Rockefeller University Press.]

discovered first and is referred to as Photosystem I, a terminology introduced by Louis Duysens, Jan Amesz, and Bert Kamp in 1961 (also referred to as Photosystem 1). Much of the far-red absorption by Photosystem I is due to a Chl *a* with a λ_{max} near 680 nm. The special Chl *a* dimer, P_{700}, is found exclusively in Photosystem I. Therefore, light above 690 nm is absorbed mainly by the long-wavelength-absorbing form of Chl *a* and P_{700} in Photosystem I.

An action spectrum for the enhancement of photosynthesis in the presence of a constant irradiation with wavelengths longer than 690 nm, which are absorbed by Photosystem I, indicates which pigments are in the other system, Photosystem II. For example, an action spectrum for such photosynthetic enhancement is presented in Figure 5-14 for the red alga *Porphyridium cruentum* and resembles the absorption spectrum of phycoerythrin (λ_{max} near 540 nm; see Fig. 5-8). A marked increase in photosynthesis in the cyanobacterium *Anacystis nidulans* occurs when such far-red light is supplemented by light absorbed by phycocyanin (see Fig. 5-14 and the absorption spectrum for phycocyanin in Fig. 5-8). Therefore, in such organisms the phycobilins funnel their excitations mainly into Photosystem II. Studies using photosynthetic enhancement also indicate that the excitations of Chl *b* preferentially go to Photosystem II, as do those of fucoxanthin in the brown algae. In a related experimental approach, action spectra for the evocation of Chl *a* fluorescence indicate that light absorbed by the phycobilins and Chl *b* leads to the fluorescence of Chl *a* in Photosystem II. However, the results are not clear-cut because photons absorbed by Chl *b* and the phycobilins can also lead to photochemical reactions powered by P_{700}.

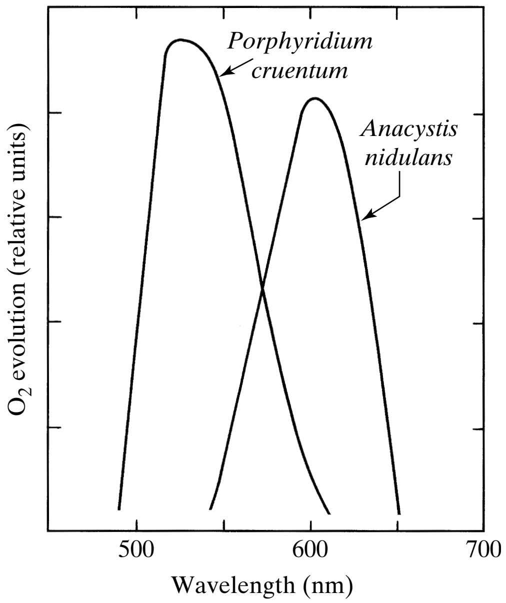


Figure 5-14. Action spectra for the enhancement of O_2 evolution. Cells were exposed to a constant far-red illumination (wavelengths beyond 690 nm that by themselves would produce little O_2 evolution) plus a specific photosynthetic photon flux at the various wavelengths indicated on the abscissa. The ordinate represents the rate of O_2 evolution for the two beams acting together minus that produced by the shorter wavelength acting alone. The pigment absorbing the light leading to enhancement of O_2 evolution in the red alga *Porphyridium cruentum* is phycoerythrin, and phycocyanin is responsible in the cyanobacterium *Anacystis nidulans*—see absorption spectra in Figure 5-8. [Source: Emerson and Rabinowitch (1960); used by permission.]

Steady progress has occurred in the isolation and the chemical identification of the photosystems as well as in the recognition that certain photosynthetic pigments in other distinct complexes can transfer excitations to Photosystems I and II. These latter pigments are referred to as being in *light-harvesting antennae*, which transfer excitations to the core chlorophyll–protein complexes. For instance, Chl *b* occurs in chlorophyll–protein complexes that are part of the light-harvesting antennae (Tables 5-1 and 5-2).

Each photosystem contains various protein subunits that are associated with specific pigments. For instance, the core of Photosystem I consists of 14 protein subunits to which can be bound about 100 molecules of Chl *a* (Table 5-2). This supramolecular organization contains a reaction center with P_{700} and also interacts with a chlorophyll–protein complex acting as a light-harvesting antenna (Table 5-2). Similarly, Photosystem II is composed of over 20 protein subunits, about 35 Chl *a* molecules, and a reaction center containing P_{680}. This photosystem interacts with two types of light-harvesting complexes, a tightly bound one and a rather larger peripheral one (Table 5-2). The peripheral light-harvesting complex can become disconnected from Photosystem II and then transfer excitations to Photosystem I. In particular, when absorption of photons is greatly in excess of what can be processed by Photosystem II, some of the light-harvesting complex associated with Photosystem II becomes detached after phosphate groups are

Table 5-1.5. Chlorophyll Composition of the Photosystems and Light-Harvesting Antennae[a]

Component examples	Approximate number of chlorophyll molecules
Photosystem I	
Core containing P_{700} and 14 protein subunits	100 Chl *a*
Light-harvesting antenna group	70 Chl *a*, 20 Chl *b*
Photosystem II	
Core containing P_{680} and 20 protein subunits	35 Chl *a*
Integral light-harvesting antenna group	20 Chl *a*, 15 Chl *b*
Peripheral light-harvesting antenna group	110 Chl *a*, 80 Chl *b*

[a] Data are for chloroplasts from leaves of plants growing under moderate levels of sunlight. Component size and chlorophyll numbers vary, especially for the antennae groups. Each antenna group has three or four types of chlorophyll–protein complexes. The peripheral light-harvesting antenna group can also interact with Photosystem I, such as at high levels of irradiation.

added that can lead to electrostatic repulsion. Movement of such antenna chlorophylls away from Photosystem II and their ability to pass excitations on to Photosystem I help create a better balance in photon processing by the two photosystems. The phycobiliproteins (organized into phycobilisomes in cyanobacteria and red algae) are also part of a light-harvesting complex, in this case one interacting with Photosystem II. Only a single photosystem occurs in the green and the purple bacteria, which oxidize primarily organic acids or inorganic sulfur-containing compounds instead of water (hence, O_2 evolution does not accompany their photosynthesis); again, a special light-harvesting complex is involved in collecting excitations and directing them toward a trap BChl *a* in the core.

We note that Photosystem II is 40 to 90% more abundant than Photosystem I for plants growing in full sunlight, and the relative amounts of various pigments in the complexes can also be influenced by the illumination level during leaf development. In particular, different light-absorbing and light-processing efficiencies between the two photosystems necessitate different stoichiometries. Photosystem I is excluded from most of the appressed membrane regions where chloroplast lamellae are stacked into grana (see Fig. 1-10), whereas Photosystem II is located mainly in these stacked granal thylakoids. Thus the stromal lamellae and apparently also the exposed end membranes and the margins of the grana are greatly enriched in Photosystem I. Chloroplasts in leaves developing in the shade tend to have more photosynthetic pigments per unit volume, more thylakoids, a greater relative stacking of thylakoids into grana, and therefore a greater light-absorbing ability than do chloroplasts developing under high illumination. Consequently, the Photosystem I-enriched lamellae exposed to the stroma increase from about 40% of the lamellar membranes for leaves developing under low illuminations to 60% under high ones. The increase in the ratio of Photosystem I to Photosystem II with increasing availability of light leads to an increase in the ratio of Chl *a* to Chl *b*, as Photosystem I and its associated light-harvesting antenna have a higher fraction of their chlorophyll as Chl *a* than does Photosystem II with its antennae (Table 5-2). Such relative increases of Photosystem I and Chl *a* with increasing illumination can be seen between plants, between leaves on a tree, and even between cells in a single leaf.

5.5. Electron Flow

The photochemical reaction of photosynthesis involves the removal of an electron from an excited state of the special chlorophyll that acts as an excitation trap. The movement of the electron from this trap chl to an acceptor begins a series of electron transfers that can ultimately lead to the reduction of $NADP^+$. The oxidized trap chl, which has lost an electron, can accept another electron from some donor, as in the steps leading to O_2 evolution. Coupled to the electron transfer reactions in chloroplasts is the formation of ATP, a process known as "photophosphorylation." In this section we will consider some of the components of chloroplasts involved in accepting and donating electrons; a discussion of the energetics of such processes will follow in Chapter 6 (Section 6.3).

The various steps of photosynthesis vary greatly in the amount of time required. For instance, the absorption of light and the transfer of excitation from both accessory pigments and Chl *a* molecules to a trap chl take from 10^{-15} to 10^{-9} s after the arrival of a photon. The photochemical event at the reaction center leads to the separation of an electron from the trap chl (Eq. 5.5), causing bleaching—a decrease in the absorption coefficient for wavelengths in the visible region—of this pigment, usually within 10^{-10} s. By observing the kinetics of this bleaching in the far-red region, we can tell when photochemistry occurs. The donation of an electron to the oxidized trap chl (Eq. 5.6) usually occurs 10^{-7} to 10^{-4} s after the arrival of a photon and restores the original spectral properties of the trap chl. The ensuing electron flow to some components can last into the millisecond range. Finally, the overall processing time for a reaction center plus the associated enzymes is about 5 ms per excitation.

5.5A. Electron Flow Model

In 1937 Robin Hill demonstrated that isolated chloroplasts, when placed in an aqueous solution in the presence of a suitable electron acceptor, can evolve oxygen in the light, a process that has become known as the *Hill reaction*. Oxygen evolution proceeds in the absence of CO_2, suggesting that CO_2 fixation and O_2 evolution are separate processes, contrary to the then prevailing belief. Using ^{18}O-labeled H_2O and ^{18}O-labeled CO_2 in different experiments, Laurens Ruben and Martin Kamen showed in 1941 that the evolved O_2 comes from water and not from CO_2. Subsequent studies have elucidated the steps intervening between O_2 evolution and CO_2 fixation in photosynthesis.

We begin our discussion of electron flow in photosynthesis with the water oxidation step:

$$2H_2O \rightarrow O_2 + 4H \tag{5.8}$$

CO_2 fixation into a carbohydrate involves the reduction of carbon, with four hydrogen atoms being required per carbon atom:

$$CO_2 + 4H \rightarrow \{CH_2O\} + H_2O \tag{5.9}$$

where $\{CH_2O\}$ represents a general carbohydrate (as in Fig. 5-1). The movement of the reductant H in Equation 5.9 can conveniently be followed by tracing the flow of electrons ($H = H^+ + e^-$; reducing a compound is chemically equivalent to adding electrons, and oxidation is the removal of electrons). The oxidant involved with O_2 evolution (Eq. 5.8) is provided by Photosystem II. The primary oxidant is trap chl^+, which leads to the oxidation of water (see Eq. 5.6; trap $chl^+ + D \rightarrow$ trap chl $+ D^+$). The reductant required for carbon reduction (Eq. 5.9) is produced by the excited trap chl in Photosystem I (see Eq. 5.5; trap $chl^* + A \rightarrow$ trap $chl^+ + A^-$). These two photosystems are linked by a chain of components along which a transfer of electrons occurs (Fig. 5-15).

For each photon absorbed by any of the accessory pigments or Chl *a*'s whose excitations are funneled into a reaction center, one electron can be removed from its trap chl. Because four electrons are involved per O_2 derived from water, the evolution of this molecule of O_2 requires the absorption of four photons by Photosystem II or the light-harvesting antennae feeding into it (see Eq. 5.8 and Fig. 5-15). An additional four photons whose excitations arrive at the trap chl of Photosystem I are required for the reduction of the two molecules of $NADP^+$ to NADPH necessary for the subsequent reduction of one CO_2 molecule (Eq. 5.9; Figs. 5-1 and 5-15). Hence eight photons are needed for the evolution of one molecule of O_2 and the fixation of one molecule of CO_2. (In Chapter 6, Section 6.3D, we will consider how many photons are used to provide the ATP's required per CO_2 fixed.) The series representation (Fig. 5-15) proposed by Hill and Fay

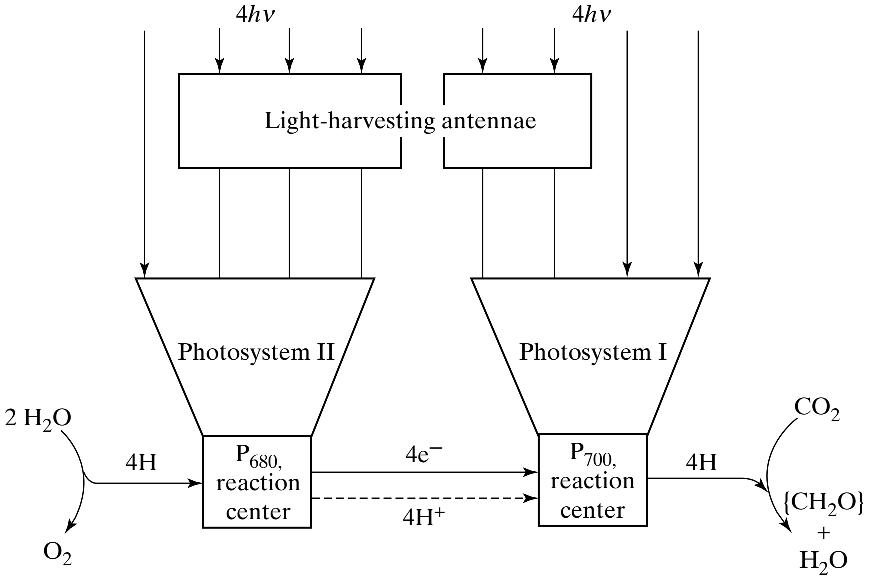


Figure 5-15. Schematic model for a series representation of the two photosystems of photosynthesis, indicating the stoichiometry of various factors involved in the reduction of CO_2 to a carbohydrate ($\{CH_2O\}$). Some of the photons ($h\nu$) are captured by the accessory pigments and Chl *a* in the light-harvesting antennae; these excitations are then fed into the two photosystems, but primarily to Photosystem II.

Bendall in 1960 takes into consideration the results of many investigators and has become generally accepted as an overall description of electron flow in chloroplast lamellae. After introducing the concept of redox potential in Chapter 6 (Section 6.1C), we will portray the energetics of the series representation (see Fig. 6-4, which includes many of the components that we will discuss next).

5.5B. Components of the Electron Transfer Pathway

We shall now turn our attention to the specific molecules that act as electron acceptors or donors in chloroplasts. A summary of the characteristics of the most common components of this complex pathway is presented in Table 5-3. Figure 6-4 should also be consulted, if the underlying concept of redox potential is already familiar. We will begin our discussion by considering the photochemistry at the reaction center of Photosystem II and then consider the various substances in the sequence in which they are involved in electron transfer along the pathway from Photosystem II to Photosystem I. We will conclude by considering the fate of the excited electron in Photosystem I.

The electron removed from the excited trap chl in the reaction center of Photosystem II is replaced by one coming from water in the process leading to O_2 evolution (Eq. 5.8). Indeed, Photosystem II is the only biological system that can evolve O_2 from water. Using very brief flashes of light, Pierre Joliot showed in the 1960s that essentially no O_2 evolution accompanied the first or even the second flash, which was also shown by Bessel Kok. If the four electrons involved come from four different Photosystem II's, then a single intense flash should cause O_2 evolution because four Photosystem II's would have been excited and the four electrons coming from each O_2 could be accepted. If two photosystems were involved, each one accepting two electrons sequentially, then two flashes should lead to O_2 evolution. In fact, every fourth flash leads to substantial O_2 evolution, indicating that a single Photosystem II is responsible for the four electrons involved in the evolution of each O_2 molecule; that is, four consecutive photochemical acts in a particular Photosystem II are required before a molecule of O_2 can be evolved. The four steps, which result in the release of O_2 inside a thylakoid, require about 2 ms. (In an illuminated leaf, there are many O_2-evolving loci, and the four steps are in different stages at any one time, thus O_2 is continually evolved.) Four manganese (Mn) atoms occur per reaction center in Photosystem II, and their progressive experimental removal from proteins leads to a stoichiometric reduction in the O_2-evolving ability.

The electron from trap chl* of Photosystem II (P_{680}) is transferred by a series of molecules making up the photosynthetic *electron transfer chain*, a term describing the pathway from Photosystem II to Photosystem I (see Fig. 5-15). The electron removed from P_{680} is very rapidly transferred to *pheophytin* (in 1 to 2 $\times$ 10^{-12} s); pheophytin has the structure of chlorophyll (Fig. 5-2) without the central magnesium atom, indicating that it is a highly conjugated porphyrin absorbing in the blue region (Soret band) and the red region. From pheophytin, two of which occur in Photosystem II, the electron rapidly (in 2 $\times$ 10^{-10} s) moves to a quinone (generally referred

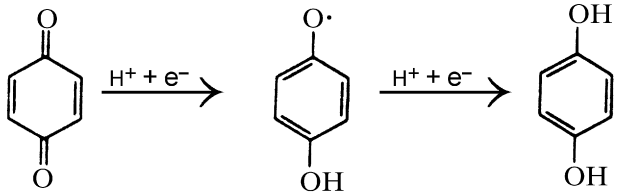
Table 5-2. Representative Properties of Some Components Involved with Electron Transfer in Chloroplasts[a]

Name	Molecular mass (kDa)	Approximate number per 600 chlorophylls	Numbers of electrons accepted or donated per molecule	Approximate midpoint redox potential (V)	Comment
P_{680}	2 × 0.893	1.6	1	1.10	A Chl *a* dimer; acts as the trap of Photosystem II
Plastoquinone A	0.748	10	2	0.11	Located in membrane; acts as a mobile pool accepting electrons from Photosystem II and donating them to the Cyt b_6f complex
Cyt b_6	23	2	1	−0.05 and −0.17	The two hemes are bound to the same protein; part of the Cyt b_6f complex
Cyt *f*	34	1	1	0.35	Part of the Cyt b_6f complex; λ_{max} for α band at 554 nm
Plastocyanin	11	2	1	0.37	Blue protein (reduced form is colorless) that accepts electrons from the Cyt b_6f complex and donates them to Photosystem I; contains one Cu; soluble in aqueous solutions, but occurs in the thylakoid lumen
P_{700}	2 × 0.893	1.0	1	0.48	A Chl *a* dimer; acts as the trap of Photosystem I
Ferredoxin	11	1–2	1	−0.42	Nonheme protein with two Fe and two S; accepts electrons from Photosystem I by way of intermediates; soluble in aqueous solutions
Ferredoxin–$NADP^+$ oxidoreductase	37	1	–	–	An enzyme containing one flavin adenine dinucleotide per molecule; bound to outside of lamellae
$NADP^+$–NADPH	0.743 or 0.744	30	2	−0.32	Soluble in aqueous solutions

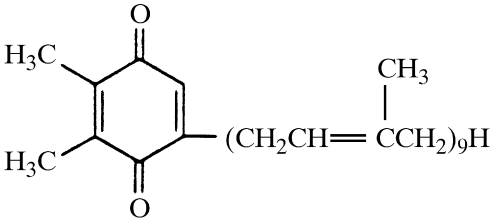
[a] The frequency of components is per 600 chlorophylls for plants growing under moderate levels of sunlight (see Table 5-1), and the order presented is in the sequence for electron flow. Redox potentials are discussed in Chapter 6 (Section 6.1C).

to as Q_A), the latter step helping to stabilize the charge separation and thus preventing the electron from going back to P_{680}^{+}. The electron is later transferred to a second quinone (Q_B); when P_{680} is excited again, another electron is passed to Q_B.

Chloroplast lamellae contain different types of *quinone*. A quinone becomes a *semiquinone* when one hydrogen atom ($H^+ + e^-$) is added (a semiquinone is a free radical because of the presence of an unpaired electron) and a *hydroquinone* when two are added (a hydroquinone is also called a hydroquinol, or simply a quinol):



There is great variation among quinones because of substituents attached to the ring; for example, plastoquinone A is



Like chlorophyll, plastoquinone A has a nonpolar terpenoid or isoprenoid tail, which can stabilize the molecule at the proper location in the lamellar membranes of chloroplasts via hydrophobic reactions with other membrane components. When donating or accepting electrons, plastoquinones have characteristic absorption changes in the UV near 250 to 260, 290, and 320 nm that can be monitored to study their electron transfer reactions. (*Plastoquinone* refers to a quinone found in a plastid such as a chloroplast; these quinones have various numbers of isoprenoid residues, such as nine for plastoquinone A, the most common plastoquinone in higher plants; see above.) The plastoquinones involved in photosynthetic electron transport are divided into two categories: (1) the two plastoquinones that rapidly receive single electrons from P_{680} (Q_A and Q_B); and (2) a mobile group or pool of about 10 plastoquinones that subsequently receives two electrons (plus two H^+'s) from Q_B (all of these quinones occur in the lamellar membranes; see Table 5-3). From the plastoquinone pool, electrons move to the cytochrome b_6f complex.

Cytochromes are extremely important components of electron transfer pathways in chloroplasts and mitochondria. They have three absorption bands in the visible region: the α, β, and γ bands. (Absorption of light by cytochromes is not involved in photosynthesis.) In 1925 David Keilin described three types of cytochrome based on the spectral position of their

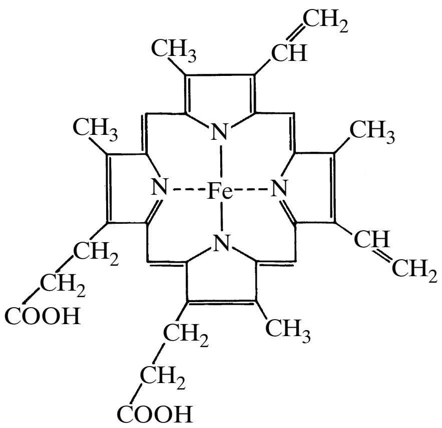


Figure 5-16. An iron-containing porphyrin known as heme, the chromophore for Cyt *c*.

α (long) wavelength band. Cytochromes of the *a* type have a λ_{max} for the α band from 600 to 605 nm, *b* types near 560 nm, and *c* types near 550 nm in vivo. All cytochromes have β bands near 515 to 530 nm. The main short-wavelength band, the γ or Soret band, has a λ_{max} between 415 and 430 nm. The first three cytochromes studied by Keilin were designated Cyt *a*, Cyt *b*, and Cyt *c*. Additional ones were indicated by subscripts. For instance, Cyt *f* (*f* from *frons*, the Latin for leaf) is also known as Cyt c_1 because it resembles the absorption properties of the first additional *c*-type cytochrome identified by Keilin. Cyt b_6 has absorption properties similar to the sixth additional *b*-type cytochrome identified.

Cytochromes consist of an iron-containing tetrapyrrole or porphyrin known as *heme* (Fig. 5-16), which is bound to a protein. They differ in both the substituents around the periphery of the porphyrin ring and the protein to which the chromophore is attached. Cyt *f* occurs in chloroplasts and contains the chromophore indicated in Figure 5-16. Various hemoproteins of the Cyt *b* type are found in plants, two occurring in chloroplasts (Cyt b_{559}, which occurs associated with Photosystem II, and another one with a λ_{max} at about 563 nm, which is part of the Cyt b_6f complex; Table 5-3). These *b* cytochromes appear to have the same chromophore attached to different proteins; consequently, their individual absorption properties are due to changes in the protein. Like the chlorophylls, cytochromes are tetrapyrroles (compare the structure of Chl *a* in Fig. 5-2), but they have an Fe atom in the center of the porphyrin ring, whereas chlorophylls have a Mg atom. Furthermore, the acceptance or donation of an electron by a cytochrome involves a transition between the two states of its iron, Fe^{2+} and Fe^{3+}, whereas the electron removed from chlorophyll in the photochemical reactions of photosynthesis is one of the π electrons in the conjugated system of the porphyrin ring.

Instead of the usual valence bonds, the metal atoms in chlorophylls and cytochromes should be presented in terms of the six coordinate bonds described by ligand-field (molecular-orbital) theory. Fe has one coordinate bond to each of the four N's in the porphyrin ring (the two solid lines and the two broken lines emanating from Fe in Fig. 5-16; also see Fig. 5-2), one to

an N in the imidazole side chain of a histidine, and the sixth to another histidine for *b*-type cytochromes in chloroplasts and to a lysine or a methionine for Cyt *f*;[3] these amino acids occur in the protein to which the chromophore is bound (one bond is above and one is below the plane of the porphyrin in Fig. 5-16). The donation of an electron by the ferrous form (Fe^{2+}) of Cyt *c*, ferrocytochrome *c* (Fig. 5-16), causes the iron to go to the ferric state, Fe^{3+}. The extra positive charge on the iron in ferricytochrome *c* can either attract anions such as OH^- or be delocalized to adjacent parts of the molecule. The six coordinate bonds remain in ferricytochrome *c*, and the conjugation in the porphyrin ring is only moderately changed from that in ferrocytochrome *c*. Hence, the extensive bleaching of chlorophyll after the loss of an electron from its porphyrin ring does not occur with electron donation by the Fe atom in cytochrome because electrons in the ring conjugation are influenced only secondarily.

Removing an electron from a cytochrome (oxidation) causes its three absorption bands to become less intense and broader and to shift toward shorter wavelengths (Fig. 5-17). The absorption coefficients at the λ_{max}'s in the reduced form are about 3×10^3 m^2 mol^{-1} for the α band, somewhat less for the β band, and over 10^4 m^2 mol^{-1} for the γ (Soret) band. Upon oxidation, ε_λ at the λ_{max} for the α band decreases over 50%, and smaller fractional decreases generally occur in the absorption coefficients of the β and the γ bands (λ_{max} is also at shorter wavelengths in the oxidized form, Fig. 5-17). Such absorption changes permit a nondestructive study of the kinetics of electron transfer while the cytochrome molecules remain embedded in the internal membranes of chloroplasts or mitochondria. The spectral changes of chloroplast cytochromes indicate that the electron movement along the electron transfer chain between Photosystem II and Photosystem I (Figs. 5-15 and 6-4) occurs 2×10^{-3} s after light absorption by some pigment molecule in Photosystem II.

The Cyt b_6f complex is a supramolecular protein unit embedded in the chloroplast lamellar membranes. It is composed of four protein subunits, including one that binds two Cyt b_6's and another that binds Cyt *f* (Table 5-3), as well as an iron-plus-sulfur–containing protein (the Rieske Fe–S protein) and a bound plastoquinone. Electrons from the Cyt b_6f complex are carried to Photosystem I by the protein plastocyanin (Table 5-3), which is associated with the inner side of the thylakoid membranes (i.e., the side toward the lumen; see Fig. 1-10). The electrons from plastocyanin, which are apparently donated and accepted by copper atoms, can be accepted by the trap chl of Photosystem I, P_{700}, if the latter is in the oxidized form, meaning that it has lost an electron (see Eq. 5.6; trap chl$^+$ + $D \rightarrow$ trap chl + D^+). The photochemical change in P_{700} can be followed spectrophotometrically because the loss of an electron causes a bleaching of both its Soret and red absorption bands; the subsequent acceptance of an electron restores the original spectral properties. Specifically, P_{700} is bleached (oxidized) by light

3. For *a*-type cytochromes in mitochondria, the sixth position is not bound to an amino acid but rather interacts with O_2, Cu, or other ligands.

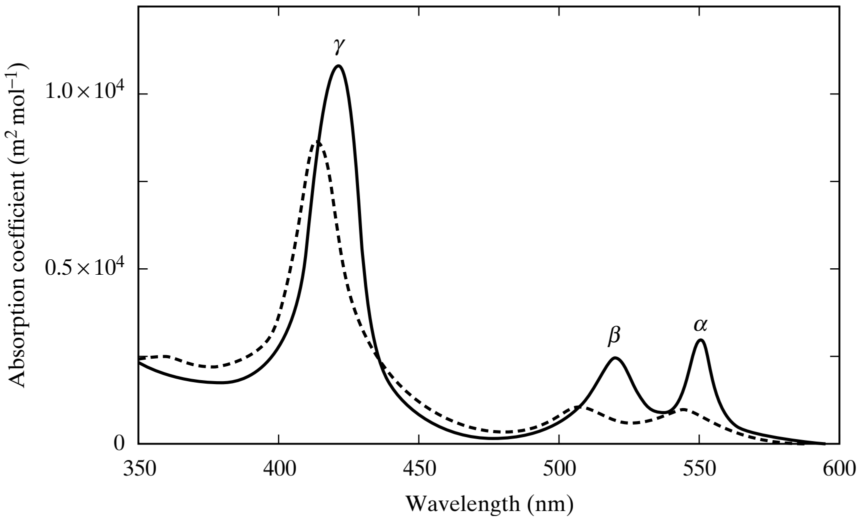


Figure 5-17. Absorption spectra of Cyt *c* in the reduced form, ferrocytochrome c (solid line with the three absorption bands—α, β, and γ), and after the removal of an electron in the oxidized form, ferricytochrome c (dashed line). Such spectral changes can be used to monitor electron donation and acceptance by Cyt *f* in the electron transport chain of chloroplasts.

absorbed by Photosystem I and then restored (reduced) after the absorption of photons by Photosystem II. Thus the electron removed from P_{700} is replaced by one coming from Photosystem II by means of the electron transfer chain (Figs. 5-15 and 6-4). Far-red light (above 690 nm) absorbed by Photosystem I leads to an oxidation of Cyt *f*, indicating that an electron from Cyt *f* can be donated to P^{+}_{700} in about 3×10^{-4} s.

Because Photosystem II tends to occur in the grana and Photosystem I in the stromal lamellae, the intervening components of the electron transport chain need to diffuse in the lamellar membranes to link the two photosystems. We can examine such diffusion using the time–distance relationship derived in Chapter 1 (Eq. 1.6; $x^2_{1/e} = 4D_j t_{1/e}$). In particular, the diffusion coefficient for plastocyanin in a membrane can be about $3 \times 10^{-12}\ \mathrm{m^2\ s^{-1}}$ and about the same in the lumen of the thylakoids, unless diffusion of plastocyanin is physically restricted in the lumen by the appression of the membranes (Haehnel, 1984). For such a D_j, in 3×10^{-4} s (the time for electron transfer from the Cyt b_6f complex to P^{+}_{700}), plastocyanin could diffuse about $[(4)(3 \times 10^{-12}\ \mathrm{m^2\ s^{-1}})\ (3 \times 10^{-4}\ \mathrm{s})]^{1/2}$ or 60 nm, indicating that this complex in the lamellae probably occurs in relatively close proximity to its electron acceptor, Photosystem I. Plastoquinone is smaller and hence would diffuse more readily than plastocyanin, and a longer time (2×10^{-3} s) is apparently necessary to move electrons from Photosystem II to the Cyt b_6f complex; hence, these two components can be separated by greater distances than are the Cyt b_6f complex and Photosystem I.

The electron from P^{*}_{700} reduces the iron-containing protein, ferredoxin (Table 5-3), through a series of five intermediates. Electron transfer to the first component, which is a Chl *a*, is rapid (about 2×10^{-12} s); the next

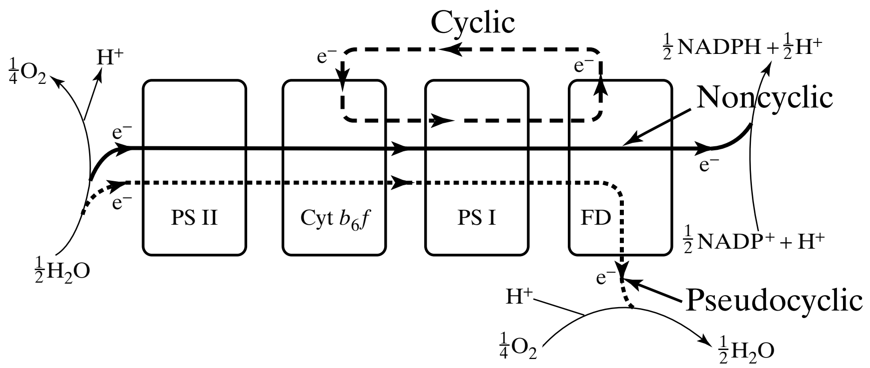


Figure 5-18. The three electron flow pathways in chloroplasts, showing the pivotal role played by ferredoxin (FD) in noncyclic (solid line), cyclic (dashed line), and pseudocyclic (dotted line) electron flow. See also Figure 6-4, where the three types of electron flow are presented based on redox potentials.

component is a quinone (actually, the phylloquinone vitamin K_1; reached in about 4×10^{-11} s), followed by three centers containing iron and sulfur. Because of the rapid initial transfer events, essentially no fluorescence comes from Photosystem I. The electron reaches ferredoxin, which contains two irons in the ferric state that interact with two sulfur atoms; the acceptance of an electron by ferredoxin reduces one of the ferric atoms to the ferrous form. By means of the enzyme ferredoxin–$NADP^+$ oxidoreductase, two molecules of ferredoxin reduce one molecule of $NADP^+$ to yield NADPH (we will discuss $NADP^+$ and NADPH in Chapter 6, Section 6.2C).

5.5C. Types of Electron Flow

Three types of photosynthetic electron transfer, or flow, occur—noncyclic, pseudocyclic, and cyclic—each one depending on the compound to which electrons are transferred from ferredoxin (Fig. 5-18). In *noncyclic* electron flow, electrons coming from water reduce $NADP^+$: An electron from water goes to the trap chl^+ of Photosystem II, where it replaces a donated electron that moves along the electron transfer chain to the oxidized P_{700} in Photosystem I; the electron from P^*_{700} moves to ferredoxin and then to $NADP^+$. Such noncyclic electron flow follows essentially the same pathway as the reductant H moving from left to right in Figure 5-15 (see also Fig. 6-4).

Electrons from ferredoxin may also reduce O_2, which yields H_2O_2 and eventually H_2O $\left(O_2 + 2e^- + 2H^+ \rightarrow H_2O_2 \rightarrow H_2O + \frac{1}{2}O_2\right)$. (The light-dependent consumption of O_2, as occurs when electrons from ferredoxin or from one of the iron-plus-sulfur–containing intermediates of Photosystem I move to O_2, is termed the *Mehler reaction.*) Because equal amounts of O_2 are evolved at Photosystem II and then consumed using reduced ferredoxin in a separate reaction, such electron flow is termed *pseudocyclic* (see Figs. 5-18 and 6-4). No net O_2 change accompanies pseudocyclic electron flow,

although it is not a cycle in the sense of having electrons cyclically traverse a certain pathway. To what extent pseudocyclic electron flow occurs in vivo is not clear, although such electron flow can be readily demonstrated with isolated chloroplasts.

For *cyclic* electron flow, an electron from the reduced form of ferredoxin moves back to the electron transfer chain between Photosystems I and II via the Cyt b_6f complex (including the involvement of a plastoquinone) and eventually reduces P_{700}^+ (Fig. 5-18). Cyclic electron flow does not involve Photosystem II, so it can be caused by far-red light absorbed only by Photosystem I—a fact that is often exploited in experimental studies. In particular, when far-red light absorbed by Photosystem I is used, cyclic electron flow can occur but noncyclic does not, so no NADPH is formed and no O_2 is evolved (cyclic electron flow can lead to the formation of ATP, as is indicated in Chapter 6, Section 6.3D). When light absorbed by Photosystem II is added to cells exposed to far-red illumination, both CO_2 fixation and O_2 evolution can proceed, and photosynthetic enhancement is achieved. Treatment of chloroplasts or plant cells with the O_2-evolution inhibitor DCMU [3-(3,4-dichlorophenyl)-1,1-dimethyl urea], which displaces Q_B from its binding site for electron transfer, also leads to only cyclic electron flow; DCMU therefore has many applications in the laboratory and is also an effective herbicide because it markedly inhibits photosynthesis. Cyclic electron flow may be more common in stromal lamellae because they have predominantly Photosystem I activity.

As is indicated in Table 5-3, P_{680}, P_{700}, the cytochromes, plastocyanin, and ferredoxin accept or donate only one electron per molecule. These electrons interact with $NADP^+$ and the plastoquinones, both of which transfer two electrons at a time. The two electrons that reduce plastoquinone come sequentially from the same Photosystem II; these two electrons can reduce the two *b*-hemes in the Cyt b_6f complex, or a *b*-heme and the Rieske Fe–S protein, before sequentially going to the *f*-heme. The enzyme ferredoxin–$NADP^+$ oxidoreductase matches the one-electron chemistry of ferredoxin to the two-electron chemistry of NADP. Both the pyridine nucleotides and the plastoquinones are considerably more numerous than are other molecules involved with photosynthetic electron flow (Table 5-3), which has important implications for the electron transfer reactions. Moreover, $NADP^+$ is soluble in aqueous solutions and so can diffuse to the ferredoxin–$NADP^+$ oxidoreductase, where two electrons are transferred to it to yield NADPH (besides $NADP^+$ and NADPH, ferredoxin and plastocyanin are also soluble in aqueous solutions).

5.5D. Assessing Photochemistry using Fluorescence

As we indicated in Chapter 4 (Section 4.3B), the emission of fluorescence means that the excitation caused by the absorption of light cannot be used for photochemistry. In particular, the excited trap of Photosystem II, P_{680}^*, can become deexcited by photochemistry involving the electron transport chain (rate constant = $k_{photochem}$), by fluorescence (k_F), or by various other deexcitation processes (k_{other} = sum of the rate constants for all such

processes). By Equation 4.16 ($\Phi_i = k_i/\sum_j k_j$), the quantum yield for photochemistry is:

$$\Phi_{\text{photochem}} = \frac{k_{\text{photochem}}}{k_{\text{photochem}} + k_F + k_{\text{other}}} \tag{5.10}$$

Determination of such a quantum yield indicates how efficiently the photochemistry is performed versus all other deexcitation processes. For instance, the photochemical reactions of photosynthesis can be decreased by environmental stresses such as freezing temperatures, excessive light, and drought, leading to a decrease in $\Phi_{\text{photochem}}$ (Eq. 5.10), an important assessment in both the laboratory and in ecophysiological field studies.

In the laboratory, DCMU can be added to chloroplasts, which stops electron transfer at the level of Q_B and thereby causes $k_{\text{photochem}}$ to become zero. We can also raise the photosynthetic photon flux (PPF) so high that the photochemistry becomes overwhelmed by other decay processes, such as by exciting all photosynthetic pigments essentially simultaneously, as was done by Emerson and Arnold (see Section 5.4A); in this case $k_{\text{photochem}}$ becomes small relative to k_{other}. Either situation leads to the maximum chlorophyll fluorescence, F_m (as either a relative quantum yield or a relative photon flux). If a low PPF (e.g., <20 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1}) that can be efficiently processed photochemically is used, the chlorophyll fluorescence F_0 is minimal and equals $k_F/(k_{\text{photochem}} + k_F + k_{\text{other}})$. When $k_{\text{photochem}}$ is negligible, F_m is $k_F/(k_F + k_{\text{other}})$. $F_m - F_0$ is known as the variable fluorescence, F_V, that is caused by these extreme conditions. We then have

$$\frac{F_V}{F_m} = \frac{F_m - F_0}{F_m} = \frac{\dfrac{k_F}{k_F + k_{\text{other}}} - \dfrac{k_F}{k_{\text{photochem}} + k_F + k_{\text{other}}}}{\dfrac{k_F}{k_F + k_{\text{other}}}} = \frac{k_{\text{photochem}}}{k_{\text{photochem}} + k_F + k_{\text{other}}} \tag{5.11}$$

which by Equation 5.10 is the quantum yield for photochemistry, $\Phi_{\text{photochem}}$.[4]

In plants under moderate sunlight and no environmental stress, $\Phi_{\text{photochem}}$ is about 0.85, indicating that 85% of the excitations of accessory pigments and Chl *a* in Photosystem II are used photochemically for photosynthesis (PS II is particularly sensitive to damage, such as by high temperature and high irradiance). Although various assumptions come into this analysis, such as that all fluorescence comes from Photosystem II, that k_{other} does not vary, and that all Chl *a* molecules are equivalent, $\Phi_{\text{photochem}}$ (Eqs. 5.10 and 5.11) is still a useful parameter for assessing the photochemical performance of photosynthesis. Moreover, instruments have been developed that use the same basic principles as discussed but allow measurement in the field under a wide range of PPF using modulated frequencies of the incident PPF and other sophisticated experimental techniques.

4. Note that for Equation 5.11, $(A/B - A/C)/(A/B) = (1/B - 1/C)/(1/B) = 1 - B/C = (C - B)/C$.

5.5E. Photophosphorylation

Three ATP molecules are generally required for the reductive fixation of one CO_2 molecule into a carbohydrate (see Fig. 5-1). Such ATP is produced by *photophosphorylation*; that is, light absorbed by the photosynthetic pigments in the lamellar membranes leads to a flow of electrons, to which is coupled the phosphorylation of ADP. We will consider the energetics of this dehydration of ADP plus phosphate to yield ATP in Chapter 6 (Section 6.2B).

Photophosphorylation was first demonstrated in cell-free systems in 1954. Albert Frenkel, working with bacterial chromatophores, and Daniel Arnon, Mary Belle Allen, and Robert Whatley, using broken spinach chloroplasts, observed ATP formation in the light. The enzymes are localized in or on the lamellar membranes, and the energy transfer steps are very sensitive to perturbation of the membranes. Moreover, none of the molecular species (ADP, ATP, and phosphate) can be readily determined nondestructively in vivo. For instance, the interconversions of these compounds in the chloroplasts cannot be monitored by measuring changes in spectral properties, a technique for studying the acceptance or donation of electrons by cytochromes and trap chl's. Furthermore, all three molecules (ATP, ADP, and phosphate) take part in many different biochemical reactions. Nevertheless, considerable progress has been made in understanding the relationship between ATP formation and proton (H^+) transport across membranes. In Chapter 6 we will discuss ATP formation coupled to electron flow in both chloroplasts and mitochondria, after some of the underlying energy concepts have been introduced.

5.5F. Vectorial Aspects of Electron Flow

The electron flow components are associated with membranes, so chemical asymmetries can develop. In fact, the electrons and their associated protons move in specific directions via the processes that we have been considering, causing the flows to have a vectorial nature (Fig. 5-19).

The chlorophyll–protein complexes are oriented in the lamellar membranes in such a way that the electron transfer steps at the reaction centers lead to an outward movement of electrons. For instance, the electron donated by Photosystem II moves from the lumen side to the stromal side of a thylakoid (see Figs. 1-10 and 5-19). The electron that is donated back to the trap chl $\left(P_{680}^{+}\right)$ comes from H_2O, leading to the evolution of O_2 by Photosystem II (Eq. 5.8). The O_2 and the H^+ from this reaction are released inside the thylakoid (Fig. 5-19). Because O_2 is a small neutral molecule, it readily diffuses out across the lamellar membranes into the chloroplast stroma. However, the proton (H^+) carries a charge and hence has a low partition coefficient (Chapter 1, Section 1.4A) for the membrane, so it does not readily move out of the thylakoid lumen.

The electron excited away from P_{680}^{*} in Photosystem II eventually reaches a quinone in that photosystem that accepts two electrons and also picks up two protons (H^+) from the stroma (Fig. 5-19). This quinone transfers its two electrons and two protons to a mobile plastoquinone in the plastoquinone pool occurring in the lamellar membranes, and the mobile

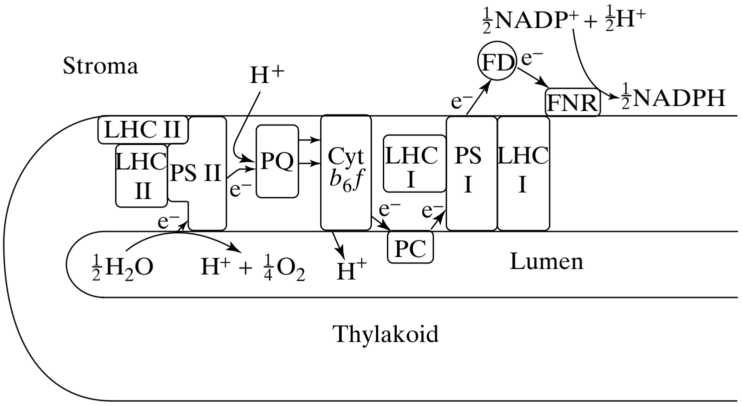


Figure 5-19. Schematic representation of reactions occurring at the photosystems and certain electron transfer components, emphasizing the vectorial or unidirectional flows developed in the thylakoids of a chloroplast. Outwardly directed electron movements occur in the two photosystems (PS I and PS II), where the electron donors are on the inner side of the membrane and the electron acceptors are on the outer side. Light-harvesting complexes (LHC) act as antennae for these photosystems. The plastoquinone pool (PQ) and the Cyt b_6f complex occur in the membrane, whereas plastocyanin (PC) occurs on the lumen side and ferredoxin–NADP$^+$ oxidoreductase (FNR), which catalyzes electron flow from ferredoxin (FD) to NADP$^+$, occurs on the stromal side of the thylakoids. Protons (H$^+$) are produced in the lumen by the oxidation of water and also are transported into the lumen accompanying electron (e$^-$) movement along the electron transfer chain.

plastoquinone in turn interacts with the Cyt b_6f complex. The Cyt b_6f complex is responsible for the final step in the vectorial transport of protons from the stroma to the lumen of a thylakoid; it also delivers electrons to plastocyanin, which occurs on the inner side of a lamellar membrane. Electrons from plastocyanin move to the reaction center of Photosystem I. Through a photochemical event, the excited trap chl of Photosystem I $\left(P_{700}^{*}\right)$ donates an electron that eventually reaches ferredoxin, which occurs on the outer side of a thylakoid (Fig. 5-19). Ferredoxin, which is soluble in aqueous solutions, diffuses to ferredoxin–NADP$^+$ oxidoreductase (a flavoprotein; Table 5-3), where two electrons are accepted by NADP$^+$, yielding NADPH. The flavoprotein is bound on the outer side of a lamellar membrane, so NADPH is formed in a region where subsequent biochemical reactions can use this crucially important molecule.

We now recapitulate the accomplishments of the various processes described previously. O_2 is evolved inside a thylakoid and readily diffuses out. The protons from the O_2-evolving step plus those transported by the Cyt b_6f complex are released in the thylakoid lumen, where the membranes prevent their ready escape. In cyclic electron flow (Fig. 5-18), electrons from P_{700}^{*} move to ferredoxin and thence to the Cyt b_6f complex, which also causes protons to be delivered from the stroma to the lumen of a thylakoid. The accumulation of protons inside the thylakoid, together with the transfer of electrons out, raises the electrical potential inside with respect to outside and also increases the internal concentration of protons, thus setting up a chemical potential gradient of protons that is capable of doing work. This proton chemical potential gradient is energetically coupled to the formation of ATP (photophosphorylation), as we will see in Chapter 6 (Section 6.3).

5.6. Problems

5.1. A spherical spongy mesophyll cell is 40 μm in diameter and contains 50 spherical chloroplasts that are 4 μm in diameter. Assume that such cells contain 1 g chlorophyll kg^{-1} wet weight, that the cell is 90% water by weight, and that the cellular density is 1000 kg m^{-3} (= 1.00 g cm^{-3}).

A. What volume fraction of the cell is occupied by chloroplasts?

B. If the CO_2 fixation rate is 100 mmol (g chlorophyll)$^{-1}$ hour^{-1}, how long does it take to double the dry mass of the cell? Assume that CO_2 and H_2O are the only substances entering the cell.

C. If the ratio Chl *a*/Chl *b* is 3, what is the mean molecular weight of chlorophyll?

D. Assuming that the chlorophyll is uniformly distributed throughout the cell, what is the maximum absorbance by one cell in the red and the blue regions? Use absorption coefficients given in Figure 5-3.

5.2. Suppose that some pigment has eight double bonds in conjugation and has a single absorption band with a λ_{max} at 580 nm, which corresponds to a transition to the fourth vibrational sublevel of the excited state (see Fig. 4-12). A similar pigment has 10 double bonds in conjugation, which causes the lowest vibrational sublevel of the excited state to move down in energy by 20 kJ mol^{-1} and the lowest vibrational sublevel of the ground state to move up in energy by 20 kJ mol^{-1} compared with the corresponding levels in the other molecule. Assume that the splitting between vibrational sublevels remains at 10 kJ mol^{-1} and that the most likely transition predicted by the Franck–Condon principle for this second molecule is also to the fourth vibrational sublevel of the excited state.

A. What is the shortest λ_{max} for the main fluorescence by each of the two molecules?

B. Can either or both molecules readily pass their excitation on to Chl *a* in vivo?

C. Can the absorption of blue light by Chl *a* lead to excitation of either of the pigments? Give your reasoning.

5.3. Let us approximate chloroplasts by short cylinders 4 μm in diameter and 2 μm thick (i.e., 2 μm along the cylinder axis), which contain 20 mol chlorophyll m^{-3}. The chloroplasts are exposed to 40 W m^{-2} of 675-nm light parallel to the axis of the cylinder. Assume that ε_{675} is 0.60×10^4 m^2 mol^{-1} for the chlorophyll.

A. What is the absorbance at 675 nm for the chlorophyll in a single chloroplast? What is the fraction of the incident light absorbed?

B. How many μmol photons m^{-2} s^{-1} of 675-nm light will be absorbed in passing through a single chloroplast? How many chlorophyll molecules participate in this absorption?

C. Assume that 250 chlorophyll molecules occur per reaction center and that 0.01 s is needed to process each excitation. How often are chlorophyll molecules excited on the average and what fraction of the absorbed photons can be processed?

D. How many moles of O_2 m^{-2} s^{-1} are evolved for each chloroplast? Assume that eight photons are needed to evolve one molecule of O_2.

E. What would be the answers to C for a chloroplast shaded by three overlying chloroplasts?

5.4. Chloroplasts corresponding to 10 mmol of chlorophyll m^{-3} of solution are suspended in a cuvette with a 10-mm light path. The rate of O_2 evolution is proportional to PPF up to 10 μmol photons absorbed m^{-2} s^{-1}, which gives 10^{-4} mol m^{-3} (10^{-7} M) O_2 evolved s^{-1}. The maximum O_2 evolution rate under very high PPF is 5×10^{-4} mol m^{-3} s^{-1}. For very brief and intense flashes of light, the O_2 evolution is 5×10^{-6} mol m^{-3} per flash.

A. Using the data given, how many photons are required per O_2 evolved?
B. How many chlorophyll molecules occur per reaction center?
C. How much time is required for the processing of an excitation by a reaction center?
D. An "uncoupler" is a compound that decreases the ATP formation coupled to photosynthetic electron flow. When such a compound is added to chloroplasts incubated at a high photon flux density, the O_2 evolution rate eventually becomes less than a control without the uncoupler. Explain.

5.5. Suppose that the absorbance of pea chloroplasts in a cuvette with a 10-mm light path is 0.1 at 710 nm and 1.0 at 550 nm. Assume that chlorophyll is the only molecular type absorbing at 710 nm and that no chlorophyll absorbs at 550 nm. Suppose that no CO_2 is fixed when either 550-nm or 710-nm light is used alone, but that both together lead to CO_2 fixation.

A. Is any ATP formation caused by the 550-nm or by the 710-nm light?
B. What type of pigments are absorbing at 550 nm? Are they isoprenoids or tetrapyrroles?
C. If equal but low incident photon flux densities are simultaneously used at both 550 and 710 nm, what is the maximum quantum yield for CO_2 fixation for each beam?
D. The initial bleaching of P_{700} at 700 nm leads to a decrease in absorbance of 10^{-5} in 10^{-6} s. What is the minimum number of moles of photons per unit area absorbed by Photosystem I that could account for this? Assume that ε_{700} is 0.8×10^4 m^2 mol^{-1} for the trap chl.

5.7. References and Further Reading

Amesz, J., and Hoff, A. (Eds.) 1996. *Biophysical Techniques in Photosynthesis.* Kluwer, Dordrecht.

Arnon, D.I., Allen, M.B., and Whatley, F.R. 1954. Photosynthesis by isolated chloroplasts. *Nature* **174:** 394–396.

Baker, N.R. (Ed.) 1996. *Photosynthesis and the Environment*. Kluwer, Dordrecht.

Blankenship, R.E. 2002. *Molecular Mechanisms of Photosynthesis.* Blackwell Science, Oxford, UK.

Carpentier, R. (Ed.) 2004. *Photosynthesis Research Protocols.* Humana Press, Totowa, NJ.

Chitnis, P.R. 2001. Photosystem I: Function and Physiology. *Annu. Rev. Plant Physiol. Plant Mol. Biol.* **52:** 593–626.

Cramer, W.A., Soriano, G.M., Ponomarey, M., Huang, D., Zhang, H., Martinez, S.E., and Smith, J.L. 1996. Some new structural aspects and old controversies concerning the cytochrome b_6f complex of oxygenic photosynthesis. *Annu. Rev. Plant Physiol. Plant Mol. Biol.* **47:** 477–508.

Deisenhofer, J., and Norris, J.R. (Eds.) 1993. *The Photosynthetic Reaction Center,* Vols. 1 and 2. Academic Press, San Diego, CA.

Diner, B.A., and Rappaport, F. 2002. Structure, dynamics, and energetics of the primary photochemistry of Photosystem II of oxygenic photosynthesis. *Annu. Rev. Plant Biol.* **53:** 551–580.

Duysens, L.M.N., Amesz, J., and Kamp, B.M. 1961. Two photochemical systems in photosynthesis. *Nature* **190:** 510–511.

Emerson, R. 1957. Dependence of yield of photosynthesis in long-wave red on wavelength and intensity of supplementary light. *Science* **125:** 746.

Emerson, R., and Rabinowitch, E. 1960. Red drop and role of auxiliary pigments in photosynthesis. *Plant Physiol.* **35:** 477–485.

Falkowski, P.G., and Raven, J.A. 2007. *Aquatic Photosynthesis*, 2nd ed. Blackwell Science, Malden, MA.

Frank, H.A., Young, A.J., Britton, G., and Cogdell, R.J. (Eds.) 1999. *The Photochemistry of Carotenoids*. Kluwer, Dordrecht.

Frenkel, A. 1954. Light-induced phosphorylation by cell-free preparations of photosynthetic bacteria. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **76:** 5568–5569.

Goodwin, T.W. (Ed.) 2002. *Chemistry and Biochemistry of Plant Pigments*, 2nd ed. Academic Press, London.

Green, B.R., and Dumford, D.G. 1996. The chlorophyll-carotenoid proteins of oxygenic photosynthesis. *Annu. Rev. Plant Physiol. Plant Mol. Biol.* **47:** 685–714.

Grimm, B., Porra, R., Rudiger, W., and Sheer, H. 2006. *Chlorophylls and Bacteriochlorophylls: Biochemistry, Biophysics, Functions and Applications*. Springer, Dordrecht.

Gross, J. 1991. *Pigments in Vegetables: Chlorophylls and Carotenoids*. Van Nostrand Reinhold, New York.

Haehnel, W. 1984. Photosynthetic electron transport in higher plants. *Annu. Rev. Plant Physiol.* **36:** 659–693.

Hall, D.O., and Rao, K.K. 1999. *Photosynthesis*, 6th ed. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK.

Hankamer, B., Barber, J., and Boekenia, E.J. 1997. Structure and membrane organization of photosystem II in green plants. *Annu. Rev. Plant Physiol. Plant Mol. Biol.* **48:** 641–671.

Haxo, F.T., and Blinks, L.R. 1950. Photosynthetic action spectra of marine algae. *J. Gen. Physiol.* **33:** 389–422.

Hill, R., and Bendall, F. 1960. Function of the two cytochrome components in chloroplasts: A working hypothesis. *Nature* **186:** 136–137.

Holt, A.S., and Jacobs, E.E. 1954. Spectroscopy of plant pigments: I. Ethyl chlorophyllides A and B and their pheophorbides. *Am. J. Bot.* **41:** 710–717.

Jennings, R.C., Zucchelli, G., Ghetti, F., and Colombetti, G. 1996. *Light as an Energy Source and Information Carrier in Plant Physiology*. Plenum, New York.

Ke, B. 2001. *Photosynthesis: Photochemistry and Photobiology*. Kluwer, Dordrecht.

Kirk, J.T.O. 1994. *Light and Photosynthesis in Aquatic Ecosystems*, 2nd ed. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK.

Lawlor, D.W. 2001. *Photosynthesis*, 3rd ed. BIOS Scientific, Oxford, UK.

Nugent, J.H.A. 1996. Oxygenic photosynthesis: Electron transfer in Photosystem I and Photosystem II. *Eur. J. Biochem.* **237:** 519–531.

Ó hEocha, C. 1965. Phycobilins. In: Goodwin, T.W. (Ed.). *Chemistry and Biochemistry of Plant Pigments*. Academic Press, London, pp. 175–196.

Ort, D.R., and Yocum, C.F. (Eds.) 1996. *Oxygenic Photosynthesis: The Light Reactions*. Kluwer, Dordrecht.

Pessarakli, M. (Ed.) 2005. *Handbook of Photosynthesis*, 2nd ed. Dekker, New York.

Raghavendra, A.S. (Ed.) 2000. *Photosynthesis*: A Comprehensive Treatise. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK.

Rhee, K.-H. 2001. Photosystem II: The solid structural era. *Annu. Rev. Biophys. Biomol. Struct.* **30:** 307–328.

Wild, A., and Ball, R. 1997. *Photosynthetic Unit and Photosynthesis*. Backhuys, Leiden, The Netherlands.

Zscheile, F.P., White, J.W., Beadle, B.W., and Roach, J.R. 1942. The preparation and absorption spectra of five pure carotenoid pigments. *Plant Physiol.* **17:** 331–346.

Major Equations

Gibbs free energy change (6.5)

$$\Delta G = \Delta G^* + RT \ln \frac{(a_C)^c (a_D)^d}{(a_A)^a (a_B)^b}$$

Redox potential (6.9)

$$E_j = E_j^* - \frac{RT}{qF} \ln \frac{(\text{reduced } j)}{(\text{oxidized } j)}$$

ΔG for ATP formation (pH 7, 25°C) (6.14b)

$$\Delta G \cong 31 + 5.71 \log \frac{[\text{ATP}]}{[\text{ADP}][\text{phosphate}]} \quad \text{kJ (mol ATP)}^{-1}$$

Chemical potential difference across membrane (25°C) (6.17c)

$$\mu_\text{H}^\text{i} - \mu_\text{H}^\text{o} = 5.71(\text{pH}^\text{o} - \text{pH}^\text{i}) + 96.5\, E_M \quad \text{kJ mol}^{-1}$$

Stefan–Boltzmann law (6.18b)

$$\text{Actual radiant energy flux density} = e\sigma T^4$$

6

Bioenergetics

6.1. Gibbs Free Energy 278
6.1A. Chemical Reactions and Equilibrium Constants 280
6.1B. Interconversion of Chemical and Electrical Energy 283
6.1C. Redox Potentials 285
6.2. Biological Energy Currencies 286
6.2A. ATP—Structure and Reactions 287
6.2B. Gibbs Free Energy Change for ATP Formation 291
6.2C. $NADP^+$–NADPH Redox Couple 293
6.3. Chloroplast Bioenergetics 295
6.3A. Redox Couples 295
6.3B. H^+ Chemical Potential Differences Caused by Electron Flow 299
6.3C. Evidence for Chemiosmotic Hypothesis 300
6.3D. Coupling of Flows 302
6.4. Mitochondrial Bioenergetics 303
6.4A. Electron Flow Components—Redox Potentials 304
6.4B. Oxidative Phosphorylation 307
6.5. Energy Flow in the Biosphere 310
6.5A. Incident Light—Stefan–Boltzmann Law 311
6.5B. Absorbed Light and Photosynthetic Efficiency 313
6.5C. Food Chains and Material Cycles 314
6.6. Problems 315
6.7. References and Further Reading 317

Throughout this book we have considered various aspects of energy in biological systems. The concept of chemical potential was introduced in Chapter 2 and applied to the specific case of water. In Chapter 3 we used this thermodynamic approach to discuss the movement of ions. We also considered the use of energy for the active transport of substances toward higher chemical potentials. Chapter 4 dealt with the absorption of light, an event that is followed by various deexcitation reactions for the excited states of the molecules. The photochemistry of photosynthesis discussed in Chapter 5 involves the conversion of such electromagnetic energy into forms that are biologically useful. This last aspect—the production and the use of various energy currencies in biological systems—is the topic of this chapter.

The two energy "currencies" produced in chloroplasts following the trapping of radiant energy are ATP and NADPH. These substances represent the two main classes of energy-storage compounds associated with the electron transfer pathways of photosynthesis and respiration. We can appreciate the importance of ATP by noting that about 100 mol of ATP ($\cong$ 50 kg, as the molecular weight of ATP is 507.2) is hydrolyzed in the synthesis of 1 kg dry weight ($\cong$ 10 kg wet weight) of many microorganisms. Also, a typical adult human uses more than his or her total weight in ATP each day! Because only about 10^{-2} mol of ATP generally occurs per kilogram dry mass of cells, a rapid turnover of ATP is necessary to synthesize new tissue and to maintain mature cells in a state far from equilibrium.

In this chapter, we first examine energy storage in terms of the chemical potential changes accompanying the conversion of a set of reactants into their products. This consideration of the Gibbs free energy allows us to determine the amount of chemical energy that a particular reaction can store or release. We will then evaluate the energy-carrying capacity of ATP in terms of the energetics of its formation and hydrolysis. NADPH can be regarded as possessing electrical energy, with the particular amount depending on the oxidation–reduction potential of the system with which it interacts. After considering ATP and NADPH as individual molecules, we will place them in their biological context—namely, as part of the bioenergetic scheme of chloroplasts and mitochondria. Such organelle reactions are part of the overall flow of energy from the sun that goes through the biosphere, leading to the nonequilibrium condition that is characteristic of life.

6.1. Gibbs Free Energy

Using the appropriate thermodynamic relations, we can calculate the energy changes that accompany biochemical reactions. Two conditions that are often met by physiological processes greatly simplify these calculations. First, most biochemical reactions take place at a constant temperature. Second, processes in cells or tissues usually take place at a constant pressure. These two special conditions make the Gibbs free energy, G, very convenient for describing energetics in biology, because the decrease in G under these conditions equals the maximum amount of energy available for work. [See Chapter 2 (Section 2.2) for an introduction to G and Appendix IV for a mathematical presentation of the Gibbs free energy.] Biological use of free energy, or "work," involves many different processes—from muscular movement to chemical synthesis and active transport. The change in Gibbs free energy between two states predicts the direction for a spontaneous reaction and indicates how much energy the transition makes available for performing work. Biologists are usually much more interested in such changes in free energy than they are in the absolute amount of energy, which must be defined relative to some arbitrary level.

A reaction at constant T and P spontaneously moves toward a minimum of the Gibbs free energy of the system; minimum Gibbs free energy is achieved at equilibrium (Fig. 6-1). In principle, a spontaneous process can

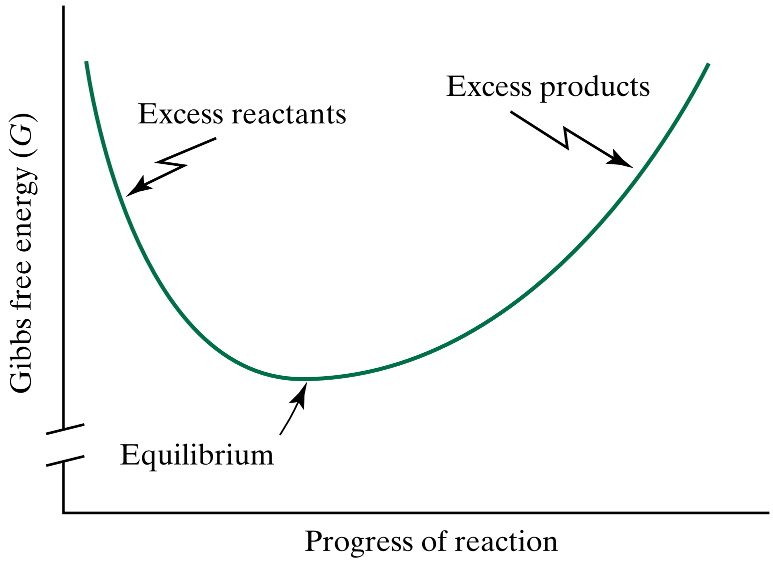


Figure 6-1. Relation between the progress of a reaction and the Gibbs free energy of the system (G). When the product concentration is low (left-hand side of the abscissa), the reaction spontaneously proceeds in its forward direction toward lower values of G. The Gibbs free energy for a reaction attains a minimum at equilibrium; ΔG is then zero for the reaction proceeding a short distance in either direction. For high product concentrations (right-hand side of the abscissa), ΔG to drive the reaction further in the forward direction is positive, indicating that a free energy input is then needed. When ΔG in the forward direction is positive, ΔG for the reverse reaction is negative. The absolute value of G is arbitrary (e.g., $G = \sum_j n_j\mu_j$, where each μ_j contains an unknown additive constant, μ_j^*), so the ordinate is interrupted in the figure.

be harnessed to do work; the reversal of a spontaneous reaction requires an input of free energy (see Fig. 2-6). As we later elaborate, light can be harnessed to produce the free energy that causes the phosphorylation of ADP to ATP and the reduction of $NADP^+$ to NADPH. These two processes are prime examples of energy-requiring reactions that are at the very heart of chloroplast bioenergetics.

The concept of free energy is introduced in Chapter 2 (Section 2.2A,B) in presenting the chemical potential of species j, μ_j. The chemical potential is actually the partial molal Gibbs free energy with respect to that species; that is, μ_j equals $(\partial G/\partial n_j)_{T,P,E,h,n_i}$ (Eq. IV.9 in Appendix IV), where the subscripts on the partial derivative indicate the variables that are held constant. We must consider the Gibbs free energy of an entire system to determine the chemical potential of species j. In turn, G depends on each of the species present, an appropriate expression being

$$G = \sum_j n_j\mu_j \tag{6.1}$$

where n_j is the number of moles of species j in some system, μ_j is the chemical potential of species j (Eq. 2.4), and the summation is over all of the species present (Eq. 6.1 is derived in Appendix IV). The Gibbs free energy is expressed relative to some arbitrary zero level—the arbitrariness in the

baseline for G in Equation 6.1 is a consequence of the μ_j^* included in each μ_j (Fig. 6-1). The Gibbs free energy as represented by Equation 6.1 is very useful for applying free energy relations to bioenergetics.

6.1A. Chemical Reactions and Equilibrium Constants

From the thermodynamic point of view, we are interested in the overall change in free energy for an individual reaction—or perhaps a sequence of reactions. Let us consider a general chemical reaction for which A and B are the reactants and C and D are the products:

$$aA + bB \rightleftharpoons cC + dD \tag{6.2}$$

where a, b, c, and d are the numbers of moles of the various species taking part in the reaction. The steps to develop a useful expression for the change in Gibbs free energy for this chemical reaction are as follows:

Step	Eq. No.
Basic chemical reaction	6.2
Theoretical change in Gibbs free energy	6.3
Details based on chemical potential	6.4
Resulting Gibbs free energy change	6.5
Additive constant/Equilibrium constant	6.6

How much energy is stored (or released) when the reaction in Equation 6.2 proceeds a certain extent in either direction? More specifically, what is the change in the Gibbs free energy for the reaction in Equation 6.2 proceeding in the forward direction, with a moles of A and b moles of B reacting to give c moles of C and d moles of D? For most applications, we can consider that the chemical potentials of the species involved are constant; in other words, we are concerned with a hypothetical change in the Gibbs free energy when the reaction takes place at certain concentrations under fixed conditions. Using Equation 6.1 ($G = \sum_j n_j \mu_j$), we can express the change in the Gibbs free energy for such a reaction as

$$\Delta G = -a\mu_A - b\mu_B + c\mu_C + d\mu_D \tag{6.3}$$

where Δn_j is positive for a product and negative for a reactant ($\Delta G = \sum_j \Delta n_j \mu_j$ when all μ_j's are constant). Equation 6.3 indicates that the free energy change for a chemical reaction is the Gibbs free energy of the products minus that of the reactants.

To transform Equation 6.3 into a more useful form, we need to incorporate expressions for the chemical potentials of the species involved. The chemical potential of species j was presented in Chapter 2 (Section 2.2B), where μ_j is a linear combination of various terms: $\mu_j = \mu_j^* + RT \ln a_j + \overline{V}_j P + z_j FE + m_j gh$ (Eq. 2.4; μ_j^* is a constant, a_j is the activity of species j, $\overline{V}_j$ is its partial molal volume, P is the pressure in excess of atmospheric, z_j is its charge number, F is Faraday's constant, E is the electrical potential, m_j is its mass per mole, and h is the vertical position in the gravitational field).

Substituting such chemical potentials of A, B, C, and D into Equation 6.3, and collecting similar terms, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta G = & -a\mu_A^* - b\mu_B^* + c\mu_C^* + d\mu_D^* \\ & + RT(-a \ln a_A - b \ln a_B + c \ln a_C + d \ln a_D) \\ & + P(-a\overline{V}_A - b\overline{V}_B + c\overline{V}_C + d\overline{V}_D) \\ & + FE(-az_A - bz_B + cz_C + dz_D) \\ & + gh(-am_A - bm_B + cm_C + dm_D)\end{aligned} \quad (6.4)$$

Let us next simplify this equation. The constant terms, $-a\mu_A^* - b\mu_B^* + c\mu_C^* + d\mu_D^*$, can be replaced by ΔG^*, a quantity that we will evaluate shortly. If the volume of the products, $c\overline{V}_C + d\overline{V}_D$, is the same as that of the reactants, $a\overline{V}_A + b\overline{V}_B$, the factor multiplying P in Equation 6.4 is zero. In any case, the value of $P\sum_j \Delta n_j \overline{V}_j$ for biochemical reactions usually is relatively small for pressures encountered in plant cells, so we will not retain these terms here.[1] The algebraic sum of the charge terms multiplying FE is zero because no charge is created or destroyed by the reaction given in Equation 6.2; that is, the total charge of the products, $cz_C + dz_D$, equals that of the reactants, $az_A + bz_B$. Likewise, no mass is created or destroyed by the biochemical reaction, so the mass factor multiplying gh is also zero.

We can now convert Equation 6.4 into a relatively simple form. Using ΔG^*, the constancies of charge and mass, and the generally valid assumption that $P(-a\overline{V}_A - b\overline{V}_B + c\overline{V}_C + d\overline{V}_D)$ is negligible, the change in Gibbs free energy for the reaction in Equation 6.2 proceeding in the forward direction becomes

$$\Delta G = \Delta G^* + RT \ln \frac{(a_C)^c (a_D)^d}{(a_A)^a (a_B)^b} \quad (6.5)$$

where various properties of logarithms (Appendix III; e.g., $a \ln x = \ln x^a$) have been used to obtain the form indicated. Equation 6.5 expresses the Gibbs free energy stored or released by a chemical reaction.

At equilibrium, the argument of the logarithm in Equation 6.5, $[(a_C)^c(a_D)^d]/[(a_A)^a(a_B)^b]$, is the equilibrium constant K of the reaction given by Equation 6.2. Furthermore, at constant T and P, the Gibbs free energy achieves a minimum at equilibrium (Fig. 6-1), and it does not change for a conversion of reactants to products under such conditions; that is, ΔG equals 0 for a chemical reaction proceeding a short distance in either direction at equilibrium under these conditions. Equation 6.5 thus indicates that $\Delta G^* + RT \ln K$ is zero at equilibrium, so

$$\Delta G^* = -RT \ln K \quad (6.6)$$

where K equals the equilibrium value for $[(a_C)^c(a_D)^d]/[(a_A)^a(a_B)^b]$.

1. Ignoring $P\sum_j \Delta n_j \overline{V}_j$ may not be valid for reactions occurring under very high pressures (e.g., deep in the ocean), especially if volume changes are suspected, such as can occur when two oppositely charged species react to form a neutral one.

Let us next assume that the reactants, A and B, and the products, C and D, initially all have activities equal to 1. Thus $[(a_C)^c(a_D)^d]/[(a_A)^a(a_B)^b]$ is 1, so the logarithm of the activity term is 0. Equation 6.5 indicates that for a moles of A plus b moles of B reacting to form c moles of C plus d moles of D under these conditions, the Gibbs free energy change ΔG is ΔG^*. If the equilibrium constant K for the reaction is greater than 1, ΔG^* is negative ($\Delta G^* = -RT \ln K$; Eq. 6.6), so the reaction is spontaneous in the forward direction for this case of unit activity of reactants and products. This is because at equilibrium the products are then favored over the reactants—in the sense that $(a_C)^c(a_D)^d$ is greater than $(a_A)^a(a_B)^b$ at equilibrium. On the other hand, if K is less than 1, ΔG^* is positive, and such a reaction would not spontaneously proceed in the forward direction for the given initial condition of unit activity of all reactants and products.

Let us now consider the units of G and ΔG. G is an extensive variable; that is, it depends on the extent or size of the system and is obtained by summing its values throughout the whole system (see Appendix IV). Specifically, Equation 6.1 $\left(G = \sum_j n_j \mu_j\right)$ indicates that the Gibbs free energy is the sum, over all species present, of the number of moles of species j (n_j, an extensive variable) times the energy per mole of species j (μ_j, an intensive variable, i.e., a quantity that can be measured at some point in a system, as is also the case for T, P, and $\bar{V}_j$). Hence, G has the units of energy. On the other hand, Equation 6.5 indicates that ΔG has the same units as RT—namely, energy per mole (a logarithm is dimensionless and RT is 2.48 kJ mol^{-1} at 25°C). To help us out of this apparent dilemma, let us reconsider the conventions used in Equation 6.2, $aA + bB \rightleftharpoons cC + dD$. We usually write a chemical reaction using the smallest possible integers for a, b, c, and d, not the actual number of moles reacting. In fact, in the equations describing nearly all biochemical reactions, either or both a and c are one, for example, ADP + phosphate $\rightleftharpoons$ ATP + H_2O. Another convention is to express the Gibbs free energy change per mole of a particular species, e.g., per mole of a certain reactant ($\Delta G/a$) or per mole of a certain product ($\Delta G/c$). Therefore, when a or c represents 1 mol, ΔG has the same magnitude, whether as energy or as energy per mole. When we use specific values for ΔG or ΔG^* to describe chemical reactions, we will indicate on what basis we are using the Gibbs free energy, e.g., "ΔG per mole of ATP formed."

What are the numerical values of ΔG^* per mole of reactant A or product C for K's of 100 and 0.01? Because RT is 2.48 kJ mol^{-1} at 25°C and ln equals 2.303 log, an equilibrium constant of 100 corresponds to a $\Delta G^*/a$ or $\Delta G^*/c$ given by Equation 6.6 of $-$(2.48 kJ mol^{-1})(2.303 log 100), or $-$11.4 kJ mol^{-1} for a moles of reactant A or c moles of product C; a K of 0.01 leads to a $\Delta G^*/a$ or $\Delta G^*/c$ of 11.4 kJ mol^{-1}. In the former case, where ΔG^* is negative, Equation 6.5 indicates that 11.4 kJ of energy per mole of the reactant or product (assuming a or c is 1 mol) is released, and in the latter case, the same amount of energy per mole is required when the reaction proceeds in the forward direction beginning with activities of 1 for all reactants and products.

6.1B. Interconversion of Chemical and Electrical Energy

To help understand how chemical energy can be converted into electrical energy, and vice versa, we must reexamine the properties of both chemical reactions and the movement of electrons. Let us first consider a chemical reaction, such as the dissociation of sodium chloride: $NaCl \rightleftharpoons Na^+ + Cl^-$. Although two charged species are produced upon dissociation of NaCl, no net change in the electrical components of the chemical potentials of Na^+ plus Cl^- occurs. In other words, the electrical term z_jFE for Na^+ ($z_{Na} = 1$) is balanced by an opposite change in the electrical term for μ_{Cl} ($z_{Cl} = -1$). Next, let us consider the following type of reaction: $Ag_s \rightleftharpoons Ag^+ + e^-$; that is, the dissociation of solid silver to an ion plus an electron. Again, no net change occurs in the net electrical contribution to the two chemical potentials for the dissociation as written. However, the production of an electron opens up other possibilities because electrons can be conducted to regions where the electrical potential may be different. Such reactions, in which electrons are produced in one region and then conducted to regions of different electrical potential, allow for the interconversion of chemical and electrical energy. The electron-producing and electron-consuming reactions are referred to as *electrode*, or *half-cell*, reactions. These reactions occur in batteries as well as in the electron transfer pathways located in chloroplast and mitochondrial membranes.

To elaborate on energy conversion, let us consider mixing ferrous (Fe^{2+}) and cupric (Cu^{2+}) ions in an aqueous solution (we will assume that the common anion is Cl^-). A chemical reaction occurs in which the products are ferric (Fe^{3+}) and cuprous (Cu^+) ions. Because this is a spontaneous process, the Gibbs free energy decreases; indeed, the reaction is exothermic, so heat is generated. Next, consider the electrode reaction, $Fe^{2+} \rightleftharpoons Fe^{3+} + e^-$. If the electrons produced in such a half-cell initially containing only Fe^{2+} can be conducted by a wire to the Cu^{2+} ions (Fig. 6-2), another electrode reaction can occur in a second beaker initially containing only Cu^{2+}—namely, $Cu^{2+} + e^- \rightleftharpoons Cu^+$. Except for heat evolution, the net result in the solutions is the same as occurs by mixing Fe^{2+} and Cu^{2+}. When the electrons move in the conductor, however, they can be used to do various types of electrical work, e.g., powering a direct-current electrical motor or a light bulb. Such an arrangement provides a way of converting the change in Gibbs free energy of the two spontaneous half-cell reactions into electrical energy that can be used to perform work. Indeed, the important aspect for obtaining electrical work from the two half-cell reactions is the conducting pathway between them (see Fig. 6-2).

When electrons are moved to a lower electrical potential ($\Delta E < 0$)—for example, by using the chemical energy in a battery—their electrical energy (z_jFE where $z_j = -1$ for an electron) increases. We can use this increase in the electrical energy of the electrons to power a chemical reaction when the electrons subsequently move spontaneously to higher E. In photosynthesis, light energy is used to move electrons toward lower electrical potentials, thereby setting up a spontaneous flow of electrons in the opposite direction using the electron transfer components introduced in Chapter 5 (Section 5.5B). This latter, energetically downhill, spontaneous electron

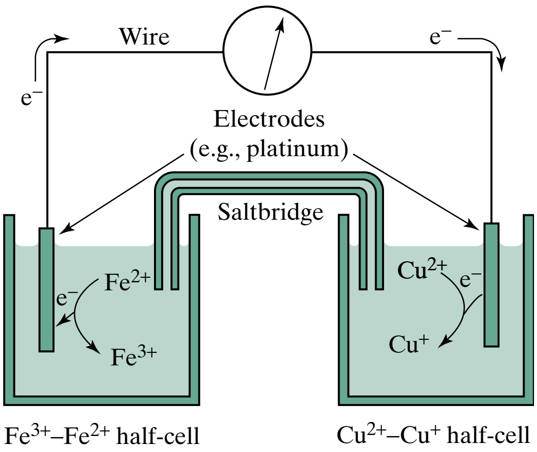


Figure 6-2. Two half-cells, or redox couples, connected by a wire and a saltbridge to complete the electrical circuit. Electrons donated by Fe^{2+} to one electrode are conducted by the wire to the other electrode where they reduce Cu^{2+}. Both electrodes (couples) are necessary before electrons can flow. A saltbridge, which provides a pathway along which ions can move and so helps maintain electroneutrality by avoiding the buildup of charge in either half-cell, often contains agar and KCl; the latter minimizes the diffusion potentials at the junctions between the saltbridge and the solutions in the beakers (see Chapter 3, Section 3.2B).

movement is harnessed to drive the photophosphorylation reaction, ADP + phosphate $\rightleftharpoons$ ATP + H_2O, in the forward direction, thereby storing chemical energy.

Let us now consider the interconversion of chemical and electrical energy in more formal terms. Suppose that n moles of electrons ($z_j = -1$) are transferred from one region to another region where the electrical potential differs by ΔE, for example, from one half-cell to another half-cell. As noted in Chapter 3 (Section 3.1A), the charge carried by a mole of protons is Faraday's constant (F); hence the total charge moved in the present case is $-nF$. Electrical work equals the charge transported (Q) times the electrical potential difference through which it moves (ΔE; Eq. 3.1). The change in the electrical energy of n moles of electrons therefore is $-nF\Delta E$. This can be converted to an equal change in Gibbs free energy (ΔG):

$$\Delta G = -nF\Delta E \tag{6.7}$$

In dealing with half-cell reactions, we note that n is usually expressed with respect to the compound of interest; for example, 2 mol of electrons are used to reduce 1 mol of $NADP^+$. In this case n is dimensionless and equal to 2, so ΔG has units of $F\Delta E$ or energy mol^{-1}, just as for the ΔG of chemical reactions.

According to Equation 6.7, the amount of Gibbs free energy stored or released is directly proportional to the difference in electrical potential across which the electrons move. Moreover, this equation indicates that the flow of electrons toward more positive electrical potentials ($\Delta E > 0$) corresponds to a decrease in the free energy ($\Delta G < 0$), and so the transfer proceeds spontaneously. We emphasize that two half-cells are necessary to

obtain a ΔE and thus a ΔG for electron transfer (see Fig. 6-2). We will apply these free energy considerations to the energetics of electrons moving from molecule to molecule in the electron transfer pathways of chloroplasts and mitochondria.

6.1C. Redox Potentials

Many organic compounds involved in photosynthesis accept or donate electrons (see Table 5-3). The negatively charged electrons spontaneously flow toward more positive electrical potentials ($\Delta E > 0$), which are termed "redox potentials" for the components involved with electron flow in chloroplast lamellae (Fig. 1-10) or the inner membranes of mitochondria (Fig. 1-9). Redox potentials are a measure of the relative chemical potential of electrons accepted or donated by a particular type of molecule. The oxidized form plus the reduced form of each electron transfer component can be regarded as an electrode, or half-cell. Such a half-cell can interact with other electron-accepting and electron-donating molecules in the membrane, in which case the electrons spontaneously move toward the component with the higher redox potential.

We can represent electron acceptance or donation by some chemical species as a general electrode (half-cell) reaction:

$$\text{oxidized form} + q\text{e}^- \rightleftharpoons \text{reduced form} \tag{6.8}$$

where q is a dimensionless parameter indicating the number of electrons transferred per molecule; "oxidized" and "reduced" are different forms of the same chemical species, e.g., $NADP^+$ is an oxidized form, and NADPH represents the corresponding reduced form (q is 2 in this case). Like any other chemical reaction, an oxidation–reduction reaction such as Equation 6.8 has a change in Gibbs free energy associated with it when the reactants are converted to products. Thus, oxidation–reduction, or "redox," reactions can be described by the relative tendency of the redox system, or *couple* (the oxidized plus the reduced forms of the compound), to proceed in the forward direction, which for Equation 6.8 means accepting electrons.

Redox reactions are more conveniently described in terms of relative electrical potentials instead of the equivalent changes in Gibbs free energy. The electrons in Equation 6.8 come from or go to some other redox couple, and whether or not the reaction proceeds in the forward direction depends on the relative electrical potentials of these two couples. Therefore, a specific electrical potential is assigned to a couple accepting or donating electrons, a value known as its oxidation–reduction or *redox potential*. This redox potential is compared with that of another couple to predict the direction for spontaneous electron flow when the two couples interact—electrons spontaneously move toward higher redox potentials. The redox potential of species j, E_j, is defined as

$$E_j = E_j^* - \frac{RT}{qF}\ln\frac{(\text{reduced}\,j)}{(\text{oxidized}\,j)} \tag{6.9}$$

where E_j^* is an additive constant, q is the number of electrons transferred (the same q as in Eq. 6.8), and (reduced j) and (oxidized j) refer to the activities of the two different redox states of species j. Equation 6.9 indicates that the oxidation–reduction potential of a particular redox couple is determined by the ratio of the reduced form to the oxidized form plus an additive constant, a quantity that we consider next.

An electrical circuit is formed when two electrodes (half-cells) are connected, providing a pathway for electron flow (see Fig. 6-2). Because the sum of the electrical potential drops (voltage changes) around a circuit is zero, we can determine the half-cell potential on an absolute basis for a particular electrode if the potential of some standard reference electrode is known. By international agreement, the E_j^* of a hydrogen half-cell ($\frac{1}{2}H_{2\ gas} \rightleftharpoons H^+ + e^-$) is arbitrarily set equal to zero for an activity of hydrogen ions of 1 molal (m) equilibrated with hydrogen gas at a pressure of 1 atm (i.e., E_H^* is equal to 0.000 V). Fixing the zero level of the electrical potential for the hydrogen half-cell removes the arbitrary nature of redox potentials for all half-cells, because the redox potential for any species can be determined relative to that of the hydrogen electrode. We will replace E_j^* in Equation 6.9 by E_j^{*H} to emphasize the convention of referring electrode potentials to the standard hydrogen electrode.[2]

According to Equation 6.9, as the ratio (reduced j)/(oxidized j) increases, the redox potential becomes more negative. Because electrons are negatively charged, a lower E_j corresponds to higher energies for the electrons. Thus, the further Equation 6.8 is driven in the forward direction, the more the energy that is required to reduce species j. Likewise, the larger is (reduced j)/(oxidized j), the higher is the electrical energy of the electrons that the reduced form can donate. When (reduced j) equals (oxidized j), E_j is equal to E_j^{*H} by Equation 6.9. E_j^{*H} is hence referred to as the *midpoint redox potential* (see the values in Table 5-3 for the E_j^{*H}'s of some components involved with electron transfer in chloroplasts). For certain purposes, such as estimating the energy available between redox couples, knowledge of the midpoint redox potentials may be sufficient, as is shown later in this chapter.

6.2. Biological Energy Currencies

In photosynthesis, photons are captured, initiating an electron flow leading both to the production of NADPH and to a coupled process whereby ATP is formed (Fig. 5-1). Light energy is thereby converted into chemical energy by the formation of a phosphoanhydride (ATP) in an aqueous environment. Light energy is also converted into electrical energy by providing a reduced compound (NADPH) under oxidizing conditions. ATP and NADPH are the two energy storage compounds, or "currencies," that are considered in this

2. The hydrogen half-cell is not very convenient for routine laboratory usage—indeed, 1 m H^+ (corresponding to a pH of 0!) and 1 atm H_2 (explosive) are dangerous. Hence, secondary standards are used, e.g., mercury/mercurous (calomel) or silver/silver chloride electrodes, which have midpoint redox potentials of 0.244 V and 0.222 V, respectively.

Table 6-1. The Two Main Types of Biological Energy Currencies Produced in Chloroplasts (ATP, NADPH)[a] and Mitochondria (ATP, NADH)

Type	Energy	Main dependencies	Main uses
ATP	Chemical (specific)	Temperature, pH, $[Mg^{2+}]$, ionic strength	Active transport, biosynthetic reactions, muscle contraction
NADPH, NADH	Electrical (relative)	Redox potential of another couple	Electron donation

[a] See Figure 5-1 for their use in photosynthesis.

section (Table 6-1). Both occur as ions, both can readily diffuse around within a cell or organelle, and both can carry appreciable amounts of energy under biological conditions. In addition to the use of ATP in processes such as active transport and muscle contraction, the chemical energy stored in ATP is also used in certain biosynthetic reactions involving the formation of anhydrous links, or bonds, in the aqueous milieu of a cell (Table 6-1). The relatively high atmospheric levels of O_2 ensure that appreciable amounts of this strong oxidizing agent will be present in most biological systems; a reduced compound such as NADPH is thus an important currency for energy storage. We will discuss these two compounds in turn, after briefly considering the difference between ATP and NADPH as energy currencies.

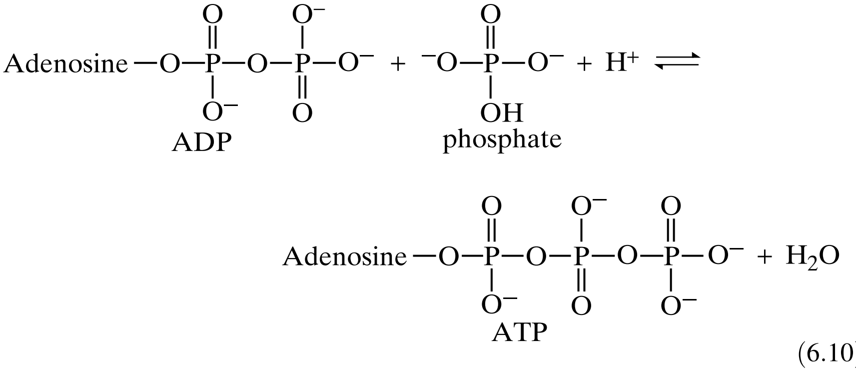
Redox couples are assigned a relative electrical energy, whereas chemical reactions have a specific chemical energy (Table 6-1). In a chemical reaction, certain reactants are transformed into products, and the accompanying change in Gibbs free energy can be calculated. This change in chemical energy does not depend on other chemical species. For instance, if the concentrations—strictly speaking, the chemical activities—of ADP, phosphate, and ATP, as well as certain other conditions (e.g., temperature, pH, Mg^{2+} concentration, and ionic strength), are the same in different parts of an organism, then the Gibbs free energy released upon the hydrolysis of a certain amount of ATP to ADP and phosphate will be the same in each of the locations. However, an oxidation–reduction couple must donate electrons to, or accept electrons from, another redox system, and the change in electrical energy depends on the difference in the redox potential between the two couples. Thus the amount of electrical energy released when NADPH is oxidized to $NADP^+$ depends on the redox potential of the particular couple with which NADPH interacts (Table 6-1).

6.2A. ATP—Structure and Reactions

To help understand the bioenergetics of chloroplasts and mitochondria, we need to know how much energy is stored in ATP, which is the difference between its chemical potential and that of the reactants (ADP and phosphate) used in its formation. We must then identify reactions that have a large enough free energy decrease to drive the ATP synthesis reaction in the energetically uphill direction; this leads us to a consideration of the energetics of electron flow in organelles—a topic that is discussed in the next two sections. Our immediate concerns are (1) the chemical reaction describing ATP formation, (2) the associated change in Gibbs free energy for that

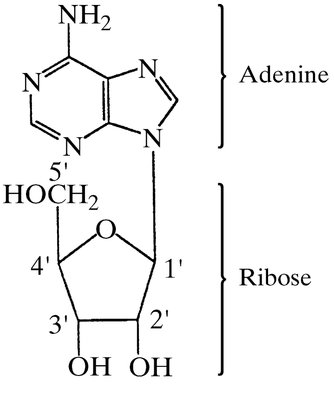
reaction, and (3) the implications of the substantial amount of energy storage in ATP.

ADP, ATP, and phosphate all occur in a number of different charge states in aqueous solutions. Moreover, all three compounds can interact with other species, notably Mg^{2+} and Ca^{2+}. Thus many different chemical reactions describe ATP formation. A predominant reaction occurring near neutral pH in the absence of divalent cations is



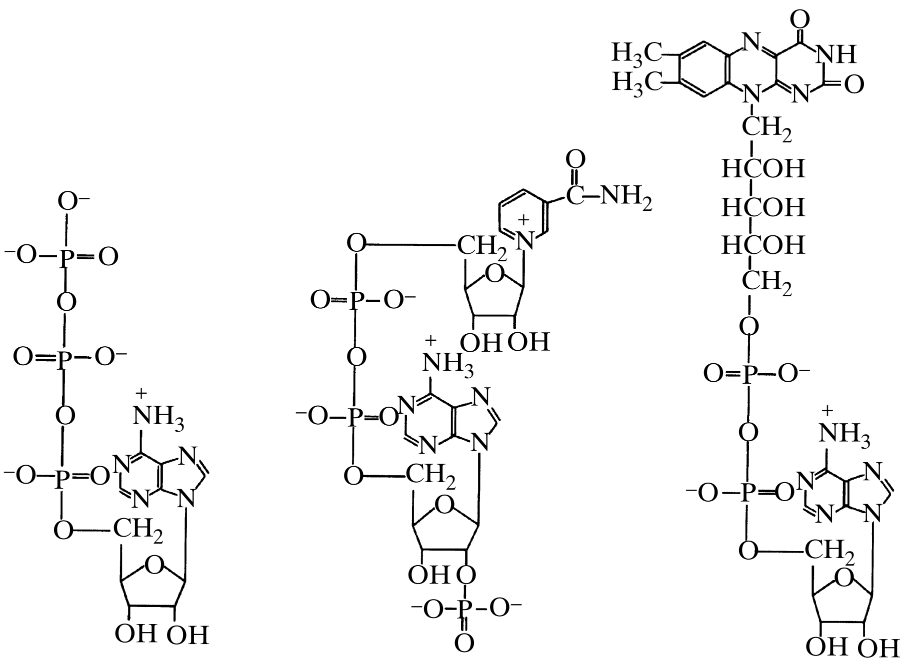
(6.10)

where adenosine is adenine esterified to the 1′ position of the sugar ribose:



The attachment of adenosine to the phosphates in ADP and ATP—and in $NADP^+$ as well as in FAD—is by means of an ester linkage with the hydroxymethyl group on the 5′ position of the ribose moiety (Fig. 6-3).

Equation 6.10 indicates a number of features of ATP production. For instance, the formation of ATP from ADP plus phosphate is a dehydration; the reversal of Equation 6.10, in which the phosphoanhydride is split with the incorporation of water, is known as *ATP hydrolysis*. Because Equation 6.10 contains H^+, the equilibrium constant depends on the pH, $-\log a_H$. Moreover, the fractions of ADP, phosphate, and ATP in various states of ionization depend on the pH. Near pH 7, about half of the ADP molecules are doubly charged and half are triply charged, the latter form being indicated in Equation 6.10. (For simplicity, we are ignoring the charge due to the extra proton bound to an adenine nitrogen, which gives that part of the ADP and ATP molecules a single positive charge at pH 7; Fig. 6-3.) Likewise,



ATP NADP$^+$ FAD

Figure 6-3. Structures of three molecules important in bioenergetics. The dissociations and bindings of protons indicated in the figure are appropriate near pH 7. Note the similarity among the molecules (i.e., all contain adenosine with a pyrophoshate attached).

ATP at pH 7 is about equally distributed between the forms with charges of -3 and -4. Because of their negative charges in aqueous solutions, both ADP and ATP can readily bind positive ions, especially divalent cations such as Mg^{2+} or Ca^{2+}. A chelate is formed such that Mg^{2+} or Ca^{2+} is electrostatically held between two negatively charged oxygen atoms on the same molecule (consider the many $-O^-$'s occurring on the chemical structures indicated in Eq. 6.10). Also, inorganic phosphate can interact electrostatically with Mg^{2+} and other divalent cations, further increasing the number of complexed forms of ADP, ATP, and phosphate.

The activities (or concentrations) of a species in all of its ionization states and complexed forms are generally summed to obtain the total activity (or concentration) of that species. The number of relations and equilibrium constants needed to describe a reaction such as ATP formation is then reduced to one; that is, a separate equilibrium constant is not needed for every possible combination of ionization states and complexed forms of all of the reactants and the products. Using this convention, we can replace Equation 6.10 and many others like it, which also describe ATP formation, by the following general reaction for the phosphorylation of ADP:

$$\text{ADP} + \text{phosphate} \rightleftharpoons \text{ATP} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \qquad (6.11)$$

We will return to ATP formation as represented by Equation 6.11 after briefly commenting on two important conventions used in biochemistry.

First, most equilibrium constants for biochemical reactions are defined at a specific pH, usually pH 7 ($a_{H^+} = 10^{-7}$ M). At a constant pH, the activity of H^+ does not change. Thus H^+ does not need to be included as a reactant or a product in the expression for the change in Gibbs free energy (Eq. 6.5). In other words, the effect of H^+ in relations such as Equation 6.10 is incorporated into the equilibrium constant, which itself generally depends on the pH. Second, biological reactions such as ATP formation usually take place in aqueous solutions for which the concentration of water does not change appreciably. (The concentrations of other possible reactants and products are much less than that of water.) Hence the a_{H_2O} term in relations such as Equation 6.11 is also usually incorporated into the equilibrium constant (Alberty, 2003; Silbey et al., 2005). We can illustrate these points concerning a_{H^+} and a_{H_2O} by specifically considering ATP formation described by Equation 6.10. For this reaction the equilibrium constant K is equal to

$$K = \frac{(a_{\text{ATP}})(a_{H_2O})}{(a_{\text{ADP}})(a_{\text{phosphate}})(a_{H^+})} \tag{6.12a}$$

hence

$$\frac{(a_{H^+})K}{(a_{H_2O})} = \frac{(a_{\text{ATP}})}{(a_{\text{ADP}})(a_{\text{phosphate}})} \tag{6.12b}$$

For a dilute aqueous solution, a_{H_2O} is essentially constant during the reaction; therefore, $(a_{H^+})K/(a_{H_2O})$—which is conventionally called the equilibrium constant in biochemistry—has a fixed value at a given pH. For example, at pH 7 it is

$$\frac{(a_{H^+})K}{(a_{H_2O})} = \frac{(10^{-7}\ \text{M})K}{(a_{H_2O})} = K_{\text{pH 7}} \tag{6.12c}$$

Next, we specifically consider the equilibrium constant for ATP formation under biological conditions. Using the previous conventions for H^+ and H_2O, an equilibrium constant for Equations 6.10 and 6.11 at pH 7 ($K_{\text{pH 7}}$) is

$$K_{\text{pH 7}} = \frac{[\text{ATP}]}{[\text{ADP}][\text{phosphate}]} \cong 4 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{M}^{-1} \quad \text{at } 25°\text{C} \tag{6.13}$$

where the total concentration of each species involved is indicated in brackets; that is, it is experimentally more convenient to measure K_{pH7} using concentrations (indicated by brackets) instead of activities (indicated by parentheses).[3]

When activities of ions ($a_j = \gamma_j c_j$; Eq. 2.5) are replaced by concentrations ($[c_j]$), the resulting equations for equilibrium constants or free energy changes apply only to a particular ionic strength ($\frac{1}{2}\sum_j c_j z_j^2$), because the

3. Because the equilibrium constant for ATP formation is quite small (see Eq. 6.13) and is sensitive to temperature, pH, Mg^{2+}, and ionic strength, measured values of K vary considerably. Actually, instead of K, the standard Gibbs free energy, ΔG^*, is usually determined ($\Delta G^* = -RT \ln K$; Eq. 6.6). Values of ΔG^* for ATP formation range from 28 to 45 kJ mol^{-1}, and a value near 31 kJ mol^{-1} is appropriate at pH 7, 25°C, 10 mM Mg^{2+}, and an ionic strength of 0.2 M.

activity coefficients of ions (γ_j) can vary markedly with ionic strength (see Chapter 3, Section 3.1C and Eq. 3.4). The value for $K_{\text{pH }7}$ given in Equation 6.13 is suitable for ionic strengths close to 0.2 M (200 mol m^{-3}), which is an ionic strength that can occur in vivo (a 0.05 M increase or decrease in ionic strength changes $K_{\text{pH }7}$ in the opposite direction by about 10%). The magnitude of the equilibrium constant for ATP formation also depends on the concentration of Mg^{2+}. The value of $K_{\text{pH }7}$ in Equation 6.13 is appropriate for 10 mM Mg^{2+}, a concentration similar to that in many plant cells (a 5-mM increase or decrease in Mg^{2+} changes $K_{\text{pH }7}$ in the opposite direction by 10–20%). An equilibrium constant also depends on temperature, with $K_{\text{pH }7}$ for ATP formation increasing by 2 to 4% per 1°C. A large effect on K is produced by pH, which may not be near 7 and often is unknown in a cell. The equilibrium constant for ATP formation increases about threefold as the pH is lowered by 1 unit from pH 7 and decreases about sevenfold as it is raised by 1 unit.

6.2B. Gibbs Free Energy Change for ATP Formation

The energetics of a reaction such as ATP formation is summarized by its Gibbs free energy change, ΔG. For a general chemical reaction, Equation 6.5 indicates that $\Delta G = \Delta G^* + RT \ln [(a_C)^c(a_D)^d]/[(a_A)^a(a_B)^b]$, where ΔG^* is $-RT \ln K$ (Eq. 6.6). For the current case, the reactant A is ADP, B is phosphate, the product C is ATP, and the equilibrium constant is given by Equation 6.13. Therefore, our sought-after free energy relationship describing ATP formation at pH 7 is

$$\Delta G = -RT \ln K_{\text{pH}\,7} + RT \ln \frac{[\text{ATP}]}{[\text{ADP}][\text{phosphate}]} \tag{6.14a}$$

which at 25°C becomes

$$\Delta G \cong 31 + 5.71 \log \frac{[\text{ATP}]}{[\text{ADP}][\text{phosphate}]} \qquad \text{kJ(mol ATP)}^{-1} \tag{6.14b}$$

where ln equals 2.303 log, 2.303 RT is 5.71 kJ mol^{-1} at 25°C (Appendix I), $K_{\text{pH }7}$ is 4×10^{-6} M^{-1} (Eq. 6.13), and $-(5.71 \text{ kJ mol}^{-1}) \log(4 \times 10^{-6})$ equals 31 kJ mol^{-1}.

ATP usually does not tend to form spontaneously because the Gibbs free energy change for the reaction is generally quite positive (Eq. 6.14b). In fact, the energy required for the phosphorylation of ADP is large compared with the free energy changes for most biochemical reactions. In other words, much energy can be stored by converting ADP plus phosphate to ATP. Although ATP is thermodynamically unstable in an aqueous solution, meaning that its hydrolysis can release a considerable amount of Gibbs free energy, it can still last for a long enough time in cells to be an important energy currency (i.e., it is kinetically stable). In particular, ATP is usually not hydrolyzed very rapidly unless the appropriate enzymes necessary for its use in certain biosynthetic reactions or other energy-requiring processes are present (for long-term energy storage, plants use carbohydrates such as the polysaccharide starch).

We next estimate the changes in Gibbs free energy that might be expected for photophosphorylation (Chapter 5, Section 5.5E) under physiological conditions. For purposes of calculation, we will assume that in unilluminated chloroplasts the concentration of ADP is 1.5 mM, that of phosphate is 4.0 mM, and that of ATP is 0.5 mM (1 mM = 1 mol m^{-3}). From Equation 6.14b, the free energy change required to form ATP then is

$$\Delta G = 31 + 5.71 \log \frac{(0.5 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{M})}{(1.5 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{M})(4.0 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{M})}$$
$$= 42\ \text{kJ (mol ATP)}^{-1}$$

The change in Gibbs free energy required is positive, indicating that energy must be supplied to power photophosphorylation. Moreover, the energy necessary depends in a predictable way on the concentrations of the reactants and the product. After a period of time in the light, ATP may increase to 1.7 mM with a concomitant decrease in ADP to 0.3 mM and in phosphate to 2.8 mM. The free energy required for photophosphorylation calculated using Equation 6.14b under these conditions is 50 kJ (mol ATP)$^{-1}$. Consequently, the further that photophosphorylation goes to completion, the greater is the energy required to form more ATP.

The high energy of ATP relative to ADP plus phosphate is not the property of a single bond but of the local configuration in the ATP molecule, which we can appreciate by considering the phosphorus atoms in ADP, ATP, and phosphate. Phosphorus is in group V of the third period of the periodic table and has five electrons in its outermost shell. It can enter into a total of five bonds with four oxygen atoms, the bonding to one O being a double bond (consider the structures in Eq. 6.10). In inorganic phosphate, all four bonds are equivalent, so four different structures for phosphate exist in resonance with each other. The terminal P of ADP has only three resonating forms because one of the O's is connected to a second P atom and does not assume a double bond configuration (see Eq. 6.10). When inorganic phosphate is attached to this terminal P of ADP to form ATP, a resonating form is lost from both ADP and phosphate. Configurations having more resonating structures are in general more probable or stable (lower in energy), so energy must be supplied to form ATP from ADP plus phosphate with the accompanying loss of two resonating forms.

We next quantitatively examine some of the ways in which ATP can be used as a free energy currency. Each of our four examples will relate to a different variable term in the chemical potential ($\mu_j = \mu_j^* + RT \ln a_j + \overline{V}_j P + z_j FE + m_j gh$; Eq. 2.4). To transfer a mole of a neutral compound against a 10-fold increase in activity requires

$$RT \ln a_j^{\text{II}} - RT \ln a_j^{\text{I}} = RT \ln (a_j^{\text{II}}/a_j^{\text{I}}) = 2.303\ RT \log 10 = 5.7\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}$$

Gibbs free energy at 25°C; that is, 2.303 RT equals 5.7 kJ mol^{-1} at 25°C (Appendix I) and log 10 equals 1 (see Table 6-2); it takes 11.4 kJ for a 100-fold increase and 17.1 kJ for a 1000-fold increase in activity. To move a monovalent cation from one side of a membrane to the other, where it has

Table 6-2. Free Energy Required for Changes in the Variable Terms of the Chemical Potential ($\mu_j = \mu_j^* + RT \ln a_j + \overline{V}_j P + z_j FE + m_j gh$, Eq. 2-4)[a]

Term in μ_j	Condition	Energy required
$RT \ln a_j$	10-fold increase in a_j for neutral species	5.7 kJ mol^{-1}
$z_j FE$	0.1 V increase in E for monovalent cation	9.6 kJ mol^{-1}
$\overline{V}_j P$	20 kPa increase in P for 1 liter of water	0.02 kJ
$m_j gh$	100 m increase in h for 50 kg	49 kJ

[a] Such energy can be supplied by ATP. See text for details of calculations.

the same concentration but the electrical potential is 0.1 V higher, requires

$$z_j F \Delta E = (1)(96.49 \text{ kJ mol}^{-1} \text{ V}^{-1})(0.1 \text{ V}) = 9.6 \text{ kJ mol}^{-1}$$

Gibbs free energy; that is, F equals 96.49 kJ mol^{-1} V^{-1} (Appendix I; see Table 6-2). ATP usually supplies at least 40 kJ mol^{-1} when hydrolyzed and can act as the Gibbs free energy source for the active transport of solutes across membranes toward regions of higher chemical potential (Tables 6-1 and 6-2).

ATP is also the free energy currency for the contraction of muscles (Table 6-1). The ATP-driven contraction of the muscles surrounding the left ventricle of the human heart can increase the blood pressure within it by 20 kPa (0.2 bar or 150 mm Hg). This increases the chemical potential of the water in the blood (i.e., the $\overline{V}_w P$ term), which causes the blood to flow out to the aorta and then to the rest of the circulatory system toward lower hydrostatic pressures. Pressure-driven flow is an efficient way to move fluids; for example, it takes only 0.02 kJ of Gibbs free energy to increase the pressure of 10^{-3} m^3 (1 liter) of water by 20 kPa. In particular, in the present case we note that

$$\overline{V}_w \Delta P = (18 \times 10^{-6} \text{ m}^3 \text{ mol}^{-1})(20 \times 10^3 \text{ J m}^{-3}) = 0.36 \text{ J mol}^{-1}$$

(1Pa = 1 J m^{-3}; Appendix II); for 1 liter or 55.5 mol of water, the energy required is (55.5 mol)(0.36 J mol^{-1}) or 20 J (0.02 kJ; see Table 6-2). As an example of gravitational work that can be mediated by ATP, the increase in Gibbs free energy as a 50-kg person climbs up 100 m is 49 kJ. In this case we note that

$$m_j g \Delta h = (50 \text{ kg})(9.8 \text{ m s}^{-2})(100 \text{ m}) = 49{,}000 \text{ kg m}^2 \text{ s}^{-2} = 49 \text{ kJ}$$

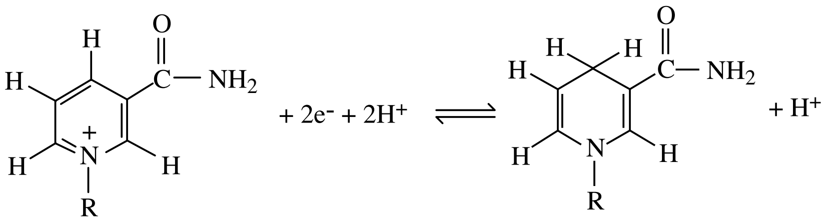
(1 J = 1 kg m^2 s^{-2}; Appendix II; see Table 6-2). ATP is an extremely useful cellular energy currency because of its large free energy release upon hydrolysis—about 40 to 50 kJ mol^{-1} (10–12 kcal mol^{-1})—and because of its convenient form as a relatively abundant ion.

6.2C. $NADP^+$–NADPH Redox Couple

Another class of energy storage compounds consists of redox couples such as $NADP^+$–NADPH (Table 6-1). The reduced form, NADPH, is produced by noncyclic electron flow in chloroplasts (Chapter 5, Section 5.5C). Photosynthesis in bacteria makes use of a different redox couple, NAD^+–NADH. The reduced member of this latter couple also causes an

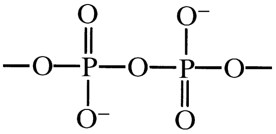
electron flow in mitochondria and an associated formation of ATP. NAD is nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide and differs from NADP by not having a phosphate esterified to the 2′ hydroxy group of the ribose in the adenosine part of the molecule (see Fig. 6-3). Our current discussion focuses on the $NADP^+$–NADPH couple, but the same arguments and also the same midpoint redox potential apply to the NAD^+–NADH couple.

The reduction of a molecule of $NADP^+$ involves its acceptance of two electrons. Only the nicotinamide portion (illustrated in Eq. 6.15) of $NADP^+$ is involved in accepting the electrons. The half-cell reaction describing this reduction is



$NADP^+$ NADPH (6.15)

where R represents a ribose attached at its 1C position to nicotinamide and at its 5C position by a pyrophosphate bridge



to an adenosine having the 2′ hydroxy group of its ribose moiety esterified to an additional phosphate (see Fig. 6-3). Adenosine minus the ribose is called adenine, hence the name of *nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate*, or NADP. The reduction of $NADP^+$ involves the transfer of two electrons to the nicotinamide ring, plus the attachment of one H^+ to the *para* position (top of the ring for the NADPH indicated in Eq. 6.15). That is, two electrons are accepted by the $NADP^+$ molecule during its reduction, although only one of the two accompanying protons is attached to the reduced form, as Equation 6.15 indicates.

A particular half-cell reaction, such as Equation 6.15, can accept or donate electrons. We quantitatively describe this by the redox potential for that reaction, as expressed by Equation 6.9 $[E_j = E_j^{*H} - (RT/qF) \ln(\text{reduced}\,j)/(\text{oxidized}\,j)]$. We will use (NADPH) to represent the activity of all of the various ionization states and complexed forms of the reduced nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate, and ($NADP^+$) has an analogous meaning for the oxidized component of the $NADP^+$–NADPH couple. For redox reactions of biological interest, the midpoint (standard) redox potential is usually determined at pH 7. By using Equation 6.9, in which the number q of electrons transferred per molecule reduced is 2, we can

express the oxidation–reduction potential of the $NADP^+$–NADPH couple (Eq. 6.15) at pH 7 as

$$E_{NADP^+-NADPH} = E^{*H}_{pH\,7} - \frac{RT}{2F}\ln\frac{(NADPH)}{(NADP^+)} \tag{6.16a}$$

which at 25°C becomes

$$E_{NADP^+-NADPH} = -0.32 - 0.030\log\frac{(NADPH)}{(NADP^+)} \quad V \tag{6.16b}$$

where in Equation 6.16b ln has been replaced by 2.303 log, and the numerical value for $2.303RT/F$ of 0.0592 V at 25°C (Appendix I) has been used. The midpoint redox potential at pH 7, $E^{*H}_{pH\,7}$, for the $NADP^+$–NADPH couple is −0.32 V (Table 5-3), a value achieved when (NADPH) is equal to ($NADP^+$).

To determine whether electrons spontaneously flow toward or away from the $NADP^+$–NADPH couple, we must compare its redox potential with that of some other redox couple. As indicated previously, electrons spontaneously flow toward more positive redox potentials, whereas energy must be supplied to move electrons in the energetically uphill direction of algebraically decreasing redox potentials. We will next examine the redox potentials of the various redox couples involved in electron flow in chloroplasts and then in mitochondria.

6.3. Chloroplast Bioenergetics

In Chapter 5 (Section 5.5B), we introduced the various molecules involved with electron transfer in chloroplasts, together with a consideration of the sequence of electron flow between components (Table 5-3). Now that the concept of redox potential has been presented, we will resume our discussion of electron transfer in chloroplasts. We will compare the midpoint redox potentials of the various redox couples not only to help understand the direction of spontaneous electron flow but also to see the important role of light absorption in changing the redox properties of trap chl. Also, we will consider how ATP formation is coupled to electron flow.

6.3A. Redox Couples

Although the ratio of reduced to oxidized forms of species j affects its redox potential [$E_j = E^{*H}_j - (RT/qF)\ln(\text{reduced}\,j)(\text{oxidized}\,j)$; Eq. 6.9], the actual activities of the two forms are usually not known in vivo. Moreover, the value of the local pH (which can affect $E^{*H}_{pH\,7}$) is also usually not known. Consequently, midpoint (standard) redox potentials determined at pH 7 are usually compared to predict the direction for spontaneous electron flow in the lamellar membranes of chloroplasts. We will assume that free energy is required to transfer electrons to a compound with a more negative midpoint redox potential, whereas electrons spontaneously flow toward higher midpoint redox potentials.

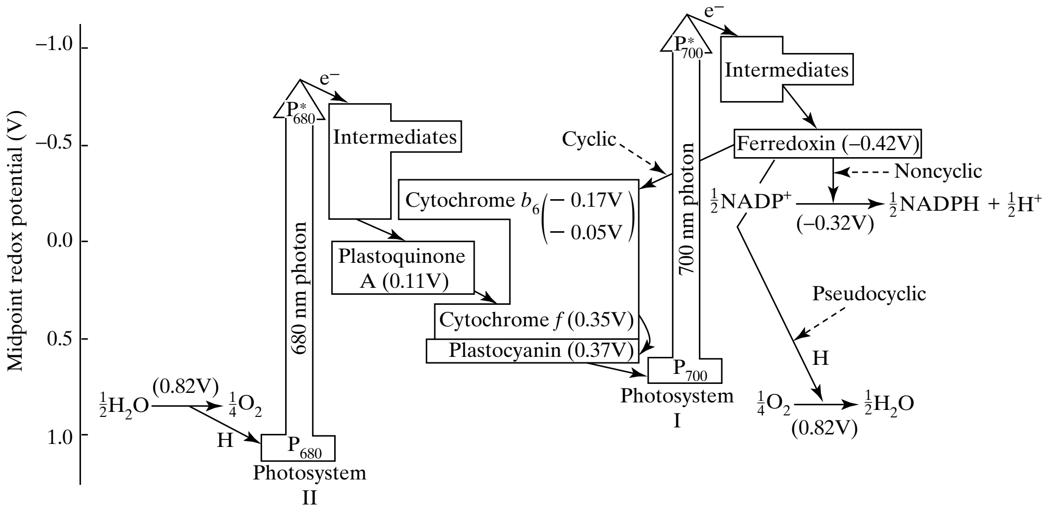


Figure 6-4. Energy aspects of photosynthetic electron flow. The lengths of the arrows emanating from the trap chl's of Photosystems I and II represent the increases in chemical potential of the electrons that occur upon absorption of red light near the λ_{max}'s of the trap Chl *a*'s. The diagram shows the various midpoint redox potentials of the couples involved (data from Table 5-3) and the three types of electron flow mediated by ferredoxin. Spontaneous electron flow occurs toward couples with higher (more positive) redox potentials, which is downward in the figure.

The absorption of a photon markedly affects the redox properties of a pigment molecule. An excited molecule such as trap chl* has an electron in an antibonding orbital (Chapter 4, Section 4.2C). Less energy is needed to remove such an electron from the excited molecule than when that molecule is in its ground state. Therefore, the electronically excited molecule is a better electron donor (reducing agent) than is the one in the ground state because it has a more negative redox potential. Once the electron is removed, this oxidized molecule (trap chl$^+$) becomes a very good electron acceptor (oxidizing agent). Such electron acceptance, trap chl$^+$ + $D \rightarrow$ trap chl + D^+ (Eq. 5.6), involves the ground state of the chlorophyll molecule, which has a positive redox potential (see Table 5-3 and Fig. 6-4). The electronic state of trap chl that donates an electron is therefore an excited state with a negative redox potential, and the ground state with its positive redox potential can readily accept an electron. In short, the absorption of light energy transforms trap chl's from couples with positive redox potentials to couples with negative (higher energy) redox potentials. In this section we will estimate the redox potential spans at each of the two photosystems in chloroplasts and then diagram the overall pattern of photosynthetic electron flow.

After light absorption by Chl *a* or an accessory pigment feeding into Photosystem II, the excitation migrates to P_{680}, where an electron transfer reaction takes place (trap chl* + $A \rightarrow$ trap chl$^+$ + A^-; Eq. 5.5). The electron removed from P^*_{680} is replaced by one coming from water, which results in O_2 evolution (for energetic considerations based on one electron, we write Eq. 5.8 as $\frac{1}{2}$ $H_2O \rightleftharpoons \frac{1}{4}O_2 + H$). The water–oxygen couple has a midpoint redox potential of 0.82 V at 25°C, pH 7, and an O_2 pressure of 1 atm (Fig. 6-4).

Water oxidation and the accompanying O_2 evolution follow spontaneously after the photochemistry at the reaction center of Photosystem II has led to P_{680}^{+}. Thus the required oxidant for water, P_{680}^{+} or some intermediate oxidized by it, must have a redox potential more positive than 0.82 V for the electron to move energetically downhill from water to the trap chl^{+} in the reaction center of Photosystem II. As indicated in Table 5-3, the redox potential of the P_{680}–P_{680}^{+} couple is about 1.10 V.

The electron removed from P_{680}^{*} goes to pheophytin, from which it moves to two intermediate quinones and then to the plastoquinone pool (Chapter 5, Section 5.5B). The midpoint redox potentials are −0.61 V for pheophytin, about −0.15 V for the first plastoquinone (Q_A), about 0.10 V for the second one (Q_B), and 0.11 V for plastoquinone A. The negatively charged electron spontaneously moves toward higher redox potentials, in this case from pheophytin to Q_A to Q_B to plastoquinone A. The electrical potential span in Photosystem II is thus from a redox potential of 1.10 V for the ground state of the $P_{680}-P_{680}^{+}$ couple to about −0.70 V for the excited state couple of this trap chlorophyll, which must have a redox potential that is more negative than the −0.61 V of the pheophytin couple, or about 1.80 V overall.

The energy required to move an electron in the energetically uphill direction toward lower redox potentials in Photosystem II is supplied by a photon (Fig. 6-4). Photosystem II can be excited by 680-nm light (as well as by other wavelengths, this value being near the λ_{max} for the red band of its P_{680}). From Equation 4.2a ($E = hc/\lambda_{vac}$) and the numerical value for hc (1240 eV nm, Appendix I), the energy of 680-nm light is (1240 eV nm)/(680 nm), or 1.82 eV per photon. Such a photon can move an electron across 1.82 V, which is approximately the redox potential span of 1.80 V estimated for Photosystem II.[4]

We can similarly analyze the energetics for Photosystem I, where the trap chl is P_{700} (Fig. 6-4). The redox potential span across which electrons are moved is from the midpoint redox potential of 0.48 V for the $P_{700}-P_{700}^{+}$ couple (Table 5-3) to about −1.20 V for the redox couple representing the excited state, which has a more negative redox potential than the −1.05 V estimated for the form of chlorophyll that acts as the first acceptor. Thus the electrical potential span in Photosystem I is about 1.68 V. A photon at 700 nm, which is the λ_{max} for the red band of P_{700} in Photosystem I, has an energy of (1240 eV nm)/(700 nm) or 1.77 eV, which is ample energy to move an electron between the redox couples representing the ground state of P_{700} and its excited state, the latter having a more negative redox potential than the first acceptor in Photosystem I. From the first acceptor, the electron spontaneously moves to a quinone (midpoint redox potential near −0.80 V), then to three Fe–S centers and then to ferredoxin (Table 5-3).

4. Actually, the amount of absorbed light energy and the accompanying changes in free energy available for decreasing the redox potential are not the same; i.e., the increase in internal energy U upon light absorption is generally not equal to the change in Gibbs free energy G (see Eq. App. IV.4a: $G = U + PV - TS$). The magnitude of the increase in G caused by the absorption of a photon by chlorophyll depends on the level of illumination as well as on the various pathways competing for the deexcitation of trap chl^{*}.

From ferredoxin to the next component in the noncyclic electron flow sequence, $NADP^+$, electrons go from −0.42 to −0.32 V (midpoint redox potentials of the couples; Fig. 6-4). Again, moving toward higher redox potentials is energetically downhill for electrons, so this step leading to the reduction of the pyridine nucleotide follows spontaneously from the reduced ferredoxin—a step catalyzed by the enzyme ferredoxin–$NADP^+$ oxidoreductase (Table 5-3 and Fig. 6-4).

In noncyclic electron flow, two electrons originating in the water–oxygen couple with a midpoint redox potential of 0.82 V are moved to the redox level of −0.32 V for the reduction of one molecule of the $NADP^+$–NADPH couple. Because a midpoint redox potential of −0.32 V is more negative than most encountered in biology, NADPH can spontaneously reduce most other redox systems—reduced pyridine nucleotides are therefore an important energy currency (Table 6-1). Moving electrons from 0.82 V to −0.32 V requires considerable free energy, which helps explain why light, with its relatively large amount of energy (see Table 4-1) is needed. We can calculate the actual free-energy change for the overall process using Equation 6.7 ($\Delta G = -nF\Delta E$):

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta G &= -(2)(96.5\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}\ \text{V}^{-1})(-0.32\ \text{V} - 0.82\ \text{V}) \\ &= 220\ \text{kJ (mol NADPH)}^{-1}\end{aligned}$$

for the overall movement of 2 mol of electrons along the pathway for noncyclic electron flow—a process leading to the reduction of 1 mol of $NADP^+$.

The incorporation of CO_2 into a carbohydrate during photosynthesis requires three ATP's and two NADPH's (see Fig. 5-1). Using these energy currencies, CO_2 fixation can energetically proceed in the absence of light, so the steps of the reductive pentose cycle are often referred to as the *dark reactions* of photosynthesis (actually, because several of the enzymes are light-activated, not much CO_2 fixation would occur in the dark). ATP formation in chloroplasts in the light requires about 50 kJ mol^{-1}; we have just indicated that 220 kJ is required to reduce one mole of $NADP^+$ using electrons coming from water (this is actually the Gibbs free energy change between standard states because midpoint redox potentials were used in our calculations); and the increase in Gibbs free energy per mole of CO_2 incorporated into a carbohydrate during photosynthesis is 479 kJ. Using these numbers, we can estimate the efficiency for free energy storage by the dark reactions. Dividing the energy stored per mole of CO_2 fixed, 479 kJ, by the energy input, (3 mol ATP)[50 kJ (mol ATP)$^{-1}$] + (2 mol NADPH) [220 kJ (mol NADPH)$^{-1}$], which is 590 kJ, we find that the efficiency is [(479 kJ)/(590 kJ)](100%), or 81%! The dark reactions of photosynthesis are indeed extremely efficient.

Figure 6-4 incorporates the midpoint redox potentials of various components involved with photosynthetic electron transfer discussed both here and in Chapter 5 (see Table 5-3). The direction for spontaneous electron flow is to higher midpoint redox potentials (downward in Fig. 6-4); the absorption of light quanta with their relatively large energies corresponds to moving electrons toward higher energy (more negative redox potentials). The role played by ferredoxin at the crossroads of cyclic, noncyclic, and pseudocyclic electron flow (see Fig. 5-18) is also illustrated in Figure 6-4.

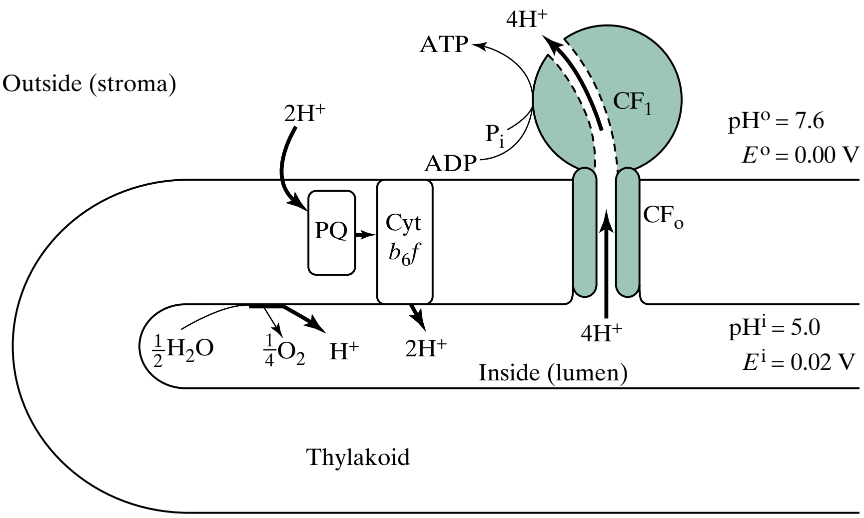


Figure 6-5. Energetics and directionality of the coupling between electron flow and ATP formation in chloroplasts, emphasizing the role played by H^+ (see also Fig. 5-19). The O_2 evolution from H_2O and the electron flow via plastoquinones (PQ) and the cytochrome b_6f complex (Cyt b_6f) lead to H^+ accumulation in the lumen of a thylakoid. This H^+ can move back out through a hydrophobic channel (CF_o) and another protein factor (CF_1), which together comprise the ATP synthetase, leading to ATP formation.

6.3B. H^+ Chemical Potential Differences Caused by Electron Flow

In the previous chapter we indicated that the components involved with electron flow are situated in the lamellar membranes of chloroplasts such that they lead to a vectorial or unidirectional movement of electrons and protons (see Fig. 5-19). We now return to this theme and focus on the gradients in H^+ (protons) thus created. In the light, the difference in the chemical potential of H^+ from the inside to the outside of a thylakoid acts as the energy source to drive photophosphorylation. This was first clearly recognized in the 1960s by Peter Mitchell, who received the 1978 Nobel Prize in chemistry for his enunciation of what has become known as the *chemiosmotic hypothesis* for interpreting the relationship among electron flow, proton movements, and ATP formation.

Figure 6-5 indicates that the O_2-evolution step and the electron flow mediated by the plastoquinones and the Cyt b_6f complex lead to an accumulation of H^+ in the lumen of a thylakoid in the light. This causes the internal H^+ concentration, c_H^i, or activity, a_H^i, to increase. These steps depend on the light-driven electron flow, which leads to electron movement outward across the thylakoid in each of the two photosystems (see Fig. 5-19). Such movements of electrons out and protons in can increase the electrical potential inside the thylakoid (E^i) relative to that outside (E^o), allowing an electrical potential difference to develop across a thylakoid membrane. By the definition of chemical potential ($\mu_j = \mu_j^* + RT \ln a_j + z_jFE$; Eq. 2.4 with the pressure and gravitational terms omitted; see Chapter 3, Section 3.1), the difference in chemical potential of H^+ across a membrane is

$$\mu_H^i - \mu_H^o = RT \ln a_H^i + FE^i - RT \ln a_H^o - FE^o \qquad (6.17a)$$

ΔpH ($pH^o - pH^i$)	ΔE (E_M) (mV)	$\Delta\mu_H$ ($\mu_H^i - \mu_H^o$) (kJ mol^{-1})
4.0	0.00	23
2.5	0.00	14
2.3	0.00	13
0.0	0.16	15
0.0	0.13	13
1.1	0.16	22
0.5	0.14	16

Figure 6-6. Proton energy differences across chloroplast lamellar membranes and the mitochondrial inner membrane for various ΔpH's and ΔE's. Data are for 25°C and are calculated using Equation 6.17c.

where μ_H^i is the chemical potential in the lumen, and μ_H^o is the chemical potential in the stroma. Incorporating the definitions of pH ($pH = -\log a_H = -\ln a_H/2.303$) and E_M ($E_M = E^i - E^o$; Chapter 3, Section 3.1D) into Equation 6.17a, we obtain

$$\mu_H^i - \mu_H^o = -2.303\,RT\,pH^i + 2.303\,RT\,pH^o + FE_M \qquad (6.17b)$$

which, using numerical values from Appendix I, at 25°C becomes

$$\mu_H^i - \mu_H^o = 5.71(pH^o - pH^i) + 96.5E_M \qquad (6.17c)$$

where the chemical potentials are in kJ mol^{-1} and E_M is in volts.

According to the chemiosmotic hypothesis (which might, more appropriately, be termed a "transmembrane hypothesis"), the ATP reaction is driven in the energetically uphill direction by protons moving out of the thylakoids in their energetically downhill direction. The stoichiometry is about four H^+'s per ATP. Because the formation of ATP in chloroplasts can require 50 kJ (mol ATP)$^{-1}$, the difference in chemical potential of H^+ must be at least (50 kJ mol^{-1})/($4H^+$) or 13 kJ (mol H^+)$^{-1}$ to drive the reaction energetically using four H^+'s per ATP. By Equation 6.17c, such an energy difference corresponds to a pH difference of (13 kJ mol^{-1})/(5.71 kJ mol^{-1}) or 2.3 pH units, or a difference in electrical potential of (13 kJ mol^{-1})/(96.5 kJ mol^{-1} V^{-1}), or 0.13 V (Fig. 6.6). In turn, if the proton chemical potential gradient is established by coupling to electron flow, then an energetically uphill movement of protons of at least 13 kJ mol^{-1} requires an energetically even larger downhill flow of electrons. We next examine the evidence and the thermodynamic requirements for the various steps coupling electron flow to ATP formation.

6.3C. Evidence for Chemiosmotic Hypothesis

One of the most striking pieces of evidence in support of the chemiosmotic hypothesis was obtained in the 1960s by Andre Jagendorf and Ernest Uribe. When chloroplast lamellae are incubated in a solution at pH 4—in which case pH^i presumably attains a value near 4—and then rapidly transferred to a solution with a pH^o of 8 containing ADP and phosphate, the

lamellae can lead to ATP formation in the dark. Approximately 100 ATP's can be formed per Cyt *f*. When the difference in pH across the membranes is less than 2.5, essentially no ATP is formed by the chloroplast lamellae. This agrees with the energetic argument presented previously, where a minimum ΔpH of 2.3 pH units is required to lead to ATP formation (Fig. 6-6). Also, if the pH of the external solution is gradually increased from 4 to 8 in the dark (over a period of tens of seconds), the protons "leak" out across the lamellar membranes, ΔpH is relatively small, and no ATP is formed.

The electrical term in the chemical potential of H^+ can also power ATP formation. For instance, when an E_M of 0.16 V is artificially created across lamellar membranes, ATP formation can be induced in the dark. This is consistent with our prediction that an electrical potential difference of at least 0.13 V is necessary (Fig. 6-6). In chloroplast thylakoids, E_M in the light is fairly low, e.g., near 0.02 V in the steady state (see Fig. 6-5). However, the electrical term can be the main contributor to $\Delta\mu_H$ for the first 1 or 2 seconds after chloroplasts are exposed to a high photosynthetic photon flux (PPF). The electrical component of the H^+ chemical potential difference can be large for the chromatophores of certain photosynthetic bacteria such as *Rhodopseudomonas spheroides*, for which E_M can be 0.20 V in the light in the steady state.

When chloroplasts are illuminated, electron flow commences, which causes μ_H^i within the thylakoids to increase relative to μ_H^o. We would expect a delay before $\Delta\mu_H$ (given by Eq. 6.17) is large enough to lead to ATP formation. Indeed, a lag of a fraction of a second to a few seconds occurs before photophosphorylation commences at low PPF, and the lag is decreased by increasing the PPF. We can also reason that a gradient in the chemical potential of H^+ will affect the movement of other ions. For instance, the light-induced uptake of H^+ into the thylakoids is accompanied by a release of Mg^{2+}, which can cause its stromal concentration to increase to 10 mM. This released Mg^{2+} can activate various enzymes involved with CO_2 fixation in the stroma, indicating that the ionic readjustments after light-dependent proton movements can act as a cellular control for biochemical reactions.

The chemical potential gradient of H^+ across the lamellar membranes can be dissipated in various ways, thus uncoupling electron flow from ATP formation. Compounds that accomplish this are called *uncouplers*. For instance, neutral weak bases [e.g., methyl amine (CH_3NH_2) or ammonia (NH_3)] can readily diffuse into the thylakoid lumens and there combine with H^+. This lowers a_H^i and raises pH^i. Moreover, the protonated base ($CH_3NH_3^+$ or NH_4^+) cannot readily diffuse back out because it carries a charge. The uncoupler nigericin competitively binds H^+ and K^+; it can exchange K^+ outside for H^+ inside, which also tends to lower a_H^i (because nigericin can stoichiometrically lead to H^+ movement one way and K^+ the other, it acts as an H^+/K^+ antiporter; Fig. 6-10). Detergents can remove certain membrane components, thus making the thylakoids permeable to H^+ and other ions, which also dissipates $\Delta\mu_H$. Such studies further show the importance of the H^+ chemical potential difference in leading to ATP formation.

6.3D. Coupling of Flows

We next reconsider the vectorial aspects of proton and electron flow (Figs. 5-19 and 6-5) and examine the associated energetics. We will discuss the structures involved in the coupling of ATP formation to proton flow. We will also consider the stoichiometry of the various flows with respect to the ATP and NADPH requirements of CO_2 fixation.

Let us start with the O_2-evolution step, $\frac{1}{2}H_2O \rightleftharpoons \frac{1}{4}O_2 + H^+ + e^-$ (essentially Eq. 5.8). To obtain H^+ inside the thylakoids from the O_2-evolving step, we need (1) H_2O inside the thylakoids, which can readily diffuse in from the stroma; (2) an oxidant with a redox potential more positive than the midpoint redox potential of 0.82 V for the H_2O–O_2 couple, which is supplied by the P_{680}–P_{680}^+ couple in Photosystem II with a midpoint redox potential of 1.10 V (Table 5-3); (3) a pathway for removing electrons, which is provided by components interacting with Photosystem II (see Fig. 5-19); and (4) removal of O_2 from inside the thylakoids, which readily occurs by outward diffusion of this small neutral molecule. Therefore, the asymmetrical nature of the reaction center of Photosystem II, together with the membrane property of allowing small neutral molecules to cross easily while retarding the penetration of charged species (Chapter 1, Section 1.4B), leads to an accumulation of H^+ inside the thylakoids from the light-dependent, O_2-evolution step.

H^+ is also transferred from the stroma to inside a thylakoid as electrons move along the electron transport pathway from Photosystem II to Cyt *f* (Figs. 5-19 and 6-5). Two H^+'s are moved as one electron moves from Q_A (midpoint redox potential near −0.15 V) to Cyt *f* (0.35 V; Table 5-3 and Fig. 6-4). By Equation 6.7 ($\Delta G = -nF\Delta E$), this 0.50 V increase in redox potential corresponds to a change in Gibbs free energy of $-(1)(96.49\text{ kJ mol}^{-1}\text{ V}^{-1})$ (0.50 V) or −48 kJ (mol electrons)$^{-1}$. We argued previously that a decrease in the chemical potential of H^+ of at least 13 kJ (mol H^+)$^{-1}$ is needed if four H^+'s are required per ATP, so 48 kJ (mol electrons)$^{-1}$ is more than sufficient energy to move the two H^+'s to higher energy inside a thylakoid per electron moving along the electron transfer pathway.

Coupling between the H^+ movements across the thylakoid membranes associated with electron flow and ATP formation occurs via a coupling factor known as an ATP synthetase, which is usually referred to as *ATP synthase* but also as an ATPase (because it can catalyze the reverse reaction leading to ATP hydrolysis). As illustrated in Figure 6-5, the ATP synthase has two components: (1) a five-protein factor that occurs on the stromal side of a thylakoid, which can bind ADP, P_i, and ATP (labeled CF_1 in Fig. 6-5); and (2) a four-protein factor that is hydrophobic and hence occurs in the thylakoid membrane, through which H^+ can pass (labeled CF_o).[5]

5. F_o and F_1 were originally studied in mitochondria; when analogous complexes were found in chloroplasts, they were designated CF_o and CF_1 (F stands for biochemical fraction). F_1 was the first of a series of proteinaceous factors involved with oxidative phosphorylation that were isolated from mitochondria by Efraim Racker and others in the 1960s. Later the hydrophobic factor F_o, which makes the ATPase activity of F_1 sensitive to oligomycin and hence has "o" as a subscript, was isolated from mitochondrial membranes. For their work on the mechanism of action of ATP synthase, Paul Boyer and John Walker shared the Nobel Prize in chemistry in 1997 (Boyer, 2002; Nicholls and Ferguson, 2008).

The chemical nature of these complexes is similar for ATP synthases in chloroplasts, mitochondria, and bacterial membranes. CF_1 is readily dislodged from the thylakoids and is soluble in water, where it can catalyze ATP hydrolysis. Approximately one CF_1, which comprises about 10% of the thylakoid protein, occurs per Photosystem I (as for Photosystem I, CF_1 tends to be absent where the thylakoids stack together to form grana). Upon removal of CF_1, CF_o remains in the thylakoid membrane as a channel through which passive proton movement can readily occur. The H^+ moving through CF_o can come from the lumen of a thylakoid (Fig. 6-5); H^+ can also diffuse along domains on the inner side of the thylakoid membrane, such as via H^+-binding sites on proteins or phospholipids in the membrane.

A matter related to the coupling of various flows across the thylakoids is the relative amounts of ATP produced and $NADP^+$ reduced in chloroplasts. Three ATP's and two NADPH's are needed per CO_2 photosynthetically fixed in the majority of plants (Fig. 5-1), which are referred to as C_3 plants because CO_2 is incorporated into ribulose-1,5-bisphosphate to yield two molecules of 3-phosphoglyceric acid, a *three*-carbon compound (see Fig. 8-14; just over 90% of plant species use the C_3 pathway). Four or five ATP's (depending on which of three different biochemical pathways is involved) and two NADPH's are required per CO_2 fixed in C_4 plants, where the first photosynthetic products are *four*-carbon organic acids (e.g., oxaloacetic acid). The absorption of eight photons can lead to the processing of four excitations in each of the two photosystems, causing one O_2 to be evolved and four H^+'s to be produced inside a thylakoid by Photosystem II, eight H^+'s to be delivered from the stroma to the thylakoid lumen by the plastoquinones plus the Cyt b_6f complex, and two NADPH's to be produced by the overall noncyclic electron flow (see Figs. 5-15, 5-18, 5-19, 6-4, and 6-5). Assuming that four H^+'s are needed per ATP, the 12 H^+'s lead to three ATP's that together with the two NADPH's are sufficient to fix one CO_2 in C_3 plants. C_4 plants require one or two more ATP's per CO_2 fixed; the additional ATP can be supplied by cyclic or possibly pseudocyclic electron flow (as indicated in Chapter 5, Section 5.5D, no $NADP^+$ reduction accompanies either of these types of electron flow). For instance, cyclic electron flow (Figs. 5-18 and 6-4) takes electrons from ferredoxin to the Cyt b_6f complex, from which the electrons move via plastocyanin back to Photosystem I; accompanying the electron movement, H^+ is transferred from the stroma to the thylakoid lumen, which can lead to the extra ATP needed as the H^+'s move back to the stroma through the ATP synthase (Fig. 6-5).

6.4. Mitochondrial Bioenergetics

The activities of chloroplasts and mitochondria are related in various ways (Fig. 6-7). For instance, the O_2 evolved by photosynthesis can be consumed during respiration, and the CO_2 produced by respiration can be fixed by photosynthesis. Moreover, ATP formation is coupled to electron flow in

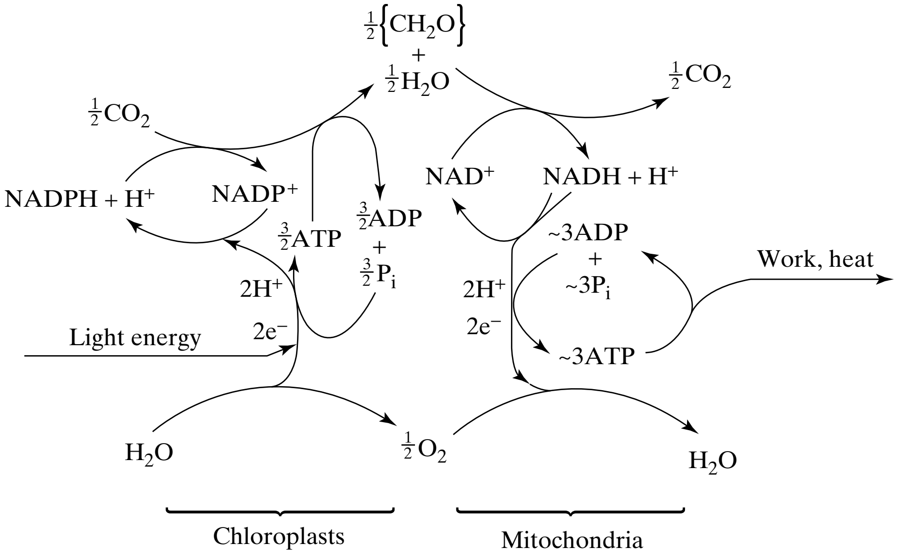


Figure 6-7. Schematic representation of the interrelationships among components involved in chloroplast and mitochondrial bioenergetics.

both organelles; in mitochondria, the electron flow is from a reduced pyridine nucleotide to the oxygen–water half-cell, and in chloroplasts it is in the opposite direction (Fig. 6-7). A few to many thousands of mitochondria occur in each plant cell, their frequency tending to be lower in cells in which chloroplasts are abundant. Oxidative phosphorylation in mitochondria supplies ATP to the cells in photosynthetic tissues at night and at all times in the nongreen tissues.

6.4A. Electron Flow Components—Redox Potentials

As for chloroplast membranes, various compounds in mitochondrial membranes accept and donate electrons. These electrons originate from biochemical cycles in the cytosol as well as in the mitochondrial matrix (see Fig. 1-9)—most come from the tricarboxylic acid (Krebs) cycle, which leads to the oxidation of pyruvate and the reduction of NAD^+ within mitochondria. Certain principal components for mitochondrial electron transfer and their midpoint redox potentials are indicated in Figure 6-8, in which the spontaneous electron flow to higher redox potentials is toward the bottom of the figure. As for photosynthetic electron flow, only a few types of compounds are involved in electron transfer in mitochondria—namely, pyridine nucleotides, flavoproteins, quinones, cytochromes, and the water–oxygen couple (plus some iron-plus-sulfur–containing centers or clusters).

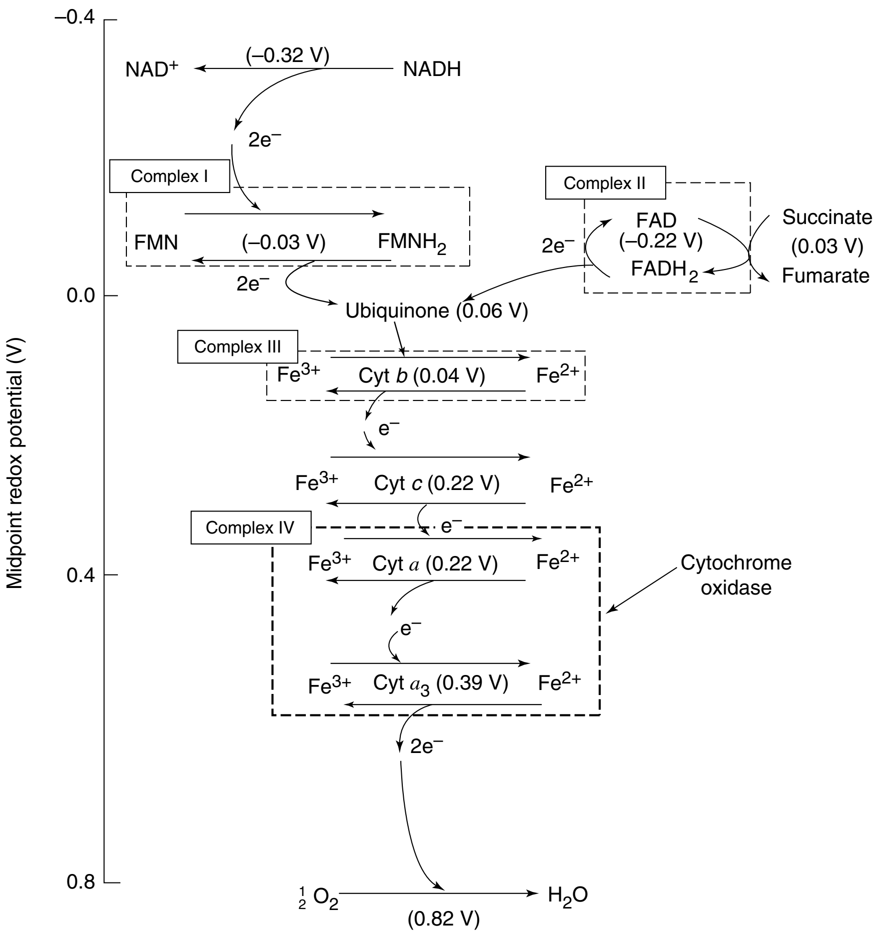
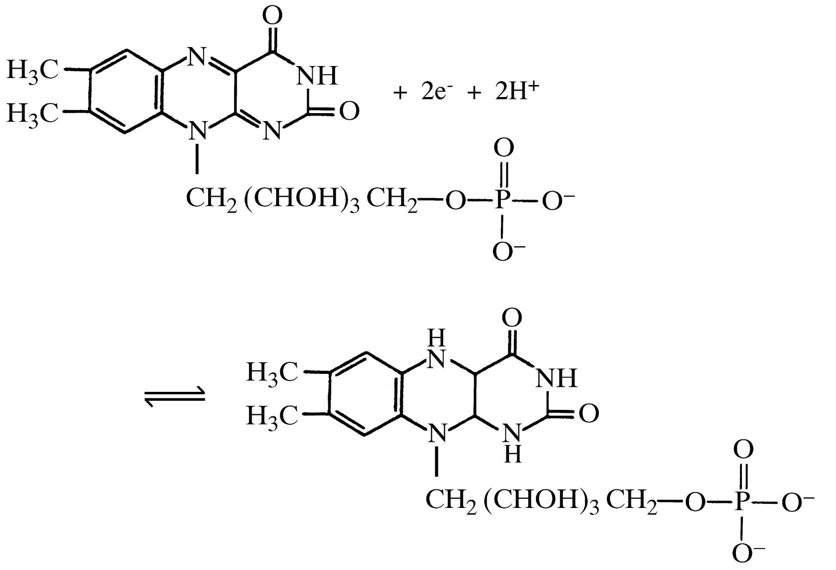


Figure 6-8. Components of the mitochondrial electron transport chain with midpoint redox potentials in parentheses. Also indicated are the four protein complexes (I–IV) involved. Spontaneous electron flow occurs toward couples with higher (more positive) redox potentials, which is downward in the figure.

The reduced compounds that introduce electrons directly into the mitochondrial electron transfer chain are NADH and succinate ($COOHCH_2CH_2COOH$), the latter passing two hydrogens to flavin adenine dinucleotide (FAD) (Fig. 6-8). FAD consists of riboflavin (vitamin B_2) bound by a pyrophosphate bridge to adenosine (Fig. 6-3). Upon accepting two electrons and two protons—one H going to each N with a double bond in the riboflavin part of the molecule—FAD is reduced to $FADH_2$. The FAD–$FADH_2$ couple is bound to a protein, which is referred to as a *flavoprotein* [ferredoxin–$NADP^+$ oxidoreductase involved with photosynthetic electron transfer (Table 5-3) is also a flavoprotein]. We note that a flavoprotein containing flavin mononucleotide (FMN) as the prosthetic group also occurs in mitochondria, where FMN is riboflavin phosphate, which upon accepting two electrons and two protons

becomes $FMNH_2$ (same reaction sites as for the conversion of FAD to $FADH_2$):



Mitochondria contain *ubiquinone* (also known as coenzyme Q), which differs from plastoquinone A (Chapter 5, Section 5.5B) by two methoxy groups in place of the methyl groups on the ring, and 10 instead of 9 isoprene units in the side chain. A *c*-type cytochrome, referred to as Cyt c_1 in animal mitochondria, intervenes just before Cyt *c*; a *b*-type cytochrome occurring in plant mitochondria is involved with an electron transfer that bypasses cytochrome oxidase on the way to O_2. The cytochrome oxidase complex contains two Cyt *a* plus two Cyt a_3 molecules and copper on an equimolar basis with the hemes (see Fig. 5-16). Both the Fe of the heme of Cyt a_3 and the Cu are involved with the reduction of O_2 to H_2O. Cytochromes *a*, *b*, and *c* are in approximately equal amounts in mitochondria (the ratios vary somewhat with plant species); flavoproteins are about 4 times, ubiquinones 7 to 10 times, and pyridine nucleotides 10 to 30 times more abundant than are individual cytochromes. Likewise, in chloroplasts the quinones and the pyridine nucleotides are much more abundant than are the cytochromes (see Table 5-3).

Most of the components involved in electron transport in mitochondria are contained in four supramolecular protein complexes that traverse the inner mitochondrial membrane. Complex I, which contains FMN and various iron–sulfur clusters as active sites, transfers electrons from NADH to ubiquinone (Fig. 6-8). Complex II, which contains FAD, various iron–sulfur clusters, and a Cyt *b*, transfers electrons from succinate also to a ubiquinone. Ubiquinone functions as a pool of two-electron carriers, analogous to the function of plastoquinone A in the lamellar membranes of chloroplasts, which accepts electrons from Complexes I and II and delivers them to the

third protein complex.[6] This Complex III, which contains two Cyt *b*'s, Cyt c_1, an iron–sulfur cluster, and a quinone, transfers electrons to Cyt *c* (Fig. 6-8). In turn, the pool of Cyt *c* molecules, which are soluble in aqueous solutions, passes electrons to Complex IV (also called cytochrome oxidase), which contains Cyt *a*, Cyt a_3, and copper atoms as active sites. Complex IV delivers electrons to oxygen, which acts as the terminal electron acceptor in mitochondria (Fig. 6-8).

6.4B. Oxidative Phosphorylation

ATP formation coupled to electron flow in mitochondria is usually called *oxidative phosphorylation*. Because electron flow involves both reduction and oxidation, more appropriate names are "respiratory phosphorylation" and "respiratory-chain phosphorylation," terminology that is also more consistent with photophosphorylation for ATP formation in photosynthesis. As with photophosphorylation, the mechanism of oxidative phosphorylation is not yet fully understood in molecular terms. Processes like phosphorylation accompanying electron flow are intimately connected with membrane structure, so they are much more difficult to study than are the biochemical reactions taking place in solution. A chemiosmotic coupling mechanism between electron flow and ATP formation in mitochondria is generally accepted, and we will discuss some of its characteristics next.

Accompanying electron flow in mitochondria, H^+ is transported from the matrix side of the inner membrane to the lumen between the limiting membranes, i.e., within the cristae (Figs. 1-9 and 6-9). Certain electron flow components are situated in the membranes such that they can carry out this vectorial movement. Protein Complex I, which oxidizes NADH, apparently transfers four H^+'s across the inner membrane per pair of electrons from NADH. Complex II, which oxidizes $FADH_2$ and leads to the reduction of a ubiquinone whose two electrons move to Complex III, apparently causes no H^+'s to move from the matrix to the lumen. Transport of four H^+'s from the matrix to the lumen side most likely occurs through protein Complex III per pair of electrons traversing the electron transport chain. Complex IV (cytochrome oxidase) may also transport four H^+'s (Fig. 6-9 summarizes these possibilities). We also note that two H^+'s are necessary for the reduction of $\frac{1}{2}O_2$ to H_2O, and these protons can also be taken up on the matrix side (Fig. 6-9).

The transport of protons from the matrix to the lumen leads to a difference in the H^+ chemical potential across the inner mitochondrial membrane. Using Equation 6.17c and the values in Figure 6-9, we calculate that

$$\begin{aligned}\mu_H^i - \mu_H^o &= (5.71)(7.6 - 6.5) + (96.5)(0.16 - 0.00)\\ &= 6.3 + 15.4 = 22\,\text{kJ}(\text{mol H}^+)^{-1}\end{aligned}$$

6. Complex III is also analogous to the Cyt b_6f complex of chloroplasts, both with respect to contents (two Cyt *b*'s, one Cyt *c*, an Fe–S protein, and a quinone) and function within the membranes (e.g., interaction with a quinol); the isolated Cyt b_6f complex can also pass electrons to Cyt *c* as well as to its natural electron acceptor, plastocyanin. Complex III is also structurally and functionally analogous to a supramolecular protein complex in bacteria.

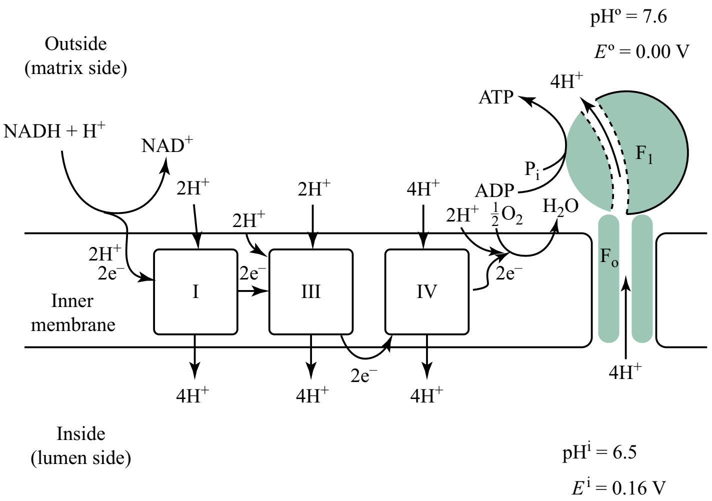


Figure 6-9. Schematic representation of certain electron flow and ATP synthesis components in the inner mitochondrial membrane, emphasizing the directional flows of H^+, various protein complexes, and the ATP synthase. The stoichiometry of H^+ per pair of electrons for the protein complexes is tentative. The H^+, which is moved toward higher μ_H accompanying electron flow along the respiratory chain, can move back through a hydrophobic channel (F_o) and another protein factor attached to the inner membrane (F_1), leading to ATP synthesis in the matrix. The lumen side is here designated the "Inside," as for chloroplasts (Fig. 6-5).

Thus the H^+ chemical potential is higher in the lumen than in the matrix (Fig. 6-6). For some cases in which mitochondrial ATP formation occurs, E_M is 0.14 V and $pH^o - pH^i$ is 0.5, in which case 16 kJ (mol $H^+)^{-1}$ is available for ATP formation from the chemical potential difference of H^+ across the inner mitochondrial membrane (Fig. 6-6). We indicated previously that at least 13 kJ per mole H^+ is required for ATP formation if four H^+'s are used per ATP synthesized. We also note that for chloroplasts, most of the $\Delta\mu_H$ is due to the pH term, whereas for mitochondria the electrical term is usually more important for ATP formation.

As with chloroplasts, we can uncouple ATP formation from electron flow by adding compounds that dissipate the H^+ chemical potential difference. The ionophore valinomycin acts like an organic ring with a hydrophilic center through which K^+ and $NH_4{}^+$ can readily pass but Na^+ and H^+ cannot, thus providing a selective channel when it is embedded in a membrane (Fig. 6-10). If the antiporter nigericin, which facilitates K^+–H^+ exchange (Fig. 6-10), is added together with valinomycin, protons tend to move back into the matrix through the antiporter, thereby diminishing the ΔpH without affecting E_M, while the ionophore causes K^+ movement from the lumen to the matrix, thereby collapsing the electrical potential difference. Because $\Delta\mu_H$ is thus dissipated, ATP formation ceases.

ATP formation is coupled to the energetically downhill H^+ movement back into the mitochondrial matrix through a hydrophobic protein factor in the inner membrane (F_o; see footnote 5) and a protein factor (F_1) about 9 nm in diameter that protrudes from the inner membrane into the matrix (Fig. 6-9). Indeed, subunits of F_1 rotate during ATP formation, so this protein structure has been called a "rotary motor" and has become a model for

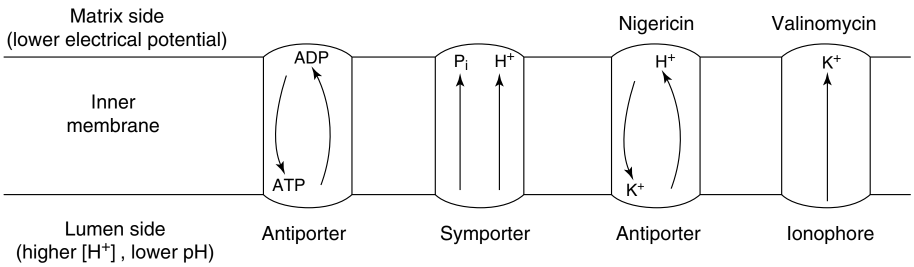


Figure 6-10. Porters are necessary in the inner mitochondrial membrane to move the substrates for oxidative phosphorylation into the matrix (to replenish ADP and P_i) and to move the ATP formed out to the lumen for export to the cytosol. Nigericin acts as an antiporter in the inner membrane, and valinomycin acts as an ionophore.

various nanoscale systems. When removed from F_o, F_1 can lead to the hydrolysis of ATP in an aqueous solution and the inner membrane becomes leaky to H^+, indicating that the hydrophobic F_o is a channel or transporter for protons in mitochondria, just as CF_o is in chloroplasts. The formation of one ATP apparently requires the movement of about four H^+'s through the mitochondrial ATP synthase ($F_o + F_1$; Fig. 6-9), just as for the chloroplastic ATP synthase ($CF_o + CF_1$; Fig. 6-5).

ATP is produced in the mitochondrial matrix but is usually needed in the cytosol. As mentioned in Chapter 1 (Section 1.3B), the outer mitochondrial membrane is readily permeable to solutes such as succinate, ADP, and ATP; channel-forming proteins are responsible for this high permeability. On the other hand, specific porters are necessary for moving charged solutes such as ATP across the inner mitochondrial membrane. In fact, an ADP/ATP antiporter exists in the inner membrane, which replenishes the ADP pool in the matrix as well as moves ATP into the lumen, from which it readily moves to the cytosol (Fig. 6-10). Phosphate, which is also needed for ATP synthesis, enters the matrix by a P_i/OH^- antiporter in the inner membrane (the concentration of OH^- is relatively high in the matrix) or, perhaps, by an H^+/P_i symporter (Fig. 6-10). For the usual state of ionization, an ADP/ATP antiporter taking ADP into the mitochondrial matrix would be electrogenic (one less negative charge brought in than taken out). Also, a P_i/OH^- antiporter (or an H^+/P_i symporter) transporting HPO_4^{2-} into the matrix would be electrogenic but in the opposite direction. Because these two porters must operate at the same rate to replace ADP and P_i and thus to sustain ATP formation in the mitochondrial matrix, no overall effect on the membrane potential is expected. However, the extra proton required for these porters per ATP synthesized raises the proton requirement to five H^+'s per ATP formed in the mitochondrial matrix. In contrast, the ATP synthesized during photophosphorylation is produced where it is mainly utilized, namely, in the chloroplast stroma where CO_2 fixation occurs.

As with chloroplasts, many questions concerning electron flow and the coupled ATP formation in mitochondria remain unanswered. The first part of the mitochondrial electron transfer chain has a number of two-electron carriers (NAD^+, FMN, and ubiquinone) that interact with the cytochromes (one-electron carriers). In this regard, the reduction of O_2 apparently involves four electrons coming sequentially from the same Cyt a_3. Of

considerable interest is the stoichiometry between electron flow and proton movement. Twelve H^+'s can move across the inner mitochondrial membrane when a pair of electrons moves from NADH to O_2 (see Fig. 6-9); this is consistent with four H^+'s per ATP and the long-standing view of three ATP's formed per NADH oxidized. However, steady-state ATP formation apparently requires five H^+'s per ATP when movements of ATP, ADP, and phosphate are taken into account (Fig. 6-10), and the number of H^+'s transported at each membrane complex has some controversy—these matters require further research.

6.5. Energy Flow in the Biosphere

The foregoing discussion of the way organisms interconvert energy on an organelle level sets the stage for a consideration of bioenergetics in a broader context. We begin with certain biochemical aspects and then discuss the overall flow of energy from the sun through the biosphere. We will consider the photosynthetic efficiency as well as the transfer of energy from plants to animals. This material will serve as a transition between the molecular and cellular levels considered up to now, and the organ and organism levels of the succeeding three chapters.

In Chapter 4 (Section 4.1D), we indicated that the radiation input of the sun to the earth's atmosphere averages 1366 W m^{-2} (the "solar constant"). Some of the radiant energy is used to form ATP and NADPH in chloroplasts. In turn, these energy currencies lead to the reductive fixation of CO_2 into a carbohydrate in photosynthesis (see Fig. 5-1). In the same photosynthetic cells, in other plant cells, and in animal cells, the carbohydrates formed during photosynthesis can serve as the energy source for mitochondrial respiration, which leads to the generation of ATP by oxidative phosphorylation.

When used as a fuel in respiration, the carbohydrate glucose is first broken down into two molecules of pyruvate in the cytosol. Pyruvate enters the mitochondria and is eventually oxidized to CO_2 and H_2O by the tricarboxylic acid (TCA) or Krebs cycle. One mole of glucose can lead to the formation of about 30 mol of ATP. The Gibbs free energy released by the complete oxidation of glucose is 479 kJ (mol C)$^{-1}$ (see Chapter 5) or (6C/glucose) [479 kJ (mol C)$^{-1}$], which is 2874 kJ/mol glucose, and about 48 kJ is required for the phosphorylation of 1 mol of ADP (Section 6.2B). Hence, the efficiency of the many-faceted conversion of Gibbs free energy from glucose to ATP can be

$$\frac{(30 \text{ mol ATP/mol glucose})(48 \text{ kJ/mol ATP})}{(2874 \text{ kJ/mol glucose})} = 0.50$$

or 50%, indicating that the Gibbs free energy in glucose can be efficiently mobilized to produce ATP. Such ATP is used by the cells to transport ions, to synthesize proteins, and to provide for growth and maintenance in other ways. We can readily appreciate that, if free energy were not constantly supplied to their cells, plants and animals would drift toward equilibrium and die.

One of the consequences of the flux of energy through the biosphere is the formation of complex and energetically improbable molecules such as

proteins and nucleic acids. Such compounds represent a considerably greater amount of Gibbs free energy than does an equilibrium mixture containing the same relative amounts of the various atoms. (Equilibrium corresponds to a minimum in Gibbs free energy; see Fig. 6-1.) For instance, the atoms in the nonaqueous components of cells have an average of about 26 kJ mol^{-1} more Gibbs free energy than the same atoms at equilibrium (Morowitz, 1979). The Boltzmann energy distribution (Eq. 3.22b) predicts that at equilibrium the fraction of atoms with kinetic energy in excess of E is equal to $e^{-E/RT}$, which for 26 kJ mol^{-1} is only 0.000028 at 25°C. Therefore, only a very small fraction of atoms would have a kinetic energy equal to the average enrichment in Gibbs free energy per atom of the nonaqueous components in cells. It is the flux of energy from the sun through plants and animals (see Fig. 6-7) that leads to such an energy enrichment in the molecules and that ensures that biological systems will be maintained in a state far from equilibrium, as is essential for life.

6.5A. Incident Light—Stefan–Boltzmann Law

To help understand the energy available to the biosphere, we need to reconsider some properties of radiating bodies. In Chapter 4 (Section 4.1E), we indicated that the distribution of radiant energy per unit wavelength interval is proportional to $\lambda^{-5}/(e^{hc/\lambda kT} - 1)$, where T is the surface temperature of the radiation source (Eq. 4.3b). This form of Planck's radiation distribution formula applies to an object that radiates maximally, a so-called *blackbody* (often *black body*). When blackbody radiation is integrated over all wavelengths, we can determine the maximum amount of energy radiated by an object. Appropriate integration[7] of Planck's radiation distribution formula leads to the following expression:

$$\text{Maximum radiant energy flux density} = \sigma T^4 \tag{6.18a}$$

where σ is a constant and T is in kelvin units (temperature in °C + 273.15).

Equation 6.18a can be derived from quantum-physical considerations developed by Max Planck in 1900 (see Footnote 7), but it was first proposed in the late 19th century. In 1879, Josef Stefan empirically determined that the maximum radiation was proportional to the fourth power of the absolute temperature; in 1884, Ludwig Boltzmann interpreted this in terms of classical physics. The coefficient of proportionality σ was deduced from measurements then available and has become known as the Stefan–Boltzmann

7. To integrate Planck's radiation distribution formula over all wavelengths, x can conveniently be substituted for $1/(\lambda T)$ and hence $dx = -(1/T)(1/\lambda^2)d\lambda$, so $d\lambda = -\lambda^2 T dx = -dx/(Tx^2)$. The total energy radiated is thus:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Energy radiated } \alpha &\int_0^\infty \lambda^{-5}(e^{hc/\lambda kT} - 1)^{-1} d\lambda \\ &= \int_0^\infty (1/xT)^{-5}(e^{hcx/k} - 1)^{-1}(-dx/Tx^2) \\ &= T^4 \int_0^\infty x^3 (e^{hcx/k} - 1)^{-1} dx\end{aligned}$$

where the definite integral equals $(\pi^4/15)(k/hc)^4$.

constant, which equals 5.670×10^{-8} W m^{-2} K^{-4} (Appendix I). For the case in which the object does not radiate as a blackbody, the actual radiant energy flux density at the surface of the radiator is

$$\text{Actual radiant energy flux density} = e\sigma T^4 \tag{6.18b}$$

where e is the *emissivity*. Emissivity depends on the surface material of the radiating body and achieves its maximum value of 1 for a blackbody. Equation 6.18, which is known as the Stefan–Boltzmann law, indicates that the amount of radiant energy emitted by an object increases extremely rapidly with its surface temperature (Fig. 6-11).

We will now estimate the amount of energy radiated from the sun's surface and how much of this is annually incident on the earth's atmosphere. Using Equation 6.18a and the effective surface temperature of the sun,

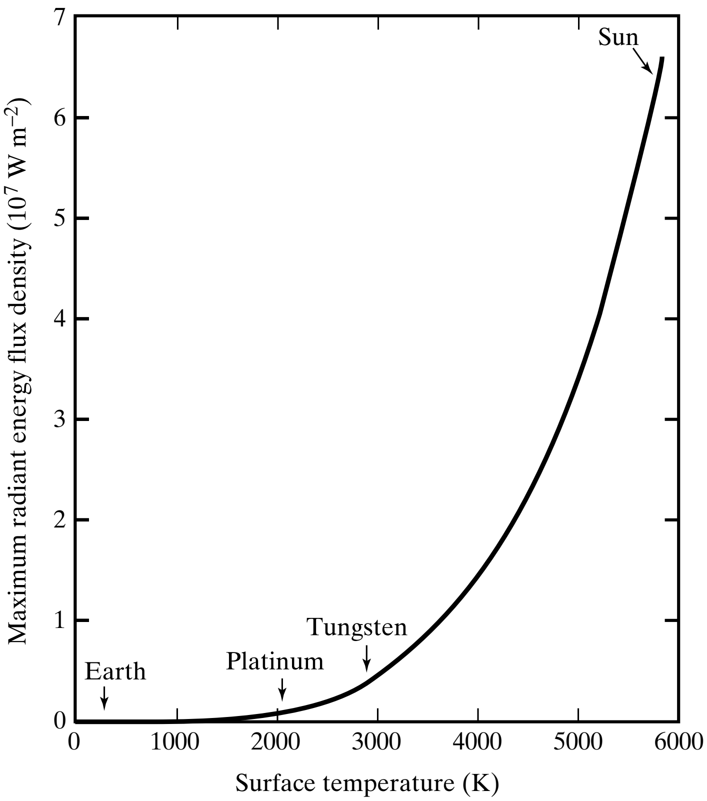


Figure 6-11. Dependence of radiated energy on the surface temperature of an object emitting as a blackbody (Eq. 6.18a). Values are indicated for the earth (mean surface temperature of 290 K), the melting point of platinum (2042 K; formerly used to define a candle; see Chapter 4, Section 4.1C), a tungsten lamp (2900 K; see Chapter 4, Section 4.1E), and the sun (5800 K). The emissivity (e; Eq. 6.18b) is about 1.00 for the sun; e is generally 0.96–0.99 for vegetation-covered regions but only about 0.5 for clouds, which cover approximately half of the earth's surface; and e is about 0.33 for a tungsten filament, depending on the surface roughness, any oxidation, and the operating temperature.

Table 6-3. Annual Energy Magnitudes

Quantity	J $year^{-1}$	Percentage of immediately above quantity
Sun's output	1.21×10^{34}	–
Energy into earth's atmosphere	5.50×10^{24}	4.6×10^{-8}
Energy absorbed by photosynthetic pigments	2.8×10^{23}	5.1
Energy stored in photosynthetic products	4.2×10^{21}	1.5
Energy consumption by humans as food	2.6×10^{19}	0.7

about 5800 K, the rate of energy radiation per unit area of the sun's surface (Fig. 6-11) is

$$J_{\text{energy}} = (5.670 \times 10^{-8}\ \text{W m}^{-2}\ \text{K}^{-4})(5800\ \text{K})^4 = 6.4 \times 10^7\ \text{W m}^{-2}$$

The entire output of the sun is about 3.84×10^{26} W, which leads to 1.21×10^{34} J $year^{-1}$ (Table 6-3). Because the amount incident on the earth's atmosphere is 1366 W m^{-2} and the projected area of the earth is 1.276×10^{14} m^2, the annual energy input into the earth's atmosphere from the sun is (1366 J m^{-2} s^{-1})(1.276×10^{14} m^2)(3.156×10^7 s $year^{-1}$), or 5.50×10^{24} J $year^{-1}$ (Table 6-3).

6.5B. Absorbed Light and Photosynthetic Efficiency

Only a small fraction of the sun's energy incident on the earth's atmosphere each year is absorbed by photosynthetic pigments, and only a small fraction of the absorbed energy is stored as chemical energy of the photosynthetic products. Specifically, approximately 5.1% of the 5.50×10^{24} J annually incident on the earth's atmosphere is absorbed by chlorophyll or other photosynthetic pigments, leading to a radiant energy input into this part of the biosphere of about 2.8×10^{23} J $year^{-1}$ (Table 6-3). How much of this energy is annually stored in photosynthetic products? As we indicated at the beginning of Chapter 5, a net of approximately 1.06×10^{14} kg of carbon is annually fixed by photosynthesis. For each mole of CO_2 (12 g of carbon) incorporated into a carbohydrate, approximately 479 kJ of Gibbs free energy is stored. The total amount of energy stored each year by photosynthesis is thus (1.06×10^{17} g $year^{-1}$)(1 mol/12 g)(4.79×10^5 J mol^{-1}), or 4.2×10^{21} J $year^{-1}$. Hence only about 1.5% of the radiant energy absorbed by photosynthetic pigments is ultimately stored by plant cells (Table 6-3).

The efficiency of photosynthesis can be represented in many different ways. If we express it on the basis of the total solar irradiation incident on the earth's atmosphere (5.50×10^{24} J $year^{-1}$), it is only 0.076%. This low figure takes into consideration many places of low productivity, such as cold noncoastal regions of oceans, polar icecaps, and winter landscapes, as well as arid regions. Furthermore, not all solar radiation reaches the earth's surface, and much that does is in the infrared (see Fig. 4-5); the efficiency would be 0.133% if we considered only the solar irradiation reaching the ground. Nevertheless, even with the very low overall energy conversion, the trapping of solar energy by photosynthesis is the essential source of free energy used to sustain life.

What is the highest possible efficiency for photosynthesis? For low levels of red light, the conversion of radiant energy into the Gibbs free energy of photosynthetic products can be up to 34% in the laboratory (see beginning of Chapter 5). Solar irradiation includes many wavelengths; slightly less than half of this radiant energy is in the region that can be absorbed by photosynthetic pigments, 400 to 700 nm (see Figs. 4-5 and 7-2). If all of the incident wavelengths from 400 to 700 nm were absorbed by photosynthetic pigments, and eight photons were required per CO_2 fixed, the maximum photosynthetic efficiency for the use of low levels of incident solar irradiation would be just under half of 34%, e.g., 15%. However, some sunlight is reflected or transmitted by leaves (see Fig. 7-4), and some is absorbed by nonphotosynthetic pigments in the leaf cells. Thus the maximum photosynthetic efficiency for using incident solar energy under ideal conditions of temperature, water supply, and physiological status of plants in the field is closer to 10%.

Measurements of photosynthetic efficiency in the field have indicated that up to about 7% of the incident solar energy can be stored in photosynthetic products for a rapidly growing crop under ideal conditions. Usually, the photosynthetic photon flux (PPF) on the upper leaves of vegetation is too high for all excitations of the photosynthetic pigments to be used for the photochemistry of photosynthesis (Fig. 5-12). The energy of many absorbed photons is therefore wasted as heat, especially when leaves of C_3 plants are exposed to a PPF of more than 600 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1}. Hence, the maximum sustained efficiency for the conversion of solar energy into Gibbs free energy stored in photosynthetic products is often near 3% for crops when averaged over a day in the growing season. For all vegetation averaged over a year, the efficiency is about 0.7% of the incident solar irradiation. This is consistent with our previous statement that about 1.5% of the radiant energy absorbed by photosynthetic pigments is stored in the products of photosynthesis, because only about half of the solar irradiation incident on plants or algae is absorbed by chlorophylls, carotenoids, and phycobilins.

6.5C. Food Chains and Material Cycles

We now consider the fate of the energy stored in photosynthetic products when animals enter the picture. We begin by noting that across each step in a food chain the free energy decreases, as required by the second law of thermodynamics. For instance, growing herbivores generally retain only 10 to 20% of the free energy of the ingested plant material, and a mature (nongrowing) animal uses essentially all of its Gibbs free energy consumption just to maintain a nonequilibrium state. Growing carnivores store about 10 to 20% of the free energy content of herbivores or other animals that they eat. Therefore, a sizable loss in Gibbs free energy occurs for each link in a food chain, and as a consequence a chain seldom has more than four links, or steps.

Although modern agriculture tends to reduce the length of our food chain for meat, humans still make a large demand on the Gibbs free energy available in the biosphere. The global average intake of free energy is about 10 MJ $person^{-1}$ day^{-1} (2400 kcal $person^{-1}$ day^{-1}). For a world population of

7 billion, the annual consumption of Gibbs free energy for food is about 2.6×10^{19} J year^{-1} (Table 6-3). (Humans also consume plants and animals for clothing, shelter, firewood, papermaking, and other uses.) Thus our food consumption alone amounts to about 0.7% of the 4.2×10^{21} J year^{-1} stored in photosynthetic products (Table 6-3). If we were to eat only carnivores that ate herbivores with a 10% retention in Gibbs free energy across each step in the food chain, we would indirectly be responsible for the consumption of most of the energy storage by present-day photosynthesis. Fortunately, most of our free energy requirements are obtained directly from plants. The average daily consumption in the United States is about 12 MJ person^{-1}, of which just over 70% comes from plants and just under 30% from animals. The animals consumed retain approximately 15% of the Gibbs free energy in the plant material that they eat.

The harnessing of solar radiation by photosynthesis starts the flow of Gibbs free energy through the biosphere. In addition to maintaining individual chemical reactions as well as entire plants and animals in a state far from equilibrium, the annual degradation of chemical energy to heat sets up various cycles. We have already indicated some of these, such as O_2 evolution in photosynthesis and consumption in respiration, with CO_2 cycling in the reverse direction between these two processes (Fig. 6-7). There is a cycling between ATP and ADP plus phosphate at the cellular level and a large-scale cycling of nitrogen, phosphorus, and sulfur in the biosphere. All these material cycles can be regarded as consequences of the unidirectional flow of Gibbs free energy, which decreases after each step along the way.

6.6. Problems

6.1. A reaction $A + B \rightleftharpoons C$ has a ΔG^* of -17.1 kJ mol^{-1} of reactant or product at 25°C (K in molality). Assume that activity coefficients are unity. In which direction will the reaction proceed under the following conditions?

A. The concentrations of A, B, and C are all 1 m.

B. The concentrations of A, B, and C are all 1 mm.

C. The concentrations of A, B, and C are all 1 μm.

D. What is the equilibrium constant for the reaction?

6.2. Consider the following two half-cell reactions at 25°C:

$$A \rightleftharpoons A^+ + e^- \quad \Delta G^* = 8.37\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}$$
$$B \rightleftharpoons B^+ + e^- \quad \Delta G^* = 2.93\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}$$

Assume that the midpoint redox potential of the second reaction is 0.118 V and that all activity coefficients are 1.

A. If the redox potential of the B–B^+ couple is 0.000 V, what is the ratio of B^+ to B?

B. What is the midpoint redox potential of the A–A^+ couple?

C. Suppose that all reactants and products are initially 1 m but that the couples are in separate solutions of equal volume. If the half-cells are electrically connected with a metal wire, what is the initial electrical potential difference between them, and in which direction do electrons flow?

D. If all reactants and products are initially 1 m, what is the concentration of each at equilibrium in a single solution?
E. Qualitatively, how would the answer to D change if the initial conditions were identical to C, but as the electrons flow through the wire they do electrical work?

6.3. Suppose that isolated chloroplasts are suspended in an aqueous medium initially containing 2 mM ADP, 5 mM phosphate, and essentially no ATP (ignore any of these solutes originally in the chloroplasts). Assume that the temperature is 25°C and that the pH is 7.
A. What is the ATP concentration at equilibrium?
B. When the chloroplasts are illuminated, the ADP concentration decreases to 1 mM. What is the new concentration of ATP, and what is the change in Gibbs free energy for continued photophosphorylation?
C. If ferredoxin has a redox potential of −0.580 V and the activity of NADPH is 3% of that of $NADP^+$, what is the difference in redox potential between the two couples?
D. How much Gibbs free energy is available between the two couples in C when a pair of electrons moves between them? Is this enough for the continued formation of ATP under the conditions of B?
E. What difference in pH across a thylakoid membrane whose E_M is zero represents enough energy for ATP synthesis under the conditions of B when two protons are used per ATP? What if three protons are required per ATP?

6.4. Consider the following two mitochondrial cytochromes:

$$\text{Cyt}\,b\,(Fe^{2+}) \rightleftharpoons \text{Cyt}\,b\,(Fe^{3+}) + e^- \quad E_b^{*H} = 0.040\ \text{V}$$
$$\text{Cyt}\,c\,(Fe^{3+}) + e^- \rightleftharpoons \text{Cyt}\,c\,(Fe^{2+}) \quad E_c^{*H} = 0.220\ \text{V}$$

Assume that the temperature is 25°C, the chemical activity of Cyt b (Fe^{2+}) is 20% of that of the oxidized form, activity coefficients are equal to 1, and 40 kJ is required to form 1 mol of ATP in mitochondria.
A. What is the redox potential of Cyt b?
B. If the concentration of Cyt c (Fe^{2+}) is 1 mM, what is the concentration of ferricytochrome c such that the Cyt c couple can just transfer electrons back to Cyt b?
C. What is the redox potential of Cyt c such that one electron going from Cyt b to Cyt c represents the same energy as is required to form one ATP?
D. Assume for each pair of electrons that ubiquinone delivers to Cyt b in a supramolecular protein complex, four protons are moved from the matrix side across the inner mitochondrial membrane to the lumen. If the proton concentration is the same on the two sides of the membrane, what difference in redox potential energetically corresponds to having the electrical potential 0.15 V higher on the matrix side?
E. If the pH is the same on the two sides of the membrane and four protons move through the F_o–F_1 ATP synthase per ATP, what is the minimum electrical potential difference across the inner mitochondrial membrane required to synthesize ATP by proton movement?
F. What is E_M in E if three protons are required per ATP? What is E_M if three H^+'s are required and the energy losses (inefficiencies) are 30%?

6.7. References and Further Reading

Abrol, Y.P., Mohanty, P., and Govindjee (Eds.) 1993. *Photosynthesis: Photoreactions to Plant Productivity.* Kluwer, Dordrecht.

Alberty, R.A. 2003. *Thermodynamics of Biochemical Reactions.* Wiley, New York.

Berry, S. 2002. The chemical basis of membrane bioenergetics. *J. Mol. Evol.* **54:** 595–613.

Berry, S., and Rumberg, B. 2001. Kinetic modeling of the photosynthetic electron transport chain. *Bioelectrochemistry* **53:** 35–53.

Boyer, P.D. 2002. A research journey with ATP synthase. *J. Biol. Chem.* **277:** 39,045–39,061.

Capaldi, R.A., and Aggeler, R. 2002. Mechanism of the F1F0-type ATP synthase, a biological rotary motor. *Trends Biochem. Sci.* **27:** 154–160.

Douce, R., and Neuburger, M. 1989. The uniqueness of plant mitochondria. *Annu. Rev. Plant Physiol. Plant Mol. Biol.* **40:** 371–414.

Garby, L., and Larsen, P.S. 1995. *Bioenergetics: Its Thermodynamic Foundations.* Cambridge University Press, New York.

Gates, D.M. 2003. *Biophysical Ecology.* Dover, Mineola, New York.

Graber, P., and Milazzo, G. (Eds.) 1997. *Bioenergetics.* Birkhauser, Basal, Switzerland.

Guerra, G., Martinez, F., and Pardo, J.P. 2002. On the $H^+/2e^-$ stoichiometry of the respiratory chain. *Biochem. Mol. Biol. Educ.* **30:** 363–367.

Jagendorf, A.T., and Uribe, E. 1966. ATP formation caused by acid–base transition of spinach chloroplasts. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **55:** 170–177.

Kadenbach, B. 2003. Intrinsic and extrinsic uncoupling of oxidative phosphorylation. *Biochim. Biophys. Acta Bioenerg.* **1604:** 77–94.

Ksenzhek, O.S., and Volkov, A.G. 2008. *Plant Energetics.* Academic Press, San Diego, CA.

Lambers, H. 2005. *Plant Respiration*. Springer, Dordrecht.

Logan, D.C. (Ed.) 2007. *Plant Mitochondria*, *Annual Plant Reviews*, Vol. 31: Blackwell, Oxford, UK.

Mitchell, P. 1979. Compartmentation and communication in living systems. Ligand conduction: A general catalytic principle in chemical, osmotic and chemiosmotic reaction systems. *Eur. J. Biochem.* **95:** 1–20.

Morowitz, H.J. 1979. *Energy Flow in Biology.* Ox Bow Press, Woodbridge, CT.

Nelson, N. 2006. Structure and function of photosystems I and II. *Ann. Rev. Plant Physiol. Plant Mol. Biol.* **57:** 521–565.

Nicholls, D.G., and Ferguson, S.J. 2008. *Bioenergetics 3*, 3rd ed. Academic Press, San Diego, CA.

Robinson, J.D. 1997. *Moving Questions: A History of Membrane Transport and Bioenergetics.* Oxford University Press, New York.

Rosing, J., and Slater, E.C. 1972. The value of ΔG° for the hydrolysis of ATP. *Biochim. Biophys. Acta* **267:** 275–290.

Sacksteder, C.A., Kanazawa, A., Jacoby, M.E., and Kramer, D.M. 2000. The proton to electron stoichiometry of steady-state photosynthesis in living plants: A proton-pumping Q cycle is continuously engaged. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **97:** 14,283–14,288.

Silbey, R.J., Alberty, R.A., and Bawendi, M.G. 2005. *Physical Chemistry*, 4th ed. Wiley, New York.

Tinoco, I., Sauer, K., and Wang, J.C. 2002. *Physical Chemistry: Principles and Applications in Biological Sciences*, 4th ed. Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, NJ.

Turina, P., Samoray, D., and Gräber, P. 2003. H^+/ATP ratio of proton transport-coupled ATP synthesis and hydrolysis catalyzed by CF_0F_1-liposomes. *EMBO J.* **22:** 418–426.

Wang, J. 2006. *Analytical Electrochemistry*, 3rd ed. Wiley, New York.

Wikström, M. 2005. *Biophysical and Structural Aspects of Bioenergetics.* Royal Society of Chemistry, Cambridge, UK.

Witt, H.T. 1979. Energy conversion in the functional membrane of photosynthesis. Analysis by light pulse and electric pulse methods. The central role of the electric field. *Biochim. Biophys. Acta* **505:** 355–427.

Major Equations

Leaf energy balance (7.2)

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{l}\text{Absorbed solar}\\ \quad\text{irradiation,}\\ \text{Absorbed infrared}\\ \quad\text{irradiation from}\\ \quad\text{surroundings}\end{array}}_{\text{Energy into leaf}} \cong \underbrace{\begin{array}{l}\text{Emitted infrared}\\ \quad\text{radiation,}\\ \text{Heat convection,}\\ \text{Heat conduction,}\\ \text{Heat loss accompanying}\\ \quad\text{water evaporation}\end{array}}_{\text{Energy out of leaf}}$$

Absorbed minus emitted radiation (7.8b)

$$\text{Net radiation} = a(1+r)S + a_{\text{IR}}\sigma[(T^{\text{surr}})^4 + (T^{\text{sky}})^4] - 2e_{\text{IR}}\sigma(T^{\text{leaf}})^4$$

Boundary layer thickness for flat leaf (7.10)

$$\delta^{\text{bl}}_{(\text{mm})} = 4.0\sqrt{\frac{l_{(\text{m})}}{v_{(\text{m s}^{-1})}}}$$

Heat flux density for leaf (7.14)

$$J_H^{\text{C}} = -2K^{\text{air}}\frac{\partial T}{\partial x} = 2K^{\text{air}}\frac{(T^{\text{leaf}} - T^{\text{ta}})}{\delta^{\text{bl}}}$$

Heat flux density for transpiration (7.22)

$$J_H^{\text{T}} = J_{wv}H_{\text{vap}} = \frac{H_{\text{vap}}D_{wv}\Delta c_{wv}^{\text{total}}}{\Delta x^{\text{total}}}$$

Heat storage rate (7.24)

$$\text{Heat storage rate} = VC_P\frac{\Delta T}{\Delta t}$$

Soil temperature (7.28)

$$T = \overline{T}^{\text{surf}} + \Delta T^{\text{surf}}e^{-z/d}\cos\left(\frac{2\pi t}{p} - \frac{2\pi t_{\max}}{p} - \frac{z}{d}\right)$$

7

Temperature and Energy Budgets

7.1. Energy Budget—Radiation ... 320
7.1A. Solar Irradiation ... 322
7.1B. Absorbed Infrared Irradiation ... 326
7.1C. Emitted Infrared Radiation ... 327
7.1D. Values for a, a_{IR}, and e_{IR} ... 328
7.1E. Net Radiation ... 330
7.1F. Examples for Radiation Terms ... 330
7.2. Heat Conduction and Convection ... 333
7.2A. Wind ... 334
7.2B. Air Boundary Layers ... 336
7.2C. Boundary Layers for Bluff Bodies ... 339
7.2D. Heat Conduction/Convection Equations ... 340
7.2E. Dimensionless Numbers ... 341
7.2F. Examples of Heat Conduction/Convection ... 345
7.3. Latent Heat—Transpiration ... 346
7.3A. Heat Flux Density Accompanying Transpiration ... 346
7.3B. Heat Flux Density for Dew or Frost Formation ... 347
7.3C. Examples of Frost and Dew Formation ... 348
7.4. Further Examples of Energy Budgets ... 350
7.4A. Leaf Shape and Orientation ... 350
7.4B. Shaded Leaves within Plant Communities ... 352
7.4C. Heat Storage ... 352
7.4D. Time Constants ... 354
7.5. Soil ... 355
7.5A. Thermal Properties ... 356
7.5B. Soil Energy Balance ... 357
7.5C. Variations in Soil Temperature ... 358
7.6. Problems ... 360
7.7. References and Further Reading ... 362

We have already encountered many aspects of temperature—indeed, temperature affects essentially all processes in plants. For instance, when introducing the special properties of water in Chapter 2, we noted that physiological processes generally take place within a fairly narrow temperature range, that the water vapor content of air at saturation is very temperature dependent (also see Appendix I), and that biochemical reactions

usually exhibit a temperature optimum. In Chapter 3, we discussed the Boltzmann energy distribution, Arrhenius plots, and Q_{10}, all of which involve the thermal energy of molecular motion. Light absorption (Chapter 4) causes molecules to attain states that are simply too improbable to be reached by collisions based on thermal energy. Transitions from an excited state to another one at a lower energy or to the ground state can be radiationless, releasing energy as heat that is eventually shared by the surrounding molecules. The surface temperature of an object indicates both the wavelengths where radiation from it will be maximal (Wien's displacement law, Eq. 4.4) and the total energy radiated (Stefan–Boltzmann law, Eq. 6.18).

The temperature of an object reflects the net result of all the ways that energy can enter or exit from it. In this chapter, we examine these various ways, especially for leaves. We will then be able to predict the temperatures of leaves and more massive plant parts, based on the ambient environmental conditions. Moreover, we can also appreciate the consequences of certain adaptations of plants to their environment and identify the experimental data needed for future refinements of our calculations.

We should emphasize at the outset that individual plants as well as environmental conditions vary tremendously. Thus, in this and the next two chapters we will indicate an approach to the study of plant physiology and physiological ecology rather than providing a compendium of facts suitable for all situations. Nevertheless, certain basic features should become clear. For instance, CO_2 uptake during photosynthesis is accompanied by a water efflux through the stomata. This water loss during transpiration cools a leaf. Also, energy influxes are balanced against effluxes by changes in leaf temperature, which affects the amount of radiation emitted by a leaf as well as the heat conducted to the surrounding air. Another generality is that the temperatures of small leaves tend to be closer to those of the air than do the temperatures of large leaves. To appreciate the relative contributions of the various factors, we will use representative values for leaf and environmental parameters to describe the gas fluxes and the energy balance of leaves.

7.1. Energy Budget—Radiation

The law of conservation of energy (the first law of thermodynamics) states that energy cannot be created or destroyed but only changed from one form to another. We will apply this principle to the energy balance of a leaf, which occurs in an environment with many energy fluxes. We can summarize the various contributors to the energy balance of a leaf as follows:

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{l}\text{Absorbed solar}\\ \quad\text{irradiation,}\\ \text{Absorbed infrared}\\ \quad\text{irradiation from}\\ \quad\text{surroundings}\\ \quad\text{(including sky)}\end{array}}_{\text{Energy into leaf}} - \underbrace{\begin{array}{l}\text{Emitted infrared}\\ \quad\text{radiation,}\\ \text{Heat convection,}\\ \text{Heat conduction,}\\ \text{Heat loss accompanying}\\ \quad\text{water evaporation}\end{array}}_{\text{Energy out of leaf}} = \underbrace{\begin{array}{l}\text{Photosynthesis,}\\ \text{Other metabolism,}\\ \text{Leaf temperature}\\ \quad\text{changes}\end{array}}_{\text{Energy storage by leaf}} \tag{7.1}$$

Equation 7.1 describes the case in which the leaf temperature is greater than the temperature of the air; when the leaf temperature is less than that of the surrounding turbulent air, heat moves into a leaf. Also, when water condenses onto a leaf, the leaf gains heat. In such cases, the appropriate energy terms in Equation 7.1 change sign.

The various terms in Equation 7.1 differ greatly in magnitude. For instance, usually all of the energy storage terms are relatively small. As a basis for comparison, we will consider the average amount of solar irradiation incident on the earth's atmosphere (the term "irradiation" refers to incident radiation; see Chapter 4, Footnote 3, for radiation terminology). This radiant flux density, the solar constant, averages 1366 W m^{-2} (Chapter 4, Section 4.1D). The solar irradiation absorbed by an exposed leaf is often about half of this during the daytime. Hence, any process under 7 W m^{-2} corresponds to less than 1% of the absorbed solar irradiation for full sunlight, which usually cannot be measured to an accuracy greater than 1%. How much energy is stored by photosynthesis? A typical net rate of CO_2 fixation by a photosynthetically active leaf is 10 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1} (see Chapter 8, Section 8.4G). As indicated at the beginning of Chapter 5, about 479 kJ of energy is stored per mole of CO_2 fixed into photosynthetic products. Hence, photosynthesis by leaves might store

$$(10 \times 10^{-6}\ \mathrm{mol\ m^{-2}\ s^{-1}})(479 \times 10^{3}\ \mathrm{J\ mol^{-1}}) = 5\ \mathrm{J\ m^{-2}s^{-1}} = 5\ \mathrm{W\ m^{-2}}$$

which is less than 1% of the rate of absorption of solar irradiation under the same conditions. In some cases the rate of photosynthesis can be higher. Still, we can generally ignore the contribution of photosynthesis to the energy balance of a leaf. Other metabolic processes in a leaf, such as respiration and photorespiration, are usually even less important on an energy basis than is photosynthesis, so they too can generally be ignored.

We will now consider the amount of energy that can be stored because of changes in leaf temperature. For purposes of calculation, we will assume that a leaf has the high specific heat of water (4.18 kJ kg^{-1} °C^{-1} at 20°C; Appendix I), where *specific heat* is the energy required to raise the temperature of unit mass by one degree. We will further assume that the leaf is 300 μm thick (e.g., Fig. 1-2) and has an overall density of 700 kg m^{-3} (0.7 g cm^{-3})—a leaf is often 30% air by volume. Hence, the mass per unit leaf area in this case is

$$(300 \times 10^{-6}\ \mathrm{m})(700\ \mathrm{kg\ m^{-3}}) = 0.21\ \mathrm{kg\ m^{-2}}$$

The energy absorbed per unit area and per unit time equals the specific heat times the mass per unit area times the rate of temperature increase. Therefore, if 7 W m^{-2} were stored by temperature increases in such a leaf, its temperature would rise at the rate of

$$\frac{(7\ \mathrm{J\ m^{-2}\ s^{-1}})}{(4180\ \mathrm{J\ kg^{-1}\ °C^{-1}})(0.21\ \mathrm{kg\ m^{-2}})} = 0.008\mathrm{°C\ s^{-1}} \qquad (0.5\mathrm{°C\ min^{-1}})$$

Because this is a faster temperature change than is sustained for long periods by leaves, we can assume that very little energy is stored (or released) in the

form of leaf temperature changes. Hence, all three energy storage terms in Equation 7.1 usually are relatively small for a leaf.

When the energy storage terms in Equation 7.1 are ignored, the remaining contributors to the energy balance of a leaf are either radiation or heat terms. We can then simplify our energy balance relation as follows:

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{l}\text{Absorbed solar}\\ \quad\text{irradiation,}\\ \text{Absorbed infrared}\\ \quad\text{irradiation from}\\ \quad\text{surroundings}\end{array}}_{\text{Energy into leaf}} \cong \underbrace{\begin{array}{l}\text{Emitted infrared}\\ \quad\text{radiation,}\\ \text{Heat convection,}\\ \text{Heat conduction,}\\ \text{Heat loss accompanying}\\ \quad\text{water evaporation}\end{array}}_{\text{Energy out of leaf}} \qquad (7.2)$$

The heat conducted and then convected from leaves is sometimes referred to as *sensible* heat, and that associated with the evaporation or the condensation of water is known as *latent* heat. In this chapter, we consider each of the terms in Equation 7.2, which have units of energy per unit area and per unit time; for example, J m^{-2} s^{-1}, which is W m^{-2}.

7.1A. Solar Irradiation

Solar irradiation, meaning all of the incoming wavelengths from the sun (Fig. 4-5), can reach a leaf in many different ways, the most obvious being direct sunlight (Fig. 7-1). Alternatively, sunlight can be scattered by molecules and particles in the atmosphere before striking a leaf. Also, both the direct and the scattered solar irradiation can be reflected by the surroundings toward a leaf (the term “scattering” usually denotes the irregular changes in the direction of light caused by small particles or molecules; “reflection” refers to the change in direction of irradiation at a surface). In Figure 7-1 we summarize these various possibilities that lead to six different ways by which solar irradiation can impinge on a leaf. The individual energy fluxes can involve the upper surface of a leaf, its lower surface, or perhaps both surfaces—in Figure 7-1 the direct solar irradiation (S^{direct}) is incident only on the upper surface of the leaf. To proceed with the analysis in a reasonable fashion, we need to make many simplifying assumptions and approximations.

Some of the solar irradiation can be scattered or reflected from clouds before being incident on a leaf. On a cloudy day, the diffuse sunlight emanating from the clouds—S^{cloud}, or *cloudlight*—is substantial, whereas S^{direct} may be greatly reduced. For instance, a sky overcast by a fairly thin cloud layer that is 100 m thick might absorb or reflect away from the earth about 50% of the incident solar irradiation and diffusely scatter most of the rest toward the earth. A cloud layer that is 1 km thick will usually scatter somewhat less than 10% of the S^{direct} incident on it toward the earth (the actual percentages depend on the type and the

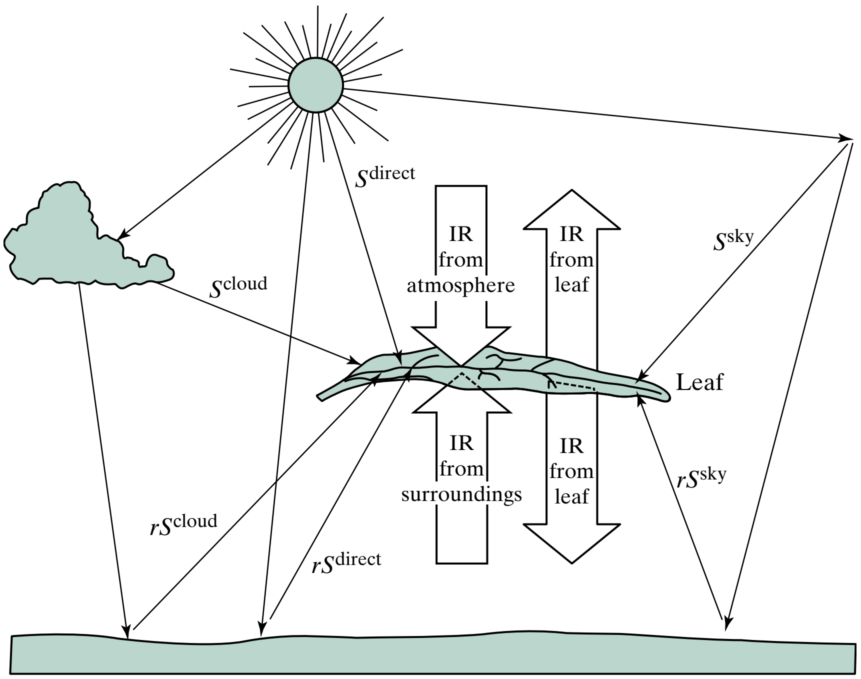


Figure 7-1. Schematic illustration of eight forms of radiant energy incident on an exposed leaf, including six that involve shortwave irradiation from the sun and contain the letter *S* and two that involve infrared (IR) radiation incident on the upper and the lower leaf surfaces. Also illustrated is the IR emitted by a leaf.

density of the clouds). Because the relative amounts of absorption, scattering, reflection, and transmission by clouds all depend on wavelength, cloudlight has a somewhat different wavelength distribution than does direct solar irradiation. Specifically, cloudlight is usually white or gray, whereas direct sunlight tends to be yellowish.

Solar irradiation scattered by air molecules and airborne particles leads to S^{sky}, or *skylight.* Such scattering is generally divided into two categories: (1) Rayleigh scattering due to molecules, whose magnitude is approximately proportional to $1/\lambda^4$ (λ is the wavelength); and (2) Mie scattering due to particles such as dust, which is approximately proportional to $1/\lambda$. Because of the greater scattering of the shorter wavelengths, skylight differs considerably from the wavelength distribution for S^{direct}. In particular, S^{sky} is enriched in the shorter wavelengths, because Rayleigh scattering causes most of the wavelengths below 500 nm to be scattered out of the direct solar beam and to become skylight (Fig. 7-2). This explains the blue color of the sky (and its skylight) during the daytime, especially when the sun is nearly overhead, and the reddish color of the sun at sunrise and sunset, when S^{direct} must travel a much greater distance through the earth's atmosphere, leading to more scattering of the shorter (bluish) wavelengths out of the direct solar beam. In terms of energy, S^{sky} can be up to 10% of S^{direct} for a horizontal leaf (Fig. 7-1) on a cloudless day when the sun is overhead (Fig. 7-2) and can exceed S^{direct} when the sun is near the horizon.

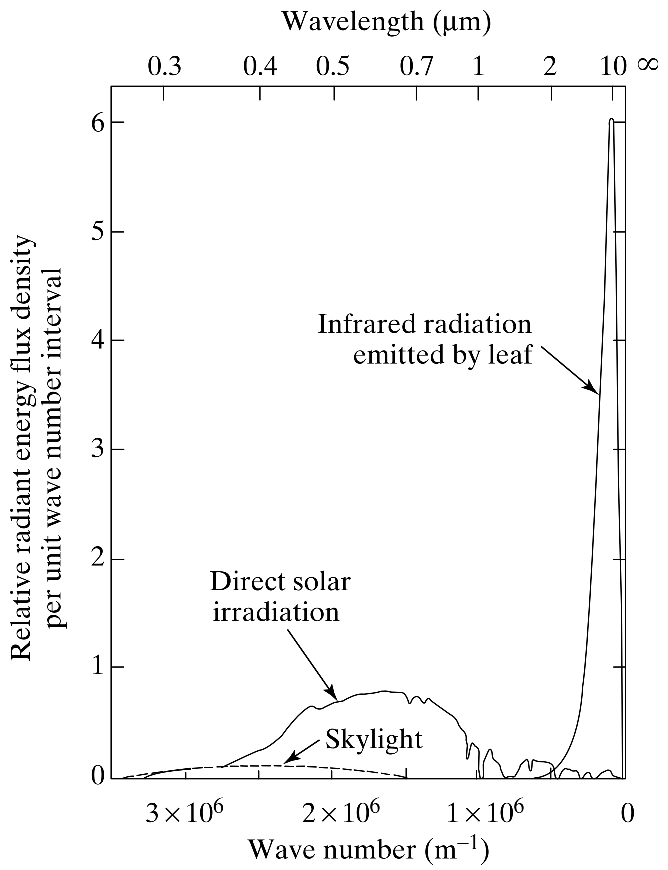


Figure 7-2. Wave number and wavelength distributions for direct solar irradiation, skylight, and radiation emitted by a leaf at 25°C. Wave number (introduced in Problem 4.2) equals the reciprocal of wavelength and thus is proportional to energy (see Eq. 4.2a; $E_\lambda = h\nu = hc/\lambda_{vac}$). The areas under the curves indicate the total energy radiated: S^{direct} is 840 W m^{-2}, S^{sky} is 80 W m^{-2}, and the IR emitted is 860 W m^{-2}.

We refer to the direct sunlight plus the cloudlight and the skylight as the *global irradiation*, *S*. Generally, $S^{cloud} + S^{sky}$ is referred to as diffuse shortwave irradiation, a readily measured quantity, whereas S^{cloud} and S^{sky} are difficult to measure separately. $S^{diffuse}$ can be comparable in magnitude to S^{direct}, even on cloudless days, especially at high latitudes. In any case, the global irradiation equals the direct plus the diffuse solar irradiation:

$$\begin{aligned} S &= S^{direct} + S^{diffuse} \\ &= S^{direct} + S^{cloud} + S^{sky} \end{aligned} \tag{7.3}$$

The value of the global irradiation (Eq. 7.3) varies widely with the time of day, the time of year, the latitude, the altitude, and atmospheric conditions. As indicated previously, the maximum solar irradiation incident on the earth's atmosphere averages 1366 W m^{-2}. Because of scattering and absorption of solar irradiation by atmospheric gases (see Fig. 4-5), *S* on a cloudless day with the sun directly overhead in a dust-free sky is about 1000 W m^{-2} at sea level.

In the absence of clouds, S can be related to the solar constant (1366 W m^{-2}; S_c) and the atmospheric transmittance τ (the fraction of sunlight transmitted when the sun is directly overhead), which ranges from 0.5 under hazy conditions at sea level to 0.8 for clear skies at higher elevations:

$$S = S_c \tau^{1/\sin\gamma} \sin\gamma \tag{7.4}$$

where γ is the sun's altitude, or angle above the horizon; γ depends on the time of day, the time of year, and the latitude. The dependence of γ on the time of day is handled by the hour angle, h, which equals $15°(t - 12)$, where t is the solar time in hours and equals 12 at solar noon when the sun reaches its highest daily point in the sky. The time of year is handled by the solar declination, δ, which equals $-23.5°\cos[(D + 10)360°/365.25]$, where D is the day of the year (January 1 = 1) and $-23.5°$ incorporates the tilt of the earth's axis relative to the plane of the earth's orbit. Using these parameters, $\sin\gamma$ equals $\sin\delta \sin\lambda + \cos h \cos\delta \cos\lambda$, where λ is the latitude in degrees. When the sun is directly overhead, γ is 90° and $\sin\gamma$ equals 1.00; S then equals $S_c\tau$ by Equation 7.4, where τ averages about 0.75 on clear days at sea level.

Sunlight may impinge on a leaf as direct solar irradiation, cloudlight, or skylight. These three components of global irradiation may first be reflected from the surroundings before striking a leaf (see Fig. 7-1). Although the reflected global irradiation can be incident on a leaf from all angles, for a horizontal exposed leaf it occurs primarily on the lower surface (Fig. 7-1). The reflected sunlight, cloudlight, and skylight usually are 10 to 30% of the global irradiation. A related quantity is the fraction of the incident shortwave irradiation reflected from the earth's surface, termed the *albedo*, which averages about 0.60 for snow, 0.35 for dry sandy soil, 0.25 for dry clay, but only 0.10 for peat soil; the albedo is about 0.25 for most crops and 0.15 for forests. The albedo generally varies with the angle of incidence of the direct solar beam, being greater at smaller angles of incidence.

Each of these six forms of solar irradiation (direct as well as reflected forms of sunlight, cloudlight, and skylight) can have a different variation with wavelength. Because absorption depends on wavelength, the fraction of each one absorbed (the absorptance) can also be different. Moreover, the fraction reflected depends on wavelength. For simplicity, we will assume that the same absorptance applies to S^{direct}, S^{cloud}, and S^{sky}, as well as to the reflected forms of these irradiations. We will also assume that the same reflectance applies to each component of the global irradiation. We can then represent the absorption of direct, scattered, and reflected forms of solar irradiation by a leaf as follows:

Absorbed solar irradiation

$$\begin{aligned} &\cong a(S^{\text{direct}} + S^{\text{cloud}} + S^{\text{sky}}) + ar(S^{\text{direct}} + S^{\text{cloud}} + S^{\text{sky}}) \\ &= a(1 + r)S \end{aligned} \tag{7.5}$$

where the *absorptance a* is the fraction of the global radiant energy flux density S absorbed by the leaf, and the *reflectance r* is the fraction of S reflected from the surroundings onto the leaf. Absorptance is often called *absorptivity*, and reflectance is called *reflectivity*, especially when dealing with smooth surfaces of uniform composition.

7.1B. Absorbed Infrared Irradiation

Besides the absorption of the various components of solar irradiation, additional infrared (IR), or thermal, radiation is also absorbed by a leaf (see Eq. 7.2 and Fig. 7-1). Any object with a temperature above 0 K ("absolute zero") emits such thermal radiation, including a leaf's surroundings as well as the sky (see Fig. 6-11). The peak in the spectral distribution of thermal radiation can be described by Wien's displacement law, which states that the wavelength for maximum emission of energy, λ_{max}, times the surface temperature of the emitting body, T, equals 2.90×10^6 nm K (Eq. 4.4b). Because the temperature of the surroundings is generally near 290 K, λ_{max} for radiation from them is close to

$$\frac{(2.90 \times 10^6\ \mathrm{nm\ K})}{(290\ \mathrm{K})} = 10,000\ \mathrm{nm} = 10\ \mu\mathrm{m}$$

Therefore, the emission of thermal radiation from the surroundings occurs predominantly at wavelengths far into the infrared. Because of its wavelength distribution, we will also refer to thermal radiation as infrared radiation and as *longwave* radiation (over 99% of the radiant energy from the surroundings occurs at wavelengths longer than 4 μm, and over 98% of the solar or *shortwave* irradiation occurs at wavelengths shorter than this).

Most of the thermal radiation from the sky comes from H_2O, CO_2, and other molecules in the atmosphere that emit considerable radiation from 5 to 8 μm and above 13 μm. Moreover, the concentration of these gases varies, so the effective temperature of the sky, T^{sky} (as judged from its radiation), also varies. For instance, clouds contain much water in the form of vapor, droplets, or crystals, which leads to a substantial emission of infrared radiation, so T^{sky} can be as high as 280 K on a cloudy day or night. On the other hand, a dry, cloudless, dust-free atmosphere might have a T^{sky} as low as 220 K.

We will now consider the thermal (IR) irradiation absorbed by an unshaded leaf. We will suppose that the infrared irradiation from the surroundings, acting as a planar source at an effective temperature of T^{surr}, is incident on the lower surface of the leaf, and that the upper surface of the leaf is exposed to the sky, which acts as a planar source with an effective temperature of T^{sky} (Fig. 7-1). In Chapter 6 (Section 6.5A) we introduced the Stefan–Boltzmann law, which indicates that the amount of radiation emitted by a body depends markedly on its surface temperature (Eq. 6.18a; Maximum radiant energy flux density = σT^4). The Stefan–Boltzmann law predicts the maximum rate of energy radiation by a perfect radiator, a so-called "blackbody" (Figs. 6-11 and 7-3). Here we will use *effective temperature* in the sense that the actual radiant energy flux density equals $\sigma(T_{effective})^4$. For instance, T^{sky} is not the temperature we would measure at some particular location in the sky, although $\sigma(T^{sky})^4$ does equal the actual amount of radiant energy from the sky, which we can readily measure. By the Stefan–Boltzmann law, with effective temperatures to give the radiation emitted by the surroundings and the sky, the IR absorbed by a leaf is

$$\text{IR irradiation absorbed} = a_{IR}\sigma[(T^{surr})^4 + (T^{sky})^4] \tag{7.6}$$

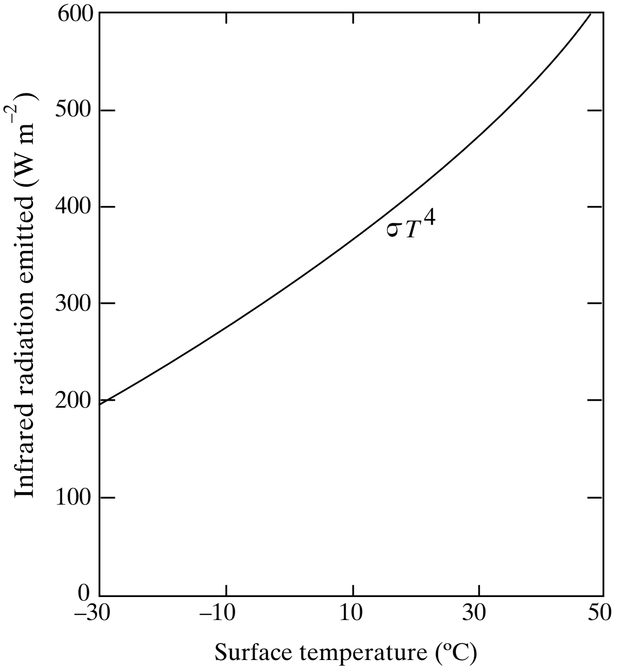


Figure 7-3. Rate of emission of infrared (longwave) radiation per unit area by a blackbody (e_{IR} = 1.00) versus its surface temperature, as predicted by the Stefan–Boltzmann law (Eq. 6.18).

where the absorptance a_{IR} is the fraction of the energy of the incident IR irradiation absorbed by the leaf.

7.1C. Emitted Infrared Radiation

Infrared or thermal radiation is also emitted by a leaf. Such radiation occurs at wavelengths far into the IR because leaf temperatures, like those of its surroundings, are near 300 K. This is illustrated in Figure 7-2, in which the emission of radiant energy from a leaf at 25°C is plotted in terms of both wavelength and wave number. Using the wave number scale makes it easier to illustrate the spectral distribution of radiation from the sun and a leaf in the same figure; moreover, the area under a curve is then proportional to the total radiant energy flux density. The λ_{max} for sunlight is in the visible region near 600 nm; for a leaf λ_{max} for thermal radiation is in the IR near 10 μm. Figure 7-2 also indicates that essentially all of the thermal radiation emitted by a leaf has wave numbers less than 0.5×10^6 m^{-1}, corresponding to IR wavelengths greater than 2 μm.

We will express the IR emitted by a leaf at a temperature T^{leaf} using the Stefan–Boltzmann law (Eq. 6.18a), which describes the maximum rate of radiation emitted per unit area. For the general emission case we incorporate a coefficient known as the *emissivity,* or *emittance* (e), which takes on its maximum value of 1 for a perfect, or blackbody, radiator. The actual radiant energy flux density equals $e\sigma(T_{actual})^4$ (Eq. 6-18b), which is the same as $\sigma(T_{effective})^4$. We will use emissivities and actual temperatures to describe

the energy radiated by leaves; effective temperatures are usually employed for thermal radiation from the surroundings and the sky because their temperatures are difficult to measure or, indeed, hypothetical (empirical equations incorporating the influence of air temperature, water vapor content, and clouds can be used to predict the IR radiation from the sky). Because IR radiation is emitted by both sides of a leaf (see Fig. 7-1), the factor 2 is necessary in Equation 7.7 to describe its energy loss by thermal radiation:

$$\text{IR radiation emitted} = J_{\text{IR}} = 2e_{\text{IR}}\sigma(T^{\text{leaf}})^4 \qquad (7.7)$$

As for our other flux density relations, Equation 7.7 is expressed on the basis of unit area for one side of a leaf. The substantial temperature dependency of emitted IR is depicted in Figure 7-3.

7.1D. Values for a, a_{IR}, and e_{IR}

The parameters a, a_{IR}, and e_{IR} help determine the energy balance of a leaf. We will first consider how the absorptance of a leaf depends on wavelength and then indicate the magnitude of the leaf emittance for infrared radiation.

Figure 7-4 shows that the leaf absorptance at a particular wavelength, a_λ, varies considerably with the spectral region. For example, a_λ averages about 0.8 in the visible region (0.40–0.74 μm; Table 4-1). Such relatively high fractional absorption by a leaf is mainly due to the photosynthetic pigments. The local minimum in a_λ near 0.55 μm (550 nm, in the green region) is where chlorophyll absorption is relatively low (Fig. 5-3) and thus a larger fraction of

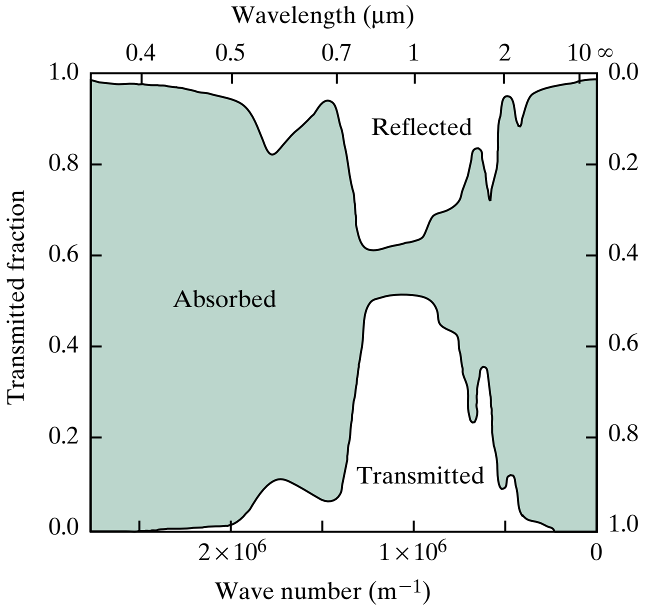


Figure 7-4. Representative fractions of irradiation absorbed (shaded region), reflected, and transmitted by a leaf as a function of wave number and wavelength. The sum $a_\lambda + r_\lambda + t_\lambda$ equals 1.

the incident light is reflected or transmitted; this leads to the green color (see Table 4-1) of leaves, as seen both from above (reflected light) and from below (transmitted light). Figure 7-4 indicates that a_λ is small from about 0.74 μm up to nearly 1.2 μm. This is quite important for minimizing the energy input into a leaf, because much global irradiation occurs in this interval of the IR. The fraction of irradiation absorbed becomes essentially 1 for IR irradiation beyond 2 μm. This does not lead to excessive heating of leaves from absorption of global irradiation, because very little radiant emission from the sun occurs beyond 2 μm (see Fig. 7-2).

We have used two absorptances in our equations: a (in Eq. 7.5) and a_{IR} (in Eq. 7.6). In contrast to a_λ, these coefficients represent absorptances for a particular wavelength region. For example, a refers to the fraction of the incident solar energy absorbed (the wavelength distributions for direct sunlight and skylight are presented in Fig. 7-2). For most leaves, a is between 0.4 and 0.6. The shortwave absorptance can differ between the upper and the lower surfaces of a leaf, and a also tends to be lower for lower sun angles in the sky (such as at sunset), because the shorter wavelengths are then scattered more (Fig. 7-2) and the a_λ's for the relatively enriched longer wavelengths are lower (Fig. 7-4). For wavelengths in the region 0.40 to 0.70 μm (designated the "photosynthetic photon flux," or PPF, in Chapter 4, Section 4.1C), the overall leaf absorptance is usually 0.75 to 0.90. Figure 7-4 shows that nearly all of the IR irradiation beyond 2 μm is absorbed by a leaf. In fact, a_{IR} for leaves is usually 0.94 to 0.98, and we will use a value of 0.96 for purposes of calculation.

Because the emission of radiation is the reverse of its absorption, the same sort of electronic considerations that apply to the absorption of electromagnetic radiation (see Chapter 4, Section 4.2) also apply to its emission. A good absorber of radiation is thus a good emitter. In more precise language, the absorptance a_λ equals the emittance e_λ when they refer to the same wavelength (referred to as Kirchhoff's radiation law)—for a blackbody, a_λ and e_λ are both equal to 1.00 at all wavelengths. Because the IR irradiation from the surroundings and the sky occurs in essentially the same IR region as that emitted by a leaf, e_{IR} is about the same as a_{IR} (e.g., 0.96).[1]

1. We can relate e_λ and a_λ to radiation quantities introduced in Chapter 4. The amount of radiant energy emitted by a blackbody per unit wavelength interval is proportional to $\lambda^{-5}/(e^{hc/\lambda kT} - 1)$, as predicted by Planck's radiation distribution formula (Eq. 4.3b). When we multiply this maximum radiation by e_λ at each wavelength, we obtain the actual spectral distribution of the emitted thermal radiation. The absorptance a_λ is related to the absorption coefficient ε_λ. Equation 4.19a indicates that log J_0/J_b equals $\varepsilon_\lambda cb$, where c is the concentration of the absorbing species, b is the optical path length, J_0 is the incident flux density, and J_b is the flux density of the emergent beam when only absorption takes place (i.e., in the absence of reflection and scattering). The fraction of irradiation absorbed at a particular wavelength, $(J_0 - J_b)/J_0$, is the absorptance, a_λ. Thus a_λ equals $1 - J_b/J_0$, which is $1 - 10^{-\varepsilon_\lambda cb}$, so the absorptance tends to be higher for wavelengths where the pigments absorb more (higher ε_λ), for leaves with higher pigment concentrations (higher c), and for thicker leaves (higher b).

7.1E. Net Radiation

We have now considered each of the terms that involve radiation in the energy balance of a leaf (Eqs. 7.1 and 7.2). These quantities comprise the *net radiation balance* for the leaf:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Net radiation} = {} & \text{Absorbed solar irradiation} + \text{Absorbed IR from} \\ & \text{surroundings} - \text{Emitted IR radiation}\end{aligned} \quad (7.8a)$$

Using Equations 7.5 through 7.7, we can express the net radiation balance as

$$\text{Net radiation} = a(1 + r)S + a_{\text{IR}}\sigma[(T^{\text{surr}})^4 + (T^{\text{sky}})^4] - 2e_{\text{IR}}\sigma(T^{\text{leaf}})^4 \quad (7.8b)$$

Before continuing with our analysis of the energy balance of a leaf, we will examine representative values for each of the terms in the net radiation.

7.1F. Examples for Radiation Terms

We will consider a horizontal leaf exposed to full sunlight (Fig. 7-1) at sea level where the global irradiation S is 840 W m^{-2}. We will assume that the absorptance of the leaf for global irradiation a is 0.60 and that the reflectance of the surroundings r is 0.20. By Equation 7.5, the direct plus the reflected sunlight, cloudlight, and skylight absorbed by the leaf then is

$$\begin{aligned}a(1 + r)S &= (0.60)(1.00 + 0.20)(840\ \text{W m}^{-2}) \\ &= 605\ \text{W m}^{-2}\end{aligned}$$

To calculate the IR irradiation absorbed by the leaf, we will let a_{IR} be 0.96, the temperature of the surroundings be 20°C, and the sky temperature be −20°C. Using Equation 7.6 with a Stefan–Boltzmann constant (σ) of 5.67×10^{-8} W m^{-2} K^{-4} (see Appendix I), the absorbed IR is

$$\begin{aligned}a_{\text{IR}}\sigma[(T^{\text{surr}})^4 + (T^{\text{sky}})^4] &= (0.96)(5.67 \times 10^{-8}\ \text{W m}^{-2}\ \text{K}^{-4})[(293\ \text{K})^4 + (253\ \text{K})^4] \\ &= 624\ \text{W m}^{-2}\end{aligned}$$

Hence, the total irradiation load on the leaf is 605 W m^{-2} plus 624 W m^{-2}, or 1229 W m^{-2}.

The rate of energy input per unit leaf area (1229 W m^{-2}) here is nearly the size of the solar constant (1366 W m^{-2}). About half is contributed by the various forms of irradiation from the sun (605 W m $^{-2}$) and half by IR irradiation from the surroundings plus the sky (624 W m^{-2}). Because the sky generally has a much lower effective temperature for radiation than does the surroundings, the upper surface of an exposed horizontal leaf usually receives less IR than does the lower one: $a_{\text{IR}}\sigma(T^{\text{sky}})^4$ here is 223 W m^{-2}, and the IR absorbed by the lower surface of the leaf, $a_{\text{IR}}\sigma(T^{\text{surr}})^4$, is 401 W m^{-2}, which is nearly twice as much (see Fig. 7-3). Changes in the angle of an exposed leaf generally have a major influence on the absorption of direct solar irradiation but less influence on the total irradiation load, because the scattered, the reflected, and the IR irradiation received by a leaf come from

all angles. Nevertheless, leaf angle can have important implications for the interaction of certain plants with their environment.

To estimate the IR radiation emitted by a leaf, we will let e_{IR} be 0.96 and the leaf temperature be 25°C. By Equation 7.7, the energy loss by thermal radiation then is

$$\begin{aligned} 2e_{\mathrm{IR}}\sigma(T^{\mathrm{leaf}})^4 &= (2)(0.96)(5.67 \times 10^{-8}\ \mathrm{W\ m^{-2}\ K^{-4}})(298\ \mathrm{K})^4 \\ &= 859\ \mathrm{W\ m^{-2}} \end{aligned}$$

In this case, the IR emitted by both sides of the exposed leaf is about 40% greater than is the leaf's absorption of either solar or IR irradiation. Leaves shaded by other leaves are not fully exposed to T^{sky}, and for them the IR emitted can be approximately equal to the IR absorbed, a matter to which we will return later.

The net radiation balance (see Eq. 7.8) for our exposed leaf is

$$\text{Net radiation} = 1229\ \mathrm{W\ m^{-2}} - 859\ \mathrm{W\ m^{-2}} = 370\ \mathrm{W\ m^{-2}}$$

As is discussed later, such excess energy is dissipated by heat conduction, heat convection, and the evaporation of water accompanying transpiration. However, most of the energy input into a leaf is balanced by the emission of IR radiation. The IR emitted in the current case, for example, amounts to $[(859\ \mathrm{W\ m^{-2}})/(1229\ \mathrm{W\ m^{-2}})](100\%)$, or 70% of the energy input from all sources of incident irradiation. The radiation terms for this exposed leaf are summarized in the top line of Table 7-1.

Because many conditions affect the net radiation balance for leaves, we next consider some other examples. At an elevation of 2000 m, S near noon on a cloudless day might be 80 W m^{-2} higher than at sea level, or 920 W m^{-2}. Because of the higher incident global irradiation at 2000 m, the leaf there will absorb 57 W m^{-2} more direct, scattered, and reflected solar irradiation than the leaf at sea level. The effective temperature of the sky is generally slightly lower at the higher elevation (−25°C versus −20°C in Table 7-1), and we will assume that the surroundings are 10°C lower in temperature than they are for our example at sea level, leading to 69 W m^{-2} less energy input from IR than at sea level. The total irradiation input is then 1217 W m^{-2}, which is 12 W m^{-2} less than that at sea level (see Table 7-1). If the net radiation were the same in the two cases (370 W m^{-2}), the leaf at the higher altitude must emit 12 W m^{-2} less thermal radiation than the leaf at sea level. As Table 7-1 indicates, this can occur if T^{leaf} for the leaf at 2000 m were 1°C lower than for the one at sea level.

Certain plants have silvery or shiny leaves, which increases the amount of solar irradiation reflected. For instance, the fraction of S reflected by the leaf may increase from typical values of 0.1 or 0.2 (see Fig. 7-4) to 0.3 for silvery leaves, with an accompanying reduction in the absorptance from 0.6 to 0.5 or lower. This reduction in absorptance can have a major influence on T^{leaf}. Other conditions remaining the same, a reduction of the absorptance a by only 0.1 can cause the leaf temperature to decrease from 24°C to 13°C (Table 7-1). Such a reduction in leaf temperature can have substantial effects on transpiration and photosynthesis, which can be particularly important for desert plants in hot environments. For instance, seasonal variations in

Table 7-1. Representative Values for the Various Terms in the Net Radiation Balance of an Exposed Leaf[a]

Condition	Global irradiation, S (W m^{-2})	Absorbed solar irradiation, $a(1 + r)S$ (W m^{-2})	Temperature of surroundings (°C)	Sky temperature (°C)	Absorbed infrared, $a_{IR}\sigma[(T^{surr})^4 + (T^{sky})^4]$ (W m^{-2})	Leaf temperature (°C)	Emitted infrared, $2e_{IR}\sigma\ (T^{leaf})^4$ (W m^{-2})	Net radiation (W m^{-2})
Sea level on cloudless day	840	605	20	−20	624	25	859	370
2000 m on cloudless day	920	662	10	−25	555	24	847	370
Silvery leaf (a = 0.50) at 2000 m on cloudless day	920	552	10	−25	555	13	737	370
Sea level on cloudy night	0	0	1	1	614	1	614	0
Sea level on cloudless night	0	0	1	−20	530	−9	530	0
	0	0	1	−20	530	−1	596	−66

[a]Equation 7.8 is used, taking a as 0.60 (except where indicated), r as 0.20, and both a_{IR} and e_{IR} as 0.96 (see text for interpretations).

pubescense (epidermal hairs) can increase the shortwave reflectance of leaves of the desert shrub *Encelia farinosa* produced in dry, hot periods by about 0.2 over the reflectance for leaves from cool, wet periods. The higher reflectance decreases T^{leaf} by about 5°C for this species. The result is photosynthetic rates that are 10 to 60% higher during the dry, hot periods than they would otherwise be and at the same time water is conserved as transpiration rates average 23% less (Ehleringer and Mooney, 1978).

We next consider the effect of clouds on leaf temperature at night. On a clear night at sea level, the effective sky temperature might be −20°C (253 K), whereas for a heavy cloud cover it could be 1°C because of the IR emitted by the clouds (Table 7-1). If the temperature of the surroundings were 1°C in both cases, the IR absorbed by the leaf, $a_{IR}\sigma[(T^{surr})^4 + (T^{sky})^4]$, would be 84 W m^{-2} lower on the clear night because of less IR from the cloudless sky (Table 7-1). For no net gain or loss of energy by a leaf from all forms of radiation—i.e., $a_{IR}\sigma[(T^{surr})^4 + (T^{sky})^4]$ being the same as $2e_{IR}\sigma(T^{leaf})^4$—the leaf temperature would be 1°C for the cloudy night but −9°C for the clear one (Table 7-1). Thus, on the clear night with the surroundings at 1°C, T^{leaf} could be considerably below freezing, so heat would be conducted from the surroundings to the leaf, raising its temperature to perhaps −1°C. Using this leaf temperature, we can calculate that there would be a net energy loss by radiation of 66 W m^{-2} on the clear night (see Table 7-1). A plant on a cloudless night may therefore freeze even though the temperatures of both the air and the surroundings are above 0°C, because the excess of IR emitted over that absorbed can lower the leaf temperature below the freezing point. Such freezing of leaves on clear nights is a severe problem for various crops. A method used to avoid freezing damage for certain citrus and other orchards is to spray water on the trees. The release of the heat of fusion to the plant tissues as this water freezes maintains them at 0°C, which is above the freezing point of their cell sap. Such freezing of water in or on leaves when the ambient air temperature is above freezing (usually, at 1–5°C) is often termed a "radiation frost," which causes extensive agricultural losses worldwide and also damages many rooftop solar systems in the winter.

7.2. Heat Conduction and Convection

Now that we have considered the net radiation balance of a leaf, we will examine other ways that energy may be exchanged with the environment. For instance, heat can be conducted from one body to an adjacent cooler one by molecular collisions. Of particular importance in this regard is heat conduction across layers of air surrounding plant parts. In particular, frictional interactions between a fluid (e.g., air or water) and a solid phase moving with respect to each other lead to boundary layers of the fluid adhering to the solid phase; heat (and mass) are exchanged across such boundary layers. In Chapter 1 (Section 1.4A) we considered unstirred layers of water adjacent to membranes (see Fig. 1-11), and in this section we will consider boundary layers of air adjacent to leaves. We will assume that a temperature difference generally exists across such an air boundary layer that is adjacent to a leaf surface. Heat can be conducted across this air layer

by the random thermal collisions of the gas molecules. Heat convection, on the other hand, involves turbulent movement of a fluid, brought about, for example, by differences in pressure, which mechanically remove heated air from outside the boundary layer.

There are two types of convection, *free* and *forced* (Holman, 2009; Incropera et al., 2007; Kreith and Bohn, 2007). Free (natural) convection occurs when the heat transferred from a leaf causes the air outside the unstirred layer to warm, expand, and thus to decrease in density; this more buoyant warmer air then moves upward and thereby moves heat away from the leaf. Forced convection, caused by wind, can also remove the heated air outside the boundary layer. As the wind speed increases, more and more heat is dissipated by forced convection relative to free convection. However, even at a very low wind speed of 0.10 m s^{-1}, forced convection dominates free convection as a means of heat loss from most leaves (0.10 m s^{-1} = 0.36 km $hour^{-1}$ = 0.22 mile $hour^{-1}$). We can therefore generally assume that heat is conducted across the boundary layer adjacent to a leaf and then is removed by forced convection in the surrounding turbulent air. In this section, we examine some general characteristics of wind, paying particular attention to the air boundary layers adjacent to plant parts, and introduce certain dimensionless numbers that can help indicate whether forced or free convection should dominate. We conclude with an estimate of the heat conduction/convection for a leaf.

7.2A. Wind

Wind can influence plant growth, reproduction, and distribution and in some cases can be lethal. It can mechanically deform plants and can also disperse pollen, seeds, disease organisms, and gaseous substances such as CO_2 and air pollutants. Many effects of wind relate to the air boundary layers next to the aerial surfaces of a plant across which mass and heat exchanges occur with the environment.

Wind is caused by differences in air pressure that in turn result primarily from differences in air temperature generally caused by differential absorption of shortwave irradiation at the earth's surface and by clouds. On a macro scale, wind speed is affected by land surface features such as mountains and canyons, whereas at about 10 m above a plant canopy, wind can be predominantly influenced by the plants, becoming arrested at their surfaces. In coastal regions, wind speed can average as high as 7 m s^{-1} at 10 m above the canopy, and in topographically flat inland areas 1 m s^{-1} is a typical mean wind speed. Wind speeds are generally lower at night. Turbulent flow, where air movement is not parallel and orderly, characterizes the wind pattern near vegetation. In fact, the standard deviation of wind speed divided by the mean wind speed, which is known as the *turbulence intensity*, is often about 0.4 near vegetation, indicating that wind has considerable temporal variation. In such turbulent regimes air can be described as moving in packets or "eddies" (to be further considered in Chapter 9).

Whenever air is decelerated by an object such as a leaf (Fig. 7-5) or a branch, *form drag* occurs. When the airflow is stopped, the force transmitted

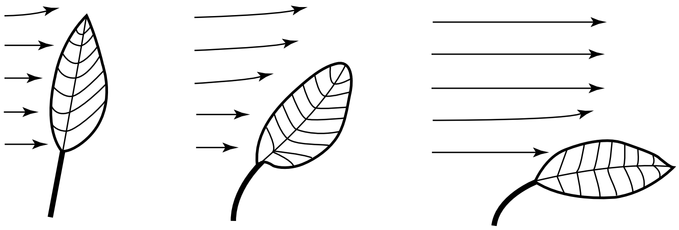


Figure 7-5. Deflection of leaf and its petiole as the wind speed increases from (a) to (c), leading to a more aerodynamically streamlined shape and less form drag. Arrows indicate wind direction and speed relative to the local airstream speed, including the reduction of speed or diversion of air movement by a leaf with a flexible petiole.

per unit area of surface perpendicular to the wind direction is $\frac{1}{2}\rho v^2$, where ρ is the air density (1.20 kg m^{-3} at 20°C, Appendix I) and v is the wind speed (the magnitude of the wind velocity, which is a vector having both a magnitude and a direction). In reality, much of the airflow is decelerated and directed around most objects, so the form drag is reduced from its maximum value, which would occur if the airflow were arrested over the entire surface. For increasing wind speeds, leaves with flexible petioles (leaf stalks) generally are caused to change their aspect such that a smaller leaf area is presented perpendicular to the wind direction, leading to a more aerodynamically streamlined shape (Fig. 7-5). If we designate the original area projected in the wind direction by A_{orig}, we can define a dimensionless drag coefficient, c_d, as follows:

$$c_d = \frac{\text{actual drag force}}{\frac{1}{2}\rho v^2 A_{\mathrm{orig}}} \tag{7.9}$$

where c_d is equal to 1 when all of the air or other fluid directly approaching the object is brought to rest.

For relatively flat leaves that can align with the wind direction, c_d is usually 0.02 to 0.2, but it can be 0.5 to 0.9 for *bluff* bodies such as branches and tree trunks that block and hence substantially change the airflow. For flexible objects the drag coefficient defined by Equation 7.9 can decrease as the wind speed increases. In particular, the areas of leaves and small branches perpendicular to the wind direction can decrease threefold as the wind speed increases (Fig. 7-5), leading to a more streamlined shape, as occurs for many trees. Indeed, changes in shape to minimize drag have evolved many times, as is especially apparent for the fusiform shape of various marine animals.

Sites experiencing higher wind speeds tend to have shorter vegetation, such as cushion plants in alpine tundra or the procumbent forms on coastal dunes. Also, stem elongation can be reduced two- to threefold by high winds. On the other hand, environmental chambers in which plants are grown for research purposes tend to have low wind speeds (usually below 0.4 m s^{-1}) and low light levels, often leading to spindly plants unlike their field-grown counterparts. The retardation of stem elongation and the increase in stem girth caused by wind are mainly due to the development of shorter cells with thicker cell walls. Agronomic implications of wind-induced sway have long been recognized;

for example, increasing the spacing between nursery stock leads to greater wind exposure for each tree and hence to sturdier trees with larger trunk diameters. Interestingly, mechanically shaking closely spaced young trees in a nursery for about 20 seconds per day simulates wind effects and can increase stem diameter, avoiding the spacing requirements between plants necessary for movement to occur naturally by frictional interactions with the wind.

Buttresses at the base of tree trunks and roots are more common on the windward (upwind) side. Such a location more effectively resists upsetting forces caused by wind than if the buttresses or enhanced root growth were on the leeward (downwind) side, because the tensile strength of wood is greater than is its compressional strength. Another consequence of a prevailing wind direction is "flag trees," where branches occur mainly toward the leeward side. Most of these effects of wind on stem morphology are hormonally mediated. At the extreme of sporadic high winds, such as occur in gales (wind speeds of 17–21 m s^{-1}, corresponding to 61–76 km $hour^{-1}$ or 38–47 miles $hour^{-1}$), form drag can cause stems to be permanently displaced from their upright position. This process is termed "lodging" for various cereal crops. To prevent lodging, breeding programs have developed rice, wheat, barley, and oat genotypes with shorter, sturdier stems. Wind is also one of the major factors in the ecology of forests, forming gaps in the canopy by uprooting trees, creating special microhabitats by distributing leaf litter, and influencing reproductive success by dispersing pollen, spores, and certain seeds.

7.2B. Air Boundary Layers

Wind speed affects the thickness of the air boundary layer next to a leaf or other aerial plant part. Because boundary layers influence heat exchange and hence the temperature of the shoot, any process in a shoot depending on temperature can be affected by the wind speed. Also, every molecule entering or leaving a leaf in the gas phase must cross the air boundary layer next to its surface.

A boundary layer is a region of a fluid next to a solid that is dominated by the shearing stresses originating at the surface of the solid; such layers arise for any solid in a fluid, such as a leaf in air. Adjacent to the leaf is a laminar sublayer of air (Fig. 7-6), where air movement is predominantly parallel to the leaf surface. Air movement is arrested at the leaf surface and has increasing speed at increasing distances from the surface. Diffusion

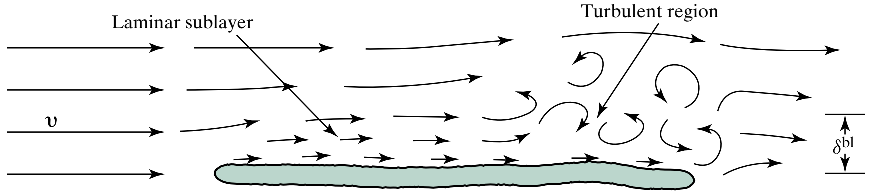


Figure 7-6. Schematic illustration of originally nonturbulent air (straight arrows in upwind side on left) flowing over the top of a flat leaf, indicating the laminar sublayer (shorter straight arrows), the turbulent region (curved arrows), and the effective boundary layer thickness, δ^{bl}. The length of an arrow indicates the relative speed, and the curvature indicates the local direction of air movement. A similar airflow pattern occurs on the lower leaf surface.

of CO_2, O_2, and H_2O perpendicularly toward or away from the leaf surface is by molecular motion in the laminar sublayer. Farther from the surface, especially on the downwind part of a leaf, the boundary layer becomes turbulent (Fig. 7-6). Here, heat and gas movements are *eddy* assisted; that is, the air there swirls around in vortices and behaves as if it were moving in little units or packets.

Instead of describing the local transfer processes in the laminar and the turbulent portions, both of which change in thickness across a leaf's surface, we use an effective or equivalent boundary layer thickness, δ^{bl}, averaged over the whole leaf surface (this is often referred to as the displacement air boundary layer). The boundary layer is actually somewhat thinner at the upwind or leading edge of a leaf than at its center; in particular, frictional interactions with the leaf surface increase as the air moves across a leaf, increasing the local boundary layer thickness (Fig. 7-6). As a consequence, the temperature can differ slightly across a leaf. Because there is no sharp discontinuity of wind speed between the air adjacent to a leaf and the free airstream, the definition of boundary layer thickness is somewhat arbitrary, so it is generally defined operationally, for example, in terms of the flux of heat across it, which we will consider shortly.

As we have indicated, δ^{bl} represents an average thickness of the unstirred air layer adjacent to a leaf (or to leaflets for a compound leaf). The main factors affecting δ^{bl} are the ambient (local) wind speed and the leaf size, with leaf shape exerting a secondary influence. Partly for convenience, but mainly because it has proved experimentally justifiable, we will handle the effect of leaf size and shape on boundary layer thickness by the characteristic dimension l, which is the mean length of a leaf in the direction of the wind. Based on hydrodynamic theory for laminar flow adjacent to a flat surface as modified by actual observations under field conditions, an approximate expression for the average thickness of the boundary layer next to a flat leaf is

$$\delta^{bl}_{(mm)} = 4.0\sqrt{\frac{l_{(m)}}{v_{(m\ s^{-1})}}} \tag{7.10}$$

where $l_{(m)}$ is the mean length of the leaf in the downwind direction in meters, $v_{(m\ s^{-1})}$ is the ambient wind speed in m s^{-1}, and $\delta^{bl}_{(mm)}$ is the average thickness of the boundary layer in millimeters; the factor 4.0, which is appropriate for air temperatures in the boundary layer of 20 to 25°C, has units of mm $s^{-0.5}$, as we can deduce by using the indicated units for the three variables. (The experimental basis of Eq. 7.10 is presented in Section 7.2E after introducing dimensionless numbers.)

Instead of the numerical factor 4.0 in Equation 7.10, hydrodynamic theory predicts a factor near 6.0 for the effective boundary layer thickness adjacent to a flat plate (both numbers increase about 3% per 10°C; Schlichting and Gersten, 2003). However, wind tunnel measurements under an appropriate turbulence intensity, as well as field measurements, indicate that 4.0 is more suitable for leaves. This divergence from theory relates to the relatively small size of leaves, their irregular shape, leaf curl, leaf flutter, and, most important, the high turbulence intensity under field conditions. Moreover, the dependency of δ^{bl} on $l^{0.5}$, which applies to large flat surfaces, does

not always provide the best fit to the data; wind tunnel measurements for various leaf shapes and sizes give values for the exponent from 0.3 to 0.5. In addition, instead of the dependence on $v^{-0.5}$ indicated in Equation 7.10, measurements with leaves are best described by exponents from −0.5 to −0.7 (Gates and Papian, 1971; Schuepp, 1993). Consequently, Equation 7.10 is only a useful approximation for indicating how the average boundary layer thickness varies with leaf size and wind speed.

Average daily wind speeds just above vegetation usually range from 0.1 to 10 m s^{-1}—exposed leaves often experience wind speeds near 1 m s^{-1}. Because the thickness of the air boundary layer enters into many calculations of heat and gas fluxes for leaves, the magnitudes of δ^{bl} are indicated in Figure 7-7a versus leaf size for four widely ranging wind speeds. In general, boundary layer thicknesses are of the order of millimeters.

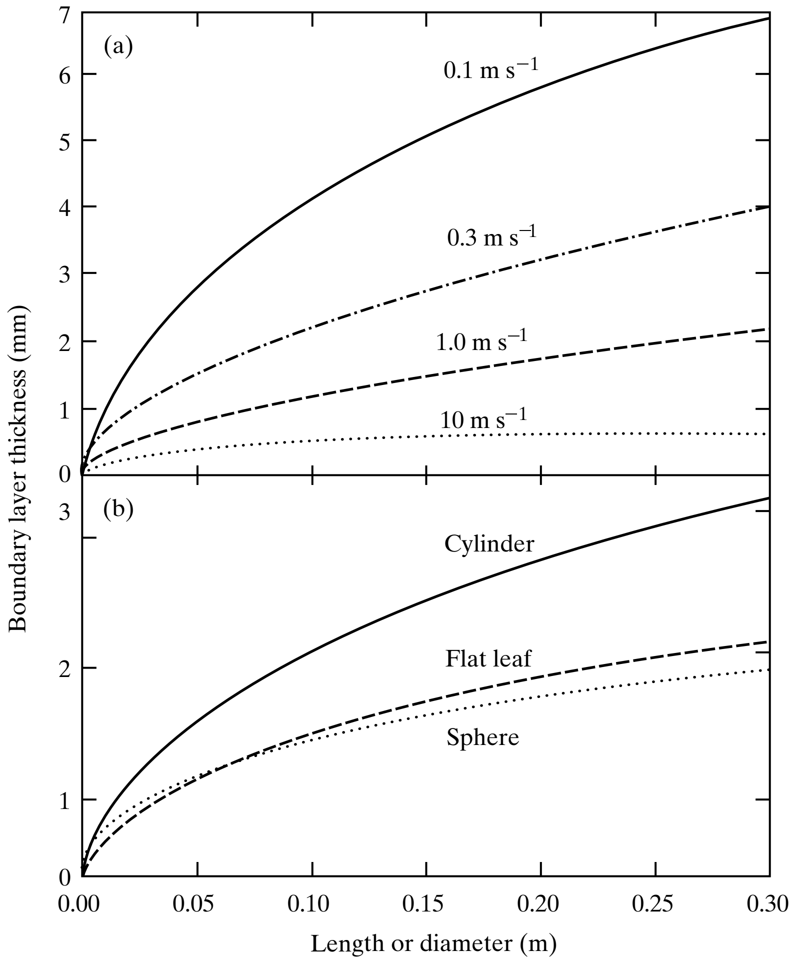


Figure 7-7. Mean thickness of the air boundary layer (a) adjacent to a flat leaf at various wind speeds indicated next to the curves and (b) adjacent to objects of three different shapes at a wind speed of 1 m s^{-1}. The length for a flat leaf represents the mean distance across it in the direction of the wind; the diameter is used for the bluff bodies represented by cylinders and spheres. Values were determined using Equations 7.10 through 7.12. Note that 1.0 m s^{-1} equals 3.6 km $hour^{-1}$ or 2.2 mile $hour^{-1}$.

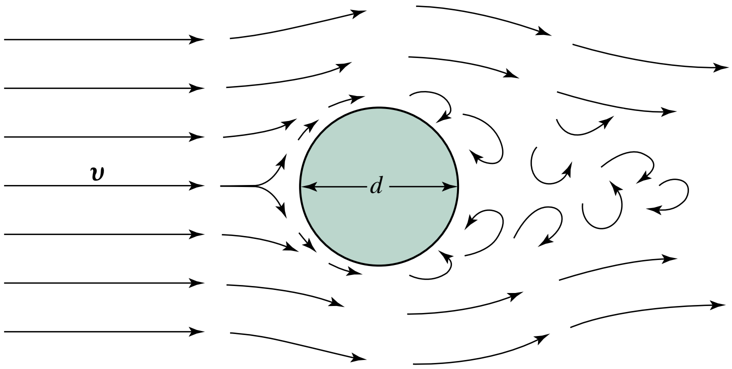


Figure 7-8. Schematic illustration of airflow around a bluff body represented by a cylinder of diameter *d*. Flow in the boundary layer can be laminar on the upwind side, but turbulence develops on the downwind side.

7.2C. Boundary Layers for Bluff Bodies

Although relatively flat leaves can be described by the boundary layer considerations just presented (Fig. 7-6 and Eq. 7.10), many plant parts, such as stems, branches, inflorescences, fruits, and even certain leaves (e.g., the tubular leaves of onion, *Allium cepa*), represent three-dimensional objects. Airflow is intercepted by such bluff bodies and forced to move around them. Here we will consider two shapes, cylinders and spheres. In the next subsection we will present heat flux equations for objects of cylindrical and spherical symmetry as well as for flat leaves.

A laminar boundary layer develops on the upwind side of a cylinder (Fig. 7-8). This layer is analogous to the laminar sublayer for flat plates (Fig. 7-6), and air movements in it can be described analytically. On the downwind side of the cylinder, the airflow becomes turbulent, can be opposite in direction to the wind, and in general is quite difficult to analyze. Nevertheless, an effective boundary layer thickness can be estimated for the whole cylinder (to avoid end effects, the cylinder is assumed to be infinitely long). For turbulence intensities appropriate to field conditions, $\delta^{bl}_{(mm)}$ in mm can be represented as follows for a cylinder:

$$\delta^{bl}_{(mm)} = 5.8\sqrt{\frac{d_{(m)}}{v_{(m\ s^{-1})}}} \qquad \text{cylinder} \tag{7.11}$$

where $d_{(m)}$ is the cylinder diameter in meters. As for flat leaves, the boundary layer is thinner for smaller objects and at higher wind speeds (Fig. 7-7).

A similar analysis for the effective average boundary layer thickness around a sphere under turbulent intensities appropriate to field conditions leads to

$$\delta^{bl}_{(mm)} = 2.8\sqrt{\frac{d_{(m)}}{v_{(m\ s^{-1})}}} + \frac{0.25}{v_{(m\ s^{-1})}} \qquad \text{sphere} \tag{7.12}$$

where $d_{(m)}$ is the diameter of the sphere in m (see Fig. 7-7b; the second term on the right-hand side of the equation comes from the empirical power series

expansion used in the analysis). Equation 7.12 has been successfully utilized to predict boundary layer thicknesses for various approximately spherical fruits.

7.2D. Heat Conduction/Convection Equations

Now that we have considered the average air boundary layer thickness, we return to a consideration of heat exchange by conduction/convection, where heat is first conducted across the air boundary layer and then convected away in the moving airstream. For the one-dimensional case, heat flow by conduction, J_H^C, equals

$$J_H^C = -K^{air}\frac{\partial T}{\partial x} \tag{7.13}$$

where K^{air} is the *thermal conductivity coefficient* of air (e.g., W m^{-1} °C^{-1}), $\partial T/\partial x$ is the temperature gradient, and the negative sign indicates that heat flows from higher to lower temperatures; Equation 7.13 is sometimes referred to as Fourier's heat-transfer law. Because heat can be conducted across the boundary layers on both sides of a leaf, the factor 2 is needed to describe the total rate of heat flux by conduction when expressed per unit area of one side of a leaf. For convenience we will assume that the boundary layers on the two sides of a leaf are of equal thickness, δ^{bl}. The heat conducted across the boundary layers and convected away from a leaf per unit time and area therefore is

$$\begin{aligned} J_H^C &= -2K^{air}\frac{\partial T}{\partial x} \\ &= 2K^{air}\frac{(T^{leaf} - T^{ta})}{\delta^{bl}} \end{aligned} \tag{7.14}$$

where J_H^C is the rate of heat conduction per unit area (e.g., W m^{-2}), K^{air} is the thermal conductivity coefficient of air, T^{leaf} is the leaf temperature, and T^{ta} is the temperature of the turbulent air outside an air boundary layer of thickness δ^{bl}. Because heat is conducted from the surface of the leaf across the adjacent unstirred air, J_H^C does not depend on whether the stomata are open or closed—we have a planar surface as a heat source at a specific temperature, T^{leaf}, from which heat is conducted across an air boundary layer (planar) to the adjacent turbulent air at T^{ta}. By convention, the heat flux density in Equation 7.14 is positive when heat goes from the leaf to the surrounding air. Heat is conducted into the leaf when T^{leaf} is less than T^{ta}, in which case J_H^C is negative.

All of the flux equations used so far in this book have been for one-dimensional cases. Because we have introduced the average thickness of the boundary layer for cylinders (Eq. 7.11) and spheres (Eq. 7.12), let us also consider the appropriate fluxes for such cases, which can have many biological applications. For cylindrical symmetry, J_H^C can change in the radial direction perpendicularly away from the cylinder axis but not change with angle around the cylinder or with position along its axis. The heat flux

density at the cylinder's surface for such cylindrical symmetry is

$$J_H^{\mathrm{C}} = \frac{K^{\mathrm{air}}(T^{\mathrm{surf}} - T^{\mathrm{ta}})}{r \ln\left(\frac{r + \delta^{bl}}{r}\right)} \qquad \text{cylinder} \qquad (7.15)$$

where r is the cylinder radius, T^{surf} is its surface temperature, δ^{bl} is calculated using Equation 7.11, and the other quantities have the same meaning as for the one-dimensional case (Eq. 7.14).

For spherical symmetry, J_H^{C} can vary only in the radial direction and not with any angle. The heat flux density at a sphere's surface for heat conduction across the air boundary layer followed by heat convection in the surrounding turbulent air then is

$$J_H^{\mathrm{C}} = \frac{(r + \delta^{\mathrm{bl}})K^{\mathrm{air}}(T^{\mathrm{surf}} - T^{\mathrm{ta}})}{r\delta^{\mathrm{bl}}} \qquad \text{sphere} \qquad (7.16)$$

where r is the radius of the sphere and δ^{bl} can be calculated using Equation 7.12.

As can be seen, the flux for heat conduction across the air boundary layer is proportional to $K^{\mathrm{air}}(T^{\mathrm{surf}} - T^{\mathrm{ta}})$ for all three shapes considered ($T^{\mathrm{leaf}} = T^{\mathrm{surf}}$ for Eq. 7.14).[2] Because the conduction of heat in a gas phase is based on the random thermal motion of the molecules, the composition of air, such as its content of water vapor, can influence K^{air}. Air can hold more water vapor as the temperature increases; in that regard, K^{air} decreases as the water vapor content increases because H_2O has a lower molecular weight (18) than is the average for air, which is mainly N_2 and O_2 (molecular weights of 28 and 32, respectively). For instance, at 20°C K^{air} at a pressure of 1 atm and 100% relative humidity is 1% less for than it is for dry air, and at 40°C, K^{air} is then 2% lower (Appendix I).

7.2E. Dimensionless Numbers

In many studies on heat and gas fluxes, relationships among parameters are expressed in terms of dimensionless numbers. This facilitates comparisons between objects of the same shape but different sizes and for different wind speeds or different fluids; that is, dimensionless numbers allow application of data to different but geometrically similar situations. For instance, dimensionless numbers were used to determine the effects of wind speed on δ^{bl} for the three shapes presented previously (Eqs. 7.10–7.12). Dimensionless

2. To appreciate further the similarity of the three equations (Eqs. 7.14–7.16), consider the typical case with $\delta^{\mathrm{bl}} << r$. Using a power series expansion of the logarithm (Appendix III.C) and keeping just the first term, $r \ln [(r + \delta^{\mathrm{bl}})/\delta^{\mathrm{bl}}] = r \ln [1 + \delta^{\mathrm{bl}}/r] \approx r [\delta^{\mathrm{bl}}/r] = \delta^{\mathrm{bl}}$, so Equation 7.15 then becomes $J_H^{\mathrm{C}} = K^{\mathrm{air}}(T^{\mathrm{surf}} - T^{\mathrm{ta}})/\delta^{\mathrm{bl}}$. For Equation 7.16, $(r + \delta^{\mathrm{bl}})/(r\delta^{\mathrm{bl}}) \approx r/(r\delta^{\mathrm{bl}}) = 1/\delta^{\mathrm{bl}}$, so it also becomes $J_H^{\mathrm{C}} = K^{\mathrm{air}}(T^{\mathrm{surf}} - T^{\mathrm{ta}})/\delta^{\mathrm{bl}}$. Recognizing that the 2 in Equation 7.14 is somewhat artificial as it is due to the convention of expressing flux densities based on one side of a leaf although heat is conducted across the boundary layer on each side, we see that all three equations reduce to the same form for relatively thin boundary layers.

numbers can also be used to study water boundary layer phenomena and water flow characteristics in rivers, lakes, and oceans—water speeds can exceed 10 m s^{-1} in intertidal regions due to wave action, although they are usually from 0.01 to 0.2 m s^{-1} in coastal regions of lakes and oceans. We will consider three dimensionless numbers that are particularly important for analyzing heat fluxes.

Before presenting these dimensionless numbers, we will indicate a common convention used to describe heat conduction across boundary layers, a convention that is invariably used for objects of irregular shape and even is often used for geometrically regular objects. Instead of expressions for heat fluxes involving δ^{bl} (e.g., Eq. 7.14 for flat plates, Eq. 7.15 for cylinders, and Eq. 7.16 for spheres), the following relation is used to describe the heat flux density across the air boundary layer:

$$J_H^{\text{C}} = h_c(T^{\text{surf}} - T^{\text{ta}}) \tag{7.17}$$

where h_c is called the *heat convection coefficient* (or the convective heat-transfer coefficient); Equation 7.17 is known as Newton's law of cooling. Upon comparing Equation 7.17 with Equation 7.14 and noting that h_c generally refers to a unit surface area of one side of a flat leaf [hence, the total heat flux density is $2h_c(T^{\text{surf}} - T^{\text{ta}})$], we find that h_c is equal to $K^{\text{air}}/\delta^{\text{bl}}$ for flat leaves (slightly more complex relations hold for cylinders and spheres). Even when the boundary layer thickness cannot be determined analytically (e.g., for the irregular shapes of cacti with their surface ribbing and projecting spines), Equation 7.17 can still be used to relate convective heat exchange (J_H^{C}) to the temperature difference between the plant part and the air ($T^{\text{surf}} - T^{\text{ta}}$). Appropriate units of h_c are W m^{-2} °C^{-1}.

Now that we have introduced the heat convection coefficient, we will define our first dimensionless number, the *Nusselt number*, which is used in heat transfer studies. We represent the size of a particular plant part by a characteristic dimension *d*, which for a flat plate is the quantity *l* in Equation 7.10 and for a cylinder or sphere is the diameter. This leads to

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Nusselt number} &= \text{Nu} = \frac{h_c d}{K^{\text{air}}} \\ &= \frac{d}{\delta^{\text{bl}}} = \frac{\text{characteristic dimension}}{\text{boundary layer thickness}}\end{aligned} \tag{7.18}$$

where in the second line we have used our comment on h_c for flat leaves (namely, $h_c = K^{\text{air}}/\delta^{\text{bl}}$). Thus, Nu relates the characteristic dimension to the boundary layer thickness, so Nusselt numbers are useful for describing heat transfer across boundary layers.

Next, we introduce a dimensionless number that describes flow characteristics, such as whether the flow will be laminar or turbulent. This quantity indicates the ratio of inertial forces (due to momentum, which tends to keep things moving) to viscous forces (due to friction, which tends to slow things down) and is known as the *Reynolds number:*

$$\text{Reynolds number} = \text{Re} = \frac{\text{inertial forces}}{\text{viscous forces}} = \frac{vd}{\nu} \tag{7.19}$$

where v is the magnitude of the fluid velocity moving past an object of characteristic dimension d, and ν is the kinematic viscosity (ordinary viscosity divided by density) for the fluid (1.51×10^{-5} m^2 s^{-1} for dry air at 20°C; Appendix I). At low Reynolds numbers viscous forces dominate inertial forces and the flow tends to be laminar, whereas at high Reynolds numbers (above about 10^4 in and around plants) the flow is mainly turbulent owing to the dominance of inertial forces. For a cylindrical branch 0.1 m in diameter, turbulence predominates for wind speeds above about 1.2 m s^{-1}. Although air movement is different at low versus high Reynolds numbers, Equations 7.10 through 7.16 are satisfactory for most applications to plants in either flow regime.

Dimensionless numbers have proved useful for analyzing relationships between heat transfer and boundary layer thickness for leaves. In particular, the Nusselt number increases as the Reynolds number increases; for example, Nu experimentally equals 0.97 $\text{Re}^{0.5}$ for flat leaves (Fig. 7-9). By Equations 7.18 and 7.19, d/δ^{bl} is then equal to $0.97\,(vd/\nu)^{1/2}$, so for air temperatures in the boundary layer of 20 to 25°C, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\delta^{\text{bl}} &= (1/0.97)(\nu/vd)^{1/2}d = (1/0.97)(1.53 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{m}^2\ \text{s}^{-1})^{1/2}(d/v)^{1/2}\\ &= 4.0 \times 10^{-3}\sqrt{d/v}\ \text{m s}^{-1/2}\end{aligned}$$

The bottom line is essentially Equation 7.10, indicating that dimensionless numbers can be used to estimate average boundary layer thicknesses, as indicated above.

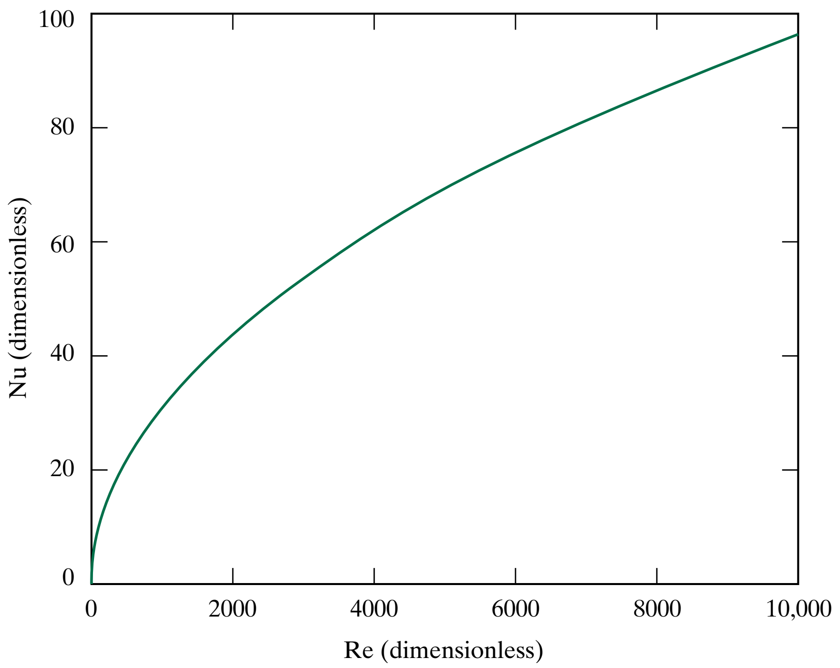


Figure 7-9. Relationship between Reynolds number (Re) and Nusselt number (Nu) for flat leaves under field conditions or for metal plates shaped like leaves and placed in wind tunnels (turbulence intensity of about 0.4 in all cases). Air temperatures in the boundary layer were 20 to 25°C. The curve, which represents the best fit for the data, indicates that Nu = $0.97\text{Re}^{0.5}$ (see text for interpretation in terms of boundary layer thickness).

For low wind speeds and large values of $T^{\text{surf}} - T^{\text{ta}}$, free convection can dominate forced convection for large objects. In such cases, the Reynolds number should be replaced in heat flow studies by the dimensionless *Grashof number*, which takes into account buoyant forces. Specifically, the Grashof number (Gr) indicates the tendency of a parcel of air to rise or fall and thus describes the tendency for free convection. In fact, Gr represents the ratio of buoyant times inertial forces to the square of viscous forces:

$$\text{Grashof number} = \text{Gr} = \frac{\text{buoyant} \times \text{inertial forces}}{(\text{viscous forces})^2} = \frac{g\beta\Delta T d^3}{\nu^2} \tag{7.20}$$

where g is the gravitational acceleration, β is the coefficient of volumetric thermal expansion (i.e., the fractional change in volume with temperature at constant pressure, which equals $1/T$ for an essentially perfect gas such as air; e.g., β equals $3.4 \times 10^{-3}\ {}^\circ\text{C}^{-1}$ at 20°C), and ΔT is the temperature difference between the object's surface and the ambient air ($T^{\text{surf}} - T^{\text{ta}}$).

Using the Grashof and the Reynolds numbers, we can indicate whether forced or free convection dominates in a particular case. Because Re equals inertial forces/viscous forces (Eq. 7.19) and Gr equals buoyant × inertial forces/(viscous forces)^2 (Eq. 7.20), Re^2/Gr equals inertial forces/buoyant forces. Thus Re^2/Gr reflects forced convection/free convection. Experiments reveal that forced convection accounts for nearly all heat transfer when Re^2/Gr is greater than 10, free convection accounts for nearly all heat transfer when Re^2/Gr is less than 0.1, and the intervening region has mixed convection (i.e., both forced and free convection should then be considered, especially for Re^2/Gr near 1). Using Equations 7.19 and 7.20, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\text{Re}^2}{\text{Gr}} &= \frac{\text{inertial forces}}{\text{buoyant forces}} = \frac{\left(\dfrac{vd}{\nu}\right)^2}{\left(\dfrac{g\beta\Delta T d^3}{\nu^2}\right)} = \frac{v^2}{g\beta\Delta T d} \\ &= \frac{v^2}{(9.8\ \text{m s}^{-2})(3.4 \times 10^{-3}\ {}^\circ\text{C}^{-1})\Delta T d} \\ &= (30\ \text{s}^2\ {}^\circ\text{C m}^{-1})\frac{v^2}{\Delta T d}\end{aligned} \tag{7.21}$$

Considering $v^2/(\Delta T d)$ in Equation 7.21, we note that inertial forces and hence forced convection become more important for higher wind speeds, smaller temperature differences, and smaller objects. For a ΔT of 5°C and a d of 0.1 m, Equation 7.21 indicates that Re^2/Gr equals 1 when the wind speed is

$$v = \left[\frac{(1)(5^\circ\text{C})(0.1\ \text{m})}{(30\ \text{s}^2\ {}^\circ\text{C m}^{-1})}\right]^{1/2} = 0.1\ \text{m s}^{-1}$$

Thus, for wind speeds greater than $0.1\ \text{m s}^{-1}$, forced convection dominates free convection when ΔT is 5°C and d is 0.1 m. This domination of forced convection over free convection occurs for most of our applications.

7.2F. Examples of Heat Conduction/Convection

We next calculate the heat conduction across an air boundary layer for a leaf at 25°C when the surrounding turbulent air is at 20°C. We will consider a leaf with a mean length in the wind direction of 0.10 m (10 cm) and a wind speed of 0.8 m s^{-1}. From Equation 7.10, the boundary layer thickness is

$$\delta^{\mathrm{bl}}_{(\mathrm{mm})} = 4.0\sqrt{\frac{(0.10\ \mathrm{m})}{(0.8\ \mathrm{m\ s^{-1}})}} = 1.4\ \mathrm{mm}$$

which is typical for a leaf (see Fig. 7.7). Using Equation 7.14 and a K^{air} of 0.0259 W m^{-1} °C^{-1} (appropriate for air temperatures of 20–25°C occurring in the boundary layer; see Appendix I), the heat flux density conducted across the air boundary layer is

$$J_H^{\mathrm{C}} = \frac{(2)(0.0259\ \mathrm{W\ m^{-1}\ {}^\circ C^{-1}})(25^\circ\mathrm{C} - 20^\circ\mathrm{C})}{(1.4 \times 10^{-3}\ \mathrm{m})}$$
$$= 190\ \mathrm{W\ m^{-2}}$$

A leaf at 25°C at sea level on a sunny day can have a net radiation balance of 370 W m^{-2} (see top line of Table 7-1). In the current case, just over half of this energy input by net radiation is dissipated by conduction of heat across the boundary layers on both sides of the leaf (190 W m^{-2} total), followed by forced convection in the surrounding turbulent air outside the boundary layers.

A leaf with a thick boundary layer can have a temperature quite different from that of the surrounding air, because air is a relatively poor conductor of heat. Specifically, K^{air} is low compared to the thermal conductivity coefficients for liquids and most solids. A large leaf exposed to a low wind speed might have a boundary layer that is 4 mm thick (see Fig. 7-7a or Eq. 7.10 for the wind speeds and leaf sizes implied by this). If J_H^{C} and K^{air} are the same as in the previous paragraph, where the difference between leaf and turbulent air temperatures is 5°C when the boundary layer is 1.4 mm thick, then using ratios we find that $T^{\mathrm{leaf}} - T^{\mathrm{ta}}$ will be (4 mm/1.4 mm)(5°C), or 14°C, for a δ^{bl} of 4 mm. Thus, the combination of large leaves and low wind speeds favors a large drop in temperature across the boundary layers. On the other hand, a small leaf in a moderate to high wind can have a δ^{bl} of 0.2 mm (Fig. 7.7a). For the same J_H^{C} and K^{air} as used previously, $T^{\mathrm{leaf}} - T^{\mathrm{ta}}$ is (0.2 mm/1.4 mm)(5°C), or 0.7°C, for this thin boundary layer. Hence, small leaves can have temperatures quite close to those of the air, especially at moderate to high wind speeds. This close coupling between leaf and air temperatures for small leaves can keep the leaf temperature low enough for optimal photosynthesis (often 30–35°C) in hot, sunny climates. Also, the lower the leaf temperature, the lower is the concentration of water vapor in the pores of the cell walls of mesophyll cells; consequently, less water then tends to be lost in transpiration (see Chapter 8, Section 8.2F), an important consideration in arid and semiarid regions.

7.3. Latent Heat—Transpiration

Evaporation of water is a cooling process (Chapter 2; Section 2.1A). During transpiration water evaporates at the air–liquid interfaces along the pores in the cell walls of mesophyll, epidermal, and guard cells (see Fig. 1-2) and then diffuses out of a leaf. Thus transpiration represents a means of heat loss by a leaf (Eqs. 7.1 and 7.2). The heat loss accompanying transpiration reduces leaf temperatures during the daytime, which can benefit a plant. However, evaporation and its associated cooling are simply inevitable consequences of gas exchange by leaves, for which opening of the stomata is necessary for substantial rates of CO_2 uptake. A leaf can gain latent heat if dew or frost condenses onto it, as we will also discuss.

7.3A. Heat Flux Density Accompanying Transpiration

We will represent the flux density of water vapor diffusing out of a leaf by J_{wv}, the transpiration rate. If we multiply this amount of water leaving per unit time and per unit leaf area, J_{wv}, by the energy necessary to evaporate a unit amount of water at the temperature of the leaf, H_{vap}, we obtain the heat flux density accompanying transpiration, J_H^{T}:

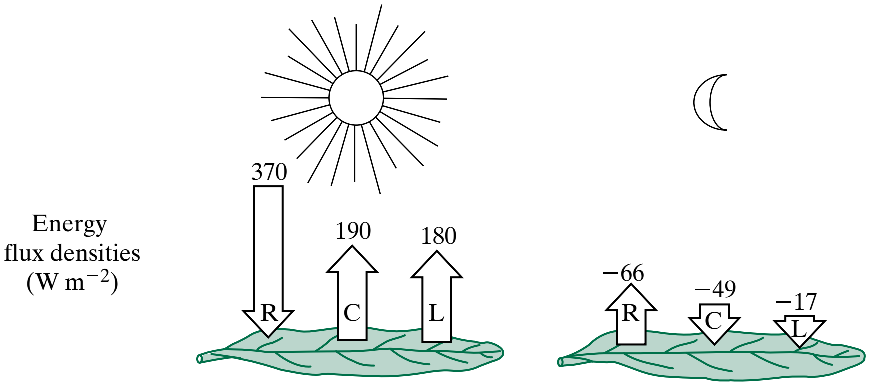
$$J_H^{\mathrm{T}} = J_{wv}H_{\mathrm{vap}} = H_{\mathrm{vap}}\frac{D_{wv}\Delta c_{wv}^{\mathrm{total}}}{\Delta x^{\mathrm{total}}} = \frac{H_{\mathrm{vap}}D_{wv}(c_{wv}^{\mathrm{e}} - c_{wv}^{\mathrm{ta}})}{\Delta x^{\mathrm{total}}} \qquad (7.22)$$

where Fick's first law (Eqs. 1.1 and 1.8) has been used to express J_{wv} in terms of the diffusion coefficient for water vapor, D_{wv}, and the total drop in water vapor concentration, $\Delta c_{wv}^{\mathrm{total}}$, over some effective total distance, $\Delta x^{\mathrm{total}}$. In turn, $\Delta c_{wv}^{\mathrm{total}}$ equals the water vapor concentration at the sites of evaporation within a leaf, c_{wv}^{e}, minus the water vapor concentration in the turbulent air just outside the boundary layer, c_{wv}^{ta}. J_H^{T} and J_{wv} in Equation 7.22 are conventionally based on the area of one side of a leaf, and $\Delta x^{\mathrm{total}}$ is usually incorporated into a resistance or a conductance, which is discussed in Chapter 8 (Sections 8.1 and 8.2).

How much of the heat load on a leaf is dissipated by the evaporation of water during transpiration? For an exposed leaf of a typical mesophyte during the daytime, J_{wv} can be about 4 mmol m^{-2} s^{-1} (Chapter 8, Section 8.2F). In Chapter 2 (Section 2.1A), we noted that water has a high heat of vaporization, e.g., 44.0 kJ mol^{-1} at 25°C (values at various temperatures are given in Appendix I). By Equation 7.22, the heat flux density out of the leaf by transpiration then is

$$J_H^{\mathrm{T}} = (4 \times 10^{-3}\ \mathrm{mol\ m^{-2}\ s^{-1}})(44.0 \times 10^3\ \mathrm{J\ mol^{-1}}) = 180\ \mathrm{W\ m^{-2}}$$

For the leaf described in the top line of Table 7-1, a heat loss of 180 W m^{-2} by evaporation dissipates slightly under half of the net radiation balance (370 W m^{-2}); the rest of the energy input is removed by heat conduction across the boundary layer followed by forced convection (Fig. 7-10a).



	(a)	(b)
Leaf temperature	25°C	−1°C
Air temperature	20°C	1°C
Relative humidity	50%	92%
Wind speed	0.8 m s^{-1}	0.4 m s^{-1}
Water flux density	4 mmol m^{-2} s^{-1} transpired	0.2 mm frost in 9 hours

Figure 7-10. Energy budget for an exposed leaf (a) at midday and (b) at night with frost. The flux densities in W m^{-2} are indicated for net radiation (R); conduction/convection (C), also referred to as sensible heat; and latent heat (L). By convention net radiation gain by a leaf is considered positive, as are heat conduction/convection and latent heat losses (Eqs. 7.1 and 7.2).

7.3B. Heat Flux Density for Dew or Frost Formation

So far we have considered the usual case where c_{wv}^{e} is greater than c_{wv}^{ta}, which results in a net loss of water from a leaf and a consequent dissipation of heat. However, when the turbulent air is warmer than the leaf and also has a high relative humidity, the water vapor concentration in the turbulent air can be greater than that in the leaf (in Chapter 2, Section 2.4C we noted that the water vapor concentration and partial pressure at saturation increase rapidly with temperature, e.g., Fig. 2-16; also, see values for P_{wv}^{*} and c_{wv}^{*} in Appendix I). If c_{wv}^{ta} is greater than the water vapor concentration in a leaf, then a net diffusion of water vapor occurs toward the leaf. This can increase c_{wv} at the leaf surface, and it may reach c_{wv}^{*}, the saturation value, which is most likely at night. If c_{wv}^{ta} is greater than this c_{wv}^{*}, dew—or frost, if the leaf temperature is below freezing—can form as water vapor diffuses toward the leaf and then condenses onto its surface, which is cooler than the turbulent air. Condensation resulting from water emanating from the soil is sometimes called “distillation,” with the term “dew” being reserved for water coming from the air above.

Condensation of water vapor leads to heat gain by a leaf. In particular, water condensation is the reverse of the energy-dissipating process of water evaporation, so the heat gain per unit amount of water condensed is the heat of vaporization of water at the temperature of the leaf, H_{vap}. Because the condensation is on the leaf surface, the diffusion is across the air boundary layers of thickness δ^{bl} that are present on each side of a leaf. To describe the rate of heat gain per unit area accompanying the water vapor condensation

leading to dew formation, Equation 7.22 becomes

$$J_H^{\text{dew}} = \frac{2H_{\text{vap}}D_{wv}(c_{wv}^{\text{ta}} - c_{wv}^{\text{leaf}*})}{\delta^{\text{bl}}} \tag{7.23}$$

where $c_{wv}^{\text{leaf}*}$ is the saturation concentration of water vapor at the temperature of the leaf. The factor 2 is necessary because water vapor diffuses toward the leaf across the boundary layer on each side (as usual, we will assume that these layers are of equal average thickness, δ^{bl}).

The temperature to which the turbulent air must be reduced at constant pressure for it to become saturated with water vapor is known as the *dew point temperature*, or *dew point*, $T_{\text{dew point}}^{\text{ta}}$. When T^{leaf} is less than $T_{\text{dew point}}^{\text{ta}}$, the turbulent air contains a higher concentration of water vapor (c_{wv}^{ta}) than the air at the leaf surface can hold ($c_{wv}^{\text{leaf}*}$). Water vapor then diffuses toward the leaf, which can lead to dew formation (Eq. 7.23). If T^{leaf} is less than $T_{\text{dew point}}^{\text{ta}}$ and also is less than 0°C, the water that condenses onto the leaf surface freezes. Under such conditions we must replace H_{vap} in Equation 7.23 with the heat of sublimation, H_{sub}, at that leaf temperature to describe the heat gain by frost formation.

7.3C. Examples of Frost and Dew Formation

As an example of nighttime frost formation, we will consider a leaf with a temperature of –1.0°C when the surrounding air is at 1.0°C and 92% relative humidity. Based on the water vapor content of saturated air (Appendix I), c_{wv}^{ta} is (0.92)(0.288 mol m^{-3}) or 0.265 mol m^{-3}, and $c_{wv}^{\text{leaf}*}$ is 0.249 mol m^{-3}, so water vapor diffuses from the turbulent air toward the leaf. We also note that the dew point temperature of the air is –0.2°C (obtained by interpolation between c_{wv}^* for –1°C and 0°C; Appendix I), whereas the leaf has a lower temperature. The leaf can be the same leaf that we considered in Section 7.2F, where we estimated a boundary layer thickness of 1.4 mm during the daytime; at night, the wind speed is generally lower—if v were halved, then the boundary layer would be 41% thicker, or 2.0 mm, by Equation 7.10. D_{wv} is 2.13 × 10^{-5} m^2 s^{-1} at 0°C (the mean air temperature in the boundary layer), and H_{sub} is 51.0 kJ mol^{-1} at –1°C (Appendix I). By Equation 7.23 [$J_H^{\text{dew}} = 2H_{\text{vap}}D_{wv}(c_{wv}^{\text{ta}} - c_{wv}^{\text{leaf}*})/\delta^{\text{bl}}$], the rate of heat gain per unit area because of frost formation then is

$$\begin{aligned} J_H^{\text{frost}} &= (2)(51.0 \times 10^3\ \text{J mol}^{-1})(2.13 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{m}^2\ \text{s}^{-1}) \\ &\quad \times \frac{[(0.265\ \text{mol m}^{-3} - 0.249\ \text{mol m}^{-3})]}{(2.0 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m})} \\ &= 17\ \text{J s}^{-1}\ \text{m}^{-2} = 17\ \text{W m}^{-2} \end{aligned}$$

Because T^{leaf} is here less than T^{ta}, heat is conducted into the leaf from the air. By Equation 7.14 [$J_H^{\text{C}} = 2K^{\text{air}}(T^{\text{leaf}} - T^{\text{ta}})/\delta^{\text{bl}}$, where K^{air} is 0.0243 W m^{-1} °C^{-1} at 0°C; Appendix I], the heat conduction across the boundary layer is

$$J_H^{\text{C}} = (2)(0.0243\ \text{W m}^{-1}\ {}^\circ\text{C}^{-1})\frac{(-1^\circ\text{C} - 1^\circ\text{C})}{(2.0 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m})} = -49\ \text{W m}^{-2}$$

where the minus sign indicates that heat is conducted into the leaf. The bottom line of Table 7-1 indicates that this leaf can lose 66 W m^{-2} by net radiation. Thus the heat inputs from frost formation (17 W m^{-2}) and heat conduction (49 W m^{-2}) balance the energy loss by net radiation (see Fig. 7-10b).

How much time is required to form a layer of frost 0.1 mm thick on each side of a leaf under the previous conditions? (Although thin, such a layer of frost is readily visible.) Because J_H^{frost} equals $J_{wv}\,H_{\text{sub}}$ (see Eq. 7.22), the rate of water deposition per unit area (J_{wv}) in kg m^{-2} s^{-1} is J_H^{frost} in J s^{-1} m^{-2} divided by H_{sub} in J kg^{-1} (H_{sub} is 2.83 × 10^6 J kg^{-1} at −1°C; Appendix I). This J_{wv} (mass of water per unit area and per unit time, kg m^{-2} s^{-1}) divided by the mass of ice per unit volume, which is the density of ice (ρ_{ice}, 917 kg m^{-3}), gives the thickness of frost accumulation per unit time in m s^{-1} (i.e., J_{wv}/ρ_{ice} = thickness/time). To accumulate 0.1 mm of ice on each side of a leaf therefore requires

$$\begin{aligned}\text{time} &= \frac{\text{thickness}}{J_{wv}/\rho_{\text{ice}}} = \frac{(0.2\ \text{mm})\rho_{\text{ice}}}{J_H^{\text{frost}}/H_{\text{sub}}}\\ &= \frac{(0.2\times10^{-3}\ \text{m})(917\ \text{kg m}^{-3})}{(17\ \text{J s}^{-1}\ \text{m}^{-2})/(2.83\times10^{6}\ \text{J kg}^{-1})}\\ &= 3.1\times10^{4}\ \text{s} \qquad\qquad (8.6\ \text{hours})\end{aligned}$$

Dew formation can be as much as 0.5 mm per night, which can be an important source of water in certain regions for part of the year.[3] For the lichen *Ramalina maciformis* in the Negev Desert, dew sufficient to lead to photosynthesis the next day occurs on about half of the nights, and the annual dewfall can be 30 mm (Kappen et al., 1979). Dew or frost formation is favored on cloudless nights and when the relative humidity of the surrounding turbulent air is very high. As mentioned previously, T^{leaf} tends to be further from T^{ta} for large leaves than for small ones. On a cloudless night when T^{leaf} is less than both T^{surr} and T^{ta} (see Table 7-1), the larger exposed leaves generally dip below $T^{\text{ta}}_{\text{dew point}}$ sooner than do the small ones, and hence dew or frost tends to form on the larger leaves first. For convenience, we have assumed that the leaf has a uniform temperature. In fact, however, the boundary layer tends to be thinner at the edges of a leaf than at the center (Fig. 7-6), so T^{leaf} is closer to T^{ta} at the edges. Thus dew or frost generally forms first at the center of a leaf, where δ^{bl} is larger and the temperature is slightly lower than at the leaf edges. Happily, the age-old myth that "Jack Frost" paints frost on larger leaves first and avoids painting their margins can finally be biophysically explained!

3. At 10°C, a layer of liquid water 0.5 mm thick corresponds to the content of water vapor in a column of saturated air (see Appendix I) that is 53 m tall. Hence, considerable downward movement of water vapor is necessary to have dew formation over large areas, or much of the water vapor must emanate from the ground.

7.4. Further Examples of Energy Budgets

Many observations and calculations indicate that exposed leaves in sunlight tend to be above air temperature for T^{ta} up to about 30°C and below T^{ta} for air temperatures above about 35°C. This primarily reflects the increasing importance of IR radiation emission as leaf temperature rises [see Eq. 7.7; $J_{IR} = 2e_{IR}\sigma(T^{leaf})^4$] and the increase with temperature of the water vapor concentration in the leaves, which affects transpiration (discussed in Chapter 8, Section 8.2D). Such influences often lead to temperatures for exposed leaves that are more favorable for photosynthesis than is the ambient air temperature. We can readily extend our analysis to include leaves shaded by overlying ones. For certain plant parts, heat storage and heat conduction within the tissues are important. We will conclude this section with some comments on the time constants for changes in leaf and stem temperatures.

7.4A. Leaf Shape and Orientation

Leaf sizes and shapes vary tremendously, which can have important consequences for leaf temperature. Leaves developing in full sunlight tend to have smaller areas when mature than do leaves on the same plant that develop in the shade—"sun" leaves usually have 20 to 80% less surface area than do "shade" leaves (Fig. 7-11a). When shade leaves are placed in exposed locations, their larger size leads to thicker air boundary layers (Eq. 7.10), less convective heat loss (Eq. 7.14), and consequently greater differences from air temperature than for sun leaves. For shade leaves above air temperature, this placement can initially lead to high transpiration rates because the water vapor concentration at saturation depends more or less exponentially on temperature, as indicated in Chapter 2 (Section 2.4C; also see Fig. 8-6 and Appendix I); subsequently, the exposed shade leaves can wilt, reducing the photosynthetic rate. Indeed, the amount of CO_2 photosynthetically fixed per unit of water transpired can be higher for sun leaves than for shade leaves in exposed sunlit locations but higher for shade leaves than for sun leaves in shaded locations based on model calculations and observations on a desert shrub, *Hyptis emoryi* (Smith and Nobel, 1977).

Lobing and dissection (Fig. 7-11b) tend to decrease the effective length across a leaf in the direction of the wind and hence to reduce δ^{bl} (Eq. 7.10), with a consequent increase of convective heat exchange. For instance, the heat convection coefficient h_c (Eq. 7.17) increases with the depth of leaf serrations. In addition to differences in size, the greater lobing observed for sun leaves compared to shade leaves on the same plant further reduces the heating of sun leaves above air temperature. Also, heat convection is greater for a pinnate leaf with many leaflets than for a simple undivided (entire) leaf of the same area (Fig. 7-11b).

Certain plants, especially those exposed to intense shortwave irradiation, have vertical leaves, such as willow, many species of *Eucalyptus,* and certain chaparral and desert shrubs. Over the course of a day, vertical leaves

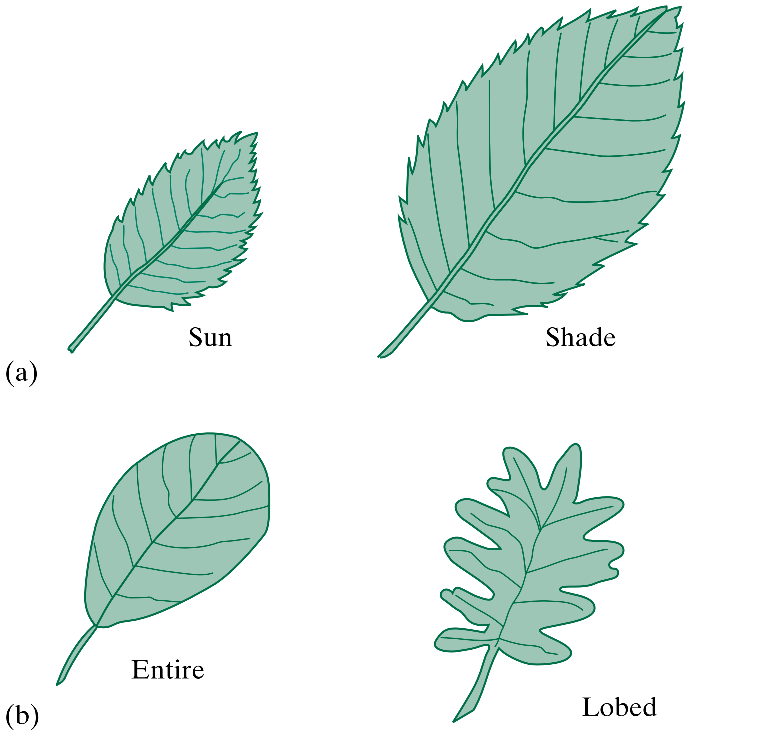


Figure 7-11. Size (a) and shape (b) influence boundary layer thickness and hence temperature for leaves.

can intercept nearly as much shortwave irradiation as horizontal leaves, but they intercept less at midday, when air temperatures tend to be high. Higher leaf temperatures at midday lead to greater transpiration rates for a given stomatal opening and possibly to temperatures above those photosynthetically optimal. Also, leaves generally become more vertical upon wilting, thereby reducing their interception of shortwave irradiation at higher sun angles. For the exposed horizontal leaf (Fig. 7.1) that we have been considering (radiation terms in the top line of Table 7-1; convection and transpiration in Fig. 7-10a), rotation from horizontal to vertical decreases its temperature by about 5°C near noon. Consistent with this are observations that rotating the leaves of *Cercis canadensis* (redbud) and *Erythrina berteroana* from vertical to horizontal at midday increases their temperatures by 2 to 6°C (Gates, 2003).

Leaf temperature can be influenced by seasonal differences in leaf orientation and by diurnal solar "tracking" movements, as occurs for cotton, other species in the Malvaceae, many clovers, and certain desert annuals. Leaves of *Malvastrum rotundifolium*, a winter annual inhabiting warm deserts but growing during the cool part of the year, track the sun so well that the leaf surface is within 20° of perpendicular to the direct solar beam throughout the day. As well as leading to better light interception, this tracking raises the leaf temperature to values more optimal for photosynthesis. On the other hand, in hot environments leaves of some species can change their orientation to avoid direct sunlight and

hence overheating. Solar tracking involves changes in hydrostatic pressure induced by the absorption of blue light by photoreceptors in the leaf veins or the pulvinus (large, thin-walled cells at the base of the petiole), perhaps via steps similar to those for stomatal opening (discussed in Chapter 8, Section 8.1B).

7.4B. Shaded Leaves within Plant Communities

We next consider a shaded leaf at the same temperature as its surroundings. The IR radiation absorbed by such a leaf can be the same as the IR emitted by it (when $a_{\mathrm{IR}} = e_{\mathrm{IR}}$ and $T^{\mathrm{leaf}} = T^{\mathrm{surr}}$). The net radiation is then due solely to the various forms of solar radiation that reach the leaf. Because the transmission by overlying leaves is fairly high from 0.7 to 2 μm (Fig. 7-4), much of the solar radiation reaching a shaded leaf is in a region not useful for photosynthesis. The leaf absorptance in this region is lower than for the solar irradiation incident on an exposed leaf (Fig. 7-4). For purposes of calculation, we will assume that S on the shaded leaf is 70 W m^{-2}, its absorptance a is 0.30, and the reflectance r of the surroundings has the rather high value of 0.40 because of considerable reflection of radiation by the other leaves within the plant community. By Equation 7.8, the net radiation balance is then

$$(0.30)(1.00 + 0.40)(70 \text{ W m}^{-2}) = 30 \text{ W m}^{-2}$$

Such a shaded leaf has a low rate of photosynthesis because it receives only a small amount of radiation in the visible region. Moreover, its stomata are partially closed at the low illumination levels, which reduces the stomatal conductance (see Chapter 8, Section 8.1C). Three factors tend to reduce the flux of water vapor out of such a shaded leaf: (1) the lower stomatal conductance at the lower light levels, which is the main factor reducing transpiration; (2) a lower wind speed for a protected than for an exposed leaf, which leads to a thicker air boundary layer; and (3) a higher concentration of water vapor in the turbulent air surrounding the shaded leaf than at the top of the plant canopy, which decreases the difference between c_{wv}^{ta} and $c_{wv}^{\mathrm{leaf}*}$ or c_{wv}^{e}. Instead of the water vapor flux density of 4 mmol m^{-2} s^{-1} for an exposed leaf of a typical mesophyte, J_{wv} for the shaded leaf might be only 0.7 mmol m^{-2} s^{-1}. By Equation 7.22 ($J_H^{\mathrm{T}} = J_{wv}H_{\mathrm{vap}}$), heat dissipation by the latent heat term is then $(0.7 \times 10^{-3} \text{ mol m}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1})(44.0 \times 10^3 \text{ J mol}^{-1})$, or 30 W m^{-2}. No heat is conducted across the boundary layers if the leaf is at the same temperature as the surrounding air. Thus the heat loss by water evaporation (30 W m^{-2}) balances the energy gain from the absorption of shortwave irradiation (30 W m^{-2}) for this shaded leaf.

7.4C. Heat Storage

We indicated at the beginning of this chapter that very little energy is stored in the temperature changes of leaves. However, massive plant parts, such as tree trunks, can store considerable amounts of energy. We represent the heat

storage rate (e.g., in J s^{-1}, or W) as follows:

$$\text{Heat storage rate} = VC_P \frac{\Delta T}{\Delta t} \tag{7.24}$$

where V is the volume that undergoes a change in temperature ΔT in the time interval Δt, and C_P is the *volumetric heat capacity* (e.g., in J m^{-3} °C^{-1}). Such a C_P indicates the amount of energy required to raise the temperature of unit volume by 1°C.

As just indicated, heat storage can be important for a massive plant part. To model its energy balance, such a part can be divided into isothermal subvolumes, which are generally referred to as *nodes* in heat transfer studies. This approach has been applied to the energy balance of massive stems of cacti, such as the barrel-shaped *Ferocactus acanthodes* (Fig. 7-12) and the tall, columnar *Carnegiea gigantea* (saguaro). The stem is divided into surface nodes, which have no volume and hence no heat storage, plus interior nodes, which have a finite volume but no radiation, boundary-layer, or latent-heat terms (Fig. 7-12). The interior nodes conduct heat to or from surface nodes as well as to or from other interior nodes (describable by Eq. 7.13) and are involved with changes in temperature leading to heat storage (Eq. 7.24).

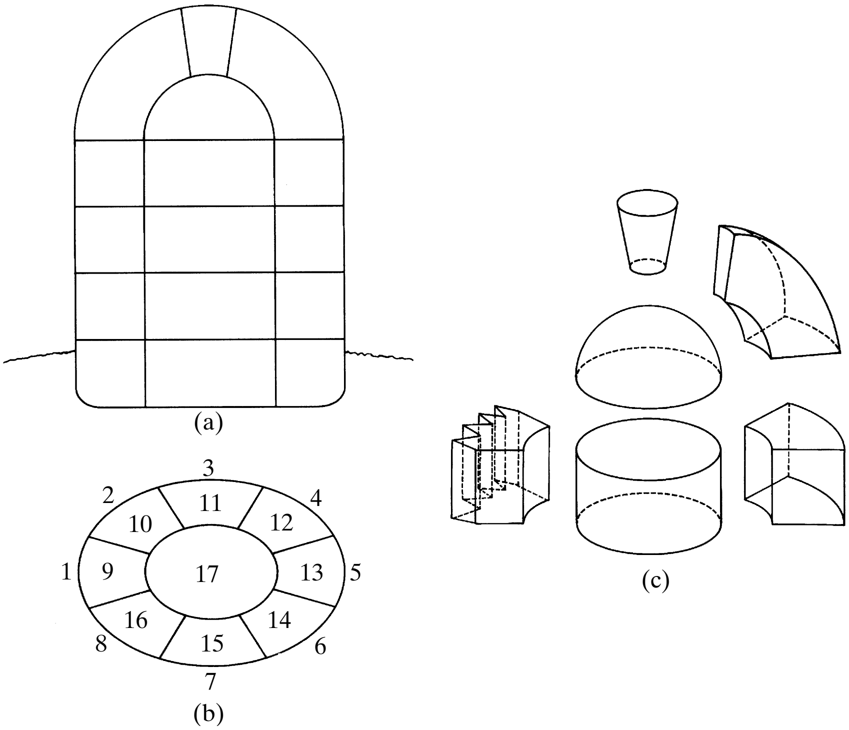


Figure 7-12. System of nodes or subvolumes used in energy balance studies for the barrel cactus, *Ferocactus acanthodes:* (a) vertical section indicating the division of the stem into various levels; (b) horizontal section indicating the surface nodes (1 to 8) and interior nodes (9 to 17); and (c) three-dimensional representation of certain interior nodes, such as ribbing (left side) and the region of the apical meristem (top center). Each node has a uniform temperature (i.e., is "isothermal"). [Adapted from Lewis and Nobel (1977); used by permission.]

Once the stem has been divided into nodes, an energy balance for each node can be calculated—greater precision requires a greater number of nodes. The analysis is complicated, in part because the various contributors depend on temperature in different ways. Specifically, shortwave absorption and longwave absorption are independent of temperature, longwave emission depends on T^4, conduction depends on a temperature gradient or difference (e.g., $T^{\text{surf}} - T^{\text{ta}}$), the saturation water vapor content—which can affect the latent heat term—varies approximately exponentially with temperature, and heat storage depends on $\Delta T/\Delta t$. When these various energy terms for all of the nodes are incorporated into a simulation model, or when cactus temperatures are directly measured in the field, parts of the cactus stem facing the sun are found to be up to 15°C above air temperature for stems approximately 0.25 m in diameter. Parts facing away from the sun can be below air temperature, and time lags of a few hours are observed in the heating of the center of the stem.

Consumption or production of energy by metabolic processes can generally be ignored in the energy budget of a leaf (Eq. 7.2). An interesting exception occurs for the inflorescences (floral axes plus flowers) of many members of the Araceae (*Arum* family), for which high respiratory rates can substantially raise the inflorescence temperature and lead to considerable heat storage. An extreme example is presented by the 2- to 9-g inflorescence or spadix of *Symplocarpus foetidus* (eastern skunk cabbage). By consuming O_2 at the same rate as an active mammal of the same size (heat production of about 0.10 W g^{-1}), the tissue temperature can be 15 to 35°C above ambient air temperatures of –15 to 10°C for over 2 weeks. This prevents freezing of the inflorescence and also may lead to the volatilization of insect attractants, thus increasing the chances for pollination (Seymour, 1997).

7.4D. Time Constants

A matter related to heat storage is the time constant for temperature changes in response to changes in the environmental conditions. Analogous to our use of lifetimes in Chapter 4 (Section 4.3C), we will define a time constant τ as the time required for the change of surface temperature (T^{surf}) from some initial value T_0^{surf} to within $1/e$ (37%; see Fig. 4-11) of the overall change to a final value approached asymptotically (T_∞^{surf}):

$$T^{\text{surf}} - T_\infty^{\text{surf}} = (T_0^{\text{surf}} - T_\infty^{\text{surf}})e^{-t/\tau} \tag{7.25}$$

To help interpret Equation 7.25, we note that at time t equal to 0, $e^{-t/\tau}$ is $e^{-0/\tau}$, which is 1, so T^{surf} is then equal to T_0^{surf}; at t equal to ∞, $e^{-t/\tau}$ is $e^{-\infty/\tau}$, which is 0, so T^{surf} is then equal to T_∞^{surf} by this equation.

If we ignore transpiration and assume uniform tissue temperatures, the time constant for temperature changes equals

$$\tau = \frac{(V/A)C_P}{4e_{\text{IR}}\sigma(T^{\text{surf}})^3 + K^{\text{air}}/\delta^{\text{bl}}} \tag{7.26}$$

where V is the volume of a plant part having total surface area A (V/A indicates the mean depth for heat storage, which is half of its thickness for a leaf), C_P is the volumetric heat capacity introduced in Equation 7.24, and T^{surf} is expressed in kelvin units. For a rapidly transpiring leaf, the time constant is about 50% less than is indicated by Equation 7.26 (Gates, 2003; Monteith and Unsworth, 2007).

Let us next estimate the time constants for a leaf and a cactus stem. If we consider a 300-μm-thick leaf (Fig. 1-2) at 25°C with a volumetric heat capacity that is 70% as large as that of water and a boundary layer thickness of 1.4 mm, by Equation 7.26 the time constant for a temperature change in response to changes in the environmental conditions is

$$\tau = \frac{(150 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m})(0.7)(4.2 \times 10^{6}\ \text{J m}^{-3}\ {}^\circ\text{C}^{-1})}{(4)(0.96)(5.67 \times 10^{-8}\ \text{J s}^{-1}\ \text{m}^{-2}\ \text{K}^{-4})(298\ \text{K})^{3} + \frac{(0.0259\ \text{J s}^{-1}\ \text{m}^{-1}\ {}^\circ\text{C}^{-1})}{(1.4\times 10^{-3}\ \text{m})}} = 18\ \text{s}$$

Thus, 63% of the overall change in leaf temperature occurs in only 18 s, indicating that such leaves respond rapidly to variations in environmental conditions, consistent with our statement that very little heat can be stored by means of temperature changes of such leaves (Section 7.1). In particular, for a τ of 18 s, T^{surf} will go 96% of the way from T_0^{surf} to T_∞^{surf} in 1 minute (see Eq. 7.25). On the other hand, stems of cacti can store substantial amounts of heat. For the stem portrayed in Figure 7-12, V/A is about 0.05 m, and C_P is about 90% of C_P^{water} (cactus stems generally have a much smaller volume fraction of intercellular air spaces than the 30% that is typical of leaves). Assuming that the other factors are the same as in the previous calculation for a leaf, τ is then 7.8×10^3 s (2.2 hours) for the cactus stem. Indeed, massive stems do have large time constants for thermal changes.

Large thermal time constants help avoid overheating of tree trunks as well as of seeds and roots in the soil during rapidly moving fires. For instance, temperatures near the soil surface average about 300°C during fires in different ecosystems, but at 0.1 m below the soil surface temperatures rarely exceed 50°C during such fires. Energy budget analyses can provide information on a multitude of physiological and ecological processes involving temperature—from frost to fire to photosynthesis.

7.5. Soil

Soil acts as an extremely important component in the energy balances of plants. For instance, shortwave irradiation can be reflected from the surface of the soil, it is the source of longwave radiation that can correspond to a temperature considerably different from that of the ambient air, and heat can be conducted to or from stems in the region of their contact with the soil. Also, considerable amounts of energy can be stored by the soil, in contrast to the case for most leaves. Although the soil surface can have large daily oscillations in temperature (e.g., Fig. 7-13), the soil temperature at moderate depths of 1 m can be extremely steady on a daily basis (variations less than 0.1°C) and fairly steady seasonally.

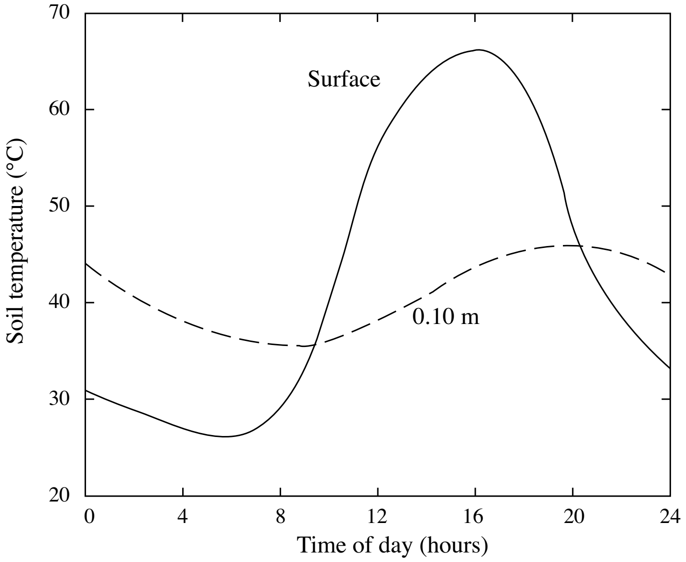


Figure 7-13. Temperatures at the soil surface and at a depth of 0.10 m for a hot summer day in the northwestern Sonoran Desert. The maximum air temperature at 1.5 m above the ground was 34°C on a clear day with low wind speeds. A depth of 0.10 m is near the center of the root zone for two locally common perennial succulents, the desert agave *Agave deserti* and the barrel cactus *Ferocactus acanthodes*, both of whose roots are excluded from the upper 0.03 m of the soil due to the high temperatures there (Nobel, 1988).

7.5A. Thermal Properties

Soil has a relatively high heat capacity. To raise the temperature of 1 kg of dry sand by 1°C takes about 0.82 kJ, with similar values for dry clay or loam.[4] The density of soil solids is about 2600 kg m^{-3} and soil is about half pores by volume, so the overall density of dry soil is about 1300 kg m^{-3}—values range from 1200 kg m^{-3} for dry loam, slightly higher for dry clay, and up to 1500 kg m^{-3} for dry sand. Thus, the volumetric heat capacity at constant pressure, C_P, of dry soil is about $(0.82 \times 10^3 \text{ J kg}^{-1} \text{ °C}^{-1})(1300 \text{ kg m}^{-3})$ or 1.1 MJ m^{-3} °C^{-1}. For a moist loam containing 20% water by volume (water has a C_P of 4.18 MJ m^{-3} °C^{-1} at 20°C), C_P^{soil} is about 1.9 MJ m^{-3} °C^{-1}.

The relatively high heat capacity of soil means that considerable energy can be involved with its temperature changes. For instance, if the temperature of the upper 0.4 m of a moist soil with a C_P^{soil} of 2.0 MJ m^{-3} °C^{-1} increases by an average of 2°C during the daytime, then the heat stored ($VC_P\Delta T$; see Eq. 7.24) per m^2 of ground is

$$\text{Heat storage} = (0.4\,\text{m}^3\,\text{m}^{-2})(2.0\,\text{MJ m}^{-3}\,°\text{C}^{-1})(2°\text{C}) = 1.6\,\text{MJ m}^{-2}$$

Nearly all of the heat stored in the soil during the daytime is released that night. Generally, the soil temperature at depths below 0.4 m changes less

4. Loam refers to a relatively fertile soil containing 7–27% clay (particles <2 μm in diameter), 28–50% silt (particles 2–50 μm in diameter), and <52% sand (particles 0.05–2 mm in diameter).

than 0.5°C during a day or night, although annually it will vary considerably more, as we will indicate later.

Soil has a substantial volumetric heat capacity, but it does not have a high thermal conductivity coefficient, K^{soil}. Heat is therefore not readily conducted in soil, where the heat flux density by conduction is

$$J_H^C = -K^{soil} \frac{\partial T}{\partial z} \tag{7.27}$$

and z is considered positive into the soil. Also, heat can be conducted in all directions in the soil, instead of only vertically, as we will consider here (Eq. 7.27 is similar to Eq. 7.13, $J_H^C = -K^{air}\partial T/\partial x$). J_H^C can be expressed in W m^{-2}, $\partial T/\partial z$ in °C m^{-1}, and therefore K^{soil} in W m^{-1} °C^{-1}, just as for K^{air}. K^{soil} depends on the soil water content; replacement of soil air (a relatively poor heat conductor) by water increases K^{soil}, as the water forms bridges between the soil particles (see Fig. 9-9) and thereby increases the thermal conductivity. For instance, K^{soil} can vary from 0.2 W m^{-1} °C^{-1} for a dry soil to 2 W m^{-1} °C^{-1} for a wet one. For comparison, K^{water} is 0.60 W m^{-1} °C^{-1} and K^{air} is 0.026 W m^{-1} °C^{-1} near 20°C (see Appendix I).

During the daytime, the surface of the soil can be considerably warmer than the underlying layers (Fig. 7-13), which leads to heat conduction into the soil. Because the soil exposed to the turbulent air tends to be drier than the underlying layers, the thermal conductivity coefficient can be lower near the soil surface. For the upper part of a fairly moist sandy loam, K^{soil} may be 0.6 W m^{-1} °C^{-1} and $\partial T/\partial z$ may be −100°C m^{-1} (at least for the upper 0.05 m or so). Using Equation 7.27, the heat flux density by conduction into the soil then is

$$J_H^C = -(0.6\ \mathrm{W\ m^{-1}\ {}^\circ C^{-1}})(-100^\circ\mathrm{C\ m^{-1}}) = 60\ \mathrm{W\ m^{-2}}$$

This heat conducted into the soil could lead to the daytime heat storage calculated previously, 1.6 MJ m^{-2}, in the following amount of time:

$$\text{time} = \frac{(1.6 \times 10^6\ \mathrm{J\ m^{-2}})}{(60\ \mathrm{J\ m^{-2}\ s^{-1}})} = 2.67 \times 10^4\ \mathrm{s}$$

which is about 7 hours.

7.5B. Soil Energy Balance

The components of the energy balance for the soil surface are similar to those for leaves (see Eqs. 7.1 and 7.2). However, we must also take into consideration heat storage and the heat conducted into the soil (Eq. 7.27), which leads to a gradual temperature change of its upper layers.

The absorption and the emission of radiation usually takes place in the upper few millimeters of the soil. Using Equations 7.5 through 7.8, we can generally represent the net radiation balance for the soil surface by $aS + a_{IR}\sigma(T^{surr})^4 - e_{IR}\sigma(T^{soil})^4$, where the values of all parameters are those at the soil surface. (If the soil is exposed directly to the sky, T^{surr} should be replaced by T^{sky} for the incident IR.) For a soil exposed to

direct sunlight, the net energy input by radiation can be quite large—in a desert the temperature of the soil surface can exceed 70°C (the maximum is 66°C in Fig. 7-13).

Let us now consider heat fluxes for a soil. The heat conducted across the relatively still air next to the soil surface equals $-K^{\text{air}}\partial T/\partial z$, where K^{air} is the thermal conductivity coefficient of air at the local temperature (see Eq. 7.13). The heat conducted within the soil can be calculated using Equation 7.27 ($J_H^C = -K^{\text{soil}}\partial T/\partial z$). For a layer of soil where the water vapor flux density changes by ΔJ_{wv}, the heat loss accompanying water evaporation (or heat gain accompanying water condensation) equals $\Delta J_{wv} H_{\text{vap}}$, where H_{vap} is the heat necessary to evaporate a unit amount of water at the local soil temperature (see Eq. 7.22, $J_H^T = J_{wv} H_{\text{vap}}$). Because of the large heat capacity of water, water movement in the soil can also represent an important means of heat flow. However, except in the upper few millimeters, the main energy flux in the soil is generally for heat conduction, not for radiation or for phase changes of water or water movement.

7.5C. Variations in Soil Temperature

Because the energy flux in the soil is often mainly by heat conduction, the soil temperature at various depths can be estimated, although complications arise due to the heterogeneous nature of soil as well as the many types of plant cover. To obtain some idea of daily and annual temperature variations, we will assume that the volumetric heat capacity (C_P^{soil}) and the thermal conductivity coefficient (K^{soil}) are both constant with depth, and we will ignore water evaporation or movement in the soil. Moreover, we will assume that the soil surface temperature varies sinusoidally around an average value $\overline{T}^{\text{surf}}$, with a daily or annual amplitude of ΔT^{surf}, a useful approximation that can readily be checked. We then obtain the following relation for the temperature T at a time t and depth z:

$$T = \overline{T}^{\text{surf}} + \Delta T^{\text{surf}} e^{-z/d} \cos\left(\frac{2\pi t}{p} - \frac{2\pi t_{\text{max}}}{p} - \frac{z}{d}\right) \quad (7.28)$$

where the *damping depth, d*, is the depth in the soil at which the variation in temperature has been damped to $1/e$ of the value at the soil surface and p is the period (24 hours, or 8.64×10^4 s, for a daily variation and 365 times longer for an annual variation). The damping depth depends on the thermal properties of the soil and the period:

$$d = \left(\frac{pK^{\text{soil}}}{\pi C_P^{\text{soil}}}\right)^{1/2} \quad (7.29)$$

We note that z is equal to 0 at the soil surface and is considered positive downward, and that the soil surface has its maximum temperature, $\overline{T}^{\text{surf}} + \Delta T^{\text{surf}}$, when t equals t_{max}. We also note that Equation 7.28 is of the form $y = A + B\cos\alpha$, where A is the average value of y and B is the amplitude of the variation about the mean.

After determining the damping depth, we will calculate the depths where the variation in soil temperature is only ±1°C, in one case daily and

in another case annually. Again, we will use a C_P^{soil} of 2.0 MJ m^{-3} °C and a K^{soil} of 0.6 W m^{-1} °C^{-1}. Based on Equation 7.29, the damping depth for the daily case then is

$$d = \left[\frac{(8.64 \times 10^4 \text{ s})(0.6 \text{ J s}^{-1} \text{ m}^{-1} \text{ °C}^{-1})}{(\pi)(2.0 \times 10^6 \text{ J m}^{-3} \text{ °C}^{-1})}\right]^{1/2}$$
$$= 0.09 \text{ m}$$

and it is 1.7 m for the annual case. From Equation 7.28 the daily variation in temperature at depth z is $\pm\, \Delta T^{\text{surf}} e^{-z/d}$. The amplitude of the daily variation in soil surface temperature about its mean for bare soil is often about 15°C (i.e., $\overline{T}_{\text{max}}^{\text{surf}} - \overline{T}_{\text{min}}^{\text{surf}}$ is equal to 30°C), and the annual amplitude for variations in average daily surface temperatures is usually somewhat less (e.g., 10°C). The depth where the daily variation in temperature is ±1°C is then

$$z = -d \ln\frac{(1°\text{C})}{(\Delta T^{\text{surf}})} = -(0.09 \text{ m})\ln\frac{(1°\text{C})}{(15°\text{C})}$$
$$= 0.24 \text{ m}$$

which is consistent with our previous statement that soil temperatures usually change less than 0.5°C daily at about 0.4 m. On an annual basis, the ±1°C variation occurs at a depth of 3.9 m (Fig. 7-14).

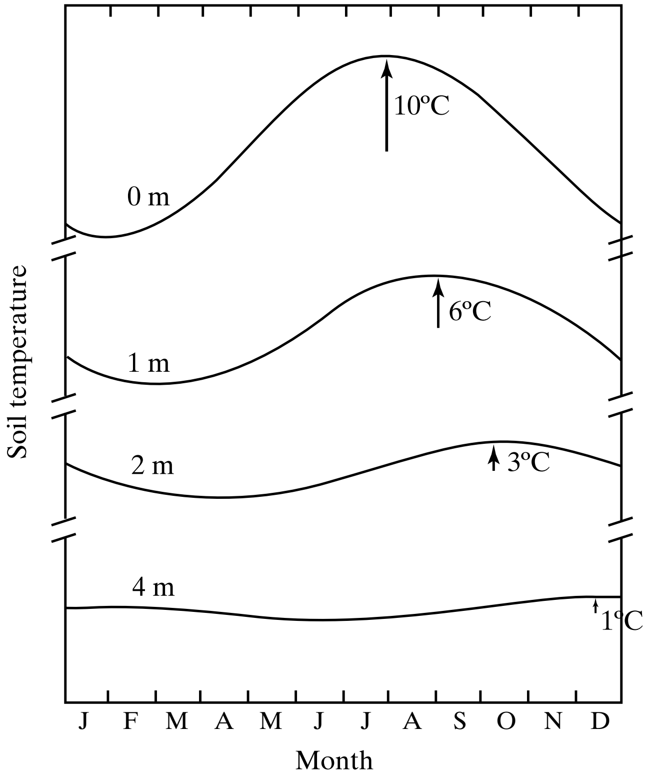


Figure 7-14. Simulated annual variation in soil temperatures, showing a decreasing amplitude with depth and a seasonal shift of the maximum. The vertical arrows indicate the temperature amplitude at the specified depths in the soil. The average daily temperature at the soil surface was assumed to vary sinusoidally, with a maximum on August 1 and an annual amplitude of 10°C; the damping depth d is 1.7 m.

The factor z/d in the cosine in Equation 7.28 indicates that the peak of the temperature "wave" arrives later at greater depths in the soil. This peak occurs when the cosine equals 1, which corresponds to having $2\pi t/p - 2\pi t_{max}/p$ equal to z/d (cos 0 = 1). In a time interval Δt, the peak moves a distance Δz, where $2\pi\Delta t/p$ is equal to $\Delta z/d$. The speed of movement of the wave into the soil, $\Delta z/\Delta t$, is thus $2\pi d/p$. Figure 7-14 shows this effect at various depths on an annual basis. For instance, we can calculate how long after the surface reaches its peak temperature (August 1, Fig. 7-14) will the peak temperature occur at a depth of 4 m:

$$\Delta t = \frac{\Delta z\, p}{2\pi\, d} = \frac{(4\ \text{m})(365\ \text{days})(8.64 \times 10^4\ \text{s day}^{-1})}{(2\pi)(1.7\ \text{m})} = 1.18 \times 10^7\ \text{s}$$

which is 137 days or about 4.5 months (i.e., mid-December; Fig. 7-14), indicating a major seasonal displacement of maximum and minimum soil temperatures.

To allow for the superposition of effects of seasonally changing temperatures with depth on daily temperatures, we can incorporate both daily and annual additive terms in an equation like Equation 7.28. Each term contains its appropriate d and p, with $\overline{T}^{\text{surf}}$ then coming from the annual case. In any case, soil properties markedly affect the thermal environment of roots, which can represent about half of a plant's biomass, as well as the temperatures in animal burrows and even in certain wine cellars.

7.6. Problems

7.1. For an exposed leaf at 10°C, a is 0.60, a_{IR} and e_{IR} are 0.96, and r is 0.10 (except in E). Suppose that the effective temperature for radiation is 2°C for a cloudy sky and −40°C for a clear sky.

A. If the absorbed IR equals the emitted IR for the leaf, what are the temperatures of the surroundings for a clear sky and for a cloudy one?

B. What are the λ_{max}'s for the emission of radiant energy by the leaf and by the surroundings for A?

C. If the global irradiation is 700 W m^{-2} and the temperature of the surroundings is 9°C on a clear day, how much radiation is absorbed by the leaf?

D. Under the conditions of C, what percentage of the energy input by absorbed irradiation is dissipated by the emission of thermal radiation?

E. Assume that the clouds block out the sunlight and the skylight. Let S^{cloud} be 250 W m^{-2} on the upper surface of the leaf and let 15% as much be reflected onto the lower surface. If the temperature of the surroundings is 9°C, what is the net radiation for the leaf?

7.2. Consider a circular leaf at 25°C that is 0.12 m in diameter. The ambient wind speed is 0.80 m s^{-1}, and the ambient air temperature is 20°C.

A. What is the mean distance across the leaf in the direction of the wind? Hint: The average value of a function is $\frac{1}{b-a}\int f(x)dx$; that is, the area under the function divided by the distance between the two endpoints.

B. What is the boundary layer thickness? What would δ^{bl} be, assuming that the mean distance is the diameter?
C. What is the heat flux density conducted across the boundary layer?
D. If the net radiation balance for the leaf is 300 W m^{-2}, what is the transpiration rate such that the leaf temperature remains constant?

7.3. Let us consider a spherical cactus 0.2 m in diameter with essentially no stem mass below ground, whose surface has a temperature averaging 25.0°C and is 50% shaded by spines. Assume that the ambient wind speed is 1.0 m s^{-1}, the ambient air temperature is 20.0°C, the global irradiation with the sun overhead is 1000 W m^{-2}, the effective temperature of the surroundings (including the sky) is −20°C, a_{IR} and e_{IR} are 0.97, r_{surr} is 0.00, a_{spine} is 0.70, and the spines have no transpiration or heat storage.
A. What is the mean boundary layer thickness for the stem and the heat conduction across the boundary layer?
B. What is the stem heat convection coefficient?
C. Assuming that the spines can be represented by cylinders that are 1.2 mm in diameter, what is their boundary layer thickness?
D. If the net radiation balance averaged over the spine surface is due entirely to shortwave irradiation (i.e., $IR_{absorbed} = IR_{emitted}$), and if the maximum shortwave irradiation measured perpendicular to the cylinder lateral surface is 100 W m^{-2}, what is the mean T^{spine} to within 0.1°C? Ignore spine heat conduction to the stem.
E. What is the absorbed minus emitted longwave radiation at the stem surface in the presence and the absence of spines?
F. Assume that 30% of the incident shortwave is absorbed by the stem surface for the cactus with spines. What is the net energy balance averaged over the stem surface? What is the hourly change in mean tissue temperature? Assume that the volumetric heat capacity is 80% of that of water, and ignore transpiration.

7.4. Suppose that the global radiation absorbed by the ground below some vegetation averages 100 W m^{-2}. We will assume that the bulk of the vegetation is at 22°C, the top of the soil is at 20°C, and that both emit like ideal blackbodies.
A. What is the net radiation balance for the soil?
B. Suppose that there are four plants/m^2 of ground and that their stem diameter is 3 cm. If the thermal conductivity coefficient of the stem is the same as that of water, and the temperature changes from that of the bulk of the vegetation to that of the ground in 0.8 m, what is the rate of heat conduction in W down each stem? What is the average value of such J_H^C per m^2 of the ground?
C. Suppose that the 4 mm of air immediately above the ground acts like an unstirred boundary layer and that the air temperature at 4 mm is 21°C. What is the rate of heat conduction from the soil into the air?
D. What is J_H^C into the soil in the steady state if 0.3 mmol m^{-2} s^{-1} of water evaporates from the upper part of the soil where the radiation is absorbed?
E. If K^{soil} is the same as K^{water}, what is $\partial T/\partial z$ in the upper part of the soil?

7.5. Consider a soil with maximum/minimum surface temperatures for a specific day and the entire year of 35°C/17°C, an annual K^{soil} that is 150% of K^{water}, an annual C_P^{soil} that is 40% of C_P^{water}, and a daily damping depth of 0.10 m.

A. What is the damping depth for the annual case?

B. At what soil depth is the maximum temperature 30°C for the daily case and for the annual case?

C. Assume that the maximum soil surface temperature occurs at 15:00 (3 hours after solar noon) for the daily case and on August 1 (day 213) for the annual case. When do the soil temperatures in B occur?

7.7. References and Further Reading

Arya, S.P.S., and Holton, J.R. 2001. *Introduction to Micrometeorology*, 2nd ed. Academic Press, San Diego, CA.

Campbell, G.S., and Norman, J.M. 2000. *An Introduction to Environmental Biophysics*, 2nd ed. Springer Verlag, New York.

Datta, A.K. 2002. *Biological and Bioenvironmental Heat Transfer*. Marcel Dekker, New York.

Dogniaux, R. (Ed.) (1994). *Prediction of Solar Radiation in Areas with a Specific Microclimate*. Kluwer, Dordrecht.

Ehleringer, J.R. 1989. Temperature and energy budgets. In: Pearcy, R.W., Ehleringer, J., Mooney, H.A., and Rundel, P.W. (Eds.), *Plant Physiological Ecology: Field Methods and Instrumentation*. Chapman & Hall, London, pp. 117–135.

Ehleringer, J.R., and Mooney, H.A. 1978. Leaf hairs: Effects on physiological activity and adaptive value to a desert shrub. *Oecologia* **37:** 183–200.

Gates, D.M. 2003. *Biophysical Ecology*. Dover, Mineola, NY.

Gates, D.M., and Papian, L.E. 1971. *Atlas of Energy Budgets of Plant Leaves*. Academic Press, New York.

Holman, J.P. 2009. *Heat Transfer*, 10th ed. McGraw-Hill, New York.

Incropera, F.P., DeWitt, D.P., Bergman, T.L., and Lavine, A.S. 2007. *Fundamentals of Heat and Mass Transfer*, 6th ed. Wiley, New York.

Jones, H.G., Archer, N., Rotenberg, E., and Casa, R. 2003. Radiation measurement for plant ecophysiology. *J. Exp. Bot.* **54:** 879–889.

Kappen, L., Lange, O.L., Schulze, E.-D., Evenari, M., and Buschbom, U. 1979. Ecophysiological investigations on lichens of the Negev Desert. VI. Annual course of the photosynthetic production of *Ramalina maciformis* (Del.) Bory. *Flora* **168:** 85–108.

Kaviany, M. 2002. *Principles of Heat Transfer*. Wiley, New York.

Kreith, F., and Bohn, M.S. 2007. *Principles of Heat Transfer*, Int. ed. Brooks/Cole, Belmont, CA.

Leuning, R. 1987. Leaf temperatures during radiation frost part II. A steady state theory. *Agric. Forest Meteorol.* **42:** 135–155.

Lewis, D.A., and Nobel, P.S. 1977. Thermal energy exchange model and water loss of a barrel cactus, *Ferocactus acanthodes*. *Plant Physiol.* **60:** 609–616.

Monteith, J.L., and Unsworth, M.H. 2007. *Principles of Environmental Physics*, 3rd ed. Academic Press, Oxford, UK.

Mooney, H.A., and Ehleringer, J.R. 1978. The carbon gain benefits of solar tracking in a desert annual. *Plant Cell Environ.* **1:** 307–311.

Niklas, K.J. 1992. *Plant Biomechanics: An Engineering Approach to Plant Form and Function*. University of Chicago Press, Chicago, IL.

Nobel, P.S. 1974. Boundary layers of air adjacent to cylinders. Estimation of effective thickness and measurements on plant material. *Plant Physiol.* **54:** 177–181.

Nobel, P.S. 1975. Effective thickness and resistance of the air boundary layer adjacent to spherical plant parts. *J. Exp. Bot.* **26:** 120–130.

Nobel, P.S. 1988. *Environmental Biology of Agaves and Cacti*. Cambridge University Press, New York.

Passerat de Silans, A., Monteny, B.A., and Lhomme, J.P. 1997. The correction of soil heat flux measurements to derive an accurate surface energy balance by the Bowen ratio method. *J. Hydrol.* **188:** 453–465.

Rahman, M. (Ed.) 1997. *Laminar and Turbulent Boundary Layers*. Computational Mechanics, Southampton, UK.

Schlichting, H., and Gersten, K. 2003. *Boundary-Layer Theory*, 8th rev ed. Springer Verlag, New York.

Schuepp, P.H. 1993. Tansley review No 59. Leaf boundary layers. *New Phytol.* **125:** 477–507.

Seymour, R.S. 1997. Plants that warm themselves. *Sci. Am.* **276:** 104–109.

Smith, W.K., and Nobel, P.S. 1977. Temperature and water relations for sun and shade leaves of a desert broadleaf, *Hyptis emoryi*. *J. Exp. Bot.* **28:** 169–183.

Vogel, S. 1996. *Life in Moving Fluids: The Physical Biology of Flow*, 2nd rev ed. Princeton University Press, Princeton, NJ.

Major Equations

Flux density across boundary layer (8.2)

$$J_j = D_j \frac{\Delta c_j^{\mathrm{bl}}}{\delta^{\mathrm{bl}}} = g_j^{\mathrm{bl}} \Delta c_j^{\mathrm{bl}} = \frac{\Delta c_j^{\mathrm{bl}}}{r_j^{\mathrm{bl}}}$$

Conductance along stomatal length (8.5)

$$g_j^{\mathrm{st}} = \frac{J_j}{\Delta c_j^{\mathrm{st}}} = \frac{D_j n a^{\mathrm{st}}}{\delta^{\mathrm{st}} + r^{\mathrm{st}}} = \frac{1}{r_j^{\mathrm{st}}}$$

Diffusion coefficient (8.9)

$$D_j \cong D_{j0} \frac{P_0}{P} \left(\frac{T}{273}\right)^{1.8}$$

Water vapor resistance of leaf (8.16)

$$r_{wv}^{\mathrm{total}} \cong \frac{1}{D_{wv}} \left(\delta^{\mathrm{ias}} + \frac{\delta^{\mathrm{st}} + r^{\mathrm{st}}}{n a^{\mathrm{st}}} + \delta^{\mathrm{bl}}\right)$$

CO_2 resistances (8.22)

$$r_{\mathrm{CO_2}}^{j} = \frac{1}{A^{\mathrm{mes}}/A} \frac{1}{P_{\mathrm{CO_2}}^{j}} = \frac{\Delta x^j}{(A^{\mathrm{mes}}/A) D_{\mathrm{CO_2}}^{j} K_{\mathrm{CO_2}}^{j}} = \frac{1}{g_{\mathrm{CO_2}}^{j}}$$

Net rate of photosynthesis (8.32)

$$J_{\mathrm{CO_2}} = \frac{c_{\mathrm{CO_2}}^{\mathrm{ta}} - c_{\mathrm{CO_2}}^{\mathrm{chl}}}{r_{\mathrm{CO_2}}^{\mathrm{bl_l}} + r_{\mathrm{CO_2}}^{\mathrm{leaf_l}} + r_{\mathrm{CO_2}}^{\mathrm{mes}} + \left(1 + \frac{J_{\mathrm{CO_2}}^{\mathrm{r+pr}}}{J_{\mathrm{CO_2}}}\right) r_{\mathrm{CO_2}}^{\mathrm{chl}}}$$

$$= \frac{\Delta c_{\mathrm{CO_2}}^{\mathrm{total}}}{r_{\mathrm{CO_2}}^{\mathrm{total}}}$$

Water-use efficiency (8.39b)

$$\mathrm{WUE} = \frac{\text{mol CO}_2\text{ fixed}}{\text{mol H}_2\text{O transpired}} \qquad \text{mole basis}$$

8

Leaves and Fluxes

8.1. Resistances and Conductances—Transpiration 366
8.1A. Boundary Layer Adjacent to Leaf 368
8.1B. Stomata 371
8.1C. Stomatal Conductance and Resistance 373
8.1D. Cuticle 376
8.1E. Intercellular Air Spaces 376
8.1F. Fick's First Law and Conductances 377
8.2. Water Vapor Fluxes Accompanying Transpiration 380
8.2A. Conductance and Resistance Network 380
8.2B. Values of Conductances 383
8.2C. Effective Lengths and Resistance 384
8.2D. Water Vapor Concentrations, Mole Fractions and Partial Pressures for Leaves 385
8.2E. Examples of Water Vapor Levels in a Leaf 387
8.2F. Water Vapor Fluxes 389
8.2G. Control of Transpiration 390
8.3. CO_2 Conductances and Resistances 392
8.3A. Resistance and Conductance Network 392
8.3B. Mesophyll Area 394
8.3C. Resistance Formulation for Cell Components 397
8.3D. Partition Coefficient for CO_2 398
8.3E. Cell Wall Resistance 399
8.3F. Plasma Membrane Resistance 400
8.3G. Cytosol Resistance 401
8.3H. Mesophyll Resistance 402
8.3I. Chloroplast Resistance 402
8.4. CO_2 Fluxes Accompanying Photosynthesis 403
8.4A. Photosynthesis 403
8.4B. Respiration and Photorespiration 406
8.4C. Comprehensive CO_2 Resistance Network 410
8.4D. Compensation Points 412
8.4E. Fluxes of CO_2 416
8.4F. CO_2 Conductances 418
8.4G. Photosynthetic Rates 420
8.4H. Environmental Productivity Index 420
8.5. Water-Use Efficiency 422
8.5A. Values for WUE 423
8.5B. Elevational Effects on WUE 425
8.5C. Stomatal Control of WUE 426
8.5D. C_3 versus C_4 Plants 429
8.6. Problems 432
8.7. References and Further Reading 434

In this chapter we reconsider the transpiration of water and the photosynthetic fixation of carbon dioxide, with emphasis on the parts of the pathway and the overall rates for leaves. The driving forces for such fluxes are differences in CO_2 and H_2O concentrations or mole fractions. Resistances were first used to describe gas fluxes quantitatively for leaves by Henry Brown and Fergusson Escombe in 1900. Resistance networks were developed to specify which parts of the pathway are most limiting for photosynthesis or transpiration. Recently, the use of two different forms of conductance has become more popular, especially for describing transpiration, and we will consider both forms. We will see that greater stomatal opening may be an advantage for photosynthesis but can result in excessive transpiration. Consequently, a benefit/cost index, such as the amount of CO_2 fixed per unit of water lost, can be important for evaluating ecological aspects of gas exchange. Figure 8-1 indicates how the flux densities of water vapor and CO_2 can be measured for a leaf. Although we will usually be referring to leaves, the discussion of gas fluxes is also applicable to stems, flower petals, and other plant parts.

8.1. Resistances and Conductances—Transpiration

The resistances and the conductances that we will discuss in this section are those encountered by water vapor as it diffuses from the pores in the cell walls of mesophyll cells or from other sites of water evaporation into the turbulent air surrounding a leaf. We will define these quantities for the intercellular air spaces, the stomata, the cuticle (see Fig. 1-2 for leaf anatomy), and the boundary layer next to a leaf (Fig. 7-6). As considered later in this chapter, CO_2 diffuses across the same gaseous phase resistances or conductances as does water vapor and in addition across a number of other components in the liquid phases of mesophyll cells.

Throughout this book we have used equations of the following general form: Flux density = proportionality coefficient × force [as mentioned in Chapter 1 (Section 1.2A), a flux density, indicating amount area^{-1} time^{-1}, is often simply referred to as a flux]. The proportionality coefficients in such flux density expressions are measures of *conductivity*. To represent force, instead of using the gradient in chemical potential—which, as we noted in Chapter 3 (Section 3.2A), is a very general force—we often use quantities that are more convenient experimentally, such as differences in concentration (consider Fick's first law, $J_j = -D_j \partial c_j / \partial x$, Eq. 1.1). Such a "force," however, is not technically a force, as it does not have the proper units for force. Therefore, to be correct, the proportionality coefficient is not the conductivity, but rather the *conductance*:

$$\text{Flux density} = \text{conductivity} \times \text{force} \tag{8.1a}$$

$$\text{Flux density} = \text{conductance} \times \text{“force”} \tag{8.1b}$$

We might equally well choose an alternative form for the relation between forces and fluxes: Flux density = force/resistivity, where *resistivity* is the reciprocal of conductivity. In turn, we can define a *resistance*, which is the

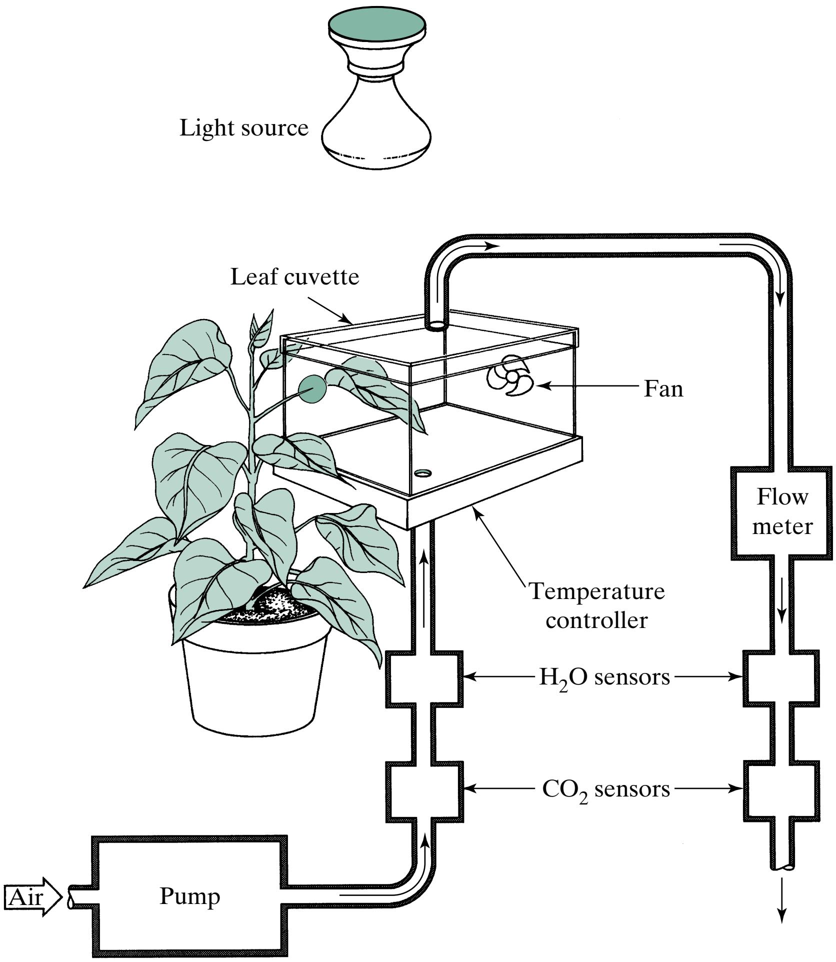


Figure 8-1. Experimental arrangement for measuring leaf transpiration and photosynthesis. The water vapor and the CO_2 contents of the gas entering a transparent chamber enclosing a leaf are compared with those leaving. A fan mixes the air in the leaf cuvette. If because of transpiration (J_{wv}) the water vapor concentration increases from 0.6 mol m^{-3} for the air entering to 1.0 mol m^{-3} for that leaving for a gas flow rate of 1.0×10^{-5} m^3 s^{-1} (10 cm^3 s^{-1}), then J_{wv} for a leaf of area 1.0×10^{-3} m^2 (10 cm^2) would be (1.0 mol m^{-3} – 0.6 mol m^{-3}) (1.0×10^{-5} m^3 s^{-1})/(1.0×10^{-3} m^2), or 0.004 mol m^{-2} s^{-1}.

reciprocal of conductance:

$$\text{Flux density} = \frac{\text{force}}{\text{resistivity}} \tag{8.1c}$$

$$\text{Flux density} = \frac{\text{“force”}}{\text{resistance}} \tag{8.1d}$$

To help understand the difference between resistivity and resistance, we will consider the electrical usage of these terms. Electrical resistivity is a fundamental physical property of a material—such resistivities are tabulated in handbooks. Electrical resistance, on the other hand, describes a particular component in an electrical circuit, i.e., a particular piece of material. We

can measure the magnitude of resistance in the laboratory or purchase a resistor of known resistance in an electronics store. Electrical resistivity, ρ, generally has the units of ohm m, whereas electrical resistance, R, is expressed in ohms ($R = \rho\Delta x/A$, where Δx is the distance for current flow through cross-sectional area A; see Chapter 3, Section 3.2). Besides differing conceptually (compare Eqs. 8.1c and 8.1d), resistance and resistivity thus differ in their units. In fact, much of our attention in this chapter will be devoted to the units for variables such as resistance, because many different systems are in use in plant physiology, ecology, agronomy, meteorology, soil science, and other related disciplines. In any case, resistivities and conductivities are intrinsic or physical parameters based on force, whereas resistances and conductances are engineering-type parameters that may be more convenient for a particular situation.

We will consider both the resistance and the conductance of a particular component involved in transpiration or photosynthesis, and we will present the expressions for both resistance and conductance for series versus parallel arrangements of components. Because a flux density is directly proportional to conductance (Eq. 8.1b) but is inversely proportional to resistance (Eq. 8.1d), conductance terminology is often more convenient for discussing plant responses to environmental factors. Also, conductance ranges from zero to some maximum value, whereas resistance has no upper limit, as it ranges from some minimum value to infinity. However, resistance terminology can be easier to use when a substance must cross a series of components in sequence, such as CO_2 diffusing across the cell wall, plasma membrane, cytosol, and chloroplast limiting membranes. To help become familiar with the various conventions in the scientific literature, we will use both systems, emphasizing conductances for transpiration and resistances for photosynthesis.

8.1A. Boundary Layer Adjacent to Leaf

To enter or leave a leaf, the molecules must diffuse across an air boundary layer at the leaf surface (boundary layers are discussed in Chapter 7, Section 7.2; also see Fig. 7-6). As a starting point for our discussion of gas fluxes across such air boundary layers, let us consider the one-dimensional form of Fick's first law of diffusion, $J_j = -D_j\partial c_j/\partial x$ (Eq. 1.1). As in Chapter 1 (Section 1.4B), we will replace the concentration gradient by the difference in concentration across some distance. In effect, we are considering cases that are not too far from equilibrium, so the flux density depends linearly on the force, and the force can be represented by the difference in concentration. The distance is across the air boundary layer adjacent to the surface of a leaf, δ^{bl} (Chapter 7, Section 7.2, presents equations for boundary layer thickness). Consequently, Fick's first law assumes the following form for the diffusion of species j across the boundary layer:

$$\begin{aligned} J_j &= -D_j\frac{\partial c_j}{\partial x} = D_j\frac{\Delta c_j}{\Delta x} = D_j\frac{\Delta c_j^{\text{bl}}}{\delta^{\text{bl}}} \\ &= g_j^{\text{bl}}\Delta c_j^{\text{bl}} = \frac{\Delta c_j^{\text{bl}}}{r_j^{\text{bl}}} \end{aligned} \qquad (8.2)$$

Equation 8.2 shows how the net flux density of substance *j* depends on its diffusion coefficient, D_j, and on the difference in its concentration, Δc_j^{bl}, across a distance δ^{bl} of the air. The net flux density J_j is toward regions of lower c_j, which requires the negative sign associated with the concentration gradient and otherwise is incorporated into the definition of Δc_j in Equation 8.2. We will specifically consider the diffusion of water vapor and CO_2 toward lower concentrations in this chapter. Also, we will assume that the same boundary layer thickness (δ^{bl}) derived for heat transfer (Eqs. 7.10–7.16) applies for mass transfer, an example of the *similarity principle.* Outside δ^{bl} is a region of air turbulence, where we will assume that the concentrations of gases are the same as in the bulk atmosphere (an assumption that we will remove in Chapter 9, Section 9.1B). Equation 8.2 indicates that J_j equals Δc_j^{bl} multiplied by a conductance, g_j^{bl}, or divided by a resistance, r_j^{bl}.

The air boundary layers on both sides of a leaf influence the entry of CO_2 and the exit of H_2O, as was clearly shown by Klaus Raschke in the 1950s. Movement of gas molecules across these layers is by diffusion in response to differences in concentration. Using Equation 8.2, we can represent the conductance and the resistance of a boundary layer of air as follows:

$$g_j^{bl} = \frac{J_j}{\Delta c_j^{bl}} = \frac{D_j}{\delta^{bl}} = \frac{1}{r_j^{bl}} \tag{8.3}$$

The SI units for the diffusion coefficient D_j are $m^2\ s^{-1}$ (see Chapter 1, Section 1.2A), and the thickness of the boundary layer δ^{bl} is in m. Therefore, g_j^{bl} is in $(m^2\ s^{-1})/(m)$, or $m\ s^{-1}$ (values are often expressed in $mm\ s^{-1}$), and r_j^{bl} is in $s\ m^{-1}$. J_j is expressed per unit leaf area, so g_j^{bl} and r_j^{bl} also relate to unit area of a leaf.

D_j is a fundamental measure of conductivity describing the diffusion of species *j* in a given medium (values are available in suitable handbooks and in Appendix I). On the other hand, δ^{bl} characterizes a particular situation, because the thickness of a boundary layer depends on the wind speed and the leaf size (see Chapter 7, Section 7.2B, e.g., Eq. 7.10). Thus, r_j^{bl} as defined by Equation 8.3 describes a particular component of the pathway, analogous to the use of resistance (R) in Ohm's law. Recalling the definition of a permeability coefficient ($P_j = D_jK_j/\Delta x$, Eq. 1.9), we recognize that D_j/δ^{bl} represents the permeability coefficient for substance *j*, P_j, as it diffuses across an air boundary layer of thickness δ^{bl} next to a leaf. When something readily diffuses across a boundary layer, P_j and g_j^{bl} are large and r_j^{bl} is small (see Eq. 8.3). With resistances and conductances, we can describe gas fluxes into and out of leaves using a number of relations that were originally developed for the analysis of electrical circuits.

We will next estimate values for g_{wv}^{bl} and r_{wv}^{bl}—the conductance and the resistance, respectively—for water vapor diffusing across the boundary layer of air next to a leaf. In Chapter 7 (Section 7.2B), we indicated that the boundary layer thickness in mm ($\delta_{(mm)}^{bl}$) for a flat leaf under field conditions is $4.0\sqrt{l_{(m)}/v_{(m\ s^{-1})}}$ (Eq. 7.10), where $l_{(m)}$ is the mean length of the leaf in the direction of the wind in m and $v_{(m\ s^{-1})}$ is the ambient wind speed in $m\ s^{-1}$. Let us consider a relatively thin boundary layer of 0.3 mm and a thick boundary

Table 8-1. Summary of Representative Values of Conductances and Resistances for Water Vapor Diffusing out of Leaves[a]

Component	Conductance		Resistance	
Condition	(mm s^{-1})	(mmol m^{-2} s^{-1})	(s m^{-1})	(m^2 s mol^{-1})
Boundary layer				
Thin	80	3200	13	0.3
Thick	8	320	130	3
Stomata				
Large area—open	20	800	50	1.3
Small area—open	1.8	72	560	14
Closed	0	0	∞	∞
Mesophytes—open	4–20	160–800	50–250	1.3–6
Xerophytes and trees—open	1–4	40–160	250–1000	6–25
Cuticle				
Crops	0.1–0.4	4–16	2500–10,000	60–250
Many trees	0.05–0.2	2–8	5000–20,000	125–500
Many xerophytes	0.01–0.1	0.4–4	10,000–100,000	250–2500
Intercellular air spaces				
Calculation	25–250	1000–10,000	4.0–40	0.1–1
Waxy layer				
Typical	50–200	2000–8000	5–20	0.1–0.5
Certain xerophytes	10	400	100	2.5
Typical	40–100	1600–4000	10–25	0.2–0.6
Leaf (lower surface)				
Crops—open stomata	2–10	80–400	100–500	2.5–13
Trees—open stomata	0.5–3	20–120	300–2000	8–50

[a]See text for specific calculation (conductances in mmol m^{-2} s^{-1} are from Eq. 8.8).

layer of 3 mm (see Fig. 7-7a for the values of $l_{(\mathrm{m})}$ and $v_{(\mathrm{m\ s^{-1}})}$ implied). For water vapor diffusing in air at 20°C, D_{wv} is 2.4×10^{-5} m^2 s^{-1} (Appendix I). Using Equation 8.3, for the thin boundary layer we obtain

$$g_{wv}^{\mathrm{bl}} = \frac{D_{wv}}{\delta^{\mathrm{bl}}} = \frac{(2.4 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{m^2\ s^{-1}})}{(0.3 \times 10^{-3}\ \mathrm{m})} = 8 \times 10^{-2}\ \mathrm{m\ s^{-1}} = 80\ \mathrm{mm\ s^{-1}}$$

$$r_{wv}^{\mathrm{bl}} = \frac{\delta^{\mathrm{bl}}}{D_{wv}} = \frac{(0.3 \times 10^{-3}\ \mathrm{m})}{(2.4 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{m^2\ s^{-1}})} = 13\ \mathrm{s\ m^{-1}}$$

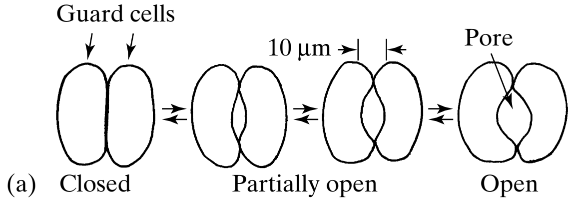
For the thick boundary layer, g_{wv}^{bl} is 8 mm s^{-1} and r_{wv}^{bl} is 130 s m^{-1} (Table 8-1).[1] Boundary layer conductances usually are larger and boundary layer resistances are smaller than their respective values for diffusion along the stomatal pores, which we will examine next.

1. Instead of estimating the boundary layer conductance or resistance based on δ^{bl} calculated by Equation 7.10, which cannot account for all of the intricacies of different leaf shapes, it is often more expedient to construct a filter-paper replica of the leaf. If this "leaf" is then moistened, the observed J_{wv} from it for a certain $\Delta c_{wv}^{\mathrm{bl}}$ will indicate g_{wv}^{bl} or r_{wv}^{bl} (Eq. 8.2) because water vapor then crosses only a boundary layer.

8.1B. Stomata

As we indicated in Chapter 1 (Section 1.1B), stomata (also known as "stomates") control the exit of water vapor from leaves and the entry of CO_2 into them. Although the epidermal cells occupy a much greater fraction of the leaf surface area than do the stomatal pores, the waxy cuticle covering the outer surface of the epidermal cells greatly reduces the water loss from their cell walls to the turbulent air surrounding a leaf, a process called *cuticular transpiration*. The usual pathway for water vapor leaving a leaf during transpiration is therefore through the stomata.

The stomatal aperture is controlled by the conformation of the two guard cells surrounding a pore (see Figs. 1-2 and 8-2). These cells are generally kidney-shaped (dumbbell-shaped in grasses), may be 40 μm long, and, unlike ordinary epidermal cells, usually contain chloroplasts. When the guard cells are relatively flaccid, the stomatal pore is nearly closed, as is the case for most plants at night. Upon illumination, guard cells take up K^+, which may increase in concentration by 0.2 to 0.5 M. The K^+ uptake raises the internal osmotic pressure (Chapter 2, Section 2.2F), thus lowering the internal water potential (Chapter 2, Section 2.2H); water then spontaneously flows from the epidermal cells into the guard cells by osmosis (Fig. 8-2). This water entry leads to an increase in the internal hydrostatic pressure of a pair of guard cells, causing them to expand and their cell walls on either side of the pore to become concave. As the kidney-shaped guard cells bow outward, an elliptical pore develops between the two cells (Fig. 8-2). The formation of this pore is a consequence of the anisotropy of the cell wall surrounding each guard cell, as the elastic properties (Chapter 1, Section 1.5C) vary with direction. The distance between the guard cells across the open pore (the pore "width") is usually 5 to 15 μm, and the major axis along



(b)		
	H^+	→ out
out ←	K^+	→ in
out ←	Cl^-	→ in
decreases ←	osmotic pressure	→ increases
out ←	water	→ in
decreases ←	hydrostatic pressure	→ increases
closes ←	stomatal pore	→ opens

Figure 8-2. Schematic representation for the opening and the closing of stomatal pores: (a) pair of guard cells as viewed toward the leaf surface and (b) cellular events involved for the guard cells. Arrows to the right in panels a and b are for stomatal opening and those to the left are for closing, in both cases occurring in the chronological order presented from top to bottom in panel b (K^+, Cl^-, and H_2O entering during opening come from the adjacent epidermal cells known as subsidiary cells). (Modified from *The Cactus Primer* by A. C. Gibson and P. S. Nobel, Harvard University Press, Cambridge, MA: Copyright © 1986 by A. C. Gibson and P. S. Nobel.)

the elliptical pore can be about 20 μm. The water relations of the special epidermal cells immediately surrounding the guard cells, which are referred to as *subsidiary cells*, are also crucial for stomatal opening. For instance, K^+ and Cl^- can move from the subsidiary cells to the guard cells, causing water to leave the subsidiary cells and their internal hydrostatic pressure P^i to decrease while P^i of the guard cells increases.

What controls the opening of stomatal pores? This question has proved difficult to answer, in part because a number of factors are simultaneously involved (Buckley, 2005; Eamus et al., 2008; Willmer and Fricker, 2005). An initial event apparently is the active H^+ extrusion from the guard cells (Fig. 8-2) using ATP, which lowers the electrical potential inside relative to outside [i.e., "hyperpolarizes" (makes more negative) the membrane potential, E_M; see Chapter 3, Section 3.1D, and Fig. 3-15] as well as lowers the internal concentration of H^+ (i.e., raises the internal pH). The lowered E_M favors passive K^+ uptake, the latter most likely by K^+ channels that are opened by the hyperpolarization of the plasma membrane (Fig. 3-15). After stomatal opening is initiated, the added K^+ within the guard cells is electrically balanced—partly by a Cl^- influx (perhaps via an OH^- antiporter or more likely by an H^+ symporter) and partly by the production of organic anions such as malate in the guard cells. For most plants, malate and Cl^- are the main counterions for K^+. For some leaves, especially those in the shade, stomatal opening increases with the light level only up to a photosynthetic photon flux (PPF) of about 200 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1}, but for others it may increase all the way up to full sunlight (approximately 2000 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1}).

The degree of stomatal opening often depends on the CO_2 concentration in the guard cells, which reflects their own carbohydrate metabolism as well as the CO_2 level in the air within the leaf. For instance, upon illumination the CO_2 concentration in the leaf intercellular air spaces is decreased by photosynthesis, resulting in decreased CO_2 levels in the guard cells, which triggers stomatal opening. CO_2 can then enter the leaf and photosynthesis can continue. In the dark, respiration generally leads to relatively high CO_2 levels in the leaves, which triggers stomatal closure. Lowering the CO_2 concentration in the ambient air can induce stomatal opening in the dark (again as a response to the low CO_2 level in the guard cells), which indicates that the energy for opening can be supplied by respiration. Stomata can also respond directly to light, which stimulates H^+ extrusion from guard cells, independent of the response to CO_2; the light responses involve the absorption of PPF by chloroplasts in the guard cells as well as another system that absorbs in the blue region and that is sensitive to low photon fluxes. Stomata tend to close as the leaf water potential decreases; for example, closure can be substantial at −1 MPa for garden vegetables, −2 MPa for corn (maize; *Zea mays*) and sorghum (*Sorghum bicolor*), but not until −6 MPa for various desert shrubs. In addition, stomata often tend to close partially as the relative humidity of the ambient air decreases, another way of regulating water loss. If a constant water vapor concentration difference from inside the leaf to the surrounding air is maintained, stomata in the light generally tend to open with increasing temperature up to that optimal for photophosphorylation, about 35°C; in the dark, the temperature-induced stomatal opening continues up to higher temperatures, possibly reflecting the higher optimal temperature for oxidative

phosphorylation than for photophosphorylation. Stomatal movements can also be controlled by hormones, including those produced in the roots as well as in the leaves. For instance, abscisic acid (ABA) increases in illuminated leaves during water stress. ABA affects ion channels in guard cells, leading to stomatal closure, which conserves water, although at the expense of a decrease in photosynthesis. The halftimes for stomatal movements are usually 5 to 20 minutes, with closing usually occurring more rapidly than opening.

Less is known about what triggers stomatal closure compared to opening. An initial event may be the opening of Ca^{2+} channels in the plasma membrane of the guard cells, causing Ca^{2+} entry into the cytosol and a depolarization of the plasma membrane. This depolarization and the increased cytosolic Ca^{2+} concentration apparently cause anion channels to open, allowing Cl^- and possibly malate to move out across the plasma membrane, leading to further depolarization. Such depolarization opens K^+ channels (Fig. 3-15), so K^+ also passively moves out of the guard cells. The decreased osmotic pressure causes water to move out, which in turn causes the hydrostatic pressure to decrease, leading to stomatal closure (Fig. 8-2).

For leaves of dicots, stomata are usually more numerous on the lower (abaxial) surface than on the upper (adaxial) one. In many dicots, stomata may even be nearly absent from the upper epidermis. On the other hand, many monocots and certain other plants with vertically oriented leaves have approximately equal numbers of stomata per unit area on each side. A frequency of 50 to 300 stomata per mm^2 is representative for the lower surface of leaves of most mesophytes; stomatal frequencies for leaves and photosynthetic stems of xerophytes are usually 20 to 80 per mm^2. The pores of the open stomata usually occupy 0.2 to 2% of the leaf surface area. Thus, the area for diffusion of gases through the stomatal pores in the upper or the lower epidermis of a leaf, A^{st}, is much less than is the leaf surface area, A.

8.1C. Stomatal Conductance and Resistance

We can apply Fick's first law in the form $J_j = D_j\Delta c_j/\Delta x$ (Eq. 8.2) to describe the diffusion of gases through stomatal pores. We will let the depth of a stomatal pore be δ^{st} (Fig. 8-3); the concentration of substance j changes by

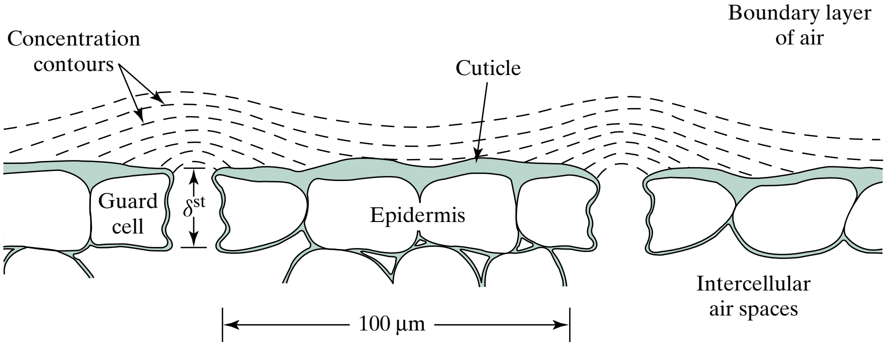


Figure 8-3. Anatomy near the leaf surface and the concentration contours of water vapor in the lower part of the air boundary layer outside open stomata.

Δc_j^{st} along the distance δ^{st}. For the steady state and ignoring the cuticular pathway, the amount of substance j moving per unit time toward or away from a leaf (J_j times the leaf area A) must equal the amount of substance j moving per unit time through the stomata (the flux density within the stomata, $D_j\Delta c_j^{st}/\delta^{st}$, times the stomatal area A^{st} that occurs for leaf area A). Recognition of this constricting or bottleneck effect ($A^{st} \ll A$) that stomata have on the area available for the diffusion of gas molecules and using Fick's first law (Eqs. 1.1 and 8.2) leads to the following relations:

$$J_jA = D_j\frac{\Delta c_j^{st}}{\delta^{st}}A^{st} \tag{8.4a}$$

or

$$J_j = D_j\frac{\Delta c_j^{st}}{\delta^{st}}\frac{A^{st}}{A} = \frac{D_jna^{st}}{\delta^{st}}\Delta c_j^{st} \tag{8.4b}$$

where n is the number of stomata per unit area of the leaf and a^{st} is the average area per stomatal pore. Thus na^{st} equals the fraction of the leaf surface area occupied by stomatal pores, A^{st}/A, where A^{st}/A can refer to the whole leaf or, more conveniently, to a part that is examined microscopically. The flux density J_j in Equation 8.4 refers to the rate of movement of substance j per unit area of the leaf, a quantity that is considerably easier to measure than is the flux density within a stomatal pore.

The area available for water vapor diffusion abruptly changes from A^{st} to A at the leaf surface. On the other hand, the three-dimensional surfaces of equal concentration fan out from each stomatal pore (Fig. 8-3). This geometrical aspect could introduce considerable complications, but fortunately a one-dimensional form for Fick's first law can still describe gases moving across the boundary layer next to a leaf, although we need to make an "end correction" to allow for the diffusion pattern at the end of the stomatal pores. The distance between stomata is often about 100 μm, which is much less than the thicknesses of nearly all boundary layers (see Fig. 7-7a). The three-dimensional concentration contours from adjacent stomata therefore tend to overlap in the lower part of the air boundary layer (Fig. 8-3). Because of this, the concentration of water vapor varies only slightly in planes parallel to the leaf surface but changes substantially in the direction perpendicular to the leaf surface, so we can generally use a one-dimensional form of Fick's first law. However, the concentration patterns on both ends of a stomatal pore cause the pore to have an effective depth greater than δ^{st} by about the mean "radius" of the pore, r^{st}. We will define r^{st} using $\pi(r^{st})^2 = a^{st}$, where a^{st} is the area of the pore. Formulas for the end correction due to the three-dimensional nature of the concentration gradients at each end of a stomatal pore vary and are more complicated than that used here, r^{st}, although differences among the various correction formulas are generally relatively small compared with δ^{st}.

For our applications to transpiration and photosynthesis, we will define a stomatal conductance, g_j^{st}, and a stomatal resistance, r_j^{st}, for the diffusion of species j using Equation 8.4:

$$g_j^{st} = \frac{J_j}{\Delta c_j^{st}} = \frac{D_jna^{st}}{\delta^{st} + r^{st}} = \frac{1}{r_j^{st}} \tag{8.5}$$

Equation 8.5 incorporates the effective depth of a stomatal pore, $\delta^{st} + r^{st}$, where r^{st} is the mean pore radius that we just introduced. When the width of a stomatal pore is 0.1 to 0.3 µm, as occurs when the pores are nearly closed, the mean free path for molecules diffusing in air is of the same magnitude as the dimensions of the opening. In particular, the mean free path of a gas molecule (the average distance that such a molecule travels before colliding with another gas molecule) is about 0.07 µm at pressures and temperatures normally experienced by plants. The molecular interactions with the sides of the stomatal pore are then important, which can affect the value of D_j. Even though we will ignore this interaction and will make certain geometrical approximations for δ^{st}, r^{st}, and a^{st}, Equation 8.5 can still closely estimate stomatal conductances and resistances [for a general treatment, including the effects of water vapor movements on the stomatal CO_2 conductance, see Field et al. (1989) and Leuning (1983)].

We now calculate two extreme values of the stomatal conductance for the diffusion of water vapor through open stomata. We will consider air at 25°C for which D_{wv} is 2.5×10^{-5} m^2 s^{-1} (Appendix I). The stomatal conductance tends to be high when a large portion of the leaf surface area (e.g., $na^{st} = 0.02$) is occupied by open stomata of relatively short pore depth (e.g., $\delta^{st} = 20$ µm). Using a mean radius r^{st} of 5 µm, Equation 8.5 predicts that the conductance then is

$$g_{wv}^{st} = \frac{D_{wv} na^{st}}{\delta^{st} + r^{st}} = \frac{(2.5 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{m}^2\ \text{s}^{-1})(0.02)}{(20 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m} + 5 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m})}$$
$$= 2.0 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{m s}^{-1} = 20\ \text{mm s}^{-1}$$

At the other extreme, the open stomata may occupy only 0.4% of the lower surface of a leaf ($na^{st} = 0.004$), and the pore depth may be relatively large, e.g., 50 µm. Again assuming that r^{st} is 5 µm, the stomatal conductance calculated using Equation 8.5 is 1.8 mm s^{-1}, which is a small value for open stomata (Table 8-1).

The stomatal conductance is usually 4 to 20 mm s^{-1} for water vapor diffusing out through open stomata of most mesophytes (r_{wv}^{st} of 50–250 s m^{-1}). Crops tend to have high maximal values of g_{wv}^{st}, whereas it may be only 1 mm s^{-1} for certain xerophytes and many trees with open stomata (Table 8-1). Some xerophytes have sunken stomata leading to another conductance in series with g_{wv}^{st}, which slightly decreases the overall conductance for water vapor loss by transpiration. As the stomatal pores close, the conductance decreases accordingly, because g_{wv}^{st} is proportional to the stomatal area by Equation 8.5. Because g_{wv}^{st} is the only conductance in the whole diffusion pathway that is variable over a wide range, changes in the openings of the stomatal pores can regulate the movement of gases into and out of leaves.[2]

2. Aquaporins (protein channels facilitating water movement across membranes; Chapter 3, Section 3.4A) can vary during development and with changes in environment conditions, which can affect the conductance or resistance for tissue water movement over longer time scales than for stomatal changes.

8.1D. Cuticle

Some water molecules diffuse across the waxy cuticle of the epidermal cells, the *cuticular transpiration*, which involves both liquid water and water vapor. We will identify a cuticular conductance, g_j^c, and a cuticular resistance, r_j^c, for the diffusion of species j across the cuticle. These quantities are in parallel with the analogous quantities for the stomata; that is, substance j can leave the leaf either by crossing the cuticle or by going through the stomatal pores (see Fig. 1-2). The conductance for cuticular transpiration, g_{wv}^c, usually ranges from 0.05 to 0.3 mm s^{-1} for different species, although it can be even lower for xerophytes with thick cuticles that greatly restrict water loss (Table 8-1). Thus g_{wv}^c is usually much smaller than g_{wv}^{st} for open stomata. When the stomata are nearly closed (low g_{wv}^{st}), cuticular transpiration can exceed the loss of water through the stomata. If the cuticle is mechanically damaged or develops cracks, as can occur for older leaves, g_{wv}^c can increase, and more water will then move out of a leaf via this pathway.

8.1E. Intercellular Air Spaces

Another conductance encountered by the diffusion of substance j in plant leaves is that of the intercellular air spaces, g_j^{ias}. The irregular shape of these air spaces (Fig. 1-2), which usually account for about 30% of the leaf volume, makes g_j^{ias} difficult to estimate accurately. However, the intercellular air spaces do act as an unstirred air layer across which substances must diffuse; hence we will describe g_j^{ias} by a relation similar to Equation 8.3 ($g_j^{bl} = D_j/\delta^{bl}$):

$$g_j^{ias} = \frac{D_j}{\delta^{ias}} = \frac{1}{r_j^{ias}} \tag{8.6}$$

For convenience, we will combine a number of factors to estimate the effective distance, δ^{ias}. For instance, we will let δ^{ias} include the effective length of the air-filled part of the cell wall pores from the cell wall surface to the sites where the evaporation of water or the dissolving of CO_2 takes place. This length is greater than the actual distance along the pores because we must correct for the decrease in the cross-sectional area available for diffusion, a decrease caused by the nongaseous parts of the cell wall. We will also include in δ^{ias} the effective length of the thin waxy layer that generally occurs on the surfaces of mesophyll cells. This thin waxy layer has a conductance of 50 to 200 mm s^{-1} for mesophytes but can be much lower for certain xerophytes for which cutinization of the mesophyll cells is substantial (Table 8-1). In addition, δ^{ias} incorporates the fact that the entire cross section of the mesophyll region is not available for diffusion of gases, as the flow is constricted to the intercellular air spaces, which have a smaller cross-sectional area than the corresponding leaf area; that is, A^{ias}/A is less than 1. Thus that part of δ^{ias} referring to the intercellular air spaces equals the actual distance involved times A/A^{ias}. If the mesophyll region were one-third air by volume, then A/A^{ias} would be 3 (Fig. 8-4). CO_2 and water vapor can enter or leave cells along the length of the intercellular air spaces, which further complicates the analysis.

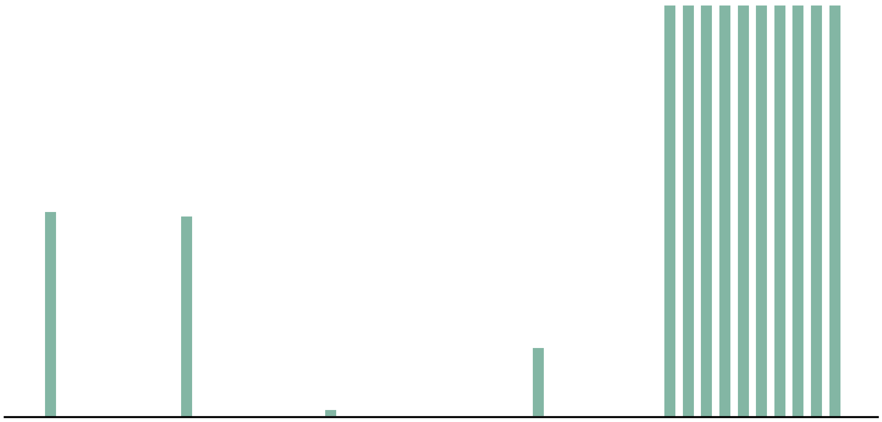


Figure 8-4. Approximate areas of parts of pathway involved in transpiration and photosynthesis. Length of bar(s) indicates area relative to the leaf area, A. The relatively small area occupied by the stomatal pores helps limit water loss during transpiration; the relatively large area of the mesophyll cells helps inward diffusion of CO_2 during photosynthesis.

The effective length δ^{ias}, including all the factors just enumerated, ranges from 100 µm to 1 mm for most leaves. Equation 8.6 indicates that the water vapor conductance across the intercellular air spaces then ranges from an upper value of

$$g_{wv}^{\text{ias}} = \frac{D_{wv}}{\delta^{\text{ias}}} = \frac{(2.5 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{m}^2\ \text{s}^{-1})}{(100 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m})} = 0.25\ \text{m s}^{-1} = 250\ \text{mm s}^{-1}$$

for a δ^{ias} of 100 µm down to 25 mm s^{-1} for a δ^{ias} of 1 mm (D_{wv} = 2.5×10^{-5} m^2 s^{-1} at 25°C; see Appendix I). Thus the conductance of the intercellular air spaces is relatively large (the resistance is relatively small) compared with the other conductances encountered by gases diffusing into or out of leaves (Table 8-1).

8.1F. Fick's First Law and Conductances

The H_2O lost from a leaf during transpiration evaporates from the cell walls of mesophyll cells (Figs. 1-2 and 8-4), the inner sides of guard cells, and the adjacent subsidiary cells. If the cell walls were uniform and wet, then most of the water would evaporate from the immediate vicinity of the stomatal pores. However, the waxy material that occurs on the cell walls within a leaf, especially on guard cells and other nearby cells, causes much of the water to evaporate from the mesophyll cells in the leaf interior. We can imagine that the water vapor moves in the intercellular air spaces (area A^{ias}) toward the leaf surface by diffusing down planar fronts of successively lower concentration. Our imaginary planar fronts are parallel to the leaf surface, so the direction for the fluxes is perpendicular to the leaf surface. When we reach the inner side of a stomatal pore, the area for diffusion is reduced from

A^{ias} to A^{st} (see Fig. 8-4). In other words, we are still discussing the advance of planar fronts in one dimension, but the flux is now constricted to the stomatal pores. (A small amount of water constituting the cuticular transpiration diffuses across the cuticle in parallel with the stomatal fluxes.) Finally, the movement of water vapor across the boundary layer at the leaf surface is again a one-dimensional diffusion process—in this case across a distance δ^{bl}. All fluxes of gases that we will consider here are moving perpendicular to the leaf surface, and thus a one-dimensional form of Fick's first law is usually appropriate (e.g., $J_j = D_j\Delta c_j/\Delta x = g_j\Delta c_j = \Delta c_j/r_j$). We generally express gas fluxes on the basis of unit area of one side of a leaf (Fig. 8-4). All conductances and resistances are also based on unit leaf area, as mentioned previously.

We next ask whether Δc_j is an accurate representation of the force for diffusion. Also, do the coefficients g_j and r_j relating flux densities to Δc_j change greatly as other quantities vary over physiological ranges? For instance, the coefficients could depend on the concentration of substance j or on the temperature. Finally, are other quantities—such as changes in chemical potential ($\Delta\mu_j$), water potential ($\Delta\Psi_{wv}$), or partial pressure (ΔP_j)—more appropriate than Δc_j for flux calculations? The ensuing derivation of another type of conductance is admittedly rather technical and refers to equations introduced in Chapters 2 and 3 as well as to the ideal gas law, but the resulting quantity is often much more appropriate for describing the conductances involved in transpiration than those presented so far in this chapter.

We will begin by writing the equation for the chemical potential of substance j in a gas phase, μ_j^{vapor}. By Equations 2.22 and Appendix IV.10, μ_j^{vapor} vapor is equal to $\mu_j^* + RT\ln(P_j/P_j^*)$, where P_j is the partial pressure of substance j in the gas phase and P_j^* is its saturation partial pressure at that temperature and 1 atm of total pressure (we are ignoring the gravitational term of μ_j^{vapor}, because over the short distances involved it does not influence the fluxes of gases into or out of leaves). At constant temperature the most general way to represent the force promoting the movement of substance j in the x-direction is $-\partial\mu_j^{vapor}/\partial x$ (Chapter 3, Section 3.2A), which becomes $-RT\partial[\ln(P_j/P_j^*)]\partial x$ for our representation of the chemical potential, and in turn equals $-(RT/P_j)\partial P_j/\partial x$. For an ideal or perfect gas, P_jV is equal to n_jRT, so P_j equals n_jRT/V. The total number of moles of substance j divided by the volume (n_j/V) is the concentration of substance j, c_j; hence P_j equals c_jRT. Using the very general flux relation given by Equation 3.7 [$J_j = u_jc_j(-\partial\mu_j/\partial x)$], we can then express the flux density of gaseous substance j at constant temperature as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} J_j &= u_jc_j\left(\frac{-\partial\mu_j^{vapor}}{\partial x}\right) = -u_jc_j\frac{RT}{P_j}\frac{\partial P_j}{\partial x} \\ &= -u_j\frac{P_j}{P_j}\frac{\partial P_j}{\partial x} = -u_j\frac{\partial P_j}{\partial x} = -u_jRT\frac{\partial c_j}{\partial x} \\ &= \frac{u_jRT}{\Delta x}\Delta c_j = \frac{D_j}{\Delta x}\Delta c_j = g_j\Delta c_j \end{aligned} \tag{8.7}$$

where in the last line we have replaced the negative concentration gradient, $-\partial c_j/\partial x$, by an average concentration gradient, $\Delta c_j/\Delta x$. Also, we have replaced u_jRT by D_j (see Chapter 3, Section 3.2A) and then used Equation

8.2, which indicates that g_j is equal to $D_j/\Delta x$. In essence, Equation 8.7 represents a thermodynamic derivation of Fick's first law for a gas phase.

Let us next examine the coefficients multiplying the various driving forces in Equation 8.7. First, we note that g_j is equal to $u_jRT/\Delta x$, so g_j is essentially independent of concentration—the very slight dependence of u_j or D_j on concentration can be ignored for gases. On the other hand, if we replace $\partial\mu_j^{\text{vapor}}/\partial x$ by $\Delta\mu_j^{\text{vapor}}/\Delta x$, the top line of Equation 8.7 becomes J_j equals $u_jc_j\Delta\mu_j^{\text{vapor}}/\Delta x$. The factor multiplying $\Delta\mu_j^{\text{vapor}}$ depends directly on concentration, so in addition to knowing $\Delta\mu_j^{\text{vapor}}$, we also need to specify c_j before calculating J_j. Moreover, c_j can vary near a leaf. Thus $\Delta\mu_j^{\text{vapor}}$ is not used to represent the force in the relations for transpiration or photosynthesis. Because the difference in the water potential of water vapor, $\Delta\Psi_{wv}$, is equal to $\Delta\mu_{wv}/\overline{V}_w$ (Eq. 2.24), Equation 8.7 becomes J_{wv} equals $(u_{wv}c_{wv}\overline{V}_w/\Delta x)\Delta\Psi_{wv}$, if differences in water potential are used to represent the force. Again, the coefficient depends on concentration, so using $\Delta\Psi_{wv}$ is not appropriate for describing transpiration. However, Equation 8.7 also indicates that J_j can equal $(u_j/\Delta x)\Delta P_j$. This leads to an alternative formulation for flux relations in which conductance has less dependence on air temperature and air pressure.

Instead of using partial pressures, this alternative formulation uses mole fractions to represent the driving force. We have already encountered a difference in mole fraction representing a driving force when we discussed water flow ($J_{V_w} = P_w\Delta N_w$; see Chapter 2, Section 2.4F). For the case of ideal gases, which approximates situations of biological interest, Dalton's law of partial pressures indicates that the mole fraction of species j, N_j, equals P_j/P, where P is the total pressure. We can then modify Equation 8.7 as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} J_j &= -u_j\frac{\partial P_j}{\partial x} = u_j\frac{\Delta P_j}{\Delta x} = \frac{u_jRT}{RT}\frac{P}{\Delta x}\frac{\Delta P_j}{P} \\ &= \frac{D_jP}{RT\Delta x}\Delta N_j = g_j'\Delta N_j \end{aligned} \tag{8.8}$$

where we have again incorporated the relationship between diffusion coefficients and mobility ($D_j = u_jRT$) to lead to the conductance g_j'.

Let us next see how the conductances in Equations 8.2 and 8.7 ($g_j = D_j/\Delta x$) and that introduced in Equation 8.8 [$g_j' = D_jP/(RT\Delta x) = g_jP/(RT)$] depend on air pressure and temperature. We have noted that, for gases, D_j depends inversely on pressure (see Chapter 1, Section 1.2D) and on temperature raised to the power 1.8 (see Chapter 3, Section 3.2A):

$$D_j \cong D_{j0}\frac{P_0}{P}\left(\frac{T}{273}\right)^{1.8} \tag{8.9}$$

where D_{j0} is the diffusion coefficient of substance j at 273 K (0°C) and an ambient air pressure of P_0 (often taken as 1 atm). As the air pressure decreases, D_j increases proportionally (Eq. 8.9), as does g_j ($g_j = D_j/\Delta x$; Eq. 8.2). On the other hand, as pressure changes, g_j' is unchanged [$g_j' = D_jP/(RT\Delta x)$; Eq. 8.8]. As air temperature increases, D_j and hence g_j increase approximately as $T^{1.8}$ (Eq. 8.9), whereas g_j' increases approximately as $T^{0.8}$. Thus g_j' has no dependence on pressure and much less dependence on

temperature than does g_j, and thus the former conductance is more appropriate for describing gas fluxes.

We can illustrate the difference between the two types of conductance by comparing a leaf with the same anatomical properties but under various environmental conditions. If a leaf at sea level and 10°C were heated to 40°C, g_j would increase 20%. If the leaf were then transferred at constant temperature to 2000 m, where the ambient air pressure is 22% lower than that at sea level, g_j would increase 28% more. On the other hand, heating from 10°C to 40°C would increase g'_j only 8%, and transferring the leaf to 2000 m with its lower atmospheric pressure would not affect g'_j.

Because ΔN_j is dimensionless, g'_j has the same units as J_j (e.g., mmol m^{-2} s^{-1}). At 1 atm and 20°C, P/RT is equal to 41.6 mol m^{-3}. Thus a conductance g_j of 1 mm s^{-1} then corresponds to a conductance g'_j of (1 mm s^{-1})(41.6 mol m^{-3}), or 41.6 mmol m^{-2} s^{-1}. In our discussion of transpiration and photosynthesis, we will use both forms of conductance and resistance (see Table 8-1) but will emphasize g'_j for transpiration.

8.2. Water Vapor Fluxes Accompanying Transpiration

The flux of water vapor out of a leaf during transpiration can be quantified using the conductances and the resistances just introduced. We will represent the conductances and the resistances using symbols (namely, –/\/\/\/–) borrowed from electrical circuit diagrams. Typical values for the components will be presented along with the resulting differences in water vapor concentration and mole fraction across them. Our analysis of water vapor fluxes will indicate the important control of transpiration that is exercised by the stomata.

8.2A. Conductance and Resistance Network

Water vapor that evaporates from cell walls of mesophyll cells or the inner side of leaf epidermal cells (Fig. 1-2) diffuses through the intercellular air spaces to the stomata and then into the outside air. We have already introduced the four components involved—two are strictly anatomical (intercellular air spaces and cuticle), one depends on anatomy and yet responds to metabolic as well as environmental factors (stomata), and one depends on leaf morphology and wind speed (boundary layer). Figure 8-5 summarizes the symbols and arranges them into an electrical circuit. We will analyze resistances and conductances for these components, some of which occur in series (i.e., in a sequence) and some in parallel (i.e., as alternatives).

The conductance g_{wv}^{ias} and the resistance r_{wv}^{ias} include all parts of the pathway from the site of water evaporation to the leaf epidermis. Water can evaporate at the air–water interfaces of mesophyll cells, at the inner side of epidermal cells (including guard cells), and even from cells of the vascular tissue in a leaf before diffusing in the tortuous pathways of the intercellular air spaces. The water generally has to cross a thin waxy layer on the cell walls of most cells within a leaf. After crossing the waxy layer, which can be up to 0.1 μm thick, the water vapor diffuses through the intercellular air spaces and then through the stomata (conductance = g_{wv}^{st}, resistance = r_{wv}^{st}; Fig. 8-5)

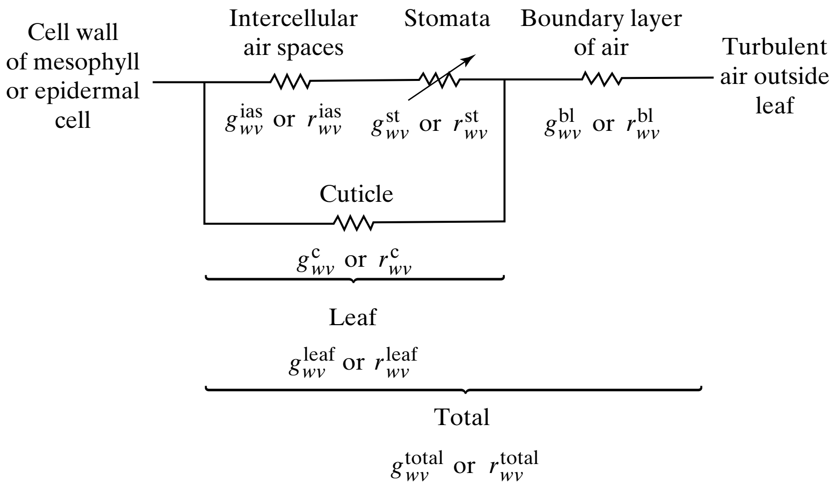


Figure 8-5. Conductances and resistances involved in water vapor flow accompanying transpiration, as arranged into an electrical circuit. The symbol for the stomatal component indicates that it is variable. Only one side of the leaf is considered.

to reach the air boundary layer adjacent to the leaf surface. Alternatively, water in the cell walls of interior leaf cells might move as a liquid to the cell walls on the cuticle side of epidermal cells, where it could evaporate and the vapor then diffuse across the cuticle (or water can move across the cuticle as a liquid) before reaching the boundary layer at the leaf surface. The pathway for such cuticular transpiration (conductance = g_{wv}^{c}, resistance = r_{wv}^{c}) is in parallel with the pathway for transpiration through the stomatal pores. For simplicity, we have not included in Figure 8-5 the intermediate case of water evaporating from the cell walls of mesophyll cells and then moving through the intercellular air spaces before crossing the waxy cuticle (the resistance of this pathway is indistinguishable from r_{wv}^{c} because $r_{wv}^{c} \gg r_{wv}^{ias}$). The final component encountered by the diffusing water vapor is the boundary layer just outside the leaf (conductance = g_{wv}^{bl}, resistance = r_{wv}^{bl}; Fig. 8-5).

We will analyze the electrical circuit presented in Figure 8-5 first in terms of resistances and then in terms of conductances. We begin by noting that the resistances r_{wv}^{ias} and r_{wv}^{st} occur in series. The total resistance of a group of resistors in series, r_{series}, is the sum of the individual resistances:

$$r_{series} = \sum_i r_i \tag{8.10a}$$

where r_i is the resistance of series resistor i. Thus the resistance of the pathway from the site of water evaporation across the intercellular air spaces and through the stomata is $r_{wv}^{ias} + r_{wv}^{st}$. This resistance is in parallel with r_{wv}^{c}. The reciprocal of the total resistance of a group of resistors in parallel is the sum of the reciprocals of the individual resistances:

$$\frac{1}{r_{parallel}} = \sum_i \frac{1}{r_i} \tag{8.10b}$$

where r_i is the resistance of parallel resistor i. For two resistors in parallel, r_{parallel} is equal to $r_1 r_2/(r_1 + r_2)$.[3]

The combined resistance for $r_{wv}^{\text{ias}} + r_{wv}^{\text{st}}$ and r_{wv}^{c} in parallel is the leaf resistance for water vapor, r_{wv}^{leaf}:

$$r_{wv}^{\text{leaf}} = \frac{(r_{wv}^{\text{ias}} + r_{wv}^{\text{st}})(r_{wv}^{\text{c}})}{r_{wv}^{\text{ias}} + r_{wv}^{\text{st}} + r_{wv}^{\text{c}}} \tag{8.11}$$

When the stomata are open, the cuticular resistance (r_{wv}^{c}) is usually much larger than the resistance in parallel with it, $r_{wv}^{\text{ias}} + r_{wv}^{\text{st}}$. In that case, the leaf resistance as given by Equation 8.11 is approximately equal to $r_{wv}^{\text{ias}} + r_{wv}^{\text{st}}$.

The leaf resistance is in series with that of the boundary layer, r_{wv}^{bl}. Thus the total resistance for the flow of water vapor from the site of evaporation to the turbulent air surrounding a leaf (r_{wv}^{total}) is $r_{wv}^{\text{leaf}} + r_{wv}^{\text{bl}}$ (see Fig. 8-5). We now must face the complication created by the two leaf surfaces representing parallel pathways for the diffusion of water vapor from the interior of a leaf to the surrounding turbulent air. We will represent the leaf resistance for the pathway through the upper (adaxial) surface by $r_{wv}^{\text{leaf}_\text{u}}$ and that for the lower (abaxial) surface by $r_{wv}^{\text{leaf}_\text{l}}$. Each of these resistances is in series with that of an air boundary layer—$r_{wv}^{\text{bl}_\text{u}}$ and $r_{wv}^{\text{bl}_\text{l}}$ for the upper and the lower leaf surfaces, respectively. The parallel arrangement of the pathways through the upper and the lower surfaces of a leaf leads to the following total resistance for the diffusion of water vapor from a leaf:

$$r_{wv}^{\text{total}} = \frac{\left(r_{wv}^{\text{leaf}_\text{u}} + r_{wv}^{\text{bl}_\text{u}}\right)\left(r_{wv}^{\text{leaf}_\text{l}} + r_{wv}^{\text{bl}_\text{l}}\right)}{r_{wv}^{\text{leaf}_\text{u}} + r_{wv}^{\text{bl}_\text{u}} + r_{wv}^{\text{leaf}_\text{l}} + r_{wv}^{\text{bl}_\text{l}}} \tag{8.12}$$

Now let us reconsider the analysis of the electrical circuit using conductances, which are the reciprocals of resistances (Eq. 8.1). For a group of conductances in series, the reciprocal of the total conductance ($1/g_{\text{series}}$) is the sum of the reciprocals of the individual conductances:

$$\frac{1}{g_{\text{series}}} = \sum_i \frac{1}{g_i} \tag{8.13a}$$

The conductance for a group of conductances in parallel (g_{parallel}) is the sum of the individual conductances:

$$g_{\text{parallel}} = \sum_i g_i \tag{8.13b}$$

Equation 8.13b indicates that each pathway in parallel increases the flow and hence increases the overall conductance, g_{parallel}.

Because the water vapor conductance of the intercellular air spaces and the stomata in series is $g_{wv}^{\text{ias}} g_{wv}^{\text{st}}/(g_{wv}^{\text{ias}} + g_{wv}^{\text{st}})$ (see Eq. 8-13a and Footnote 3), which in turn is in parallel with g_{wv}^{c}, the water vapor conductance of the leaf is

$$g_{wv}^{\text{leaf}} = \frac{g_{wv}^{\text{ias}} g_{wv}^{\text{st}}}{g_{wv}^{\text{ias}} + g_{wv}^{\text{st}}} + g_{wv}^{\text{c}} \tag{8.14}$$

3. For two resistances in parallel, $1/r_{\text{parallel}} = 1/r_1 + 1/r_2 = (r_2 + r_1)/(r_1 r_2)$, so $r_{\text{parallel}} = (r_1 r_2)/(r_1 + r_2)$.

Next we note that g_{wv}^{leaf} is in series with a boundary layer conductance, g_{wv}^{bl}, and that the two sides of a leaf act as parallel conductances for water vapor diffusing from the interior of a leaf. We therefore obtain the following expression for the total conductance of a leaf with air boundary layers on each side:

$$g_{wv}^{\text{total}} = \frac{g_{wv}^{\text{leaf}_u} g_{wv}^{\text{bl}_u}}{g_{wv}^{\text{leaf}_u} + g_{wv}^{\text{bl}_u}} + \frac{g_{wv}^{\text{leaf}_l} g_{wv}^{\text{bl}_l}}{g_{wv}^{\text{leaf}_l} + g_{wv}^{\text{bl}_l}} \tag{8.15}$$

Equations 8.11, 8.12, 8.14, and 8.15 are admittedly cumbersome—they are presented mainly to show how the influences of individual parts of the transpiration pathway in series and in parallel can be handled for resistances and for conductances. Moreover, they illustrate an approach that can be used in analogous flow situations to evaluate the importance of various components in series or in parallel.

8.2B. Values of Conductances

We generally assume that the average thickness of the boundary layer is the same on the two sides of a leaf, in which case $g_{wv}^{\text{bl}_u}$ is equal to $g_{wv}^{\text{bl}_l}$. However, this does not simplify our analysis of gas fluxes very much. Usually the boundary layer conductance is much greater than is that of one side of the leaf. If, in addition, $g_{wv}^{\text{leaf}_l}$ is much larger than $g_{wv}^{\text{leaf}_u}$, as can occur for leaves with stomata primarily on the lower surface, then the diffusion of water vapor is mainly out through the lower surface of the leaf. This is often the case for the leaves of deciduous trees. The total conductance for water vapor diffusion from the sites of evaporation inside a leaf to the turbulent air surrounding the leaf (g_{wv}^{total}) is then approximately $g_{wv}^{\text{leaf}_l} g_{wv}^{\text{bl}_l} / \left(g_{wv}^{\text{leaf}_l} + g_{wv}^{\text{bl}_l}\right)$ (see Eq. 8.15). For the symmetrical case in which $g_{wv}^{\text{leaf}_l}$ is the same as $g_{wv}^{\text{leaf}_u}$ and the boundary layers are of equal thickness (hence, $g_{wv}^{\text{bl}_l} = g_{wv}^{\text{bl}_u}$), the conductance is the same through either surface; g_{wv}^{total} is then twice as large as that through either surface, e.g., $2g_{wv}^{\text{leaf}_l} g_{wv}^{\text{bl}_l} / \left(g_{wv}^{\text{leaf}_l} + g_{wv}^{\text{bl}_l}\right)$ by Equation 8.15. This can occur for certain monocots—e.g., certain grasses, oats, barley, wheat, and corn—which can have fairly equal stomatal frequencies on the two leaf surfaces. For many plants, two to four times more stomata occur on the lower surface of the leaves than occur on the upper one, so A^{st}/A is considerably larger for the lower surface.

We next consider some representative values for the conductances encountered by water vapor as it diffuses out of leaves. For crop plants such as beet, spinach, tomato, and pea, g_{wv}^{ias} is usually 1600 to 4000 mmol m^{-2} s^{-1}, and for open stomata g_{wv}^{st} usually ranges from 200 to 800 mmol m^{-2} s^{-1}. Both conductances can be somewhat lower for other crops, but the maximum $g_{wv}^{\text{leaf}_l}$ is still 80 to 400 mmol m^{-2} s^{-1} for most cultivated plants. Compared to crop plants, the maximum g_{wv}^{leaf} is usually lower for leaves of deciduous trees and conifer needles (see Table 8-1). As the stomata close, g_{wv}^{st} and hence g_{wv}^{leaf} decrease accordingly. The minimum value for leaf water vapor conductance occurs for fully closed stomata and essentially equals the cuticular conductance (see Eq. 8.14). Measured values of g_{wv}^{c} vary considerably, in part

because of the difficulty in deciding when stomata are fully closed, and can be as low as 4 mmol m^{-2} s^{-1} for cultivated plants, two-fold lower for trees, and ten-fold lower for certain xerophytes (Table 8-1).

8.2C. Effective Lengths and Resistance

We next examine a simplified expression for the total water vapor resistance that often adequately describes diffusion of water vapor from the sites of evaporation in cell walls to the turbulent air surrounding a leaf and is useful for considering diffusion processes in general. We will consider the case in which nearly all of the water vapor moves out across the lower epidermis and when cuticular transpiration is negligible. By Equations 8.11 and 8.12, the total resistance then is

$$
\begin{aligned}
r_{wv}^{\text{total}} &\cong r_{wv}^{\text{leaf}_l} + r_{wv}^{\text{bl}_l} \\
&\cong r_{wv}^{\text{ias}} + r_{wv}^{\text{st}_l} + r_{wv}^{\text{bl}_l} \\
&= \frac{1}{D_{wv}}\left(\delta^{\text{ias}} + \frac{\delta^{\text{st}} + r^{\text{st}}}{na^{\text{st}}} + \delta^{\text{bl}}\right)
\end{aligned}
\tag{8.16}
$$

where Equations 8.3, 8.5, and 8.6 have been used to obtain the bottom line.

When diffusion is described by a one-dimensional form of Fick's first law, Equation 8.16 indicates that each part of the pathway contributes its own effective length influencing the movement of water vapor out of a leaf. For instance, the effective length of the boundary layer is its thickness, δ^{bl}. The distance δ^{ias} includes the effective depth of the cell wall pores, the effective thickness of the waxy layer on the mesophyll cells, and the constriction on the region available for diffusion of gases within a leaf caused by the presence of mesophyll cells. A similar constricting effect greatly increases the effective length of the stomatal pores over the value of $\delta^{\text{st}} + r^{\text{st}}$. Specifically, Equation 8.16 indicates that the effective length of the stomatal pores is $(\delta^{\text{st}} + r^{\text{st}})/(na^{\text{st}})$, which is considerably greater than $\delta^{\text{st}} + r^{\text{st}}$ because na^{st} is much less than 1 (recall that $na^{\text{st}} = A^{\text{st}}/A$, so na^{st} is a dimensionless number indicating the fraction of the surface area occupied by stomatal pores). The large effective length of the stomatal pores caused by the factor $1/na^{\text{st}}$ is an alternative way of viewing the constricting effect of the stomata that was mentioned previously (e.g., see Fig. 8-4).

If we need to incorporate another series resistance for gaseous diffusion, we can include its effective length within the parentheses in Equation 8.16. For instance, the stomata in some xerophytes and conifers occur sunken beneath the leaf surface in cavities or crypts. We can estimate the effective length of this additional part of the pathway by using appropriate geometrical approximations involving the depth of the crypts and the fraction of the leaf surface area that they occupy (analogous to the geometrical considerations for stomata; Section 8.1C). The effective length divided by the diffusion coefficient gives the resistance of this new part of the pathway. Many leaves are covered by epidermal "hairs," which can be unicellular projections from the epidermal cells or multicellular appendages with the cells occurring in sequence. Such *trichomes* cause an additional air layer to be held next to the

leaf surface. The thickness of this layer can equal the average distance that the hairs project perpendicularly away from the leaf surface (more than 1 mm for some leaves). This length can be added within the parentheses in Equation 8.16 to calculate the overall resistance. In any case, the extra resistance for water vapor diffusion caused by the hairs equals the thickness of the additional air layer divided by D_{wv}. Some water may evaporate from the surfaces of the epidermal hairs; such evaporation can lead to a substantial complication in the analysis of water vapor fluxes for leaves with numerous trichomes.

8.2D. Water Vapor Concentrations, Mole Fractions and Partial Pressures for Leaves

As we can see from relations such as Equation 8.2 ($J_j = g_j\Delta c_j = \Delta c_j/r_j$), the conductances or the resistances of the various parts of the pathway determine the drop in concentration across each component when the flux density is constant. Here we will apply this condition to a consideration of water vapor concentration and mole fraction in a leaf, and we will also consider water vapor partial pressures. In addition we will discuss the important effect of temperature on the water vapor content of air (also considered in Chapter 2, Section 2.4C).

Let us represent the difference in water vapor concentration across the intercellular air spaces by $\Delta c_{wv}^{\text{ias}}$, that across the stomatal pores by $\Delta c_{wv}^{\text{st}}$, and that across the air boundary layer adjacent to the leaf surface by $\Delta c_{wv}^{\text{bl}}$. Then the overall drop in water vapor concentration from the cell walls where the water evaporates to the turbulent air surrounding a leaf, $\Delta c_{wv}^{\text{total}}$, is

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta c_{wv}^{\text{total}} &= c_{wv}^{\text{e}} - c_{wv}^{\text{ta}} \\ &= \Delta c_{wv}^{\text{ias}} + \Delta c_{wv}^{\text{st}} + \Delta c_{wv}^{\text{bl}}\end{aligned} \tag{8.17}$$

where c_{wv}^{e} is the concentration of water vapor at the evaporation sites in the cell wall pores and c_{wv}^{ta} is its value in the turbulent air surrounding the leaf. We also note that $\Delta c_{wv}^{\text{ias}} + \Delta c_{wv}^{\text{st}} = \Delta c_{wv}^{\text{c}}$, the difference in water vapor concentration from the cell walls of mesophyll or epidermal cells to and across the cuticle to the leaf surface, because the end points of the pathway are essentially the same in each case (Fig. 8-5).

The rate of water vapor diffusion per unit leaf area, J_{wv}, equals the difference in water vapor concentration multiplied by the conductance across which Δc_{wv} occurs ($J_j = g_j/\Delta c_j$; Eq. 8.2). In the steady state (Chapter 3, Section 3.2B), when the flux density of water vapor and the conductance of each component are constant with time, this relation holds both for the overall pathway and for any individual segment of it. Because some water evaporates from the cell walls of mesophyll cells along the pathway within the leaf, J_{wv} is actually not spatially constant in the intercellular air spaces. For simplicity, however, we generally assume that J_{wv} is unchanging from the mesophyll cell walls out to the turbulent air outside a leaf. When water vapor moves out only across the lower epidermis of the leaf, and when cuticular transpiration is negligible, we obtain the following relations in the

steady state:

$$\begin{aligned} J_{wv} &= g_{wv}^{\text{ias}}\Delta c_{wv}^{\text{ias}} = g_{wv}^{\text{st}}\Delta c_{wv}^{\text{st}} \\ &= g_{wv}^{\text{bl}}\Delta c_{wv}^{\text{bl}} = g_{wv}^{\text{total}}\Delta c_{wv}^{\text{total}} \end{aligned} \tag{8.18}$$

Equation 8.18 indicates that the drop in water vapor concentration across a particular component is inversely proportional to its conductance when J_{wv} is constant (Δc_{wv} is then directly proportional to the resistance because J_{wv} equals $\Delta c_{wv}/r_{wv}$). Because g_{wv}^{ias} and g_{wv}^{bl} are usually larger than g_{wv}^{st} when the stomata are open (Table 8-1), by Equation 8.18 the largest Δc_{wv} then occurs across the stomata.

The quantity c_{wv} is sometimes referred to as the *absolute humidity*. Its value in the turbulent air generally does not change very much during a day unless there is precipitation or other marked changes in the weather occur, whereas the *relative humidity* can vary greatly as the air temperature changes. For instance, air that is saturated with water vapor at 20°C (100% relative humidity) decreases to 57% relative humidity when heated at constant pressure to 30°C, although the absolute humidity does not change then. Most data for c_{wv} are expressed as mass of water/unit volume of air, and therefore we will use g m^{-3} as one of our units for water vapor concentration. A unit for c_{wv} that is often more appropriate is mol m^{-3}, and we will use it as well (Fig. 8-6).

Equations 8.17 and 8.18 can be adapted to water vapor expressed as a mole fraction, N_{wv}, simply by replacing c with N throughout. For instance,

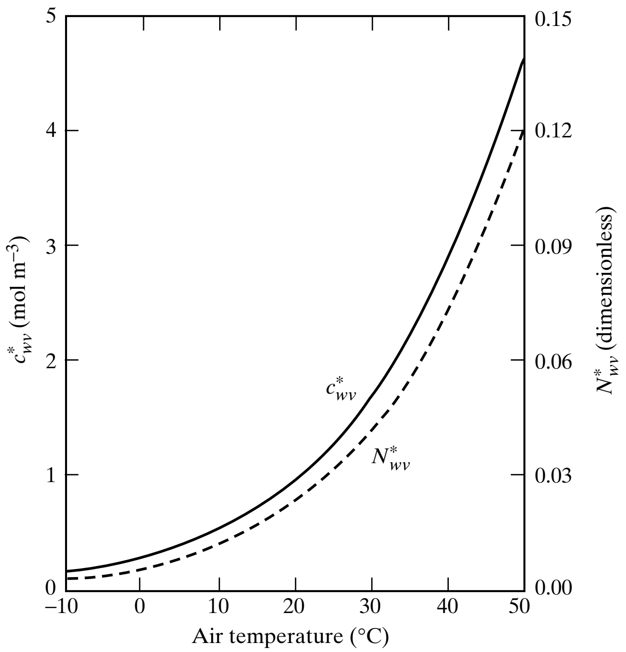


Figure 8-6. Variation in saturation values of water vapor concentration (c^*_{wv}) and mole fraction (N^*_{wv}) with temperature. Ambient air pressure (needed to determine N^*_{wv}) was assumed to be 1 atm (0.1013 MPa). Digital values of c^*_{wv} and N^*_{wv} versus temperature are presented in Appendix I.

$\Delta N_{wv}^{\text{total}}$ equals $N_{wv}^{\text{e}} - N_{wv}^{\text{ta}}$ and J_{wv} equals $g_{wv}^{\text{total}}\Delta N_{wv}^{\text{total}}$ (we will use the same symbol for conductance in either system, the units being dictated by whether changes in concentration or mole fraction represent the driving force). Also, $\Delta N_{wv}^{\text{total}}$ is equal to $\Delta N_{wv}^{\text{ias}} + \Delta N_{wv}^{\text{st}} + \Delta N_{wv}^{\text{bl}}$ (see Eq. 8.17). The magnitude of each of these differences in water vapor mole fraction is inversely proportional to the conductance across which the drop occurs—i.e., $g_{wv}^{\text{x}}\Delta N_{wv}^{\text{x}} = g_{wv}^{\text{total}}\Delta N_{wv}^{\text{total}}$—and so ΔN_{wv}^{x} is larger when g_{wv}^{x} is smaller, where superscript x refers to any series component in the pathway (see Eq. 8.18).

The commonly used expression "Vapor Pressure Deficit" or "VPD" is the partial pressure of water vapor in the leaf intercellular air spaces, P_{wv}^{leaf}, minus the partial pressure of water vapor in the turbulent air outside the boundary layer, P_{wv}^{ta}. Often P_{wv}^{leaf} is calculated as the saturation water vapor partial pressure at the temperature of the leaf (for a leaf water potential of -1.4 MPa at 20°C, this leads to an error of only 1% in P_{wv}^{leaf}; Table 2-1). P_{wv}^{ta} equals the air relative humidity times the saturation water vapor partial pressure (P_{wv}^{*}) at the air temperature (values of P_{wv}^{*} in kPa, which can be used to calculate P_{wv}^{leaf} and P_{wv}^{ta}, are given at the end of Appendix I).

Water vapor is generally the third most prevalent gas in air, although its mole fraction is relatively low compared to mole fractions for O_2 or N_2. Its saturation value is quite temperature dependent; for example, N_{wv}^{*} at 1 atm is 0.0231 at 20°C and 0.0419 at 30°C (Fig. 8-6; N_{wv}^{*} changes inversely with atmospheric pressure, as it equals P_{wv}^{*}/P). In fact, the water vapor content of air at saturation (represented by c_{wv}^{*}, N_{wv}^{*}, or P_{wv}^{*}) increases nearly exponentially with temperature [Fig. 8-6b; it may be helpful for understanding this temperature dependence to note that the fraction of molecules in the upper part of the Boltzmann energy distribution (see Eq. 3.22) that have a high enough energy to escape from the liquid increases exponentially with temperature]. Appendix I lists c_{wv}^{*}, N_{wv}^{*}, and P_{wv}^{*} at various temperatures from -30°C to 60°C.

8.2E. Examples of Water Vapor Levels in a Leaf

We will now consider the actual relative humidities as well as the concentrations and mole fractions of water vapor in different parts of the transpiration pathway associated with an actively transpiring leaf (Fig. 8-7). We will suppose that the leaf temperature is 25°C and that the turbulent air surrounding the leaf is at 20°C with a relative humidity (RH) of 50%, which corresponds to a c_{wv}^{ta} of (0.50)(0.96 mol m^{-3}) or 0.48 mol m^{-3} and an N_{wv}^{ta} of (0.50)(0.02308), or 0.0115 (see Appendix I, where c_{wv}^{*} and N_{wv}^{*} are given for 20°C and other temperatures from -30°C to 60°C; also note that c_{wv} or N_{wv} equals RH times c_{wv}^{*} or N_{wv}^{*}).

We will assume that the water vapor in the pores of the cell walls of mesophyll cells (Ψ_{wv}^{e}) is in equilibrium with the water in the cell wall and that the water potential (defined in Chapter 2, Section 2.2H) in the cell wall, $\Psi^{\text{cell wall}}$, is -1.0 MPa. Using Equation 2.24 and omitting the gravity term, the corresponding % relative humidity (RH) at 25°C is

$$\Psi^{\text{cell wall}} = \Psi_{wv}^{\text{e}} = \frac{RT}{\overline{V}_w} \ln\left(\frac{\text{RH}}{100}\right)$$

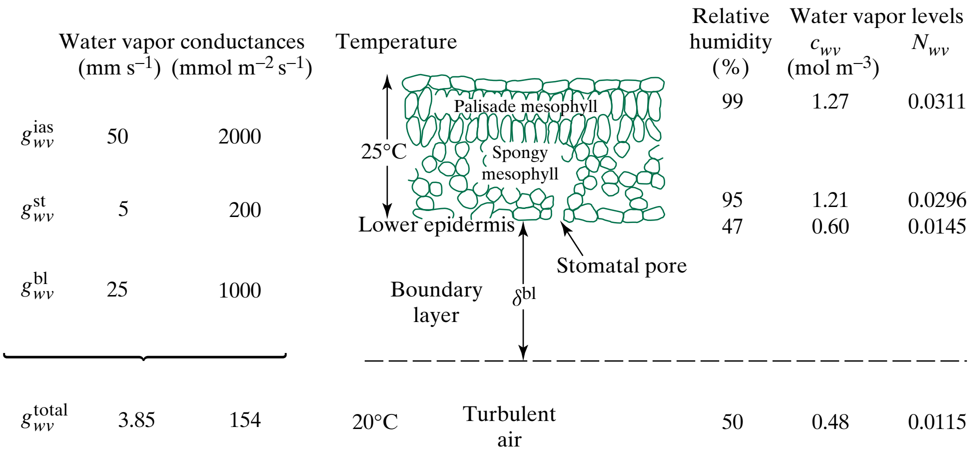


Figure 8-7. Representative values of quantities influencing the diffusion of water vapor out of an actively transpiring leaf. Conductances are given for the indicated parts of the pathway assuming that water moves out only through the lower leaf surface and ignoring cuticular transpiration.

or, noting that $RT/\overline{V}_w$ is 137.3 MPa at 25°C (Appendix I),

$$
\begin{aligned}
\text{RH} &= 100\, e^{\overline{V}_w \Psi^{\text{cell wall}}/RT} \\
&= 100\, e^{(-1.0\ \text{MPa}/137.3\ \text{MPa})} = 99.3\%
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus the air in the pores of the mesophyll cell walls is nearly saturated with water vapor. From Appendix I, c_{wv}^* is 1.28 mol m^{-3} and N_{wv}^* is 0.0313 at 25°C; therefore, 99.3% relative humidity corresponds to a c_{wv}^e of (0.993) (1.28 mol m^{-3}), or 1.27 mol m^{-3}, and an N_{wv}^e of (0.993)(0.03128) or 0.0311 (see end of Appendix I). Hence, by Equation 8.17 ($\Delta c_{wv}^{total} = c_{wv}^e - c_{wv}^{ta}$), the difference in water vapor concentration from the mesophyll cell walls to the turbulent air is

$$\Delta c_{wv}^{total} = 1.27\ \text{mol m}^{-3} - 0.48\ \text{mol m}^{-3} = 0.79\ \text{mol m}^{-3}$$

and

$$\Delta N_{wv}^{total} = N_{wv}^e - N_{wv}^{ta} = 0.0311 - 0.0115 = 0.0196$$

as is presented in Figure 8-7.[4]

4. The transpirational efflux of water vapor from a leaf leads to the conclusion that N_{wv}^e is greater than N_{wv}^{ta}, so N_{air}^{ta} must be greater than N_{air}^e, where N_{air} represents the mole fraction of everything but water vapor—i.e., $N_{wv} + N_{air} = 1$ (there is a relatively small ΔN_{CO_2} resulting from CO_2 uptake during photosynthesis, which is mostly compensated for by a small ΔN_{O_2} acting in the opposite direction). Thus we expect a diffusion of air (mainly N_2) into a leaf, which can lead to slightly higher air pressures in leaves (generally 0.1–1 kPa higher) compared to the ambient air pressure outside (the continual supply of water vapor by evaporation inside the leaf and its removal in the outside turbulent air is necessary for the maintenance of this pressure difference). The internally elevated pressure can lead to mass flow of air within a plant, such as along the stems of the yellow waterlily, *Nuphar luteum*, where a ΔN_{wv} of 0.01 is accompanied by an air pressure that is 0.2 kPa higher inside a young leaf than in the adjacent ambient air (Dacey, 1981).

Figure 8-7 also indicates specific values of the conductances as well as the overall series conductance for the diffusion of water vapor from the sites of evaporation to the turbulent air. The largest drop in water vapor content occurs across the stomatal pores because they have the smallest conductance in the current case. For instance, ΔN_{wv}^{st} is equal to $g_{wv}^{total}\Delta N_{wv}^{total}/g_{wv}^{st}$, which is (154 mmol m^{-2} s^{-1})(0.0196)/(200 mmol m^{-2} s^{-1}), or 0.0151 (Fig. 8-7). The intracellular air spaces here have the largest conductance and hence the smallest ΔN_{wv}, 0.0015.

We note that a small drop in relative humidity, here from 99% in the cell walls of mesophyll cells to 95% at the inner side of the stomata, is necessary for the diffusion of water vapor across the intercellular air spaces. The greater the fraction of water evaporating from near the guard cells, the smaller is the drop across the intercellular air spaces. A large humidity drop occurs across the stomatal pores, such that the relative humidity is 47% at the leaf surface (Fig. 8-7). After crossing the stomatal pores, water vapor moves energetically downhill as it diffuses across the boundary layer from 47% relative humidity at 25°C to 50% relative humidity at 20°C in the turbulent air surrounding the leaf (Fig. 8-7). Because a temperature change occurs in this part of the pathway, the driving force for the diffusion of water vapor must be expressed in terms of the difference in concentration or mole fraction and not the change in relative humidity.

In this text we assume that a leaf has a uniform temperature. However, temperature differences of a few degrees Celsius can develop across the width of a moderate-sized leaf at a moderate wind speed of 1 m s^{-1}, reflecting differences in boundary layer thickness and spatial stomatal variation. The turbulent air outside a leaf generally has a different temperature than the leaf. Fick's first law (e.g., $J_j = D_j\Delta c_j/\Delta x$; Eq. 8.2) strictly applies only to isothermal situations. For instance, D_j depends on the absolute temperature (D_j is proportional to $T^{1.8}$; Eq. 8.9), so $\Delta(D_jc_j)$ may be nonzero and lead to a flux even when Δc_j, is zero. Fortunately, even when there are temperature differences between leaves and the turbulent air, Fick's first law in the form of Equation 8.2 generally proves adequate for describing the fluxes of H_2O and CO_2, our primary concern in this chapter. However, flux relations based on differences in mole fraction (e.g., Eq. 8.8), which have a much lower dependence on temperature for their conductance, are preferred when there is a temperature difference from leaf to air, as is usually the case.

8.2F. Water Vapor Fluxes

Based on quantities in Figure 8-7, we can readily calculate the flux density of water vapor moving out of the lower side of a leaf. Specifically, J_{wv}^{l} is equal to $g_{wv}^{total}\Delta c_{wv}^{total}$ or $g_{wv}^{total}\Delta N_{wv}^{total}$, for example

$$\begin{aligned} J_{wv}^{l} &= (154\ \text{mmol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1})(0.0311 - 0.0115) \\ &= 3.0\ \text{mmol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1} \end{aligned}$$

For simplicity, we have been considering the movement of water vapor across only the lower surface of a leaf and we have ignored cuticular

transpiration. Cuticular transpiration is usually small compared with transpiration through open stomata that is in parallel with it; that is, the decrease in water vapor level across the cuticle is essentially the same as the decrease across the stomata, whereas the stomatal conductance for open stomata is much greater than the cuticular conductance (see Table 8-1). We can add the cuticular transpiration to that through the stomata to get the total transpiration through one side of a leaf. To obtain the overall rate of water vapor diffusing out of both sides of a leaf, we can scale up J^{l}_{wv} calculated for the lower surface by an appropriate factor—the reciprocal of the fraction of transpiration through the lower surface. For instance, 70% of the water loss in transpiration might be through the lower surface for a representative mesophyte. When both leaf surfaces are considered, the total flux density of water, J_{wv}, then is

$$J_{wv} = J^{\mathrm{l}}_{wv}/0.70 = (3.0\,\mathrm{mmol\,m^{-2}\,s^{-1}})/(0.70) = 4.3\,\mathrm{mmol\,m^{-2}\,s^{-1}}$$

($J^{\mathrm{l}}_{wv} = 0.70\ J_{wv}$ means that $J_{wv} = J^{\mathrm{l}}_{wv}/0.70$). Alternatively, we could use the actual g^{total}_{wv} as given by Equation 8.15, which considers the two leaf surfaces acting in parallel, or we could measure g^{total}_{wv} experimentally. This conductance times Δc_{wv} or ΔN_{wv}, as appropriate, gives J_{wv} through both surfaces, but expressed per unit area of one side of the leaf, which is the usual convention. For many cultivated plants and other mesophytes under these conditions ($T^{\mathrm{leaf}} = 25°\mathrm{C}$, $T^{\mathrm{ta}} = 20°\mathrm{C}$, relative humidity$^{\mathrm{ta}}$ = 50%), J_{wv} for open stomata is 2 to 5 mmol m^{-2} s^{-1}, so our example represents a slightly above-average transpiration rate. Many systems of units are used for transpiration rates; conversion factors for the more common ones are summarized in Table 8-2.

Let us next relate the rate of water loss by transpiration to the water content of a leaf. For a 300-μm-thick leaf containing 30% intercellular air spaces by volume, the nongaseous material corresponds to a thickness of (0.70)(300 μm), or 210 μm. Water typically comprises about 90% of a leaf's mass, so the water thickness is about (0.90)(210 μm), or 190 μm. The density of water is 1000 kg m^{-3}, which corresponds to (1000 kg m^{-3})/(18 g mol^{-1}), or 56 kmol m^{-3}, so the leaf has

$$(190 \times 10^{-6}\,\mathrm{m})(56 \times 10^{3}\,\mathrm{mol\,m^{-3}}) = 11\,\mathrm{mol\ water\ m^{-2}}$$

For the calculated J_{wv} of 4.3 mmol m^{-2} s^{-1}, this amount of water could be transpired in

$$\frac{(11\,\mathrm{mol\,m^{-2}})}{(4.3 \times 10^{-3}\,\mathrm{mol\,m^{-2}\,s^{-1}})} = 2600\,\mathrm{s}$$

which is 43 minutes. Hence, such a transpiring leaf must be continually supplied with water, which is discussed in Chapter 9 (Section 9.4).

8.2G. Control of Transpiration

We will now reconsider the values of the various conductances affecting the diffusion of water vapor through the intercellular air spaces, out the stomata, and across the air boundary layer at the leaf surface. Usually g^{ias}_{wv} is relatively large, g^{bl}_{wv} is rarely less than 500 mmol m^{-2} s^{-1}, but g^{st}_{wv} is generally less than

Table 8-2. Conversion Factors for Some of the More Common Units Used for Transpiration, CO_2 Levels, and Photosynthesis[a]

Transpiration unit	($mmol\ m^{-2}\ s^{-1}$)	($mg\ m^{-2}\ s^{-1}$)
$\mu mol\ H_2O\ cm^{-2}\ s^{-1}$	10	180.2
$mol\ H_2O\ m^{-2}\ hour^{-1}$	0.278	5.01
$\mu g\ H_2O\ cm^{-2}\ s^{-1}$	0.555	10
$\mu g\ H_2O\ cm^{-2}\ minute^{-1}$	0.00925	0.1667
$mg\ H_2O\ dm^{-2}\ minute^{-1}$	0.0925	1.667
$g\ H_2O\ dm^{-2}\ hour^{-1}$	1.542	27.8
$kg\ H_2O\ m^{-2}\ hour^{-1}$	15.42	278

CO_2 level	($mmol\ m^{-3}$)	($mg\ m^{-3}$)	(Pa)	(mole fraction × 10^6) (ppm by volume) ($\mu liter\ liter^{-1}$) ($\mu bar\ bar^{-1}$) ($\mu mol\ mol^{-1}$)
$mmol\ CO_2\ m^{-3}$, $nmol\ CO_2\ cm^{-3}$, μM	1	44.0	2.44	24.4
$mg\ CO_2\ m^{-3}$, $ng\ CO_2\ cm^{-3}$	0.0227	1	0.0554	0.554
$\mu liter\ CO_2\ liter^{-1}$,[b] ppm CO_2 by volume, $\mu bar\ bar^{-1}$, $\mu mol\ mol^{-1}$	0.0410	1.806	0.1	1
Pa[b] (10 μbar)	0.410	18.06	1	10

Photosynthesis unit	($\mu mol\ m^{-2}\ s^{-1}$)
$ng\ CO_2\ cm^{-2}\ s^{-1}$	0.227
$nmol\ CO_2\ cm^{-2}\ s^{-1}$	10
$mg\ CO_2\ m\ s^{-1}$	22.7
$mg\ CO_2\ dm^{-2}\ hour^{-1}$, $kg\ CO_2\ hectare^{-1}\ hour^{-1}$	0.631
kg carbohydrate $hectare^{-1}\ hour^{-1}$	0.92
$mm^3\ CO_2\ cm^{-2}\ hour^{-1}$	0.114

[a]Values were determined using quantities in Appendices I and II. To convert from one set to another, a quantity expressed in the units in the left column should be multiplied by the factor in the column of the desired units. For example, a transpiration rate of 3.0 g H_2O dm^{-2} $hour^{-1}$ equals (3.0)(1.542) or 4.6 mmol m^{-2} s^{-1}.

[b]To convert a volume/volume number like ppm or mole fraction to a mole/volume or a pressure unit, or vice versa, we need to know the temperature and the pressure; an air temperature of 20°C and a pressure of 0.1 MPa (1 bar) were used here. To adjust for other temperatures and pressures, the ideal gas law ($PV = nRT$) should be used; e.g., 1 μmol mol^{-1} of CO_2 at temperature T_x in K and pressure P_x in MPa is equal to 0.410 $(293.15/T_x)(P_x)$ mmol m^{-3}.

this and decreases as the stomata close (Table 8-1, Fig. 8-7). Consequently, control for limiting transpiration rests with the stomata, not with the boundary layer or the intercellular air spaces. When g_{wv}^{st} is at least five times smaller than g_{wv}^{bl}, as often occurs under field conditions, moderate changes in the ambient wind speed have relatively little effect on g_{wv}^{total}. However, the boundary layer conductance can be the main determinant of J_{wv} for the fruiting bodies of Basidiomycetes (fungi), which have no stomata. For instance, near the ground, where these fruiting bodies occur and the wind speed is relatively low (usually less than 0.2 m s^{-1}), g_{wv}^{bl} exerts the main control on water loss for *Lycoperdon perlatum* and *Scleroderma australe* (Nobel, 1975).

Stomata tend to close as a leaf wilts, a common response of plants to water stress. Assuming that g_{wv}^{st} decreases 20-fold, and using values presented in Figure 8-7, g_{wv}^{total} then decreases about 15-fold from 154 mmol m^{-2} s^{-1} for a g_{wv}^{st} of 200 mmol m^{-2} s^{-1} to 9.9 mmol m^{-2} s^{-1} for a g_{wv}^{st} of 10 mmol m^{-2} s^{-1}. The decrease in g_{wv}^{total} causes transpiration to decrease to only 6% of its former

value, if we ignore the parallel pathway across the cuticle. When the stomata close tightly, only cuticular transpiration remains, which can have a conductance of 1 to 10 mmol m^{-2} s^{-1} (Table 8-1). In that case, cuticular transpiration accounts for all of the loss of water vapor from the leaves.

8.3. CO_2 Conductances and Resistances

We next consider the main function of a leaf, photosynthesis, in terms of the conductances and the resistances encountered by CO_2 as it diffuses from the turbulent air, across the boundary layers next to the leaf surface, through the stomata, across the intercellular air spaces, into the mesophyll cells, and eventually into the chloroplasts. The situation is obviously more complex than the movement of water vapor during transpiration. Indeed, CO_2 not only must diffuse across the same components encountered by water vapor moving in the opposite direction[5] but also must cross the cell wall of a mesophyll cell, the plasma membrane, part of the cytosol, the membranes surrounding a chloroplast, and some of the chloroplast stroma. Resistances are easier to deal with than are conductances for the series of components involved in the pathway for CO_2 movement, so we will specifically indicate the resistance of each component.

8.3A. Resistance and Conductance Network

Figure 8-8 illustrates the various conductances and resistances affecting CO_2 as it diffuses from the turbulent air surrounding a leaf up to the sites in the chloroplasts where it is incorporated into photosynthetic products. For simplicity, we will initially restrict our attention to the diffusion of CO_2 into a leaf across its lower epidermis only. When the parallel pathways through the upper and the lower surfaces of a leaf are both important, we can readily modify our equations to handle the reduction in resistance, or increase in conductance, encountered between the turbulent air surrounding the leaf and the cell walls of its mesophyll cells (see Eqs. 8.12 and 8.15). We will also ignore the cuticular path for CO_2 entry into the leaf for the same type of reason that we generally neglected this part of the pathway when discussing transpiration—namely, $r^{c}_{CO_2}$ is usually considerably greater than $r^{ias}_{CO_2} + r^{st}_{CO_2}$, the resistance in parallel with it.

The first three resistances encountered by CO_2 entering a leaf through the lower epidermis ($r^{bl_l}_{CO_2}$, $r^{st_l}_{CO_2}$, and $r^{ias}_{CO_2}$; Fig. 8-8) have analogs in the case of transpiration. We can thus transfer Equation 8.16 to our current discussion, changing only the subscripts:

$$r^{leaf_l}_{CO_2} + r^{bl_l}_{CO_2} = \frac{1}{D_{CO_2}}\left(\delta^{ias} + \frac{\delta^{st} + r^{st}}{na^{st}} + \delta^{bl}\right) \quad (8.19)$$

5. Additional complications relate to the mass flows that occur, particularly through the stomata where the diffusing species can also interact with the walls of the stomatal pores. The flux of water vapor thus affects the CO_2 concentration gradient because of molecular collisions between H_2O and CO_2 moving in opposite directions and also because of pressure driven (bulk) flow [see Footnote 4, this chapter; also see Field et al. (1989) and Leuning (1983)].

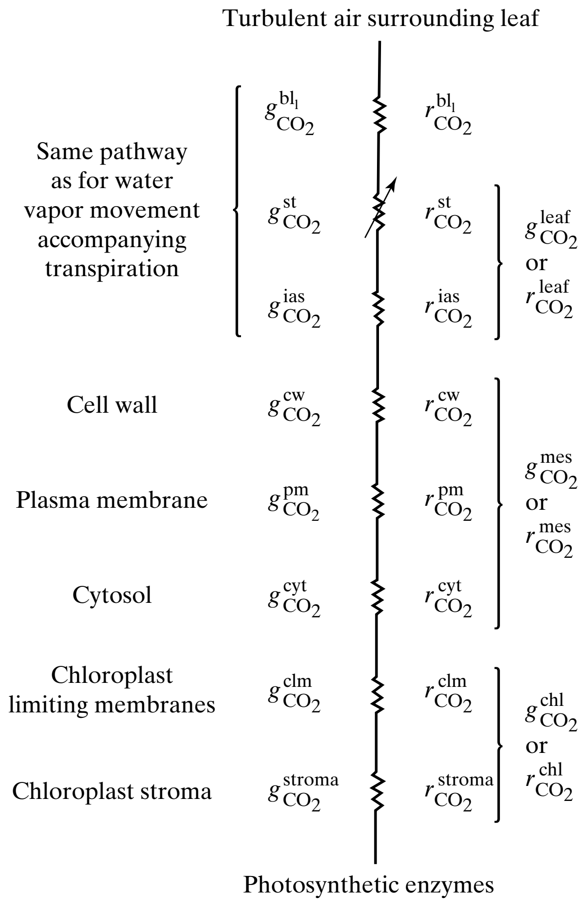


Figure 8-8. Principal conductances and resistances involved in the movement of CO_2 from the turbulent air surrounding a leaf, across the lower epidermis, and then to the enzymes involved in the fixation of CO_2 into photosynthetic products in the chloroplasts of mesophyll cells.

where $r^{leaf_l}_{CO_2}$ is the resistance of the intercellular air spaces plus the stomatal pores of the lower leaf surface to the diffusion of CO_2. We also note that $r^{leaf_l}_{CO_2} + r^{bl_l}_{CO_2}$ is analogous to r^{total}_{wv}, the total resistance encountered by water vapor (see Figs. 8-5 and 8-8).

The diffusion coefficient for CO_2, D_{CO_2}, is 1.56×10^{-5} m^2 s^{-1} in air at 25°C (see Appendix I). This is smaller than D_{wv} (2.50×10^{-5} m^2 s^{-1}) because CO_2 molecules are heavier and thus diffuse more slowly than H_2O molecules (see Chapter 1, Section 1.2C). By Equations 8.16 and 8.19, we obtain the following at 25°C:

$$\frac{\left(r^{leaf_l}_{CO_2} + r^{bl_l}_{CO_2}\right)}{r^{total}_{wv}} = \frac{D_{wv}}{D_{CO_2}} = \frac{(2.50 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{m}^2\ \text{s}^{-1})}{(1.56 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{m}^2\ \text{s}^{-1})} = 1.60 \qquad (8.20)$$

Consequently, CO_2 diffusing from the turbulent air up to the cell walls of mesophyll cells encounters a resistance that is 60% higher than does water vapor diffusing in the opposite direction over the same pathway (Eq. 8.20). Likewise, the gas phase conductance is (100%)/(1.60) or only 63% as great

for CO_2 as for water vapor.[6] Thus, the gas-phase water vapor conductances in Table 8-1 should be divided by 1.60 to get the analogous gas-phase CO_2 conductances, and the resistances should be multiplied by 1.60 to get the CO_2 resistances. For example, instead of a gas-phase conductance for water vapor diffusion of 2 to 10 mm s^{-1} for crops with open stomata (Table 8-1), the equivalent CO_2 conductance is 1.2 to 6 mm s^{-1} (Table 8-4); and instead of a gas-phase resistance for water vapor diffusion of 100 to 500 s m^{-1} for crops with open stomata (Table 8-1), the equivalent CO_2 resistance is 160 to 800 s m^{-1} (Table 8-4).

As indicated in Figure 8-8, five additional resistances are involved in CO_2 movement compared to water vapor movement. The new components of the pathway are the nongaseous (i.e., liquid phase) parts of the cell wall of a mesophyll cell (resistance = $r^{cw}_{CO_2}$), a plasma membrane ($r^{pm}_{CO_2}$), the cytosol ($r^{cyt}_{CO_2}$), the chloroplast limiting membranes ($r^{clm}_{CO_2}$), and the interior of the chloroplasts ($r^{stroma}_{CO_2}$). For convenience we will divide these five resistances into two parts, the mesophyll resistance, $r^{mes}_{CO_2}$, and the chloroplast resistance, $r^{chl}_{CO_2}$:

$$r^{mes}_{CO_2} = r^{cw}_{CO_2} + r^{pm}_{CO_2} + r^{cyt}_{CO_2} \qquad (8.21a)$$

$$r^{chl}_{CO_2} = r^{clm}_{CO_2} + r^{stroma}_{CO_2} \qquad (8.21b)$$

8.3B. Mesophyll Area

The area of the mesophyll cell walls across which CO_2 can diffuse is considerably larger than the surface area of the leaf (Figs. 1-2 and 8-4). For the constricting effect caused by the stomata, we used A^{st}/A, the fraction of the leaf surface area that is occupied by stomatal pores. Here we will use the ratio A^{mes}/A to indicate the increase in area available for CO_2 diffusion into cells within a leaf compared to the leaf surface area, where A^{mes} is the total area of the cell walls of mesophyll cells that is exposed to the intercellular air spaces, and A is the area of one side of the same leaf. More conveniently, A^{mes}/A can refer to the internal and the external areas of a part of the leaf that is examined microscopically.

Although A^{mes}/A varies with plant species as well as with leaf development, it is usually between 10 and 40 for mesophytes (Björkman, 1981; Nobel and Walker, 1985). We can appreciate the large values of A^{mes}/A by examining Figures 1-2, 8-4, and 8-7, which indicate that a tremendous amount of cell wall area is exposed to the air within a leaf; for example, the palisade mesophyll is usually 15 to 40% air by volume, and the spongy

6. Actually, movement across the boundary layer is partly by diffusion, where the ratio D_{wv}/D_{CO_2} applies, and partly by turbulent mixing (see Fig. 7-6), where molecular differences are obliterated. Thus, $r^{bl}_{CO_2}/r^{bl}_{wv}$ is intermediate between the extremes of 1.60 and 1.00, and indeed it is found to be $(D_{wv}/D_{CO_2})^{2/3}$, which is 1.37. Although Equation 8.20 is generally satisfactory, certain situations may warrant replacing δ^{bl}/D_{CO_2} in Equation 8.19 by 1.37 δ^{bl}/D_{wv}, which equals 0.86 δ^{bl}/D_{CO_2} We also note that the effective boundary layer thicknesses for water vapor and heat transfer are similar, being within 7% for flat plates (Monteith and Unsworth, 2007) and within 5% for cylinders and spheres (Nobel, 1974, 1975).

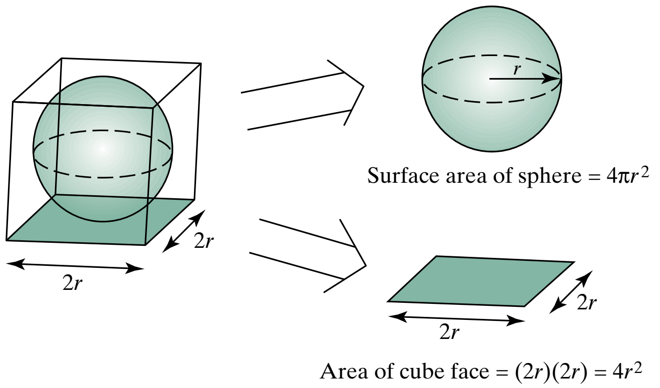


Figure 8-9. Geometrical construct indicating that the area of a sphere projecting onto the area of the underlying square is $(4\pi r^2)/(4r^2)$, which equals π regardless of the size of the sphere.

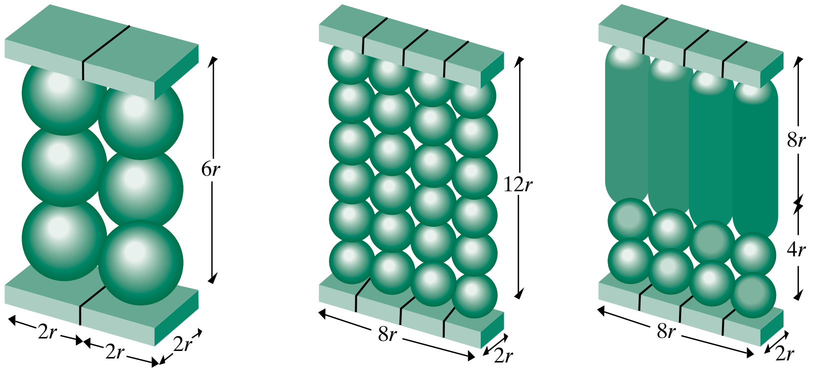
mesophyll is 40 to 60% air. Although the spongy mesophyll region generally has a greater volume fraction of air, the palisade region usually has a greater total cell wall area exposed to the intercellular air spaces. Xerophytes tend to have a more highly developed palisade region than do mesophytes (in some cases, the spongy mesophyll cells are even absent in xerophytes), which leads to values of 20 to 50 for A^{mes}/A of many xerophytes.

To help appreciate the magnitude of A^{mes}/A, we will consider some geometrical idealizations. First let us consider a sphere tightly enclosed in a cube (Fig. 8-9). Let the radius of the sphere be r, so a side of the cube is $2r$. Projecting the sphere of area $4\pi r^2$ onto one face of the cube of area $2r \times 2r$ indicates an area ratio of $(4\pi r^2)/(4r^2)$ or π. This area ratio is independent of the size of the cube or the sphere; that is, a layer of marbles covering the floor of a room has the same surface area per unit floor area as a layer of soccer balls covering the floor!

Let us next consider a model more appropriate to mesophyll cells in a leaf. In particular, for a single layer of uniform spheres in an orthogonal array, A^{mes}/A is the area of the n spheres divided by the area of the n squares that they project onto, or $n4\pi r^2/[n(2r \times 2r)]$, which again is π. Hence, three layers of spherical cells in a tightly packed orthogonal array have a surface area per unit projected area or A^{mes}/A of 3π, which is 9.4 (Fig. 8-10a). If the radius of the spheres were halved but the thickness of the array remained unchanged, then A^{mes}/A doubles to 6π or 18.8 (Fig. 8-10a versus Fig. 8-10b). In a more realistic representation of a leaf with a single palisade layer having cylindrical cells with hemispherical ends and an overall length four times their width plus two layers of spherical spongy cells (Fig. 8-10c), A^{mes}/A is the area of the two hemispherical ends and the lateral walls of the palisade cells plus the area of the two spongy cells:

$$\left[(2)(2\pi r^2) + (2\pi r)(6r)\right]/(4r^2) + 2\pi = 6\pi$$

which is also 18.8; two-thirds of this area is contributed by the palisade cells (Fig. 8-10c). Moreover, three-quarters of the exposed cell wall area of the palisade cells in this idealized representation occurs on their lateral walls. The relatively large area contributed by the lateral walls of length l is typical,



A^{mes}/A $3\pi = 9.4$ $6\pi = 18.8$ $6\pi = 18.8$

(a) (b) (c)

Figure 8-10. Representations of mesophyll cells showing how geometry affects A^{mes}/A. Spheres or cylinders with hemispherical ends in an orthogonal (right-angled) array lead to the indicated A^{mes}/A. The length of the lateral walls of the "palisade" cells in panel c is six times the radius *r*.

because the total area of the lateral surface of the cylinder ($2\pi rl$) is generally greater than the area of its two hemispherical ends ($4\pi r^2$) because *l* is usually greater than 2*r* for such palisade cells—e.g., 2*r* may be 20 to 40 μm, whereas *l* is 30 to 100 μm for representative palisade cells. When such cylinders are packed together to form a layer of palisade cells, nearly the entire surface area of the lateral walls is exposed to the intercellular air spaces. This lateral surface area and most of the area of both ends of a palisade cell are available for the inward diffusion of CO_2. In summary, contrary to the common impression when examining published photomicrographs or viewing relatively thick leaf sections directly, nearly all of the area of the cell walls of mesophyll cells is exposed to the intercellular air spaces and thus is available for the inward diffusion of CO_2.

The illumination level under which a leaf develops can greatly influence the anatomy of its mesophyll region. Development in a dark or shaded environment can lead to a *shade leaf*, and differentiation under moderate to high illumination can lead to a *sun leaf* (Fig. 7-11). Besides being smaller in area, sun leaves usually are thicker and have a higher ratio of palisade to spongy mesophyll cells than do shade leaves on the same plant. Moreover, palisade cells of sun leaves are usually longer (larger *l* for the cylinders). Consequently, A^{mes}/A can be two to four times higher for sun leaves than for shade leaves on the same plant. For example, growing *Plectranthus parviflorus* under low light levels [a photosynthetic photon flux (PPF) of 20 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1} for 12-hour days] leads to thin leaves with an A^{mes}/A of 11, whereas high light levels (a PPF of 800 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1}) lead to thick leaves with an A^{mes}/A of 50 (Nobel et al., 1975). The columnar nature of palisade cells and their abundance in sun leaves developing under high light levels cause internal reflections that allow the light to penetrate further into a leaf (Vogelmann, 1993).

Although light generally has the greatest influence, A^{mes}/A can also be influenced by changes in other environmental factors during leaf development (Nobel and Walker, 1985). For instance, higher temperatures usually

induce smaller cells and increase A^{mes}/A by up to 40%. Reduced cell size generally accompanies water stress, but the influences on A^{mes}/A vary with species, ranging from no change to a 50% increase in A^{mes}/A. Higher salinities during leaf development usually lead to thicker leaves, which can be accompanied by a corresponding increase in cell dimensions in all directions with no change in A^{mes}/A or sometimes by an increase in A^{mes}/A.

8.3C. Resistance Formulation for Cell Components

The resistance to diffusion of a molecular species across a barrier equals the reciprocal of its permeability coefficient (Chapter 1, Section 1.4B). In this regard, we will let $P^j_{CO_2}$ be the permeability coefficient for CO_2 diffusion across barrier j. To express the resistance of a particular mesophyll or chloroplast component on a leaf area basis, we must also incorporate A^{mes}/A to allow for the actual area available for diffusion—the large internal leaf area acts like more pathways in parallel and thus reduces the effective resistance (Fig. 8-4). Because the area of the plasma membrane is about the same as that of the cell wall, and the chloroplasts generally occupy a single layer around the periphery of the cytosol (Figs. 1-1 and 8-11), the factor A^{mes}/A applies to all of the diffusion steps of CO_2 in mesophyll cells (all five individual resistances in Eq. 8.21). In other words, we are imagining for simplicity that the cell wall, the plasma membrane, the cytosol, and the chloroplasts are all in layers having essentially equal areas (Fig. 8-11). Thus, the resistance of any of the mesophyll or chloroplast components for CO_2 diffusion, $r^j_{CO_2}$, is reduced from $1/P^j_{CO_2}$ by the reciprocal of the same factor, A^{mes}/A:

$$r^j_{CO_2} = \frac{1}{A^{mes}/A}\frac{1}{P^j_{CO_2}} = \frac{\Delta x^j}{(A^{mes}/A)D^j_{CO_2}K^j_{CO_2}} = \frac{1}{g^j_{CO_2}} \tag{8.22}$$

where we have incorporated the definition of a permeability coefficient ($P_j = D_jK_j/\Delta x$, Eq. 1.9). In particular, Δx^j is the thickness of the jth barrier, $D^j_{CO_2}$ is the diffusion coefficient of CO_2 in it, and $K^j_{CO_2}$ is a suitably defined partition coefficient. If the chloroplasts do not occur all around a mesophyll cell (Fig. 8-11), then their area can be less than A^{mes}. In such a case, A^{mes} in Equation 8.22 can be replaced by A^{chl}, which is the chloroplast area corresponding to leaf area A.

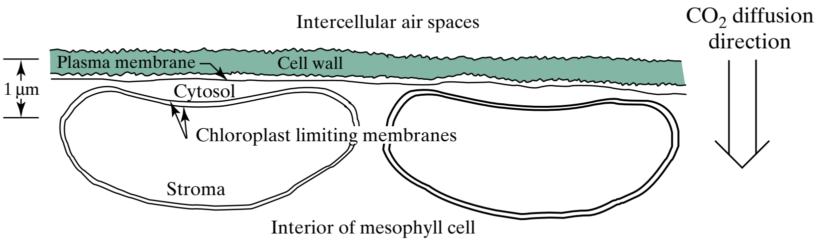


Figure 8-11. Schematic cross section near the periphery of a mesophyll cell (Fig. 1-1), indicating the sequential anatomical components across which CO_2 diffuses from the intercellular air spaces to the carboxylation enzymes in the chloroplast stroma.

8.3D. Partition Coefficient for CO_2

In Chapter 1 (Section 1.4A) we introduced a partition coefficient to describe the ratio of the concentrations of some species in two adjacent phases. For instance, in some region where concentrations are difficult to measure, the concentration of CO_2 is the equilibrium concentration of CO_2 in an adjacent region where its concentration is readily measured (c_{CO_2}) times the partition coefficient between the two regions (K_{CO_2}), or $K_{CO_2}c_{CO_2}$. Similarly, we will express every $K^j_{CO_2}$ in the mesophyll cells as the actual concentration of all forms of CO_2 in component j divided by the concentration of CO_2 that occurs in an adjacent air phase at equilibrium, $c^{air}_{CO_2}$:

$$\begin{aligned} K^j_{CO_2} &= \frac{\text{concentration of all forms of "CO}_2\text{" in barrier } j}{\text{equilibrium CO}_2 \text{ concentration in adjacent air phase}} \\ &= \frac{c^j_{CO_2} + c^j_{H_2CO_3} + c^j_{HCO_3^-} + c^j_{CO_3{}^{2-}}}{c^{air}_{CO_2}} \end{aligned} \tag{8.23}$$

A concentration referred to as $c^{air}_{CO_2}$ thus equals the actual concentration of all forms of CO_2 in component j divided by $K^j_{CO_2}$. This convention allows us to discuss fluxes in a straightforward manner, because CO_2 then diffuses toward regions of lower $c^{air}_{CO_2}$ regardless of the actual concentrations and partition coefficients involved. For instance, to discuss the diffusion of "CO_2" across a cell wall, we need to consider the partitioning of CO_2 between the air in the cell wall pores and the various types of CO_2 in the adjacent water within the cell wall interstices. Hence $K^{cw}_{CO_2}$ is the actual concentration of CO_2 plus H_2CO_3, $HCO_3{}^-$, and $CO_3{}^{2-}$ in the cell wall water divided by the concentration of CO_2 in air in equilibrium with the cell wall water.

The concentrations of the various forms of "CO_2" present in an aqueous phase are temperature dependent and extremely sensitive to pH (the concentrations also depend on the presence of other solutes, which presumably is a small effect for the cell wall water). For instance, the equilibrium concentration of CO_2 dissolved in water divided by that of CO_2 in an adjacent gas phase, $c^{water}_{CO_2}/c^{air}_{CO_2}$, decreases more than two-fold from 10°C to 40°C (Table 8-3; the decreasing solubility of CO_2 as the temperature increases is a characteristic of dissolved gases, which fit into the interstices of water, such space becoming less available as molecular motion increases with increasing temperature). This partition coefficient is not very pH dependent, but the equilibrium concentration of $HCO_3{}^-$ in water relative to that of dissolved CO_2 is markedly affected by pH. In particular, CO_2 dissolved in an aqueous solution can interact with water to form carbonic acid, which then dissociates to form bicarbonate:

$$CO_2 + H_2O \rightleftharpoons H_2CO_3 \rightleftharpoons HCO_3{}^- + H^+ \tag{8.24}$$

The interconversion of CO_2 and H_2CO_3 in Equation 8.24 is relatively slow unless a suitable catalyst, such as the enzyme carbonic anhydrase, is present. Because H^+ is involved in these reactions, the pH will affect the amount of

Table 8-3. Influence of Temperature and pH on Partitioning of "CO_2" between an Aqueous Solution and an Adjacent Air Phase[a]

Temperature (°C)	$\frac{c_{CO_2}^{water}}{c_{CO_2}^{air}}$	pH	$\frac{c_{CO_2}^{water} + c_{HCO_3^-}^{water}}{c_{CO_2}^{air}}$
0	1.65	4	0.91
10	1.19	5	0.96
20	0.91	6	1.48
30	0.71	7	6.6
40	0.58	8	58
50	0.50		

[a]The partition coefficient for the two forms of "CO_2" at various pH's is for 20°C. Data are for an ionic strength of about 200 mol m^{-3} and an air pressure of 0.1 MPa. (Source: Stumm and Morgan, 1996.)

HCO_3^- in solution, which in turn depends on the CO_2 concentration. The equilibrium concentration of H_2CO_3 is only about 1/400 of that of the dissolved CO_2, so our main concern will be with CO_2 and HCO_3^-. (CO_3^{2-} is also not a major type until the pH exceeds 8, and at pH 8 it is only 1% of HCO_3^- at an ionic strength of 200 mol m^{-3}, so CO_3^{2-} will also be ignored here.) By considering mass action and Equation 8.24, HCO_3^- is higher in concentration when [H$^+$] is lower, meaning at higher pH's (see Table 8-3; pH = −log[H$^+$]).

8.3E. Cell Wall Resistance

We begin our discussion of the newly introduced CO_2 resistances by evaluating the components of $r_{CO_2}^{cw}$, the resistance encountered by CO_2 as it diffuses through the water-filled interstices between the cellulose microfibrils in the cell wall (Fig. 1-13). In this way, CO_2 moves from the interface with the intercellular air spaces on one side of the cell wall to the plasma membrane on the other side (Fig. 8-11). We will use an appropriate form of Equation 8.22 to describe this resistance:

$$r_{CO_2}^{cw} = \frac{\Delta x^{cw}}{(A^{mes}/A)D_{CO_2}^{cw}K_{CO_2}^{cw}} \tag{8.25}$$

The distance across the barrier, Δx^{cw}, is the average thickness of the cell walls of the mesophyll cells. The diffusion coefficient for the gas CO_2 dissolved in water is about 1.8×10^{-9} m^2 s^{-1} at 25°C (see Table 1-1). However, the effective $D_{CO_2}^{cw}$ is lower by a factor of about three or four, because the water-filled interstices represent slightly less than half of the cell wall and their course through the cell wall is rather tortuous. Thus $D_{CO_2}^{cw}$ may be about 5×10^{-10} m^2 s^{-1}. Besides moving as the dissolved gas, "CO_2" may also diffuse across the cell wall as HCO_3^-, whose diffusion coefficient is also most likely about 5×10^{-10} m^2 s^{-1}. However, the presence of HCO_3^- makes the effective concentration of "CO_2" in the cell wall uncertain, which is why it is convenient to introduce $K_{CO_2}^{cw}$, the partition coefficient for CO_2 in the cell wall.

At 20°C, $K_{CO_2}^{cw}$ [$= (c_{CO_2}^{water} + c_{HCO_3^-}^{water})/c_{CO_2}^{air}$; see Eq. 8.23] is about 1 from pH 4 to pH 6 but increases markedly above pH 7 (Table 8-3). The equilibrium value is affected by temperature in approximately the same way as the partition coefficient $c_{CO_2}^{water}/c_{CO_2}^{air}$ cited previously; for example, from 20 to 30°C it decreases by about 22%. We note that this appreciable temperature dependence of $K_{CO_2}^{j}$ results in a similar temperature dependence of $r_{CO_2}^{j}$ (see Eq. 8.22). Although the pH in the cell walls of mesophyll cells within a leaf is not known with certainty, it is probably less than 6. Thus at usual leaf temperatures, $K_{CO_2}^{cw}$ will be close to 1, the value that we will use for calculation.

Let us now estimate $r_{CO_2}^{cw}$. We will assume that the mesophyll cells have a typical cell wall thickness, Δx^{cw}, of 0.3 μm, that the diffusion coefficient in the cell walls for CO_2 or HCO_3^-, $D_{CO_2}^{cw}$, is $5 \times 10^{-10}\ m^2\ s^{-1}$, and that $K_{CO_2}^{cw}$ is 1. The magnitude of $r_{CO_2}^{cw}$ also depends on the relative surface area of the mesophyll cells compared with the leaf area. We will let A^{mes}/A be 20, a reasonable value for mesophytes. Using Equation 8.25, the resistance of the cell walls to the diffusion of CO_2 then is

$$r_{CO_2}^{cw} = \frac{(0.3 \times 10^{-6}\ m)}{(20)(5 \times 10^{-10}\ m^2\ s^{-1})(1)} = 30\ s\ m^{-1}$$

This is a small value for a CO_2 resistance (Table 8-4) and indicates that the cell walls of the mesophyll cells generally do not represent a major barrier to the diffusion of the various forms of CO_2 into cells.

8.3F. Plasma Membrane Resistance

We next examine $r_{CO_2}^{pm}$, the resistance of the plasma membrane of mesophyll cells to the diffusion of the various forms of CO_2. Although we do not know the actual permeability coefficient of the plasma membrane of mesophyll

Table 8-4. Summary of Representative Values of Conductances and Resistances for CO_2 Diffusing into Leaves[a]

	Conductance		Resistance	
Component	(mm s^{-1})	(mmol $m^{-2}\ s^{-1}$)	(s m^{-1})	(m^2 s mol^{-1})
Leaf (lower surface)—gas phase				
Crops—open stomata	1.2–6	50–250	160–800	4–20
Trees—open stomata	0.3–2	12–75	500–2500	13–80
Cell wall	30	1200	30	0.8
Plasma membrane	10	400	100	2.5
Cytosol	100	4000	10	0.25
Mesophyll				
Estimation	7	300	140	3.5
Measurements—mesophytes	2.5–25	100–1000	40–400	1–10
Chloroplast				
Estimation	10	400	100	2.5
Measurements	>5	>200	<200	<5

[a]Certain of these values are calculated in the text.

cells for CO_2 or HCO_3^-, we expect P_j^{pm} to be much lower for a charged species such as HCO_3^- than for a neutral one such as CO_2. For instance, $P_{HCO_3^-}^{pm}$ might be about 10^{-8} m s^{-1} (Chapter 1, Section 1.4B). On the other hand, CO_2 is a small neutral linear molecule that crosses membranes extremely easily. The permeability coefficient of CO_2 crossing the plasma membrane to enter a plant cell is probably at least 2×10^{-4} m s^{-1}, which is somewhat higher than $P_{H_2O}^{pm}$, and may be as high as 1×10^{-3} m s^{-1}. We will use a value of 5×10^{-4} m s^{-1} for purposes of calculation. Using Equation 8.22 and a value of 20 for A^{mes}/A as before, the CO_2 resistance of the plasma membrane is

$$r_{CO_2}^{pm} = \frac{1}{(20)(5 \times 10^{-4}\ \mathrm{m\ s^{-1}})} = 100\ \mathrm{s\ m^{-1}}$$

Based on the relative values for the two permeability coefficients, the resistance to the diffusion of HCO_3^- across the plasma membrane is about 5×10^4 times higher than that for CO_2, for example, 5×10^6 s m^{-1}. Because of the extremely high resistance for HCO_3^-, we conclude that bicarbonate does not diffuse across the plasma membrane at a rate necessary to sustain photosynthesis. The plasma membrane resistance calculated for CO_2 (100 s m^{-1}) is relatively small (Table 8-4), which suggests that diffusion of CO_2 is adequate for moving this substrate of photosynthesis across the plasma membrane.

HCO_3^- or CO_2 could be actively transported across the plasma membrane or perhaps could cross by facilitated diffusion (Chapter 3, Section 3.4C). Facilitated diffusion would act as a low-resistance pathway in parallel with the ordinary diffusion pathway and consequently would reduce the effective resistance of the plasma membrane. Unfortunately, the actual mechanism for CO_2 or HCO_3^- movement across the plasma membrane of mesophyll cells is not known with certainty, although $r_{CO_2}^{pm}$ for diffusion of CO_2 is low enough to account for the observed CO_2 fluxes.

8.3G. Cytosol Resistance

The resistance of the cytosol of mesophyll cells to the diffusion of CO_2 is small because the distance is short—the chloroplasts are located around the periphery of most mesophyll cells (Figs. 1-1 and 8-11). In particular, the average distance from the plasma membrane to the chloroplasts, Δx^{cyt}, is only 0.1 to 0.3 μm. We will use a value of 0.2 μm for Δx^{cyt} when estimating $r_{CO_2}^{cyt}$ using Equation 8.22. Because of the presence of fibrous proteins, the diffusion coefficient of CO_2 in this region of the cytosol is somewhat less than its value in water at 25°C, 1.8×10^{-9} m^2 s^{-1}. For purposes of calculation, we will let $D_{CO_2}^{cyt}$ be 1.0×10^{-9} m^2 s^{-1} for the various forms of CO_2 diffusing from the plasma membrane to the chloroplasts. The value of $K_{CO_2}^{cyt}$ for mesophyll cells is not known, primarily because the cytosolic pH is not known with certainty. In any case, $K_{CO_2}^{cyt}$ cannot be much less than 1 and values greater than 1—the magnitude that we will assume here—will not change our conclusions about the relative importance of $r_{CO_2}^{cyt}$. As before, we

will let A^{mes}/A be 20. Using Equation 8.22, the cytosol resistance for CO_2 then is

$$r_{CO_2}^{cyt} = \frac{(0.2 \times 10^{-6}\ \mathrm{m})}{(20)(1.0 \times 10^{-9}\ \mathrm{m^2\ s^{-1}})(1)} = 10\ \mathrm{s\ m^{-1}}$$

which is a very small resistance for CO_2 diffusion (Table 8-4). Thus the location of the chloroplasts around the periphery of a mesophyll cell (Fig. 8-11) is a "good" design that causes the resistance of this part of the pathway for CO_2 diffusion to be low.

8.3H. Mesophyll Resistance

Most of the measurements of $r_{CO_2}^{mes}$ (Fig. 8-8) are indirect, but they indicate that this resistance is usually 40 to 400 s m^{-1} for mesophytes (Table 8-4). Based on our estimates of 30 s m^{-1} for $r_{CO_2}^{cw}$, 100 s m^{-1} for $r_{CO_2}^{pm}$, and 10 s m^{-1} for $r_{CO_2}^{cyt}$, using Equation 8.21a ($r_{CO_2}^{mes} = r_{CO_2}^{cw} + r_{CO_2}^{pm} + r_{CO_2}^{cyt}$) we predict 140 s m^{-1} for $r_{CO_2}^{mes}$. Thus our estimate based on the diffusion of CO_2 across each barrier is consistent with the measured mesophyll resistance.

There are many assumptions and parameter choices involved in the calculation of $r_{CO_2}^{mes}$. For instance, we let A^{mes}/A be 20, whereas many leaves have values from 30 to 40; the latter ratios would reduce $r_{CO_2}^{mes}$ to 70 to 90 s m^{-1}. The cell walls of some mesophyll cells are only 0.07 μm thick, which would decrease $r_{CO_2}^{cw}$ to less than 10 s m^{-1}. Permeability coefficients of the plasma membrane of mesophyll cells for CO_2 have not been adequately measured. In this regard, P_j is equal to $D_jK_j/\Delta x$ (Eq. 1.9), where the diffusion coefficients of H_2O and CO_2 in the plasma membrane are probably about the same (within a factor of 2 of each other), the partition coefficient for CO_2 is most likely at least 10 times higher than $K_{H_2O}^{pm}$, and Δx^{pm} is the same for H_2O and CO_2. Because $P_{CO_2}^{pm}$ can be 10^{-4} m s^{-1} (see Chapter 1, Section 1.4B), our assumed value of 5×10^{-4} m s^{-1} for $P_{CO_2}^{pm}$ may be too low—we noted in Chapter 1 (Section 1.4B) that P_j for another small molecule, O_2, crossing erythrocyte membranes can have an extremely high value of 0.3 m s^{-1}. A higher value for $P_{CO_2}^{pm}$ will decrease our estimate for $r_{CO_2}^{pm}$ and thus for $r_{CO_2}^{mes}$.

8.3I. Chloroplast Resistance

The last two structural resistances encountered by CO_2 involved in photosynthesis are due to the chloroplasts ($r_{CO_2}^{chl} = r_{CO_2}^{clm} + r_{CO_2}^{stroma}$, Eq. 8.21b; see Figs. 1-10, 8-8, and 8-11). As for the plasma membrane, the resistance of the chloroplast-limiting membranes, $r_{CO_2}^{clm}$, is extremely large for the diffusion of HCO_3^- and relatively low for the diffusion of CO_2. The chloroplast-limiting membranes are readily permeable to small solutes, so $r_{CO_2}^{clm}$ is probably lower than $r_{CO_2}^{pm}$, which we estimated to be 100 s m^{-1}. Because Δx^{stroma} averages nearly 1 μm, whereas Δx^{cyt} is about 0.2 μm and the other pertinent parameters (A^{mes}/A, $D_{CO_2}^{j}$, $K_{CO_2}^{j}$) are approximately the same in the two cases, $r_{CO_2}^{stroma}$ is a few times larger than $r_{CO_2}^{cyt}$, which we calculated to be only

10 s m^{-1} (if the pH in the chloroplast stroma were near or above 7, this would increase $K_{CO_2}^{chl}$ above 1 and reduce $r_{CO_2}^{stroma}$ accordingly). In any case, $r_{CO_2}^{stroma}$ is a relatively small resistance.

Currently, we can only estimate a value of about 100 s m^{-1} for the resistance to the diffusion of CO_2 into chloroplasts and across their stroma (Table 8-4). Measurement of $r_{CO_2}^{chl}$ in vivo is also difficult—analysis of available data indicates that it is most likely less than 200 s m^{-1}. Although active transport or facilitated diffusion of CO_2 or HCO_3^- into chloroplasts may lower the effective resistance, the experimental values for $r_{CO_2}^{chl}$ are compatible with the diffusion of CO_2 across the chloroplast-limiting membranes. All of the resistances that we have just discussed and their corresponding conductances are summarized in Table 8-4.

8.4. CO_2 Fluxes Accompanying Photosynthesis

Now that we have discussed the CO_2 resistances and conductances, we are ready to examine CO_2 fluxes. We will do this for photosynthesis, a process that consumes CO_2, as well as for respiration and photorespiration, processes that evolve CO_2. Our analysis will use an electrical circuit so that we can represent the interrelationships among the various factors influencing net CO_2 uptake by a leaf.

8.4A. Photosynthesis

We next join the diffusion of CO_2 from the turbulent air surrounding a leaf up to the chloroplast stroma with the biochemistry of photosynthesis occurring in the stroma and initiated by CO_2 binding at the catalytic site on Rubisco (Fig. 8-12). In particular, the flux density of CO_2 into chloroplasts represents the gross rate of photosynthesis per unit leaf area, $J_{CO_2}^{ps}$. In the steady state, $J_{CO_2}^{ps}$ is the same as the flux density entering the leaf, J_{CO_2}, corrected for any other reactions evolving or consuming CO_2, as we will consider later in this section (most evidence indicates that CO_2, not HCO_3^-, is the substrate for photosynthesis in chloroplasts, and we will therefore focus our attention on CO_2). We will represent the average rate of photosynthesis per unit volume of the chloroplasts by v_{CO_2}, which can have units of mol CO_2 fixed m^{-3} s^{-1}. Also, we will assume that the chloroplasts have an average or effective thickness Δx^{chl} in a direction perpendicular to the plasma membrane (see Fig. 8-11). Regarding the chloroplasts as such a flat layer of average thickness Δx^{chl} that occupies some internal leaf area, A^{mes}, the rate of photosynthesis in this volume ($v_{CO_2}\Delta x^{chl}A^{mes}$) equals the gross CO_2 flux per unit leaf area times the leaf area corresponding to A^{mes}, namely $J_{CO_2}^{ps}A$:

$$v_{CO_2}\Delta x^{chl}A^{mes} = J_{CO_2}^{ps}A \tag{8.26a}$$

or

$$J_{CO_2}^{ps} = v_{CO_2}\Delta x^{chl}A^{mes}/A \tag{8.26b}$$

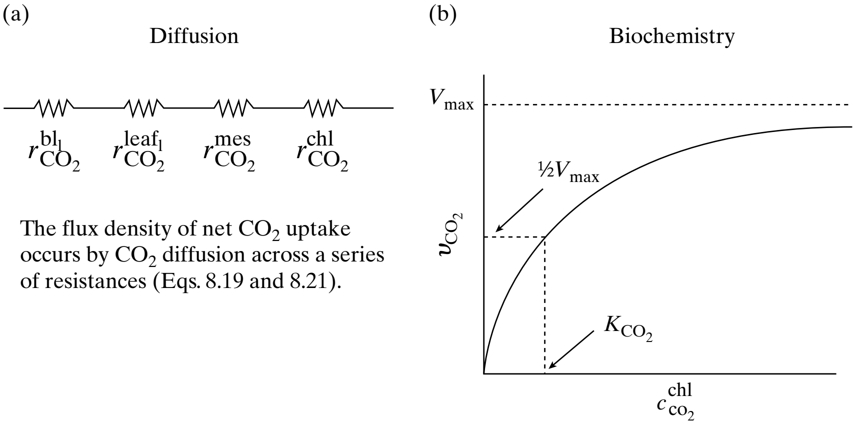


Figure 8-12. Joining of (a) the diffusion steps for CO_2 crossing the boundary layer, the rest of the gas phase, and then the liquid-phase resistances of the mesophyll cells and their chloroplasts to reach the chloroplast stroma with (b) the biochemistry in the chloroplasts, as described by a Michealis–Menten formalism (Eqs. 3.28 and 8.27).

The gross rates of CO_2 fixation by leaves and isolated chloroplasts are proportional to the CO_2 concentration over the lower part of its range and eventually reach an upper limit when the CO_2 concentration is sufficiently high. One way to describe such behavior is with a Michealis–Menten type of expression (Fig. 3-16):

$$v_{CO_2} = \frac{V_{max} c_{CO_2}^{chl}}{K_{CO_2} + c_{CO_2}^{chl}} \tag{8.27}$$

where V_{max} is the maximum rate of CO_2 fixation per unit volume and K_{CO_2} is essentially a Michealis constant for CO_2 fixation, namely, the value of $c_{CO_2}^{chl}$ at which v_{CO_2} is equal to $\frac{1}{2}V_{max}$ [Fig. 8-12b; also see Eq. 3.28a, $J_j^{in} = J_{j\,max}^{in} c_j^o / (K_j + c_j^o)$, and the discussion in Chapter 3, Section 3.4B]. Although convenient, using a Michealis–Menten type of expression for the photosynthetic rate per unit volume may not always be justified for a complicated series of reactions such as photosynthesis. However, Equation 8.27 has proved useful for joining the flux equations based on diffusion of CO_2 with the cellular biochemical aspects of photosynthesis (Fig. 8-12).

In Equation 8.27, V_{max} and, to some extent, K_{CO_2} depend on the photosynthetic photon flux (PPF), temperature, and nutrient status. For instance, V_{max} is zero in the dark because photosynthesis ceases then, and it is directly proportional to PPF up to about 50 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1}. If we continually increase the PPF, V_{max} can reach an upper limit, its value for light saturation. This usually occurs at about 600 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1} for most C_3 plants, whereas photosynthesis for C_4 plants is generally not light saturated even at full sunlight, 2000 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1} (see Chapter 6, Section 6.3D for comments on C_3 and C_4 plants; also see Fig. 8-20 for responses of leaves of C_3 plants and a C_4 plant to PPF). Photosynthesis is maximal at certain temperatures, often from 30°C to 40°C. We note that V_{max} increases as the leaf temperature is raised to the optimum and then decreases with a further increase in temperature.

V_{max} at light saturation and at the optimal temperature for photosynthesis varies with plant species but is usually from 2 to 10 mol m^{-3} s^{-1}. We can also estimate V_{max} from measurements of the maximum rates of CO_2 fixation by isolated chloroplasts. These maximum rates—which are sustained for short periods and are for optimal conditions—can be 100 mmol of CO_2 fixed (kg chlorophyll)$^{-1}$ s^{-1} [360 μmol (mg chlorophyll)$^{-1}$ hour^{-1} in another common unit], which is approximately 3 mol m^{-3} s^{-1} (1 kg chlorophyll is contained in about 0.035 m^3 of chloroplasts in vivo). In vitro, the key enzyme for CO_2 fixation, ribulose-1,5-bisphosphate carboxylase/oxygenase, can have rates equivalent to 200 mmol (kg chlorophyll)$^{-1}$ s^{-1}. The estimates of V_{max} using isolated chloroplasts or enzymes usually are somewhat lower than its values determined for a leaf. Measurements using leaves generally indicate that K_{CO_2} is 5 to 20 mmol m^{-3}. For instance, K_{CO_2} can be 9 mmol m^{-3} at 25°C with a Q_{10} of 1.8 (Woodrow and Berry, 1988; Q_{10} is defined in Chapter 3, Section 3.3B).

In Chapter 5 (Section 5.4B) we noted that the processing time per CO_2 fixed is about 5 ms. Eight photons are required, which are absorbed by approximately 2000 chlorophyll molecules in chloroplasts having a chlorophyll concentration of about 30 mol m^{-3} (see Chapter 4, Section 4.4D). Hence, the photosynthetic rate per unit volume of chloroplasts is

$$\begin{aligned} v_{CO_2} &= \frac{(\text{concentration of } CO_2 \text{ fixation sites})}{(\text{time for } CO_2 \text{ fixation at a site})} \\ &= \frac{(30 \text{ mol chlorophyll m}^{-3})/(2.0 \times 10^{-3} \text{ chlorophylls per site})}{(5 \times 10^{-3} \text{ s}/CO_2 \text{ at a site})} \\ &= 3 \text{ mol } CO_2 \text{ m}^{-3} \text{ s}^{-1} \end{aligned}$$

Under high PPF, $c^{chl}_{CO_2}$ is generally limiting for photosynthesis, so this v_{CO_2} may be only 40 to 70% of the V_{max} at a particular temperature. Conversely, the 5 ms processing time may mainly reflect the suboptimal CO_2 levels in the chloroplasts (these comments apply to C_3 plants; for C_4 plants $c^{chl}_{CO_2}$ is generally near the saturation value for photosynthesis, a topic that we will return to at the end of this section and at the end of the chapter; also see Fig. 8-18). A related factor is the increase in atmospheric CO_2, primarily due to the burning of fossil fuels, from about 300 μmol mol^{-1} in 1900 to about 390 μmol mol^{-1} in 2009, when the annual rate of CO_2 increase was nearly 2 μmol mol^{-1}.[7] Other things being equal, this increase in $c^{ta}_{CO_2}$ will raise $c^{chl}_{CO_2}$ and hence will increase v_{CO_2} (Eq. 8.27).

7. CO_2 levels are expressed in many units, parts per million by volume (ppm or ppmv) being commonly used, concise, clearly understood, but no longer generally accepted in the biological literature. Some data are published on a volume basis using units of μliter liter^{-1} or cm^3 m^{-3} (numerically equivalent to ppm). However, most data are currently expressed on a mole fraction basis, either as a dimensionless number or in μmol mol^{-1} (e.g., 370 × 10^{-6} and 370 μmol mol^{-1}, respectively) or on the basis of partial pressure, e.g., Pa MPa^{-1} and Pa. If pressure is used for CO_2 levels, then the ambient atmospheric pressure should also be stated. By the ideal or perfect gas law ($PV = nRT$, where $P = \sum_i P_i$, and $V = \sum_i V_i$, the summations being over all gaseous species present), V_{CO_2}/V_{total} equals P_{CO_2}/P_{total}, which equals n_{CO_2}/n_{total} or N_{CO_2} where N_{CO_2} is the mole fraction of CO_2. Another unit is mmol m^{-3}, the concentration of CO_2 (which we will also use), although both temperature and pressure should then be specified (See Table 8-2).

8.4B. Respiration and Photorespiration

So far, the only process involving CO_2 that we have considered in this chapter is photosynthesis. However, we cannot neglect the CO_2 produced within mesophyll (and other) cells by respiration and photorespiration. If mitochondrial respiration in leaf cells were the same in the light as in the dark, when it can be readily measured (because of no photosynthesis or photorespiration occurring then), respiration would produce about 5% as much CO_2 as is consumed by photosynthesis at a moderate PPF. In C_3 plants, the rate of light-stimulated production of CO_2 by photorespiration at moderate temperatures is often about 30% (range, 15–50%) of the rate of CO_2 fixation into photosynthetic products.

We have already considered respiration in Chapter 6 (Section 6.4), so we will briefly comment on photorespiration. Photorespiration is the uptake of O_2 and the evolution of CO_2 in the light resulting from glycolate synthesis in chloroplasts and subsequent glycolate and glycine metabolism in peroxisomes and mitochondria (Fig. 8-13). A crucial role is played by the enzyme ribulose-1,5-bisphosphate carboxylase/oxygenase (Rubisco), which has a molecular mass of about 540 kDa. Rubisco constitutes up to half of the soluble protein in the leaves of C_3 plants and perhaps one-sixth of the soluble protein in C_4 plants, making it the most abundant protein in the world (see Chapter 6, Section 6.3D for definitions of C_3 and C_4 plants). Indeed, the amount of Rubisco in plants corresponds to approximately 9 kg per person! This carboxylase/oxygenase can interact with CO_2, leading to photosynthesis, or with O_2, leading to photorespiration (Fig. 8-13). The competition for the same active site on Rubisco by O_2 and CO_2, which thus act as alternative substrates, can be modeled by a modification of Equation 8.27 in which K_{CO_2} is replaced by $K_{CO_2}(1 + c_{O_2}^{chl}/K_{O_2})$, where $c_{O_2}^{chl}$ is the concentration of oxygen in chloroplasts (about 300 mmol m^{-3}) and K_{O_2} (generally 300–600 mmol m^{-3}) indicates the oxygen concentration at which the oxygenase activity is half of the maximal values. Numerous unsuccessful attempts have been made to reduce O_2 binding at the catalytic site of Rubisco (equivalent to raising K_{O_2}) and hence to decrease photorespiration, such as by using genetic mutations involving exposing seeds to irradiation or chemical mutagens. Although elimination of photorespiration would greatly enhance net CO_2 uptake by C_3 plants, the lack of success may reflect the chemical similarity of O_2 (O=O) and CO_2 (O=C=O) as competing substrates at the same catalytic site.

In photorespiration, ribulose-1,5-bisphosphate is split into 3-phosphoglycerate and 2-phosphoglycolate, the latter undergoing dephosphorylation in the chloroplasts and then entering the peroxisomes (Fig. 8-13). Although CO_2 can be released by a decarboxylation of glycolate in the peroxisomes, the main product of glycolate metabolism is glycine, which then moves to the mitochondria where the CO_2 is released (Fig. 8-13). Because the generation of ribulose-1,5-bisphosphate depends on the C_3 photosynthetic pathway, photorespiration is influenced by PPF and by temperature, although not quite in the same manner as photosynthesis. For instance, photosynthesis usually doubles in going from 20°C to 30°C, whereas photorespiration often triples over this interval of leaf temperature; because the oxygenase activity is favored over the carboxylase activity with increasing temperature,

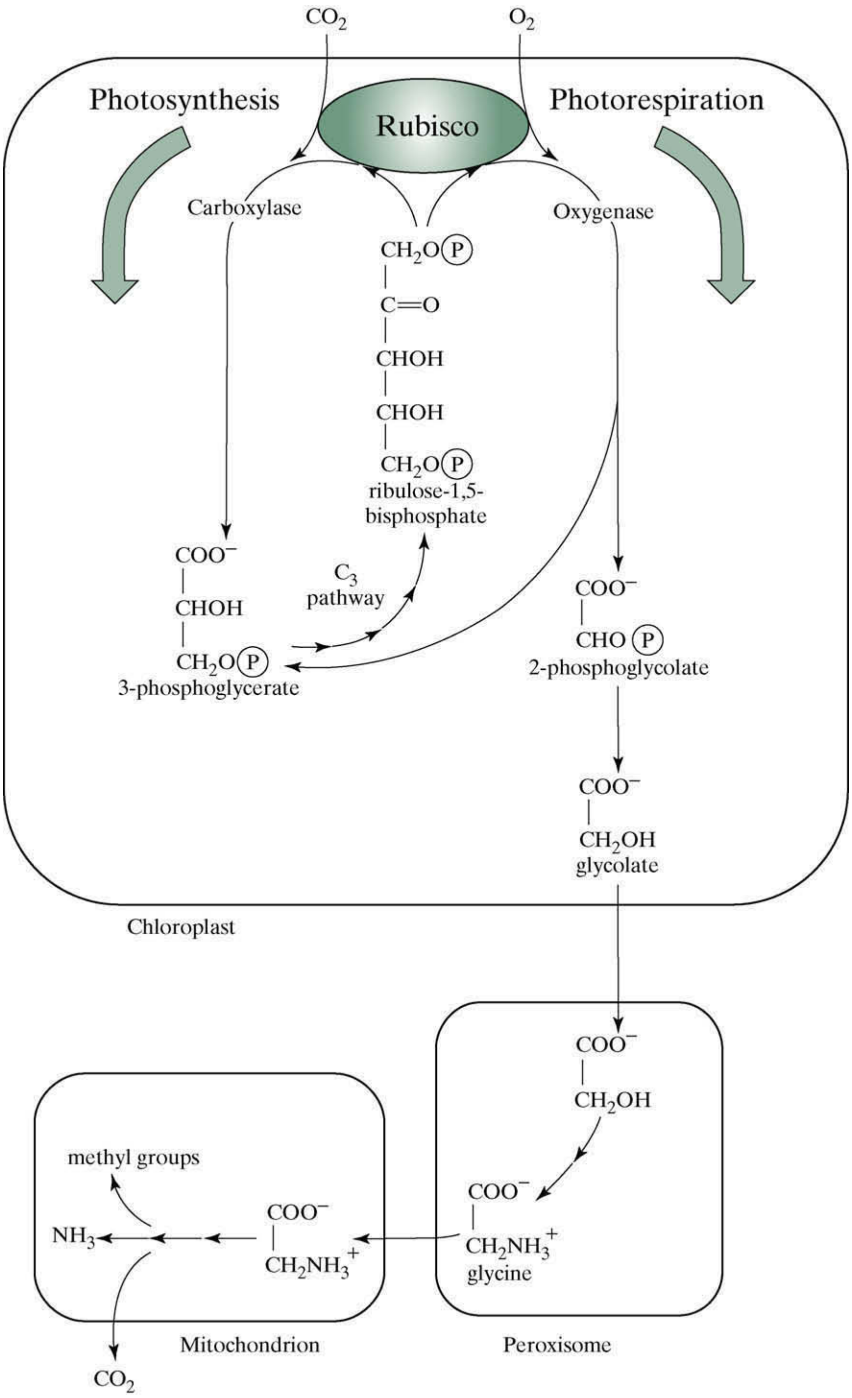


Figure 8-13. Schematic illustration of Rubisco (ribulose-1,5-bisphosphate carboxylase/oxygenase) acting as the branch point for photosynthesis and photorespiration. All three of the organelles involved, but only a few of the biochemical steps, are indicated. (Ⓟ represents phosphate. Note that 3-phosphoglycerate and glycolate refer to the dissociated forms of 3-phosphoglyceric acid and glycolic acid, respectively.)

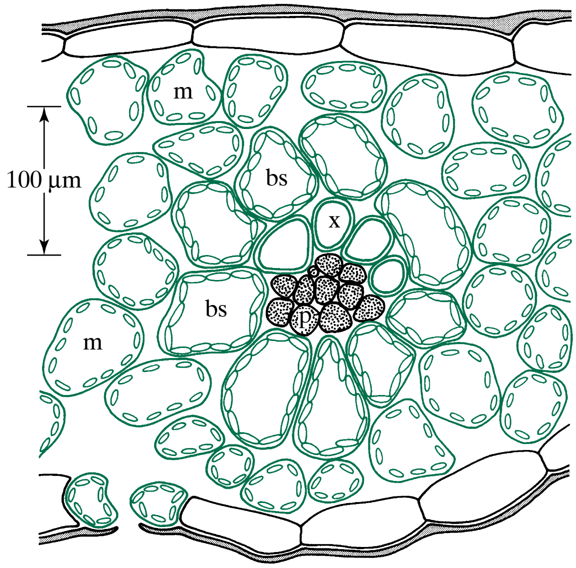


Figure 8-14. Schematic transverse section through a leaf of a C_4 plant, indicating a vascular bundle containing xylem (x) and phloem (p) cells, a concentric layer of bundle sheath cells (bs), and the surrounding mesophyll cells (m). Bundle sheath cells of C_4 plants appear more conspicuously green than do mesophyll cells because the former generally contain more and/or larger chloroplasts (which are granaless in some types of C_4 plants).

photorespiration increases at the expense of photosynthesis at higher temperatures. Regarding CO_2 fixation, photorespiration apparently undoes what photosynthesis has done. We might then ask whether photorespiration benefits a plant—a question that has no entirely convincing answer.

Not all plants photorespire significantly. Many of these "nonphotorespiring" plants are tropical monocots, and all tend to have a leaf anatomy (referred to as *Kranz* anatomy) differing from that of plants with high rates of photorespiration (Fig. 1-2 versus Fig. 8-14). In particular, nonphotorespirers have a conspicuous group of chloroplast-containing cells surrounding the vascular bundles known as the *bundle sheaths* (the bundle sheaths in photorespirers tend to have smaller cells with few or no chloroplasts). Outside a bundle sheath in nonphotorespirers are mesophyll cells where CO_2 is fixed into four-carbon dicarboxylic acids via a C_4 pathway elaborated by Hal Hatch and Charles Slack in the 1960s.

In the C_4 pathway, CO_2 in the form of HCO_3^- reacts with phosphoenolpyruvate (PEP) via the enzyme PEP carboxylase located in the cytosol of the mesophyll cells (Fig. 8-15b).[8] The initial product is oxaloacetate, which is rapidly converted to malate and aspartate. For all chloroplasts in photorespiring (C_3) plants, and for the chloroplasts in the bundle sheath cells of C_4

8. CO_2 can diffuse across the plasma membrane and become hydrated to HCO_3^- via the enzyme carbonic anhydrase, which occurs in the cytosol of mesophyll cells of C_4 plants. The Michaelis constant of PEP carboxylase for HCO_3^- is about 200 mmol m^{-3} (0.2 mM), which suggests that the cytosolic pH must be above 7 to get sufficient HCO_3^- formation (see Table 8-3) to match the CO_2 uptake rates of C_4 plants.

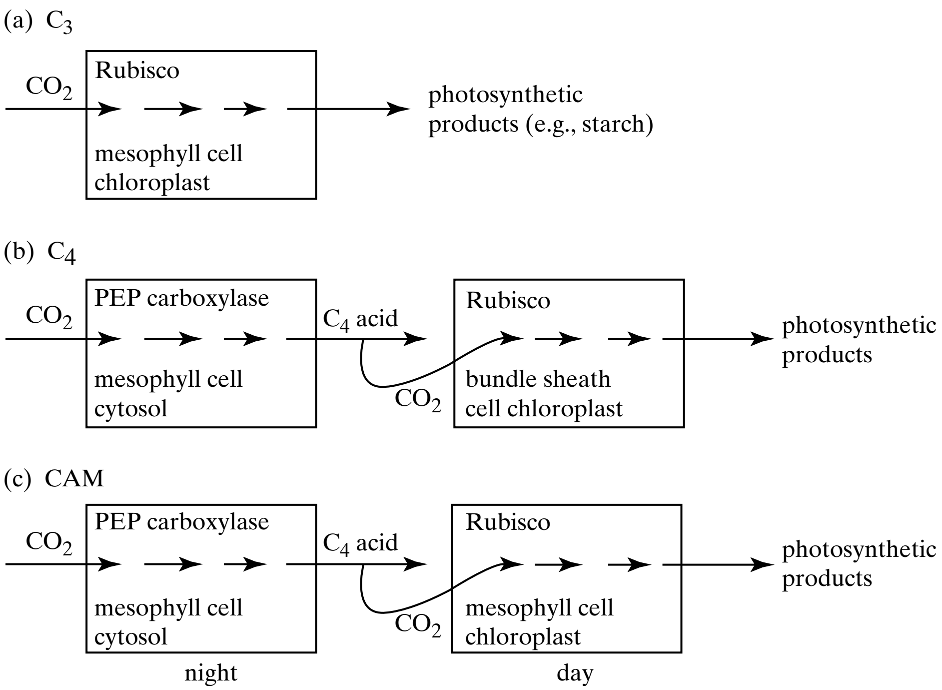


Figure 8-15. Carboxylase reactions and locations for the three photosynthetic pathways: (a) C_3, (b) C_4, and (c) Crassulacean acid metabolism (CAM). The reactions for C_3 and C_4 plants occur during the daytime. The indicated decarboxylations of C_4 acids occur in the cytosol of bundle sheath cells for C_4 plants and the cytosol of mesophyll cells for CAM plants.

plants, photosynthesis uses the ordinary C_3 pathway of the Calvin (Calvin–Benson) cycle—known since the 1940s—where CO_2 is incorporated into ribulose-1,5-bisphosphate, yielding two molecules of the three-carbon compound, 3-phosphoglycerate, a step catalyzed by Rubisco (Figs. 8-13 and 8-15). Biochemical shuttles in C_4 plants move the four-carbon compounds initially produced in the light, such as malate, from the mesophyll cells into the bundle sheath cells (Figs. 8-14 and 8-15b). Decarboxylation of these compounds raises the CO_2 level in the bundle sheath cells to much higher levels than is expected based on diffusion of CO_2 in from the atmosphere (to over 1500 μmol CO_2 mol^{-1} in one estimate; Ehleringer and Björkman, 1977). Because of the high CO_2 level, the carboxylase activity of Rubisco is dominant over (i.e., outcompetes) the oxygenase activity, so photosynthesis takes place in the bundle sheath cells with very little photorespiration. Similarly, raising the external CO_2 level to 1500 μmol mol^{-1} virtually eliminates photorespiration in C_3 plants (see Fig. 8-18); such CO_2 enrichment can be advantageous in greenhouses containing commercially valuable C_3 crops.

Use of stable (non-radioactive) isotopes has provided crucial information on plant water relations and carbon metabolism, such as indicating the usage of photorespiration by C_3 versus C_4 plants. The relative abundance of stable isotopes of oxygen can provide information on the source of water taken up by a plant (O^{16} vs. O^{17} content differs among recent rainfall, water retained deeper in the soil, and water from underground aquifers, as water containing the lighter oxygen isotope evaporates more easily and the remaining water

has a higher O^{17} content). Discrimination between stable carbon isotopes can indicate the photosynthetic pathway used for carbon fixation (Fig. 8-15). Two stable carbon isotopes occur naturally, C^{12} being present in 98.9% of atmospheric CO_2 and the heavier C^{13} occurring in 1.10% (this latter percentage is decreasing due to the burning of fossil fuels, which releases CO_2 with a lower C^{13} content). Carbon dioxide with the heavier isotope diffuses more slowly in the gaseous phases of a leaf (a molecular weight of 45 for $C^{13}O_2^{16}$ vs. 44 for $C^{12}O_2^{16}$ leads to a 1.1% lower diffusion coefficient for the heavier form; Graham's law, Chapter 1, Section 1.2D). In the liquid phases, bicarbonate (HCO_3^-) and a C_4 acid such as malate, which occurs during photosynthesis in C_4 and CAM plants (Fig. 8-15), also diffuses more slowly with the heavier carbon isotope. The rate constant for a chemical reaction (Chapter 3, Section 3.3C) can also depend on the isotopic composition of the substrate; specifically, the reaction rate differs between C^{13} and C^{12} in CO_2 for Rubisco (a relatively large effect) and in HCO_3^- for PEP carboxylase (discrimination is a relatively small effect). For both diffusion and chemical reactions, isotope discrimination in plants also depends on the fraction of molecules using the photosynthetic pathway versus alternative pathways.

Discrimination against C^{13} is commonly designated ∂C^{13} when comparing carbon isotopes in plant tissues (discrimination is relative to a fossil belemnite standard); the units are generally parts per thousand (parts per mil), symbolized by ‰. In this unit, ∂C^{13} is generally −10 to −15‰ for C_4 plants and −20 to −30‰ for C_3 plants. For CAM plants, ∂C^{13} varies according to the amount of daytime CO_2 fixation by Rubisco (e.g., early morning CO_2 uptake by the CAM species *Agave deserti*, Fig. 8-22, occurs in the C_3 mode); thus their ∂C^{13} values are less negative (similar to C_4 species) when soil water is limiting and hence CO_2 uptake occurs primarily at night.

8.4C. Comprehensive CO_2 Resistance Network

We will now develop an analytical framework to represent CO_2 fixation in photosynthesis and its evolution in respiration and photorespiration (Fig. 8-16). The net flux of CO_2 into a leaf, J_{CO_2}, indicates the apparent (net) CO_2 assimilation rate per unit leaf area by photosynthesis (see Fig. 8-1 for a measurement technique). The gross or "true" rate of photosynthesis, $J_{CO_2}^{ps}$, minus the rate of CO_2 evolution by respiration and photorespiration per unit leaf area, $J_{CO_2}^{r+pr}$, equals J_{CO_2}:

$$J_{CO_2} = J_{CO_2}^{ps} - J_{CO_2}^{r+pr} \qquad (8.28)$$

Equation 8.28 summarizes the overall steady-state balance of CO_2 fluxes for leaves. These fluxes depend on temperature in different ways (Fig. 8-16). Net photosynthesis and respiration plus photorespiration can occur at leaf temperatures slightly below 0°C. Inhibition of gross photosynthesis can occur at temperatures above 35 to 40°C for many C_3 species, often primarily reflecting damage to Photosystem II (e.g., Chapter 5, Section 5.5A). In such cases, net CO_2 uptake (Eq. 8.28) can be optimal near 30°C (Fig. 8-16).

We will consider CO_2 fluxes and resistances for photosynthesis, respiration, and photorespiration using an electrical circuit (Fig. 8-17), which

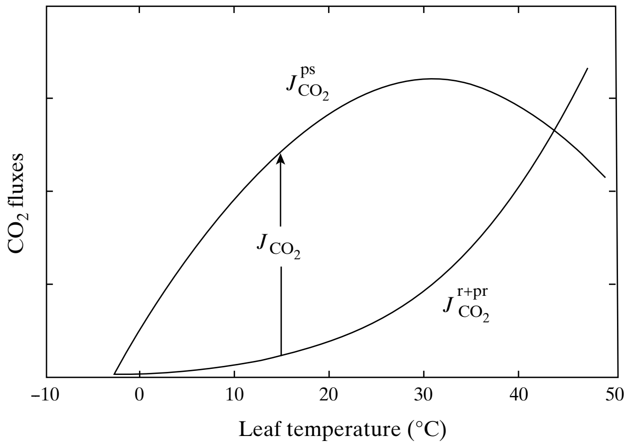


Figure 8-16. Temperature dependence of gross photosynthesis ($J^{ps}_{CO_2}$), respiration plus photorespiration ($J^{r+pr}_{CO_2}$), and net photosynthesis (J_{CO_2} see Eq. 8.28). $J^{r+pr}_{CO_2}$ was assumed to have a Q_{10} (Eq. 3.23) of 2.3. Note that photosynthesis here has a temperature optimum of 30°C, whereas respiration plus photorespiration continually increase with temperature.

greatly facilitates the development of equations. The sources of CO_2 for photosynthesis are the turbulent air surrounding a leaf (represented by the E battery in Fig. 8-17) and respiration plus photorespiration (represented by the e battery). The E battery corresponds to the drop in CO_2 concentration (or mole fraction) from the turbulent air surrounding a leaf to the enzymes of photosynthesis inside chloroplasts, $c^{ta}_{CO_2} - c^{chl}_{CO_2}$, which represents the driving force for inward CO_2 diffusion. The batteries lead to currents that correspond to fluxes of CO_2; for example, I, the current from the E battery, corresponds to J_{CO_2}, and the current i represents the flux density of CO_2 emanating from respiration plus photorespiration, $J^{r+pr}_{CO_2}$. The current I crosses the resistances $r^{bl_l}_{CO_2}$, $r^{leaf_l}_{CO_2}$, and $r^{mes}_{CO_2}$ before being joined by i (Fig. 8-17). The current i encounters $r^{i}_{CO_2}$, the resistance to the movement of CO_2 out of mitochondria and then across a short distance in the cytosol. Both I and i cross the resistance $r^{chl}_{CO_2}$, because CO_2 coming from the surrounding air, as well as that evolved in mitochondria by respiration and photorespiration, can be used for photosynthesis in the chloroplasts (this is a way of paraphrasing Eq. 8.28).

To analyze the electrical circuit in Figure 8-17, we will use Ohm's law ($\Delta E = IR$; see Chapter 3, beginning of Section 3.2) and Kirchhoff's laws. Kirchhoff's first law for electrical circuits states that the algebraic sum of the currents at any junction equals zero. For instance, at the junction in Figure 8-17 where current I meets current i, the current leaving that point equals $I + i$. Kirchhoff's second law, which is also known as the *loop theorem* and is a consequence of the conservation of energy, states that the overall change in electrical potential in going completely around a closed loop is zero. By considering a complete pathway around the left-hand part of the electrical circuit in Figure 8-17, we obtain the following relationship:

$$E - I(r^{bl_l}_{CO_2} + r^{leaf_l}_{CO_2} + r^{mes}_{CO_2}) - (I + i)(r^{chl}_{CO_2}) = 0 \tag{8.29}$$

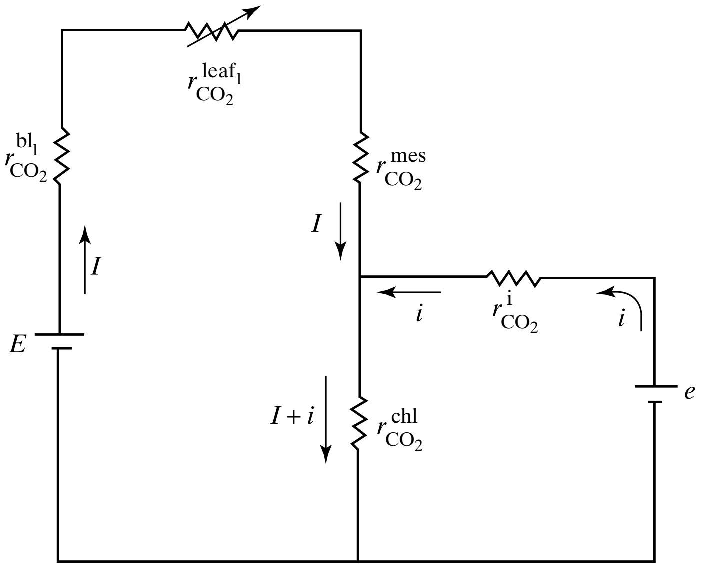


Figure 8-17. Electrical circuit indicating the resistances affecting photosynthesis, respiration, and photorespiration. The sources of CO_2 are the turbulent air surrounding a leaf (represented by the battery of electromotive force E) and respiration plus photorespiration (the e battery). The current I corresponds to the net CO_2 influx into the leaf (J_{CO_2}), i represents CO_2 evolution by respiration plus photorespiration ($J_{CO_2}^{r+pr}$), and $I + i$ corresponds to gross photosynthesis ($J_{CO_2}^{ps}$). The voltages at various locations correspond to specific CO_2 concentrations; for example, the voltage in the upper right corner (between $r_{CO_2}^{leaf_l}$ and $r_{CO_2}^{mes}$) corresponds to $c_{CO_2}^{ias}$ that in the middle right corner (between $r_{CO_2}^{i}$ and e) corresponds to $c_{CO_2}^{mito}$ and that along the lower line corresponds to $c_{CO_2}^{chl}$

For CO_2 exchange, E in Equation 8.29 can be replaced by $c_{CO_2}^{ta} - c_{CO_2}^{chl}$, I can be replaced by J_{CO_2}, and i can be replaced by $J_{CO_2}^{r+pr}$. Upon moving the resistance terms to the right-hand side of the equation, we thus obtain

$$c_{CO_2}^{ta} - c_{CO_2}^{chl} = J_{CO_2}(r_{CO_2}^{bl_l} + r_{CO_2}^{leaf_l} + r_{CO_2}^{mes} + r_{CO_2}^{chl}) + J_{CO_2}^{r+pr} r_{CO_2}^{chl} \qquad (8.30)$$

If respiration or photorespiration decrease, Equation 8.30 indicates that the net CO_2 uptake rate will increase when other factors are unchanged.

8.4D. Compensation Points

The atmospheric CO_2 concentration at which the CO_2 evolved by respiration and photorespiration is exactly compensated by CO_2 consumption in photosynthesis, leading to no net CO_2 uptake, is known as the *CO_2 compensation point*. We can use the electrical circuit in Figure 8-17 and Equation 8.30 derived from it to demonstrate the CO_2 compensation point for photosynthesis in terms of forces and fluxes. In particular, if we steadily decrease $c_{CO_2}^{ta}$ for a leaf initially having a net uptake of CO_2, J_{CO_2} will decrease and eventually will become zero when $c_{CO_2}^{ta} - c_{CO_2}^{chl}$ is

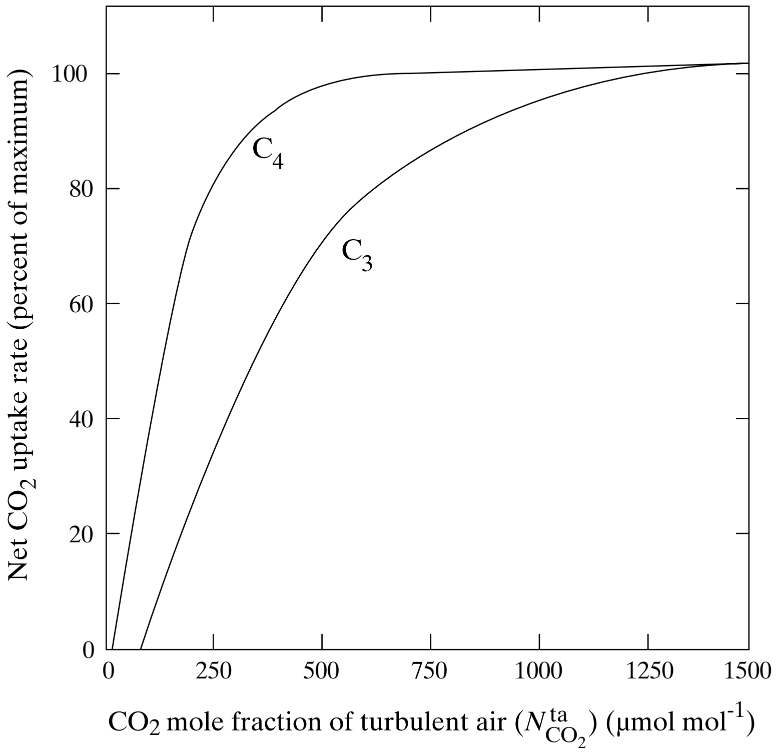


Figure 8-18. Dependence of net CO_2 uptake on external CO_2 level for leaves of representative C_3 and C_4 plants. C_3 plants require a higher $N^{ta}_{CO_2}$ at the CO_2 compensation point ($J_{CO_2} = 0$) and for CO_2 saturation than C_4 plants. We note that because photosynthesis for C_4 plants is already nearly saturated at current atmospheric CO_2 levels, higher CO_2 levels generally will not substantially enhance their photosynthetic rates, whereas the increasing atmospheric CO_2 levels will progressively increase net CO_2 uptake for C_3 plants.

equal to $J^{r+pr}_{CO_2} r^{chl}_{CO_2}$ (see Eq. 8.30). Thus, reducing the concentration of CO_2 in the turbulent air surrounding an illuminated leaf will eliminate net CO_2 fixation at the CO_2 compensation point.

The CO_2 compensation point is much higher for a C_3 plant than for a C_4 plant. At the compensation point, $c^{ta}_{CO_2} - c^{chl}_{CO_2}$ is equal to $J^{r+pr}_{CO_2} r^{chl}_{CO_2}$ and $J^{r+pr}_{CO_2}$ is larger when photorespiration is appreciable. Most C_4 plants (e.g., *Amaranthus*, Bermuda grass, maize, sorghum, sugarcane, Sudan grass) have CO_2 compensation points of 3 to 10 μmol CO_2 mol^{-1} in the turbulent air (Fig. 8-18; CO_2 levels in the gas phase are usually expressed as mole fractions, as we will do here). Most dicotyledons and temperate monocots are C_3 plants (e.g., cotton, lettuce, maples, oaks, orchard grass, roses, tobacco, tomato, wheat) and have CO_2 compensation points of 40 to 100 μmol CO_2 mol^{-1} (Fig. 8-18). A few species (e.g., some species of *Mollugo*, *Moricandia*, and *Panicum*) have intermediate CO_2 compensation points near 25 μmol CO_2 mol^{-1}, and shifts between C_3 and C_4 patterns can even occur during leaf development. The CO_2 compensation points generally increase with increasing temperature and decreasing

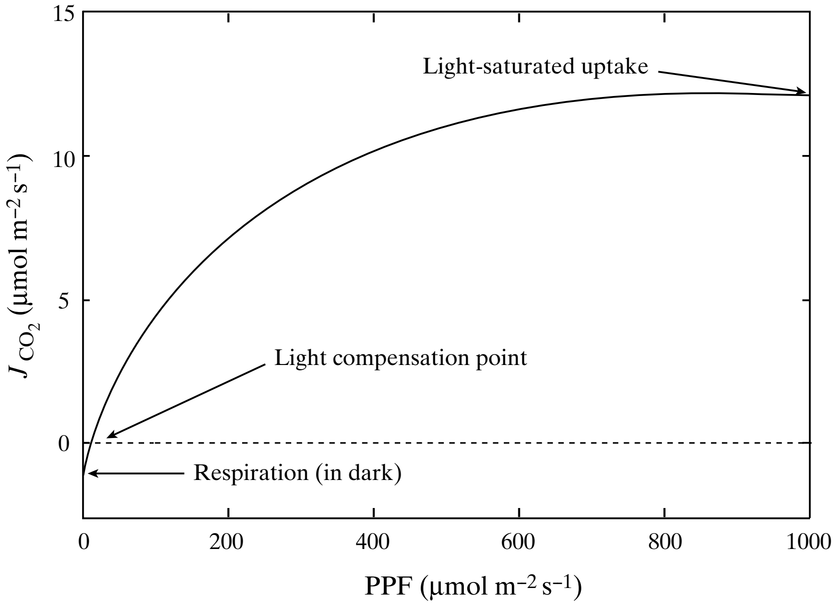


Figure 8-19. Idealized hyperbolic relationship between the photosynthetic photon flux incident on the upper leaf surface and the net CO_2 uptake rate for a C_3 plant. The intercept on the ordinate (y-axis) indicates the net CO_2 flux by respiration in the dark (−1 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1}), the intercept on the dashed line indicates the light compensation point (a PPF of 15 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1}), the essentially linear initial slope ($\partial J_{CO_2}/\partial J_{PPF}$) indicates the quantum yield (Eq. 4.16) for photosynthesis [(5 – 0 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1})/(115 – 15 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1}) = 0.05 mol CO_2/mol PPF], and the maximum J_{CO_2} reached asymptotically at high PPF indicates the light-saturated net CO_2 uptake rate (about 12 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1}; often designated A_{max} or A^{max}). Here the quantum yield is based on incident photons, but more appropriately it should be based on absorbed photons.

photosynthetic photon flux; the values given are appropriate at 20 to 25°C when the PPF is not limiting for photosynthesis.[9]

If we reduce the amount of light incident on a leaf from the value for direct sunlight, we eventually reach a PPF for which there is no net CO_2 uptake (Fig. 8-19). This PPF for which J_{CO_2} is zero is known as the *light compensation point* for photosynthesis. Because photorespiration depends on photosynthetic products, both photorespiration and gross photosynthesis decrease as the PPF is lowered. Hence, the light compensation point for leaves is approximately the same for C_3 and C_4 plants—at 20°C and 380 μmol CO_2 mol^{-1} in the turbulent air near a leaf, light

9. The CO_2 compensation point is often used in photosynthetic models that do not consider the individual resistances or conductances in the mesophyll region or the chloroplasts. In particular, $c^{chl}_{CO_2}$ in Equation 8.27 is replaced by $c^{ias}_{CO_2} - c^{compensation}_{CO_2}$, so that leaf net CO_2 uptake is zero when $c^{ta}_{CO_2}$ equals $c^{ias}_{CO_2}$ (i.e., no inward driving force), which is then $c^{compensation}_{CO_2}$; effects of photorespiration as well as the resistances $r^{mes}_{CO_2}$, $r^{chl}_{CO_2}$ and $r^{i}_{CO_2}$ are then subsumed into their effect on $c^{ias}_{CO_2}$ (or more usually, $N^{ias}_{CO_2}$). This approach allows effects of temperature and increasing atmospheric CO_2 levels on net CO_2 uptake to be readily modeled, although cellular details are obscured.

compensation usually occurs at a PPF of 8 to 16 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1} for C_3 plants and 6 to 14 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1} for C_4 plants (the lower values are for shade leaves or shade plants). The light compensation point, which occurs at less than 1% of a full sunlight PPF of about 2000 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1} (Chapter 4, Section 4.1D), is important in our consideration of plant canopies in Chapter 9 (Section 9.2E). For example, leaves shaded by many overlying leaves can actually be at (or below) the light compensation point when the exposed leaves have appreciable net rates of CO_2 uptake. Also, even the uppermost leaves can reach the light compensation point on cloudy days or near sunrise or sunset.

At either compensation point, J_{CO_2} is zero when $c^{ta}_{CO_2} - c^{chl}_{CO_2}$ is equal to $J^{r+pr}_{CO_2} r^{chl}_{CO_2}$ (Eq. 8.30). For the light compensation point, $c^{ta}_{CO_2}$ is unchanged but $c^{chl}_{CO_2}$ increases owing to a decrease in CO_2 fixation by photosynthesis at the low PPF. If we lower the PPF below the light compensation point, J_{CO_2} reverses direction, meaning there is then a net flux of CO_2 out of the leaf. For instance, when $c^{chl}_{CO_2}$ is equal to $c^{ta}_{CO_2}$, J_{CO_2} equals $-J^{r+pr}_{CO_2} r^{chl}_{CO_2}/(r^{bl_l}_{CO_2} + r^{leaf_l}_{CO_2} + r^{mes}_{CO_2} + r^{chl}_{CO_2})$ by Equation 8.30, a conclusion that can also be reached by applying the loop theorem to the left-hand side of Figure 8-17 (note that E is zero when $c^{chl}_{CO_2}$ is equal to $c^{ta}_{CO_2}$). Thus part of the respiratory plus photorespiratory flux density of CO_2 is then refixed in the chloroplasts and part comes out of the leaf.

At night, J_{CO_2} becomes equal to $-J^{r+pr}_{CO_2}$ because $J^{ps}_{CO_2}$ is zero as gross photosynthesis stops upon cessation of illumination (Eq. 8.28), as does photorespiration. The respiratory flow of CO_2 out of the leaf is then driven by the higher CO_2 concentration in the mitochondria than in the turbulent air, encountering the resistances $r^{i}_{CO_2}$, $r^{mes}_{CO_2}$, $r^{leaf_l}_{CO_2}$, and $r^{bl_l}_{CO_2}$, in that order (see Fig. 8-17). In particular, the E battery still corresponds to $c^{ta}_{CO_2} - c^{chl}_{CO_2}$, but $c^{chl}_{CO_2}$ is greater than $c^{ta}_{CO_2}$ at night, so the battery reverses its polarity. The condition of $J^{ps}_{CO_2}$ equaling zero means that there is no current through $r^{chl}_{CO_2}$ ($I = -i$), so applying the loop theorem to the left-hand side of Figure 8-17 then yields

$$c^{ta}_{CO_2} - c^{chl}_{CO_2} = -J^{r+pr}_{CO_2}(r^{bl_l}_{CO_2} + r^{leaf_l}_{CO_2} + r^{mes}_{CO_2}) \tag{8.31a}$$

and applying the loop theorem to the right-hand side yields

$$c^{mito}_{CO_2} - c^{chl}_{CO_2} = J^{r+pr}_{CO_2} r^{i}_{CO_2} \tag{8.31b}$$

Subtracting Equation 8.31a from 8.31b leads to

$$c^{mito}_{CO_2} - c^{ta}_{CO_2} = J^{r+pr}_{CO_2}(r^{bl_l}_{CO_2} + r^{leaf_l}_{CO_2} + r^{mes}_{CO_2} + r^{i}_{CO_2}) \tag{8.31c}$$

Equation 8.31c can be used to describe the efflux of respiratory CO_2 from leaves at night.

The electrical circuit in Figure 8-17 and Equations 8.30 and 8.31c developed from it are able to portray the CO_2 compensation point, the light compensation point, as well as the general interrelations of the fluxes of CO_2 for photosynthesis, photorespiration, and respiration in the light and in the dark. Our discussion and Figure 8-17 are for C_3 plants—to apply an electrical circuit analog to C_4 and Crassulacean acid metabolism (CAM)

plants, we need to consider the cytosolic location of the initial CO_2 fixing enzymes (Fig. 8-15) as well as the fate of the CO_2 released upon decarboxylation of the four-carbon acids.

8.4E. Fluxes of CO_2

Using Equation 8.30, we can relate the apparent or net rate of photosynthesis, J_{CO_2}, to the various resistances, the rate of respiration plus photorespiration, and the overall drop in CO_2 concentration ($\Delta c_{CO_2}^{total} = c_{CO_2}^{ta} - c_{CO_2}^{chl}$). Let us rearrange Equation 8.30 into the following form:

$$J_{CO_2} = \frac{c_{CO_2}^{ta} - c_{CO_2}^{chl}}{r_{CO_2}^{bl_l} + r_{CO_2}^{leaf_l} + r_{CO_2}^{mes} + \left(1 + \dfrac{J_{CO_2}^{r+pr}}{J_{CO_2}}\right) r_{CO_2}^{chl}} = \frac{\Delta c_{CO_2}^{total}}{r_{CO_2}^{total}} \tag{8.32}$$

where we have used our customary definition of resistance to obtain $r_{CO_2}^{total}$, the total effective resistance for CO_2 fixation—namely, resistance equals the concentration drop divided by the flux density (see Eq. 8.1d). We note that $r_{CO_2}^{total}$ depends on $J_{CO_2}^{r+pr}$, which is a consequence of the complicated electrical circuit (Fig. 8-17) needed to represent the various CO_2 components. Using Equation 8.28 we can manipulate the factor in Equation 8.32 containing $J_{CO_2}^{r+pr}$ as follows:

$$1 + \frac{J_{CO_2}^{r+pr}}{J_{CO_2}} = \frac{J_{CO_2} + J_{CO_2}^{r+pr}}{J_{CO_2}} = \frac{J_{CO_2}^{ps}}{J_{CO_2}} = \frac{J_{CO_2}^{ps}}{J_{CO_2}^{ps} - J_{CO_2}^{r+pr}} = \frac{1}{1 - \dfrac{J_{CO_2}^{r+pr}}{J_{CO_2}^{ps}}} \tag{8.33}$$

The appropriate form of this factor to use in Equation 8.32 depends on which ratio of fluxes is known.

Sometimes it may be convenient to rearrange Equation 8.30 in other ways, such as

$$J_{CO_2} = \frac{\left(\Delta c_{CO_2}^{total} - J_{CO_2}^{r+pr} r_{CO_2}^{chl}\right)}{\left(r_{CO_2}^{bl_l} + r_{CO_2}^{leaf_l} + r_{CO_2}^{mes} + r_{CO_2}^{chl}\right)} \tag{8.34}$$

This form clearly shows that J_{CO_2} is zero at the compensation points, where $\Delta c_{CO_2}^{total}$ equals $J_{CO_2}^{r+pr} r_{CO_2}^{chl}$.

We next consider J_{CO_2} for specific values of CO_2 resistances and CO_2 concentrations. We will use a CO_2 mole fraction of 360 μmol mol^{-1} in the turbulent air around a leaf within a plant canopy, which corresponds to a CO_2 concentration of (360)(0.0410), or 14.8 mmol CO_2 m^{-3} at 20°C and a pressure of 0.1 MPa (see conversion factor in Table 8-2). Although we do not have reliable measurements of $c_{CO_2}^{chl}$, it may be about 8.0 mmol m^{-3} for a photorespiring plant at a saturating PPF. At 20°C, respiration plus photorespiration might be 30% as large as net photosynthesis. For purposes of calculation, we will let the gas phase resistance $r_{CO_2}^{bl_l} + r_{CO_2}^{leaf_l}$ be 400 s m^{-1}, $r_{CO_2}^{mes}$ be 140 s m^{-1}, and $r_{CO_2}^{chl}$ be 100 s m^{-1} (see Table 8-4). Using Equation 8.32, we

then calculate the net photosynthesis to be

$$J_{CO_2} = \frac{14.8 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{mol m}^{-3} - 8.0 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{mol m}^{-3}}{400\ \text{s m}^{-1} + 140\ \text{s m}^{-1} + (1.0 + 0.3)(100\ \text{s m}^{-1})}$$

$$= \frac{6.8 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{mol m}^{-3}}{670\ \text{s m}^{-1}} = 10.1\ \mu\text{mol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1}$$

We have so far considered CO_2 diffusing into a leaf only across its lower surface. In the general case, CO_2 can move in across its upper surface as well, which we can incorporate into our considerations by appropriately reducing the resistance $r_{CO_2}^{bl_l} + r_{CO_2}^{leaf_l}$ ($r_{CO_2}^{mes}$ and $r_{CO_2}^{chl}$ are unaffected when CO_2 diffuses in through both sides of a leaf). If 30% of the CO_2 diffused in through the upper side of a leaf, the effective resistance between the turbulent air and the surfaces of the mesophyll cells would be 70% as great as is $r_{CO_2}^{bl_l} + r_{CO_2}^{leaf_l}$.[10] For instance, $r_{CO_2}^{bl_l} + r_{CO_2}^{leaf_l}$ is 400 s m^{-1}, so the resistance of this part of the pathway is reduced to (0.70)(400 s m^{-1}), or 280 s m^{-1}, if 30% of the CO_2 enters through the upper surface. This reduces $r_{CO_2}^{total}$ from 670 s m^{-1} to 550 s m^{-1}, which would raise J_{CO_2} to 12.4 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1} if $c_{CO_2}^{chl}$ were unchanged. Actually, $c_{CO_2}^{chl}$ must increase to lead to the higher photosynthetic rate (Eq. 8.27), offsetting most of the possible increase in J_{CO_2} caused by the lower gas-phase resistance (see Eq. 8.32). For example, if K_{CO_2} is 10 mmol m^{-3}, then simultaneously solving[11] Equations 8.27 and 8.32 for $c_{CO_2}^{chl}$ indicates that $c_{CO_2}^{chl}$ will increase to 8.9 mmol m^{-3} (equivalent to about 220 μmol CO_2 mol^{-1}) and J_{CO_2} will be (14.8 × 10^{-3} mol m^{-3} – 8.9 × 10^{-3} mol m^{-3})/(550 s m^{-1}) or 10.7 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1} for the lower resistance condition. Thus, even though transpiration is increased by 43% for the more realistic case with 30% of the gases passing through the upper epidermis (Section 8.2F), photosynthesis is increased by only 6%.

We next consider what would happen to CO_2 uptake if the stomata (stomates) provided no resistance to CO_2 entry. Instead of a gas-phase resistance for CO_2 of 280 s m^{-1}, it might then be only 80 s m^{-1} for the

10. See Section 8.2F for discussion of the analogous situation in transpiration. Instead of knowing the relative flux densities through the two sides, we might know the resistances. We could then use Equation 8.12 (with "CO_2" replacing "wv" as subscripts) to determine the CO_2 resistance of the two leaf surfaces in parallel. Quite often the gas phase resistance for water vapor is measured for the two leaf surfaces together, in which case the gas-phase CO_2 resistance is obtained by multiplying r_{wv}^{total} by D_{wv}/D_{CO_2}(see Eq. 8.20).

11. Assuming that the ratio $J_{CO_2}^{r+pr}/J_{CO_2}$ is unchanged as the gas-phase resistance changes, J_{CO_2} is proportional to $J_{CO_2}^{ps}$ by Equation 8.33. Letting x represent $c_{CO_2}^{chl}$ by the biochemical formalism of photosynthesis involved in Equation 8.27 J_{CO_2} is proportional to $x/(10 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{mol m}^{-3} + x)$; using the net CO_2 uptake rate calculated for x equal to 8.0 × 10^{-3} mol m^{-3}, the proportionality constant is [(10 × 10^{-3} mol m^{-3} + 8.0 × 10^{-3} mol m^{-3})/(8.0 × 10^{-3} mol m^{-3})](10.1 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1}) or 22.7 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1}. When $r_{CO_2}^{total}$ decreases to 550 s m^{-1}, by Equation 8.32 J_{CO_2} also equals (14.8 × 10^{-3} mol m^{-3} – x)/(550 s m^{-1}). We next eliminate J_{CO_2} between these two equations, which upon rearrangement leads to the quadratic equation $x^2 + 7.7 \times 10^{-3}x - 148 \times 10^{-6} = 0$. The solution for the roots of a quadratic equation is given in Appendix III, which in the present case is 8.9 × 10^{-3} mol m^{-3}.

two leaf surfaces acting in parallel (most of the resistance was due to the stomata, but the resistances of the boundary layer and the intercellular air spaces still remain). The $r_{CO_2}^{total}$ would thus be lowered to 350 s m^{-1}. Again simultaneously solving Equations 8.27 and 8.32 for $c_{CO_2}^{chl}$ with a K_{CO_2} of 10 mmol m^{-3}, we find that J_{CO_2} is 11.8 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1}. Thus completely removing both epidermises will increase CO_2 uptake from 10.7 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1} to 11.8 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1}, or by only 10%; thus the stomata do not greatly restrict the photosynthetic rate in this case, although their pores occupy only a very small fraction of the leaf surface area. In summary, we reach the important conclusion that stomata exert major control on transpiratory water loss while restricting net CO_2 uptake relatively little. Moreover, our dual approach involving both CO_2 diffusion described by Fick's first law and a Michaelis–Menten type description of the biochemistry (Fig. 8-12), when considered simultaneously, allows a quantitative evaluation of the relative unimportance of stomata and other gas-phase components in limiting net CO_2 uptake by plants.

8.4F. CO_2 Conductances

Our analysis for CO_2 fluxes could be carried out using conductances and mole fractions instead of resistances and concentrations. Also, we could divide the CO_2 pathway into a gas-phase component from the turbulent air up to the mesophyll cells and a liquid-phase component representing the mesophyll cells and their chloroplasts. The drop in CO_2 mole fraction across the gas phase, $\Delta N_{CO_2}^{gas}$, can be related to the CO_2 conductance for the gas phase, $g_{CO_2}^{gas}$, and CO_2 mole fractions as follows:

$$J_{CO_2} = g_{CO_2}^{gas}\Delta N_{CO_2}^{gas} = g_{CO_2}^{gas}\left(N_{CO_2}^{ta} - N_{CO_2}^{ias}\right) \tag{8.35}$$

where $N_{CO_2}^{ta}$ is the CO_2 mole fraction in the turbulent air and $N_{CO_2}^{ias}$ is that in the intercellular air spaces. We note that $g_{CO_2}^{gas}$ is equal to $g_{wv}^{total}/1.60$, where g_{wv}^{total} can be defined by Equation 8.15 and 1.60 is the value of D_{wv}/D_{CO_2} (Eq. 8.20). Under optimal photosynthetic conditions, $N_{CO_2}^{ias}$ is nearly twice as high for leaves of C_3 compared with C_4 plants (discussed in Section 8.5D). Indeed, $N_{CO_2}^{ias}$ is an important parameter for evaluating photosynthesis at the mesophyll or liquid-phase level as well as for studying the regulation of stomatal opening. We can identify a liquid-phase CO_2 conductance for the part of the pathway from the mesophyll cell walls up to the CO_2-fixation enzymes:

$$J_{CO_2} = g_{CO_2}^{liquid}\left(N_{CO_2}^{ias} - N_{CO_2}^{chl}\right) \tag{8.36}$$

If respiration and photorespiration can be ignored, then $1/g_{CO_2}^{liquid}$ is equal to $1/g_{CO_2}^{mes} + 1/g_{CO_2}^{chl}$ (equivalently, $r_{CO_2}^{liquid} = r_{CO_2}^{mes} + r_{CO_2}^{chl}$). Otherwise, we could return to Figure 8-17 and note that

$$N_{CO_2}^{ias} - N_{CO_2}^{chl} = J_{CO_2}/g_{CO_2}^{mes} + J_{CO_2}^{ps}/g_{CO_2}^{chl} = J_{CO_2}\left[1/g_{CO_2}^{mes} + \left(J_{CO_2}^{ps}/J_{CO_2}\right)/g_{CO_2}^{chl}\right]$$

which in turn equals $J_{CO_2}/g_{CO_2}^{liquid}$ by Equation 8.36. This intermingling of conductances and fluxes again reflects the complication of having more than one source of CO_2 that can be fixed photosynthetically (see Eq. 8.30).

If we are interested in the photosynthetic properties of the mesophyll cells, we might wish to express the CO_2 conductance on the basis of the surface area of these mesophyll cells:

$$g_{CO_2}^{cell} = \frac{g_{CO_2}^{liquid}}{A^{mes}/A} \tag{8.37}$$

where $g_{CO_2}^{cell}$ is the cellular conductance for CO_2. Indeed, $g_{CO_2}^{cell}$, which represents the CO_2 conductance from the cell wall to the chloroplast stroma (Figs. 8-8 and 8-11), can be rather similar among a wide range of plants, as much of the variation of the liquid phase conductance can be attributed to variations in A^{mes}/A (Fig. 8-20).

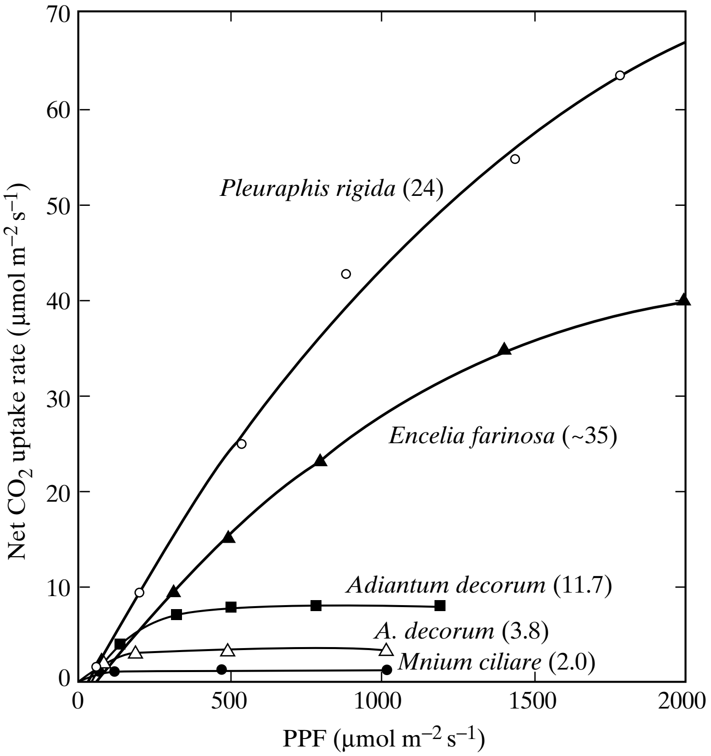


Figure 8-20. Responses of net CO_2 uptake rate to photosynthetic photon flux for species differing in mesophyll surface area per unit leaf area (A^{mes}/A). Curves were obtained at ambient CO_2 concentrations, optimal temperatures, and the A^{mes}/A indicated in parentheses. [Sources: for the C_4 desert grass *Pleuraphis rigida*, Nobel (1980); for the C_3 desert composite *Encelia farinosa*, Ehleringer et al. (1976); and for the C_3 maidenhair fern *Adiantum decorum* and the C_3 moss *Mnium ciliare*, Nobel (1977).]

8.4G. Photosynthetic Rates

The net rates of photosynthesis vary considerably with plant species, temperature, PPF, and other conditions (e.g., Fig. 8-20). For instance, the maximum J_{CO_2} is often 5 to 10 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1} for the leaves of trees. Certain C_3 crop plants, such as sugar beet, soybean, and tobacco, can have a J_{CO_2} of 20 to 25 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1} at a saturating PPF and leaf temperatures near 30°C. For C_4 plants, the maximum J_{CO_2} tends to be higher because $J_{CO_2}^{r+pr}$ is small and the liquid-phase resistance also is often relatively small. Under optimal conditions of high PPF and a leaf temperature of 35°C, J_{CO_2} can exceed 40 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1} for Bermuda grass, maize, sorghum, sugarcane, and certain other C_4 plants (as well as a few C_3 species). An extremely high value of 67 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1} can occur for the C_4 grass *Pleuraphis rigida* at full sunlight (Fig. 8-20) and for a few other species.

Maximal rates of net CO_2 uptake per unit leaf area for C_3 plants can vary with A^{mes}/A for leaves on a single plant, on different plants of the same species, and even among species (Fig. 8-20). For instance, A^{mes}/A can be two or more times larger for sun leaves than for shade leaves (see Fig. 7-11) on the same plant; this reduces $r_{CO_2}^{total}$ and consequently enhances the maximal photosynthetic rates of sun leaves compared to shade leaves. The variation in J_{CO_2} with A^{mes}/A can be even more dramatic among species (Fig. 8-20). If the mesophyll cells were tightly packed into a layer with no intervening air spaces, A^{mes}/A can be 2.0., which is essentially its lowest value. This occurs for the moss *Mnium ciliare,* whose leaves are one cell thick with the lateral walls completely touching; thus the only area available for CO_2 to diffuse from the gas phase into the cells is their end walls, which have a total area twice that of one side of the leaf. Instead of a mesophyll resistance of 140 s m^{-1} that we calculated for an A^{mes}/A of 20 (Table 8-4), $r_{CO_2}^{mes}$ is about 1400 s m^{-1} for an A^{mes}/A of 2. The evolution of a leaf anatomy with abundant mesophyll cell surface area leading to a large value for A^{mes}/A allows $r_{CO_2}^{mes}$ and $r_{CO_2}^{chl}$ to be fairly low, with a correspondingly high value for J_{CO_2} (see Fig. 8-20).

Many units are used to express photosynthesis and CO_2 fluxes for leaves. Conversion factors for some of the more common units are summarized in Table 8-2. For example, 16 mg CO_2 dm^{-2} hour^{-1} (a common old unit) corresponds to (16)(0.631), or 10 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1}. The chlorophyll amount per unit leaf area usually ranges from 0.2 to 0.8 g m^{-2}, with 0.4 to 0.5 g m^{-2} being typical. Therefore, 10 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1} might correspond to (10 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1})/(0.4 g chlorophyll m^{-2}), or 25 μmol CO_2 (g chlorophyll)$^{-1}$ s^{-1}, which equals 90 μmol CO_2 fixed (mg chlorophyll)$^{-1}$ hour^{-1} (a unit commonly used in chloroplast studies).

8.4H. Environmental Productivity Index

Water status, temperature, and PPF all affect stomatal opening (Section 8.1B) and hence the photosynthetic rates of leaves. Sometimes such environmental effects are incorporated into photosynthetic models by their influences on $g_{CO_2}^{st}$ (Eq. 8.5) or V_{max} (Eq. 8.27). Indices have also been proposed relating J_{CO_2} to rainfall and the water status of the plants, to the

ambient temperature, and to the intercepted radiation. In addition, J_{CO_2} increases nearly linearly with nitrogen content per unit leaf area, and other nutrients can also affect J_{CO_2}. All of these environmental and soil factors can simultaneously influence photosynthetic rates in a multiplicative manner.

Recognizing that various environmental factors can simultaneously affect the photosynthetic rates of leaves leads to an Environmental Productivity Index (EPI):

$$\text{EPI} = \text{Water Index} \times \text{Temperature Index} \times \text{PPF Index} \times \text{Nutrient Index} \tag{8.38}$$

where each component index ranges from 0.00, when limitation by that factor abolishes net CO_2 uptake, to 1.00, when that factor is optimal for CO_2 uptake (Nobel, 1988, 1989). In particular, J_{CO_2} can be measured for individual leaves either instantaneously or over 24-hour periods when varying one factor at a time in the laboratory. The values of each component index can be used for the environmental conditions prevailing in the field to predict EPI, which represents the fraction of maximal net CO_2 uptake occurring either instantaneously or over the course of a day. This dimensionless EPI times the maximal rate of net CO_2 uptake gives the actual rate of net CO_2 uptake. The maximal rate can be determined in the laboratory or even in the field when the soil is wet (Water Index = 1.00), the air temperature is optimal for net CO_2 uptake (Temperature Index = 1.00), the PPF is saturating for photosynthesis (PPF Index = 1.00), and nutrients are not limiting (Nutrient Index = 1.00). Although secondary interactions do occur, such as a lower PPF being required for saturation of J_{CO_2} at suboptimal temperatures, EPI (Eq. 8.38) can be used to predict the major influences of climate and soil factors on net CO_2 uptake in the field under current as well as hypothetical future conditions.

So far EPI has been applied mainly to CAM plants based on values of individual indices determined in the laboratory over 24-hour periods, such as for a common leaf succulent of the Sonoran Desert, *Agave deserti*. In the summer, EPI for *A. deserti* increases four-fold from an elevation of 300 m to one of 1300 m, primarily reflecting a three-fold increase in rainfall, which raises the Water Index (Eq. 8.38), and a nearly 10°C decrease in temperature, which raises the Temperature Index (Eq. 8.38) because the warm temperatures at low elevations at this time of year are considerably higher than those optimal for net CO_2 uptake by this species (Nobel and Hartsock, 1986). In the winter, EPI increases to mid-elevations, reflecting an increase in the Water Index, and then decreases at higher elevations, reflecting the overriding importance of a decreasing Temperature Index at this cold time of the year. The seasonal changes in EPI correlate well with changes in productivity measured by monitoring the unfolding of sword-like leaves from the central spike of unfolded leaves. Indeed, monthly unfolding of new leaves is closely correlated with monthly EPI for *A. deserti* in the northwestern Sonoran Desert (Fig. 8-21a) and for *Agave tequilana*, which is cultivated for tequila production in Jalisco, Mexico (Fig. 8-21b). In both cases, drought was the main factor limiting EPI, as the Water Index was below 0.20 for long periods in these semi-arid regions. Also, shading between plants was greater for the

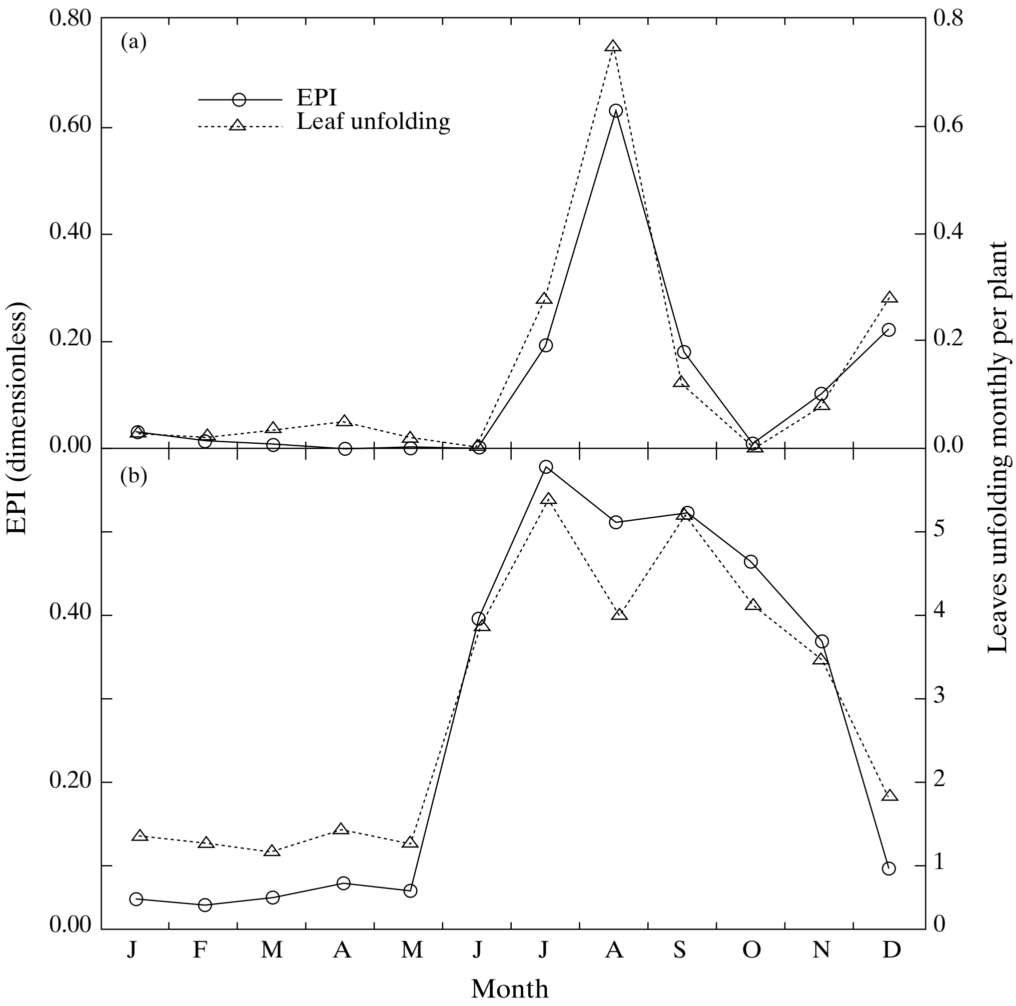


Figure 8-21. Monthly averages for the Environmental Productivity Index (Eq. 8.38) and the number of new leaves unfolding monthly per plant for (a) 50 plants of *Agave deserti* in the northwestern Sonoran Desert near Palm Desert, California; and (b) 20 three-year-old *Agave tequilana* planted near Tequila, Jalisco, Mexico. (Source: Nobel, 1988.)

more closely spaced *A. tequilana* in commercial plantations (average PPF Index of 0.53), which can be harvested in approximately 6 years (just before flowering), compared to the more slowly growing *A. deserti* under natural conditions (average PPF Index of 0.76), which generally lives about 60 years before flowering (Nobel, 1988).

8.5. Water-Use Efficiency

Stomatal opening leading to the CO_2 uptake that is necessary for photosynthesis results in an inevitable loss of water. A useful parameter relating the two fluxes and showing the total CO_2 fixed (benefit) per unit water lost

(cost) is the *water-use efficiency* (WUE):

$$\text{WUE} = \frac{\text{mass CO}_2\text{ fixed}}{\text{mass H}_2\text{O transpired}} \qquad \text{mass basis} \tag{8.39a}$$

$$\text{WUE} = \frac{\text{mol CO}_2\text{ fixed}}{\text{mol H}_2\text{O transpired}} \qquad \text{mole basis} \tag{8.39b}$$

A related quantity is the *transpiration ratio,* which is the reciprocal of the water-use efficiency and hence represents the water lost per CO_2 fixed.

8.5A. Values for WUE

From the J_{CO_2} and the J_{wv} calculated in this chapter, we can determine a WUE for the leaf of a representative C_3 mesophyte. Specifically, we obtained a J_{CO_2} of 10.7 μmol CO_2 fixed $m^{-2}\ s^{-1}$ (see Section 8.4E) and a J_{wv} of 4.3 mmol H_2O transpired $m^{-2}\ s^{-1}$ (see Section 8.2F). By Equation 8.39b, the WUE then is

$$\text{WUE} = \frac{(10.7 \times 10^{-6}\text{ mol CO}_2\text{ m}^{-2}\text{ s}^{-1})}{(4.3 \times 10^{-3}\text{ mol H}_2\text{O m}^{-2}\text{ s}^{-1})} = 0.0025\ \text{CO}_2/\text{H}_2\text{O}$$

On a mass basis, this corresponds to a WUE of 6.1 g CO_2 (kg $H_2O)^{-1}$ (the molar masses of CO_2 and H_2O are 44.0 and 18.0 g mol^{-1}, respectively). We also note that the transpiration ratio in this case is 1/(0.0025) or 400 H_2O/CO_2. This substantial water loss per CO_2 fixed is generally not a problem when plenty of water is available for transpiration. Plants in such environments often have a high g_{wv}^{total}, which leads to a somewhat higher $g_{CO_2}^{total}$ and somewhat higher rates of photosynthesis than is the case for plants with a moderate g_{wv}^{total}.

Any loss of water potentially can be harmful for plants growing in arid regions, many of which have evolved a novel way of fixing CO_2 in a manner leading to a high WUE. For example, many species in the family Crassulaceae, as well as other desert succulents, have their stomata closed during the daytime. This greatly reduces transpiration but also essentially eliminates the possible net influx of CO_2 during the daytime. When the stomata open at night, CO_2 diffuses in and is fixed into malate (e.g., by carboxylation of phosphoenolpyruvate) and other organic acids (Fig. 8-15c). During the next daytime these organic acids are decarboxylated, and the released CO_2 is retained within the plant because of the closed stomata; this CO_2 is then fixed into photosynthetic products by means of the C_3 pathway using Rubisco (Fig. 8-15c). Plants with this CO_2 fixation mechanism are referred to as *Crassulacean acid metabolism* (CAM) plants because such reactions were initially studied extensively in the Crassulaceae, although apparently first detected in the Cactaceae in 1804 by noting the increase in tissue acidity during the night upon tasting the plants at dusk and again at dawn! About 6 to 7% of the nearly 300,000 species of vascular plants use the CAM pathway. Most of these CAM plants are tropical or subtropical epiphytes, whose roots

occur in small volumes of soil that can dry out rapidly (i.e., an arid microenvironment), underscoring the need for water conservation and a high WUE.

As just indicated, stomata for CAM plants tend to open at night, when leaf and air temperatures are lower than daytime values. The concentration of water vapor in the pores of the cell walls of chlorenchyma cells (c^{e}_{wv}) is then much lower, markedly reducing the rate of transpiration (*chlorenchyma* refers to chlorophyll-containing tissue, including the leaf mesophyll and the green parts of stems). For example, leaf temperatures of the desert succulent *Agave deserti* can be 25°C in the afternoon and 5°C at night (Fig. 8-22), leading to saturation water vapor concentrations of 23.1 and 6.8 g m^{-3}, respectively (see Appendix I). For ambient air with a water vapor content (c^{ta}_{wv}) of 4.0 g m^{-3}, which is fairly typical during the wintertime in the native habitat of *A. deserti*, Δc^{total}_{wv} (= $c^{e}_{wv} - c^{ta}_{wv}$) is (23.1 – 4.0)/(6.8 – 4.0) or 7 times higher at 25°C than at 5°C; therefore, J_{wv} is 7 times higher at the higher temperature for the same degree of stomatal opening (see Eq. 8.18). Clearly, nocturnal stomatal opening can result in water conservation and

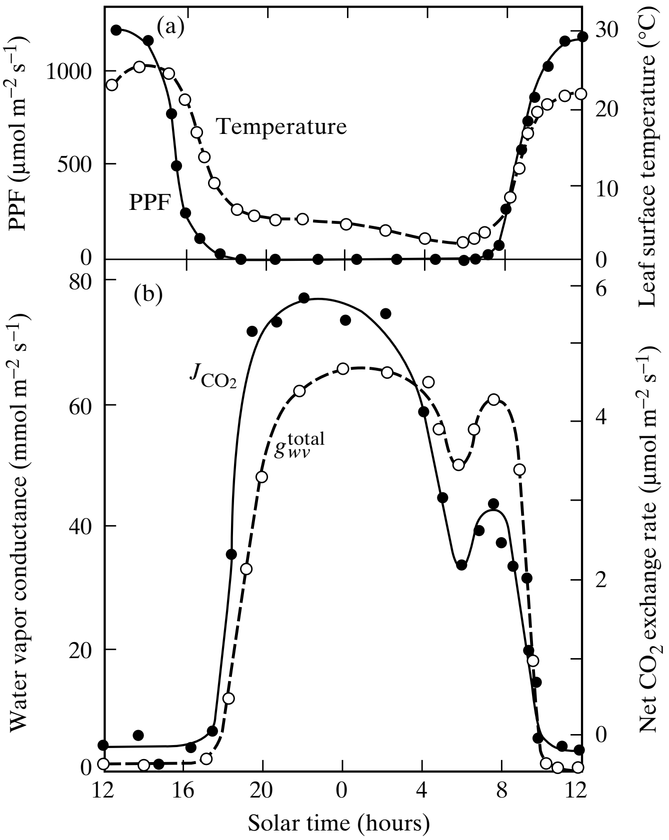


Figure 8-22. Photosynthetic photon flux (on a horizontal surface; a), leaf surface temperature (a), water vapor conductance (b), and net CO_2 exchange rate (b) for *Agave deserti* on clear winter days in the northwestern Sonoran Desert [modified from Nobel (1976); used by permission].

hence a higher WUE. For the CAM plant *A. deserti* on the day depicted in Figure 8-22, the WUE is 56 g CO_2 (kg H_2O)$^{-1}$, and it can be 40 g CO_2 (kg H_2O)$^{-1}$ when averaged over a whole year (Nobel, 1976)—both extremely high values.

Changes in the thickness of the air boundary layers adjacent to a leaf have a greater influence on the flux of water vapor than on the flux of CO_2. For instance, the total resistance for water vapor diffusion can equal $r_{wv}^{ias} + r_{wv}^{st_l} + r_{wv}^{bl_l}$ (Eq. 8.16), whereas $r_{CO_2}^{ias} + r_{CO_2}^{st_l} + r_{CO_2}^{bl_l}$ (see Eq. 8.19) is usually only about half of the total resistance for CO_2 diffusion. Thus changes in wind speed have a smaller fractional effect on $r_{CO_2}^{total}$ than they have on r_{wv}^{total}. Similarly, partial stomatal closure can appreciably reduce g_{wv}^{total} but lead to smaller fractional reductions in $g_{CO_2}^{total}$. Certain xerophytes have fairly low maximal values for g_{wv}^{st}—the maximal stomatal conductance is usually less than 80 mmol m^{-2} s^{-1} for *A. deserti* (see Fig. 8-22) compared to over 400 mmol m^{-2} s^{-1} for many mesophytes (Table 8-1). Such a low maximal stomatal conductance reduces transpiration to a greater degree than it reduces net CO_2 uptake, with a consequent enhancement in WUE (Eq. 8.39). Besides the smaller effect of changes in the gas phase on CO_2 resistances or conductances than those for water vapor, an even smaller effect occurs on net CO_2 uptake compared to transpiration. For instance, a decrease in stomatal resistance is accompanied by an increase in $c_{CO_2}^{chl}$ and hence a decrease in $\Delta c_{CO_2}^{total}$ (Eq. 8.32), which offsets much of the possible increase in net CO_2 uptake (Section 8.4E).

Even though photosynthesis and transpiration depend on environmental conditions, we can still make some generalizations about WUE for different types of plants. Specifically, WUE averaged over a day for mature leaves is usually 1 to 3 g CO_2 (kg H_2O)$^{-1}$ for C_3 plants, 2 to 5 g CO_2 (kg H_2O)$^{-1}$ for C_4 plants, and 10 to 40 g CO_2 (kg H_2O)$^{-1}$ for CAM plants. C_4 plants have approximately double the WUE of C_3 plants because C_4 plants tend to have lower gas-phase conductances (which conserves water with a relatively small negative effect on photosynthesis) and higher liquid-phase conductances (which affects photosynthesis positively) than C_3 plants. However, maximizing WUE may not always be adaptive; for example, water is generally not limiting for an aquatic plant.

8.5B. Elevational Effects on WUE

Because of the interaction of many factors, especially the numerous temperature effects on both transpiration and photosynthesis, the effects of elevation on WUE are complex. Diffusion coefficients depend inversely on ambient (barometric) pressure [$D_j = D_{j0}(P_0/P)(T/273)^{1.8}$; Eq. 8.9]. Barometric pressure averages 0.101 MPa at sea level, 0.079 MPa at 2000 m, and about 0.054 MPa at 5000 m. Thus diffusion coefficients are nearly twice as large at 5000 m as at sea level owing to the pressure change, which correspondingly increases the gas-phase conductances based on Δc (e.g., Eq. 8.2), whereas those based on ΔN (Eq. 8.8) are unchanged. The rate of decrease of ambient air temperature with increasing elevation, termed the *lapse rate*, can be −5°C per kilometer of

elevation[12]; at this lapse rate, temperatures can decrease from 30°C at sea level to 5°C at 5000 m, which by itself decreases diffusion coefficients by 14% according to Equation 8.9.

The partial pressure of water vapor in the air also tends to decrease with elevation, so if isothermal conditions prevailed, the driving force for water loss (both Δc_{wv} and ΔN_{wv}) would increase, as would transpiration. Because P^*_{wv} is essentially independent of P and N^*_{wv} is equal to P^*_{wv}/P, the mole fraction of water vapor in the leaf increases as ambient pressure decreases, i.e., at higher elevations, which would also increase transpiration; however, the temperature decrease with increasing elevation generally more than offsets the effects of P changes on N^*_{wv} as far as transpiration is concerned. The partial pressure of CO_2 is reduced more or less in concert with the reduced barometric pressure; that is, the mole fraction of CO_2 is approximately constant with elevation. When the turbulent mixing aspect in the leaf boundary layer is ignored (see Footnote 6, this chapter), the higher D_{CO_2} in the gas phase at higher elevations tends to offset the lower P_{CO_2} as far as the CO_2 level in the intercellular air spaces is concerned. Although the optimal temperature for photosynthesis can acclimate (usually by 2–12°C) to match the average ambient temperature of the environment, the lowering of temperature with elevation can still have a large effect on the photosynthetic rate. Also, temperature inversion conditions can occur, meaning that the temperature then increases with elevation. In any case, an energy budget analysis can be used to calculate T^{leaf} (e.g., Table 7-1) to help unravel the many effects of elevation on WUE.

8.5C. Stomatal Control of WUE

As we have indicated, stomatal conductance has a greater influence on transpiration (Section 8.2G) than on photosynthesis (Section 8.4E), for which both gas-phase and liquid-phase conductances must be considered. For instance, transpiration increases more rapidly than photosynthesis with increases in g_j^{st}, so WUE then decreases (Eq. 8-39). Thus we need specific criteria to predict optimal stomatal behavior. Specifically, to maximize WUE, stomatal opening must be synchronized with the capability for CO_2 fixation. As indicated above (Section 8.1B), stomatal opening can be regulated by the CO_2 level in the intercellular air spaces, a decrease in $N_{CO_2}^{ias}$ caused by photosynthesis leading to an increase in $g_{CO_2}^{st}$, which then lets more CO_2 into the leaf under a photosynthetic photon flux and other conditions favorable for photosynthesis. This is an example of a *feedback* system, as

12. At the dry adiabatic lapse rate (9.8°C decrease in temperature per kilometer increase in altitude), a rising parcel of dry air that does not exchange heat with the environment will cool by expansion due to the decrease in air pressure and will achieve the same temperature as the surrounding air—a case of neutral stability. That is, air movement is then neither favored nor retarded by buoyancy. Observed lapse rates are usually –5 to –7°C km^{-1}, reflecting heat exchange with the environment and the possibility of heat release due to water condensation at higher altitudes.

$N_{CO_2}^{ias}$ feeds a signal back to the stomata, which in turn leads to a change in $N_{CO_2}^{ias}$. Also, the PPF may directly affect the metabolism of guard cells (Section 8.1B), which indeed contain chloroplasts and hence can utilize such radiation. This is an example of a *feedforward* system, as changes in stomatal opening due to photosynthetic responses of guard cell chloroplasts feed forward (or anticipate) and adjust CO_2 entry into the leaf, thereby matching photosynthesis of the mesophyll region to environmental conditions.

Stomatal opening is also affected by the leaf water status. For instance, stomata tend to close as a leaf begins to wilt, especially after the leaf water potential drops below some threshold level and abscisic acid (ABA) is produced (Section 8.1B). In fact, ABA can induce stomatal closure even when $N_{CO_2}^{ias}$ favors opening. The water status thus affects stomatal opening and hence transpiration, which in turn feeds back onto the leaf water status. Stomatal opening is usually increased by higher N_{wv}^{ta}. This is another example of a feedforward system, as it anticipates the effect of the ambient water vapor concentration on transpiration; for example, a higher N_{wv}^{ta} means less "force" leading to water loss from a leaf, so the stomata can open wider without leading to excessive transpiration. These various processes regulating stomatal movements interact with each other—we will examine the consequences of this for gas exchange by leaves.

What is the optimal behavior of stomata over the course of a day? WUE (Eq. 8.39) is maximized by minimal stomatal opening because transpiration is decreased more than photosynthesis by partial stomatal closure; that is, J_{wv} changes proportionally more than does J_{CO_2} as g_{wv}^{st} changes (Fig. 8-23; also Section 8.4E). However, minimal stomatal opening can lead to very little net CO_2 uptake. Thus a more pertinent consideration might be the maximal amount of CO_2 that can be taken up for a certain amount of water transpired. The amount of water lost depends on the plant condition and environmental factors and should be considered over the course of a whole day.

To help analyze the relationship between gas fluxes as the stomatal conductance varies, curves showing J_{CO_2} versus J_{wv} can be drawn for any PPF, temperature, wind speed, or relative humidity occurring for a particular leaf during the day. The location of the curves varies but still conforms to the general shape illustrated in Figure 8-23 for PPF. In addition to environmental factors, the location of the curves is influenced by leaf properties such as size, age, A^{mes}/A, and shortwave absorptance. Nevertheless, Ian Cowan and Graham Farquhar hypothesized in the 1970s that stomata will open or close depending on the various feedback and feedforward processes in such a way that the following relation is obeyed:

$$\frac{\partial J_{wv}/\partial g_{wv}^{st}}{\partial J_{CO_2}/\partial g_{wv}^{st}} = \frac{\partial J_{wv}}{\partial J_{CO_2}} = \lambda = \text{constant} \tag{8.40}$$

where $\partial J_{wv}/\partial g_{wv}^{st}$ and $\partial J_{CO_2}/\partial g_{wv}^{st}$ represent the sensitivity of transpiration and photosynthesis, respectively, to changes in stomatal conductance. Thus emphasis for the control of gas fluxes was placed on the stomata, the only variable conductance in the pathways for water vapor (Fig. 8-5) and CO_2 (Fig. 8-8) movement. In this regard, if λ remains constant during the course of a day, Equation 3.40 indicates that the change in transpiration (either

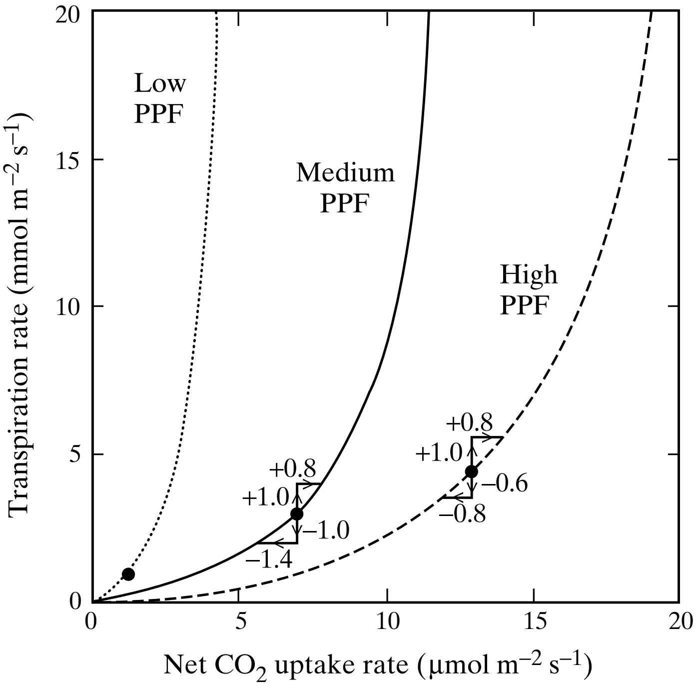


Figure 8-23. Relation between net photosynthesis (J_{CO_2}) and transpiration (J_{wv}) as stomatal conductance is varied. The three curves depict various PPF levels, indicated as "low," "medium," and "high." The circles indicate where the slope $\partial J_{wv}/\partial J_{CO_2}$ is 1000 H_2O/CO_2 (the slope is at 45° on each curve, as the ordinate is in mmol m^{-2} s^{-1} and the abscissa is in μmol m^{-2} s^{-1}, which differ by a factor of 1000). Cuticular transpiration is ignored. The numbers indicate changes in the fluxes, on the medium PPF curve for no net change in transpiration and at the same slope on the high PPF curve for no change in net CO_2 uptake. Curve shapes indicate that J_{wv} increases faster than does J_{CO_2} as stomata open.

positive or negative) caused by a change in stomatal opening is then proportional to the change in net CO_2 uptake, and vice versa, so that neither process is favored by such a change in g_{wv}^{st}.

The solid circles in Figure 8-23 indicate the CO_2 and the H_2O fluxes that can occur at different times of the day for a leaf with a λ of 1000 H_2O/CO_2. At a low PPF, little stomatal opening occurs, so little water is used under conditions in which the rate of photosynthesis inherently cannot be very high. Stomatal opening is much greater at a high PPF and thus both transpiration and photosynthesis are then greater, but the local slope of the J_{CO_2} versus J_{wv} curve is still the same for points of the same λ (the slope is equal to $\partial y/\partial x$). We next consider what happens to the fluxes if we move along a curve away from one of the solid circles, such as the one for medium PPF (Fig. 8-23). If the stomata open more so that J_{wv} increases by 1.0 mmol m^{-2} s^{-1}, then J_{CO_2} increases by 0.8 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1}. To lead to the same total transpiration for the day, we must decrease J_{wv} by the same amount at another time, which for simplicity we can also consider for the medium PPF curve (note that all of the solid circles in Fig. 8-23 occur for the same slope, 1000 H_2O/ CO_2, where the slope is quantified by the local tangent to the curve). A decrease in J_{wv} of 1.0 mmol m^{-2} s^{-1} is accompanied by a decrease in J_{CO_2} of

1.4 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1}. When the effects of both changes are considered algebraically, we get the same total transpiration (1.0 – 1.0) but a lower net CO_2 uptake (0.8 – 1.4). Similarly, if we move along a curve (e.g., the one for high PPF; Fig. 8-23) so that the increased stomatal opening increases J_{wv} by 1.0 mmol m^{-2} s^{-1} and increases J_{CO_2} by 0.8 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1} as before but now move along a curve to decrease J_{CO_2} by 0.8 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1}, we find that J_{wv} decreases by 0.6 mmol m^{-2} s^{-1}. When both of these changes are considered algebraically, we get the same net CO_2 uptake but more transpiration. In fact, the criterion expressed in Equation 8.40 leads to the maximal amount of CO_2 fixed for a particular amount of water transpired as well as to the minimal amount of water transpired for a particular amount of CO_2 fixed in a day. Thus, if stomata respond to keep $\partial J_{wv}/\partial J_{CO_2}$ constant, then the WUE of the leaf for the entire day is maximized!

The value of λ can change during the growth of a plant and with environmental conditions. For instance, λ can be small (e.g., 300 H_2O/CO_2) when water is in short supply. In such cases, constancy of λ requires that stomata close partially near midday, when the temperatures are the highest and transpiration is potentially the greatest; such partial stomatal closure greatly reduces the excessive transpiration that otherwise would occur for these water-limited plants when the driving force for water loss is the greatest. Also, water stress generally leads to higher ABA levels in the leaves and a lower λ. On the other hand, a large λ (e.g., 1300 H_2O/CO_2) occurs when the plant is not under water stress, and no midday stomatal closure then takes place. A higher λ means a steeper slope in Figure 8-23, which occurs further along the curves. In particular, as the stomatal opening increases when water becomes less limiting, the transpiration rate increase progressively more than the net CO_2 uptake rate, so $\partial J_{wv}/\partial J_{CO_2}$ (λ in Eq. 8.40) is then greater.

The proposed constancy of $\partial J_{wv}/\partial J_{CO_2}$ (Eq. 8.40) helps us interpret the partial stomatal closure at midday when water is limiting, as well as the nocturnal stomatal closure when PPF is limiting. We can also use the constancy of $\partial J_{wv}/\partial J_{CO_2}$ to help interpret experiments in which a single environmental factor is varied, such as the driving force for water vapor loss, ΔN_{wv}. If the stomata maintained a constant J_{wv}, then changes in g_{wv}^{st} would be the inverse of changes in ΔN_{wv} (when cuticular transpiration is ignored). On the other hand, maintenance of constant J_{CO_2} as ΔN_{wv} is varied requires constancy of $g_{CO_2}^{st}$, which equals $g_{wv}^{st}/1.60$ (Section 8.3A). In fact, varying ΔN_{wv} over a four-fold range for *Nicotiana glauca* (tobacco), *Corylus avellana* (hazel), and *Vigna unguiculata* (cowpea) leads to stomatal behavior resulting in variation of both J_{wv} and J_{CO_2}, but $\partial J_{wv}/\partial J_{CO_2}$ is approximately constant (Farquhar et al., 1980; Hall and Schulze, 1980).

8.5D. C_3 versus C_4 Plants

We will next recapitulate some of the previously introduced characteristics of C_3 and C_4 plants. After examining the influence of stomata on maximal photosynthetic rates under optimal conditions, we will predict effects on WUE for elevated levels of atmospheric CO_2, as have occurred in the past and are also currently occurring.

The ecological advantages of the C_4 pathway are most apparent for plants in environments having high PPF, high temperature, and limited water supply. C_4 plants are effective at high PPF because photosynthesis for leaves of many C_3 plants saturates near a PPF of 600 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1}, but most C_4 plants have an increasing J_{CO_2} as the PPF is raised up to 2000 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1} (e.g., Fig. 8-20). Optimal leaf temperatures for net CO_2 uptake are usually 20 to 35°C for C_3 plants but 30 to 45°C for C_4 plants, which can be interpreted by considering Rubisco (Fig. 8-13) and CO_2 solubilities versus temperature. In particular, the CO_2-evolving photorespiration, which has very low rates in C_4 plants, becomes proportionally more important relative to photosynthesis at higher temperatures and thus reduces the net CO_2 uptake at the higher temperatures for C_3 plants. This relative increase in photorespiration versus photosynthesis with increasing temperature in part reflects the approximately 40% greater decrease in CO_2 solubility in water with increasing temperature (Table 8-3) compared with the O_2 solubility. The optimal temperature for photosynthesis is actually variable, and it can change by 4 to 10°C in a matter of days (even for mature leaves), allowing for seasonal acclimation of photosynthetic performance. C_4 plants can more readily cope with limited water supply because generally their gas-phase conductance for CO_2 is lower and their liquid-phase CO_2 conductance is higher than are those for C_3 plants, reducing water loss while enhancing net CO_2 uptake. Thus C_4 plants tend to become dominant in deserts, grasslands, and certain subtropical regions, namely, areas of high PPF, high temperature, and limited water supply, as indicated previously. Low rates of photorespiration and the associated high WUE allow C_4 plants to become very successful weeds—in fact, 8 of the 10 agriculturally most noxious weeds use the C_4 pathway (Holm et al., 1991), although only 2 to 3% of the nearly 300,000 species of vascular plants are C_4. CAM plants have an even higher WUE than do C_4 plants and achieve their greatest relative importance in regions of high PPF and very limited water supply, namely deserts, as well as in special microhabitats with a small volume of rapidly drying soil, as can occur for epiphytes and hemiepiphytes.

At 30°C and for an absorbed PPF up to about 100 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1}, leaves of C_3 and C_4 plants can have a similar quantum yield (approximately 0.053 mol CO_2/mol photons at an $N_{CO_2}^{ta}$ of 325 μmol mol^{-1}; Fig. 8-20; Ehleringer and Björkman, 1977; see Chapter 4, Section 4.4B for a definition of quantum yield). As the temperature is raised, however, photorespiration increases relative to photosynthesis, so the quantum yield declines for C_3 plants but is essentially unchanged for C_4 plants. On the other hand, lowering the ambient O_2 level raises the quantum yield for C_3 (photorespiring) plants because the oxygenase activity of Rubisco (see Fig. 8-13) is then suppressed; such changes have little effect on C_4 plants until the O_2 level falls below about 2%, where mitochondrial respiration is affected.

CO_2 uptake by C_4 plants is CO_2 saturated at a relatively low CO_2 level in the intercellular air spaces. For instance, an $N_{CO_2}^{ias}$ of 150 μmol mol^{-1} usually leads to over 90% of the maximum J_{CO_2} for C_4 plants, so increasing the ambient CO_2 level above 350 μmol mol^{-1} usually has little effect on their quantum yield (Fig. 8-18). However, the quantum yield for CO_2 fixation by C_3 plants progressively increases as the ambient CO_2 level is raised, and at an

$N^{ias}_{CO_2}$ of 800 μmol mol^{-1} it approaches to within 10% of the value occurring when the ambient O_2 level is reduced 10-fold (about 0.081 mol CO_2/mol photons). Such raising of the CO_2 level is another way of favoring the carboxylase activity of Rubisco. Also, the requirement for a high $N^{ias}_{CO_2}$ for C_3 plants is consistent with the K_{CO_2} of about 10 mmol m^{-3} for CO_2 fixation by Rubisco.[13]

For a series of C_3 and C_4 plants, stomata open to a degree that gives an approximately constant CO_2 level in the intercellular air spaces, with the level differing between plants from the two photosynthetic pathways (Fig. 8-24). A similar adjustment in stomatal conductance occurs as the PPF increases for a particular plant (see Fig. 8-23). We therefore conclude that stomata regulate the entry of CO_2 to match the photosynthetic capability of the mesophyll region. In particular, the slope of $g^{st}_{CO_2}$ versus J_{CO_2} (as in Fig. 8-24) gives the decrease in CO_2 level across the stomata; that is, J_{CO_2} is equal to $g^{st}_{CO_2}\Delta N^{st}_{CO_2}$ (the equation for a straight line is $y = mx + b$, where the slope m is dy/dx). For the C_3 plants in Figure 8-24,

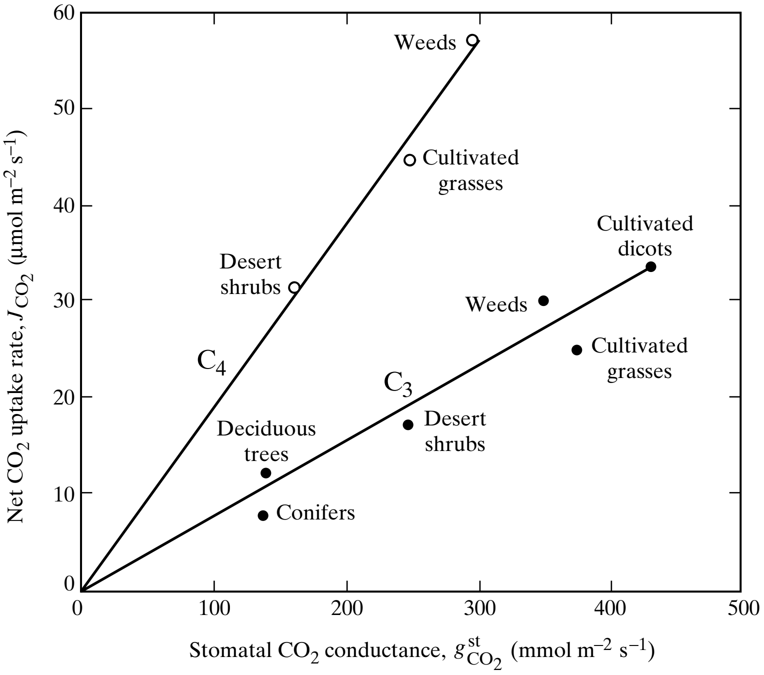


Figure 8-24. Relation between stomatal CO_2 conductance ($g^{st}_{CO_2}$) and net CO_2 uptake (J_{CO_2}) for various categories of C_3 and C_4 plants under optimal conditions and a $N^{ta}_{CO_2}$ of 360 μmol CO_2 mol^{-1}. Ignoring boundary layer effects as a first approximation, note that each line can be represented by $J_{CO_2} = g^{st}_{CO_2}\Delta N^{st}_{CO_2}$ so the slope equals the drop in CO_2 mole fraction across the stomata, which differs for the two photosynthetic types.

13. In the literature, plots of net CO_2 uptake versus the CO_2 level in the intercellular air spaces are often referred to as "$A-c_i$" curves, where A stands for carbon assimilation ($= J_{CO_2}$) and c_i refers to the CO_2 concentration in the intercellular air spaces, usually expressed as a mole fraction ($= N^{ias}_{CO_2}$).

the slope is 70×10^{-6} (i.e., 70 μmol CO_2 mol^{-1} air), and for C_4 plants it is 190×10^{-6}.

For a CO_2 mole fraction in the turbulent air next to the plants of 360 μmol mol^{-1}, and ignoring the CO_2 decrease across the boundary layer (about 10 – 30 μmol mol^{-1}), $N_{CO_2}^{ias}$ then corresponds to about 290 μmol mol^{-1} for C_3 plants and 170 μmol mol^{-1} for C_4 plants. (Changes in $N_{CO_2}^{ias}$ can occur, such as higher values at lower PPF in the lower parts of a canopy.) Even though $N_{CO_2}^{ias}$ is lower for C_4 plants, it is still high enough to saturate their CO_2 fixation pathway. A higher $N_{CO_2}^{ias}$ brought about by a higher $g_{CO_2}^{st}$ does not benefit photosynthesis much for C_4 plants, but the accompanying greater stomatal conductance would lead to more water loss. For a C_3 plant, photosynthesis does not approach CO_2 saturation until $N_{CO_2}^{ias}$ exceeds 800 μmol mol^{-1} (Fig. 8-18). However, opening stomata further than required to maintain an $N_{CO_2}^{ias}$ of about 290 μmol mol^{-1} would not enhance photosynthesis much (Section 8.4E), but it would considerably increase transpiration (see Fig. 8-23). Thus the adjustment of stomatal opening to meet the conflicting demands of photosynthesis and transpiration, using feedback and feedforward control by microclimatic and leaf parameters, leads to a remarkable regulation that minimizes water loss while maximizing net CO_2 uptake.

What will happen to the WUE of C_3 and C_4 plants as the atmospheric CO_2 level increases? We will focus on the direct effects of atmospheric CO_2 concentrations, ignoring concomitant changes in air temperature, water status, nutrients, and other conditions. As the CO_2 level in the turbulent air increases, $N_{CO_2}^{ias}$ will increase, which will decrease stomatal opening and hence transpiration. This is partially compensated by an increase in leaf temperature, which will increase the driving force for water loss. For a doubling of the atmospheric CO_2 level, transpiration should decrease 25 to 40% for leaves of both C_3 and C_4 plants. On the other hand, a doubled atmospheric CO_2 level can increase the instantaneous rate of photosynthesis for C_3 plants by approximately 30 to 60% (longer-term down-regulation of photosynthesis reduces such enhancements) but should have no major effect on the photosynthetic rate of C_4 plants (Fig. 8-18). Thus, if atmospheric CO_2 levels become twice as high as the 1990 level in the latter part of the 21st century, the WUE could increase about 35% for C_4 plants and 70% for C_3 plants (again ignoring compounding effects of other changes, such as increases in air temperature). CAM plants show more variation in their responses to increased atmospheric CO_2 levels and often exhibit even greater enhancements than C_3 plants.

8.6. Problems

8.1. Consider a leaf that is 0.5 mm thick with 64 stomata (stomates) per mm^2. Approximate the stomatal opening by a rectangle that is 6 μm × 20 μm with a depth of 25 μm. Assume that the leaf and air temperatures are both 20°C and that the ambient air pressure is 1 atm.

A. What are g_{wv}^{bl} (in mm s^{-1}) and r_{wv}^{bl} if the boundary layer is 0.8 mm thick?

B. What are na^{st} and the effective r^{st}?

C. What is the average flux of water vapor within the stomatal pores compared to that across the boundary layer?
D. What is g_{wv}^{st} in mm s^{-1} and mmol m^{-2} s^{-1}? What are the values if the ambient air pressure is reduced to 0.9 atm?
E. What is g_{wv}^{ias} in the two units in D if the effective path length in the intercellular air spaces equals the leaf thickness?
F. Suppose that each stomate is sunken in a cylindrical cavity 50 μm across and 100 μm deep. What additional resistance to water vapor diffusion does this provide?

8.2. Suppose that $g_{wv}^{bl_l}$ is 20 mm s^{-1}, $g_{wv}^{st_l}$ is 6 mm s^{-1}, g_{wv}^{c} is 0.1 mm s^{-1}, and g_{wv}^{ias} is 40 mm s^{-1}.
A. What is g_{wv}^{total} if water vapor diffuses out only across the lower epidermis of the leaf?
B. What are the three g_{wv}^{total}'s in A if the cuticular pathway is ignored, if the intercellular air spaces are ignored, and if both g_{wv}^{c} and g_{wv}^{ias} are ignored?
C. What is g_{wv}^{total} if the stomata in the upper epidermis have the same conductance as those in the lower one?
D. What is g_{wv}^{total} if 28% of J_{wv} is through the upper epidermis?
E. Suppose that the leaf temperature is 30°C, the air in the cell wall pores where the water evaporates is at 99% relative humidity, and c_{wv}^{ta} is 7.5 g m^{-3}. What is J_{wv} through the lower epidermis?
F. What are g_{wv}^{total} in mmol m^{-2} s^{-1} and J_{wv} (in mmol m^{-2} s^{-1}) under the conditions of E? Assume that the air pressure is 1 atm and that N_{wv}^{ta} is 0.0103.
G. Under the conditions of E and F, what is the drop in water vapor concentration and mole fraction along the stomatal pores (ignore cuticular transpiration)?

8.3. Suppose that a shade leaf has a layer of tightly packed palisade mesophyll cells with rectangular sides that are externally 30 μm × 100 μm and with square ends 30 μm × 30 μm (the long dimension is perpendicular to the leaf surface). Suppose that there are two spherical spongy mesophyll cells (30 μm in diameter) under each palisade cell. Let the cell wall thickness of mesophyll cells be 0.2 μm, the mean distance from the plasma membrane to the chloroplasts be 0.1 μm, and the average distance that CO_2 diffuses in the chloroplasts before reaching the photosynthetic enzymes be 0.5 μm.
A. What is A^{mes}/A if essentially the entire surface area of the mesophyll cells is exposed to the intercellular air spaces?
B. Assume that a sun leaf on the same plant has two layers of palisade cells and half as many spongy mesophyll cells. If the dimensions of the cells are the same as for the shade leaf, what is A^{mes}/A for the sun leaf?
C. If $D_{CO_2}^{cw}$ is 5.0 × 10^{-10} m^2 s^{-1}, what is the maximum value for $r_{CO_2}^{cw}$ at 20°C for the shade leaf?
D. If P_{CO_2} is 1.0 × 10^{-3} m s^{-1} for the plasma membrane and the chloroplast limiting membranes, what are $r_{CO_2}^{pm}$ and $r_{CO_2}^{clm}$ (shade leaf)?
E. If $D_{CO_2}^{cyt}$ and $D_{CO_2}^{stroma}$ are 1.0 × 10^{-9} m^2 s^{-1}, what are $r_{CO_2}^{cyt}$ and $r_{CO_2}^{stroma}$ (shade leaf)? Assume that the relevant partition coefficients for the various forms of CO_2 are 1.

F. What is the resistance to CO_2 diffusion from the intercellular air spaces to the photosynthetic enzymes for the sun leaf? Assume that $J_{CO_2}^{r+pr}$ is negligible and that $r_{CO_2}^{cw}$ has its maximal 20°C value.

8.4. Let us suppose that $c_{CO_2}^{ta}$ is 13 mmol m^{-3}, K_{CO_2} is 5 μM, $r_{CO_2}^{bl_l}$ is 60 s m^{-1}, $r_{CO_2}^{leaf_l}$ is 250 s m^{-1}, $r_{CO_2}^{mes}$ is 150 s m^{-1}, and $r_{CO_2}^{chl}$ is 100 s m^{-1} for a leaf that CO_2 enters only across the lower epidermis.

A. If the rate of gross photosynthesis is 4 mol CO_2 fixed m^{-3} s^{-1} when $c_{CO_2}^{chl}$ is 9 μM, what is V_{max}?

B. What is $c_{CO_2}^{chl}$ when v_{CO_2} is 90% of V_{max}?

C. If the rate of respiration plus photorespiration is 45% of that of gross photosynthesis, what are $r_{CO_2}^{total}$ and J_{CO_2}? Assume that $c_{CO_2}^{chl}$ is 9 μM.

D. Repeat C for a nonphotorespiring plant where the rate of respiration is 5% of $J_{CO_2}^{ps}$. Assume that $c_{CO_2}^{chl}$ is 7 μM.

E. Let us place a small transparent bag completely around a leaf of the nonphotorespiring plant. What is $c_{CO_2}^{chl}$, if the CO_2 concentration in the bag in the steady state is 10 μmol mol^{-1}? Assume that all resistances and the rate of respiration are unchanged.

F. What is the concentration of CO_2 in the mitochondria at night for the nonphotorespiring plant? Let $r_{CO_2}^{i}$ be 500 s m^{-1}, and assume that the rate of respiration as well as the resistances remain the same as the daytime values. What is the mitochondrial c_{CO_2} at night, if stomatal closure causes $r_{CO_2}^{leaf_l}$ to become 5000 s m^{-1}?

8.5. Consider a sunlit leaf at 35°C with a g_{wv}^{bl} of 15 mm s^{-1}, stomata only in the lower epidermis, a g_{wv}^{ias} of 30 mm s^{-1}, and a $g_{CO_2}^{total}$ of 0.70 mm s^{-1}. Assume that the ambient air is at 30°C and 32% relative humidity, that cuticular transpiration is negligible and total transpiration is 5.0 mmol m^{-2} s^{-1}, and that the air in the intercellular air spaces reaches 100% relative humidity.

A. What are g_{wv}^{total} and g_{wv}^{st}?

B. What is the essentially immediate effect on g_{wv}^{total} and J_{wv} of decreasing the stomatal opening four-fold, as can occur during wilting?

C. What is the qualitative effect of the action in B on T^{leaf}?

D. Neglecting effects caused by leaf temperature, what are the percentage changes of photosynthesis and WUE caused by the action in B? Assume that $c_{CO_2}^{chl}$ is unchanged.

E. What is the essentially immediate effect on $g_{CO_2}^{total}$ and J_{wv} of increasing the wind speed by four-fold?

F. What is the qualitative effect of the action in E on heat conduction across the boundary layer [$J_H^C = 2K^{air}(T^{leaf} - T^{ta})/\delta^{bl}$; Eq. 7.14] and on T^{leaf}?

8.7. References and Further Reading

Ainsworth, E.A., and Rogers, A. 2007. The response of photosynthesis and stomatal conductance to rising [CO_2]: Mechanisms and environmental interactions. *Plant Cell Environ.* **30:** 258–270.

Bernacchi, C.J., Pimentel, C., and Long, S.P. 2003. *In vivo* temperature response functions of parameters required to model RuBP-limited photosynthesis. *Plant Cell Environ.* **26:** 1419–1430.

Björkman, O. 1981. Responses to different quantum flux densities. In: Lange, O.L., Nobel, P.S., Osmond, C.B., and Ziegler, H. (Eds.), *Physiological Plant Ecology, Encyclopedia of Plant Physiology, New Series,* Vol. 12A: Springer Verlag, Berlin, pp. 57–107.

Boulard, T., Mermier, M., Fargues, J., Smits, N., Rougier, M., and Roy, J.C. 2002. Tomato leaf boundary layer climate: implications for microbiological whitefly control in greenhouses. *Agric. Forest. Meteorol.* **110:** 159–176.

Brown, H.T., and Escombe, F. 1900. Static diffusion of gases and liquids in relation to the assimilation of carbon and translocation in plants. *Philos. Trans. Roy. Soc. London, Ser. B* **193:** 223–291.

Buckley, T.N. 2005. Tansley Review: The control of stomata by water balance. *New Phytol.* **168:** 275–292.

Cowan, I.R. 1977. Stomatal behavior and environment. *Adv. Bot. Res.* **4:** 117–227.

Cowan, I.R., and Farquhar, G.D. 1977. Stomatal function in relation to leaf metabolism and environment. In: Jennings, D.H. (Ed.). *Integration of Activity in the Higher Plant*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK, pp. 471–505.

Dacey, J.W.H. 1981. Pressurized ventilation in the yellow waterlily. *Ecology* **62:** 1137–1147.

Eamus, D., Taylor, D.T., MacInnis-Ng, C.M.O., Shanahan, S., and De Silva, L. 2008. Comparing model predictions and experimental data for the response of stomatal conductance and guard cell turgor to manipulations of leaf-to-air vapour pressure difference and temperature: feedback mechanisms are able to account for all observations. *Plant Cell Environ.* **31:** 269–277.

Ehleringer, J., and Björkman, O. 1977. Quantum yields for CO_2 uptake in C_3 and C_4 plants: Dependence on temperature, CO_2, and O_2 concentration. *Plant Physiol.* **59:** 86–90.

Ehleringer, J., Björkman, O., and Mooney, H.A. 1976. Leaf pubescence: Effects on absorptance and photosynthesis in a desert shrub. *Science* **192:** 376–377.

Ethier, G.J., and Livingston, N.J. 2004. On the need to incorporate sensitivity to CO_2 transfer conductance into Farquhar–von Caemmerer–Berry leaf photosynthetic model. *Plant Cell Environ.* **27:** 137–153.

Farquhar, G.D., and von Caemmerer, S. 1982. Modelling of photosynthetic response to environmental conditions. In: Lange, O.L., Nobel, P.S., Osmond, C.B., and Ziegler, H. (Eds.), *Physiological Plant Ecology, Encyclopedia of Plant Physiology, New Series*, Vol. 12B:. Springer Verlag, Berlin, pp. 549–587.

Farquhar, G.D., Schulze, E.-D., and Küppers, M. 1980. Responses to humidity by stomata of *Nicotiana glauca* L. and *Corylus avellana* L. are consistent with the optimization of carbon dioxide uptake with respect to water loss. *Aust. J. Plant Physiol.* **7:** 315–327.

Farquhar, G.D., Ehleringer, J.R., and Hubick, K.T. 1989. Carbon isotope discrimination and photosynthesis. *Annu. Rev. Plant Physiol. Plant Mol. Biol.* **40:** 503–537.

Field, C.B., Ball, J.T., and Berry, J.A. 1989. Photosynthesis: Principles and field techniques. In: Pearcy, R.W., Ehleringer, J., Mooney, H.A., and Rundel, P.W. (Eds.), *Plant Physiological Ecology: Field Methods and Instrumentation*. Chapman & Hall, London, pp. 209–253.

Fitter, A.H., and Hay, R.K.M. 2002. *Environmental Physiology of Plants*, 3rd ed. Academic Press, San Diego, CA.

Flexas, J., Ribas-Carbó, M., Diaz-Espejo, A., Galmés, J., and Medrano, H. 2008. Mesophyll conductance to CO_2: current knowledge and future prospects. *Plant Cell Environ.* **31:** 602–621.

Gibson, A.C., and Nobel, P.S. 1986/1990. *The Cactus Primer*. Harvard University Press, Cambridge, MA.

Hall, A.E., and Schulze, E.-D. 1980. Stomatal response to environment and a possible interrelation between stomatal effects on transpiration and CO_2 assimilation. *Plant Cell Environ.* **3:** 467–474.

Holm, L.G., Plucknett, D.L., Pancho, J.V., and Herberger, J.P. 1991. *The World's Worst Weeds: Distribution and Biology.* Krieger, Malabar, FL.

Jones, H.G. 1992. *Plants and Microclimate: A Quantitative Approach to Environmental Plant Physiology*, 2nd ed. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK.

Kerstiens, G. (Ed.) 1996. *Plant Cuticles: An Integrated Functional Approach*. BIOS Scientific, Oxford, UK.

Krömer, S. 1995. Respiration during photosynthesis. *Annu. Rev. Plant Physiol. Plant Mol. Biol.* **46:** 45–70.

Leegood, R.C., Sharkey, T.D., von Caemmerer, S., and Kennedy, R. (Eds.) 2004. *Photosynthesis: Physiology and Metabolism*. Kluwer, Dordrecht.

Leuning, R. 1983. Transport of gases into leaves. *Plant Cell Environ.* **6:** 181–194.

Monteith, J.L., and Unsworth, M.H. 2007. *Principles of Environmental Physics*, 3rd ed. Academic Press, Oxford, UK.

Nobel, P.S. 1974. Boundary layers of air adjacent to cylinders. Estimation of effective thickness and measurements on plant material. *Plant Physiol.* **54:** 177–181.

Nobel, P.S. 1975. Effective thickness and resistance of the air boundary layer adjacent to spherical plant parts. *J. Exp. Bot.* **26:** 120–130.

Nobel, P.S. 1976. Water relations and photosynthesis of a desert CAM plant, *Agave deserti*. *Plant Physiol.* **58:** 576–582.

Nobel, P.S. 1977. Internal leaf area and CO_2 resistance: Photosynthetic implications of variations with growth conditions and plant species. *Physiol. Plant.* **40:** 137–144.

Nobel, P.S. 1980. Water vapor conductance and CO_2 uptake for leaves of a C_4 desert grass, *Hilaria rigida*. *Ecology* **61:** 252–258.

Nobel, P.S. 1988. *Environmental Biology of Agaves and Cacti*. Cambridge University Press, New York.

Nobel, P.S. 1989. A nutrient index quantifying productivity of agaves and cacti. *J. Appl. Ecol.* **26:** 635–645.

Nobel, P.S., and Hartsock, T.L. 1986. Temperature, water, and PAR influences on predicted and measured productivity of *Agave deserti* at various elevations. *Oecologia* **68:** 181–185.

Nobel, P.S., and Walker, D.B. 1985. Structure of leaf photosynthetic tissue. In: Barber, J., and Baker, N.R. (Eds.), *Photosynthetic Mechanisms and the Environment*. Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp. 501–536.

Nobel, P.S., Zaragoza, L.J., and Smith, W.K. 1975. Relation between mesophyll surface area, photosynthetic rate, and illumination level during development for leaves of *Plectranthus parviflorus* Henckel. *Plant Physiol.* **55:** 1067–1070.

Parkhurst, D.F. 1994. Tansley review No. 65. Diffusion of CO_2 and other gases inside leaves. *New Phytol.* **126:** 449–479.

Raschke, K. 1956. Über die physikalischen Beziehungen zwischen Wärmeübergangszahl, Strahlungsaustausch, Temperatur und Transpiration eines Blattes. *Planta* **48:** 200–238.

Rieder, M., and Müller, C. (Eds.) 2006. *Biology of the Plant Cuticle*. Blackwell, London.

Sage, R.F. 2004. Tansley Review: The evolution of C_4 photosynthesis. *New Phytol.* **161:** 341–370.

Sage, R.F., and Pearcy, R.W. 2000. The physiological ecology of C_4 photosynthesis. *Adv. Photosynthesis* **9:** 497–532.

Schulze, E.-D. 1994. *Flux Control in Biological Systems: From Enzymes to Populations and Ecosystems*. Academic Press, San Diego, CA.

Schulze, E.-D., and Caldwell, M.M. (Eds.) 1994. *Ecophysiology of Photosynthesis*. Springer Verlag, Berlin.

Sharkey, T.D., Bernacchi, C.J., Farquhar, G.D., and Singsaas, E.L. 2007. Fitting photosynthetic carbon dioxide response curves for C_3 leaves. *Plant Cell Environ.* **30:** 1035–1040.

Smirnoff, N. (Ed.) 1995. *Environment and Plant Metabolism: Flexibility and Acclimation*. BIOS Scientific, Oxford, UK.

Stumm, W., and Morgan, J.J. 1996. *Aquatic Chemistry: Chemical Equilibria and Rates in Natural Waters*, 3rd ed. Wiley, New York.

Syvertsen, J.P., Lloyd, J., McConchie, C., Kriedmann, P.E., and Farquhar, G.D. 1995. On the relationship between leaf anatomy and CO_2 diffusion through the mesophyll of hypostomatous leaves. *Plant Cell Environ.* **18:** 149–157.

Vogelmann, T.C. 1993. Plant tissue optics. *Annu. Rev. Plant Physiol. Plant Mol. Biol.* **44:** 231–251.

Webb, A.A.R., and Baker, A.J. (Eds.) 2002. Stomata (Special Issue). *New Phytol.* **153:** 365–540.

Willmer, C., and Fricker, M. 2005. *Stomata*, 2nd ed. Chapman & Hall, London.

Winter, K., and Smith, J.A.C. (Eds.) 1996. *Crassulacean Acid Metabolism: Biochemistry, Ecophysiology and Evolution*. Springer Verlag, Berlin.

Woodrow, I.E., and Berry, J.A. 1988. Enzymatic regulation of photosynthetic CO_2 fixation in C_3 plants.. *Annu. Rev. Plant Physiol. Plant Mol. Biol.* **39:** 533–594.

Wullschleger, S.D. 1993. Biochemical limitations to carbon assimilation in C_3 plants—A retrospective analysis of A/C_i curves from 109 species. *J. Exp. Bot.* **44:** 907–920.

Yong, J.W.H., Wong, S.C., and Farquhar, G.D. 1997. Stomatal responses to changes in vapor pressure differences between leaf and air. *Plant Cell Environ.* **20:** 1213–1216.

Major Equations

Resistances above Canopy (9.4)

$$r_{wv}^{\text{ta}} = \frac{\Delta c_{wv}^{\text{ta}}}{J_{wv}} = \frac{\Delta z}{K_{wv}} = \frac{\Delta z}{K_{\text{CO}_2}} = \frac{\Delta c_{\text{CO}_2}^{\text{ta}}}{J_{\text{CO}_2}} = r_{\text{CO}_2}^{\text{ta}}$$

Attenuation of PPF (9.5)

$$\ln \frac{J_0}{J} = kF$$

Young–Laplace equation (9.6)

$$P = -\sigma \left(\frac{1}{r_1} + \frac{1}{r_2} \right)$$

Darcy's Law (9.7)

$$J_V = -L^{\text{soil}} \frac{\partial P^{\text{soil}}}{\partial x}$$

Poiseuille's law (9.11)

$$\text{Volume flow rate per tube } = -\frac{\pi r^4}{8\eta} \frac{\partial P}{\partial x}$$

$$J_V = -\frac{r^2}{8\eta} \frac{\partial P}{\partial x}$$

van den Honert relation (9.12)

$$J_{V_w}^j A^j = \frac{\Delta \Psi^j}{R^j} \cong \text{constant}$$

Water capacitance (9.16)

$$C^j = \frac{\Delta V_w^j}{\Delta \overline{\Psi}^j}$$

9

Plants and Fluxes

9.1. Gas Fluxes above Plant Canopy ... 440
9.1A. Wind Speed Profiles ... 441
9.1B. Flux Densities ... 442
9.1C. Eddy Diffusion Coefficients ... 443
9.1D. Resistance of Air above Canopy ... 445
9.1E. Transpiration and Photosynthesis ... 445
9.1F. Values for Fluxes and Concentrations ... 446
9.1G. Condensation ... 448
9.2. Gas Fluxes within Plant Communities ... 449
9.2A. Eddy Diffusion Coefficient and Resistance ... 449
9.2B. Water Vapor ... 451
9.2C. Attenuation of the Photosynthetic Photon Flux ... 453
9.2D. Values for Foliar Absorption Coefficient ... 454
9.2E. Light Compensation Point ... 455
9.2F. CO_2 Concentrations and Fluxes ... 456
9.2G. CO_2 at Night ... 458
9.3. Water Movement in Soil ... 459
9.3A. Soil Water Potential ... 460
9.3B. Darcy's Law ... 462
9.3C. Soil Hydraulic Conductivity Coefficient ... 463
9.3D. Fluxes for Cylindrical Symmetry ... 465
9.3E. Fluxes for Spherical Symmetry ... 467
9.4. Water Movement in the Xylem and the Phloem ... 469
9.4A. Root Tissues ... 469
9.4B. Xylem ... 470
9.4C. Poiseuille's Law ... 471
9.4D. Applications of Poiseuille' Law ... 472
9.4E. Phloem ... 476
9.4F. Phloem Contents and Speed of Movement ... 478
9.4G. Mechanism of Phloem Flow ... 479
9.4H. Values for Components of the Phloem Water Potential ... 480
9.5. Soil–Plant–Atmosphere Continuum ... 483
9.5A. Values for Water Potential Components ... 483
9.5B. Resistances and Areas ... 485
9.5C. Values for Resistances and Resistivities ... 487
9.5D. Root–Soil Air Gap and Hydraulic Conductances ... 490
9.5E. Capacitance and Time Constants ... 492
9.5F. Daily Changes ... 495
9.5G. Global Climate Change ... 497
9.6. Problems ... 500
9.7. References and Further Reading ... 503

In Chapter 8 we analyzed gas fluxes for single leaves. We repeatedly used Fick's first law in the following form: Flux density equals concentration (or mole fraction) difference divided by resistance, or, equivalently, conductance times concentration difference. This approach can be extended to an entire plant community. In this chapter, we will first describe fluxes in the air above the plants. Although the fluxes of water vapor and CO_2 in the air above vegetation resemble diffusion, because net migration of these gases is toward regions of lower concentration, we are not dealing with the random thermal motion of molecules but rather with the random motion of relatively large packets of air in the turbulent region above the plants.

Our next task is to discuss concentrations and fluxes within a plant community. When we analyze water vapor and CO_2 fluxes from the soil up to the top of plants, we are confronted by the great structural diversity among different types of vegetation. Each plant community has its own unique spatial patterns for water vapor and CO_2 concentration. The possibility of many layers of leaves and the constantly changing illumination also greatly complicate the analysis. Even approximate descriptions of the gas fluxes within carefully selected plant communities involve complex calculations based on models incorporating numerous simplifying assumptions. We will consider a cornfield as a specific example.

Generally, 70 to 75% of the water vaporized on land is transpired by plants. This water comes from the soil (soil also affects the CO_2 fluxes for vegetation). Therefore, after we consider gas fluxes within a plant community, we will examine some of the hydraulic properties of soil. For instance, water in the soil is removed from larger pores before from smaller ones. This removal decreases the soil conductivity for subsequent water movement, and a greater drop in water potential from the bulk soil up to a root is therefore necessary for a particular water flux density.

Our final topic will be the flow of water as a continuous stream from the soil, to the root, into the root xylem, up to the leaves, and eventually out through the stomata (stomates) into the atmosphere. As a useful first approximation, the negative gradient of the water potential represents the driving force for the flux across any segment where water moves as a liquid. We usually replace $-\partial\Psi/\partial x$ by $\Delta\Psi/\Delta x$. The greater the resistance—or, alternatively, the lower the conductance—the larger is the $\Delta\Psi$ required to maintain a given water flux across a particular component. However, $\Delta\Psi$ does not always represent the driving force on water. Furthermore, water movement in the xylem interacts with that in the phloem, the other major transport system in plants.

9.1. Gas Fluxes above Plant Canopy

When we considered the fluxes of H_2O and CO_2 for individual leaves in the previous chapter, we assumed that outside the air boundary layers on each side of a leaf a turbulent region occurs where both water vapor and CO_2 have specific concentrations. Actually, gradients in both CO_2 and H_2O exist within this turbulent region around plants. We will also find

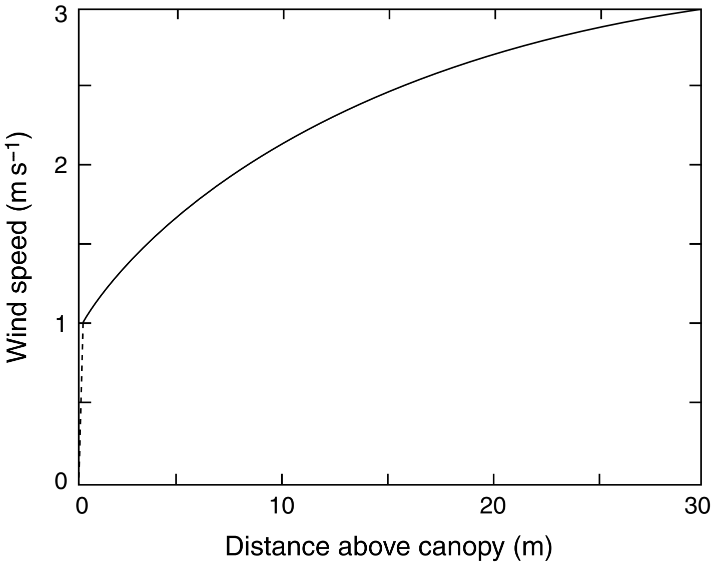


Figure 9-1. Change in wind speed with distance above a leaf at the top of a plant canopy. Air motion is arrested at the leaf surface, and at a distance δ^{bl} (on the order of mm) v is 1.0 m s^{-1}. At 0.5 m into the turbulent air, v increases to 1.1 m s^{-1}, and it can triple at 30 m above the canopy.

that the ambient wind speed is not constant but instead varies with distance above the vegetation.

9.1A. Wind Speed Profiles

Because of frictional interactions between moving air and a leaf, the air immediately adjacent to a leaf is stationary (Chapter 7, Section 7.2B). As we move short distances away from the leaf surface, a transition occurs from laminar flow parallel to the leaf in the lower part of the boundary layer to turbulent flow with eddying motion (see Fig. 7-6). The wind speed increases as we move even further away from the leaf (Fig. 9-1), increasing approximately logarithmically for a few hundred meters above a plant canopy (the turbulent region generally extends 0.5–1.0 km above the earth's surface, above which more or less laminar flow occurs in the direction of the prevailing wind). Because the wind speed varies in the turbulent air above vegetation, where to measure the ambient wind speed is ambiguous. However, wind speed generally does not increase substantially until we are at least 1 m above the foliage (Fig. 9-1). Therefore, wind speed measured about 0.2 m above vegetation may be used as the ambient value, which is needed to calculate the air boundary layer thickness for an exposed leaf at the top of a canopy (e.g., using Eq. 7.10).

Plants exert a frictional drag on moving air masses (e.g., Fig. 7-5) and thereby modify the local wind patterns. The frictional interaction between trees and wind is different from that of a flexible crop such as wheat, which leads to different form drag (Eq. 7.9) and different wind patterns in the overlying turbulent air. Topographical features such as canyons or cliffs also affect the local wind speed profile above the vegetation.

As just indicated, wind speed can increase approximately logarithmically with distance above a plant canopy (Fig. 9-1) and is also influenced by properties of the plants. In particular, the variation in wind speed v with distance above a large, horizontal, uniform canopy under stable atmospheric conditions can be described by

$$v = \frac{v^*}{k} \ln \frac{z - d}{z_0} \tag{9.1}$$

where v^* is termed the shearing or friction velocity, k is the von Karman constant (about 0.41), z is the height above the ground, d is the *zero plane displacement*, and z_0 is the *roughness length.* The zero plane displacement indicates where in the plant community the apparent $z = 0$ level occurs due to the drag on air movement exerted by the vegetation; the roughness length characterizes the friction to horizontal air movement caused by the upper part of the canopy, i.e., the aerodynamic roughness of the canopy. Generally, d is about 70% of the canopy height because most of the plant parts that produce the frictional interaction or form drag occur near that level. Although z_0 depends on the length of protrusions above the general canopy surface, it is often about 10% of the canopy height for dense vegetation and less for sparse vegetation. Equation 9.1 indicates that the wind speed extrapolates to zero at a height of $z_0 + d$ [the argument of the logarithm is then $(z_0 + d - d)/z_0$ or 1, and ln 1 = 0]; the actual wind speed at this height in the vegetation is nonzero, as we will discuss in Section 9.2A (Eq. 9.1 is applicable only above the vegetation).

9.1B. Flux Densities

During the daytime, a transpiring and photosynthesizing plant community as a whole can have a net vertical flux density of CO_2 (J_{CO_2}) downward toward it and a net vertical flux density of water vapor (J_{wv}) upward away from it into the turbulent air above the canopy. These flux densities are expressed per unit area of the ground or, equivalently, per unit area of the (horizontal) plant canopy. Each of the flux densities depends on the appropriate gradient. The vertical flux density of water vapor, for example, depends on the rate of change of water vapor concentration in the turbulent air, c_{wv}^{ta}, with respect to distance, z, above the vegetation:

$$J_{wv} = -K_{wv} \frac{\partial c_{wv}^{ta}}{\partial z} \tag{9.2}$$

In Equation 9.2 we again use the relation, flux density equals a proportionality coefficient times a force, where the "force" is the negative gradient of water vapor concentration. Because J_{wv} from a plant community can be expressed in mol m^{-2} s^{-1} and $\partial c_{wv}^{ta}/\partial z$ in mol m^{-4}, the coefficient K_{wv} in Equation 9.2 can have units of m^2 s^{-1}, the same as for diffusion coefficients. In fact, K_{wv} in Equation 9.2 is analogous to D_j in Fick's first law ($J_j = -D_j \partial c_j / \partial x$; Eqs. 1.1 and 8.2), except that it does not reflect the random thermal motion of water vapor molecules but rather the irregular swirling motion of packets, or eddies, of air in the turbulent region (Fig. 9-2). This makes the coefficient much larger than for molecular motion.

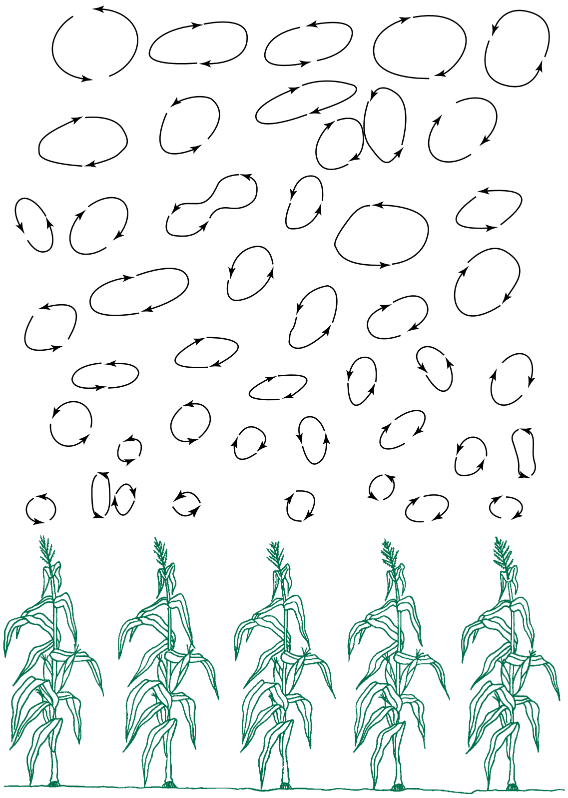


Figure 9-2. Schematic illustration of small packets or eddies of air swirling about in the turbulent region above vegetation. The eddies, which tend to increase in size with distance above the canopy, carry all of the molecules that they contain more or less as a unit. They are constantly changing—breaking up or coalescing with other eddies—making their actual size rather hypothetical.

By analogy with Equation 9.2, we can represent the flux density of CO_2 above a canopy as

$$J_{CO_2} = -K_{CO_2} \frac{\partial c^{ta}_{CO_2}}{\partial z} \tag{9.3}$$

where K_{CO_2} is the "air packet" or *eddy* diffusion coefficient for CO_2 (K_j is also referred to as a transfer coefficient, an exchange coefficient, or a diffusivity coefficient). Similarly, the vertical flux density of O_2 in the turbulent air, J_{O_2}, can be equated to $-K_{O_2}\partial c^{ta}_{O_2}/\partial z$. The positive direction for z is increasing altitude; consequently, the positive direction for a net flux density is from the plant canopy upward into the turbulent air.

9.1C. Eddy Diffusion Coefficients

The eddy diffusion coefficients, K_{wv} and K_{CO_2}, unlike the ordinary diffusion coefficients, D_{wv} and D_{CO_2}, have the same value in a given situation. A small packet of air moves more or less as a unit, carrying with it all of the H_2O, CO_2, and other molecules that it contains (see Fig. 9-2). Although we cannot

assign actual volumes to these eddies—which are constantly changing in size and shape because of shearing effects or coalescence with neighboring packets—they are large compared to intermolecular distances and contain enormous numbers of molecules. [Actually, the mean eddy size above vegetation has been approximated by $k(z - d)$ (parameters that are in Eq. 9.1).] The random motion of an air packet is caused by random fluctuations in pressure in local regions of the turbulent air. The eddying motions of the air packets promote a mixing, formally like the mixing due to diffusion, and thus lead to relations such as Equations 9.2 and 9.3. Besides their eddying motion, air packets have an average drift velocity represented by the local wind velocity. In particular, pressure gradients over large distances cause the winds and the resulting horizontal drift of the air packets.

Values for K_{wv} and K_{CO_2}, describing the "diffusion" of air packets, vary with the wind speed above a plant canopy. Also, eddy diffusion coefficients are affected by the rates of change of both wind speed and air temperature with altitude. For instance, hot air tends to rise and become replaced by cooler air. Such buoyancy effects, which are encouraged when $\partial T/\partial z$ is steeply negative above the canopy, lead to more rapid mixing and higher values for K_j. The eddy diffusion coefficients usually are approximately proportional to the local wind speed. As the wind speed increases, turbulent mixing of the air is more likely, and thus K_j becomes larger. Because wind speed varies with altitude (see Fig. 9-1), and because K_j also depends on the gradient in the wind speed, we often use an eddy diffusion coefficient averaged over an appropriate distance to describe the vertical fluxes in some region of the turbulent air above the canopy. Moreover, the wind speed, its gradient, and the vertical temperature gradient all vary during the day. Consequently, K_j should also be averaged over a suitable time interval, e.g., an hour.

For a moderate wind speed of 2 m s^{-1}, the eddy diffusion coefficient is usually 0.05 to 0.2 m^2 s^{-1} just above a plant canopy. Under these conditions, K_j might be about 2 m^2 s^{-1} at 30 m above the canopy and can exceed 5 m^2 s^{-1} at or above 300 m, where turbulent mixing is even greater. By comparison, D_{wv} is 2.4×10^{-5} m^2 s^{-1} and D_{CO_2} is 1.5×10^{-5} m^2 s^{-1} in air at 20°C (Appendix I). Thus K_j is 10^4 to 10^5 times larger in the turbulent air above the canopy than these D_j's. The random motion of air packets is indeed much more effective than the random thermal motion of molecules in moving H_2O and CO_2.

Because K_j increases with altitude as we move into turbulent regions with higher wind speeds, the steady-state concentration gradients become less steep (in the steady state, the fluxes do not change with distance above the canopy). For instance, J_{wv} is equal to $-K_{wv}\partial c_{wv}^{ta}/\partial z$ by Equation 9.2, and because K_{wv} increases with altitude, the absolute value of $\partial c_{wv}^{ta}/\partial z$ decreases at greater heights above the canopy. For example, K_j may increase by a factor of 10 in the first 20 m above the vegetation, in which case the gradient in water vapor concentration becomes one-tenth as large over this interval.

Because an air packet and the molecules within it move as a unit, the eddy diffusion coefficients for different gaseous species are equal. In fact, K_j is often assumed to be the same for the transfer of gases, heat, and momentum (expressed in the same units), a relation that is referred to as the *similarity principle*. Therefore K_j is generally measured for the most

convenient quantity in some situation and is then assumed to be the same (or at least similar) for all others.

9.1D. Resistance of Air above Canopy

As for the gaseous diffusion resistances in Chapter 8 (Section 8.1), we will identify resistances to the movement of water vapor and CO_2 in the turbulent air by r_{wv}^{ta} and $r_{CO_2}^{ta}$, respectively. To derive such quantities, we will replace the negative gradient of species j by its difference in concentration, Δc_j^{ta}, across a distance, Δz, in the turbulent air. Equation 9.2 then becomes $J_{wv} = K_{wv}\Delta c_{wv}^{ta}/\Delta z$, and Equation 9.3 becomes $J_{CO_2} = K_{CO_2}\Delta c_{CO_2}^{ta}/\Delta z$. By analogy with our previous definition of resistance (e.g., $J_j/\Delta c_j^{bl} = D_j/\delta^{bl} = 1/r_j^{bl}$; Eq. 8.3), we can identify resistances from the flux density expressions in Equations 9.2 and 9.3. Because K_{wv} is equal to K_{CO_2}, we obtain the following equalities:

$$r_{wv}^{ta} = \frac{\Delta c_{wv}^{ta}}{J_{wv}} = \frac{\Delta z}{K_{wv}} = \frac{\Delta z}{K_{CO_2}} = \frac{\Delta c_{CO_2}^{ta}}{J_{CO_2}} = r_{CO_2}^{ta} \qquad (9.4)$$

As with the analogous relations in Chapter 8 (e.g., Eqs. 8.3 and 8.5), Equation 9.4 describes the steady-state condition. Equation 9.4 indicates that r_{wv}^{ta} has the same value as $r_{CO_2}^{ta}$, as we would indeed expect based on the random motions of whole packets of air (also, $g_{wv}^{ta} = 1/r_{wv}^{ta} = 1/r_{CO_2}^{ta} = g_{CO_2}^{ta}$).

We now estimate the resistance of the turbulent air immediately above a plant canopy. We will let K_j average 1.0 $m^2\ s^{-1}$ for the first 30 m above the plants, a typical value in a moderate wind during the daytime. By Equation 9.4, the resistance over this 30-m interval then is

$$r_{wv}^{ta} = r_{CO_2}^{ta} = \frac{(30\ \text{m})}{(1.0\ \text{m}^2\ \text{s}^{-1})} = 30\ \text{s m}^{-1}$$

Measured values for this resistance usually range from 20 to 40 s m^{-1} for moderate wind speeds, as do predicted values from computer analyses of r_j^{ta} using models incorporating the variation of K_j with altitude. Wind speeds, and therefore K_j, tend to be lower at night, so r_j^{ta} tends to be somewhat higher then than during the daytime.

9.1E. Transpiration and Photosynthesis

We express flux densities above plants per unit area of the ground or, equivalently, per unit area of the canopy. For many agricultural and ecological considerations, such a measure of the average transpiration or average photosynthesis of the whole plant community is more useful than the water vapor or CO_2 flux densities of an individual leaf. Environmental measurements in the turbulent air above vegetation can thus indicate the overall rates of transpiration and photosynthesis of the community, especially if the extent of similar plants is fairly large, as might occur for a cornfield or a grassland. Moreover, such measurements can generally be made without

disturbing the plants or their leaves. On this large scale, however, we lose sight of certain factors, such as the effect of stomatal opening or leaf size on the gas fluxes. Also, the turbulent air above the canopy is greatly influenced by the terrain and by the vegetation, so we must reckon with other factors not involved in our study of leaves. For example, both K_j and the gradients in water vapor and CO_2 depend on whether we are at the edge or the center of a field, whether and what types of trees are present, and whether the region is flat or hilly.

For simplicity, we are considering a one-dimensional situation in which the net fluxes of water vapor and CO_2 occur only in the vertical direction above the canopy, as occurs near the center of a large uniform plant community. Just as our assumption of a boundary layer of uniform thickness breaks down at the leading and the trailing edges of a leaf (Fig. 7-6), we must also consider air packets transferring H_2O and CO_2 horizontally in and out at the sides of vegetation. Such net horizontal transfer of various gases is referred to as *advection.* Instead of using Equations 9.2 through 9.4 to analyze net gas flux densities, we may then have to use much more cumbersome three-dimensional equations to handle advection for small fields or individual plants.

As we considered in Chapter 8 (Section 8.5A), J_{wv}/J_{CO_2} can be about 400 H_2O/CO_2 for a sunlit mesophytic leaf and 200 H_2O/CO_2 for a photosynthetically efficient C_4 species such as corn (maize). For an entire plant community, however, the water lost per CO_2 fixed is generally considerably higher than it is for a single, well-illuminated leaf. In particular, J_{wv} measured above the canopy also includes water vapor coming from the soil and from leaves that are not well illuminated and that therefore contribute little to the net photosynthesis. Some of the CO_2 taken up by the plant community is evolved by soil microorganisms, roots, and leaves that do not receive much sunlight and so are below light compensation, all of which decrease the amount of CO_2 that needs to be supplied from above the plant canopy. These effects tend to raise the absolute value of J_{wv}/J_{CO_2} above the values for an exposed leaf. Although this J_{wv}/J_{CO_2} above a plant canopy depends on the ambient relative humidity and the physiological status of the plants, it is usually between 400 and 2000 H_2O/CO_2 when averaged over the daytime in the growing season. Moreover, mainly because J_{CO_2} for C_4 species is often about twice as large as that for C_3 species, the absolute value of J_{wv}/J_{CO_2} is lower and daily growth tends to be greater for C_4 species.

9.1F. Values for Fluxes and Concentrations

We will use representative values of J_{CO_2} to calculate the decreases in the concentration of CO_2 that can occur over a certain vertical distance in the turbulent atmosphere above vegetation. When a net CO_2 uptake is occurring, the flux density of CO_2 is directed from the turbulent air downward into the canopy. J_{CO_2} above the vegetation is then negative by our sign convention, which means that $c_{CO_2}^{ta}$ increases as we go vertically upward ($J_{CO_2} = -K_{CO_2}\partial c_{CO_2}^{ta}/\partial z$; Eq. 9.3). This is as we would expect if CO_2 is to be

transferred downward toward the plants by the random motion of eddies in the turbulent air (Fig. 9-2).

J_{CO_2} above a plant canopy can be $-20\ \mu\text{mol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1}$ at midday. For comparison, the flux density of CO_2 into an exposed leaf of a mesophyte at a moderate light level can be 11 $\mu\text{mol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1}$ (Chapter 8, Section 8.4E). Using Equation 9.4, an analogy with Ohm's law ($\Delta E = IR$; namely, $\Delta c_j^{\text{ta}} = J_j r_j^{\text{ta}}$), and a resistance of 30 s m^{-1} for the lower 30 m of the turbulent air ($r_{CO_2}^{\text{ta}}$), we calculate that the decrease in CO_2 concentration across this region is

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta c_{CO_2}^{\text{ta}} &= J_{CO_2} r_{CO_2}^{\text{ta}} = \left(-20 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{mol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1}\right)\left(30\ \text{s m}^{-1}\right) \\ &= -0.60\ \text{mmol m}^{-3}\end{aligned}$$

where the negative sign here means that $c_{CO_2}^{\text{ta}}$ increases as we go vertically upward. Using a conversion factor from Table 8-2, this $\Delta c_{CO_2}^{\text{ta}}$ corresponds to a CO_2 mole fraction difference of (0.60)(24.4), or 15 μmol CO_2 mol^{-1} air at 20°C and an air pressure of 0.1 MPa. Thus CO_2, which might have a mole fraction of 400 $\mu\text{mol mol}^{-1}$ well into the turbulent air, such as 30 m above vegetation, could be 400 – 15, or 385 $\mu\text{mol mol}^{-1}$ just above the canopy.

For a rapidly photosynthesizing corn crop at noon, J_{CO_2} can be $-60\ \mu\text{mol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1}$. For the previous $r_{CO_2}^{\text{ta}}$, $\Delta c_{CO_2}^{\text{ta}}$ then corresponds to $(-60 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{mol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1})(30\ \text{s m}^{-1})$ or $1.8 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{mol m}^{-3}$, which at 20°C and 1 atm (0.1 MPa) air pressure and using a factor in Table 8-2 becomes $(-1.8)(24.4)$ or $-44\ \mu\text{mol mol}^{-1}$, so the CO_2 mole fraction at the top of the canopy can be 44 $\mu\text{mol mol}^{-1}$ lower than the 400 $\mu\text{mol mol}^{-1}$ in the turbulent air tens of meters above the corn plants, or 356 $\mu\text{mol mol}^{-1}$. In fact, measurement of $c_{CO_2}^{\text{ta}}$ at the top of the canopy indicates the net rate of photosynthesis by the plants. At night respiration occurs, but not photosynthesis, so the vegetation then acts as a source of CO_2. Therefore, the mole fraction of CO_2 just above the canopy at night is usually a few $\mu\text{mol mol}^{-1}$ greater than it is higher up in the turbulent air, as we discuss in Section 9.2G.

The flux density of water vapor just above the canopy, which includes transpiration from the leaves plus evaporation from the soil, is often termed *evapotranspiration*. For fairly dense vegetation and a moist soil, evapotranspiration is appreciable, usually amounting to 60 to 90% of the flux density of water vapor from an exposed water surface (such as a lake) at the ambient air temperature. The daily evapotranspiration from a forest is often equivalent to a layer of water 3 to 5 mm thick, which averages 2 to 3 mmol m^{-2} s^{-1} over a day. At noon on a sunny day with a moderate wind, J_{wv} above a plant canopy can be 7 mmol m^{-2} s^{-1}. Using Equation 9.4 ($\Delta c_{\text{wv}}^{\text{ta}} = J_{wv} r_{wv}^{\text{ta}}$) and our value for r_{wv}^{ta} of 30 s m^{-1}, we note that over the first 30 m of the turbulent air above the canopy, the water vapor concentration decreases as follows:

$$\Delta c_{wv}^{\text{ta}} = (7 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{mol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1})(30\ \text{s m}^{-1}) = 0.21\ \text{mol m}^{-3}$$

We indicated in Chapter 8 (Section 8.2E) that the turbulent air immediately outside the air boundary layer adjacent to a leaf contains 0.48 mol water m^{-3} when it is at 20°C and 50% relative humidity (see Fig. 8-7). Our calculation indicates that c_{wv}^{ta} could drop by 0.21 mol m^{-3}, which means from 0.48 mol m^{-3} to 0.27 mol m^{-3} (28% relative humidity at 20°C), as we move

30 m upward into the turbulent air above the canopy. Such a decrease in absolute and relative humidity is generally observed in the turbulent air above vegetation. Such air becoming drier with increasing altitude is familiar to mountain climbers, people who fly in small airplanes with open windows, and parachutists.

Because evapotranspiration is important both ecologically and agronomically, various methods have been developed for estimating it, including approaches based on measurements made above the plant canopy. Just as for a leaf (see Chapter 7, Section 7.1), the main energy input into a plant canopy is generally from net radiation (see Eq. 7.8), and the main energy losses are from sensible heat loss (heat conduction across a boundary layer followed by convection to the turbulent air; see Eqs. 7.14 through 7.16) and latent heat loss accompanying water evaporation (Eq. 7.22). The ratio of the flux density of sensible heat loss to the air to the flux density of latent heat loss from both the soil and the plant canopy is referred to as the *Bowen ratio*, based on work by Ira Bowen in the 1920s. The Bowen ratio, β, tends to be low when the evaporation rate is high, such as when water is readily available; β is high when water availability is limited. For instance, β is about 0.1 for tropical oceans, 0.2 for tropical rain forests, 0.4 to 0.8 for temperate forests and grasslands, 2 to 6 for semi-arid regions, and 10 for deserts. Incorporating β into an energy budget relation for an entire plant canopy allows the determination of the rate of evapotranspiration from measurements of the net radiation, the heat flux density into the soil, and the gradients in temperature and water vapor concentration above the canopy. Evapotranspiration can then be estimated to within a few percent of measured values for grasses and other short crops as well as for forests using an energy budget analysis incorporating the Bowen ratio.

9.1G. Condensation

What appears to be steam is often seen rising from leaves or other surfaces (Fig. 9-3) when the sun breaks through the clouds after a rainstorm or at

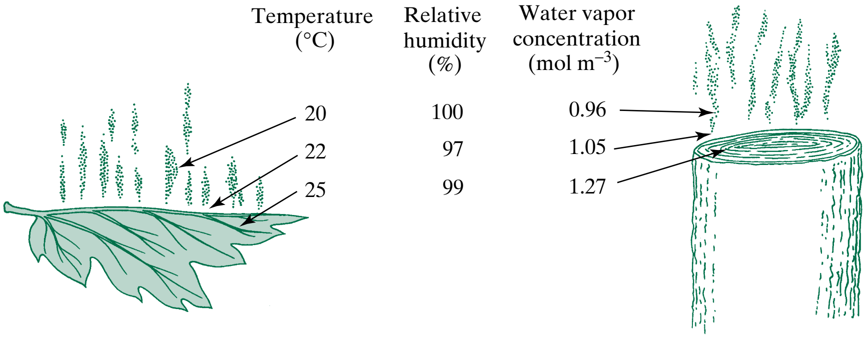


Figure 9-3. "Steam" rising from a leaf and a wooden fence post that are rapidly heated by the sun after a rainstorm. Moisture-laden air just outside the boundary layer next to the objects (c_{wv} = 1.05 mol m^{-3}) is swept in an eddying motion into a cooler region, where the water vapor condenses.

sunrise after a night with a heavy dew. To analyze this phenomenon, we will assume that the sun warms the leaves at the top of the canopy to 25°C and that the concentration of water vapor in the cell wall pores of their mesophyll cells is then 1.27 mol m^3, which corresponds to 99% relative humidity (see Chapter 8, Section 8.2E). Suppose that the air just outside the boundary layer adjacent to a leaf is at 22°C and has a high relative humidity of 97% just after the rainstorm; c_{wv}^{ta} is then 1.05 mol m^{-3} (c_{wv}^{*} is 1.08 mol m^{-3} at 22°C, Appendix I). Hence, water vapor will diffuse from the leaf, across the boundary layer, and into the turbulent air (Fig. 9-3). Now suppose that the air at a greater distance from the leaf is somewhat cooler, e.g., 20°C at 10 mm from the leaf. At 20°C c_{wv}^{*} is 0.96 mol m^{-3} (Appendix I). Thus, as the air with 1.05 mol water m^{-3} moves away from the unstirred layer adjacent to the leaf in an eddy, or air parcel, it will be cooled and some of its water vapor will condense because c_{wv}^{ta} cannot exceed c_{wv}^{*} for the local air temperature. This condensation leads to the fog, or "steam," seen moving away from plants or a fence post or an asphalt highway surface into the surrounding cooler turbulent air when the surface is rapidly heated after being wet (Fig. 9-3). Also, a short distance (of the order of millimeters) occurs between the heated wet surface and the region where condensation begins. As we move even further away from the surface to regions of lower water vapor concentration, the condensed water evaporates and so the steam disappears (Fig. 9.3). Besides being obvious on plants and in forests when the sun breaks through the clouds after a rainfall, such phenomena can also be readily observed on the tops of automobiles, street surfaces, and roofs of buildings in urban environments under these circumstances.

9.2. Gas Fluxes within Plant Communities

The pattern of gas concentrations and fluxes within vegetation varies with the plant community. Airflow within communities also depends on the three-dimensional architecture of the plants. For instance, wind speed does not necessarily decrease as we move downward toward the ground—air in an open forest can "tunnel" under the branches and hence the wind speed can be greater there than further up in the plant community where greater frictional drag occurs. We will not attempt to examine all types of vegetation but instead will focus on a corn (maize, *Zea mays*) crop representing a monospecific stand of high productivity. The same general principles apply to other fairly uniform plant communities, but isolated plants provide special difficulty for analysis because the gas concentrations and fluxes then vary in three dimensions.

9.2A. Eddy Diffusion Coefficient and Resistance

We begin by considering how the eddy diffusion coefficient might vary within a plant community. Near the ground a thick air boundary layer can occur because the air is generally quite still there. In fact, K_j often averages 5×10^{-5} m^2 s^{-1} over the first 10 mm above the ground, a value only two or three times larger than the diffusion coefficients of water vapor and CO_2 in air (Table 1-1). When K_j is of the same order of magnitude as diffusion

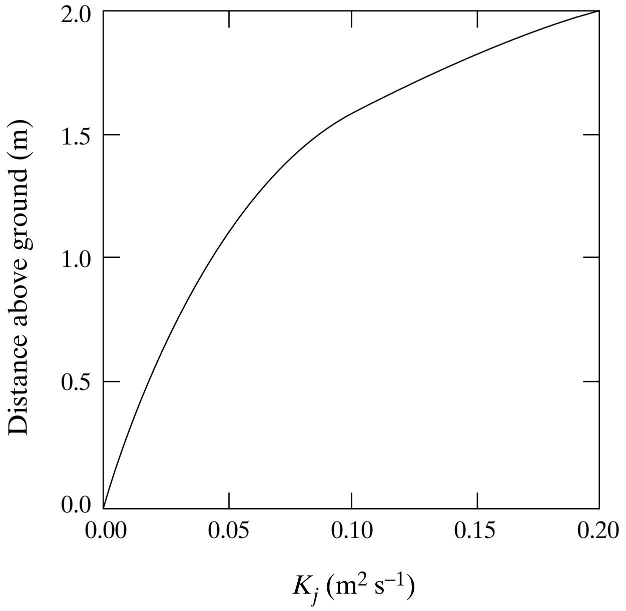


Figure 9-4. Idealized representation of the variation in the eddy diffusion coefficient within a uniform corn (maize, *Zea mays*) crop that is 2 m in height. The wind speed is 2 m s^{-1} at the top of the canopy.

coefficients, differences in movement among molecular species can become apparent; such differences are ignored here. As we move upward to the top of a plant community, the eddy diffusion coefficient increases, often more or less logarithmically with height in the upper part of many plant communities. It may reach 0.2 m^2 s^{-1} at the top of a canopy in a moderate wind (Fig. 9-4). Because K_j is approximately proportional to wind speed, v^{wind} within the plant community varies in a manner similar to the variation described for the eddy diffusion coefficient (Fig. 9-4). For instance, the wind speed about 0.2 m above the ground might be 0.1 m s^{-1}, increasing to 2 m s^{-1} at the top of the canopy.

Two aspects concerning K_j within a plant community deserve special emphasis. First, the transfer of gases within the vegetation takes place by the random motion of relatively large parcels or eddies of air, just as in the turbulent region above the canopy. Second, because of frictional drag between the moving air and the many leaves, branches, and other plant parts, the eddy diffusion coefficient within the vegetation is considerably less than it is in the air above the canopy.

To illustrate the relative contributions of various air layers from the ground to the top of a corn crop 2 m in height (Fig. 9-4), we will let K_j have specific average values for various height intervals above the ground (Table 9-1), consistent with the plot of K_j versus height in Figure 9-4. We can use Equation 9.4 ($r_{wv}^{\text{ta}} = \Delta z / K_{wv} = r_{\text{CO}_2}^{\text{ta}}$) to estimate the resistance of each of the four air layers in series. For example, for the lowermost layer we obtain

$$r_j^{\text{ta}} = (0.01\ \text{m})/(5 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{m}^2\ \text{s}^{-1}) = 200\ \text{s m}^{-1}$$

Table 9-1. Summary of Gas Exchange Parameters and Flux Densities Within a 2-m-Tall Corn (Maize, *Zea mays*) Crop at Noon on a Sunny Day[a]

Height above ground (m)	$\bar{K}_j$ ($m^2\ s^{-1}$)	r_j^{ta} ($s\ m^{-1}$)	$\bar{J}_{wv}$ ($mmol\ m^{-2}\ s^{-1}$)	Δc_{wv} ($mol\ m^{-3}$)	$\bar{J}_{CO_2}$ ($\mu mol\ m^{-2}\ s^{-1}$)	Δc_{CO_2} ($mmol\ m^{-3}$)	ΔN_{CO_2} ($\mu mol\ mol^{-1}$)
Above canopy			7		−60		
1–2	1×10^{-1}	10	4	0.04	−30	−0.30	−7
0.1–1	2×10^{-2}	50	1	0.05	3	0.15	4
0.01–0.1	1×10^{-3}	90	0.5	0.05	2	0.18	4
0.00–0.01	5×10^{-5}	200	0.5	0.10	2	0.40	10
Ground level			0.5		2		

[a]Bars over K_j, J_{wv}, and J_{CO_2} indicate values averaged over the height increment involved (sources: Fig. 9-4; Lemon et al., 1971).

As indicated in Table 9-1, the total resistance from the ground up to the top of the canopy is the sum of four resistances:

$$200\ s\ m^{-1} + 90\ s\ m^{-1} + 50\ s\ m^{-1} + 10\ s\ m^{-1} = 350\ s\ m^{-1}$$

(In a sense, we are performing a numerical integration to determine the resistance.) Computer analyses using models describing the turbulent air within such a crop also indicate that the resistance is usually 300 to 400 s m^{-1}. Most of the resistance within a plant community is generally due to the relatively still air next to the ground. For instance, just over half (200 s m^{-1} out of 350 s m^{-1}) of the resistance for the 2-m pathway is provided by the lowest 0.01 m, whereas the entire upper half of the corn crop accounts for a resistance of only 10 s m^{-1} (Table 9-1).

9.2B. Water Vapor

A considerable amount of water can evaporate from the soil and then move in air packets up through the vegetation. For instance, J_{wv} from a moist, intermittently illuminated soil, such as commonly occurs in a temperate forest, can be 0.2 to 1.0 mmol $m^{-2}\ s^{-1}$. (For comparison, 0.5 mmol $m^{-2}\ s^{-1}$ corresponds to a depth of water of 0.8 mm/day or 280 mm/year.) If a flow of 0.5 mmol $m^{-2}\ s^{-1}$ occurs across a resistance of 290 s m^{-1} to reach a distance 0.1 m above the ground, using Equation 9.4 (by which $\Delta c_{wv}^{ta} = J_{wv} r_{wv}^{ta}$) we calculate that the drop in water vapor from the ground to this level is

$$(0.5 \times 10^{-3}\ mol\ m^{-2}\ s^{-1})(290\ s\ m^{-1}) = 0.15\ mol\ m^{-3}$$

At 20°C the saturation water vapor concentration is 0.96 mol m^{-3} (see Appendix I), so a water vapor decrease of 0.15 mol m^{-3} then corresponds to a 16% decrease in relative humidity. Thus, an appreciable drop in water vapor concentration and relative humidity can occur across the relatively still air near a moist soil under a plant canopy (Fig. 9-5).

Because of water vapor transpired by the leaves, J_{wv} increases as we move from the ground up through a corn crop. On a sunny day the water vapor flux density might be 1 mmol $m^{-2}\ s^{-1}$ at 0.5 m above the ground, 2 mmol $m^{-2}\ s^{-1}$ at 1.0 m, 4 mmol $m^{-2}\ s^{-1}$ at 1.5 m, and 7 mmol $m^{-2}\ s^{-1}$ at 2.0 m, which is the top of the canopy. (On a cloudy humid day, J_{wv} for a corn crop might be only 1 to 2 mmol $m^{-2}\ s^{-1}$ at the top of the canopy.) If J_{wv}

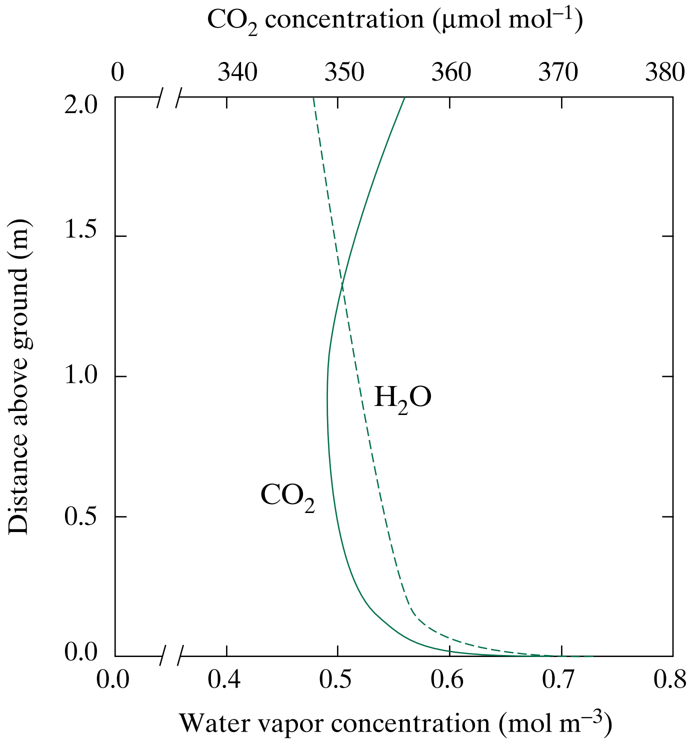


Figure 9-5. Possible variation of water vapor and CO_2 concentrations within a 2-m-tall corn (maize, *Zea mays*) crop at noon on a sunny day. At the top of the canopy, the wind speed is 2 m s^{-1}. In the turbulent air 30 m above the vegetation, c_{wv}^{ta} is 0.27 mol m^{-3} and $N_{CO_2}^{ta}$ is 400 μmol mol^{-1} [for values under field conditions, see Lemon et al. (1971)]. Such variations of atmospheric CO_2 and H_2O levels with height need to be taken into account in gas-exchange models that deal with leaves in various layers within the plant community.

averages 1 mmol m^{-2} s^{-1} from 0.1 to 1.0 m above the ground, where the resistance is 50 s m^{-1} (Table 9-1), then by Equation 9.4 Δc_{wv}^{ta} for this part of the pathway is

$$(1 \times 10^{-3} \text{ mol m}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1})(50 \text{ s m}^{-1}) = 0.05 \text{ mol m}^{-3}$$

For the upper 1 m, the resistance is 10 s m^{-1}, and so for an average J_{wv} of 4 mmol m^{-2} s^{-1}, the decrease in water vapor concentration across this part of the pathway is 0.04 mol m^{-3} (Table 9-1). Therefore, Δc_{wv}^{ta} is 0.15 mol m^{-3} over the 0.1 m just above the ground, 0.05 mol m^{-3} from 0.1 to 1.0 m, and 0.04 mol m^{-3} from 1.0 to 2.0 m, or 0.24 mol m^{-3} overall (see Table 9-1 and Fig. 9-5). If the turbulent air at the top of the canopy is at 20°C and 50% relative humidity, it contains 0.48 mol water m^{-3}. The air near the soil then contains approximately 0.48 + 0.24 or 0.72 mol H_2O m^{-3}, which corresponds to 75% relative humidity at 20°C (c_{wv}^{*} is 0.96 mol m^{-3} at 20°C; see Appendix I). Thus the microclimate near the soil surface is much more humid than further up in the plant community, which has many implications for plants as well as insects and other animals. In summary, we note that: (1) air close to the soil under a (fairly dense) plant canopy can have a high relative humidity, (2) c_{wv}^{ta} continuously decreases as we move upward from the ground, (3) most

of the overall drop in water vapor concentration occurs near the ground, and (4) most of the water vapor comes from the upper half of the corn crop in the current example.

9.2C. Attenuation of the Photosynthetic Photon Flux

Before discussing J_{CO_2} within a plant community, we need to consider how the amount of light varies down through the various layers of vegetation. At each level in the community, the photosynthetic photon flux (PPF), also known as the photosynthetic photon flux density (PPFD) and consisting of wavelengths from 400 to 700 nm (Chapter 4, Section 4.1C), helps determine the rate of photosynthesis there. For instance, for the leaves of many C_3 plants, the net rate of CO_2 fixation approaches light saturation near a PPF of 600 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1}, and it decreases to zero at light compensation (Fig. 8-20). A comprehensive formulation of the PPF level—including effects of leaf angle, sun elevation in the sky, the finite width of the sun's disc, changes in spectral distribution of PPF at various levels within the plant community, sunflecks (direct sunlight penetrating down into the canopy), multiple reflections from leaves and other surfaces, and clumping versus uniform arrangement of leaves—leads to a nearly hopeless complication of the algebra.[1] Instead, we will assume that the PPF decreases due to absorption by the foliage in a manner analogous to a form of Beer's law, $-\ln(J_b/J_0) = \ln(J_0/J_b) = k_\lambda cb$ (Eq. 4.18). This approximation is particularly useful when the leaves are randomly distributed horizontally, as can occur in certain moderately dense plant communities.

As we move downward into the vegetation, the PPF decreases approximately exponentially with the amount of absorbing material encountered. For some canopies the greatest leaf area per interval of height occurs near the middle (e.g., many grasses), and for others it occurs about three-fourths of the way up from the ground (e.g., many crops and trees). We will let F be the average cumulative total leaf area per unit ground area as we move downward through the plant community. The dimensionless parameter F uses the area of only one side of the leaves and thus is expressed on the same basis as our flux densities of H_2O and CO_2. F is zero at the top of a canopy and has its maximum value at ground level, a value generally referred to as the *leaf area index*. If the leaves in a particular plant community were all horizontal, the leaf area index would equal the average number of leaves above any point on the ground. In any case, the leaf area index equals the leaf area per plant or plants divided by the ground area per plant or plants.

We will represent the PPF, J, incident on the top of a plant canopy by J_0. Primarily because of absorption by photosynthetic pigments, the PPF is attenuated down through the plant community. At any level in the

1. Besides the complex nature of the actual PPF level, biological factors can vary downward through a plant community. For instance, a shift from sun leaves to shade leaves (Fig. 7-11) can occur for a taller species. Also, the nitrogen content per unit leaf area tends to decrease in concert with the decrease in PPF, which reduces the photosynthetic capacity of many species.

vegetation, J is related to J_0 and F as follows:

$$\ln\frac{J_0}{J} = kF \tag{9.5}$$

where k is a dimensionless parameter describing the absorption properties of a particular type of foliage and is referred to as the *foliar absorption coefficient*. Because we are ignoring changes in spectral distribution at different levels in the vegetation, J_0 and J in Equation 9.5 can represent the flux density of photons from 400 to 700 nm or an energy flux density for these photons. Equation 9.5 was introduced into plant studies by Masami Monsi and Toshiro Saeki in 1953 (Hirose, 2005).

9.2D. Values for Foliar Absorption Coefficient

The foliar absorption coefficient k ranges from 0.3 to 1.3 for most plants. Light penetrates the vertically oriented blades of grasses rather easily; in such cases, k can be near 0.4. What cumulative leaf area per ground area reduces the incident PPF by 95% for grasses with such a foliar absorption coefficient? By Equation 9.5, the accumulated leaf area per unit ground area in this case is

$$F = \frac{\ln(J_0/0.05J_0)}{0.4} = 7.5$$

Thus, when the average leaf area index is 7.5 for such grasses, 5% of the PPF incident on the canopy reaches the soil surface (Fig. 9-6). For 95% of the PPF to be absorbed for a leaf area index of 3, by Equation 9.5 a much higher k is required:

$$k = \ln(1.00/0.05)/3 = 1.0$$

Such a high foliar absorption coefficient applies to horizontal leaves with at least 0.5 g chlorophyll m^{-2}, which can occur for crops such as potato, soybean, sunflower, and white clover (Fig. 9-6).

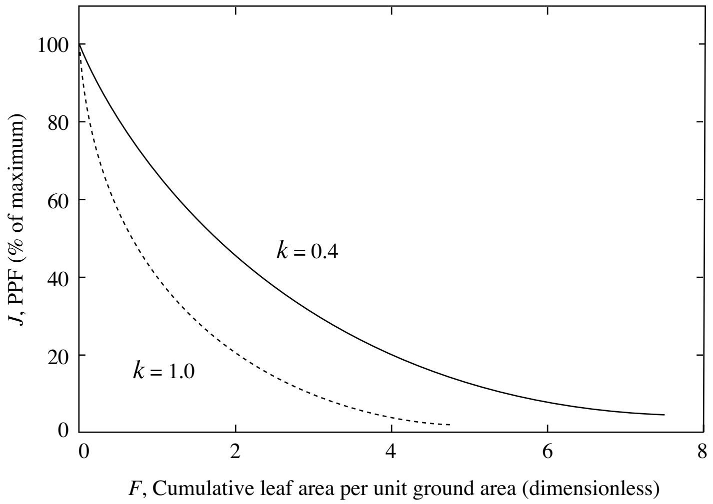


Figure 9-6. Attenuation of PPF down through a plant community with erect leaves having a low foliar absorption coefficient of 0.4 and another plant community with horizontal leaves having a high k of 1.0.

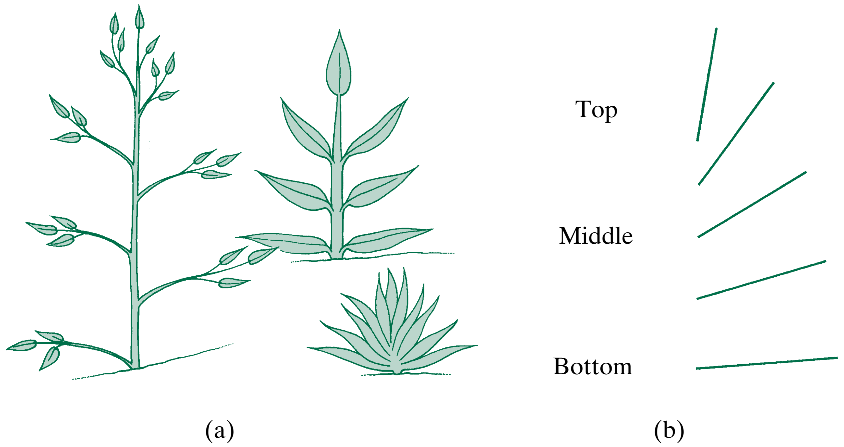


Figure 9-7. Variation in leaf angle and hence foliar absorption coefficient with distance above the ground for (a) various idealized plants and (b) sugar beet measured at various canopy positions (Hodáňová, 1979). The greater erectness of the uppermost leaves leads to a lower *k* for them and hence to better penetration of PPF down to the lower leaves.

When the sun is overhead, vertical leaves absorb less sunlight and reflect more down into the vegetation per unit leaf area than do horizontal leaves. This accounts for the low values of *k* for grasses because their leaves are generally erect. For certain plants, such as sugar beet, leaves tend to be vertical near the top, becoming on average more horizontal toward the ground (Fig. 9-7). This orientation reduces the foliar absorption coefficient of the upper leaves, so more of the light incident on the plants is then available for the lower leaves. In fact, optimal light utilization for photosynthesis generally occurs when the incident PPF is distributed as uniformly as possible over the leaves, because the fractions of leaves exposed to PPF levels approaching light saturation or below light compensation are then usually minimized. Thus, alterations in canopy architecture by breeding can increase community photosynthesis of monospecific stands of cultivated plants. Also, for certain multi-story plant communities, a different *k* can apply to discrete layers occupied by different species. Our arguments about the effect of leaf orientation on *k* presuppose that essentially all of the light is incident on the top of the canopy. When much PPF comes in from the sides, as for an isolated tree, or in the early morning or late afternoon, foliar absorption coefficients determined for vertically incident light should not be used in Equation 9.5—indeed, *k* can be determined for other sun angles. Also, a foliar absorption coefficient can be determined for shortwave irradiation, instead of for PPF, which is important in energy balance studies.

9.2E. Light Compensation Point

We next consider the light compensation point for CO_2 fixation by leaves. As we mentioned in Chapter 8 (Section 8.4D), light compensation generally occurs at a PPF of about 10 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1} for a leaf temperature near 20°C

and a CO_2 concentration of 380 μmol mol^{-1}. Suppose that a moderate PPF of 500 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1} occurs on trees whose leaves have a foliar absorption coefficient of 0.8. At what cumulative area of leaves per unit ground area (F) is a light compensation point of 10 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1} reached? By Equation 9.5, F is then

$$F = \ln(500/10)/(0.8) = 4.9$$

Thus only the upper five "layers" of leaves in a dense forest might be above light compensation for that part of a day when the PPF incident on the top of the canopy is 500 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1}. For a lower PPF on the plant canopy, more leaves are below light compensation. Also, occasional sunflecks of high PPF reach the lower parts of the vegetation, complicating our analysis of where light compensation occurs. In any case, even for a high PPF of 2000 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1}, such as can occur on a clear day with the sun directly overhead, only 6.6 layers of leaves with a mean foliar absorption coefficient of 0.8 are above a light compensation point of 10 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1}. Consequently, plant communities rarely have a leaf area index exceeding 7.

Leaves that are below light compensation for most of the day do not contribute to the net photosynthesis of the plant. Such leaves generally lose 20 to 50% of their dry weight before dying and abscising. After this loss of leaves on the lower branches of trees, the branches themselves die and eventually fall off or are blown off by the wind. Thus tall trees in a dense forest often have few or no branches on the lower parts of their trunks, regions that are generally below the light compensation point for net CO_2 uptake by the trees, leading to spaces occupied by various understory species that can tolerate low light levels.

9.2F. CO_2 Concentrations and Fluxes

In contrast to the concentration of water vapor, which continuously decreases with increasing distance above the ground, on a sunny day the CO_2 concentration generally achieves a minimum somewhere within a plant community (Fig. 9-5). This occurs because both the turbulent air above the canopy and also the soil can serve as sources of CO_2. During the day, CO_2 diffuses toward lower concentrations from the soil upward into the vegetation and from the overlying turbulent air downward into the plant community.

Respiration in root cells and in soil microorganisms can lead to a net upward CO_2 flux density coming from the ground of 1 to 3 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1} during the growing season. (An O_2 flux density of similar magnitude occurs in the opposite direction.) J_{CO_2} from the soil varies in phase with the soil temperature, which is higher during the daytime (see Chapter 7, Section 7.5C). We have already estimated that $r^{ta}_{CO_2}$, which is the same as r^{ta}_{wv}, might be 200 s m^{-1} for the first 0.01 m above the ground for a corn crop that is 2 m tall (Table 9-1). Using Equation 9.4 ($\Delta c^{ta}_{CO_2} = J_{CO_2} r^{ta}_{CO_2}$), we calculate that for a representative CO_2 flux density of 2 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1} emanating from the soil, the decrease in CO_2 concentration across this first 0.01 m above the ground is

$$\Delta c^{ta}_{CO_2} = (2 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{mmol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1})(200\ \text{s m}^{-1}) = 0.40\ \text{mmol m}^{-3}$$

By the conversion factor in Table 8-2, this represents a mole fraction drop of 10 μmol CO_2 mol^{-1} at 20°C and 0.1 MPa air pressure. In the next 0.09 m, the CO_2 concentration decreases by 0.18 mmol m^{-3}, which corresponds to about 4 μmol mol^{-1} (Table 9-1). Therefore, the CO_2 level might decrease by 14 μmol mol^{-1} from 367 μmol mol^{-1} at the soil surface to 353 μmol mol^{-1} at 0.1 m above the ground (Fig. 9-5).

As we move further upward from the ground, the flux density of CO_2 initially increases as we encounter leaves that are below light compensation and thus have a net evolution of CO_2. For instance, J_{CO_2} directed upward may increase from 2 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1} at 0.1 m to 5 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1} at 0.5 m. The maximum upward J_{CO_2} within the plant community coincides with the level where light compensation occurs. As we move even higher and encounter leaves with net photosynthesis, the net upward flux density of CO_2 in the turbulent air decreases, and it may become zero at 1.0 m above the ground in a 2-m-tall corn crop with a high photosynthetic rate. Because J_{CO_2} is equal to $-K_{CO_2}\partial c^{ta}_{CO_2}/\partial z$ (Eq. 9.3), J_{CO_2} is zero (no net CO_2 flux upward or downward) when $\partial c^{ta}_{CO_2}/\partial z$ is zero, which corresponds to the local minimum in CO_2 concentration (Fig. 9-5). In particular, $\partial c^{ta}_{CO_2}/\partial z$, which represents the reciprocal of the slope of the line labeled "CO_2" in Fig. 9-5, is negative below where the minimum in CO_2 concentration occurs, indicating that $\partial c^{ta}_{CO_2}/\partial z$ then decreases in the upward direction; $\partial c^{ta}_{CO_2}/\partial z$ is positive above the CO_2 minimum in the upper part of the plant community, indicating that c_{CO_2} increases in the upward direction there; $\partial c^{ta}_{CO_2}/\partial z$ is zero ($\partial z/\partial c^{ta}_{CO_2}$ is infinite, i.e., a vertical line in Fig. 9-5) where c_{CO_2} reaches its minimum value and hence J_{CO_2} is also zero there (Eq. 9.3), meaning that no net CO_2 flux occurs in either direction at that level. J_{CO_2} may average 3 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1} from 0.1 to 1.0 m above the ground, an interval that has a resistance of 50 s m^{-1} (Table 9-1). This would lead to a $\Delta c^{ta}_{CO_2}$ of 0.15 mmol m^{-3}, which corresponds to a CO_2 mole fraction decrease of 4 μmol mol^{-1}. Hence, the CO_2 concentration may reach its lowest value of 353 – 4 or 349 μmol mol^{-1} midway through the crop (see Fig. 9-5).

At noon on a sunny day, J_{CO_2} down into a corn crop might be 60 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1} (Section 9.1F). Essentially all of the net CO_2 flux from the turbulent air above the canopy is directed into the leaves in the upper half of the corn crop; for example, J_{CO_2} may become –30 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1} at 1.5 m above the ground and zero at 1.0 m. Therefore, the average CO_2 flux density in the upper half of the vegetation is about –30 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1}, and the resistance is 10 s m^{-1} (Table 9-1). Consequently, $\Delta c^{ta}_{CO_2}$ for this upper portion of an actively photosynthesizing corn crop might be $(-30 \times 10^{-6}$ mol m^{-3} s$^{-1})(10$ s m$^{-1})$ or –0.30 mmol m^{-3}, which corresponds to a (0.30)(24.4) or 7 μmol mol^{-1} decrease in CO_2 from the top of the canopy to 1.0 m below (see numbers in Tables 8-2 and 9-1; Fig. 9-5). We indicated in Section 9.1F that $N^{ta}_{CO_2}$ at the top of this canopy might be 400 – 44 or 356 μmol mol^{-1}. The CO_2 mole fraction at 1.0 m above the ground then is 349 μmol mol^{-1}, the same value that we estimated by working our way up from the ground (see Fig. 9-5). Two-thirds or more of the net photosynthesis usually occurs in the upper one-third of most plant communities, as it does here for corn.

CO_2 concentrations in the air can vary over a wide range within different plant communities. For a corn crop exposed to a low wind speed (below 0.3 m s^{-1} at the top of the canopy), for a rapidly growing plant community, or for other dense vegetation where the eddy diffusion coefficient may be relatively small, the CO_2 mole fraction in the turbulent air within the plant stand can be 200 μmol mol^{-1} during a sunny day. On the other hand, for sparse desert vegetation, especially on windy or overcast days, $N_{CO_2}^{ta}$ generally does not decrease even 2 μmol mol^{-1} from the value at the top of the canopy.

9.2G. CO_2 at Night

The CO_2 concentration at night is highest near the ground and continuously decreases as we go upward through the plants into the turbulent air above (Fig. 9-8). J_{CO_2} from the soil can be 1 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1} (half of the value that we used during the daytime because of lower temperatures at night), and the respiratory flux density of CO_2 from the above-ground parts of plants can be 3 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1} at night. Respiration averaged over

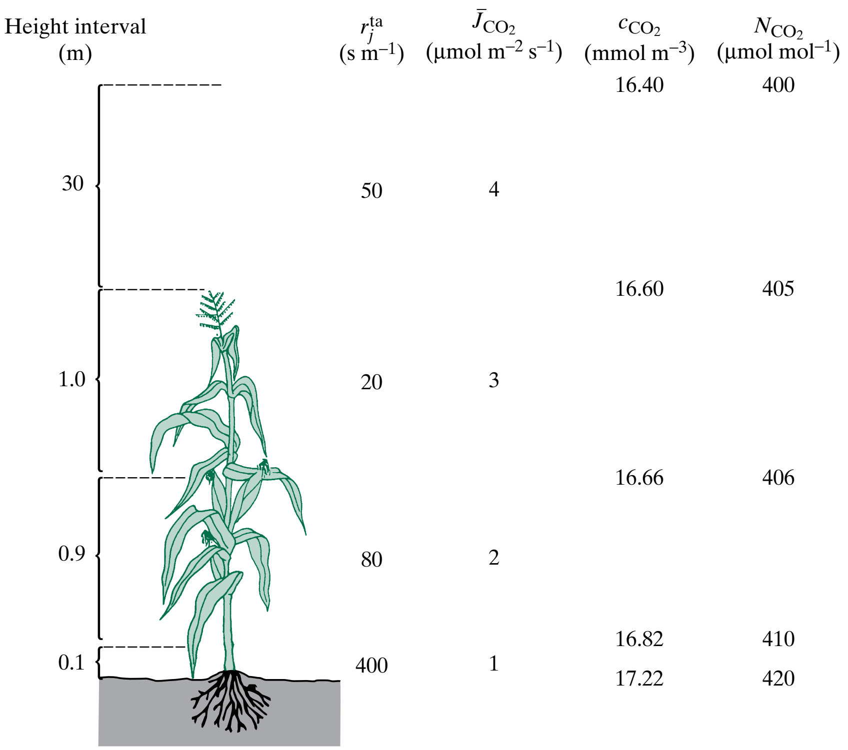


Figure 9-8. CO_2 resistances, flux densities, and concentrations within and above a corn crop at night. Height in the turbulent air above the plant canopy is not to scale. Air temperature is 20°C, and the atmospheric air pressure is 0.1 MPa (see Table 8-2 for the conversion factor between mmol m^{-3} and μmol mol^{-1}).

a 24-hour period can be 20% of gross photosynthesis for a rapidly growing plant community and can increase to over 50% as the community matures. For certain climax communities, respiration can become nearly 100% of gross photosynthesis. When considered over a growing season for a crop, respiration for an entire plant is usually 30 to 50% of gross photosynthesis.

We will next estimate the decrease in CO_2 concentration that might occur in a 2-m-tall corn crop at night. For purposes of calculation, we will assume that J_{CO_2} vertically upward increases from 1 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1} near the ground to 4 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1} at the top of the corn crop and that the lower wind speeds at night lead to somewhat higher resistances than occur during the daytime (Fig. 9-8 versus Table 9-1). Using Equation 9.4 ($\Delta c_{CO_2}^{ta} = J_{CO_2} r_{CO_2}^{ta}$), the drop in CO_2 concentration from the ground to the top of the canopy is 0.40 + 0.16 + 0.06 or 0.62 mmol m^{-3}, which corresponds to 15 μmol CO_2 mol^{-1} at 20°C (Fig. 9-8; conversion factor in Table 8-2). The resistance of the first 30 m of turbulent air above the plants might be 50 s m^{-1} at night (compare the lower value of 30 s m^{-1} during the daytime that we used earlier, which reflects the higher daytime wind speeds). If we let the total CO_2 flux density from the canopy be 4 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1}, then $\Delta c_{CO_2}^{ta}$ for the first 30 m above the canopy would be 0.20 mmol m^{-3}, which corresponds to 5 μmol CO_2 mol^{-1}. Therefore, assuming that $N_{CO_2}^{ta}$ is 400 μmol mol^{-1} at 30 m up in the turbulent air, the CO_2 mole fraction at night would be 405 μmol mol^{-1} at the top of the canopy and 420 μmol mol^{-1} at the soil surface (Fig. 9-8).

9.3. Water Movement in Soil

The water that moves upward through a plant community comes from the soil. In that regard, soils vary tremendously in their physical properties, such as the size of individual soil particles, which affects the ease of water movement within the soil. In a sandy soil many particles are over 1 mm in diameter, but in a clayey soil most particles are less than 2 μm in diameter. In particular, "clay" refers to particles less than 2 μm across, "silt" to particle sizes from 2 to 50 μm, and "sand" to larger particles up to 2 mm across; after removing even larger particles, loosely termed "gravel," the particle size distribution determines the soil textural class; for example, "loam" is about 20% clay, 40% silt, and 40% sand by mass (see Footnote 4, Chapter 7). Small soil particles have a much greater surface area (including area exposed within the crystal lattices) per unit mass than do large particles. Sand, for example, can have less than 1 m^2 of surface area/g, whereas most clays have 100 to 1000 m^2 of surface area/g. Most soil minerals are aluminosilicates, having negatively charged surfaces that act as Donnan phases (see Chapter 3, Section 3.2F) with the mobile cations in the adjacent soil water. Because of their large surface areas per unit mass, clays dominate soil ion exchange properties, which refer to the ability of the soil particles to bind cations and anions. For example, the clay soil montmorillonite has about 700 m^2 of surface area/g and can hold nearly 1 mmol of monovalent cations/g (1 mol/kg). Nutrient concentrations vary tremendously with soil type and

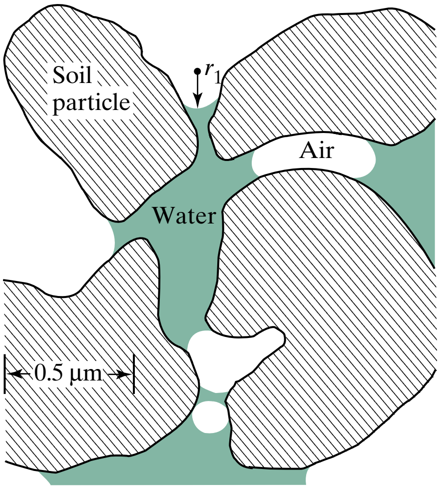


Figure 9-9. Schematic indication of the gas, liquid, and solid phases in a soil. The radii of curvature at the air–water interfaces quantitatively affect the negative hydrostatic pressures or tensions in the liquid phase.

water content, which affects the soil ion exchange capacity; for moist agricultural soil, phosphate can be about 2 μM and K^+ and NO_3^- about 2 mM (Ca^{2+}, Mg^{2+}, Na^+, and Cl^- can be even higher in concentration).

The irregularly shaped pores between soil particles contain both air and water (Fig. 9-9). The soil pores, or voids, vary from just under 40% to about 60% of the soil by volume. Thus a soil whose pores are completely filled with water contains 40 to 60% water by volume. In the vicinity of most roots, moist soil contains 8 to 30% water by volume; the rest of the pore space is filled with air. Therefore, the pores provide many air–liquid interfaces (Fig. 9-9) where surface tension effects can lead to a negative hydrostatic pressure in the soil water (Chapter 2, Sections 2.2G and 2.4E). Such a negative P is generally the main contributor to the water potential in the soil, especially as the soil dries. The thermal properties of soil are discussed in Chapter 7 (Section 7.5), so here we focus on soil water relations.

9.3A. Soil Water Potential

As just indicated, the many air–liquid interfaces in the soil (Fig. 9-9) are usually the predominant influences on the soil water potential (see Chapter 2, Section 2.2H for comments on water potential, $\Psi = P - \Pi + \rho_w gh$, Eq. 2.13a). The soil water also contains dissolved solutes, which generally lead to an osmotic pressure (Π^{soil}) of 0.01 to 0.2 MPa for moist soil; the magnitude of Π^{soil} depends on the water content of the soil, which varies greatly. Because of the relatively low osmotic pressures in wet soil, we will often refer to the soil solution as water. In contrast to the generally small values for Π^{soil}, the many interfaces present in the small soil pores can lead to extremely negative hydrostatic pressures as the soil dries. A day or so after being saturated by rainfall, a wet clayey soil might retain 40% water by

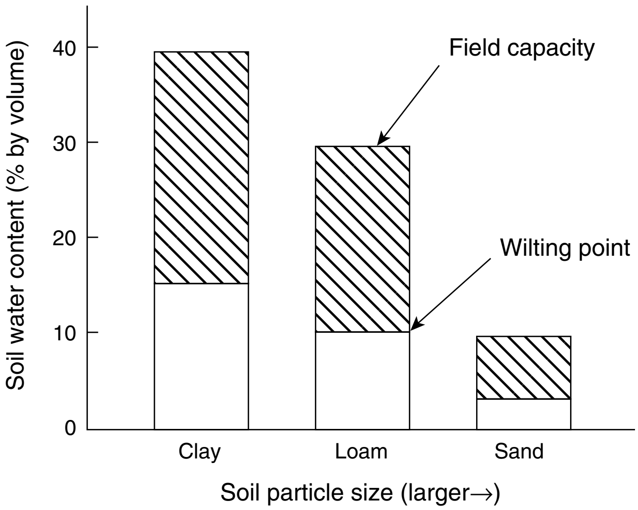


Figure 9-10. Soil water content at field capacity (essentially the maximum amount of water that the soil can hold) and the wilting point ($\Psi^{soil} \approx -1.5$ MPa) for annual crops growing in three soil types. Average soil particle size increases from clay to loam to sand. The hatched areas indicate the water available to the plants.

volume ("field capacity") and have a soil water potential (Ψ^{soil}) of -0.01 MPa, whereas permanent wilting from which many crops will not recover occurs when Ψ^{soil} is about -1.5 MPa and the volumetric water content of the clayey soil is 15% (Fig. 9-10). Field capacity, which is the maximum water-holding ability of the soil after surface water has drained away, and permanent wilting of plants occur at about 30% and 10% water by volume, respectively, for loam, but only 10% and 3%, respectively, for sand (Fig. 9-10), which because of its large pores drains very readily.

If the arc formed by the intersection of a surface and a plane perpendicular to it is continued around to form a circle, the radius of the circle is the radius of curvature of the surface, r. A slightly curved surface has a large r, and r becomes infinite if the surface is flat in a particular direction. By convention, r is positive for a concave surface as viewed from the air side (see r_1 in Fig. 9-9) and is negative for a convex surface. For instance, the surfaces of the air–water interfaces in the pores between the soil particles are usually concave when viewed from the air side, just as for wettable capillaries (see Figs. 2-3 and 2-4). However, the surfaces generally are not spherical or otherwise regularly shaped (the same situation applies to the air–liquid interfaces in cell wall pores). We can nevertheless define two principal radii of curvature for a surface. Let us designate these radii, which occur in planes perpendicular to each other and to the liquid surface, by r_1 and r_2 (in Fig. 9-9, the arc for r_1 is in the plane of the figure, and the arc for r_2 is in a plane perpendicular to the page; the two arcs cross at a single point in the air–water interface). The hydrostatic pressure in the soil water then is

$$P = -\sigma\left(\frac{1}{r_1} + \frac{1}{r_2}\right) \tag{9.6}$$

where σ is the surface tension at an air–liquid interface [to connect Eq. 9.6 with Eq. 2.25 ($P = -2\sigma \cos \alpha / r$, where r is the radius of the capillary), note

that for a cylindrical capillary the two principal radii of the surface are the same ($r_1 = r_2$), and hence the factor ($1/r_1 + 1/r_2$) is $2/r_1$, which equals $2 \cos \alpha / r$]. The negative hydrostatic pressure or positive tension described by Equation 9.6 that results from the presence of air–water interfaces in soil is often called the *soil matric potential* (Chapter 2, Section 2.2G). Equation 9.6 was independently derived by Thomas Young and by Pierre Laplace in 1805 and is sometimes called the Young–Laplace equation.

Instead of being concave, the water surface extending between adjacent soil particles may assume a semicylindrical shape, i.e., like a trough or channel. One of the radii of curvature then becomes infinite; for example, r_2 may be infinite ($= \infty$); in such a case, the pressure is $-\sigma/r_1$ by Equation 9.6. If the air–liquid surface is convex when viewed from the air side, the radii are negative; we would then have a positive hydrostatic pressure in the water (see Eq. 9.6). In the intermediate case—one radius positive and one radius negative (a so-called "saddle-shaped" surface)—whether the pressure is positive or negative depends on the relative sizes of the two radii of curvature.

We now estimate the hydrostatic pressure in the soil water within a wedge-shaped crevice between two adjacent soil particles, as is illustrated at the top of Figure 9-9. We will assume that the air–liquid surface is cylindrical, so r_2 is equal to ∞, and that r_1 is 0.1 µm. Letting σ be 0.0728 Pa m, the value for water at 20°C (see Appendix I), by Equation 9.6 the hydrostatic pressure is

$$P = -\frac{(0.0728\ \text{Pa m})}{(1 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{m})} = -7 \times 10^5\ \text{Pa} = -0.7\ \text{MPa}$$

As the amount of soil water decreases, the air–water surface retreats into the crevice between the particles, the radius of curvature decreases, and the pressure accordingly becomes more negative. Because Ψ^{soil} is equal to $P^{\text{soil}} - \Pi^{\text{soil}} + \rho_w gh$ (Eq. 2.13a), the soil water potential also becomes more negative as water is lost from such crevices but is retained in finer ones.

9.3B. Darcy's Law

Henri Darcy in 1856 recognized that the flow of water through soil is driven by a gradient in hydrostatic pressure. We can represent this relation, known as Darcy's law, by the following expression:

$$J_V = -L^{\text{soil}} \frac{\partial P^{\text{soil}}}{\partial x} \tag{9.7}$$

where J_V is the volume of solution crossing unit area in unit time and L^{soil} is the soil hydraulic conductivity coefficient [Footnote 6, Chapter 2, indicates that J_{V_w}, which is essentially the same as J_V, equals the fractional water content by volume (θ) times the mean water velocity v_w, where θ can be much less than 1 for soils (e.g., Fig. 9-9).].

Although Equation 9.7 is in a familiar form (flux density equals a proportionality coefficient times a force), we have used $-\partial P^{\text{soil}}/\partial x$ instead of the possibly more general force, $-\partial \Psi^{\text{soil}}/\partial x$ ($\Psi^{\text{soil}} = P^{\text{soil}} - \Pi^{\text{soil}} + \rho_w gh$; Eq. 2.13a). In Chapter 3 (Section 3.5C) we derived an expression for J_V that incorporated a reflection coefficient, σ, which describes the relative

permeability of a barrier to solutes compared to water: $J_V = L_P(\Delta P - \sigma\Delta\Pi)$ (Eq. 3.39). When σ is zero, as occurs for a porous barrier such as soil, $\Delta\Pi$ does not lead to a volume flux density. Hence, we do not expect $\partial\Pi^{soil}/\partial x$ to influence the movement of water in the soil, and it is not included in Darcy's law. Because $\partial(\rho_w gh)/\partial x$ is not incorporated into Equation 9.7, the indicated form of Darcy's law applies only to horizontal flow in the soil ($\partial h/\partial x = 0$ when x is in the horizontal direction). Actually, $\rho_w g$ is only 0.01 MPa m^{-1} (see Appendix I), so changes of $\rho_w gh$ in the vicinity of a root are relatively small. On the other hand, for downward percolation of water over appreciable distances into the soil, P^{soil} in Equation 9.7 should be replaced by $P^{soil} + \rho_w gh$. In fact, for drainage of very wet soil, the gravitational term can be the dominant factor in such a formulation of Darcy's law.

9.3C. Soil Hydraulic Conductivity Coefficient

L^{soil} in Equation 9.7 has different units than do $L_P[J_V = L_P(\Delta P - \sigma\Delta\Pi)$, Eq. 3.39] or $L_w[J_{V_w} = L_w(\Psi^o - \Psi^i)$, Eq. 2.26]. L_P and L_w represent volume flux densities/pressure drop (e.g., m s^{-1} Pa^{-1}); L^{soil} has units of volume flux density/pressure gradient [e.g., (m s^{-1})/(Pa m^{-1}), or m^2 s^{-1} Pa^{-1}]. We can use other self-consistent sets of units for Darcy's law; indeed, the soil hydraulic conductivity coefficient is expressed in many different ways in the literature.[2]

The soil hydraulic conductivity coefficient depends on the geometry of the pores in the soil. Ignoring certain surface effects, the hydraulic conductivity coefficient for geometrically similar pore shapes is approximately proportional to the square of the pore width. However, the pores are so complex in shape that, in general, we cannot directly calculate L^{soil}. As soil dries, its water potential decreases and P^{soil} becomes more negative. When P^{soil} decreases below the minimum hydrostatic pressure that can occur in fairly large pores, water flows out of them, but water will remain in pores that have smaller dimensions and therefore can have even more negative pressures [see Eq. 9.6; $P = -\sigma(1/r_1 + 1/r_2)$]. Not only is the higher conductivity of the larger pores lost but also the remaining pathway for water flow becomes more tortuous, so L^{soil} decreases as the soil dries. The soil hydraulic conductivity coefficient can be 1×10^{-17} m^2 s^{-1} Pa^{-1} or lower for a dry nonporous soil and 1×10^{-13} m^2 s^{-1} Pa^{-1} or higher for a wet porous one. In particular, L^{soil} is usually 10^{-12} to 10^{-10} m^2 s^{-1} Pa^{-1} for a water-saturated relatively porous clay and 10^{-8} to 10^{-7} m^2 s^{-1} Pa^{-1} for a water-saturated sandy soil.

The ground is often covered by a dry crust in which the soil hydraulic conductivity coefficient is low. Specifically, L^{soil} may average 1×10^{-16} m^2 s^{-1} Pa^{-1} in the upper 5 mm of the soil (Fig. 9-11). If P^{soil} is -1.8 MPa near

2. Instead of using $-\partial P/\partial x$ [or $-\partial(P + \rho_w gh)/\partial x$], most soil literature expresses the force in Darcy's law as the negative gradient in the hydraulic head of water, the latter being the length of a vertical column of water yielding the same pressure, in which case the units for L^{soil} are the same as those for J_V. Because a 1-m height of water exerts a pressure of $\rho_w g \times 1$ m or 0.00979 MPa (= 9.79×10^3 Pa) at sea level, 45° latitude, and 20°C (see Appendix I), an L^{soil} of 10^{-10} m^2 s^{-1} Pa^{-1} corresponds to one of 9.79×10^{-7} m s^{-1} in the soil literature.

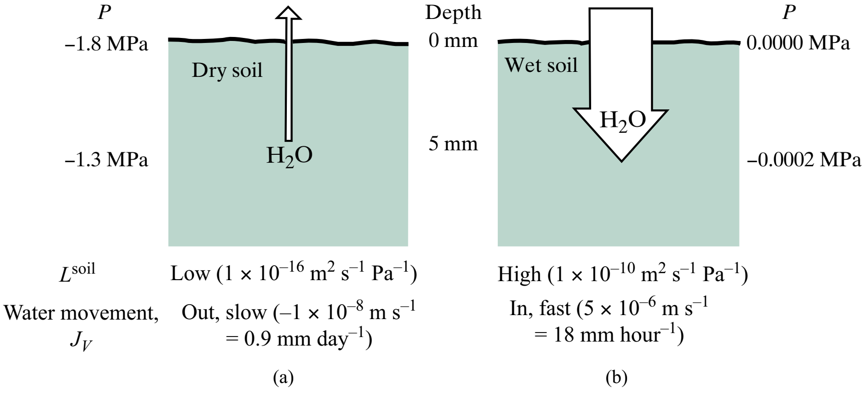


Figure 9-11. Valve-like properties of the upper layer of a loamy soil under dry versus wet conditions: (a) a dry crust and (b) while being wet by rain. Water is lost gradually across the dry crust but readily enters the wet soil. Water movement is also influenced by gravity, the relevant component of the water potential ($\rho_w gh$) decreasing by 0.01 MPa per meter depth in the soil. For a depth of 5 mm, the gravitational contribution decreases Ψ by 0.00005 MPa compared to the soil surface, which increases the influx rate by 25% for the wet condition compared to considering only ΔP, as is done here (the influence of the 0.00005 MPa gravitational component is negligible for the dry condition).

the surface and −1.3 MPa at 5 mm beneath it (Fig. 9-11), then by Darcy's law (Eq. 9.7) the volume flux density of water is

$$J_V = -(1 \times 10^{-16}\ \text{m}^2\ \text{s}^{-1}\ \text{Pa}^{-1})\left[\frac{(-1.8 \times 10^6\ \text{Pa}) - (-1.3 \times 10^6\ \text{Pa})}{(5 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m})}\right]$$
$$= 1 \times 10^{-8}\ \text{m s}^{-1} \quad (0.9\ \text{mm day}^{-1})$$

This volumetric water flux density directed upward at the soil surface equals $(1 \times 10^{-8}\ \text{m}^3\ \text{m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1})(1\ \text{mol}/18 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m}^3)$, or $0.6 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{mol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1}$ (= 0.6 mmol m^{-2} s^{-1}). When discussing water vapor movement in the previous section, we indicated that J_{wv} emanating from a moist shaded soil is usually 0.2 to 1.0 mmol m^{-2} s^{-1}, so our calculated flux density is consistent with the range of measured values. The calculation also indicates that a fairly large gradient in hydrostatic pressure can exist near the soil surface.

During a rainstorm, the upper part of the soil can become nearly saturated with water. As a result, L^{soil} there might increase 10^6-fold, becoming 1×10^{-10} m^2 s^{-1} Pa^{-1} (Fig. 9-11). This facilitates the entry or infiltration of water into the soil, which initially can have a volume flux density of about 5×10^{-6} m s^{-1}. Such an infiltration rate, which equals an 18 mm depth of water per hour, is maintained for only short times, because within minutes for a clay and after an hour or so for a sandy soil, the upper part of the soil becomes saturated with water and the infiltration rate decreases. In any case, we note that the uppermost layer or crust acts somewhat like a valve, retarding the outward movement of water when the soil is fairly dry (low L^{soil}) but promoting the infiltration of water upon moistening (high L^{soil}), as indicated in Figure 9-11.

Besides moving as a liquid, water can also move as a vapor in the soil. Because water is continually evaporating from and condensing onto the

many air–liquid interfaces in the soil (Fig. 9-9), such movement can be relatively important, especially for dry soils in which the liquid phases are discontinuous. The saturation value for water vapor partial pressure or concentration increases nearly exponentially with increasing temperature (see Fig. 8-6). Because the air between the soil particles generally is nearly saturated with water vapor (except near the soil surface), the amount of water vapor in the soil air thus increases rapidly with soil temperature. Consequently, the movement of water in the form of vapor tends to be greater at higher soil temperatures.

9.3D. Fluxes for Cylindrical Symmetry

Although we have been mainly considering one-dimensional cases in Cartesian coordinates, the flow of soil water toward a root may be more appropriately described using cylindrical coordinates because the length of a root is much greater than its diameter. We will restrict our attention to the steady-state condition in which the fluxes do not change with time. Also, we will consider the cylindrically symmetric case for which the fluxes and the forces depend only on the radial distance r from the axis of the cylinder and not on any angle around it or location along its axis (Fig. 9-12).

For a cylindrical surface of length l along the axis and of area $2\pi rl$, the total volume of solution crossing per unit time is $J_V 2\pi rl$, where J_V is the volume flux density directed radially at a distance r from the axis of the cylinder. In the steady state, $J_V 2\pi rl$ is constant, so the magnitude of the flux density depends inversely on the radial distance; that is, we have concentric cylinders centered on the root axis that have increasing water flux densities as we get closer to the root surface and the area

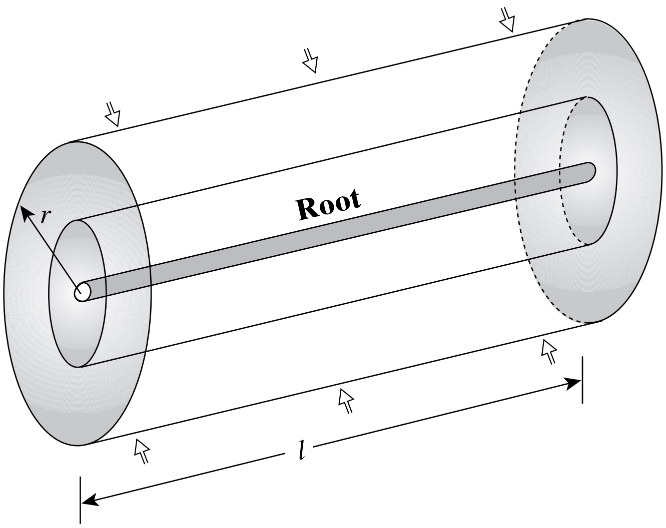


Figure 9-12. Cylindrically symmetric flow of soil water toward a root (flow arrows indicated only for outermost cylinder). The volume flux density, J_V, at the surface of each concentric cylinder times the cylinder surface area ($2\pi r \times l$) is constant in the steady state, so J_V then depends inversely on r, the radial distance from the root axis.

involved becomes less (Fig. 9-12). When L^{soil} is constant, we can represent the flux density for the cylindrically symmetric case by

$$J_V = \frac{1}{r}\frac{L^{\text{soil}}(P_a - P_b)}{\ln(r_a/r_b)} \tag{9.8}$$

where P_a is the hydrostatic pressure at a distance r_a from the axis of the cylinder, and P_b is the value at r_b. J_V is positive when the net flux density is directed into a root, as occurs when the hydrostatic pressure is higher $(P_a > P_b)$ the further we are from the root $(r_a > r_b)$. Equation 9.8 represents a general form for steady-state cases with cylindrical symmetry; for example, Fick's first law then is $J_j = (1/r)D_j(c_j^a - c_j^b)/\ln(r_a/r_b)$, and Equation 7.15 gives the heat flux density for cylindrical symmetry (see Table 9-2).

The uptake of water by a young root 1 mm in diameter ($r = 0.5 \times 10^{-3}$ m) is usually 1×10^{-5} to 5×10^{-5} $\text{m}^3\ \text{day}^{-1}$ per meter of root length (0.1–0.5 $\text{cm}^3\ \text{day}^{-1}$ per centimeter of length). This uptake occurs over a root surface area of $2\pi rl$, so the volume flux density of water at the root surface for a moderate water uptake rate of 3×10^{-5} $\text{m}^3\ \text{day}^{-1}$ per meter of root length is

$$\begin{aligned} J_V &= \frac{(3 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{m}^3\ \text{day}^{-1})}{(8.64 \times 10^4\ \text{s day}^{-1})[(2\pi)(0.5 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m})(1\ \text{m})]} \\ &= 1.1 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{m s}^{-1} \end{aligned}$$

The influx of water is enhanced by root hairs, which protrude from the epidermal cells (see Fig. 1-4). They are often about 12 μm in diameter, up to 1 mm long, and usually vary in frequency from 0.5 to 50 per mm^2. Compared to water entry into young roots, J_V can be only 1 to 5% as much for older roots, because their outer surfaces lack root hairs and generally become extensively cutinized and suberized.

For representative root spacing in a soil, water may move toward a root over a radial distance of about 10 mm. We next estimate the decrease in hydrostatic pressure that might occur over this interval. We will assume that Ψ^{soil} at an r_a of 10.5 mm is -0.3 MPa, made up of an osmotic pressure of 0.1 MPa and a P_a^{soil} of -0.2 MPa ($\Psi = P - \Pi + \rho_w gh$, Eq. 2.13a; the gravitational contribution is generally small and will be ignored adjacent to roots). We will let L^{soil} be $1 \times 10^{-15}\ \text{m}^2\ \text{s}^{-1}\ \text{Pa}^{-1}$, as might apply to a loam of

Table 9-2. Fluxes for Cylindrical and Spherical Symmetry, Emphasizing the Basic Form and the Geometrical Aspects[a]

Symmetry	Force/flux relationship	Examples
Cylindrical	$\text{Flux} = \dfrac{\text{Conductance} \times \text{Force}}{r\ln[(r + \Delta r)/r]}$	Fick's first law (Section 9.3D), Heat flux density (Eq. 7.15), Water flux density (Eq. 9.8)
Spherical	$\text{Flux} = \dfrac{(r + \Delta r)\text{Conductance} \times \text{Force}}{r\Delta r}$	Fick's first law (Section 9.3E), Heat flux density (Eq. 7.16), Water flux density (Eq. 9.9)

[a]Parameters are assumed to vary only in the radial direction (not with time, angle, or position along a cylinder or around a sphere). The flux densities are at the surface of the cylinder or the sphere (r = radius, Δr = radial distance away from the surface). See Footnote 2, Chapter 7, for a comment indicating that the geometrical part in both cases reduces to $1/\Delta r$ when $\Delta r \ll r$.

moderately low water content, and we will suppose that J_V at the surface of a root 1 mm in diameter (i.e., r_b is 0.5 mm) is 1.1×10^{-7} m s^{-1}. Using Equation 9.8, we calculate that the hydrostatic pressure near the root surface is

$$\begin{aligned} P_b^{\text{soil}} &= -\frac{rJ_V \ln(r_a/r_b)}{L^{\text{soil}}} + P_a^{\text{soil}} \\ &= -\frac{(0.5 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m})(1.1 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{m s}^{-1})\ln(10.5\ \text{mm}/0.5\ \text{mm})}{(1 \times 10^{-15}\ \text{m}^2\ \text{s}^{-1}\text{Pa}^{-1})} - 0.2\ \text{MPa} \\ &= -0.4\ \text{MPa} \end{aligned}$$

Thus the hydrostatic pressure decreases by 0.2 MPa across a distance of 10 mm in the soil next to the root. Assuming that the solute content of the soil water does not change appreciably over this interval, Π_b^{soil} is 0.1 MPa (the same as Π_a^{soil}), and thus Ψ_b^{soil} adjacent to the root is -0.4 MPa $-$ 0.1 MPa, or -0.5 MPa (see Table 9-3). As the soil dries, L^{soil} decreases; therefore, the decreases in hydrostatic pressure and in water potential adjacent to a root must then become larger to maintain a given volume flux density of solution toward a root.

9.3E. Fluxes for Spherical Symmetry

Sometimes the fluxes of water in the soil toward plant parts can approximate spherical symmetry. For instance, water movement can occur radially over a 10-mm interval toward a seed or a recently initiated root while it is still short. [For some roots most water and nutrient uptake apparently takes place over the region containing the root hairs, which is proximal to the elongation region (see Fig. 1-4) and distal to where the periderm begins; this region can be modeled assuming cylindrical symmetry.] The external cell layers of the periderm have suberin in their cell walls, which greatly limits water uptake. However, *lenticels*, consisting of porous aggregations of cells facilitating gas exchange, occur in the suberized regions (lenticels also occur on the surface of stems). Lenticels and other interruptions of the suberized periderm can act as local sites toward which the flux of water converges from all directions. In such a case, the water movement from the surrounding soil toward the root can also be approximately spherically symmetric.

For spherical symmetry we note that $J_V 4\pi r^2$ is constant in the steady state, where $4\pi r^2$ is the area of a sphere. As concentric spherical shells of water thus move toward the sphere, the flux density increases inversely as r^2. We thus obtain the following steady-state relation describing the volume flux density J_V at distance r from the center of a sphere when J_V varies only in the radial direction and L^{soil} is constant:

$$J_V = \frac{1}{r^2}\left(\frac{r_a r_b}{r_a - r_b}\right) L^{\text{soil}}(P_a - P_b) \tag{9.9}$$

Equation 9.9 is similar to Equation 7.16 [$J_H^C = (r + \delta^{\text{bl}})K^{\text{air}}(T^{\text{surf}} - T^{\text{ta}})/(r\delta^{\text{bl}})$] describing the heat flux density across an air boundary layer for spherical symmetry ($r_a = r + \delta^{\text{bl}}$ and $r_b = r$). Also, Fick's first law for the flux density of species j at the surface of the sphere is then $J_j = [(r + \Delta r)/(r\Delta r)]D_j\Delta c_j$, where Δr is the radial distance away from the surface across which Δc_j occurs (Table 9-2).

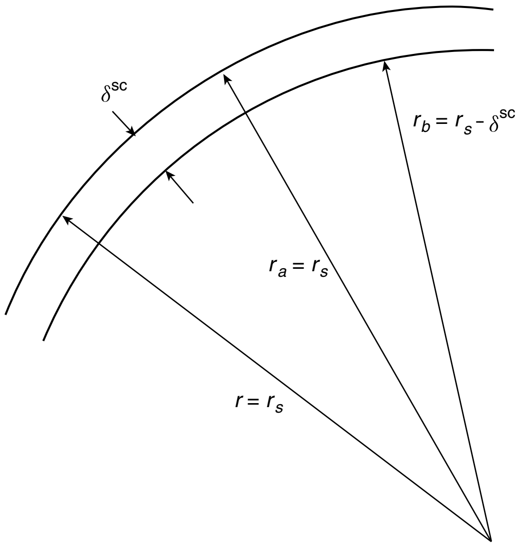


Figure 9-13. Radii in Equations 9-9 and 9-10 for spherical symmetry, as applied to a seed of radius r_s having a relatively thin seed coat ($\delta^{sc} \ll r_s$).

A steady state is often not achieved in soils, so a "steady rate" is sometimes used, where the rate of volumetric water depletion is constant, leading to relations considerably more complicated than are Equations 9.8 and 9.9.[3] We note that the equations describing water flow in a soil for the one-dimensional case (Eq. 9.7), for cylindrical symmetry (Eq. 9.8), and for spherical symmetry (Eq. 9.9) all indicate that the volume flux density of water is proportional to L^{soil} times a difference in hydrostatic pressure (see Table 9-2).

During germination the volume flux density of water into a seed is often limited by a seed coat (*testa*) of thickness δ^{sc} (Fig. 9-13). The seed coat is a complex, multilayered, hard, rather impervious tissue that is relatively thin compared to the radius of the seed. For the volume flux density at the seed surface ($r = r_s$, $r_a = r_s$, and $r_b = r_s - \delta^{sc}$; Fig. 9-13), Equation 9.9 becomes

$$\begin{aligned} J_V &= \frac{1}{r_s^2}\frac{(r_s)(r_s - \delta^{sc})}{[r_s - (r_s - \delta^{sc})]} L^{sc}\Delta P^{sc} \\ &= \frac{r_s - \delta^{sc}}{r_s}\frac{L^{sc}}{\delta^{sc}}\Delta P^{sc} \\ &\cong \frac{L^{sc}}{\delta^{sc}}\Delta P^{sc} \end{aligned} \tag{9.10}$$

3. In a steady state, the water content of the soil does not change with time, whereas for a steady-rate situation the rate of change is constant. In the general time-dependent case, a relation similar to $\frac{\partial c_j}{\partial t} = -\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(-D_j\frac{\partial c_j}{\partial x}\right)$ (Eq. 1.4), but in the proper coordinate system, must be satisfied to describe the water flow in the soil for cylindrical or spherical symmetry; c_j is replaced by the soil volumetric water content, and D_j is replaced by a quantity analogous to L^{soil} that varies with water content and hence location in the soil.

where L^{sc} is the hydraulic conductivity coefficient of a seed coat of thickness δ^{sc}, and the bottom line incorporates the supposition that δ^{sc} is much less than r_s. Equation 9.10 indicates that, when the region of interest is thin compared to the radial distance (Fig. 9-13), the flow can be approximated by an equation appropriate for a one-dimensional movement, such as across a seed coat of conductance L^{sc}/δ^{sc} (see Eq. 8.1b). [Analogously, the close positioning of the cell wall, the plasma membrane, and the chloroplasts (Fig. 8-11) means that diffusion into the mesophyll cells can also be considered a one-dimensional process.] Usually ΔP^{sc} in Equation 9.10 is replaced by $\Delta\Psi^{sc}$ because osmotic pressures can also influence water uptake by seeds.

As we have indicated for L^{soil}, L^{sc} depends on water content, increasing more than 10^6-fold upon water uptake by a dry seed and subsequent rupture of the seed coat. L^{sc} then approaches values found for the L^{soil} of a moist soil (Shaykewich and Williams, 1971). When dry, seeds can have a very negative water potential, e.g., −100 to −200 MPa. As seeds imbibe water, their internal water potential rises; germination is initiated only when Ψ^{soil} and hence Ψ^{seed} are above about −1.0 MPa. In actuality, water uptake is not uniform over the whole seed surface, initially being higher near the micropyle (a small opening in the integument of an ovule through which the pollen tube enters and which remains as a minute pore in the testa).

9.4. Water Movement in the Xylem and the Phloem

Under usual conditions, essentially all of the water entering a land plant comes from the soil by way of the roots. The water is conducted to other parts of the plant, mainly in the xylem. To reach the xylem in the mature part of a root, water must cross the root epidermis, the cortex, and then the endodermis (see Fig. 1-4). Water flow in the xylem depends on the gradient in hydrostatic pressure. Flow in the phloem likewise depends on $\partial P/\partial x$, although osmotic pressures are also important for interpreting water movement in this other "circulatory" system. The divisions and subdivisions of the vascular tissue in a leaf generally result in individual mesophyll cells being no more than three or four cells away from the xylem or the phloem. This proximity facilitates the movement of photosynthetic products into the phloem; such "loading" at a "source" is necessary for the distribution of sugars such as sucrose to "sinks" located in different parts of a plant where the sugars are used or stored.

9.4A. Root Tissues

Figure 1-4 presents longitudinal and cross-sectional views near the tip of a root, indicating the types of cells that can act as barriers to flow. Water may fairly easily traverse the single cell layer of the root *epidermis* to reach the *cortex* (see Chapter 1, Section 1.1D). The root cortex often consists of 5 to 10 cell layers, with the cytoplasm of adjacent cells being continuous because of plasmodesmata (Fig. 1-14). The collective protoplasm of interconnected cells is referred to as the *symplasm* (see Chapter 1, Section 1.5B). In the

symplasm, permeability barriers in the form of plasma membranes and cell walls do not have to be surmounted for diffusion to occur from cell to cell, which facilitates the movement of water and solutes across the cortex. Much of the water flow across the root cortex occurs in an alternative pathway, the cell walls, which form the *apoplast*.

Roots of most woody and some herbaceous plants have *mycorrhizal* associations with fungi. The fungal hyphae invade the cortical region of the young roots and can extend 15 mm or more away from the root surface. The relation is mutualistic because the fungus obtains organic matter from the plant and in return increases the effective area of contact between roots and soil particles. The hyphae can remain active for older roots whose outer surface has become suberized and hence is less conductive. The fungus thus increases the availability of certain nutrients such as zinc, copper, and especially phosphate to the host plant. Water can also enter a root via the fungal hyphae.

Along that part of a root where cells have differentiated but the roots have not thickened much due to secondary conducting tissue, an *endodermis* occurs inside the cortex (see Fig. 1-4). At the endodermis, the cell wall pathway for water movement is blocked by the *Casparian strip*, as realized by Robert Caspary in 1865. This is a continuous hydrophobic band around the radial walls of the endodermal cells that blocks the apoplastic pathway along which water and solutes could have crossed the endodermal layer; that is, the Casparian strip blocks the cell walls between adjacent endodermal cells (Fig. 1-4). The Casparian strip is impregnated with suberin (a polymer of fatty acids) and lignin. Besides the primary cell wall, suberin and lignin are also deposited in the adjacent secondary cell wall (which often becomes quite thick) and across the middle lamella [see Chapter 1, Section 1.5 (e.g., Fig. 1-13) for a discussion of cell wall structure]. Water and ions therefore cannot flow across the endodermal cells in their cell walls but rather must move through their cytoplasm. Thus the endodermis, with its Casparian strip, regulates the passage of solutes and water from the root cortex to the root xylem. Inside the endodermis is a layer of parenchyma cells known as the *pericycle*, which surrounds the vascular tissue containing the xylem and the phloem (see Fig. 1-4). During water movement through a plant accompanying transpiration, the hydrostatic pressure in the root xylem is reduced and can become quite negative. This decreases the water potential ($\Psi = P - \Pi + \rho_w gh$; Eq. 2.13a) in the xylem and promotes water movement from the soil down a water potential gradient to the root xylem.

9.4B. Xylem

Before discussing the characteristics of flow in the xylem, we will briefly review some of its anatomical features [see Chapter 1, Section 1.1C (e.g., Fig. 1-3) for an introduction to the xylem]. In general, the conducting xylem elements have thick, lignified secondary cell walls and contain no protoplasts. Indeed, the xylem cells serve their special function of providing the plant with a low-resistance conduit for water flow only when they are dead! Because these conducting cells are essentially membraneless hollow pipes, water in

their lumens is continuous with water in the cell wall interstices (Fig. 1-13), where surface tension at the air–water interfaces generally leads to negative hydrostatic pressures (see the Young–Laplace equation, Eq. 9.6); P in the xylem is therefore negative during periods of substantial transpiration.

Two types of conducting cells are distinguished in the xylem: the *vessel members* (also called vessel elements; found in angiosperms) and the phylogenetically more primitive *tracheids* (in angiosperms, gymnosperms, and the less advanced vascular plants). Tracheids typically are tapered at their ends, whereas the generally shorter and broader vessel members often abut each other with blunt ends (Fig. 1-3). The end cell walls of the vessel members are perforated, so the vessel members arranged end to end form a continuous tube called a *vessel*. The end cell wall of a vessel member bearing the holes is referred to as a *perforation plate*; a simple perforation plate (see Fig. 1-3) essentially eliminates the end walls between the individual members in a vessel. Although xylem elements vary considerably in their widths (from about 8 μm up to 500 μm), we will represent them by cylinders with radii of 20 μm for purposes of calculation. Conducting cells of the xylem usually range in length from 1 to 10 mm for tracheids and from 0.2 to 3 mm for vessel members; vessels vary greatly in length, even within the same plant, ranging from about 10 mm to 10 m.

Besides vessel members and tracheids, parenchyma cells and fibers also occur in the xylem (see Fig. 1-3). Xylem fibers, which contribute to the structural support of a plant, are long thin cells with lignified cell walls; they are generally devoid of protoplasts at maturity but are nonconducting. The living parenchyma cells in the xylem are important for the storage of carbohydrates and for the lateral movement of water and solutes into and out of the conducting cells.

9.4C. Poiseuille's Law

To describe fluid movement in the xylem quantitatively, we need to relate the flow to the driving force causing the motion. For cylindrical tubes, an appropriate relationship was determined experimentally by Gotthilf Hagen in 1839 and independently by Jan Poiseuille in 1840. They found that the volume of fluid moving in unit time along a cylinder is proportional to the fourth power of its radius and that the movement depends linearly on the drop in hydrostatic pressure. Hans Wiedemann in 1856 showed that this rate of volume movement per tube could be represented as follows:

$$\text{Volume flow rate per tube} = -\frac{\pi r^4}{8\eta}\frac{\partial P}{\partial x} \tag{9.11a}$$

where r is the cylinder radius, η is the solution viscosity, and $-\partial P/\partial x$ is the negative gradient of the hydrostatic pressure. Throughout this text we have been concerned with the volume flowing per unit time and area, J_V. By dividing the volume flow rate in a cylindrical tube of radius r (Eq. 9.11a) by the tube area, πr^2, we find that J_V is

$$J_V = -\frac{r^2}{8\eta}\frac{\partial P}{\partial x} \tag{9.11b}$$

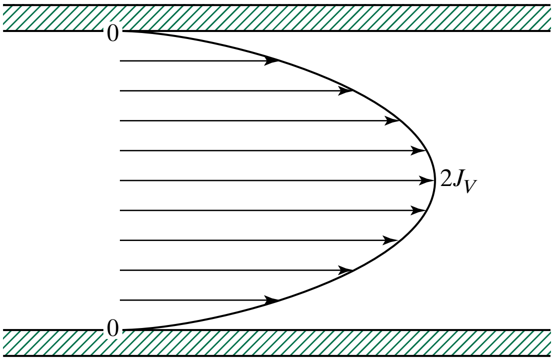


Figure 9-14. Parabolic variation for speed of fluid flow across a cylindrical tube. Arrow lengths represent the local speed, which is maximum ($2J_V$) at the center, zero at the walls, and averages J_V over the cross-section of the tube.

The negative sign is necessary in Equation 9.11 because positive flow ($J_V > 0$) occurs in the direction of decreasing hydrostatic pressure ($\partial P/\partial x < 0$). The dimensions for the viscosity η are pressure × time, e.g., Pa s (the cgs unit, dyne cm^{-2} s, is termed a *poise*, which equals 0.1 Pa s); the viscosity of water at 20°C is 1.002×10^{-3} Pa s (values of η_w at this and other temperatures are given in Appendix I).

Equation 9.11 is usually referred to as Poiseuille's law and sometimes as the Hagen–Poiseuille law. It assumes that the fluid in the cylinder moves in layers, or laminae, with each layer gliding over the adjacent one (Fig. 9-14). Such laminar movement occurs only if the flow is slow enough to meet a criterion deduced by Osborne Reynolds in 1883. Specifically, the Reynolds number Re, which equals vd/ν (Eq. 7.19), must be less than 2000 (the mean velocity of fluid movement v equals J_V, d is the cylinder diameter, and ν is the kinematic viscosity). Otherwise, a transition to turbulent flow occurs, and Equation 9.11 is no longer valid. Due to frictional interactions, the fluid in Poiseuille (laminar) flow is stationary at the wall of the cylinder (Fig. 9-14). The speed of solution flow increases in a parabolic fashion to a maximum value in the center of the tube, where it is twice the average speed, J_V. Thus the flows in Equation 9.11 are actually the mean flows averaged over the entire cross section of cylinders of radius r (Fig. 9-14).

9.4D. Applications of Poiseuille's Law

As we have already indicated, the volume flux densities described by both Poiseuille's law [$J_V = -(r^2/8\eta)\partial P/\partial x$; Eq. 9.11b] and Darcy's law ($J_V = -L^{soil}\partial P^{soil}/\partial x$; Eq. 9.7) depend on the negative gradient of the hydrostatic pressure. Can we establish any correspondence between these two equations? If the soil pores were cylinders of radius r, all aligned in the same direction, we could have Poiseuille flow in the soil, in which case L^{soil} would equal $r^2/8\eta$—we are assuming for the moment that the pores occupy the entire soil volume. When r is 1 μm and η is 1.002×10^{-3} Pa s, we obtain

$$\frac{r^2}{8\eta} = \frac{(1 \times 10^{-6}\ \mathrm{m})^2}{(8)(1.002 \times 10^{-3}\ \mathrm{Pa\ s})} = 1.2 \times 10^{-10}\ \mathrm{m^2\ s^{-1}\ Pa^{-1}}$$

which corresponds to the L^{soil} for a very wet soil (Fig. 9-11). Actually, L^{soil} for water-saturated porous clay with average pore radii of 1 μm is about 10^{-11} m^2 s^{-1} Pa^{-1}, about 10-fold smaller than $r^2/8\eta$ calculated using the average pore radius. As a result, J_V in the soil is considerably less than for Poiseuille flow through pores of the same average radius, because (1) the soil pores are not in the shape of cylinders all aligned in the direction of the flow and (2) the pores between the soil particles occupy only about half of the soil volume.

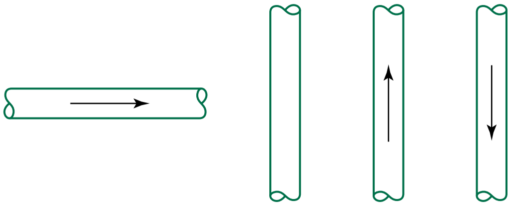
Next, we will use Poiseuille's law to estimate the pressure gradient necessary to cause a specified volume flux density in the conducting cells of the xylem.[4] The speed of sap ascent in the xylem of a transpiring tree can be about 1 mm s^{-1}, which is 3.6 m hour^{-1}. We note that υ_w equals the volume flux density of water, J_{V_w} (see Chapter 2, Section 2.4F); the average speed of the solution equals J_V, the volume flux density of the solution, which for a dilute aqueous solution such as occurs in the xylem is about the same as J_{V_w} (see Chapter 3, Section 3.5C). Thus J_V in the xylem of a transpiring tree can be 1 mm s^{-1}. For a viscosity of 1.0×10^{-3} Pa s and a xylem element with a lumen radius of 20 μm, the pressure gradient required to satisfy Equation 9.11b then is

$$\frac{\partial P}{\partial x} = -\frac{8\eta J_V}{r^2} = -\frac{(8)(1.0 \times 10^{-3}\ \mathrm{Pa\ s})(1.0 \times 10^{-3}\ \mathrm{m\ s^{-1}})}{(20 \times 10^{-6}\ \mathrm{m})^2}$$
$$= -2 \times 10^4\ \mathrm{Pa\ m^{-1}} = -0.02\ \mathrm{MPa\ m^{-1}}$$

As expected, the pressure decreases along the direction of flow (Fig. 9-15).

The estimate of –0.02 MPa m^{-1} is consistent with most experimental observations of the $\partial P/\partial x$ accompanying solution flow in horizontal xylem vessels (Fig. 9-15). However, for vertical vessels, a static hydrostatic pressure gradient of –0.01 MPa m^{-1} due to gravity exists in the absence of flow. We can appreciate this by considering a vertical column of pure water (osmotic pressure $\Pi = 0$) at equilibrium, where the water potential Ψ is $P + \rho_w gh$ (Eq. 2.13a); $\rho_w gh$ increases vertically upward, so P must decrease by the same amount for Ψ to remain unchanged, as it does at equilibrium. Because $\rho_w g$ equals 0.0098 MPa m^{-1} (see Appendix I), the additional pressure gradient caused by gravity amounts to –0.01 MPa m^{-1} (Fig. 9-15); it may be helpful to consider the analogous case in which the hydrostatic pressure increases by 0.01 MPa per meter of depth in a lake or an ocean, meaning approximately 1 atm increase per 10 m downward, a phenomenon well known to scuba divers and others. For transpiring plants, the total $\partial P/\partial x$ in the vertical sections of the xylem is often about –0.03 MPa m^{-1} (Fig. 9-15). Based on the previous calculations, this pressure gradient is sufficient to overcome

4. For application of Poiseuille's law to a complex tissue such as the xylem, care must be taken to ensure that particular vessel elements or tracheids are conducting (e.g., not blocked by embolisms), the actual radii must be determined (note the r^4 dependence in Eq. 9.11a), and corrections may be necessary for lumen shape, tracheid taper, and cell wall characteristics including pits (Calkin et al., 1986; Schulte et al., 1989a). For instance, if the lumen is elliptical with major and minor axes of a and b, respectively, then r^4 in Equation 9.11a should be replaced by $a^3b^3/(8a^2 + 8b^2)$.



J_V (mm s^{-1})	1	0	1	−1
$\frac{\partial P}{\partial x}$ (MPa m^{-1})	−0.02	−0.01	−0.03	0.01

Figure 9-15. Volume flux densities and pressure gradients in cylindrical tubes. The tube radius is 20 μm, and $\partial P/\partial x$ is calculated from Poiseuille's law (Eq. 9.11b) as modified by gravitational effects. For vertical tubes, x is considered positive upward. Arrows indicate the direction of flow.

gravity (−0.01 MPa m^{-1}) and to cause Poiseuille flow in the xylem vessels (−0.02 MPa m^{-1} is needed in the current example for which r is 20 μm).

The calculated pressure gradients refer to vessel members joined by simple perforation plates that offer little obstruction to flow (see Fig. 1-3). Gradients tend to be greater for tracheids because they are connected by numerous small pits containing locally thin regions of the cell wall. These pits can greatly restrict flow because some cell wall material must be traversed to move from one tracheid to another. For fern tracheids with small radii (less than 10 μm), the pressure drop is mainly along the lumen, reflecting the major influence of the lumen radius on Poiseuille flow, whereas for larger diameter tracheids most of the pressure drop is across the pits. In conifers about half of the pressure drop along the xylem may occur across the pits, and hence the overall $\partial P/\partial x$ is about twice as large as that calculated here for the lumen.

We have been approximating xylem vessels by cylinders that are 20 μm in radius, as might be appropriate for diffuse-porous (small-porous) trees. For ring-porous (large-porous) trees, the mean radii of xylem vessels are often about 100 μm. For a given pressure gradient, Poiseuille's law (Eq. 9.11b) indicates that xylem sap moves faster in ring-porous trees, as is indeed observed. Using our previous values for J_V and d, and ν for water at 20°C (Appendix I), the Reynolds number for the diffuse-porous case is

$$\text{Re} = \frac{J_V d}{\nu} = \frac{(1 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m s}^{-1})(40 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m})}{(1.0 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m}^2\ \text{s}^{-1})}$$
$$= 0.04$$

Such a low value indicates that no turbulence is expected. Even if d were fivefold larger and J_V were 10-fold greater, as can occur in a ring-porous tree, Re is still far less than the value of 2000 at which turbulence generally sets in.

What pressure gradient is necessary to promote a given flow through a cell wall? Because the interfibrillar spaces, or interstices, in a cell wall have diameters near 10 nm (100 Å; Fig. 1-13), we will let r be 5 nm for purposes of calculation. (Complications due to the tortuosity of the aqueous channels through the interstices will be omitted here. We will also assume that the pores occupy the entire cell wall.) For J_V equal to 1 mm s^{-1}, Equation 9.11b

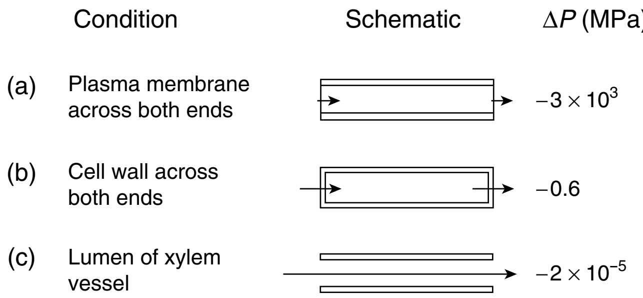


Figure 9-16. Pressure drops across a hypothetical xylem cell that is 1 mm long, 40 μm in inside diameter, and has an axial flow rate of 1 mm s^{-1}: (a) artificially surrounded by a plasma membrane, (b) artificially having a cell wall 1 μm thick across each end, and (c) realistically consisting of a hollow tube in which Poiseuille flow occurs. Arrows are placed at the main barriers to flow in each case. See text for calculation details.

indicates that the pressure gradient required for solution flow through the cell walls is

$$\frac{\partial P}{\partial x} = -\frac{(8)(1.0 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{Pa s})(1 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m s}^{-1})}{(5 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{m})^2} = -3 \times 10^5\ \text{MPa m}^{-1}$$

In contrast, a $\partial P/\partial x$ of only -0.02 MPa m^{-1} is needed for the same J_V in the xylem element with a 20-μm radius. Thus, the $\partial P/\partial x$ for Poiseuille flow through the small interstices of a cell wall is over 10^7 times greater than that for the same flux density through the lumen of the xylem element. Because of the tremendous pressure gradients required to force water through the small interstices available for solution conduction in the cell wall, fluid cannot flow rapidly enough up a tree in its cell walls—as has been suggested—to account for the observed rates of water movement.

To compare the relative effects on flow of a plasma membrane, a cell wall, and the lumen of a xylem vessel, we will calculate the hydrostatic pressure drops across each of them in a hypothetical case (Fig. 9-16). We will consider a xylem vessel member that is 1-mm long and 20 μm in radius. Let us first imagine that a plasma membrane with a typical hydraulic conductivity coefficient of 7×10^{-13} m s^{-1} Pa^{-1} (Chapter 2, Section 2.4) is placed around the cell (Fig. 9-16a). Using Equation 3.39 [$J_V = L_P(\Delta P - \sigma\Delta\Pi)$] with J_V equal to 1 mm s^{-1}, the difference in hydrostatic pressure required for such flow out an end is $(1 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m s}^{-1})/(7 \times 10^{-13}\ \text{m s}^{-1}\ \text{Pa}^{-1})$, or 1.4×10^9 Pa, which means a total pressure drop of 3×10^3 MPa to traverse the plasma membrane at both ends of the cell. Let us next suppose that a cell wall 1 μm thick is placed across both ends of the cell (Fig. 9-16b). In the previous paragraph we indicated that a pressure gradient of -3×10^5 MPa m^{-1} is necessary for a J_V of 1 mm s^{-1} through the interstices of such a cell wall. To cross this cell wall (a total distance of 2 μm for both ends), a pressure change of $(-3 \times 10^5\ \text{MPa m}^{-1})(2 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m})$, or -0.6 MPa, is required. Finally, we have just calculated that the pressure gradient necessary for a Poiseuille flow of 1 mm s^{-1} in the lumen of this vessel member is -0.02 MPa m^{-1}, which amounts to $(-0.02\ \text{MPa m}^{-1})(1 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m})$, or -2×10^{-5} MPa for the 1-mm length of the cell (Fig. 9-16c). In summary, the pressure drops needed in this hypothetical case are

2×10^{-5} MPa to flow through the lumen, 0.6 MPa to cross the cell walls, and 3×10^{3} MPa to cross the membranes (Fig. 9-16).

In fact, membranes generally serve as the main barrier to water flow into or out of plant cells. The interstices of the cell walls provide a much easier pathway for such flow, and hollow xylem vessels present the least impediment to flow (such as up a stem). Consequently, the xylem provides a plant with tubes, or conduits, that are remarkably well suited for moving water over long distances. The region of a plant made up of cell walls and the hollow xylem vessels is often called the *apoplast*, as noted above (Chapter 1, Section 1.1D and in Section 9.4A). Water and the solutes that it contains can move fairly readily in the apoplast, but they must cross a membrane to enter the symplast (symplasm), the interconnected cytoplasm of the cells.

9.4E. Phloem

Water and solute movement in the phloem involves cooperative interactions among several types of cells. The conducting cells of the phloem, which generally have a high internal hydrostatic pressure, are the *sieve cells* in lower vascular plants and gymnosperms and the generally shorter, wider, and less tapered *sieve-tube members* in angiosperms (see Figs. 1-3 and 9-17). Both types of cells are collectively called *sieve elements*. By the time they reach maturity, sieve elements have almost invariably lost their nuclei, and

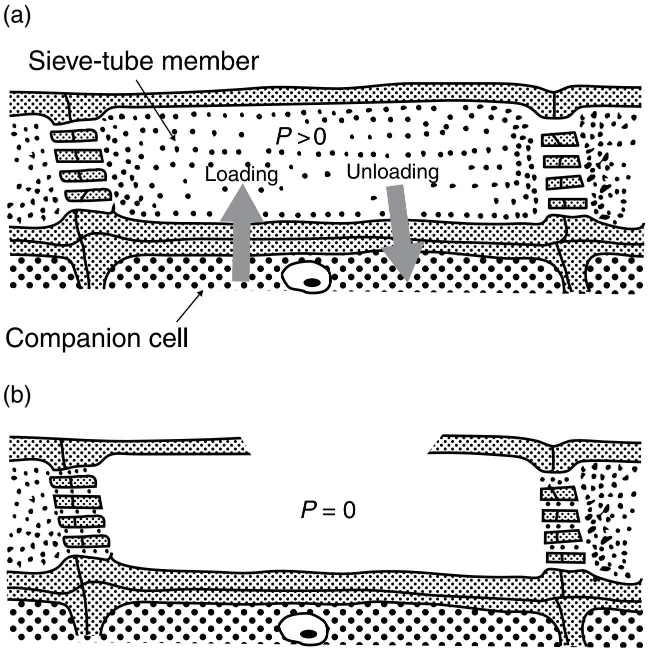


Figure 9-17. Diagram of conducting and adjacent phloem cells (expanded from upper right-hand part of Fig. 1-3), indicating (a) loading and unloading of solutes for conducting cells having a positive internal hydrostatic pressure and (b) blocking of the sieve plate by P protein (represented by some of the many small dots in sieve-tube members) upon mechanical breakage of the vascular tissue, as can occur by herbivory or by pruning.

the tonoplast has broken down, so no large central vacuole is present, although the plasma membrane remains intact. Therefore, unlike the conducting elements of the xylem, the sieve elements are surrounded by a plasma membrane, contain cytoplasm, and are living. Because sieve elements are surrounded by a membrane, a positive hydrostatic pressure P can exist within them (Fig. 9-17a). [Such a membrane-surrounded cell cannot have a negative internal P (Chapter 2, Section 2.4A,B), as that would cause the plasma membrane to pull inward away from the cell wall, leading to plasmolysis and an internal P of zero.] The sieve elements in most plants range from 0.1 to 3 mm in length and tend to be longer in gymnosperms than in angiosperms. Typical radii of the lumens are 6 to 25 μm.

Specialized cells are generally found adjacent to and in close association with the sieve elements, called *companion cells* in angiosperms (Figs. 1-3 and 9-17a) and *albuminous cells* in gymnosperms. These cells have nuclei and generally contain many mitochondria. Such cells are metabolically related to the conducting cells and may supply them with carbohydrates, ATP, and other materials. Moreover, companion and albuminous cells accumulate sugars and other solutes, which may either passively diffuse (e.g., through the plasmodesmata that are present) or be actively transported into the sieve elements.

Sieve-tube members usually abut end to end to form *sieve tubes*. The pair of generally inclined end walls between two sequential sieve-tube members forms the *sieve plate* (see Fig. 1-3; sieve cells are joined at less specialized sieve areas). Sieve plates have many pores, ranging in diameter from less than 1 μm up to about 5 μm, and ordinarily have strands of cytoplasm passing through them. The pores are lined, not crossed, by the plasma membranes. Therefore, solution moving in the phloem does not have to cross any membranes as it flows from cell to cell along a sieve tube (Fig. 9-17a). A distinguishing feature of sieve-tube members in dicots and some monocots is the presence of *phloem (P) protein*, which occurs in tubular as well as fibrillar form. P protein can plug the sieve plate pores upon injury of the sieve tube (Fig. 9-17b). Specifically, when the phloem is opened by cutting a stem, the positive hydrostatic pressure in the phloem forces the contents of the conducting cells toward the incision, carrying the P protein into the sieve plate pores. As a further wound response, *callose* (a glucose polysaccharide) can also be deposited in the sieve plate pores, thereby closing them within minutes after injury (otherwise the phloem solution could continue to exude from a cut or injured stem and be lost from the plant).

The products of photosynthesis, termed *photosynthates*, are distributed throughout a plant by the phloem. Changes in phloem flow can feed back on the distribution of photosynthates, which in turn can affect the metabolism of mesophyll cells. For moderate water stress leading to reduced leaf water potentials, translocation of photosynthates can decrease more than photosynthesis in some plants, with the consequence that leaves and nearby parts of the stem accumulate more starch. In any case, for C_4 plants under moist conditions, the profuse vascularization and close proximity of bundle sheath cells to the phloem (see Fig. 8-14) can lead to rapid removal of photosynthates from the leaves and little deposition of starch in the bundle sheath

cells over the course of a day, whereas certain sunlit C_3 plants can have a large increase of starch in the mesophyll cells during the daytime. The number of sieve elements in a petiole can reflect the productivity of the leaf; for example, petioles of sun leaves (Fig. 7-11) tend to have more sieve elements per unit leaf area than do petioles of shade leaves.

The practice of "ringing" or "girdling" a branch (cutting away a band of phloem-containing bark all of the way around) can stop the export of photosynthate. Fruits on such a branch can consequently become considerably larger than they otherwise would (such large fruits often win prizes at fairs); another manipulation is to remove some of the fruits so that more photosynthetic products are available for the remaining ones, an actual agricultural practice. Girdling the trunk of a tree abolishes the export of photosynthate to the roots, ultimately leading to the death of the tree (this has occasionally been used to "resolve" disputes between neighbors when a tree causes excess shading or blocks a view).

9.4F. Phloem Contents and Speed of Movement

An elegant way of studying the contents of certain sieve elements is by means of aphid stylets. An aphid feeds on the phloem by inserting its stylet (hollow, slender process on the mouthparts) into an individual sieve element. After the aphid has been anesthetized and its body removed, the remaining stylet forms a tube that leads the phloem solution from the sieve element to the outside. Solutes in the phloem solution extracted using this technique are often over 90% carbohydrates, mainly sucrose and some other oligosaccharides (carbohydrates containing two to ten monosaccharide units). The concentration of sucrose is usually 0.2 to 0.7 M; values near 0.3 M are typical for small plants, whereas some tall trees have sucrose concentrations near the upper limit. The types and the concentrations of the solutes exhibit daily and seasonal variations and also depend on the tissues that the phloem solution is flowing toward or away from. For example, the solution in the phloem moving out of senescing leaves is low in sucrose but because of protein breakdown often contains an appreciable concentration of amino acids and amides, sometimes as high as 0.5 M—an amino acid concentration near 0.05 M is representative of phloem solution in general. The initial movement of ions from the root to the rest of the plant occurs mainly in the xylem; subsequent recirculation can take place in the phloem, such as the movement of certain ions out of leaves just before their abscission.

Solutes can move over long distances in the phloem, with flow being toward regions of lower osmotic pressure. Thus photosynthetic products move from the leaves to storage tissues in the stem and the root, where they are generally converted to starch. At other times, sugars produced from the hydrolysis of such starch may move in the opposite direction, from the storage tissue to meristematic areas at the top of the plant. The speed of solute movement in the phloem is ordinarily 0.2 to 2 m hour^{-1}, the rate varying, among other things, with the plant species and the vigor of growth. Although a particular sugar in the phloem generally moves in

the direction of a decrease in its concentration, diffusion is not the mechanism. First, the rate of solute movement far exceeds that of diffusion (see Chapter 1, Section 1.2C). Second, when a radioactive solute, a dye, or a heat pulse is introduced into conducting sieve elements, the "front" moves with a fairly constant speed (distance moved is proportional to time), whereas in a one-dimensional diffusional process, distance moved is proportional to the square root of time in such a case ($x^2_{1/e} = 4D_j t_{1/e}$; Eq. 1.6).

Rather than the solute speed in the phloem, we are sometimes more interested in how much matter is translocated. For example, if the sieve elements contain 0.5 M (500 mol m^{-3}) sucrose moving at an average speed of 0.6 m hour^{-1}, what is the transfer rate of sucrose in kg m^{-2} hour^{-1}? By Equation 3.7 ($J_j = \bar{v}_j c_j$), the flux density of sucrose is

$$J_{\text{sucrose}} = \left(0.6\text{ m hour}^{-1}\right)\left(500\text{ mol m}^{-3}\right) = 300\text{ mol m}^{-2}\text{ hour}^{-1}$$

Because sucrose has a mass of 0.342 kg mol^{-1}, this flux density corresponds to (300 mol m^{-2} hour^{-1})(0.342 kg mol^{-1}) or 100 kg m^{-2} hour^{-1}. In the current example, the flow is per m^2 of sieve-tube lumens; the rate of flow per unit area of phloem tissue is less by the ratio of the lumen cross-sectional area to the total phloem cross-sectional area, which is usually 0.2 to 0.5.

9.4G. Mechanism of Phloem Flow

What causes the movement of solutes in the phloem? This question proved difficult to answer, primarily because of observational problems. Another complication is that water may readily enter and leave the various types of cells in the phloem and the surrounding tissue. Therefore, the phloem cannot be viewed as an isolated independent system. For example, when the water potential in the xylem decreases, as occurs during rapid transpiration, solution in the phloem generally moves more slowly. Some water may move upward in the xylem and, later, downward in the phloem; however, this is not the whole story because movement in the phloem can be in either direction. Moreover, the phloem can sometimes be the main supplier of water to certain regions of a plant, such as for fruits and various other organs when young (Nobel et al., 1994).

In 1930, Ernst Münch proposed that fluid movement in the phloem is caused by a gradient in hydrostatic pressure. This leads to flow analogous to that in the xylem as described by Poiseuille's law (Eq. 9.11b), $J_V = -(r^2/8\eta)(\partial P/\partial x)$. To examine this hypothesis, we will assume that the average speed of flow in the lumen of the conducting cells of the phloem, J_V, is 0.17 mm s^{-1} (0.6 m hour^{-1}). Our sieve-tube members will be 12 μm in radius and 1 mm long, and the sieve plates will be 5 μm thick, with pores that are 1.2 μm in radius covering one-third of their surface area. Based on the relative areas available for conduction, J_V is three times higher in the sieve plate pores than it is in the lumen of the sieve tube—namely, 0.51 mm s^{-1} across the pores. The viscosity of the solution in a sieve tube is greater than that of water; for example, η^{phloem} may be

about 1.7×10^{-3} Pa s at 20°C, the value for 0.5 M sucrose. The pressure change per cell expected from Poiseuille's law then is

$$\Delta P = -\frac{8\eta J_V}{r^2}\Delta x = -\frac{(8)(1.7 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{Pa s})(0.17 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m s}^{-1})}{(12 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m})^2}\left(1 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m}\right)$$
$$= -16\ \text{Pa}$$

in the lumen. The pressure drop across the sieve plate is.

$$\Delta P = -\frac{(8)(1.7 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{Pa s})(3)(0.17 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m s}^{-1})}{(1.2 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m})^2}(5 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m}) = -24\ \text{Pa}$$

For cells that are 1 mm long, the pressure gradient needed to cause Poiseuille flow is then

$$\frac{\Delta P}{\Delta x} = \frac{(-16\ \text{Pa}) + (-24\ \text{Pa})}{(1 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m})} = -40 \times\ 10^3\ \text{Pa m}^{-1} = -0.040\ \text{MPa m}^{-1}$$

In the current case, slightly more than half of the hydrostatic pressure drop along the phloem is necessary to overcome the resistance of the sieve plate pores. When the end walls are steeply inclined to the axis of the sieve element, the pores of the sieve plate can occupy an area that is greater than the cross section of the sieve tube. This causes J_V in the pores to be less than in the lumen and tends to reduce the resistance to flow in the phloem.

9.4H. Values for Components of the Phloem Water Potential

We will now examine some of the consequences of a pressure-driven flow in the phloem. We will let the water potential in the xylem be –0.6 MPa at ground level and –0.8 MPa at 10 m above the ground (see Fig. 9-18 and Table 9-3), values that are consistent with the hydrostatic pressure gradient in the xylem when gravity is taken into account (Section 9.4D and Fig. 9-15). Because there is no evidence for active transport of water across membranes into the phloem, the water potential in the phloem 10 m above the ground, $\Psi^{\text{phloem}_{10\ \text{m}}}$, must be lower than –0.8 MPa if water is to enter passively—water entering the phloem in the leaves can come from the xylem. For example, the water potential might be –1.0 MPa in the leaf phloem (Fig. 9-18). By analogous reasoning, Ψ^{phloem} in the root must be higher than Ψ^{xylem} if water is to leave the phloem spontaneously in the region where the solutes, such as sucrose, are removed; an appropriate value for the water potential in the phloem at ground level, $\Psi^{\text{phloem}_{0\ \text{m}}}$, is –0.4 MPa. Water may then flow down the phloem from a water potential of –1.0 MPa to one of –0.4 MPa. This appears to be an energetically uphill movement. However, the term representing the force on the solution moving within the phloem is ΔP, not $\Delta\Psi$.

The fact that the decrease in hydrostatic pressure, not the change in water potential, represents the driving force along the phloem deserves special emphasis. By Equation 3.39, J_V equals $L_P(\Delta P - \sigma\Delta\Pi)$, where the reflection coefficient σ along the phloem is zero because no membranes intervene between sequential members of a sieve tube (Fig. 9-17a). Differences in the osmotic pressure at various locations in the phloem, which help

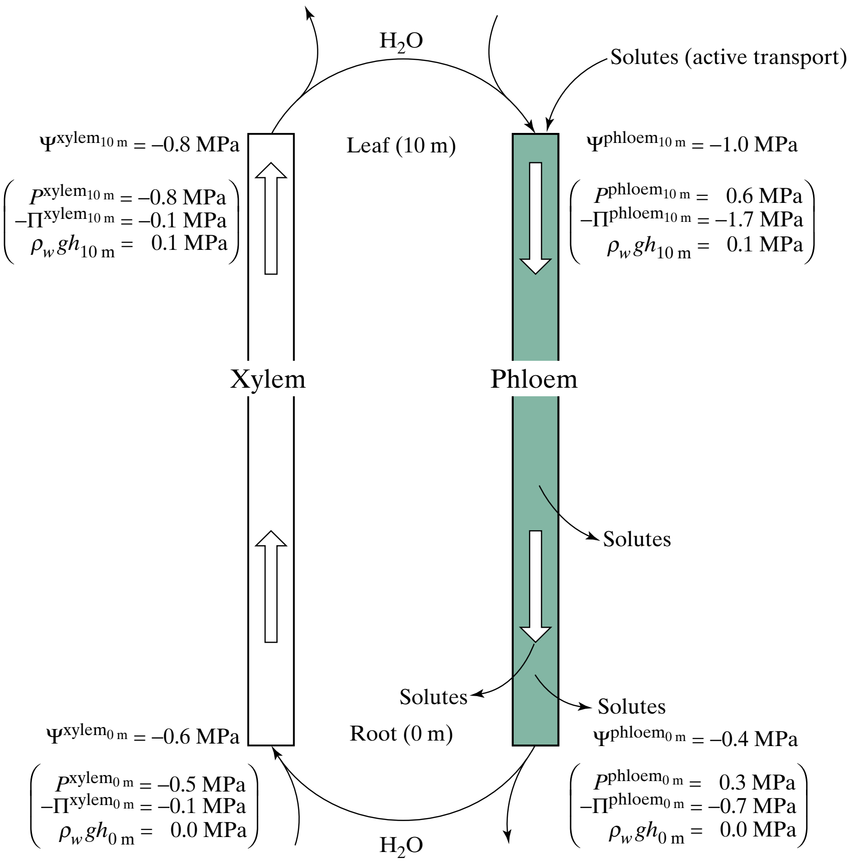


Figure 9-18. Idealized representation of xylem and phloem flow driven by gradients in hydrostatic pressure. Water enters and leaves the phloem by passively moving toward regions of lower water potential ($\Psi = P - \Pi + \rho_w gh$; Eq. 2.13a). The conducting cells of the xylem generally have a low and relatively constant osmotic pressure (here 0.1 MPa). Solutes either diffuse or are actively transported into and out of the sieve elements, leading to a high phloem osmotic pressure of 1.7 MPa in the leaf and a decrease to 0.7 MPa in the root; the much lower Π in the sink leads to a lower P there, which favors the delivery of more solutes.

determine the local water potential, therefore do not directly affect the movement of solution along the phloem. On the other hand, substances entering or leaving the phloem pass across a plasma membrane (Fig. 9-17a), which most likely has a mean reflection coefficient close to 1 for solutes such as sucrose. By Equation 3.39, J_V then equals $L_P(\Delta P - \Delta\Pi)$, which is $L_P\Delta\Psi$ by Equation 2.13a ($\Psi = P - \Pi + \rho_w gh$). Consequently, the change in water potential does represent the driving force on water moving into or out of the phloem (Fig. 9-18).

Next we will estimate the various components of the water potential at the upper end of the phloem tissue under consideration (Fig. 9-18). The osmotic pressure in a sieve tube in the phloem of a leaf that is 10 m above the ground, $\Pi^{\text{phloem}}_{10\text{ m}}$, might be due to the following solutes: 0.5 M sucrose, 0.1 M other sugars, 0.05 M amino acids, and 0.05 M inorganic ions. Thus the

total concentration of solutes is

$$\sum_j c_j = 0.5\,\text{M} + 0.1\,\text{M} + 0.05\,\text{M} + 0.05\,\text{M} = 0.7\,\text{M}$$
$$= 700\ \text{mol m}^{-3}$$

Using the Van't Hoff relation—$\Pi_s = RT\Sigma_j c_j$ (Eq. 2.10), where RT is $2.437 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m}^3\ \text{MPa mol}^{-1}$ at 20°C (see Appendix I)—we estimate that the osmotic pressure in the phloem at 10 m above the ground then is

$$\Pi^{\text{phloem}_{10\ \text{m}}} = (2.437 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m}^3\ \text{MPa mol}^{-1})(700\ \text{mol m}^{-3}) = 1.7\ \text{MPa}$$

Such a large osmotic pressure, caused by the high concentrations of sucrose and other solutes, suggests that active transport is necessary at some stage to move certain photosynthetic products from leaf mesophyll cells to the sieve elements of the phloem. From the definition of water potential, $\Psi = P - \Pi + \rho_w gh$ (Eq. 2.13a), we conclude that the hydrostatic pressure in the phloem of a leaf that is 10 m above the ground is

$$P^{\text{phloem}_{10\ \text{m}}} = \Psi^{\text{phloem}_{10\ \text{m}}} + \Pi^{\text{phloem}_{10\ \text{m}}} - \rho_w g h_{10\ \text{m}}$$
$$= -1.0\ \text{MPa} + 1.7\ \text{MPa} - 0.1\ \text{MPa}$$
$$= 0.6\ \text{MPa}$$

(see Fig. 9-18; because $\rho_w g$ is 0.01 MPa m^{-1}, $\rho_w g h_{10\ \text{m}}$ is equal to 0.1 MPa and $\rho_w g h_{0\ \text{m}}$ is equal to 0.0 MPa). This appreciable and positive hydrostatic pressure causes sieve-tube members to exude when cut (Fig. 9-17b).

As we have indicated, the hydrostatic pressure gradient can be -0.04 MPa m^{-1} for Poiseuille flow in representative (horizontal) conducting cells of the phloem. Therefore P would decrease by 0.4 MPa over a distance of 10 m. Gravity also leads to a pressure gradient in a column of water (0.1 MPa increase in P when descending 10 m; see Fig. 9-15), so in the current case the ΔP needed to cause Poiseuille flow vertically downward is -0.3 MPa. Thus, the hydrostatic pressure in the phloem at ground level is 0.6 MPa − 0.3 MPa or 0.3 MPa. The osmotic pressure there equals $P^{\text{phloem}_{0\ \text{m}}} + \rho_w g h_{0\ \text{m}} - \Psi^{\text{phloem}_{0\ \text{m}}}$ (Eq. 2.13a), which is 0.3 MPa + 0.0 MPa − (−0.4 MPa) or 0.7 MPa. The values of Ψ^{phloem} and its components at $h = 0$ m and $h = 10$ m are summarized in Figure 9-18.

In our current example, the osmotic pressure of the phloem solution decreases from 1.7 MPa in the leaf to 0.7 MPa in the root (Fig. 9-18). Such a large decrease in Π is consistent with the phloem's function of delivering photosynthetic products to different parts of a plant. Moreover, our calculations indicate that flow is in the direction of decreasing concentration but that diffusion is not the mechanism. (Although the total concentration decreases in the direction of flow, the c_j of every solute does not necessarily do so.) Finally, we note the importance of removing solutes from the phloem solution at a sink, either by active transport or by diffusion into the cells near the conducting cells of the phloem.

The known involvement of metabolism in translocation in the phloem could be due to active transport of solutes into the phloem of a leaf or other *source*, which is often referred to as *loading*, and/or to their removal, or *unloading*, in a root or other *sink*, such as a fruit (Fig. 9-17a). Indeed, loading often involves proton–sucrose cotransport (Fig. 3-14a) via a carrier located in

the plasma membrane of sieve elements, which moves this sugar from the apoplast into the conducting cells (movement of photosynthates among mesophyll cells and possibly to companion cells is mainly in the symplast). In sink regions, low concentrations of translocated solutes in the cells outside the phloem can be maintained by metabolic conversions of phloem solutes, such as by formation of the polymer starch in the cells adjacent to the conducting cells of the phloem; this favors the diffusion of these solutes out of the sieve elements toward lower concentrations. Also, active transport can move solutes out of the sieve elements in the sink region. In any case, active loading or unloading of the phloem sets up a gradient in osmotic pressure, which in turn generates the hydrostatic pressure gradient that can lead to Poiseuille flow along the phloem (Figs. 9-17 and 9-18). The phloem is a remarkable delivery system, as unloading solutes at a sink lowers Π there, which in turn lowers P (if Ψ is unchanged) and thus increases ΔP. This larger ΔP then delivers solutes faster (more per unit time) to where they are being consumed or stored, a feedback system that rapidly responds to the sugar demand in a sink.

9.5. Soil–Plant–Atmosphere Continuum

Water moves from the soil, through a plant, out into the surrounding atmosphere. During a growing season, about 100 times more water is transpired by a plant than remains in it for growth. Therefore, the amount of transpiration is a fairly accurate estimate of water uptake by the roots. Although the rate at which water crosses each section of the pathway is essentially the same in the steady state, the resistances and the areas across which water flows differ markedly for the various components. The generally accepted mechanism for water movement through a plant is the "cohesion theory" or "cohesion–tension theory" proposed by Henry Dixon and Charles Joly at the end of the nineteenth century. In particular, water evaporating from the leaves creates a tension in the xylem where hydrogen bonds (Chapter 2, Section 2.1A) provide an intermolecular attraction and continuity among water molecules. Thus the column of water in the lumen of the xylem is drawn upward toward regions of lower hydrostatic pressure.

9.5A. Values for Water Potential Components

Possible values for the water potential and its components in various parts of the soil–plant–atmosphere continuum are given in Table 9-3. The values do not apply to all plants, nor even to the same plant at all times. Rather, they serve to indicate representative contributions of P, Π, $\rho_w gh$, and relative humidity to Ψ in various parts of the soil–plant–atmosphere continuum.

First, we will consider the soil water potential, Ψ^{soil}. As indicated earlier in this chapter (Section 9.3A), Ψ^{soil} is usually dominated by P^{soil}, which is negative because of surface tension effects at the numerous air–liquid interfaces in the soil (Fig. 9-9). The magnitude of the water potential varies with environmental conditions and with the soil type. After a rainfall or in freshly irrigated soil, the soil water potential may be about –0.01 MPa (i.e., field

Table 9-3. Representative Values for the Various Components of the Water Potential in the Soil–Plant–Atmosphere Continuum[a]

Location	Ψ or Ψ_{wv} (MPa)	P (MPa)	$-\Pi$ (MPa)	$\rho_w gh$ (MPa)	$\frac{RT}{\bar{V}_w}\ln\frac{\text{RH}}{100}$ (MPa)
Soil 0.1 m below ground and 10 mm from root	−0.3	−0.2	−0.1	0.0	
Soil adjacent to root	−0.5	−0.4	−0.1	0.0	
Xylem of root near ground surface	−0.6	−0.5	−0.1	0.0	
Xylem in leaf at 10 m above ground	−0.8	−0.8	−0.1	0.1	
Vacuole of mesophyll cell in leaf at 10 m	−0.8	0.2	−1.1	0.1	
Cell wall of mesophyll cell at 10 m	−0.8	−0.4	−0.5	0.1	
Air in cell wall pores at 10 m (water vapor assumed to be in equilibrium with water in cell wall)	−0.8			0.1	−0.9
Air just inside stomata at 95% relative humidity	−6.9			0.1	−7.0
Air just outside stomata at 60% relative humidity	−70.0			0.1	−70.1
Air just across boundary layer at 50% relative humidity	−95.1			0.1	−95.2

[a] Ψ is equal to $P - \Pi + \rho_w gh$ in the liquid phases (Eq. 2.13a), and Ψ_{wv} is equal to $(RT/\bar{V}_w)\ln(\%\text{ relative humidity}/100) + \rho_w gh$ in the gas phases (Eq. 2.24), all at 25°C.

capacity), and permanent wilting of many crops occurs when Ψ^{soil} decreases below about −1.5 MPa (Section 9.3A).

The value of the soil water potential at which wilting of a plant occurs depends on the osmotic pressure in the vacuoles of its leaf cells (Π^{vacuole} is generally the same as Π^{cytosol}; see Chapter 2, Section 2.3A). Let us consider the case in Table 9-3, where the water potential in the vacuole of a leaf cell 10 m above the ground is initially −0.8 MPa. As the soil dries, Ψ^{soil} decreases and eventually becomes −1.0 MPa. When Ψ^{soil} becomes −1.0 MPa, Ψ^{leaf} must be less than this for water movement to continue from the soil to the leaf. Ψ^{leaf} could be −1.0 MPa when $P^{\text{vacuole}_{10\text{ m}}}$ is 0.0 MPa, $\rho_w gh^{\text{vacuole}_{10\text{ m}}}$ remains 0.1 MPa, and $\Pi^{\text{vacuole}_{10\text{ m}}}$ is 1.1 MPa (the latter two are values in Table 9-3; actually, as the hydrostatic pressure in a leaf cell decreases, the cell will shrink somewhat because of the elastic properties of the cell wall, so Π^{vacuole} will increase slightly; see Chapter 2, Section 2.4A). Zero hydrostatic pressure in the vacuole means that the cell has lost turgor, and the leaf thus wilts in response to this low Ψ^{soil}. For certain xerophytes in arid areas, the osmotic pressure in the leaves can be 2.5 to 5.0 MPa under normal physiological conditions. The value of the soil water potential at which wilting occurs for such plants is considerably lower (i.e., more negative) than that for the plant indicated in Table 9-3. A high osmotic pressure in the vacuoles of the leaf cells can therefore be viewed as an adaptation to low soil water potentials in arid and semi-arid regions.

Let us suppose that the soil dries even further from the level causing wilting. Because at least some transpiration still occurs due to the very low Ψ_{wv}^{air}, Ψ^{leaf} will be less than Ψ^{soil}, and some cellular water will be lost from the leaf. The vacuolar contents then become more concentrated, and Π^{vacuole} increases. For instance, if Ψ^{leaf} became −2.0 MPa for a Ψ^{soil} of −1.8 MPa, the

osmotic pressure in the vacuole of a leaf cell 10 m above the ground would be 2.1 MPa, which represents a loss of nearly half of the cellular water ($\Pi^{\text{vacuole}_{10\text{ m}}}$ originally was 1.1 MPa for this leaf cell; Table 9-3).

As we have indicated, the driving force for water movement in the xylem is the negative gradient in hydrostatic pressure, which leads to a flow describable by Poiseuille's law (Eq. 9.11). In Table 9-3, P^{xylem} decreases by 0.3 MPa from the root to a leaf at 10 m above the ground. The xylary sap, which contains chiefly water plus some minerals absorbed from the soil, usually does not have an osmotic pressure in excess of 0.2 MPa. The hydrostatic pressure, on the other hand, can have much larger absolute values and generally changes markedly during the day. When there is extremely rapid transpiration, large tensions (negative hydrostatic pressures) develop in the xylem. These tensions are maintained by the cohesion of water molecules resulting from the intermolecular hydrogen bonding (see Chapter 2, Section 2.1E). When transpiration essentially ceases, as it can at night or under conditions of very high relative humidity in the air surrounding the plant, the tension in the xylem becomes very small—in fact, the hydrostatic pressure can even become positive (reflecting water movement from the surrounding cells into the root xylem in response to Π^{xylem}). Such a positive hydrostatic pressure (termed *root pressure*) can cause *guttation*, as xylem fluid is then exuded through specialized structures called *hydathodes* that are located near the ends of veins on the margins of leaves.

Water is conducted to and across the leaves in the xylem. It then moves to the individual leaf cells by flowing partly apoplastically in the cell walls and partly symplastically (only short distances are involved, because the xylem ramifies extensively in a leaf). The water potential is usually about the same in the vacuole, the cytosol, and the cell wall of a particular mesophyll cell (see values in Table 9-3). If this were not the case, water would redistribute by flowing energetically downhill toward lower water potentials. The water in the cell wall pores is in contact with air, where evaporation can take place, leading to a flow along the cell wall interstices to replace the lost water. This flow can be approximately described by Poiseuille's law (Eq. 9.11), which indicates that a (very small) hydrostatic pressure decrease exists across such cell walls.

As water continually evaporates from the cell walls of mesophyll cells, the accompanying solutes, originally in the xylary sap, are left behind and can accumulate in the cell wall water. Some solutes are of course needed for cell growth. For halophytes and xerophytes growing in soils of high salinity, excess inorganic ions can be actively excreted from a leaf by salt glands on its surface. The periodic abscission of leaves is another way of "preventing" an excessive buildup of solutes in the cell wall water, as well as for returning mineral nutrients to the soil.

9.5B. Resistances and Areas

We will now consider the resistances to water flow in those parts of the soil–plant–atmosphere continuum where water moves as a liquid. (We have already considered the gaseous parts of the pathway in Chapter 8.) If we let the flux density of water equal the drop in water potential across some component divided by its resistance, we would have only a part of the story,

because we should also consider the relative areas of each component as well as whether $\Delta\Psi$ represents the driving force. Moreover, $\Delta\Psi$ quantifies the relative energies of water only at constant T, and thus ideally we should compare water potentials only between locations at the same temperature. The root and adjacent soil are usually at the same temperature, as are the mesophyll cells and air in the intercellular air spaces of a leaf. However, roots and leaves generally are not at the same temperature. Nevertheless, using the pressure gradient (Eq. 9.11) generally is sufficiently accurate for describing the flow in the xylem or the phloem, even when temperatures differ along the pathway.

Let us designate the average volume flux density of water across area A^j of component j by $J^j_{V_w}$, which is the average velocity of the water movement (Chapter 2, Section 2.4F). A^j can be the root surface area, the effective cross-sectional area of the xylem, or the area of one side of the leaves. In the steady state, the product $J^j_{V_w}A^j$ is essentially constant, because nearly all of the water taken up by the root is lost by transpiration; that is, the same volume of water moves across each component along the pathway per unit time. We will represent the drop in water potential across component j by $\Delta\Psi^j$, defining the resistance of component j (R^j) as follows:

$$J^j_{V_w}A^j = \frac{\Delta\Psi^j}{R^j} \cong \text{constant} \tag{9.12}$$

where $J^j_{V_w}A^j$ is the volume of water crossing component j in unit time (e.g., $m^3\ s^{-1}$). A relation similar to Equation 9.12 was proposed by Tako van den Honert in 1948 and has been useful for describing water flow though various parts of a plant.

To illustrate the constancy of water flow through a plant, let us reconsider its volumetric flux densities for various components of the pathway (Table 9-4). In Chapter 8 (Section 8.2F) we indicated that transpiration by an exposed leaf of a C_3 mesophyte might be 4.3 mmol $m^{-2}\ s^{-1}$, which corresponds to a volume flux density of water of $(4.3 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{mol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1})$ $(18 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m}^3\ \text{mol}^{-1})$ or $0.77 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{m s}^{-1}$ (1 mol of water occupies $18 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m}^3$). In this chapter (Section 9.3D), we calculated that J_{V_w} into a young root can be $1.1 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{m s}^{-1}$. For a plant having leaves and roots with such volume flux densities, equality of water flow across each component (Eq. 9.12) indicates that the area of one side of the leaves must be $(1.1 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{m s}^{-1})/(0.77 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{m s}^{-1})$, or 1.4 times larger than the surface area of the young roots (Table 9-4). Actually, the volumetric water flux density at the root surface, $J^{\text{root}}_{V_w}$, depends markedly on root age and hence varies along the length of a root; for example, it usually is considerably lower

Table 9-4. Values for the Volume Flux Density of Water and Relative Areas for Its Flow along a Plant, Illustrating the Constancy of $J^j_{V_W}A^j$ (Eq. 9.12)

Component	$J^j_{V_W}$ (m s^{-1})	Relative A^j	$J^j_{V_W}A^j$ (relative units)
Young roots	1.1×10^{-7}	1.0	1.1×10^{-7}
Stem xylem	1.0×10^{-3}	1.1×10^{-4}	1.1×10^{-7}
Leaves	0.77×10^{-7}	1.4	1.1×10^{-7}

for older roots. Because the root systems of many perennials are quite extensive, A^{root} (including the relatively nonconducting regions) can be 20 times larger than the surface area of mature leaves. In the stem xylem, J_V can be 1 mm s^{-1} (see Section 9.4D). Again using Equation 9.12, we conclude that the cross-sectional area of the conducting parts of the stem xylem is $(1.1 \times 10^{-7}$ m s$^{-1})/(1.0 \times 10^{-3}$ m s$^{-1})$ or 1.1×10^{-4} times the surface area of the young roots (Table 9-4); that is, a much smaller area is involved in plant water conduction than is involved in water absorption or in water release.

Although Equation 9.12 can be used to describe certain overall characteristics of water flow in the soil–plant–atmosphere continuum, $\Delta\Psi^j$ does not always represent the driving force on water. For instance, a change in the osmotic pressure component of Ψ has no direct effect on the flow along the xylem or the phloem. Also, such a relation is not useful for a gas phase because the resistance R^j then depends on the concentration of water vapor (see Chapter 8, Section 8.1F).

9.5C. Values for Resistances and Resistivities

When $J^j_{V_w}$ is in m s^{-1}, A_j is in m^2, and $\Delta\Psi^j$ is in MPa, Equation 9.12 indicates that the units of R^j are MPa s m^{-3} (Table 9-5). For young sunflower and tomato plants approximately 0.3 m tall, the resistance from the root surface to the leaf mesophyll cells, R^{plant}, is about 1.0×10^8 MPa s m^{-3} and $\Delta\Psi^{\text{plant}}$ is about 0.2 MPa (Kramer and Boyer, 1995). Using Equation 9.12, we obtain

$$J^j_{V_w}A^j = \frac{\Delta\Psi^i}{R^j} = \frac{(0.2\ \text{MPa})}{(1.0 \times 10^8\ \text{MPa s m}^{-3})} = 2 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{m}^3\ \text{s}^{-1}$$

which gives the volume of water flowing across each component per unit time. For sunflower, bean, and tomato, R^{root}: R^{stem}: R^{leaves} is about 2.0:1.0:1.5, whereas R^{root} is relatively higher for soybean and R^{leaves} is relatively higher for safflower. For the R^{plant} of young sunflower or tomato plants (1.0×10^8 MPa s m^{-3}), R^{stem} is about

$$R^{\text{stem}} = \frac{(1.0)}{(2.0 + 1.0 + 1.5)}(1.0 \times 10^8\ \text{MPa s m}^{-3}) = 2.2 \times 10^7\ \text{MPa s m}^{-3}$$

Table 9-5. Terms Used to Describe Xylem Flow Characteristics[a]

Quantity	Units	Range for stems
Resistance (R^j)	MPa s m^{-3}	1×10^6–2×10^{10}
Resistivity (ρ^j)	MPa s m^{-2}	100–1600
Conductivity	m^2 s^{-1} MPa^{-1}	6×10^{-4}–1×10^{-2}
Conductance	m^3 s^{-1} MPa^{-1}	5×10^{-11}–1×10^{-6}
Conductance per unit length (K_h)	m^4 s^{-1} MPa^{-1}	1×10^{-8}–1×10^{-5}

[a]As discussed in Chapter 8 (beginning of Section 8.1), resistances are engineering-type parameters (e.g., Eq. 8.1); for this table they are based on Equation 9.12 ($J^j_{V_w}A^j = \Delta\Psi^j/R^j$). In this regard, L^{soil} (Eqs. 9.7–9.9) and L^{sc} (Eq. 9.10) are conductivities (units of m^2 s^{-1} MPa^{-1}); L_w (Eqs. 2.26, 2.28, 2.30, 2.32, and 2.35), L_P (Eqs. 3.39 and 3.40), $L^{\text{soil}}_{\text{eff}}$ (Eq. 9.14), L^{gap} (Eq. 9.14 and 9.15), and L^{overall} (Eq. 9.14) are conductances per unit area (units of m s^{-1} MPa^{-1}), which are usually referred to as conductivities in the literature (and sometimes as conductances).

Resistances can be considerably higher for other plants; for example, R^{plant} can be 10^{10} MPa s m^{-3} for wheat and even higher for barley (Table 9-5).

The resistance for water movement along the stem can be separated into (1) a quantity expressing some inherent flow properties of the xylem and (2) the geometrical aspects of the conduits. By analogy with Ohm's law, where the resistance R equals $\rho\Delta x/A$ (Chapter 3, Section 3.2), we obtain

$$R^j = \frac{\rho^j \Delta x^j}{A^j} \tag{9.13}$$

where ρ^j is the hydraulic resistivity of the xylem tissue of length Δx^j and cross-sectional area A^j. [We note that by Eqs. 9.12 and 9.13, ρ^j satisfies $J^j_{V_w} = (1/\rho^j)\Delta\Psi^j/\Delta x$, where $\Delta\Psi^j$ is often replaced by ΔP^j.]

For many plants containing xylem vessels, ρ^{stem} is 100 to 500 MPa s m^{-2}; the hydraulic resistivity can be higher for plants with tracheids, such as conifers; for example, ρ^{stem} can be 1600 MPa s m^{-2} for certain ferns (Woodhouse and Nobel, 1982; Tyree and Zimmermann, 2002; Table 9-5). Just as for the gas fluxes discussed in Chapter 8, Equations 9.12 and 9.13 can be recast in terms of conductivities or conductances, which are the reciprocals of resistivities and resistances, respectively (Eq. 8-1).[5] Also, the hydraulic conductance per unit length, K_h (equal to $\Delta x^j/R^j$; m^4 s^{-1} MPa^{-1}) is often determined for the xylem. By Equation 9.12, K_h is equal to $J^j_{V_w}A^j/(\Delta\Psi^j/\Delta x^j)$, which is the volume flow rate per unit water potential gradient (Table 9-5). K_h is useful for comparing xylem characteristics among species, as it removes the influence of differences in length.

For a stem xylem cross-sectional area of 5 mm^2 for the young sunflower and tomato plants with a stem length of 0.3 m and an R^{stem} of 2.2×10^7 MPa s m^{-3}, Equation 9.13 indicates that the hydraulic resistivity for the stem xylem is

$$\begin{aligned}\rho^{\text{stem xylem}} &= \frac{R^{\text{stem}} A^{\text{stem xylem}}}{\Delta x^{\text{stem}}} \\ &= \left(2.2 \times 10^7 \text{ MPa s m}^{-3}\right)\frac{(5 \times 10^{-6} \text{ m}^2)}{(0.3 \text{ m})} \\ &= 370 \text{ MPa s m}^{-2}\end{aligned}$$

A 10-m-tall tree can have 500 times more xylem area and many more xylem vessels with overall xylem lengths that are much greater than those for the tomato or sunflower plants, leading to an R^{stem} of 1.5×10^6 MPa s m^{-3}. The tree has a much higher hydraulic conductance per unit length, (10 m)/(1.5×10^6 MPa s m^{-3}) or 6.7×10^{-6} m^4 s^{-1} MPa^{-1}, than the tomato or sunflower, whose K_h (1.4×10^{-8} m^4 s^{-1} MPa^{-1}) is at the lower end of the range measured for a series of young stems and leaf petioles (Schulte et al., 1989a).

5. Hydraulic conductivities ($1/\rho^j$) also can be used for the phloem; e.g., the phloem hydraulic conductivity can be about 1×10^{-4} m^2 s^{-1} MPa^{-1} for herbaceous species and 4×10^{-3} m^2 s^{-1} MPa^{-1} for trees; pressure gradients along the phloem are generally much higher in small herbaceous species than in tall trees.

We can relate the hydraulic resistivity of the xylem to flow characteristics predicted by Poiseuille's law [Eq. 9.11b; $J_V = -(r^2/8\eta])\ \partial P/\partial x$]. Specifically, we note that $J^j_{V_w}$ is equal to $(1/\rho_j)(\Delta\Psi^j/\Delta x^j)$ by the definition of resistivity in Equation 8.1c. Upon comparing Poiseuille's law with this form, and identifying $-\partial P/\partial x$ with $\Delta\Psi^j/\Delta x^j$, we can equate ρ^j to $8\eta/r^2$. Using a representative value for $\rho^{\text{stem xylem}}$ and the viscosity of water at 20°C (see Appendix I), we then have

$$r = \sqrt{\frac{8\eta}{\rho^{\text{stem xylem}}}} = \sqrt{\frac{(8)(1.0 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{Pa s})}{(370 \times 10^{6}\ \text{Pa s m}^{-2})}}$$
$$= 5 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m} \quad (5\ \mu\text{m})$$

which is a possible effective radius of xylem elements. Owing to the presence of cell walls and to nonconducting cells, the lumens of the xylem vessels might correspond to only about one-fourth of the cross-sectional area of the xylem tissue in the stem, $A^{\text{stem xylem}}$. A lumen radius of 10 µm for one-fourth the area has the same J_V and the same $\partial P/\partial x$ as pores that are 5 µm in radius occupying the entire area (consider the r^2 factor in Eq. 9.11b). Other complications, such as the resistance of the perforation plates, cause the effective radius to be smaller than the actual radius. We should also note that, because of the inverse relationship between $\rho^{\text{stem xylem}}$ and r^2, the larger xylem vessels tend to conduct proportionally more than the smaller ones in a given stem. Finally, recall that we used Poiseuille's law to equate the soil hydraulic conductivity coefficient L^{soil} to $r^2/8\eta$ (see Section 9.4D), which is analogous to our current consideration of a reciprocally related quantity, the xylem hydraulic resistivity.

For the example in Table 9-3, the drop in water potential is 0.2 MPa across the soil part of the pathway, 0.1 MPa from the root surface to the root xylem, and 0.2 MPa along the xylem—values that suggest the relative magnitudes of the three resistances involved ($\Delta\Psi^j \cong \text{constant} \times R^j$; Eq. 9.12). As the soil dries, its hydraulic conductivity decreases (the hydraulic resistivity increases), and the water potential drop in the soil usually becomes larger. For soybean plants grown in pots, R^{soil} becomes greater than R^{plant} below a Ψ^{soil} of −1.1 MPa (Blizzard and Boyer, 1980). R^{plant} can also increase as Ψ^{leaf} decreases, perhaps because the entry of air breaks the water continuity (i.e., cavitation occurs) in some of the xylem vessels, which thus become nonconducting. The rapid uptake of soil water by the root during those parts of the day when transpiration is particularly high can also lead to a large hydrostatic pressure gradient in the soil [consider Darcy's law (Eq. 9.7)], and $\Delta\Psi^{\text{soil}}$ from the bulk soil to the root then increases. In fact, R^{soil} is often the largest resistance for that part of the soil–plant–atmosphere continuum in which water moves predominantly as a liquid (water can also move as a vapor in the soil). The resistance of the root epidermis, cortex, and endodermis is generally somewhat less than R^{soil}. The resistance of the xylem is proportional to its length. In conifers and various other plants, the conducting area of the stem xylem is often proportional to the leaf area. For the same transpiration rate per unit leaf area and the same xylem element dimensions, the pressure gradient for Poiseuille flow is then similar; that is, a higher $J_V^{\text{leaves}}A^{\text{leaves}}$ is compensated by a higher $A^{\text{stem xylem}}$ (see Eqs. 9.12 and 9.13), so $\Delta\Psi/\Delta x$ along the stem does not need to change.

9.5D. Root–Soil Air Gap and Hydraulic Conductances

As the soil dries, roots often shrink in the radial direction, leading to the development of a root–soil air gap (Fig. 9-19). Hence less contact occurs between a root and the water adjacent to soil particles, leading to a hydraulic resistance at the root–soil interface. Such a resistance can decrease water movement from a root to a drying soil and thereby help prevent excessive water loss from plants during the initial phases of drought (Fig. 9-20).

Let us designate the water potential of the bulk soil (at a distance r_{bulk} from the center of a root) by Ψ_{bulk}, that in the soil at the root–soil air gap (a distance of r_{gap} from the center of the root) by Ψ_{gap}, that at the root surface (r_{root}) by Ψ_{surface}, and that in the root xylem by Ψ_{xylem} (Fig. 9-19). Using Darcy's law for cylindrical symmetry (Eq. 9.8) with $L_{\text{eff}}^{\text{soil}}$ equal to $L^{\text{soil}}/[r_{\text{root}}\ln(r_{\text{bulk}}/r_{\text{gap}})]$ representing the conductance for the soil part of the pathway, L^{gap} for the conductance of water vapor across the root–soil air gap, and L_P^{root} for the hydraulic conductivity of the root (see Eq. 3.39), we obtain for the steady state

$$\begin{aligned} J_V &= L_{\text{eff}}^{\text{soil}}(\Psi_{\text{bulk}} - \Psi_{\text{gap}}) \\ &= L^{\text{gap}}(\Psi_{\text{gap}} - \Psi_{\text{surface}}) \\ &= L_P^{\text{root}}(\Psi_{\text{surface}} - \Psi_{\text{xylem}}) \\ &= L^{\text{overall}}(\Psi_{\text{bulk}} - \Psi_{\text{xylem}}) \end{aligned} \tag{9.14}$$

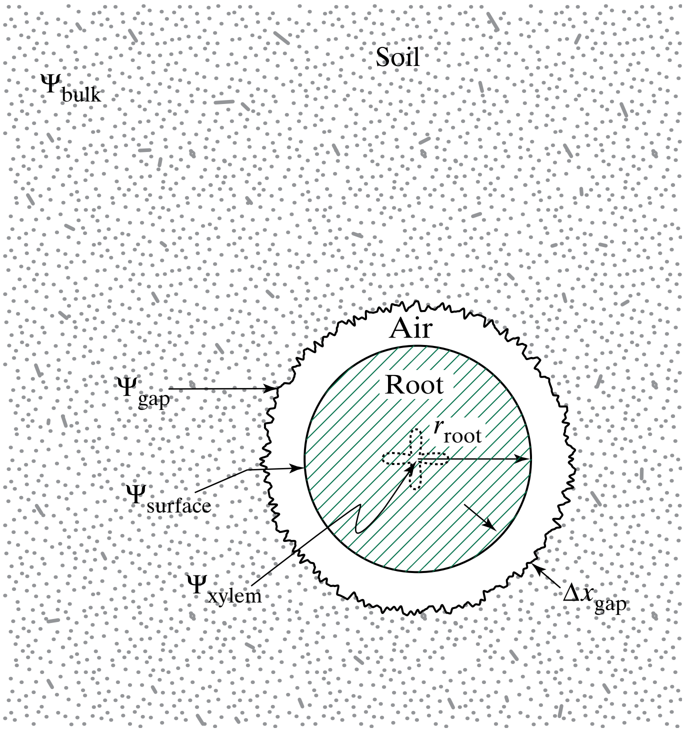


Figure 9-19. Water potentials and distances involved as a root–soil air gap is created by the radial shrinkage of a root during drought.

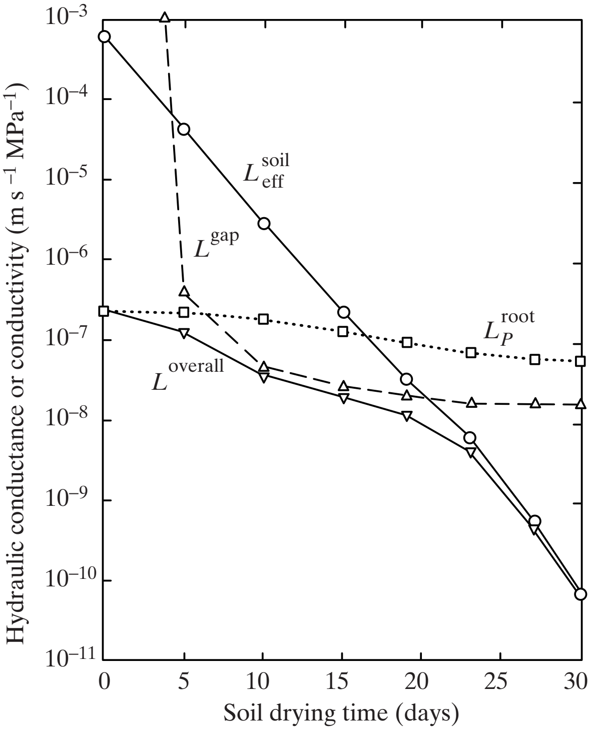


Figure 9-20. Changes in the hydraulic conductances of the root (L_P^{root}), the root–soil air gap (L^{gap}), the soil ($L_{\text{eff}}^{\text{soil}}$), and the overall pathway (L^{overall}; see Eq. 9.14) as the soil dries over a 30-day period. Note that L^{overall} is dominated by L_P^{root} over the first 6 days of drought, by L^{gap} from 6 to 20 days, and later by $L_{\text{eff}}^{\text{soil}}$. [Data for young roots of desert succulents are adapted from Nobel and Cui (1992a); used by permission of Oxford University Press.]

where the volume flux density J_V is expressed at the root surface for each part of the pathway (hence all such J_V's are equal in the steady state). For the three conductances in series, the reciprocal of the overall conductance from the bulk soil to the root xylem, $1/L^{\text{overall}}$, equals the sum of the reciprocals of the individual conductances, $1/L_{\text{eff}}^{\text{soil}} + 1/L^{\text{gap}} + 1/L_P^{\text{root}}$(see Eq. 8.13a). Assuming that water vapor diffuses across a root–soil air gap over a distance of Δx_{gap} (Fig. 9-19), L^{gap} can be estimated from

$$L^{\text{gap}} = \frac{\overline{V}_w^2 D_{wv} P_{wv}^*}{(RT)^2 \Delta x_{\text{gap}}} \qquad (9.15)$$

where $\overline{V}_w$ is the partial molal volume of water, D_{wv} is the diffusion coefficient of water vapor, P_{wv}^* is the water vapor pressure in air at saturation, R is the gas constant, and T is the absolute temperature. Equation 9.15 assumes isothermal conditions and roots that are located concentrically in the root–soil air gap but can approximate more realistic conditions (Nobel and Cui, 1992a, 1992b).

Under wet conditions and for young roots of desert succulents, L^{overall} is determined essentially only by L_P^{root}, the root hydraulic conductivity

(Fig. 9-20). In particular, L^{gap} is infinite before any root shrinkage occurs and $L_{\text{eff}}^{\text{soil}}$ is over 1000-fold larger than L_P^{root}. As the soil dries, the roots shrink radially and a root–soil air gap develops, which causes L^{gap} to decrease and to become the main limiter for water movement (Fig. 9-20). This occurs when Ψ_{bulk} becomes less than Ψ_{xylem}, so water flow is out of the root to the drier soil. In this phase, L^{gap} therefore helps prevent water loss from the plant. As the soil continues to dry, root shrinkage eventually ceases so L^{gap} becomes constant, as does L_P^{root} after a few-fold decrease, but L^{soil} and hence $L_{\text{eff}}^{\text{soil}}$ continue to decrease (Fig. 9-20). This causes L^{overall} to continue to decrease as the soil dries, as consequently also does the rate of water loss from the plant during prolonged drought, which can last 6 months or longer for certain desert succulents. Moreover, this continual and large decrease in the overall water conductance, L^{overall}, as the soil dries also limits water loss during shorter droughts for mesophytic plants.

When the soil is rewet by rainfall or irrigation, $L_{\text{eff}}^{\text{soil}}$ increases as soon as the water penetrates to the relevant layers of the soil (usually in a matter of hours). L^{gap} increases as the root takes up water and reswells (if water fills the air gap, Fig. 9-19, then L^{gap} would become infinite). Also, the rehydration of the root can cause the pathway across the root cortex to become more conducting, raising L_P^{root}. Thus in a few days, L^{overall} can increase to the maximum value that it had under wet conditions (Fig. 9-20), leading to substantial water uptake by the plant under favorable moisture conditions with soil water energetically available.

9.5E. Capacitance and Time Constants

The daily changes in hydrostatic pressure in the xylem can cause fluctuations in stem diameter. When the transpiration rate is high, the large tension within the xylem vessels is first transmitted to the water in the cell walls of the xylem vessels, then to communicating water in adjacent cells, and eventually all of the way across the stem. The decrease in hydrostatic pressure can thereby cause a tree trunk to contract during the daytime. At night, the hydrostatic pressure in the xylem increases and may even become positive (Section 9.5A), and the trunk diameter increases, usually by 0.3 to 1%. Such changes in diameter, and therefore volume, represent net release of water during the day and net storage at night. The daily change in water content of a plant can equal the amount of water transpired in a few minutes to a few hours during the daytime. These changes in water content correspond to capacitance effects that are superimposed on the resistance network for water flow.

We begin by comparing the daily transpiration per unit ground area to the daily fluctuations in water content of tree trunks. We will suppose that the tree trunks average 0.2 m in diameter and 10 m in height, are 4 m apart in a rectangular grid, and transpire a depth of water of 4 mm day^{-1}, nearly all of which occurs during the daytime. Each tree thus transpires

$$(4\text{ m})(4\text{ m})(0.004\text{ m day}^{-1}) = 0.064\text{ m}^3\text{ day}^{-1}$$

during the daytime. If a 1% diurnal change in diameter reflects volumetric changes in water content, the water volume in each trunk would vary daily by

$$\Delta V = \pi r_1^2 l - \pi r_2^2 l = (\pi)[(0.100\ \text{m})^2 - (0.099\ \text{m})^2](10\ \text{m}) = 0.0063\ \text{m}^3$$

Thus the change in water content of the trunk could supply (0.0063 m^3)/(0.064 m^3)(100%) or 10% of the daily water loss, which corresponds to about 1 hour's worth of the water transpired during the daytime. As a consequence of water coming from the water storage capacity or *capacitance* of the trunk, absorption of water by the roots can lag behind the loss of water by leaf transpiration.

As transpiration increases after stomatal opening at dawn, the leaf water content is lowered, the leaf water potential decreases, and the cellular hydrostatic pressure decreases; concomitantly, the average osmotic pressure increases slightly (the same number of solutes in a smaller water volume), thereby further decreasing the leaf water potential ($\Psi = P - \Pi + \rho_w gh$; Eq. 2.13a). During this period, water uptake from the soil does not balance transpiration by the leaves, so the steady-state relation embodied in Equation 9.12 ($J_{V_w}^i A^j \cong$ constant) is not obeyed. The water content of the leaves may decrease 10% early in the daytime. For a leaf area index of 5 and leaves that are 300 μm thick consisting of 70% water by volume (Chapter 8, Section 8.3F), the change in water content corresponds to a water thickness of

$$\Delta t_{\text{water}} = (5)(300 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m})(0.70)(0.10) = 1.1 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{m}$$

which is 0.11 mm. This represents 3% of the daily transpiration of 4 mm, or about 20 minutes of daytime water loss. Roots can also exhibit daily changes in water content. For some species, roots may have more biomass than the leaves and the trunk together; in such cases, roots may store the equivalent of a few hours' worth of water for transpiration.

Capacitance effects can also be seen on a longer time scale. For instance, the *sapwood* between the vascular cambium on the outside and the *heartwood* on the inside can represent 20 to 40% of the radial dimension of a mature tree and even more for a young tree or sapling (heartwood, which represents the older central xylem and often is darkly pigmented, has no living cells or conduction capacity). The sapwood of trees can store about 1 week's worth of water at moderate transpiration rates (even longer in drought periods with lowered rates of transpiration). A cactus stem (see Fig. 7-12) can store many months' worth of transpirable water during drought periods when stomatal opening is severely limited.

We will define the water capacitance C^j of plant part j as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} C^j &= \frac{\text{change in water content of component } j}{\text{change in average water protenial along component } j} \\ &= \frac{\Delta V_w^j}{\Delta \overline{\Psi}^j} \end{aligned} \qquad (9.16)$$

where V_w^j is the volume of water in component j. We estimated that a tree trunk might change its water content by 0.0063 m^3 in a day. This can be

accompanied by a change in the average xylem water potential from −0.3 MPa at dawn (the value of Ψ^{soil} at 10 mm from the roots; Table 9-3) to −0.7 MPa (average of −0.6 MPa and −0.8 MPa, the values of Ψ at the two ends of the xylem indicated in Table 9-3), or −0.4 MPa overall. By Equation 9.16, C^{trunk} is then

$$C^{trunk} = \frac{(-0.0063\ \text{m}^3)}{(-0.4\ \text{MPa})} = 1.6 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{m}^3\ \text{MPa}^{-1}$$

The much smaller stem of a young tomato or sunflower plant has a much lower water capacitance; for example, its C^{stem} might be 1000-fold less than that for a tree trunk. [To compare water storage characteristics more equitably among plants differing in size, instead of C^j in m^3 of water per MPa (Eq. 9.16), a relative capacitance in kg or m^3 of water per m^3 of plant volume and per MPa can be used.]

Upon comparing Equation 9.16 with Equation 3.2 ($Q = C\Delta E$, where Q is the net charge accumulated leading to an electrical potential change of ΔE across a region of capacitance C), we note that $\overline{\Psi^j}$ in Equation 9.16 takes the place of ΔE in electrical circuits. In fact, we can again borrow from electrical circuit analysis to indicate how the initial average water potential along some component, $\overline{\Psi^j_0}$, will approach a final average water potential, $\overline{\Psi^j_\infty}$:

$$\overline{\Psi^j} - \overline{\Psi^j_\infty} = (\overline{\Psi^j_0} - \overline{\Psi^j_\infty})e^{-t/\tau^j} \tag{9.17}$$

which is identical to Equation 7.25 except that $\overline{\Psi^j}$ replaces T^{surf}.

Similar to the time constant for thermal changes (Eq. 7.26), we identify a time constant τ^j for changes in the average water potential of component j:

$$\tau^j = R^j_s C^j \tag{9.18}$$

where C^j is defined by Equation 9.16 and R^j_s represents the effective resistance from the water storage region to the main transpiration pathway (Fig. 9-21). This τ^j indicates the time required for the water potential to change to within $1/e$ or 37% of its final value (Fig. 4-11). As C^j decreases, the changes in Ψ^j occur faster (Eqs. 9.17 and 9.18). In the limit of no water storage in a plant

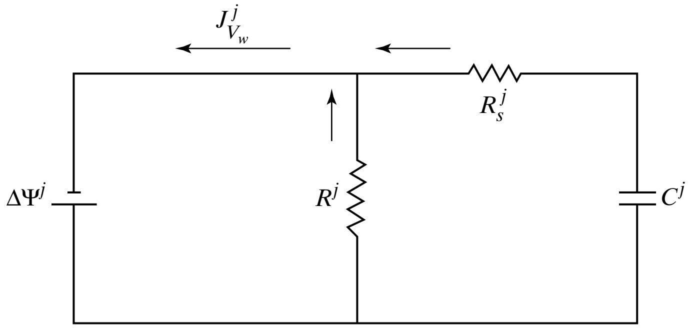


Figure 9-21. Electrical circuit portraying a plant component that can store water. The battery represents the drop in water potential along component j. The currents (arrows) represent the flux densities of water, which can come across R^j as well as from storage in capacitor C^j and then across R^j_s.

(all C^j's equal to zero; see Eq. 9.16), the water potentials at various locations in the plant instantaneously adjust to the new steady-state situation.

Because water can be stored all along the stem, C^{stem} equals the sum of the capacitances for individual parts of the pathway arranged in parallel ($C^j = \sum_i C_i^j$ for capacitances in parallel). When $\Delta\Psi^j$ is the same all along the pathway, we can then simply add the component capacitances; otherwise, we can let C^j equal $\sum_i \Delta\overline{\Psi}_i^j C_i^j / \Delta\overline{\Psi}^j$, where $\Delta\overline{\Psi}_i^j$ is the average water potential change along part i of component j that has capacitance C_i^j. The accompanying resistances of individual parts of the pathway, $R_{s_i}^j$, are greater than the overall resistance, R_s^j ($1/R_s^j = \sum_i 1/R_{s_i}^j$ for resistances in parallel). The overall resistance for water movement from the water storage region to the xylem in the stem can be about 20% of the stem xylem resistance defined by Equation 9.12. Such movement can be via apoplastic or symplastic pathways, with the symplastic pathway dominating in many cases.

The time constant $R_s^j C^j$ (Eq. 9-18) indicates how rapidly the average water potential along component j changes after changes in water storage in C^j. Using the values introduced previously for the young tomato or sunflower and Equation 9.18, we obtain a time constant for the stem part of the pathway:

$$\tau^{\text{stem}} = (0.2)\left(2.2 \times 10^7 \text{ MPa s m}^{-3}\right)\left(1.6 \times 10^{-5} \text{ m}^3 \text{ MPa}^{-1}\right) = 70 \text{ s}$$

indicating that such stem water potentials respond relatively rapidly to environmentally induced changes in xylary water flow. For the 10-m-tall tree and again assuming that R_s^{stem} is equal to $0.2R^{\text{stem}}$, by Equation 9.18 the stem (trunk) time constant is

$$\tau^{\text{stem}} = (0.2)\left(1.5 \times 10^6 \text{ MPa s m}^{-3}\right)\left(1.6 \times 10^{-2} \text{ m}^3 \text{ MPa}^{-1}\right) = 4.8 \times 10^3 \text{ s}$$

which equals 80 minutes. Thus considerable time is required to move water from the sapwood into the trunk xylem of a tree. In other words, because the trunk has a relatively high water capacitance, the peak xylary sap flow at the base of the trunk can lag several hours behind the peak transpiration of a tree. For the barrel cactus *Ferocactus acanthodes*, lags of 4 hours can occur between the time of maximum transpiration and the time of maximum water uptake from the soil (Schulte et al., 1989b). The increases in osmotic pressure (represented in electrical circuit analogs by voltage sources) that accompany nocturnal CO_2 uptake by the stem of this CAM plant (Fig. 8-15), and the accompanying increase in organic acids stored in the central vacuoles of its chlorophyll-containing chlorenchyma cells, also affect the internal redistribution of water, leading to a tendency for the hydrostatic pressure in the chlorenchyma to increase during the night and to decrease during the daytime.

9.5F. Daily Changes

We have already indicated certain daily changes that take place in the soil–plant–atmosphere continuum. For example, the soil temperature changes, which affects CO_2 evolution by respiration in soil microorganisms and in

root cells. The hydrostatic pressure in the xylem is more negative when the rate of transpiration is high, causing plants to decrease slightly in diameter during the daytime. All of these changes are direct or indirect consequences of the daily variation in sunlight. Of course, the rate of photosynthesis also changes during a day. Photosynthesis is affected not only by the photosynthetic photon flux (PPF) but also by the leaf temperature, which depends on the varying air temperature and net radiation balance for a leaf (see Chapter 7, Sections 7.1E and 7.2D).

Daily changes also occur in the water potentials in the soil–plant–atmosphere continuum. Let us consider a plant in a well-watered soil (Fig. 9-22). At night transpiration essentially ceases because the stomata close; the water potentials in the soil, a root, and a leaf may then all become nearly equal (and close to zero MPa). At dawn, the stomata open. Transpiration then removes water from the leaf, and Ψ^{leaf} decreases (Fig. 9-22). After a short lag, the length of which depends on the capacitances involved and the transpiration rate, Ψ^{root} begins to decrease, but only to about −0.3 MPa (Fig. 9-22) because plenty of water is initially available in the wet soil. At dusk, these changes in Ψ^{leaf} and Ψ^{root} are reversed. As soil moisture is lost, Ψ^{soil} becomes more negative day by day, so Ψ^{root} and Ψ^{leaf} also become more negative. (We are assuming that Ψ_{wv}^{air} remains essentially unchanged and is much lower than are the other water potentials.) As the soil becomes drier, a steeper gradient in water potential is necessary to sustain the water flow up to the root, and therefore the difference between Ψ^{soil} and Ψ^{root} becomes larger day by day (Fig. 9-22). On the other hand, $\Psi^{\text{leaf}} - \Psi^{\text{root}}$, to which the

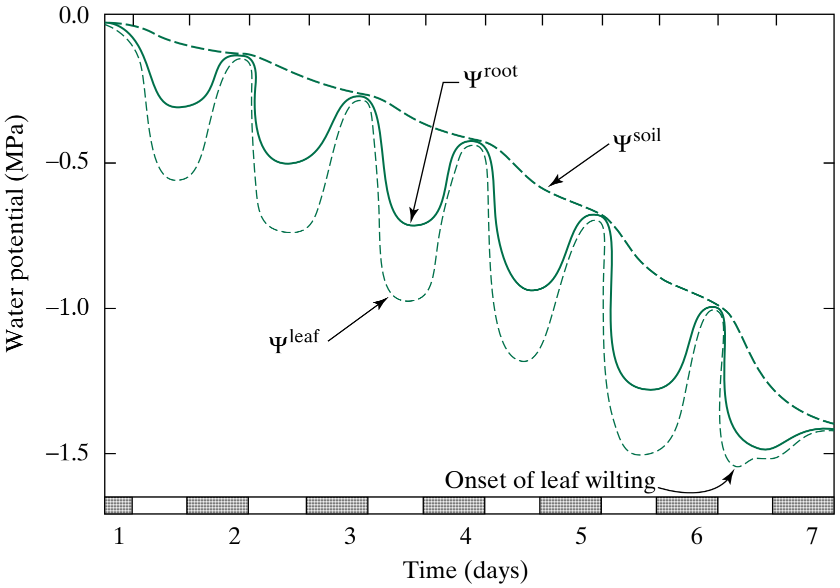


Figure 9-22. Schematic representation of daily changes in the water potentials in the soil, a root, and a leaf of a plant in an initially wet soil that dries over a 1-week period for a rapidly draining sandy soil. Ψ^{soil} is the water potential in the bulk soil, Ψ^{root} is that in the root xylem, and Ψ^{leaf} is the value in a mesophyll cell. Shaded regions indicate night. [Adapted by permission from Slatyer (1967).].

transpiration rate is proportional by Equation 9.12, is similar for the first 4 days. As Ψ^{leaf} becomes more negative on ensuing days, the leaf turgor decreases, and eventually the hydrostatic pressure in the mesophyll cells of the leaf becomes zero at some time during the day, such as when Ψ^{leaf} becomes −1.5 MPa in response to the decreasing Ψ^{soil}. The leaf thus wilts but recovers at night. Permanent wilting and damage to the leaf may result when Ψ^{soil} becomes lower on subsequent days. This portrayal of successive daily changes of Ψ^{soil}, Ψ^{root}, and Ψ^{leaf} illustrates that even such nonequilibrium processes in the soil–plant–atmosphere continuum can be analyzed in terms of the water potential.

9.5G. Global Climate Change

Let us now examine global climate change in terms of the principles and the results that we have introduced. In Chapter 8 (Section 8.4A), we indicated that the mole fraction of atmospheric CO_2 is currently increasing by nearly 2 μmol mol^{-1} annually, reflecting primarily the burning of fossil fuels and secondarily other anthropogenic causes (such as cement manufacture, land clearing, and other land-use changes), and at the end of Chapter 8 (Section 8.5D) we indicated how the increasing atmospheric CO_2 level will affect leaf gas exchange (Fig. 9-23). For instance, a doubling of the 1990 atmospheric CO_2 mole fraction may occur by the end of the twenty-first century, which will increase net CO_2 uptake for leaves of C_3 plants (see Fig. 8-18) and CAM plants by enhancing the carboxylase activity of Rubisco and reducing its oxygenase activity (see Figs. 8-13 and 8-15), with little effect on C_4 plants (see Fig. 8-18). Partial stomatal closure generally occurs under elevated CO_2 levels, reducing transpiration and raising leaf temperatures somewhat. The water-use efficiency (Eq. 8.39) is thus predicted to increase substantially if the atmospheric CO_2 level doubles for leaves of plants representing all three

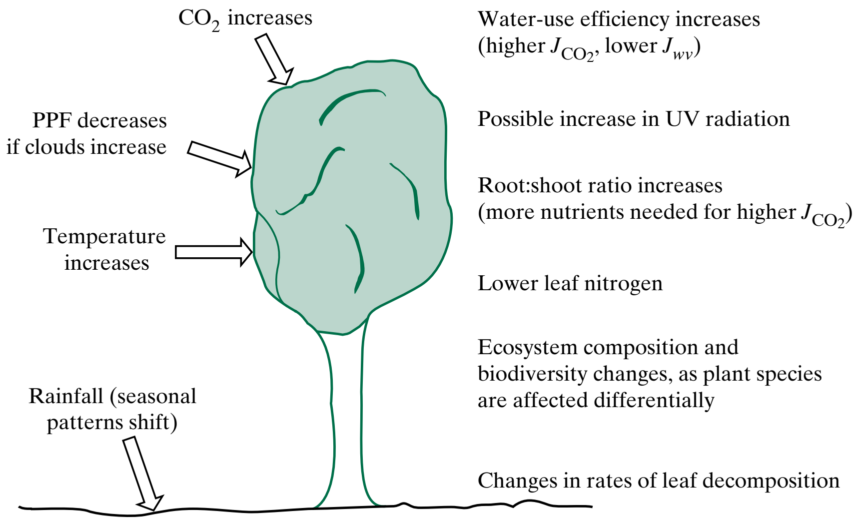


Figure 9-23. Environmental factors in global climate change that affect photosynthesis and transpiration plus some resulting plant and ecosystem changes.

photosynthetic pathways, with no penalty in water consumption (see Figs. 8-23 and 9-23). What is expected at the plant level and at the ecosystem level? Are other atmospheric gases that affect plant performance also expected to increase as part of global climate change?

CO_2 is called a "greenhouse" gas because its presence in the atmosphere leads to the absorption of longwave (infrared) radiation (Chapter 7, Section 7.1), whose energy is thereby trapped, analogous to the trapping of solar energy in a greenhouse. In particular, atmospheric greenhouse gases allow shortwave radiation from the sun (see Fig. 4-5) to pass through but absorb the longwave radiation emanating from the earth's surface, radiation whose temperature dependency is quantified by the Stefan–Boltzmann law (Eq. 6.18; also see Figs. 7-2 and 7-3). Based on calculations from computer models, an average worldwide temperature increase (Fig. 9-23) of about 3°C is predicted to accompany a doubling of the atmospheric CO_2 mole fraction. A 3°C increase in temperature would extend frost-free regions an average of 330 km poleward at a given elevation, which has major agricultural and ecological implications. The changing atmospheric temperatures will also affect air circulation patterns, leading to changes in the seasonality of precipitation and to changes in its overall amount. Any accompanying increases in cloud cover can reduce the PPF, which by itself would decrease leaf net CO_2 uptake (see Fig. 8-20). In any case, the resultant effects of changes in temperature, soil water, and PPF on net CO_2 uptake by leaves can be predicted (Fig. 9-23).

Most proposed ecosystem effects of global climate change are based on computer models using experimental CO_2 uptake and water loss data under current ambient conditions along with leaf and plant responses to elevated atmospheric CO_2 mole fractions measured in environmental chambers, field enclosures, and field sites with controlled releases of gaseous CO_2, usually over relatively short periods. Also, errors induced by scaling can occur. For instance, leaf-level measurements must be scaled up to the whole plant and plant responses must be scaled up to an ecosystem level (the scaling hierarchy is subcellular → cell → organ → plant → community → ecosystem → biosphere). Complex processes such as photosynthesis may not scale linearly between levels. Also, the species composition of ecosystems can change as the climate changes. Although forests occupy wide regions throughout the world, the large sizes of mature trees limit the experiments on such ecosystems; however, studies on selected tree seedlings and saplings may not correctly predict responses of mature trees in native forests, leading to further uncertainties.

Although CO_2 is the most important greenhouse gas, leading to about 60% of the projected atmospheric temperature increase, atmospheric levels of methane (CH_4), chlorofluorocarbons, and oxides of nitrogen are also rising. Methane, which is produced from many sources, including the processing and burning of fossil fuels, municipal landfills, ruminants, rice paddies, and natural wetlands, accounts for nearly 20% of the projected atmospheric temperature increase worldwide. Other changes that are occurring in the atmosphere include the destruction of stratospheric ozone, which leads to an increase in ultraviolet radiation (UV; see Table 4-1 and Fig. 9-23) reaching the earth's surface. The increase in UV (especially 290–330 nm) can

decrease photosynthesis, as has been demonstrated for short-term exposures of plants to high UV levels, and also can have deleterious effects on animals.

A rising atmospheric CO_2 level can change plants in many ways, such as changes in carbon partitioning and hence in community development. For instance, the root:shoot ratio (usually defined as the mass of the root system after drying in an oven divided by the dry mass of the shoot) will increase for most species (Fig. 9-23), especially when rooting volume is sufficient. The greater allocation of photosynthates to roots under elevated atmospheric CO_2 levels will cause greater exploration of the soil, which can lead to greater nitrogen uptake. However, increased atmospheric CO_2 mole fractions generally lead to lower leaf N per unit leaf area, reflecting lower Rubisco concentrations. Leaves developing under elevated CO_2 levels tend to be thicker with a higher A^{mes}/A (see Fig. 8-10), which by itself leads to a higher photosynthetic capacity. On the other hand, the amount of chlorophyll (see Fig. 5-2) per unit leaf dry mass tends to decrease as the atmospheric CO_2 level increases. The stimulation of leaf net CO_2 uptake when plants are shifted from the current ambient CO_2 levels to elevated ones (see Fig. 8-18) often decreases over a period of months, especially when other factors such as sink strength or nutrients become limiting. Species with indeterminate growth (i.e., growth not limited by the development of a reproductive structure) generally demonstrate greater flexibility to altered resource availability than do those with determinate growth. For instance, crops such as cotton (*Gossypium hirsutum*) and faba bean (*Vicia faba*) respond more to elevated CO_2 levels than does wheat (*Triticum aestivum*), which can have important agronomic implications. Where they are currently cultivated, rice (*Oryza sativa*) and wheat, currently the two most important grain crops, will have less net CO_2 uptake and less growth as air temperatures increase. The interactions among temperature, light, and soil water status with respect to photosynthesis, transpiration, plant growth, and productivity are usually quantified using computer simulations, again underscoring the importance of the experimental input data for predictions of plant changes during the twenty-first century.

Although the gas exchange responses of ecosystems to elevated CO_2 levels are less dramatic than are those of leaves of C_3 species, the rapid rise in the atmospheric CO_2 mole fraction should also cause major changes in ecosystems. For instance, the rate of change induced by humans is more rapid than is plant adaptation, so biodiversity as represented by the number of species in a particular ecosystem is expected to decrease. Specifically, increases in atmospheric CO_2, other greenhouse gases, and oxides of nitrogen will favor some species over others, which can lead to irreversible changes. The rates of litter decomposition, an important aspect of carbon and nutrient cycling at the ecosystem level, depend on soil temperature and soil moisture content, the former of which is expected to increase accompanying global climate change (Fig. 9-23). However, the lower N concentrations in leaves developing under elevated atmospheric CO_2 levels will tend to reduce the decomposition rates. Also, phytophageous insects are the major consumers in forests, especially four species in the order Lepidoptera, and their herbivory decreases as leaf N content decreases. These lowerings are in part compensated for by an increased release of N due to human

activities ranging from automotive exhausts to the manufacture of N fertilizers. Plants whose growth is severely nutrient limited may have little response to increases in the atmospheric CO_2 mole fraction but may respond to increases in the airborne nitrogen.

Remote sensing of optical reflections from leaves (see Fig. 7-4), measured from satellites and airplanes, can quantify the regions occupied by plants and can monitor their seasonal changes in biomass per unit ground area. In this regard, forests cover approximately one-third of the earth's land area but are responsible for 60% of terrestrial net CO_2 uptake and contain 85% of terrestrial biomass, so they are crucial at the biosphere level. When the atmospheric CO_2 mole fraction is increased, evapotranspiration (Eq. 9.2) tends to decrease, the growth season is extended, and senescence is delayed. Many interacting, sometimes compensating, factors must all be considered for accurate prediction of the consequences of rising atmospheric CO_2 levels and possible mitigation policies—a difficult but challenging task considering our current less-than-quantitative understanding of plants. However, an inescapable conclusion is that overall plant productivity will increase and ecosystem composition will change because of the rapid, human-induced increases in atmospheric mole fractions of CO_2, other greenhouse gases, and oxides of nitrogen, all of which affect plant performance.

What new applications of physics and chemistry might we expect in plant physiology in the future? Our quantitative approach can be expanded to include the interdependence of forces and fluxes, such as for gas exchange. The permeability coefficients for CO_2 crossing cellular and organelle membranes need to be determined. Nonisothermal conditions must be adequately handled. Of even greater potential impact is the application of a mathematical approach to the complex field of plant growth and development, including hormone action, differentiation, photomorphogenesis, reproduction, and senescence. Many aspects of plant ecology are also ripe for physicochemical explanations, especially regarding root function. Consideration of the multiple effects of global climate change on photosynthesis and plant growth from the cell level to ecosystems underscores the complexity of nature that we seek to understand. Mastery of basic principles and adoption of a problem-solving approach will help deal quantitatively with unresolved questions in these areas and also will allow us to predict plant responses to new environmental situations. Progress in any field requires some good fortune. However, in the words of Louis Pasteur, "Chance favors the prepared mind!"

9.6. Problems

9.1. Suppose that J_{wv} above some plant canopy reaches a peak value equivalent to 1.0 mm of water hour^{-1} during the daytime when the air temperature is 30°C and is 0.10 mm hour^{-1} at night when T^{ta} is 20°C. Assume that during the daytime the relative humidity decreases by 20% across the first 30 m of turbulent air and that the eddy diffusion coefficient halves at night because of a reduced ambient wind speed compared to during the daytime.

A. What are J_{wv} in mmol m^{-2} s^{-1} and Δc_{wv}^{ta} in mol m^{-3} (over the first 30 m above the canopy) during peak transpiration?

B. What is r_{wv}^{ta} (over the first 30 m) during peak transpiration and at night?
C. What is Δc_{wv}^{ta} at night in mol m^{-3}? To what drop in relative humidity does this correspond?
D. If J_{wv}/J_{CO_2} is -700 H_2O/CO_2 during peak transpiration, what are J_{CO_2} and $\Delta c_{CO_2}^{ta}$ then?
E. What is K_{CO_2} for the first 30 m of turbulent air at night?
F. How long would it take for water vapor to diffuse 1 m at night by eddy diffusion and by ordinary diffusion? Assume that Equation 1.6 ($x_{1/e}^2 = 4D_j t_{1/e}$) applies, where D_{wv} is 2.4×10^{-5} m^2 s^{-1} at 20°C, and that K_{wv} has the value averaged over the first 30 m of turbulent air.

9.2. Suppose that the foliar absorption coefficient is 0.7 for trees with an average leaf area index of 8.0.
A. If the light compensation point for CO_2 fixation is at a PPF of 8 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1}, what are the cumulative leaf areas per unit ground area for light compensation when 2000, 200, 20, and 0 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1} are incident on the canopy?
B. Suppose that J_{wv}/J_{CO_2} for the soil is 200 H_2O/CO_2, that 90% of the water vapor passing out of the canopy comes from the leaves, and that the net photosynthetic rate for the forest (using CO_2 from above the canopy as well as from the soil) corresponds to 20 kg of carbohydrate hectare^{-1} hour^{-1} (use conversion factor in Table 8-2). If J_{wv} from the soil is 0.6 mmol m^{-2} s^{-1}, what are the J_{CO_2}'s up from the soil and down into the canopy?
C. What is the absolute value of J_{wv}/J_{CO_2} above the canopy under the conditions of B?
D. When the leaves are randomly distributed with respect to distance above the ground and the trees are 16 m tall, at what level does the maximum upward flux of CO_2 occur when a PPF of 200 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1} is incident on the canopy?
E. If the net rate of photosynthesis is proportional to PPF, about where does $c_{CO_2}^{ta}$ achieve a minimum? Assume that the conditions are as in B and D and that the maximal upward J_{CO_2} is 5.0 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1}. Hint: Note that in the current case the PPF halves every 2 m downward in the vegetation.

9.3. A horizontal xylem element has a cross-sectional area of 0.004 mm^2 and conducts water at 20°C at a rate of 20 mm^3 hour^{-1}.
A. What is the mean speed of the fluid in the xylem element?
B. What pressure gradient is necessary to cause such a flow?
C. If the pressure gradient remained the same, but cell walls with interstices 20 nm across filled the xylem element, what would be the mean speed of fluid movement? Assume that the entire area of the cell walls is available for conduction.

9.4. A horizontal sieve tube of the phloem has an effective radius of 10 μm. Assume that $D_{sucrose}$ in the phloem solution, which has a viscosity of 1.5 mPa s, is 0.3×10^{-9} m^2 s^{-1} at 20°C.
A. If there is no flow in the sieve tube and a thin layer of ^{14}C-sucrose is inserted, how long will it take by diffusion for the radioactive label at

10 mm and at 1 m to be 37% of the value at the plane of insertion? Hint: Consider Equation 1.6.

B. If there is a pressure gradient of –0.02 MPa m^{-1} that leads to Poiseuille flow in the phloem, what is J_V there?

C. For the conditions of B, how long does it take on average for sucrose to move 10 mm and 1 m in the sieve tube (ignore concomitant diffusion)? Compare your values with answers to A.

D. For the pressure gradient in B, what would J_V be in a vertical sieve tube?

9.5. Suppose that L^{soil} is 1×10^{-11} and 2×10^{-16} $m^2\,s^{-1}\,Pa^{-1}$ when Ψ^{soil} is −0.01 and −1.4 MPa, respectively. For a plant in the wet soil, J_V^{xylem} is 2 mm s^{-1} and Ψ^{leaf} is –0.2 MPa for a leaf 3 m above the ground. Assume that the roots are 3 mm in diameter and that their surface area is five times larger than one side of the leaves and 10^5 times larger than the conducting area of the xylem. Assume that all temperatures are 20°C and ignore all osmotic pressures.

A. What are the radii of curvature at hemispherical air–liquid interfaces in the wet soil and in the dry soil?

B. If water moves a distance of 8 mm to reach the root, what is the drop in hydrostatic pressure over that interval in the wet soil?

C. Suppose that the root xylem is arranged concentrically in a ring 500 μm below the root surface. If the average conductivity of the epidermis, cortex, endodermis, and xylem cell walls in the root is like that of the dry soil, what is the decrease in hydrostatic pressure across them?

D. If the water in the leaf xylem is in equilibrium with that in the vacuoles of mesophyll cells, what is the average hydrostatic pressure gradient in the xylem for the wet soil (assume that A^{xylem} is constant throughout the plant)?

E. If A^{mes}/A is 20 and the cell wall pores are 10 nm in diameter and 1 μm long, what ΔP along them will account for the rate of transpiration for the plant in the wet soil?

F. If the relative humidity above the dry soil is increased to 99%, what is J_V^{xylem} then?

9.6. Consider a tree with a leaf area index of 6 and a crown diameter of 6 m. The trunk is 3 m tall, has a mean cross-sectional area of 0.10 m^2 of which 5% is xylem tissue, and varies from an average water potential along its length of −0.1 MPa at dawn to −0.5 MPa in the steady state during the daytime.

A. If the average water vapor flux density of the leaves is 1 mmol $m^{-2}\,s^{-1}$, what is the transpiration rate of the tree in $m^3\,s^{-1}$?

B. How long could such a transpiration rate be supported by water from the leaves, if the volume of water in the leaves per unit ground area changes from an equivalent depth of 1.0 mm to 0.8 mm?

C. What is R^{trunk} if the water potential at the base is –0.3 MPa during the daytime?

D. What is the hydraulic resistivity and the hydraulic conductivity of the trunk?

E. What is the capacitance and the time constant for water release from the trunk, if stored water equivalent to 0.8% of the trunk volume enters the transpiration stream? Assume that the resistance involved is the same as R^{trunk}.

9.7. References and Further Readings

Adamson, A.W., and Gast, A.P. 1997. *Physical Chemistry of Surfaces*, 6th ed. Wiley, New York.

Blizzard, W.E., and Boyer, J.S. 1980. Comparative resistance of the soil and the plant to water transport. *Plant Physiol.* **66:** 809–814.

Caldwell, M.M. 1976. Root extension and water absorption. In: Lange, O.L., Kappen, L., and Schulze, E.-D. (Eds.), *Water and Plant Life: Problems and Modern Approaches, Ecological Studies.* **19.** Springer Verlag, Berlin, pp. 63–85.

Calkin, H.W., Gibson, A.C., and Nobel, P.S. 1986. Biophysical model of xylem conductance in tracheids of the fern *Pteris vittata*. *J. Exp. Bot.* **37:** 1054–1064.

Carlquist, S. 2001. *Comparative Wood Anatomy*: *Systematic, Ecological, and Evolutionary Aspects of Dicotyledon Wood*, 2nd ed. Springer Verlag, Berlin.

Cronshaw, J., Lucas, W.J., and Giaquinta, R.T. 1985. *Phloem Transport*. Liss, New York.

Darcy, H. 1856. *Les Fontaines Publiques de la Ville de Dijon*. Dalmont, Paris.

Fitter, A., and Hay, R.K.M. 2002. *Environmental Physiology of Plants*, 3rd ed. Academic Press, San Diego, CA.

Fox, R.W., McDonald, A.T., and Pritchard, P.J. 2008. *Introduction to Fluid Mechanics*, 7th ed. Wiley, Hoboken, NJ.

Gartner, B.L. (Ed.) 1995. *Plant Stems*: *Physiology and Functional Morphology*. Academic Press, San Diego, CA.

Hillel, D. 2004. *Introduction to Environmental Soil Physics.* Academic Press, Amsterdam.

Hirose, T. 2005. Development of the Monsi–Saeki theory on canopy structure and function. *Ann. Bot.* **95:** 483–494.

Hodáňová, D. 1979. Sugar beet canopy photosynthesis as limited by leaf age and irradiance. Estimation by models. *Photosynthetica* **13:** 376–385.

Jones, H.G. 1992. *Plants and Microclimate: A Quantitative Approach to Environmental Plant Physiology*, 2nd ed. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK.

Jury, W.A., and Horton, R. 2004. *Soil Physics*, 6th ed. Wiley, Hoboken, NJ.

Katerji, N., and Rana, G. 2008. *Crop Evapotranspiration Measurements and Estimation in the Mediterranean Region*. CRA-SCA, Bari, Italy.

Kirschbaum, M.U.F. 2004. Direct and indirect climate change effects on photosynthesis and transpiration. *Plant Biol.* **6:** 242–253.

Kramer, P.J., and Boyer, J.S. 1995. *Water Relations of Plants and Soils.* Academic Press, San Diego, CA.

Larcher, W. 2003. *Physiological Plant Ecology*, 4th ed. Springer Verlag, Berlin.

Lemon, E., Stewart, D.W., and Shawcroft, R.W. 1971. The sun's work in a cornfield. *Science* **174:** 374–378.

Mengel, K., and Kirkby, E.A. (Eds.) 2001. *Principles of Plant Nutrition*, 5th ed. Kluwer, Dordrecht.

Monsi, M., and Saeki, T. 1953. Über den Lichtfaktor in den Pflanzengesellschaften und seine Bedeutung für die Stoffproduktion. *Jpn. J. Bot.* **14:** 22–52.

Morison, J.I.L., and Morecraft, M. (Eds.) 2006. *Plant Growth and Climate Change.* Blackwell, London.

Münch, E. 1930. *Die Stoftbewegungen in der Pflanze.* Fischer, Jena, Germany.

Niklas, K.J. 1994. *Plant Allometry: The Scaling of Form and Process.* University of Chicago Press, Chicago, IL.

Nobel, P.S., and Cui, M. 1992a. Hydraulic conductances of the soil, the root–soil air gap, and the root: Changes for desert succulents in drying soil. *J. Exp. Bot.* **43:** 319–326.

Nobel, P.S., and Cui, M. 1992b. Prediction and measurement of gap water vapor conductance for roots located concentrically and eccentrically in air gaps. *Plant Soil* **145:** 157–166.

Nobel, P.S., and Long, S.P. 1985. Canopy structure and light interception. In: Coombs, J., Hall, D. O., Long, S.P., and Scurlock, J.M.O. (Eds.), *Techniques in Bioproductivity and Photosynthesis*, 2nd ed. Pergamon, Oxford, UK, pp. 41–49.

Nobel, P.S., Andrade, J.L., Wang, N., and North, G. 1994. Water potentials for developing cladodes and fruits of a succulent plant, including xylem-versus-phloem implications for water movement. *J. Exp. Bot.* **281:** 1801–1807.

Oke, T.R. 1987. *Boundary Layer Climates*, 2nd ed. Methuen, London.

Orcutt, D.M., and Nilsen, E.T. 2000. *The Physiology of Plants Under Stress: Soil and Biotic Factors.* Wiley, New York.

Pallardy, S.G., and Kozlowski, T.T. 2008. *Physiology of Woody Plants*, 3rd ed. Elsevier, Amsterdam.

Passioura, J.B. 1988. Water transport in and to roots. *Annu. Rev. Plant Physiol. Plant Mol. Biol.* **39:** 245–265.

Patrick, J.W. 1997. Phloem unloading: Sieve element unloading and post-sieve element transport. *Annu. Rev. Plant Physiol. Plant Mol. Biol.* **48:** 191–222.

Pattey, E., Strachan, I.B., Desjardins, R.L., and Massheder, J. 2002. Measuring nighttime CO_2 flux over terrestrial ecosystems using eddy covariance and nocturnal boundary layer methods. *Agric. Forest Meteorol.* **113:** 145–158.

Pessarakli, M. (Ed.) 2002. *Handbook of Plant and Crop Physiology*, 2nd ed. Dekker, New York.

Reddy, K.R., and Hodges, H.F. (Eds.) 2000. *Climate Change and Global Crop Productivity.* CABI, Wallingford, UK.

Rochette, P., Desjardin, R.L., Pattey, E., and Lessard, R. 1996. Instantaneous measurement of radiation and water-use efficiencies of a maize crop. *Agron. J.* **88:** 627–635.

Rose, C.W. 2004. *An Introduction to the Environmental Physics of Soil, Water, and Watersheds.* Cambridge University Press, New York.

Rosenberg, N.J., Blad, B.L., and Verma, S.B. 1983. *Microclimate: The Biological Environment*, 2nd ed. Wiley, New York.

Russell, G., Marshall, B., and Jarvis, P.G. (Eds.) 1989. *Plant Canopies: Their Growth, Form and Function.* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK.

Sack, L., and Holbrook, N.M. 2006. Leaf Hydraulics. *Annu. Rev. Plant Biol.* **57:** 361–381.

Scholz, F.G., Bucci, S.J., Goldstein, G., Meinzer, F.C., Franco, A.C., and Miralles-Wilhelm, F. 2007. Biophysical properties and functional significance of stem water storage tissues in Neotropical savanna trees. *Plant Cell Environ.* **30:** 236–248.

Schulte, P.J., Gibson, A.C., and Nobel, P.S. 1989a. Water flow in vessels with simple or compound perforation plates. *Ann. Bot.* **64:** 171–178.

Schulte, P.J., Smith, J.A.C., and Nobel, P.S. 1989b. Water storage and osmotic pressure influences on the water relations of a dicotyledonous desert succulent. *Plant Cell Environ.* **12:** 831–842.

Shaykewich, C.F., and Williams, J. 1971. Resistance to water absorption in germinating rapeseed (*Brassica napus* L.). *J. Exp. Bot.* **22:** 19–24.

Slatyer, R.O. 1967. *Plant–Water Relationships.* Academic Press, New York.

Smith, J.A.C., and Nobel, P.S. 1986. Water movement and storage in a desert succulent: Anatomy and rehydration kinetics for leaves of *Agave deserti. J. Exp. Bot.* **37:** 1044–1053.

Smith, W.K., Vogelmann, T.C., and Critchley, C. (Eds.) 2004. *Photosynthetic Adaptation: Chloroplast to Landscape.* Springer Verlag, New York.

Sperry, J.S. 2003. Evolution of water transport and xylem structure. *Int. J. Plant Sci.* **164:** S115–S127.

Taiz, L., and Zeiger, E. 2006. *Plant Physiology*, 4th ed. Sinauer, Sunderland, MA.

Tuzet, A., Perrier, A., and Leuning, R. 2003. A coupled model of stomatal conductance, photosynthesis and transpiration. *Plant Cell Environ.* **26:** 1097–1116.

Tyree, M.T., and Zimmermann, M.H. 2002. *Xylem Structure and the Ascent of Sap*, 2nd ed. Springer Verlag, Berlin.

Valentini, R. (Ed.) 2003. *Fluxes of Carbon, Water and Energy of European Forests.* Springer Verlag, Berlin.

Van Bel, A.J.E. 1993. Strategies of phloem loading. *Annu. Rev. Plant Physiol. Plant Mol. Biol.* **44:** 253–281.

van den Honert, T.H. 1948. Water transport as a catenary process. *Discussions Faraday Soc.* **3:** 146–153.

Vogel, S. 1996. *Life in Moving Fluids: The Physical Biology of Flow*, 2nd rev ed. Princeton University Press, Princeton, NJ.

Waisel, Y., Eshel, A., and Kafkafi, U. (Eds.) 2002. *Plant Roots: The Hidden Half*, 3rd ed. Dekker, New York.

Warrick, A.W. 2003. *Soil Water Dynamics.* Oxford University Press, New York.

Weatherley, P.E. 1982. Water uptake and flow in roots. In: Lange, O.L., Nobel, P.S., Osmond, C. B., and Ziegler, H. (Eds.), *Physiological Plant Ecology, Encyclopedia of Plant Physiology, New Series*. Vol. 12B. Springer Verlag, Berlin, pp. 79–109.

White, F.M. 2008. *Fluid Mechanics*, 6th ed. McGraw-Hill, Boston.

Woodhouse, R.M., and Nobel, P.S. 1982. Stipe anatomy, water potentials, and xylem conductances in seven species of ferns (Filicopsida). *Am. J. Bot.* **69:** 135–140.

This page intentionally left blank

Solutions To Problems

Chapter 1

1.1. A. We note that c_j at $x = 3$ mm is 37% (i.e., $\approx e^{-1}$) of c_j at the origin ($x = 0$), so we can use Equation 1.6 to calculate D_j:

$$D_j = \frac{x_{1/e}^2}{4t_{1/e}} = \frac{(0.003\ \text{m})^2}{(4)(3600\ \text{s})} = 0.63 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{m}^2\ \text{s}^{-1}$$

B. Similar to A, but now we solve Equation 1.6 for $t_{1/e}$:

$$t_{1/e} = \frac{x_{1/e}^2}{4D_j} = \frac{(0.090\ \text{m})^2}{(4)(0.63 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{m}^2\ \text{s}^{-1})} = 3.2 \times 10^6\ \text{s} \quad (37\ \text{days})$$

C. We will use Equation 1.5 and solve at the origin ($x = 0$, so $e^{-x^2/4D_jt} = 1$), leading to

$$M_j = 2c_j(\pi D_j t)^{1/2} = (2)(100\ \text{mol m}^{-3})\left[(\pi)(0.63 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{m}^2\ \text{s}^{-1})(3600\ \text{s})\right]^{1/2}$$
$$= 0.53\ \text{mol m}^{-2}$$

D. If $t_{1/e}$ is the same and D_j is 1/100 of the value in B, Equation 1.6 indicates that $x_{1/e}$ is then 1/10 as large, or 9 mm.

1.2. A. The mass of a mitochondrion is its volume times the density (mass/volume):

$$\text{Mass of mito} = \left[0.30 \times (10^{-6}\ \text{m})^3\right](1110\ \text{kg m}^{-3}) = 3.33 \times 10^{-16}\ \text{kg}$$

Hence, the mass of Avogadro's number of mitochondria is

$$\text{Mass/mol mito} = (3.33 \times 10^{-16}\ \text{kg})(6.022 \times 10^{23}\ \text{mol}^{-1}) = 2.0 \times 10^8\ \text{kg mol}^{-1}$$

Therefore, the "molecular weight" of mitochondria is 2.0×10^{11}.

B. If D_j is proportional to $1/(\text{MW})^{1/3}$, then

$$D_{\text{mito}} = D_x \frac{(\text{MW}_x)^{1/3}}{(\text{MW}_{\text{mito}})^{1/3}} = (0.5 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{m}^2\ \text{s}^{-1})\frac{(200)^{1/3}}{(2 \times 10^{11})^{1/3}} = 5 \times 10^{-13}\ \text{m}^2\ \text{s}^{-1}$$

C. Using Equation 1.6, $t_{1/e} = \frac{x_{1/e}^2}{4D_j} = \frac{(0.2 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m}^2)}{(4)(5 \times 10^{-13}\ \text{m}^2\ \text{s}^{-1})} = 0.020\ \text{s}$

For $x_{1/e}$ of 50 µm, $t_{1/e} = \frac{(50 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m})^2}{(4)(5 \times 10^{-13}\ \text{m}^2\ \text{s}^{-1})} = 1250\ \text{s} \quad (21\ \text{minutes})$

D. Again using Equation 1.6, $t_{1/e} = \frac{(50 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m})^2}{(4)(0.3 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{m}^2\ \text{s}^{-1})} = 2.1\ \text{s}$

Because ATP diffuses much faster than do mitochondria across such cellular distances, it is much more expedient for ATP to diffuse to where it is to be used than for mitochondria to so diffuse.

1.3. A. The times for CO_2 to diffuse across the two barriers can be compared using Equation 1.6:

$$\frac{t_{1/e}^{\text{air}}}{t_{1/e}^{\text{cell wall}}} = \frac{(1 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m})^2(4)(D_{CO_2}^{\text{cw}})}{(2 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m})^2(4)(10^6 \times D_{CO_2}^{\text{cw}})} = 0.25$$

B. Again using Equation 1.6,

$$\frac{D_{CO_2}^{\text{plasma membrane}}}{D_{CO_2}^{\text{cell wall}}} = \frac{(8 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{m})^2(4)(t_{1/e})}{(2 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m})^2(4)(t_{1/e})} = 1.6 \times 10^{-5}$$

C. Using Equation 1.9 to define P_j, we obtain

$$\frac{P_{CO_2}^{\text{cell wall}}}{P_{CO_2}^{\text{plasma membrane}}} = \frac{(8 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{m})(D_{CO_2}^{\text{cell wall}})(100 \times K_{CO_2}^{\text{plasma membrane}})}{(2 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m})(1.6 \times 10^{-5} D_{CO_2}^{\text{cell wall}})(K_{CO_2}^{\text{plasma membrane}})} = 2.5 \times 10^4$$

1.4. A. For the unstirred boundary layer, K_j is 1. Using Equation 1.9, P_j then is

$$P_{D_2O}^{\text{bl}} = \frac{(2.6 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{m}^2\ \text{s}^{-1})(1)}{(20 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m})} = 13 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{m s}^{-1}$$

$$P_{\text{methanol}}^{\text{bl}} = \frac{(0.8 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{m}^2\ \text{s}^{-1})(1)}{(20 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m})} = 4.0 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{m s}^{-1}$$

$$P_{\text{L-leucine}}^{\text{bl}} = \frac{(0.2 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{m}^2\ \text{s}^{-1})(1)}{(20 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m})} = 1.0 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{m s}^{-1}$$

B. For the two barriers in series,

$$\frac{1}{P_j^{\text{total}}} = \frac{1}{P_j^{\text{bl}}} + \frac{1}{P_j^{\text{memb}}}$$

and so

$$P_j^{\text{memb}} = \frac{P_j^{\text{bl}} P_j^{\text{total}}}{P_j^{\text{bl}} - P_j^{\text{total}}}$$

Using measured values of P_j^{total} and P_j^{bl} from A, we have

$$P_{D_2O}^{\text{memb}} = \frac{(1.3 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{m s}^{-1})(1.0 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{m s}^{-1})}{(1.3 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{m s}^{-1}) - (1.0 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{m s}^{-1})} = 4.3 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{m s}^{-1}$$

$$P_{\text{methanol}}^{\text{memb}} = \frac{(4.0 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{m s}^{-1})(2.0 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{m s}^{-1})}{(4.0 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{m s}^{-1}) - (2.0 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{m s}^{-1})} = 4.0 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{m s}^{-1}$$

$$P_{\text{L-leucine}}^{\text{memb}} = \frac{(1.0 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{m s}^{-1})(3.0 \times 10^{-8}\ \text{m s}^{-1})}{(1.0 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{m s}^{-1}) - (3.0 \times 10^{-8}\ \text{m s}^{-1})} = 3.0 \times 10^{-8}\ \text{m s}^{-1}$$

C. The unstirred layer is the bigger barrier for D_2O because $P_{D_2O}^{\text{memb}}$ is larger than $P_{D_2O}^{\text{bl}}$; both barriers are of similar resistance for methanol because $P_{\text{methanol}}^{\text{memb}}$ is equal

to $P^{\text{bl}}_{\text{methanol}}$; and the membrane is the bigger barrier for L-leucine because $P^{\text{memb}}_{\text{L-leucine}}$ is much less than $P^{\text{bl}}_{\text{L-leucine}}$.

D. If P_j^{memb} becomes large, then $1/P_j^{\text{memb}}$ approaches 0, and $1/P_j^{\text{total}}$ is approximately $1/P_j^{\text{bl}}$. Thus the maximum value of P_j^{total} is P_j^{bl} (given in A).

1.5. A. The volume to surface area ratio of a cylinder is $rl/[2(r+l)]$. Because c_j^{o} is equal to 0 and $c_j^{\text{i}}(t)$ is equal to 0.1 $c_j^{\text{i}}(0)$, Equation 1.12 becomes (after solving for t):

$$t = \frac{rl \ln 10}{2(r+l)P_j} = \frac{(0.5\times10^{-3}\ \text{m})(100\times10^{-3}\ \text{m})(2.303)}{2[(0.5+100)\times10^{-3}\ \text{m}](10^{-6}\ \text{m s}^{-1})} = 573\ \text{s} \quad (9.6\ \text{minutes})$$

B. Here, V/A becomes $\pi r^2 l/(2\pi r^2)$ or $l/2$, and so

$$t = \frac{l \ln 10}{2P_j} = \frac{(100\times10^{-3}\ \text{m})(2.30)}{(2)(10^{-6}\ \text{m s}^{-1})} = 1.2\times10^5\ \text{s} \quad (32\ \text{hours})$$

C. Here, $c_j^{\text{i}}(t)$ is 0.01 $c_j^{\text{i}}(0)$, so the rearranged Equation 1.12 yields

$$\frac{t_{99\%}}{t_{90\%}} = \frac{\frac{V}{P_jA}\ln 100}{\frac{V}{P_jA}\ln 10} = \frac{\ln 10^2}{\ln 10} = 2$$

D. Again using the rearranged Equation 1.12,

$$\frac{t_{\text{new}}}{t_{\text{original}}} = \frac{P_j^{\text{original}}}{P_j^{\text{new}}} = \frac{(10^{-6}\ \text{m s}^{-1})}{(10^{-8}\ \text{m s}^{-1})} = 100$$

1.6. A. The surface area to volume ratio (A/V) for a sphere is $3/r$ and for a cylinder is $2(r+l)/(rl)$. Thus, A/V for *Nitella* is $\frac{(2)(0.5\times10^{-3}\text{m} + 100\times10^{-3}\text{m})}{(0.5\times10^{-3}\text{m})(100\times10^{-3}\text{m})}$ or 4020 m^{-1}; for *Valonia* it is $\frac{(3)}{(5\times10^{-3}\text{m})}$ or 600 m^{-1}; and for *Chlorella* it is $\frac{(3)}{(2\times10^{-6}\ \text{m})}$ or $1.5\times10^6\ \text{m}^{-1}$.

B. *Chlorella* (see A).

C. Because the concentration criterion and P_j are the same in all cases, Equation 1.12 leads to

$$\frac{t_a}{t_b} = \frac{A_b/V_b}{A_a/V_a}$$

and so

$$t_{Nitella} = (1\ \text{s})\frac{(1.5\times10^6\ \text{m}^{-1})}{(4020\ \text{m}^{-1})} = 370\ \text{s} \quad (6.2\ \text{minutes})$$

$$t_{Valonia} = (1\ \text{s})\frac{(1.5\times10^6\ \text{m}^{-1})}{(600\ \text{m}^{-1})} = 2500\ \text{s} \quad (42\ \text{minutes})$$

D. For a cylindrical cell like *Nitella*, Equation 1.16 gives a tangential stress of rP/t, which is twice as large as the longitudinal stress. For a spherical cell, drawing a section through the center and analyzing as for Figure 1-15 leads to

$$P\pi r^2 = 2\pi rt\sigma, \quad \text{so} \quad \sigma = \frac{rP}{2t}$$

Here, P/t is the same in all cases, so the maximum stress is $(0.5\times10^{-3}\ \text{m})P/t$ for *Nitella*, $(2.5\times10^{-3}\ \text{m})P/t$ for *Valonia*, and $(1.0\times10^{-6}\ \text{m})P/t$ for *Chlorella*. Therefore, *Valonia* will experience the highest cell wall stress.

Chapter 2

2.1. A. Still 15 mm, because the tilt will not affect the vertical rise, although the length of the water column in the capillary will be greater when tilted.

B. By Equation 2.2a ($h = 2\,\sigma \cos \alpha / r\rho g$), the product $h\rho$ is the same in each case, so

$$h_{\text{sucrose}} = h_{\text{water}} \frac{\rho_{\text{water}}}{\rho_{\text{sucrose}}} = (15\ \text{mm}) \frac{(998\ \text{kg m}^{-3})}{(1200\ \text{kg m}^{-3})} = 12.5\ \text{mm}$$

C. We can rearrange Equation 2.2a and solve:

$$\cos \alpha = \frac{hr\rho g}{2\sigma} = \frac{(7.5 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m})(1 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m})(998\ \text{kg m}^{-3})(9.8\ \text{m s}^{-2})}{(2)(0.0728\ \text{kg s}^{-2})} = 0.50$$

so $\alpha = 60°$

D. Because all of the parameters are the same as in C, h is equal to 7.5 mm.

E. Because the height of the rise is inversely proportional to the radius (Eqs. 2.2a or 2.2b), we can appropriately scale the rise given:

$$h = (15 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m}) \frac{(1 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m})}{(15 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m})} = 15\ \text{m}$$

F. The capillary wall is not fully wettable in C and D, and surface tension acts over a much smaller circumference in E. The weight of the fluid supported ($mg = \pi r^2 h\rho$) is the same and greatest in A and B.

G. At rupture, $2\pi r\sigma \cos \alpha$ equals πr^2 times the tensile strength (ts), so we obtain

$$r = \frac{2\sigma \cos \alpha}{\text{ts}} = \frac{(2)(0.0728\ \text{N m}^{-1})(1)}{(40 \times 10^6\ \text{N m}^{-2})} = 3.6 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{m} = 3.6\ \text{nm}$$

(Also, by Eq. 2-25, $r = -2\sigma/P$, where $P = -\text{ts}$).

2.2. A. Because the system is at equilibrium, the water potential is the same on the two sides of the barrier. From Equation 2.13a ($\Psi = P - \Pi + \rho_w gh$) and recognizing that there is no change in vertical position, we obtain

$$P^{\text{A}} - \Pi^{\text{A}} = P^{\text{B}} - \Pi^{\text{B}}$$

and so

$$\Delta P = P^{\text{B}} - P^{\text{A}} = \Pi^{\text{B}} - \Pi^{\text{A}}$$

Using Equation 2.10 ($\Pi_s \cong RT\Sigma_j c_j$), we obtain

$$\Pi^{\text{A}} = (2.44 \times 10^3\ \text{m}^3\text{Pa mol}^{-1})(0.1 \times 10^3\ \text{mol m}^{-3})$$

$$= 0.244 \times 10^6\ \text{Pa} = 0.244\ \text{MPa}$$

and

$$\Pi^{\text{B}} = 10\Pi^{\text{A}} = 2.44\ \text{MPa}$$

$$\Delta P = 2.44\ \text{MPa} - 0.244\ \text{MPa} = 2.20\ \text{MPa, higher on 1-}m\text{ side}$$

B. We cannot use Equation 2.13a because water is not what moves across the barrier—species j does. We will use Equation 2.4 ($\mu_j = \mu_j^* + RT\ln a_j + \overline{V}_j P$,

ignoring the electrical and gravitational terms). At equilibrium, μ^A is equal to μ^B, so we obtain

$$\Delta P = P^B - P^A = \frac{RT}{\overline{V}_j}(\ln a_j^A - \ln a_j^B) = \frac{RT}{\overline{V}_j}\ln\frac{a_j^A}{a_j^B} = \frac{RT}{\overline{V}_j}\ln\frac{c_j^A}{c_j^B}$$

because activity coefficients are 1. Now insert values:

$$\Delta P = \frac{(2.44 \times 10^3\ \text{m}^3\ \text{Pa mol}^{-1})}{(40 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m}^3\ \text{mol}^{-1})}\ln\left(\frac{0.1\,m}{1\,m}\right)$$

$$= -140\ \text{MPa},\ \text{higher on } 0.1\text{-}m \text{ side}$$

C. We must change γ^B_{solute}:

$$P^B - P^A = \frac{RT}{\overline{V}_j}\ln\frac{c_j^A}{(0.5)c_j^B} = \frac{(2.44 \times 10^3\ \text{m}^3\ \text{Pa mol}^{-1})}{(40 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m}^3\ \text{mol}^{-1})}\ln\frac{(0.1\,m)}{(0.5)(1\,m)}$$

$$= -98\ \text{MPa},\ \text{higher on } 0.1\text{-}m \text{ side}$$

D. Side A would have the same composition as side B ($\Delta c_{\text{solute}} = 0\ m$), so $\Delta P =$ 0 MPa.

E. The value of μ_j is never known in absolute terms because μ_j^* is arbitrary.

2.3. A. For an ideal solution, γ_w is equal to 1. Therefore

$$a_w = N_w = \frac{\dfrac{(1.00\ \text{kg water})}{(0.018\ \text{kg mol}^{-1}\ \text{water})}}{\dfrac{(1.00\ \text{kg water})}{(0.018\ \text{kg mol}^{-1}\ \text{water})} + \dfrac{(0.080\ \text{kg sorbitol})}{(0.182\ \text{kg mol}^{-1}\ \text{sorbitol})}} = 0.992$$

B. Rearrange Equation 2.7 and solve:

$$\Pi = -(135.0\ \text{MPa})(\ln 0.992) = 1.08\ \text{MPa}$$

C. Again using Equation 2.7, we find

$$a_w = e^{-(1.0\ \text{MPa}/135.0\ \text{MPa})} = 0.9926$$

which is a 0.74% reduction from the value for pure water (1.0000 . . .).

D. We can rearrange Equation 2.10 and solve:

$$\sum_j c_j = \frac{(1.0\ \text{MPa})}{(2.437 \times 10^3\ \text{m}^3\ \text{Pa mol}^{-1})} = 410\ \text{mol m}^{-3}$$

E. Equation 2.10 predicts that

$$\Pi_s = (2.437 \times 10^3\ \text{m}^3\ \text{Pa mol}^{-1})(0.25\ \text{mol m}^{-3}) = 6 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{MPa}$$

Hence, the polymer must be influencing Π mainly by decreasing γ_w (see Eq. 2.11).

F. Using Equations 2.7 and 2.13a (with the gravitational term omitted), the water potential of the cell is

$$\Psi = (0.8\ \text{MPa}) - (-135.0\ \text{MPa})(\ln 0.98) = -1.9\ \text{MPa}$$

2.4. A. Because there are no barriers to the movement of water within the tank, the water potential will be the same at 0.1 m and at the bottom of the tank (−0.600 MPa).

B. There are no barriers to diffusion, so Π is the same throughout the tank. Rearrange Equation 2.13a and solve for conditions at the surface of the tank:

$$\Pi = P + \rho_w gh - \Psi = 0 + (\rho_w g)(0) - (-0.600\,\text{MPa}) = 0.600\,\text{MPa}$$

C. Ψ is −Π (see B), P is equal to $-\rho_w gh$, and $\rho_w g$ is 0.0098 MPa m^{-1}: at $h = 0$ m, $\rho_w gh = 0$ MPa and $P = 0$ MPa; at $h = -0.1$ m, $\rho_w gh = -0.001$ MPa and $P = 0.001$ MPa; and at $h = -10$ m, $\rho_w gh = -0.098$ MPa and $P = 0.098$ MPa.

D. At equilibrium Ψ_w is equal to Ψ_{wv}. Rearrange Equation 2.23 and solve:

$$\%\ \text{relative humidity} = (100)(e^{(-0.600\,\text{MPa})/(135.0\,\text{MPa})})\% = 99.6\%$$

2.5. A. From Equation 2.15, volume (V) is inversely related to external osmotic pressure (Π°). Plot volume versus $1/\Pi^\circ$ and determine that $V = 32\ \mu\text{m}^3$ for $\Pi^\circ = 0.4$ MPa.

B. Intercept in A on y-axis is the nonaqueous volume per chloroplast (12 μm^3).

C. Using values from A and B, (32 μm^3 − 12 μm^3/(32 μm^3) = 0.63.

D. Rearrange Equation 2.15 and solve for n in a chloroplast:

$$n = \frac{(32\,\mu\text{m}^3 - 12\,\mu\text{m}^3)(0.4\,\text{MPa})}{(2.437 \times 10^3\ \text{m}^3\ \text{Pa mol}^3)^{-1}} = 3.3 \times 10^{-15}\ \text{mol}$$

2.6. A. Using Equations 2.26 and 2.13a,

$$\begin{aligned} J_{V_w} &= L_w\left[\Psi - (P^{\text{i}} - \Pi^{\text{i}}\right] \\ &= (10^{-12}\ \text{m s}^{-1}\ \text{Pa}^{-1})[0 - (0.6\,\text{MPa} - 1.0\,\text{MPa})] \\ &= 4 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{m s}^{-1} \quad \text{(flow is inward)} \end{aligned}$$

B. Using Equation 2.35 with $V/A = r/3$,

$$t_{1/e} = \frac{(0.5 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m})}{(3)(10^{-12}\ \text{m s}^{-1}\ \text{Pa}^{-1})(5\,\text{MPa} + 1\,\text{MPa})} = 28\ \text{s}$$

C. At the point of incipient plasmolysis, Ψ° equals Ψ^i, so J_{V_w} is 0 (Eq. 2.26).

D. At equilibrium Ψ_{wv} is equal to Ψ°. Using Equation 2.24, $\Psi_{wv} = (135.0\,\text{MPa})\ln(97/100) = -4.1$ MPa. Hence, by Equation 2.26:

$$\begin{aligned} J_{V_w} &= (10^{-12}\ \text{m s}^{-1}\ \text{Pa}^{-1})[-4.1\,\text{MPa} - (-0.4\,\text{MPa})] \\ &= -3.7 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m s}^{-1} \quad \text{(flow is outward)} \end{aligned}$$

E. Because $\Pi^{\text{cell wall}}$ is 0, $P^{\text{cell wall}} = \Psi^{\text{i}}$ or −0.4 MPa (Eq. 2.13a). Rearrange Equation 2.25 and solve:

$$\cos\alpha = \frac{-rP}{2\sigma} = -\frac{(10 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{m})(-0.4\,\text{MPa})}{(2)(7.28 \times 10^{-8}\ \text{MPa m})}$$

Hence, $\alpha = 88^\circ$.

Chapter 3

3.1. A. The concentration of charge is Q/V, where the volume of such a thin layer (thickness t) is $4\pi r^2 \times t$, and so

$$\frac{\frac{4}{3}\pi(30\times10^{-6}\ \text{m})^3(10^{-3}\ \text{mol m}^{-3})}{4\pi(30\times10^{-6}\ \text{m})^2(3\times10^{-9}\ \text{m})} = 3.3\ \text{mol m}^{-3}$$

B. Because a sulfate ion has a charge number of −2, the additional negative charge corresponds to

$$\frac{(2\times10^7)}{(6.022\times10^{23}\ \text{mol}^{-1})} = 3.32\times10^{-17}\ \text{mol}$$

The concentration of additional charge is

$$\frac{(3.32\times10^{-17}\ \text{mol})}{\frac{4}{3}\pi(30\times10^{-6}\ \text{m})^3} = 0.29\times10^{-3}\ \text{mol m}^{-3}$$

Hence, C increases by 29%, so ΔE becomes −129 mV by Equation 3.3.

C. The 10^7 sulfate ions carry charge (Q) equal to

$$Q = (-3.32\times10^{-17}\ \text{mol})(9.649\times10^4\ \text{coulomb mol}^{-1}) = -3.2\times10^{-12}\ \text{coulomb}$$

The membrane potential changes from −100 mV (initial value) to −129 mV during the time that the work is done, so the average difference in electrical potential across the membrane is −115 mV. Hence, by Equation 3.1, the electrical work is about

$$Q\Delta E = (-3.2\times10^{-12}\ \text{coulomb})(-115\times10^{-3}\ \text{V}) = 3.7\times10^{-13}\ \text{J}$$

3.2. A. At equilibrium and with $\gamma = 1$, Equation 3.5 indicates that

$$E_M = E_{N_K} = \frac{RT}{z_K F}\ln\frac{a_K^o}{a_K^i} = \frac{(25.3\ \text{mV})}{(1)}\ln\frac{(1\ \text{mol m}^{-3})}{(160\ \text{mol m}^{-3})} = -128\ \text{mV}$$

B. The ionic strength of the solution inside the cell is

$$\frac{1}{2}\sum_j c_j z_j^2 = \frac{1}{2}[(160\ \text{mol m}^{-3})(+1)^2 + (160\ \text{mol m}^{-3})(-1)^2] = 160\ \text{mol m}^{-3}$$

and that of the external solution is 1 mol m^{-3}. From Equation 3.4,

$$\ln\gamma_\pm^i = \frac{(1.17)(+1)(-1)\sqrt{160\ \text{mol m}^{-3}}}{32+\sqrt{160\ \text{mol m}^{-3}}} = -0.331$$

and so $\gamma_\pm^i$ is equal to 0.718, and $\gamma_\pm^o$ is 0.965. Using Equation 3.6a,

$$E_{N_K} = \frac{(25.3\ \text{mV})}{(1)}\ln\frac{(0.965)(1\ \text{mol m}^{-3})}{(0.718)(160\ \text{mol m}^{-3})} = -121\ \text{mV}$$

C. The concentration of ions inside the cell is as follows: $c_K = 160\ \text{mol m}^{-3} + 3\ \text{mol m}^{-3} = 163\ \text{mol m}^{-3}$; $c_{Cl} = 160\ \text{mol m}^{-3}$; and $c_{ATP} = 1\ \text{mol m}^{-3}$. The ionic strength therefore is

$$\tfrac{1}{2}[(163\ \text{mol m}^{-3})(+1)^2 + (160\ \text{mol m}^{-3})(-1)^2 + (1\ \text{mol m}^{-3})(-3)^2] = 166\ \text{mol m}^{-3}$$

From Equation 3.4,

$$\ln\gamma_{K-ATP} = \frac{(1.17)(+1)(-3)\sqrt{166}}{32+\sqrt{166}} = -1.008$$

and so γ_{K-ATP} is 0.37, and a_{ATP} is $(0.37)(1\ \text{mol m}^{-3}) = 0.37\ \text{mol m}^{-3}$.

3.3. A. E_{N_j} is equal to E_M when species j is in equilibrium. Using Equation 3.6b,

$$E_{N_K} = \frac{(25.7\ \text{mV})}{(+1)}\ln\frac{(1\ \text{mM})}{(100\ \text{mM})} = -118\ \text{mV} \quad \text{K}^+ \text{ is in equilibrium}$$

$$E_{N_{Mg}} = \frac{(25.7\ \text{mV})}{(+2)}\ln\frac{(0.1\ \text{mM})}{(10\ \text{mM})} = -59\ \text{mV} \quad \text{Mg}^{2+} \text{ is not in equilibrium}$$

B. Note that $E_{N_{Na}} = E_{N_{Ca}} = E_M$ and rearrange Equation 3.5b:

$$a^i_{Na} = \frac{a^o_{Na}}{e^{z_j E_M/25.7}} = \frac{(0.1\ \text{mM})}{(e^{(+1)(-118\ \text{mV})/(25.7\ \text{mV})})} = 10\ \text{mM} = c^i_{Na} \quad (\gamma_{Na} = 1)$$

$$a^o_{Ca} = (1.0\ \text{mM})e^{(+2)(-118\ \text{mV})/(25.7\ \text{mV})} = 1.0\times10^{-4}\ \text{mM} = 0.1\ \mu\text{M} = c^o_{Ca} \quad (\gamma_{Ca} = 1)$$

C. Here $E_M = E_{N_{Cl}} - 177\ \text{mV}$, so $E_{N_{Cl}} = 177\ \text{mV} - 118\ \text{mV}$ or 59 mV. Using Equation 3.6b ($\gamma_{Cl} = 1, c^o_{Cl} = 1.0\ \text{mM} + 0.1\ \text{mM} + 0.2\ \text{mM} = 1.3\ \text{mM}$), we obtain

$$c^i_{Cl} = \frac{(1.3\ \text{mM})}{(e^{(-1)(59\ \text{mV})/(25.7\ \text{mV})})} = 10\ \text{mM}$$

D. Using Equation 3.25,

$$\frac{J^{in}_{Cl}}{J^{out}_{Cl}} = \frac{c^o_{Cl}}{c^i_{Cl}e^{(-1)(FE_M/RT)}} = \frac{(1.3\ \text{mM})}{(13\ \text{mM})e^{-(-118\ \text{mV})/(25.7\ \text{mV})}} = 0.0010$$

E. Using Equation 3.26,

$$\mu^o_{Cl} - \mu^i_{Cl} = (2.479\times10^3\ \text{J mol}^{-1})[\ln(0.0010)] = -17\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}$$

From A, $E_{N_{Mg}} = -59\ \text{mV}$ and so Equation 3.27a yields

$$\begin{aligned}\mu^o_{Mg} - \mu^i_{Mg} &= 2F(E_{N_{Mg}} - E_M) = (2)(9.65\times10^{-2}\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}\text{mV}^{-1})(-59\ \text{mV} + 118\ \text{mV})\\ &= 11\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}\end{aligned}$$

3.4. A. Using Equation 3.11b with u_-=1.04 u_+,

$$E^{old} - E^{new} = (59.2\ \text{mV})\frac{(1.04u_K - u_K)}{(1.04u_K + u_K)}\log\left(\frac{1\ \text{mM}}{10\ \text{mM}}\right) = -1\ \text{mV}$$

B. A Donnan potential that can be calculated using Equation 3.11b ($u_- = 0$):

$$E^{\text{membrane}} - E^{\text{solution}} = (59.2\,\text{mV})\frac{-u_+}{+u_+}\ln\left(\frac{200\,\text{mM}}{10\,\text{mM}}\right) = -77\,\text{mV}$$

C. Using the Goldman equation (Eq. 3.20) with $c^{\text{o}}_{\text{Cl}} = 20\,\text{mM}$, $c^{\text{o}}_{\text{K}} = c^{\text{o}}_{\text{Na}} = 10\,\text{mM}$, $c^{\text{i}}_{\text{Cl}} = c^{\text{i}}_{\text{K}} = 100\,\text{mM}$, $c^{\text{i}}_{\text{Na}} = 10\,\text{mM}$, $P_{\text{Na}} = 0.2\,P_{\text{k}}$, and $P_{\text{Cl}} = 0.01P_{\text{K}}$:

$$\begin{aligned} E_M &= (25.7\,\text{mV})\ln\left[\frac{P_{\text{K}}(10\,\text{mM}) + (0.2\,P_{\text{K}})(10\,\text{mM}) + (0.01\,P_{\text{K}})(100\,\text{mM})}{P_{\text{K}}(100\,\text{mM}) + (0.2\,P_{\text{K}})(10\,\text{mM}) + (0.01\,P_{\text{K}})(20\,\text{mM})}\right] \\ &= -53\,\text{mV} \end{aligned}$$

D. If $P_{\text{Cl}}/P_{\text{K}}$ equals 0, then using the Goldman equation we obtain

$$E_M = (25.7\,\text{mV})\ln\left[\frac{(10\,\text{mM}) + (0.2)(10\,\text{mM})}{(100\,\text{mM}) + (0.2)(10\,\text{mM})}\right] = -55\,\text{mV}$$

If $P_{\text{Na}}/P_{\text{K}}$ and $P_{\text{Cl}}/P_{\text{K}}$ both equal 0, then

$$E_M = (25.7\,\text{mV})\ln\frac{(10\,\text{mM})}{(100\,\text{mM})} = -59\,\text{mV}$$

3.5. A. For the steady state for the cell (with no change in anion j in the cellular compartments),

$$J_j^{\text{out}} = (10\,\text{nmol m}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1})\frac{(50)(4\pi)(2 \times 10^{-6}\,\text{m})^2}{(4\pi)(20 \times 10^{-6}\text{m})^2} = 5\,\text{nmol m}^{-2}\,\text{s}^{-1}$$

B. Using Equation 3.26,

$$\mu_j^{\text{o}} - \mu_j^{\text{i}} = (2.479 \times 10^3\,\text{J mol}^{-1})\ln\frac{(1\,\text{nmol m}^{-2}\,\text{s}^{-1})}{(5\,\text{nmol m}^{-2}\,\text{s}^{-1})} = -4.0\,\text{kJ mol}^{-1}$$

C. If the concentration is the same on both sides of the membrane, then E_{N_j} is equal to 0. Using Equation 3.27b,

$$\mu_j^{\text{i}} - \mu_j^{\text{o}} = (-1)(9.65 \times 10^{-2}\,\text{kJ mol}^{-1}\,\text{mV}^{-1})(-118\,\text{mV} - 0\,\text{mV}) = 11.4\,\text{kJ mol}^{-1}$$

Because the chemical potential of the anion is higher inside than outside of the cell, the efflux is passive. The influx, however, requires energy of at least $11.4\,\text{kJ mol}^{-1}$.

D. If one ATP is required per ion transported,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{ATP consumed} &= \frac{(0.1 \times 10^{-9}\,\text{mol m}^{-2}\,\text{s}^{-1})(1\,\text{ATP ion}^{-1})(4\pi)(20 \times 10^{-6}\,\text{m})^2}{\frac{4\pi}{3}(20 \times 10^{-6}\,\text{m})^3} \\ &= 1.5 \times 10^{-5}\,\text{mol m}^{-3}\,\text{s}^{-1} = 15\,\mu\text{mol m}^{-3}\,\text{s}^{-1} \end{aligned}$$

3.6. A. Using Equation 3.23 with an energy requirement of 20 kJ mol^{-1} to break 1 mol of hydrogen bonds (U_{min}), we obtain

$$Q_{10} = \sqrt{\frac{(283\,\text{K} + 10\,\text{K})}{(283\,\text{K})}} e^{(10\,\text{K})(20 \times 10^3\,\text{J mol}^{-1})/[(8.314\,\text{J mol}^{-1}\,\text{K}^{-1})(283\,\text{K})(293\,\text{K})]} = 1.36$$

B. Here we rearrange Equation 3.23 to obtain

$$U_{\text{min}} = \frac{(8.3143\ \text{J mol}^{-1}\ \text{K}^{-1})(283\ \text{K})(293\ \text{K})}{(10\ \text{K})} \ln\left(\frac{3.2}{\sqrt{\frac{293}{283}}}\right) = 79\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}$$

Hence, the number of hydrogen bonds per molecule that must be broken to account for a U_{min} of 79 kJ mol^{-1} is approximately four.

3.7. A. Because $J^{\text{in}}_{\text{K}_{\text{max}}}$ is equal to $J^{\text{in}}_{\text{Na}_{\text{max}}}$ and c^{o}_{K} is equal to c^{o}_{Na}, we can use Equation 3.28a to obtain

$$\frac{J^{\text{in}}_{\text{K}}}{J^{\text{in}}_{\text{Na}}} = \frac{K_{\text{Na}} + c^{\text{o}}_{\text{Na}}}{K_{\text{K}} + c^{\text{o}}_{\text{K}}} = \frac{(1.0\ \text{mol m}^{-3}) + (0.01\ \text{mol m}^{-3})}{(0.01\ \text{mol m}^{-3}) + (0.01\ \text{mol m}^{-3})} = 50.5$$

B. Again using Equation 3.28a, we obtain

$$\frac{J^{\text{in}}_{\text{K}}}{J^{\text{in}}_{\text{Na}}} = \frac{(1.0\ \text{mol m}^{-3}) + (100\ \text{mol m}^{-3})}{(0.01\ \text{mol m}^{-3}) + (100\ \text{mol m}^{-3})} = 1.01$$

C. Facilitated diffusion requires no energy so ATP is not involved. Using Equation 3.28a, we obtain

$$J^{\text{in}}_{\text{K}} = \frac{(10\ \text{nmol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1})(0.1\ \text{mol m}^{-3})}{(0.01\ \text{mol m}^{-3}) + (0.1\ \text{mol m}^{-3})} = 9.1\ \text{nmol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1}$$

3.8. A. By Equation 3.41 we obtain

$$\sigma^o = \frac{\Sigma_j \sigma_j \Pi^{\text{o}}_j}{\Pi^{\text{o}}}$$

$$= \frac{(1.00)(0.2\ \text{MPa}) + (0.30)(0.1\ \text{MPa}) + (0.80)(0.1\ \text{MPa})}{(0.2\ \text{MPa}) + (0.1\ \text{MPa}) + (0.1\ \text{MPa})} = 0.78$$

B. Because J_V is zero, the stationary state applies, so Equation 3.41 with $\Sigma_j \sigma_j \Pi^{\text{i}} = \sigma_{\text{glycerol}} \Pi^{\text{i}}_{\text{glycerol}} + \sigma_{\text{rest}} \Pi^{\text{i}}_{\text{rest}}$ and $\tau^{\text{i}} = 0$ leads to

$$\sigma^{\text{i}} = \frac{(0.78)(0.4\ \text{MPa}) - (0.80)(0.2\ \text{MPa}) + (0.5\ \text{MPa})}{(1.0\ \text{MPa})} = 0.65$$

C. If the membrane is nonselective, then all σ_j's are zero. From Equation 3.40 with $\Delta P = P^{\text{o}} - P^{\text{i}}$, we obtain

$$J_V = L_P\left(\Delta P - \sum_j \sigma_j \Delta \Pi_j\right)$$

$$= (10^{-12}\ \text{m s}^{-1}\ \text{Pa}^{-1})(0.0\ \text{MPa} - 0.5\ \text{MPa}) = -5 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{m s}^{-1}$$

D. If the membrane is impermeable, then all σ_j's equal 1. Using Equation 3.40, we obtain

$$J_V = (10^{-12}\ \text{m s}^{-1}\ \text{Pa}^{-1})[(0.0\ \text{MPa} - 0.5\ \text{MPa}) - (0.4\ \text{MPa} - 1.2\ \text{MPa})]$$

$$= 3 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{m s}^{-1}$$

3.9. A. Because osmotic pressures are proportional to concentrations and sucrose is impermeant, we can use Equation 3.43:

$$\sigma_{\text{glycine}} = \frac{(0.3\ m)}{(0.4\ m)} = 0.75$$

B. At the point of incipient plasmolysis, $\sigma^{\text{o}}\Pi^{\text{o}} = \sigma^{\text{i}}\Pi^{\text{i}}$. Using Equation 2.10 ($\Pi_s^{\text{o}} = RTc$) for sucrose ($\sigma = 1.00$), the effective osmotic pressure is

$$\sigma^{\text{o}}\Pi^{\text{o}} = (2.437 \times 10^3\ \text{m}^3\ \text{Pa mol}^{-1})(0.3 \times 10^3\ \text{mol m}^{-3}) = 0.73 \times 10^6\ \text{Pa}$$

Upon rearranging Equation 3.45, we note that V is proportional to $1/\Pi^{\text{o}}$. From Problem 2.5 (Chapter 2), V is 20 μm^3 at a $1/\Pi^{\text{o}}$ of 1.0 MPa^{-1}, 28 μm^3 at 2.0 MPa^{-1}, and so at 1/(0.73 MPa) = 1.37 MPa^{-1}, V is 23 μm^3.

C. The chloroplast volume did not change with the addition of glycine to the external solution; hence σ_{glycine} is zero (see Eq. 3.43).

D. Using Equation 3.43 and noting that osmotic pressures are proportional to concentrations, we obtain

$$\text{actual concentration} = \frac{\text{effective concentration}}{\sigma_{\text{glycerol}}} = \frac{(0.3\ m)}{(0.6)} = 0.5\ m$$

Glycerol is permeant and so enters the chloroplasts, which leads to water entry. If there were no other solutes inside the chloroplasts, the concentration of glycerol inside would eventually equal that outside. However, because there are at least some impermeant solutes inside the chloroplasts, Ψ^{i} will be lower than is Ψ^{o}, even for equal concentrations of glycerol inside and outside. Consequently, water (and glycerol) will continue to move in until the chloroplasts burst.

Chapter 4

4.1. A. Using Equation 4.2a ($E_\lambda = hc/\lambda_{\text{vac}}$ for a single photon), we obtain

$$E_{400} = \frac{(10^{20})(1.986 \times 10^{-25}\ \text{J m})}{(400 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{m})} = 50\ \text{J}$$

B. Using Equation 4.2b, the energy absorbed is

$$E_{1800} = \frac{(1\ \text{mol})(119{,}600\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}\ \text{nm})}{(1800\ \text{nm})} = 66.4\ \text{kJ}$$

Using the appropriate volumetric heat capacity of water, the final temperature will be

$$T + \Delta T = 0°\text{C} + \frac{(66.4 \times 10^3\ \text{J})}{(10^{-3}\ \text{m}^3)(4.19 \times 10^6\ \text{J m}^{-3}\ °\text{C}^{-1})} = 16°\text{C}$$

C. The maximum photon flux density will occur when all of the photons have the lowest energy and hence the longest wavelength possible (600 nm). By Equation 4.2b, E_{600} then is

$$E_{600} = \frac{(119{,}600\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}\ \text{nm})}{(600\ \text{nm})} = 199\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}$$

Hence, an energy flux density of 1 W m^{-2} corresponds to

$$\frac{(1\ \mathrm{J\,m^{-2}\,s^{-1}})}{(199 \times 10^{3}\ \mathrm{J\,mol^{-1}})} = 5.0 \times 10^{-6}\ \mathrm{mol\,m^{-2}\,s^{-1}}$$

D. Cannot be interconverted, unless the sensitivity of photometric device at 600 nm is known.

4.2. A. From Equation 4.1 ($\lambda\nu = v$) or Equation 4.2a, we note that $\lambda_{vac} = c/\nu$, and so

$$\lambda_{vac} = \frac{(3.0 \times 10^{8}\ \mathrm{m\,s^{-1}})}{(0.9 \times 10^{15}\ \mathrm{s^{-1}})} = 3.33 \times 10^{-7}\ \mathrm{m} = 333\ \mathrm{nm}$$

From Section 4.1A and Equation 4.1, v_{air} is about $0.9997c$, so

$$\lambda_{air} = (0.9997)(333\ \mathrm{nm}) = 333\ \mathrm{nm} \quad \text{(decrease is 0.1 nm)}$$

In the flint glass, we obtain

$$\lambda_{glass} = \frac{(2.0 \times 10^{8}\ \mathrm{m\,s^{-1}})}{(0.9 \times 10^{15}\ \mathrm{s^{-1}})} = 2.22 \times 10^{-7}\ \mathrm{m} = 222\ \mathrm{nm}$$

B. To go from $S_{(\pi,\pi)}$ to $T_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$ for chlorophyll requires energy equivalent to the absorption of a photon with a wavelength a little longer than 680 nm, so a 333-nm photon would generally have enough energy. However, because a change in spin direction is also required, this transition is extremely improbable.

C. A transition from π to π^* for a straight-chain hydrocarbon with six double bonds in conjugation can be caused by the absorption of a photon with a wavelength of about 350 nm (Section 4.4E), so the 333-nm photon has enough energy.

D. $\text{Wave number} = \dfrac{(0.9 \times 10^{15}\ \mathrm{s^{-1}})}{(0.3 \times 10^{8}\ \mathrm{m\,s^{-1}})} = 3.0 \times 10^{6}\ \mathrm{m^{-1}}$

4.3. A. The quantum yield for ATP production is equal to the rate of ATP production divided by the rate at which photons are absorbed. If all incident 680-nm photons are absorbed,

$$\text{Minimum photon flux density} = \frac{(0.2\ \mathrm{mol\,m^{-2}\,hour^{-1}})}{(0.4)(3600\ \mathrm{s\,hour^{-1}})} = 139\ \mu\mathrm{mol\,m^{-2}\,s^{-1}}$$

B. Using energy/mole from Equation 4.2b times the photon flux density, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Energy flux density} &= \frac{(0.1196\ \mathrm{J\,mol^{-1}\,m})}{(680 \times 10^{-9}\ \mathrm{m})}(139 \times 10^{-6}\ \mathrm{mol\,m^{-2}\,s^{-1}}) \\ &= 24\ \mathrm{J\,m^{-2}\,s^{-1}} = 24\ \mathrm{W\,m^{-2}}\end{aligned}$$

C. ATP is synthesized using energy derived from $S^{a}_{(\pi,\pi^*)}$, which can be reached by all 680-nm photons but only by 95% of the 430-nm photons, which also represent more energy. Hence, the ratio of energy conversion is

$$\text{Ratio} = \frac{0.95/(hc/430\ \mathrm{nm})}{1.00/(hc/680\ \mathrm{nm})} = 0.60$$

D. Using Equation 4.2b, we obtain

$$\lambda_{vac} = \frac{(119{,}600\ \mathrm{kJ\,mol^{-1}\,nm})}{(45\ \mathrm{kJ\,mol^{-1}})} = 2600\ \mathrm{nm} = 2.6\ \mu\mathrm{m}$$

4.4. A. Using Equation 4.14 ($1/\tau = \Sigma_j 1/\tau_j$), we obtain

$$\tau = \frac{1}{\left(\frac{1}{10^{-8}\,\mathrm{s}} + \frac{1}{5\times10^{-9}\,\mathrm{s}} + \frac{1}{10^{-8}\,\mathrm{s}}\right)} = 2.5\times10^{-9}\ \mathrm{s}$$

B. Electromagnetic radiation comes directly as fluorescence and also can come as phosphorescence from the triplet state. Using Equation 4.16, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}\Phi_{\mathrm{em}} &= \frac{k_{\mathrm{F}} + k_{\mathrm{P}}}{\Sigma_j k_j} = \left(\frac{1}{\tau_{\mathrm{F}}} + \frac{1}{\tau_{\mathrm{P}}}\right)\tau \\ &= \left(\frac{1}{10^{-8}\,\mathrm{s}} + \frac{1}{5\times10^{-9}\,\mathrm{s}}\right)(2.5\times10^{-9}\ \mathrm{s}) = 0.75\end{aligned}$$

C. By Equation 4.14 we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{1}{\tau} &= k = k_{\mathrm{transfer}} + k_{\mathrm{previous}} \\ &= (10^{12}\ \mathrm{s}^{-1}) + \frac{1}{(2.5\times10^{-9}\ \mathrm{s})} \cong 10^{12}\ \mathrm{s}^{-1}\end{aligned}$$

hence $\tau \cong 10^{-12}$ s.

4.5. A. Rearranging Beer's law (Eq. 4.19), we obtain

$$c_{cis} = \frac{\log J_0/J_b}{\varepsilon_\lambda b} = \frac{\log\,(1.00/0.35)}{(2.0\times10^{3}\ \mathrm{m^2\,mol^{-1}})(10\times10^{-3}\ \mathrm{m})} = 23\times10^{-3}\ \mathrm{mol\,m^{-3}}$$

B. $A^{cis}_{450} = \log\left(\frac{1.00}{0.35}\right) = 0.46$

The absorbance is unaffected by changes in the incident photon flux density.

C. Assuming that each photon absorbed excites a molecule and using Equation 4.16, we obtain

$$\text{Initial rate} = (0.5)(0.65)(10^{17}\ \text{molecules m}^{-2}\,\mathrm{s}^{-1}) = 3.3\times10^{16}\ \text{molecules m}^{-2}\,\mathrm{s}^{-1}$$

For the cuvette path length, this corresponds to

$$\frac{(3.3\times10^{16}\ \text{molecules m}^{-2}\,\mathrm{s}^{-1})}{(10\times10^{-3}\ \mathrm{m})} = 3.3\times10^{18}\ \text{molecules m}^{-3}\,\mathrm{s}^{-1}$$

or

$$\frac{(3.3\times10^{18}\ \text{molecules m}^{-3}\,\mathrm{s}^{-1})}{(6.02\times10^{23}\ \text{molecules mol}^{-1})} = 5.5\times10^{-6}\ \mathrm{mol\,m^{-3}\,s^{-1}}$$

Using Equation 4.19, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta A_{450} &= \varepsilon^{cis}_{450}\Delta c^{cis} b = (2\times10^{3}\ \mathrm{m^2\,mol^{-1}})(5.5\times10^{-6}\ \mathrm{mol\,m^{-3}\,s^{-1}})(10^{-2}\ \mathrm{m}) \\ &= 1.1\times10^{-4}\ \mathrm{s}^{-1}\end{aligned}$$

D. The quantum yields for the *cis* to *trans* and the *trans* to *cis* isomerizations are here the same (0.50), and hence after a long time (a "photostationary state") the

relative amounts of the two forms depend inversely on the relative absorption coefficients:

$$cis/trans\ \text{ratio} = \frac{(10^3\ \text{m}^2\ \text{mol}^{-1})}{(2.0 \times 10^3\ \text{m}^2\ \text{mol}^{-1})} = 0.5$$

The same conclusion can be deduced by noting that the same numbers of photons are absorbed by each isomer and using Equation 4.19.

4.6. A. By Problem 4.2, wave number equals v/c or $1/\lambda_{\text{vac}}$. Here $1/\lambda$ is equal to $\frac{1}{(500\,\text{nm})} \pm 1.2 \times 10^5 \text{m}^{-1}$, so

$$\lambda_{\text{below}} = \frac{1}{\left[\frac{1}{(500 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{m})} - (1.2 \times 10^5\ \text{m}^{-1})\right]} = 5.32 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{m} = 532\ \text{nm}$$

$$\lambda_{\text{above}} = \frac{1}{\left[\frac{1}{(500 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{m})} + (1.2 \times 10^5\ \text{m}^{-1})\right]} = 4.72 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{m} = 472\ \text{nm}$$

B. The percentage absorbed depends on ε_λ, c, and b (Eq. 4.19). Here, $\varepsilon_{\text{satellite}}cb = \log(J_0/J_b) = \log(1.00/0.80)$, or 0.097. Because $\varepsilon_{\text{main}} = 5\varepsilon_{\text{satellite}}$, $\varepsilon_{\text{main}}cb = 0.485$, indicating that $J_0/J_b = 3.05$, which means that $1 - (J_b/J_0)$ is 0.67, i.e., 67% is absorbed by the main band.

C. Based on Equation 4.19, we obtain (maximum absorbance occurs for the maximum absorption coefficient)

$$c = \frac{A_\lambda}{\varepsilon_\lambda b} = \frac{(0.3)}{(5 \times 10^3\ \text{m}^2\ \text{mol}^{-1})(5 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m})} = 0.012\ \text{mol m}^{-3}$$

4.7. A. The energy for each band is calculated using Equation 4.2b ($E_\lambda = Nhc/\lambda_{\text{vac}}$). The splitting between vibrational sublevels equals the energy difference between adjacent bands:

$$E_{431} - E_{450} = \frac{(119{,}600\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}\ \text{nm})}{(431\ \text{nm})} - \frac{(119{,}600\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}\ \text{nm})}{(450\ \text{nm})} = 12\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}$$

B. The temperature dependence of the minor band indicates a transition from an excited sublevel of the ground state. The Boltzmann factor, $e^{-E/RT}$, is 0.007 for an E of 12 kJ mol^{-1} at 20°C, so the transition is only 0.7% as probable as the 450-nm transition; compare the indicated ε_λ's. (Also, the population of the first excited vibrational sublevel of the ground state decreases as the temperature decreases.)

C. By Equation 4.2b, the energy difference between the 450-nm band and the 494-nm band is

$$E_{450} - E_{494} = \frac{(119{,}600\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}\ \text{nm})}{(450\ \text{nm})} - \frac{(119{,}600\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}\ \text{nm})}{(494\ \text{nm})} = 24\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}$$

which is the energy difference between two vibrational sublevels. Because emission of fluorescence generally occurs from the lowest vibrational sublevel of the excited state, the 450-nm band apparently represents a transition from the first vibrational sublevel of the ground state (the most populated one according to the Boltzmann factor) to the third vibrational sublevel of the excited state.

D. Originally, the molecule had 11 double bonds in a single conjugated system. Therefore, using Equation 4.2b we obtain

$$E_{\max}^{\text{original}} = \frac{(119{,}600\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}\ \text{nm})}{(450\ \text{nm})} = 266\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}$$

The new molecule has five double bonds in each of two conjugated systems. Therefore, Equation 4.2b indicates that

$$\lambda_{\max}^{\text{new}} = \frac{Nhc}{E_{\max}^{\text{original}} + (6)(25\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1})}$$

$$= \frac{(119{,}600\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}\ \text{nm})}{(266\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}) + (150\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1})} = 288\ \text{nm}$$

If ε_λ is proportional to the number of double bonds in a conjugated system and the new molecule has two conjugated systems per molecule, then

$$\varepsilon_{288} = \frac{(2)(5)(1.0 \times 10^4\ \text{m}^2\ \text{mol}^{-1})}{(11)} = 0.91 \times 10^4\ \text{m}^2\ \text{mol}^{-1}$$

Chapter 5

5.1. A. The volume fraction of the cell occupied by chloroplasts is

$$\frac{(50)(\frac{4}{3}\pi)(2 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m})^3}{(\frac{4}{3}\pi)(20 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m})^3} = 0.05$$

B. Cell volume times density equals the cell mass:

$$\frac{4}{3}\pi(20 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m})^3 \times 1000\ \text{kg m}^{-3} = 3.35 \times 10^{-11}\ \text{kg cell}^{-1}$$

of which 10% or 3.35×10^{-12} kg cell^{-1} is dry mass. CO_2 fixation leads to the formation of carbohydrate (see Fig. 5.1), which has a mass of 30 g/mol C. Hence, the rate of dry mass production is

$$\left[0.1\ \text{mol CO}_2(\text{g chlorophyll})^{-1}\ \text{hour}^{-1}\right](1\ \text{g chlorophyll kg}^{-1})$$

$$\times(3.35 \times 10^{-11}\ \text{kg cell}^{-1})[30\ \text{g}(\text{mol CO}_2)^{-1}]$$

$$= 10.1 \times 10^{-11}\ \text{g hour}^{-1}\text{cell}^{-1}$$

Hence, the time is $\frac{(3.35\times10^{-12}\ \text{kg cell}^{-1})}{(10.1\times10^{-14}\ \text{kg hour}^{-1}\ \text{cell}^{-1})} = 33$ hours.

C. The molecular weight of Chl *a* is 893.5 (see Chapter 5, Section 5.1A). For Chl *b*, a formyl group (–CHO) replaces a methyl group (–CH_3) of Chl *a*, so its molecular weight is 907.5. Using a weighted mean, the mean molecular weight of chlorophyll in the cell thus is

$$\frac{(3)(893.5) + (1)(907.5)}{(4)} = 897.0$$

D. The concentration of chlorophyll is

$$(1\ \text{g chlorophyll kg}^{-1})[1\ \text{mol}(897\ \text{g})^{-1}](1000\ \text{kg m}^{-3}) = 1.11\ \text{mol chlorophyll m}^{-3}$$

Maximum absorptance occurs along a cell diameter (40 μm), and so using Beer's law ($A_\lambda = \varepsilon_\lambda cb$; Eq. 4.19), we obtain

$$A_{\text{blue}} = (1.21 \times 10^4\ \text{m}^2\ \text{mol}^{-1})(1.11\ \text{mol m}^{-3})(40 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m}) = 0.54$$
$$A_{\text{red}} = (0.90 \times 10^4\ \text{m}^2\ \text{mol}^{-1})(1.11\ \text{mol m}^{-3})(40 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m}) = 0.40$$

5.2. A. The λ_{max} of fluorescence corresponds to a transition from the lowest sublevel of the excited state to some sublevel of the ground state, which is the lowest sublevel for the current case of the shortest λ_{max}. By Equation 4.2b ($E_\lambda = Nhc/\lambda_{\text{vac}}$), λ_{580} corresponds to an energy of (119,600 kJ mol^{-1} nm)/(580 nm), or 206 kJ mol^{-1}. For the first pigment, fluorescence is maximum at wavelengths corresponding to (3)(10 kJ mol^{-1}) less energy, so

$$\lambda_{\text{max}} = \frac{(119{,}600\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}\ \text{nm})}{(206\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}) - (30\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1})} = 680\ \text{nm}$$

The transition for the pigment with 10 double bonds in conjugation occurs (2) (20 kJ mol^{-1}) lower in energy, so

$$\lambda_{\text{max}} = \frac{(119{,}600\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}\ \text{nm})}{(166\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}) - (30\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1})} = 879\ \text{nm}$$

B. To pass energy on by resonance transfer, the available energy in the donating molecule (indicated by its fluorescence emission spectrum) must match the energy that can be accepted by the receiving molecule (indicated by its absorption spectrum). Because λ_{max} for fluorescence by the pigment with eight bonds in conjugation closely matches λ_{max} for absorption by the red band of Chl *a*, it can readily pass its excitation to Chl *a*, whereas the other molecule cannot.

C. Blue light excites the Soret band of Chl *a*, which rapidly becomes deexcited to the lower excited singlet (see Fig. 4.9). Therefore, the energy available is given by the red fluorescence of Chl *a* (λ_{max} = 666 nm; see Fig. 5.3). Consequently, the first compound (λ_{max} = 580 nm) cannot be excited by Chl *a*. For the pigment with 10 double bonds in conjugation, Equation 4.2 indicates that the absorption maximum occurs at

$$\lambda_{\text{max}} = \frac{(119{,}600\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}\ \text{nm})}{(166\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1})} = 720\ \text{nm}$$

Thus this pigment could become excited by resonance transfer from Chl *a*.

5.3. A. Using Equation 4.19 [$A_\lambda = \log(J_0/J_b) = \varepsilon_\lambda cb$], we obtain

$$A_{675} = (0.6 \times 10^4\ \text{m}^2\ \text{mol}^{-1})(2 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m})(20\ \text{mol m}^{-3}) = 0.24$$

The fraction transmitted by the chloroplast (J_b/J_0) is $10^{-0.24}$ or 0.58, so the fraction absorbed is 0.42.

B. The incident photon flux density is calculated by dividing the radiant energy flux density (40 W m^{-2} or 40 J s^{-1} m^{-2}) by the energy per mole of 675-nm photons, which by Equation 4.2b ($E_\lambda = Nhc/\lambda_{\text{vac}}$) is 177 kJ mol^{-1}. If 0.42 of these

photons are absorbed, then the rate at which photons are absorbed by a single chloroplast is

$$(0.42)\frac{(40\ \mathrm{J\ s^{-1}\ m^{-2}})}{(177 \times 10^3\ \mathrm{J\ mol^{-1}})} = 95 \times 10^{-6}\ \mathrm{mol\ m^{-2} s^{-1}} = 95\ \mu\mathrm{mol\ m^{-2}\ s^{-1}}$$

The number of chlorophyll molecules participating in this absorption for the single chloroplast is

$$(2 \times 10^{-6}\ \mathrm{m})(20\ \mathrm{mol\ m^{-3}}) = 40 \times 10^{-6}\ \mathrm{mol\ m^{-2}} = 40\ \mu\mathrm{mol\ m^{-2}\ s^{-1}}$$

C. Each absorbed photon excites a chlorophyll, so the rate at which chlorophyll molecules are excited is

$$\frac{(95\ \mu\mathrm{mol\ photon\ m^{-2}\ s^{-1}})}{(40\ \mu\mathrm{mol\ chlorophyll\ m^{-2}})} = 2.4\ \mathrm{excitation\ chlorophyll^{-1}\ s^{-1}}$$

The excitation frequency per reaction center (RC) is (2.4 excitations chlorophyll^{-1} s^{-1})(250 chlorophylls RC^{-1}), or 600 excitations s^{-1} RC^{-1}. Because only 100 excitations s^{-1} RC^{-1} can be processed, the processable fraction is (100/600), or 0.17.

D. Because only 0.17 of excitations from the absorbed radiation are processable and eight photons are required/O_2, the O_2 evolution rate is

$$(0.17)\frac{(95\ \mu\mathrm{mol\ photon\ m^{-2}\ s^{-1}})}{(8\ \mathrm{photon}/\mathrm{O_2})} = 2.0\ \mu\mathrm{mol\ O_2\ m^{-2}\ s^{-1}}$$

E. Because the absorptance of three chloroplasts is three times that of the one chloroplast considered in A, Equation 4.19 indicates that

$$J_{\mathrm{transmitted}} = J_{\mathrm{incident}} 10^{-0.72} = \frac{(40\ \mathrm{J\ s^{-1}\ m^{-2}})}{(177 \times 10^3\ \mathrm{J\ m^{-1}})}(0.191)$$
$$= 43 \times 10^{-6}\ \mathrm{mol\ photons\ m^{-2}\ s^{-1}}$$

The fraction absorbed by the single chloroplast is again 0.42, so (0.42)(43 μmol $^{-2}$ s^{-1}), or 18 μmol photons are absorbed m^{-2} s^{-1}. Thus the excitation frequency is

$$\frac{(18\ \mu\mathrm{mol\ photon\ m^{-2}\ s^{-1}})}{(40\ \mu\mathrm{mol\ chlorophyll\ m^{-2}})} = 0.45\ \mathrm{excitations\ chlorophyll^{-1}\ s^{-1}}$$

which corresponds to 113 excitations (250 chlorophylls)$^{-1}$ s^{-1}, of which 100 excitations s^{-1} can be processed. Thus, (100/113) or 0.88 (nearly all) of the excitations are processed in the shaded chloroplast, which is a much higher fraction than for the unshaded chloroplast in C.

5.4. A. The number of photons required per oxygen evolved is derived from the initial linear part of the curve describing the relationship between incident photon flux density and oxygen evolution:

$$\frac{(10 \times 10^{-6}\ \mathrm{mol\ photons\ absorbed\ m^{-2}\ s^{-1}})}{(10^{-4}\ \mathrm{mol\ O_2\ m^{-2}})(10^{-2}\ \mathrm{m})} = 10\ \mathrm{photons\ absorbed\ s^{-1}(O_2\ evolved)^{-1}}$$

B. During an intense, brief flash of light almost all chlorophyll molecules become excited, although only one excitation can be processed per reaction center (RC). If 10 excitations need to be processed before a molecule of oxygen can be evolved (see A), then the concentration of RC's will be equal to 10 times the concentration of oxygen evolved during a flash. Thus the ratio of chlorophyll to RC's is

$$\frac{(10 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{mol chlorophyll m}^{-3})}{(10\ \text{RC}/\text{O}_2)(5 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{mol O}_2\ \text{m}^{-3})} = 200\ \text{chlorophylls RC}^{-1}$$

C. Here, 10^{-2} mol chlorophyll m^{-3} corresponds to 10^{-4} mol chlorophyll m^{-2}, which by B is 0.50×10^{-6} mol RC m^{-2}. This processed 10 μmol photons $m^{-2}\ s^{-1}$, so it could process 20 photons $RC^{-1}\ s^{-1}$ (0.05 s per photon).

D. The uncoupling of ATP formation from electron flow is analogous to disengaging a clutch, which allows a motor to run faster; the O_2 evolution therefore initially speeds up. After a while, the lack of ATP formation causes no CO_2 to be fixed; the electron acceptors therefore stay reduced and electron flow to them is curtailed. Moreover, electron flow may eventually switch over to the pseudocyclic type, which involves no net O_2 evolution.

5.5. A. The 710-nm light absorbed by Photosystem I leads to cyclic electron flow and accompanying ATP formation. In the idealized example given, 550-nm light by itself leads to excitation of Photosystem II only, and no photophosphorylation occurs.

B. Accessory (or auxiliary) pigments, presumably carotenoids, which are isoprenoids.

C. More photons are absorbed at 550 nm [$A_{550} = 1.0$ indicates that $J_b = J_0 \times 10^{-1.0} = 0.10 J_0$ by Eq. 4.19 ($A_\lambda = \log J_0/J_b$), so 90% are absorbed] than are absorbed at 710 nm ($A_{710} = 0.1$ indicates that $J_b = J_0 \times 10^{-0.1} = 0.79\ J_0$, so 21% are absorbed). Thus, for every 90 photons absorbed at 550 nm, 21 will be absorbed at 710 nm. Because CO_2 fixation requires an equal number of photons to be absorbed by each of the two photosystems, all 21 of the 710-nm photons can potentially be used (maximum quantum efficiency of 1.00), whereas only 21 of the 90 or 0.23 of the photons at 550 nm can be used.

D. The minimum photon flux density occurs if each absorbed photon bleaches one P_{700}. Again using Equation 4.19, we obtain

$$A_{700} = 10^{-5} = \varepsilon_{700} cb = (0.8 \times 10^4\ \text{m}^2\ \text{mol}^{-1})(cb)$$

Hence,

$$cb = \frac{A_{700}}{\varepsilon_{700}} = \frac{(10^{-5})}{(0.8 \times 10^4\ \text{m}^2\ \text{mol}^{-1})} = (1.3 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{mol m}^{-2})$$

Chapter 6

6.1. A. By Equation 6.5, we have

$$\Delta G = -17.1\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1} + (2.479\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}) \ln \frac{(1\ m)}{(1\ m)(1\ m)}$$
$$= -17.1\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}$$

Because ΔG for the reaction is negative, the reaction proceeds in the forward direction.

B. Using Equation 6.5 as in A, we calculate

$$\Delta G = -17.1\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1} + 2.479\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}\ln\frac{(10^{-3}\ m)}{(10^{-3}\ m)(10^{-3}\ m)}$$
$$= -17.1\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1} + 17.1\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1} = 0\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}$$

Hence, the reactants and the product are in equilibrium, and thus the reaction does not proceed in either direction.

C. As in A and B, we use Equation 6.5 to calculate $\Delta G = 17.1\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}$, indicating that the reaction proceeds in the backward direction.

D. Equilibrium is attained when $\Delta G = 0$ (see B). The equilibrium constant therefore is

$$\frac{(10^{-3}\ m)}{(10^{-3}\ m)(10^{-3}\ m)} = 10^{3}\ m^{-1}$$

6.2. A. Rearranging Equation 6.9, we obtain

$$\ln\frac{(B)}{(B^{+})} = \frac{E^{*}_{B^{+}-B} - E_{B^{+}-B}}{RT/F} = \frac{(0.118\ \text{V}) - (0.000\ \text{V})}{(0.0257\ \text{V})} = 4.59$$

Hence, $(B^{+})/(B) = e^{-4.59} = 0.010$.

B. Based on the ΔG^{*}'s, the first reaction has more of a tendency to go to the reduced form (A), meaning that it has a higher midpoint redox potential (e.g., consider beginning with unit activity of all species). Using Equation 6.7 ($\Delta G = -nF\Delta E$), we calculate that $E_A^{*\text{H}}$ is higher than $E_B^{*\text{H}}$ by

$$\frac{(8.37\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}) - (2.93\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1})}{(96.49\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}\ \text{V}^{-1})} = 0.056\ \text{V}$$

and so $E_A^{*\text{H}} = 0.056\ \text{V} + 0.118\ \text{V} = 0.174\ \text{V}$.

C. When (oxidized j) = (reduced j), $E_j = E_j^{*H}$. Thus the difference in electrical potential initially is the difference between the two midpoint redox potentials:

$$\Delta E = E_A^{*\text{H}} - E_B^{*\text{H}} = 0.174\ \text{V} - 0.118\ \text{V} = 0.056\ \text{V}$$

Electrons spontaneously flow toward higher redox potentials, which is toward the A–A^{+} half cell (couple).

D. Consider the reaction $A + B^{+} \rightleftharpoons A^{+} + B$, which is obtained by subtracting the second reaction from the first reaction. For this composite reaction, $\Delta G^{*} = (8.37\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}) - (2.93\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}) = 5.44\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}$. By Equation 6.6 ($\Delta G^{*} = -RT\ln K$),

$$K = e^{-(5.44\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1})/(2.479\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1})} = 0.111$$

At equilibrium, A^{+} and B have the same concentration, as do A and B^{+}. Thus, $K = \frac{(A^{+})(B)}{(A)(B^{+})} = \frac{(A^{+})^2}{(A)^2}$, and so $(A^{+}) = \sqrt{K}(A) = \sqrt{0.111}(A) = 0.33(A)$. Because all reactants and products were initially 1 m, we have $(A) + (A^{+}) = 2\ m = 1.33(A)$, and so

$$(A) = (B^{+}) = 1.50\ m$$
$$(A^{+}) = (B) = 0.50\ m$$

E. If instead of the chemical reaction in D, we had two half-cell reactions, we could turn the difference in electron free energy into work instead of heat. However, the final concentrations at equilibrium would be the same in the two cases.

6.3. A. Rearranging the expression for the equilibrium constant for ATP formation (Eq. 6.13), we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}[\text{ATP}] &= (K_{\text{pH }7})[\text{ADP}][\text{phosphate}]\\ &= (4 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{M}^{-1})(2.0 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{M})(5.0 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{M}) = 4.0 \times 10^{-11}\ \text{M}\end{aligned}$$

B. Because $ADP + P_i \rightleftharpoons ATP + H_2O$ (Eq. 6.11) and there was negligible ATP to begin with (see A), a decrease in ADP from 2mM to 1 mM causes the ATP concentration to become 1 mM. Using Equation 6.14b for the ATP formation energy, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta G &= 31 + 5.71 \log \frac{(1.0 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{M})}{(1.0 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{M})(4.0 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{M})}\ \text{kJ (mol ATP)}^{-1}\\ &= 45\ \text{kJ (mol ATP)}^{-1}\end{aligned}$$

C. Using Equation 6.16b, we can calculate the redox potential of the $NADP^+$–NADPH couple:

$$E_{\text{NADP}^+-\text{NADPH}} = -0.32 - 0.030 \log \frac{(0.03)}{(1.00)}\ \text{V} = -0.274\ \text{V}$$

Therefore, the difference in redox potential between the $NADP^+$–NADPH couple and ferredoxin is

$$(-0.274\ \text{V}) - (-0.580\ \text{V}) = 0.306\ \text{V}$$

D. When 2 mol of electrons are transferred (NADPH can donate two electrons), Equation 6.7 indicates that

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta G &= -(2)(96.5\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}\ \text{V}^{-1})(0.306\ \text{V})\\ &= -59\ \text{kJ per 2 mol of electrons}\end{aligned}$$

which is a large enough free energy decrease to form 1 mol of ATP [ΔG = 45 kJ (mol ATP)$^{-1}$ in B].

E. Assuming that E_M = 0 V, Equation 6.17c indicates that

$$\text{pH}^{\text{o}} - \text{pH}^{\text{i}} = \frac{\mu_{\text{H}}^{\text{i}} - \mu_{\text{H}}^{\text{o}}}{5.71} = \frac{(44/2)}{(5.71)} = 3.9$$

when two H^+'s are involved and (44/3)/(5.71) = 2.6 when three H^+'s are involved.

6.4. A. Using Equation 6.9, we obtain

$$E_b = (0.040\ \text{V}) - \frac{(0.0257\ \text{V})}{(1)} \ln\left(\frac{0.20}{1.00}\right) = 0.081\ \text{V}$$

B. For Cyt *c* to be just able to pass electrons to Cyt *b* (see A), E_c has to be equal to E_b (or be slightly lower). Thus, by Equation 6.9, we obtain

$$E_c = 0.220\ \text{V} - \frac{(0.0257\ \text{V})}{(1)} \ln \frac{(1\ \text{mM})}{(\text{Fe}^{3+})} = 0.081\ \text{V}$$

Hence

$$\ln\frac{(1\ \text{mM})}{(\text{Fe}^{3+})} = \frac{(0.220\ \text{V} - 0.081\ \text{V})}{(0.0257\ \text{V})} = 5.41$$

$$(\text{Fe}^{3+}) = \frac{(1\ \text{mM})}{(e^{5.41})} = \frac{(10^{-3}\ \text{M})}{(224)} = 4.5 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{M}$$

C. The AE equivalent to a drop in free energy of 40 kJ mol^{-1} is calculated using Equation 6.7:

$$\Delta E = \frac{(-40\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1})}{-(1)(-96.49\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}\ \text{V}^{-1})} = 0.415\ \text{V}$$

Thus E_c must be 0.415 V more positive than is E_b, or E_c = 0.081 V + 0.415 V = 0.496 V.

D. Because two H$^+$'s move per electron and the activity (or pH) term for H$^+$ is the same on the two sides of the membrane, the redox potential difference is twice the electrical potential difference, or 0.30 V.

E. Assuming pH$^{\text{o}}$ = pH$^{\text{i}}$, Equation 6.17c indicates that

$$E_M = \frac{\mu_{\text{H}}^{\text{i}} - \mu_{\text{H}}^{\text{o}}}{96.5} = \frac{(-40/2\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1})}{(96\ \text{kJ mol}^{-1}\ \text{V}^{-1})} = -0.21\ \text{V}$$

F. When three H$^+$'s are required, the minimum E_M is (–40/3)/(96.5) = –0.14 V. When 30% of the energy is lost, E_M is (–0.14 V)/(0.70) = –0.20 V.

Chapter 7

7.1. A. We know that absorbed infrared (IR) is here equal to emitted IR for the leaf, and therefore we can set Equation 7.6 equal to Equation 7.7 and solve for T^{surr}:

$$a_{\text{IR}}\sigma[(T^{\text{surr}})^4 + (T^{\text{sky}})^4] = 2e_{\text{IR}}\sigma(T^{\text{leaf}})^4$$

$$T^{\text{surr}} = \left[\frac{2e_{\text{IR}}\sigma(T^{\text{leaf}})^4}{a_{\text{IR}}\sigma} - (T^{\text{sky}})^4\right]^{1/4} = [2(T^{\text{leaf}})^4 - (T^{\text{sky}})^4]^{1/4}$$

because a_{IR} here equals e_{IR}. For a clear sky we therefore have

$$T^{\text{surr}} = [(2)(283\ \text{K})^4 - (233\ \text{K})^4]^{1/4} = 315\ \text{K} = 42°\text{C}$$

and for a cloudy sky we obtain

$$T^{\text{surr}} = [(2)(283\ \text{K})^4 - (275\ \text{K})^4]^{1/4} = 290\ \text{K} = 17°\text{C}$$

B. For emitted radiant energy, Wien's displacement law (Eq. 4.4b) becomes $\lambda_{\max}T$ = 2.90 × 10^6 nm K. Therefore, for the leaf

$$\lambda_{\max} = \frac{(2.90 \times 10^6\ \text{nm K})}{(283\ \text{K})} = 10{,}200\ \text{nm} = 10.2\ \mu\text{m}$$

Emitted radiant energy for the surroundings with the clear sky has

$$\lambda_{max} = \frac{(2.90 \times 10^6 \text{ nm K})}{(315 \text{ K})} = 9200 \text{ nm} = 9.2\,\mu\text{m}$$

Emitted radiant energy for the surroundings with the cloudy sky has

$$\lambda_{max} = \frac{(2.90 \times 10^6 \text{ nm K})}{(290 \text{ K})} = 10,000 \text{ nm} = 10.0\,\mu\text{m}$$

C. The amount of absorbed radiation is equal to the amount of absorbed solar radiation plus absorbed IR radiation. Using Equations 7.5 [for $a(1 + r)S$] and 7.6, total absorbed radiation equals

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Absorbed shortwave and longwave} &= (0.6)(1 + 0.10)(700 \text{ W m}^{-2}) \\ &\quad + (0.96)(5.67 \times 10^{-8} \text{ W m}^{-2} \text{ K}^{-4})[(282 \text{ K})^4 + (233 \text{ K})^4] \\ &= 462 \text{ W m}^{-2} + 505 \text{ W m}^{-2} = 967 \text{ W m}^{-2}\end{aligned}$$

D. The thermal (i.e., longwave or IR) radiation emitted is calculated using Equation 7.7:

$$\text{Emitted IR} = (2)(0.96)(5.67 \times 10^{-8} \text{ W m}^{-2} \text{ K}^{-4})(283 \text{ K})^4 = 698 \text{ W m}^{-2}$$

Thus, $(100\%)(698 \text{ W m}^{-2})/(967 \text{ W m}^{-2})$ or 72% of the absorbed radiation calculated in C is emitted as thermal radiation.

E. Using Equation 7.5, the solar (i.e., shortwave) radiation absorbed is

$$(0.60)(1 + 0.15)(250 \text{ W m}^{-2}) = 173 \text{ W m}^{-2}$$

and by Equation 7.6 the absorbed IR radiation is

$$(0.96)(5.67 \times 10^{-8} \text{ W m}^{-2} \text{ K}^{-4})[(282 \text{ K})^4 + (275 \text{ K})^4] = 656 \text{ W m}^{-2}$$

Therefore, the total absorbed radiation is $173 \text{ W m}^{-2} + 656 \text{ W m}^{-2}$, or 829 W m^{-2}, and the outgoing radiation is 698 W m^{-2} from D, so the net radiation is

$$829 \text{ W m}^{-2} - 698 \text{ W m}^{-2} = 131 \text{ W m}^{-2}$$

7.2. A. For a circle, we can apply similar reasoning to the Hint given with this problem, thus

$$l = \frac{A}{d} = \frac{\pi r^2}{2r} = \frac{\pi r}{2} = \frac{\pi(0.06 \text{ m})}{2} = 0.094 \text{ m}$$

B. Using Equation 7.10, we have

$$\delta^{\text{bl}}_{(\text{mm})} = 4.0\sqrt{\frac{l_{(\text{m})}}{v_{(\text{m s}^{-1})}}} = 4.0\sqrt{\frac{(0.094 \text{ m})}{(0.80 \text{ m s}^{-1})}} = 1.37 \text{ mm}$$

Assuming that the mean distance across a leaf is the diameter, we have

$$\delta^{\text{bl}}_{(\text{mm})} = 4.0\sqrt{\frac{(0.12 \text{ m})}{(0.80 \text{ m s}^{-1})}} = 1.55 \text{ mm}$$

which is similar to the value determined using mean length.

C. Using Equation 7.14, the heat flux density is

$$J_H^{\rm C} = \frac{2K^{\rm air}(T^{\rm leaf} - T^{\rm ta})}{\delta^{\rm bl}} = \frac{(2)(0.0259\ {\rm W\,m^{-1}\,{}^\circ C^{-1}})(25^\circ{\rm C} - 20^\circ{\rm C})}{(1.37 \times 10^{-3}\ {\rm m})} = 189\ {\rm W\,m^{-2}}$$

D. From C we know that conductive/convective heat loss is 189 W m^{-2}, and we also know that the total heat load from net radiation is 300 W m^{-2}. Therefore, the amount of energy that must be dissipated as latent heat through transpiration is

$$300\ {\rm W\,m^{-2}} - 189\ {\rm W\,m^{-2}} = 111\ {\rm W\,m^{-2}}$$

Rearranging Equation 7.22 we thus find

$$J_{wv} = \frac{J_H^{\rm T}}{H_{\rm vap}} = \frac{(111\ {\rm J\,s^{-1}\,m^{-2}})}{(44.0 \times 10^3\ {\rm J\,mol^{-1}})} = 2.5 \times 10^{-3}\ {\rm mol\,m^{-2}\,s^{-1}}$$

7.3. A. Using Equation 7.12 for a sphere, we obtain

$$\delta^{\rm bl}_{\rm (mm)} = 2.8\sqrt{\frac{d_{\rm (m)}}{v_{\rm (m\,s^{-1})}}} + \frac{0.25}{v_{\rm (m\,s^{-1})}} = 2.8\sqrt{\frac{(0.2\ {\rm m})}{(1.0\ {\rm m\,s^{-1}})}} + \frac{(0.25)}{(1.0\ {\rm m\,s^{-1}})} = 1.50\ {\rm mm}$$

The amount of heat conducted across the boundary layer of a sphere can be calculated using Equation 7.16:

$$J_H^{\rm C} = \frac{(r + \delta^{\rm bl})K^{\rm air}(T^{\rm surf} - T^{\rm ta})}{r\delta^{\rm bl}}$$
$$= \frac{(0.1\ {\rm m} + 0.0015\ {\rm m})(0.0259\ {\rm W\,m^{-1}\,{}^\circ C^{-1}})(25^\circ{\rm C} - 20^\circ{\rm C})}{(0.1\ {\rm m})(0.0015\ {\rm m})} = 88\ {\rm W\,m^{-2}}$$

B. Rearranging Equation 7.17, we find

$$h_c = \frac{J_H^{\rm C}}{T^{\rm surf} - T^{\rm ta}} = \frac{(88\ {\rm W\,m^{-2}})}{(25^\circ{\rm C} - 20^\circ{\rm C})} = 18\ {\rm W\,m^{-2}\,{}^\circ C^{-1}}$$

C.. Using Equation 7.11 for a cylinder, we obtain

$$\delta^{\rm bl}_{\rm (mm)} = 5.8\sqrt{\frac{d_{\rm (m)}}{v_{\rm (m\,s^{-1})}}} = 5.8\sqrt{\frac{(1.2 \times 10^{-3}\ {\rm m})}{(1.0\ {\rm m\,s^{-1}})}} = 0.20\ {\rm mm}$$

D. Given that net radiation is due entirely to absorbed shortwave radiation and that heat loss does not occur through evaporation or conduction to the stem, Equation 7.2 indicates that the absorbed solar irradiation must be balanced by convective heat loss (Eq. 7.15):

$$a\bar{S} = J_H^{\rm C} = \frac{K^{\rm air}(T^{\rm spine} - T^{\rm ta})}{r\ln\left(\frac{r + \delta^{bl}}{r}\right)}$$

The mean solar flux density on the spine, $\bar{S}$, is less than the maximum S:

$$\bar{S} = \frac{\text{projected area}}{\text{actual area}}S = \frac{dl}{\pi dl}S = \frac{S}{\pi} = \frac{100\ {\rm W\,m^{-2}}}{\pi} = 32\ {\rm W\,m^{-2}}$$

Therefore, we calculate

$$T^{\text{spine}} = \frac{(0.7)(32\ \text{W m}^{-2})(0.6 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m})\ln(\frac{0.6\ \text{mm} + 0.2\ \text{mm}}{0.6\ \text{mm}})}{(0.0257\ \text{W m}^{-1}\ {}^{\circ}\text{C}^{-1})} + 20.0^{\circ}\text{C} = 20.2^{\circ}\text{C}$$

E. In the absence of spines, IR is absorbed from one source (surroundings) and is emitted from one source (cactus surface). Combining Equations 7.6 and 7.7, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Net IR} &= a_{\text{IR}}\sigma(T^{\text{surr}})^4 - e_{\text{IR}}\sigma(T^{\text{surf}})^4 \\ &= (0.97)(5.67 \times 10^{-8}\ \text{W m}^{-2}\ \text{K}^{-4})[(253\ \text{K})^4 - (298\ \text{K})^4] \\ &= -208\ \text{W m}^{-2}\end{aligned}$$

In the presence of spines, IR is absorbed from two sources (surroundings and spines) and is emitted from one source (cactus surface). Therefore

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Net IR} &= a_{\text{IR}}\sigma[(T^{\text{surr}})^4 + (T^{\text{spine}})^4]\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\right) - e_{\text{IR}}\sigma(T^{\text{surf}})^4 \\ &= (0.97)(5.67 \times 10^{-8}\ \text{W m}^{-2}\ \text{K}^{-4})[\tfrac{1}{2}\ (253\ \text{K})^4 + \tfrac{1}{2}(293\ \text{K})^4 - (298\ \text{K})^4] \\ &= -118\ \text{W m}^{-2}\end{aligned}$$

F. Because the plant is spherical, the total solar radiation absorbed equals its projected area (πr^2) times the solar flux density perpendicular to the solar beam ($1000\ \text{W m}^{-2}$) times the absorbance (0.30). To obtain the average solar radiation absorbed over the plant surface, we divide by the plant's surface area ($4\pi r^2$). Thus

$$a\bar{S} = \frac{\pi r^2(1000\ \text{W m}^{-2})(0.30)}{4\pi r^2} = 75\ \text{W m}^{-2}$$

Using answers from E and A, the average net energy balance is

$$\begin{aligned}&\text{absorbed solar} + \text{net IR} - \text{net heat convection} \\ &= 75\ \text{W m}^{-2} - 118\ \text{W m}^{-2} - 88\ \text{W m}^{-2} = -131\ \text{W m}^{-2}\end{aligned}$$

Considering the whole plant surface area, the net energy balance equals $(-131\ \text{W m}^{-2})(4\pi)(0.1\ \text{m})^2 = -16.5\ \text{W}$. Given that the volumetric heat capacity is $(0.80)(4.175\ \text{MJ m}^{-3}\ {}^{\circ}\text{C}^{-1}) = 3.34\ \text{MJ m}^{-3}\ {}^{\circ}\text{C}^{-1}$, the change in tissue temperature can be calculated (Eq. 7.24):

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\Delta T}{\Delta t} &= \frac{\text{heat storage rate}}{VC_P} = \frac{(16.5\ \text{J s}^{-1})}{(4/3)(\pi)(0.1\ \text{m})^3(3.34 \times 10^6\ \text{Jm}^{-3}\ {}^{\circ}\text{C})} \\ &= -0.00118^{\circ}\text{C s}^{-1} = -4.2^{\circ}\text{C hour}^{-1}\end{aligned}$$

7.4. A. Using the equation for net radiation balance in the soil (Section 7.5B), we find that net radiation equals

$$\begin{aligned}&aS + a_{\text{IR}}\sigma(T^{\text{surr}})^4 - e_{\text{IR}}\sigma(T^{\text{soil}})^4 \\ &= 100\ \text{W m}^{-2} + (1)(5.67 \times 10^{-8}\ \text{W m}^{-2}\ \text{K}^{-4})(295\ \text{K}^{-4}) \\ &\quad - (1)(5.67 \times 10^{-8}\ \text{W m}^{-2}\ \text{K}^{-4})(293\ \text{K}^{-4}) \\ &= 100\ \text{W m}^{-2} + 429\ \text{W m}^{-2} - 418\ \text{W m}^{-2} = 111\ \text{W m}^{-2}\end{aligned}$$

B. Modifying Equation 7.27, we find the heat flux density down each stem is

$$J_H^{C} = \frac{K^{\text{water}}(T^{\text{veg}} - T^{\text{soil}})}{\Delta z}$$

Because flux density is a rate per unit area, multiplying by the stem area gives the rate of heat conduction down a stem:

$$\begin{aligned} A^{\text{stem}} J_H^{C} &= \frac{A^{\text{stem}} K^{\text{water}}(T^{\text{veg}} - T^{\text{soil}})}{\Delta z} \\ &= \frac{\pi(0.015\ \text{m})^2(0.60\ \text{W m}^{-1}\ {}^\circ\text{C}^{-1})(22^\circ\text{C} - 20^\circ\text{C})}{(0.8\ \text{m})} \\ &= 0.00106\ \text{W} = 1.06\ \text{mW} \end{aligned}$$

The average value of J_C^H per m^2 of ground is (1.06 mW plant^{-1}) (4 plants m^{-2} of ground) = 4.2 mW m^{-2} of ground.

C. Modifying Equation 7.14 by removing the factor 2 because the soil conducts to the air only from one surface, we find

$$J_H^{C} = \frac{K^{\text{air}}(T^{\text{soil}} - T^{\text{ta}})}{\delta^{\text{bl}}} = \frac{(0.0257\ \text{W m}^{-1}\ {}^\circ\text{C}^{-1})(20^\circ\text{C} - 21^\circ\text{C})}{(4 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m})} = -6\ \text{W m}^{-2}$$

D. Using Equation 7.22, the latent heat loss is

$$J_H^{T} = J_{wv} H_{\text{vap}} = (0.3 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{mol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1})(44.2 \times 10^3\ \text{J mol}^{-1}) = 13\ \text{W m}^{-2}$$

The flux density of heat conducted into the soil can be calculated from the overall energy balance (see Eq. 7.2):

$$\begin{aligned} J_H^{C} &= \text{net radiation} - \text{conduction/convection} - \text{latent heat} \\ &= 111\ \text{W m}^{-2} - (-6\ \text{W m}^{-2}) - 13\ \text{W m}^{-2} = 104\ \text{W m}^{-2} \end{aligned}$$

E. Rearranging Equation 7.27, we find

$$\frac{\partial T}{\partial z} = \frac{J_H^{C}}{-K^{\text{soil}}} = -\frac{(104\ \text{W m}^{-2})}{(0.60\ \text{W m}^{-1}\ {}^\circ\text{C}^{-1})} = -173^\circ\text{C m}^{-1}$$

7.5. A. Using Equation 7.29 for the damping depth, d for the annual case with an average soil temperature at the surface and below of (35°C + 17°C)/2 = 26°C is

$$d = \left(\frac{pK^{\text{soil}}}{\pi C_P^{\text{soil}}}\right)^{1/2} = \left(\frac{(3.156 \times 10^7\ \text{s})(1.50)(0.608\ \text{J s}^{-1}\ \text{m}^{-1}\ {}^\circ\text{C}^{-1})}{(3.142)(0.40)(4.166 \times 10^6\ \text{J m}^{-3}\ {}^\circ\text{C}^{-1})}\right)^{1/2} = 2.3\ \text{m}$$

B. Using Equation 7.28, the maximum soil temperature at depth z is $T = \overline{T}^{\text{surf}} + T^{\text{surf}} e^{-z/d}$, where ΔT^{surf} is (35°C − 17°C)/2 = 9°C. For the daily case, 30°C = 26°C + 9°C $e^{-z/(0.10\ \text{m})}$, so $z = -(0.10\ \text{m})$ ln (30°C − 26°C)/(9°C) = 0.081 m. For the annual case, $z = -(2.3\ \text{m})$ ln (30°C − 26°C)/(9°C) = 1.9 m.

C. The maximum soil temperature at any depth occurs when the cosine in Equation 7.28 equals 1, or the argument (angle) of the cosine is 0 (cos 0 = 1). Thus $2\pi t/p - 2\pi t_{\text{max}}/p - z/d = 0$, so $t = t_{\text{max}} + pz/(2\pi d)$. For the daily case, t = 15:00 +

(24:00)(0.081 m)/[(2π)(0.10 m)] = 18:09. For the annual case, t = 213 days + (365 days)(1.9 m)/[(2π)(2.3 m)] = 261 days, which is September 17.

Chapter 8

8.1. A. Using Equation 8.3 we find

$$g_{wv}^{\text{bl}} = \frac{D_{wv}}{\delta^{\text{bl}}} = \frac{(2.42 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1})}{(0.8 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m})} = 0.03\ \text{m s}^{-1} = 30\ \text{mm s}^{-1}$$

If we rearrange Equation 8.3,

$$r_{wv}^{\text{bl}} = \frac{1}{g_{wv}^{\text{bl}}} = \frac{1}{(0.03\ \text{m s}^{-1})} = 33\ \text{s m}^{-1}$$

B. The fraction of the leaf surface area that is occupied by stomatal pores is

$$na^{\text{st}} = (64\ \text{stomata mm}^{-2})(6 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{mm})(20 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{mm}) = 0.0077$$

The effective radius of a stomate (see Section 8.1C) is

$$r^{\text{st}} = \left(\frac{a^{\text{st}}}{\pi}\right)^{1/2} = \left(\frac{(6\ \mu\text{m})(20\ \mu\text{m})}{\pi}\right)^{1/2} = 6\ \mu\text{m}$$

C. The average flux density within an individual stomatal pore will be greater than is that in the boundary layer by the ratio of the areas available for gas diffusion:

$$J_{wv}^{\text{st}} = \frac{A}{A^{\text{st}}} J_{wv}^{\text{bl}} = \frac{1}{(0.0077)} J_{wv}^{\text{bl}} = 130\, J_{wv}^{\text{bl}}$$

D. Using Equation 8.5 we find

$$g_{wv}^{\text{st}} = \frac{D_{wv} na^{\text{st}}}{\delta^{\text{st}} + r^{\text{st}}} = \frac{(2.42 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{m}^2\ \text{s}^{-1})(0.0077)}{(25 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m}) + (6 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m})}$$
$$= 0.0060\ \text{m s}^{-1} = 6.0\ \text{mm s}^{-1}$$

Considering the discussion following Equation 8.8, we find

$$g'^{\text{st}}_{wv} = g_{wv}^{\text{st}} \frac{P}{RT} = (6.0 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m s}^{-1})(41.6\ \text{mol m}^{-3})$$
$$= 0.25\ \text{mol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1} = 250\ \text{mmol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1}$$

If the air pressure is reduced to 0.9 atm, then D_{wv} increases by (1.0 atm/0.9 atm) (see Eq. 8.9); therefore g_{wv}^{st} increases by that amount (see Eq. 8.5):

$$g_{wv}^{\text{st, 0.9 atm}} = \left(\frac{1\ \text{atm}}{0.9\ \text{atm}}\right)(6.0\ \text{mm s}^{-1}) = 6.7\ \text{mm s}^{-1}$$

Because g'^{st}_{wv} is independent of pressure (see Chapter 8, Section 8.1F), it remains at 250 mmol m^{-2} s^{-1}.

E. Using Equation 8.6 we find

$$g_{wv}^{\text{ias}} = \frac{D_{wv}}{\delta^{\text{ias}}} = \frac{(2.42 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{m}^2\ \text{s}^{-1})}{(0.5 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m})} = 0.048\ \text{m s}^{-1} = 48\ \text{mm s}^{-1}$$

For the other conductance, we have

$$g'^{\text{ias}}_{wv} = g_{wv}^{\text{ias}} \frac{P}{RT} = (48 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m s}^{-1}(41.6\ \text{mol m}^{-3}) = 2.0\ \text{mol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1}$$

F. Because the cavity is cylindrical, the effective radius equals the actual radius. Using Equation 8.5 (see also Eq. 8.16), we thus obtain

$$r_{wv}^{\text{cavity}} = \frac{\delta^{\text{cav}} + r^{\text{cav}}}{D_j n a^{\text{cav}}}$$
$$= \frac{(100 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m}) + (25 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m})}{(2.42 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{m}^2\ \text{s}^{-1})(64 \times 10^6\ \text{m}^{-2})(\pi)(25 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m})^2} = 41\ \text{s m}^{-1}$$

8.2. A. Using Equation 8.14, we can calculate the water vapor conductance of the leaf:

$$g_{wv}^{\text{leaf}} = \frac{g_{wv}^{\text{ias}} g_{wv}^{\text{st}}}{g_{wv}^{\text{ias}} + g_{wv}^{\text{st}}} + g_{wv}^{\text{c}} = \frac{(40\ \text{mm s}^{-1})(6\ \text{mm s}^{-1})}{(40\ \text{mm s}^{-1}) + (6\ \text{mm s}^{-1})} + (0.1\ \text{mm s}^{-1}) = 5.3\ \text{mm s}^{-1}$$

Then using Equation 8.15, we can incorporate the conductance through the boundary layer with that of the leaf to find the total water vapor conductance:

$$g_{wv}^{\text{total}} = \frac{(5.3\ \text{mm s}^{-1})(20\ \text{mm s}^{-1})}{(5.3\ \text{mm s}^{-1}) + (20\ \text{mm s}^{-1})} = 4.2\ \text{mm s}^{-1}$$

B. If the cuticular pathway is ignored, we have three conductances in series:

$$g_{wv}^{\text{total}} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{(40\ \text{mm s}^{-1})} + \frac{1}{(6\ \text{mm s}^{-1})} + \frac{1}{(20\ \text{mm s}^{-1})}} = 4.1\ \text{mm s}^{-1}$$

If the intercellular air spaces are ignored, stomatal and cuticular conductances are in parallel ($g_{wv}^{\text{leaf}} = g_{wv}^{\text{st}} + g_{wv}^{\text{c}}$) and in series with the boundary layer conductance:

$$g_{wv}^{\text{total}} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{(6\ \text{mm s}^{-1}) + (0.1\ \text{mm s}^{-1})} + \frac{1}{(20\ \text{mm s}^{-1})}} = 4.7\ \text{mm s}^{-1}$$

If both the cuticle and the intercellular air spaces are ignored, then the stomatal and boundary layer conductances are in series:

$$g_{wv}^{\text{total}} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{(6\ \text{mm s}^{-1})} + \frac{1}{(20\ \text{mm s}^{-1})}} = 4.6\ \text{mm s}^{-1}$$

C. The conductance of the upper surface here equals the conductance of the lower surface (determined in A) and is in parallel with it:

$$g_{wv}^{\text{total}} = g_{wv}^{\text{u}} + g_{wv}^{\text{l}} = 2g_{wv}^{\text{l}} = (2)(4.2\ \text{mm s}^{-1}) = 8.4\ \text{mm s}^{-1}$$

D. Here 0.72 of g_{wv}^{total} comes from the lower surface, whose conductance is determined in A, so

$$g_{wv}^{\text{total}} = \frac{g_{wv}^{\text{l}}}{(0.72)} = \frac{(4.2\ \text{mm s}^{-1})}{(0.72)} = 5.8\ \text{mm s}^{-1}$$

E. Using Equation 8.18 and $c_{wv}^{\text{leaf}} = (\text{RH}^{\text{leaf}}/100)c_{wv}^{*\text{leaf}}$, we find

$$J_{wv}^{\text{l}} = g_{wv}^{\text{total}}\Delta c_{wv}^{\text{total}} = g_{wv}^{\text{total}}(c_{wv}^{\text{leaf}} - c_{wv}^{\text{ta}})$$

$$= (4.2\ \text{mm s}^{-1})[(0.99)(30.4\ \text{g m}^{-3}) - (7.5\ \text{g m}^{-3})] = 95\ \text{mg m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1}$$

F. Considering the discussion following Equation 8.8, we obtain

$$g'^{\text{total}}_{wv} = g_{wv}^{\text{total}}\frac{P}{RT}$$

$$= (4.2 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m s}^{-1})\frac{(1\ \text{atm})}{(0.08205\ \text{liter atm mol}^{-1}\ \text{K}^{-1})(303\ \text{K})}\left(\frac{1000\ \text{liter}}{\text{m}^3}\right)$$

$$= 0.169\ \text{mol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1} = 169\ \text{mmol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1}$$

Equation 8.18 was modified as described in the text (see Section 8.2D), so that

$$J_{wv} = g'^{\text{total}}_{wv}\Delta N_{wv}^{\text{total}} = g'^{\text{total}}_{wv}(N_{wv}^{\text{leaf}} - N_{wv}^{\text{ta}})$$

$$= 169\ \text{mmol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1}[(0.99)(0.04190) - (0.0103)] = 5.3\ \text{mmol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1}$$

G. Rearranging Equation 8.18, the drop in water vapor concentration is

$$\Delta c_{wv}^{\text{st}} = \frac{J_{wv}}{g_{wv}^{\text{st}}} = \frac{(0.095\ \text{g m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1})}{(6.0 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m s}^{-1})} = 15.8\ \text{g m}^{-3}$$

Similarly, rearranging Equation 8.18 for the mole fraction case we obtain

$$\Delta N_{wv}^{\text{st}} = \frac{J_{wv}}{g'^{\text{st}}_{wv}} = \frac{J_{wv}}{g_{wv}^{\text{st}}\frac{P}{RT}} = \frac{(5.3 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{mol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1})}{(6.0 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m s}^{-1})(40.2\ \text{mol m}^{-3})} = 0.022$$

8.3. A. We will calculate the total surface area of the palisade mesophyll cells (rectangular parallelepipeds) and spongy mesophyll cells (spheres) and express it per unit area of the leaf surface:

$$\frac{A^{\text{mes}}}{A} = \frac{[(4)(100\ \mu\text{m})(30\ \mu\text{m}) + (2)(30\ \mu\text{m})(30\ \mu\text{m})] + (2)(4\pi)(15\ \mu\text{m})^2}{(30\ \mu\text{m})(30\ \mu\text{m})} = 22$$

B. The value for the sun leaf is

$$\frac{A^{\text{mes}}}{A} = \frac{(2)[(4)(100\ \mu\text{m})(30\ \mu\text{m}) + (2)(30\ \mu\text{m})(30\ \mu\text{m})] + (4\pi)(15\ \mu\text{m})^2}{(30\ \mu\text{m})(30\ \mu\text{m})} = 34$$

C. Using Equation 8.22, the maximum $r_{CO_2}^{\text{cw}}$ will be achieved when $K_{CO_2}^{\text{cw}}$ is minimal, namely 0.91 (i.e., no HCO_3^- or H_2CO_3; see Table 8-3):

$$r_{CO_2}^{\text{cw}} = \frac{\Delta x^{\text{cw}}}{(A^{\text{mes}}/A)D_{CO_2}^{\text{cw}}K_{CO_2}^{\text{cw}}} = \frac{(1)(0.2 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m})}{(22)(5.0 \times 10^{-10}\ \text{m}^2\ \text{s}^{-1})(0.91)} = 20\ \text{s m}^{-1}$$

D. Using Equation 8.22, we find

$$r_{CO_2}^{pm} = r_{CO_2}^{clm} = \frac{1}{A^{mes}/A}\frac{1}{P_{CO_2}} = \frac{1}{(22)(1.0 \times 10^{-3}\ \mathrm{m\ s^{-1}})} = 45\ \mathrm{s\ m^{-1}}$$

E. Using Equation 8.22, we find

$$r_{CO_2}^{cyt} = \frac{\Delta x^{cyt}}{(A^{mes}/A)D_{CO_2}^{cyt}K_{CO_2}^{cyt}} = \frac{(0.1 \times 10^{-6}\ \mathrm{m})}{(22)(1.0 \times 10^{-9}\ \mathrm{m^2\ s^{-1}})(1)} = 5\ \mathrm{s\ m^{-1}}$$

$$r_{CO_2}^{stroma} = \frac{\Delta x^{stroma}}{(A^{mes}/A)D_{CO_2}^{stroma}K_{CO_2}^{stroma}} = \frac{(0.5 \times 10^{-6}\ \mathrm{m})}{(22)(1.0 \times 10^{-9}\ \mathrm{m^2\ s^{-1}})(1)} = 23\ \mathrm{s\ m^{-1}}$$

F. Using Equations 8.21a and 8.21b, the total liquid-phase resistance to CO_2 diffusion for the shade leaf is

$$\begin{aligned} r_{CO_2}^{liquid} &= r_{CO_2}^{cw} + r_{CO_2}^{pm} + r_{CO_2}^{cyt} + r_{CO_2}^{clm} + r_{CO_2}^{stroma} \\ &= 20\ \mathrm{s\ m^{-1}} + 45\ \mathrm{s\ m^{-1}} + 5\ \mathrm{s\ m^{-1}} + 45\ \mathrm{s\ m^{-1}} + 23\ \mathrm{s\ m^{-1}} = 138\ \mathrm{s\ m^{-1}} \end{aligned}$$

The total liquid-phase resistance to CO_2 diffusion for the sun leaf is smaller than that of the shade leaf because the sun leaf has a higher A^{mes}/A:

$$r_{CO_2}^{liquid} = \left(\frac{22}{34}\right)(138\ \mathrm{s\ m^{-1}}) = 89\ \mathrm{s\ m^{-1}}$$

8.4. A. Rearranging Equation 8.27, we find

$$V_{max} = \frac{v_{CO_2}(K_{CO_2} + c_{CO_2}^{chl})}{c_{CO_2}^{chl}} = \frac{(4\ \mathrm{mol\ m^{-3}\ s^{-1}})(5\ \mu\mathrm{M} + 9\ \mu\mathrm{M})}{(9\ \mu\mathrm{M})} = 6.2\ \mathrm{mol\ m^{-3}\ s^{-1}}$$

B. Again using Equation 8.27, we have

$$0.9\ V_{max} = \frac{V_{max}c_{CO_2}^{chl}}{5\ \mu\mathrm{M} + c_{CO_2}^{chl}} \quad \text{or} \quad 4.5\ \mu\mathrm{M} + 0.9c_{CO_2}^{chl} = c_{CO_2}^{chl}$$

hence

$$c_{CO_2}^{chl} = \frac{(4.5\ \mu\mathrm{M})}{(0.1)} = 45\ \mu\mathrm{M}$$

C. Utilizing Equation 8.32 with the flux densities expressed as in Section 8.4E, we find that the total resistance to CO_2 diffusion is

$$\begin{aligned} r_{CO_2}^{total} &= r_{CO_2}^{bl_l} + r_{CO_2}^{leaf_l} + r_{CO_2}^{mes} + \left(\frac{1}{1 - J_{CO_2}^{r+pr}/J_{CO_2}^{ps}}\right) r_{CO_2}^{chl} \\ &= 60\ \mathrm{s\ m^{-1}} + 250\ \mathrm{s\ m^{-1}} + 150\ \mathrm{s\ m^{-1}} + \left(\frac{1}{1 - 0.45}\right)(100\ \mathrm{s\ m^{-1}}) = 642\ \mathrm{s\ m^{-1}} \end{aligned}$$

Using Equation 8.32, we find

$$\begin{aligned} J_{CO_2} &= \frac{c_{CO_2}^{ta} - c_{CO_2}^{chl}}{r_{CO_2}^{total}} = \frac{(13 \times 10^{-3}\ \mathrm{mol\ m^{-3}}) - (9 \times 10^{-3}\ \mathrm{mol\ m^{-3}})}{(642\ \mathrm{s\ m^{-1}})} \\ &= 6.2 \times 10^{-6}\ \mathrm{mol\ m^{-2}\ s^{-1}} \end{aligned}$$

D. We use the same equations as in C and find

$$r_{CO_2}^{total} = 60\ s\ m^{-1} + 250\ s\ m^{-1} + 150\ s\ m^{-1} + \left(\frac{1}{1-0.05}\right)(100\ s\ m^{-1}) = 565\ s\ m^{-1}$$

$$J_{CO_2} = \frac{(13 \times 10^{-3}\ mol\ m^{-3}) - (7 \times 10^{-3}\ mol\ m^{-3})}{(565\ s\ m^{-1})} = 10.6 \times 10^{-6}\ mol\ m^{-2}\ s^{-1}$$

E. We need to determine $J_{CO_2}^{r+pr}$, e.g., using Equation 8.28 and J_{CO_2} from D and knowing that $J_{CO_2}^{r+pr}$ is $0.05J_{CO_2}^{ps}$:

$$J_{CO_2} = J_{CO_2}^{ps} - J_{CO_2}^{r+pr} = 20J_{CO_2}^{r+pr} - J_{CO_2}^{r+pr} = 19J_{CO_2}^{r+pr}$$

$$J_{CO_2}^{r+pr} = J_{CO_2}/19 = (10.6 \times 10^{-6}\ mol\ m^{-2}\ s^{-1})/(19) = 0.56 \times 10^{-6}\ mol\ m^{-2}\ s^{-1}$$

We also note that 10 μmol mol^{-1} CO_2 is about 0.41 mmol m^{-3} (see Table 8–2). Thus, rearranging Equation 8.30 and noting that in the steady state for a confined bag, J_{CO_2} is zero, we find

$$\begin{aligned} c_{CO_2}^{chl} &= c_{CO_2}^{ta} - (J_{CO_2}^{r+pr})(r_{CO_2}^{chl}) \\ &= (0.41\ mmol\ m^{-3}) - (0.56 \times 10^{-3}\ mmol\ m^{-2}s^{-1})(100\ s\ m^{-1}) \\ &= 0.35\ mmol\ m^{-3} = 0.35\ \mu M \end{aligned}$$

F. Using Equation 8.31c, we can obtain a relation for the CO_2 efflux at night:

$$c_{CO_2}^{mito} - c_{CO_2}^{ta} = J_{CO_2}^{r+pr}(r_{CO_2}^{bl_l} + r_{CO_2}^{leaf_l} + r_{CO_2}^{mes} + r_{CO_2}^{i})$$

so

$$\begin{aligned} c_{CO_2}^{mito} &= (0.56 \times 10^{-3}\ mmol\ m^{-2}\ s^{-1})(60\ s\ m^{-1} + 250\ s\ m^{-1} \\ &\quad + 150\ s\ m^{-1} + 500\ s\ m^{-1}) + 13\ mmol\ m^{-3} \\ &= 14\ mmol\ m^{-3} = 14\ \mu M \end{aligned}$$

If stomatal closure causes $r_{CO_2}^{leaf}$ to become 5000 s m^{-1}, then

$$\begin{aligned} c_{CO_2}^{mito} &= (0.56 \times 10^{-3}\ mmol\ m^{-2}s^{-1})(60\ s\ m^{-1} + 5000\ s\ m^{-1} + 150\ s\ m^{-1} \\ &\quad + 500\ s\ m^{-1}) + 13\ mmol\ m^{-3} = 16\ mmol\ m^{-3} = 16\ \mu M \end{aligned}$$

8.5 A. We can use Equation 8.18 to find g_{wv}^{total}:

$$\begin{aligned} g_{wv}^{total} &= \frac{J_{wv}}{c_{wv}^{leaf} - c_{wv}^{air}} = \frac{(5.0 \times 10^{-3}\ mol\ m^{-2}\ s^{-1})}{(2.20\ mol\ m^{-3}) - (0.32)(1.69\ mol\ m^{-3})} \\ &= 3.0 \times 10^{-3}\ m\ s^{-1} = 3.0\ mm\ s^{-1} \end{aligned}$$

For conductances in series, the reciprocal of the total conductance ($1/g^{total}$) is the sum of the reciprocals of the individual conductances (see Section 8.2A), so

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{g_{wv}^{st}} &= \frac{1}{g_{wv}^{total}} - \frac{1}{g_{wv}^{bl}} - \frac{1}{g_{wv}^{ias}} \\ &= \frac{1}{(3.0\ mm\ s^{-1})} - \frac{1}{(15\ mm\ s^{-1})} - \frac{1}{(30\ mm\ s^{-1})} = 0.23\ s\ mm^{-1} \\ g_{wv}^{st} &= \frac{1}{(0.23\ s\ mm^{-1})} = 4.3\ mm\ s^{-1} \end{aligned}$$

B. Stomatal conductance will decrease fourfold, so total conductance is

$$g_{wv}^{\text{total}} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{(15\ \text{mm s}^{-1})} - \frac{1}{(0.25)(4.3\ \text{mm s}^{-1})} - \frac{1}{(30\ \text{mm s}^{-1})}} = 1.0\ \text{mm s}^{-1}$$

Because g_{wv}^{total} is one-third of that in A, transpiration will be reduced threefold (to 1.7 mmol m^{-2} s^{-}1).

C. Leaf temperature will increase because of the decrease in latent heat loss accompanying transpiration.

D. First we find the original gas-phase CO_2 conductance (see Section 8.4F):

$$g_{CO_2}^{\text{gas}} = \frac{g_{wv}^{\text{total}}}{1.60} = \frac{(3.0\ \text{mm s}^{-1})}{(1.60)} = 1.88\ \text{mm s}^{-1}$$

The new gas-phase conductance is

$$g_{CO_2}^{\text{gas}} = \frac{g_{wv}^{\text{total}}}{1.60} = \frac{(1.0\ \text{mm s}^{-1})}{(1.60)} = 0.63\ \text{mm s}^{-1}$$

If we use the original gas-phase conductance, we can find the liquid-phase conductance to CO_2, which is unchanged:

$$g_{CO_2}^{\text{liquid}} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{g_{CO_2}^{\text{total}}} - \frac{1}{g_{CO_2}^{\text{gas}}}} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{(0.70\ \text{mm s}^{-1})} - \frac{1}{(1.88\ \text{mm s}^{-1})}} = 1.12\ \text{mm s}^{-1}$$

$$\frac{g_{CO_2}^{\text{total}_{\text{new}}}}{g_{CO_2}^{\text{total}_{\text{original}}}} = \frac{\frac{g_{CO_2}^{\text{gas}_{\text{new}}} g_{CO_2}^{\text{liq}}}{g_{CO_2}^{\text{gas}_{\text{new}}} + g_{CO_2}^{\text{liq}}}}{0.70\ \text{mm s}^{-1}} = \frac{\frac{(0.63\ \text{mm s}^{-1})(1.12\ \text{mm s}^{-1})}{(0.63\ \text{mm s}^{-1}) + (1.12\ \text{mm s}^{-1})}}{0.70\ \text{mm s}^{-1}} = \frac{(0.40\ \text{mm s}^{-1})}{(0.70\ \text{mm s}^{-1})} = 0.57$$

and hence photosynthesis is decreased by 43%.

By Equation 8.39, water-use efficiency (WUE) is proportional to photosynthesis/transpiration, so

$$\frac{\text{WUE}^{\text{new}}}{\text{WUE}^{\text{original}}} = \frac{(0.57)/(0.33)}{(1.00)/(1.00)} = 1.73$$

and WUE is increased by 73%.

E. Given that δ^{bl} is equal to $4.0\sqrt{\frac{l}{v}}$ (Eq. 7.10), a fourfold increase in windspeed will change δ^{bl} by a factor of $\sqrt{\frac{1}{4}} = \frac{1}{2}$. Because g_{wv}^{bl} is equal to $\frac{D_{wv}}{\delta^{\text{bl}}}$ (Eq. 8.3), g_{wv}^{bl} will be doubled and so becomes (15 mm s^{-1})(2) or 30 mm s^{-1}. Therefore, the total water vapor conductance becomes

$$g_{wv}^{\text{total}} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{g_{wv}^{\text{bl}}} + \frac{1}{g_{wv}^{\text{st}}} + \frac{1}{g_{wv}^{\text{ias}}}} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{(30\ \text{mm s}^{-1})} + \frac{1}{(4.3\ \text{mm s}^{-1})} + \frac{1}{(30\ \text{mm s}^{-1})}} = 3.3\ \text{mm s}^{-1}$$

Because g_{wv}^{total} was originally 3.0 mm s^{-1}, J_{wv} will increase by 10%.

F. Because δ^{bl} is halved, J_H^{C} initially doubles; T^{leaf} becomes closer to T^{ta}. If T^{leaf} is above T^{ta}, as generally occurs during the daytime, the decrease in T^{leaf} in

response to a higher wind will reduce c^{e}_{wv} (which is nearly at the saturation value). If the accompanying fractional reduction in $c^{\mathrm{e}}_{wv} - c^{\mathrm{ta}}_{wv}$ is more than the fractional increase in g^{total}_{wv}, the increase in wind speed will lead to a decrease in transpiration because $J_{wv} = g^{\mathrm{total}}_{wv}(c^{\mathrm{e}}_{wv} - c^{\mathrm{ta}}_{wv})$ by Equations 8.17 and 8.18.

Chapter 9

9.1. A. We must convert the transpiration value from mm H_2O hour^{-1} to the more common units of J_{wv}, mmol m^{-2} s^{-1}, noting that 1 m^3 H_2O corresponds to 996 kg at 30 °C and 18.0 g corresponds to 1 mol:

$$1\ \text{mm hour}^{-1} = \frac{10^{-3}\ \text{m}^3\ \text{m}^{-2}}{3600\ \text{s}} = \frac{996\ \text{g m}^{-2}}{3600\ \text{s}} = \frac{(996/18.0)\ \text{mol m}^{-2}}{3600\ \text{s}}$$
$$= 0.0154\ \text{mol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1} = 15.4\ \text{mmol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1}$$

The change in water vapor concentration during peak transpiration is

$$\Delta c^{\mathrm{ta}}_{wv} = c^{*}_{wv}\left(\frac{\Delta \mathrm{RH}}{100}\right) = (1.69\ \text{mol m}^{-3})\left(\frac{20}{100}\right) = 0.34\ \text{mol m}^{-3}$$

B. Using Equation 9.4, r^{ta}_{wv} during peak transpiration is

$$r^{\mathrm{ta}}_{wv} = \frac{\Delta c^{\mathrm{ta}}_{wv}}{J_{wv}} = \frac{(0.34\ \text{mol m}^{-3})}{(15.4 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{mol m}^{-3}\ \text{s}^{-1})} = 22\ \text{s m}^{-1}$$

Because the value of K_{wv} at night is half of the daytime value, by Equation 9.4 r^{ta}_{wv} at night must be twice the daytime r^{ta}_{wv}:

$$r^{\mathrm{ta}}_{wv} = (22\ \text{s m}^{-1})(2) = 44\ \text{s m}^{-1}$$

C. At night, J_{wv} is only 10% of the peak value and thus is (15.4 mmol m^{-2} s^{-1})(0.10), or 1.54 mmol m^{-2} s^{-1}. Therefore, using Equation 9.4 we find

$$\Delta c^{\mathrm{ta}}_{wv} = J_{wv} r^{\mathrm{ta}}_{wv} = (1.54\ \text{mmol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1})(44\ \text{s m}^{-1}) = 68\ \text{mmol m}^{-3}$$

At an air temperature of 20°C, the drop in relative humidity is

$$100\frac{\Delta c^{\mathrm{ta}}_{wv}}{c^{*}_{wv}} = (100\%)\frac{(0.068\ \text{mol m}^{-3})}{(0.96\ \text{mol m}^{-3})} = 7\%$$

D. Because we know J_{wv} from A, we can calculate J_{CO_2}:

$$J_{CO_2} = \frac{J_{wv}}{-700} = \frac{(15.4\ \text{mmol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1})}{(-700)} = -0.022\ \text{mmol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1}$$
$$= -22\ \mu\text{mol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1}$$

Using Equation 9.4, we find

$$\Delta c^{\mathrm{ta}}_{CO_2} = J_{CO_2} r^{\mathrm{ta}}_{CO_2} = (-0.22\ \text{mmol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1})(22\ \text{s m}^{-1}) = -0.48\ \text{mmol m}^{-3}$$

E. Rearranging Equation 9.4, we find

$$K_{CO_2} = \frac{\Delta z}{r^{ta}_{CO_2}} = \frac{(30\ \text{m})}{(44\ \text{s m}^{-1})} = 0.68\ \text{m}^2\ \text{s}^{-1}$$

F. Using Equation 1.6, we can calculate the time for eddy diffusion at night:

$$t_{1/e} = \frac{x^2_{1/e}}{4K_{wv}} = \frac{(1\ \text{m})^2}{(0.68\ \text{m}^2\ \text{s}^{-1})} = 0.37\ \text{s}$$

Also using Equation 1.6, we can calculate the time for ordinary diffusion:

$$t_{1/e} = \frac{x^2_{1/e}}{4D_{wv}} = \frac{(1\ \text{m})^2}{(4)(2.4 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{m}^2\ \text{s}^{-1})} = 10{,}400\ \text{s} = 2.9\ \text{hours}$$

9.2. A. We use Equation 9.5 to calculate the cumulative leaf areas per unit ground area at different incident light levels, where $F = (\ln J_0/J)/k$:

For $J_0 = 2000\ \mu\text{mol m}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1}$, $F = \frac{\ln(2000/8)}{0.7} = 7.9$ (i.e., essentially none of the leaves is then below light compensation)

For $J_0 = 200\ \mu\text{mol m}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1}$, $F = \frac{\ln(200/8)}{0.7} = 4.6$

For $J_0 = 20\ \mu\text{mol m}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1}$, $F = \frac{\ln(20/8)}{0.7} = 1.3$

For $J_0 = 0\ \mu\text{mol m}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1}$, all of the leaves are below light compensation (i.e., $F = 0.0$)

B. We can calculate $J^{soil}_{CO_2}$ coming up from the soil as follows:

$$J^{soil}_{CO_2} = \frac{J^{soil}_{wv}}{200} = \frac{(0.6\ \text{mmol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1})}{(200)} = 0.0030\ \text{mmol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1} = 3.0\ \mu\text{mol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1}$$

We can calculate $J^{total}_{CO_2}$ (which includes CO_2 from above the canopy and from the soil) by conversion of the net photosynthetic rate (see Table 8-2):

$$J^{total}_{CO_2} = (20\ \text{kg hectare}^{-1}\ \text{hour}^{-1})\left(0.92\frac{\mu\text{mol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1}}{\text{kg hectare}^{-1}\ \text{hour}^{-1}}\right) = 18.4\ \mu\text{mol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1}$$

The flux from above the canopy is then $18.4\ \mu\text{mol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1} - 3.0\ \mu\text{mol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1}$, or $15.4\ \mu\text{mol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1}$.

C. We are given that 10% of the water comes from the soil ($J^{soil}_{wv} = 0.6\ \text{mmol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1}$), so J_{wv} above the canopy is $6.0\ \text{mmol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1}$. From B we calculated J_{CO_2} above the canopy to be $-15.4\ \mu\text{mol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1}$, so

$$\frac{J_{wv}}{J_{CO_2}} = \left|\frac{(6000\ \mu\text{mol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1})}{(-15.4\ \mu\text{mol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1})}\right| = 390\ H_2O/CO_2$$

D. The maximum upward flux of CO_2 will occur for the level at the light compensation point (leaves below this level have a net evolution of CO_2). At $200\ \mu\text{mol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1}$ incident on the canopy, light compensation occurs at $F = 4.6$ (calculated in A). Because the leaf area index is 8.0, F increases by 1.0 every 2.0 m (16 m/8.0). Therefore, an F of 4.6 occurs at 9.2 m from the top of the canopy, or 6.8 m above the ground.

E. The minimum in $c^{ta}_{CO_2}$ occurs at the level corresponding to the cumulative uptake of all the CO_2 coming down into the canopy ($15.4\ \mu\text{mol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1}$); net uptake of

CO_2 occurs only between 6.8 and 16 m in the canopy, and the magnitude of this uptake is 20.4 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1} (i.e., 15.4 + 5.0, the latter from below 6.8 m). We will divide the canopy into 2-m-thick layers across which F increases by 1.0, and we will let x equal that part of the total flux taken up by the first layer of leaves. Because the PPF is halved every 2 m [by Eq. 9.5, $\ln(J_0/J) = kF = (0.7)(1.0) = 0.7$, or $J_0/J = 2.0$] and because J_{CO_2} is proportional to PPF by supposition, CO_2 uptake is also halved every 2 m. Therefore we obtain

$$\text{Total uptake} = 20.4\ \mu\text{mol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1} = x + \frac{1}{2}x + \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^2 x + \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^3 x$$

$$+\left(\frac{8.0\ \text{m} - 6.8\ \text{m}}{2.0\ \text{m}}\right)\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^4 x = 1.91x$$

so $$x = 10.7\ \mu\text{mol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1}$$

The first 2-m layer thus takes up 10.7 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1} and the second layer one-half of this, or 5.3 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1}. Thus, at 4 m from the top of the canopy, the total uptake is 16.0 μmol m^{-2} s^{-1}, which is slightly more than the flux of CO_2 from the air above the canopy. Therefore, $c^{ta}_{CO_2}$ will be minimal at slightly above 12 m from the ground.

9.3.A. The mean speed of the fluid in the xylem element is

$$J_V = \frac{\text{volume flow rate per tube}}{\text{tube area}} = \frac{(20\ \text{mm}^3\ \text{hour}^{-1})}{(0.004\ \text{m}^2)(3600\ \text{s hour}^{-1})} = 1.4\ \text{mm s}^{-1}$$

B. Rearranging Poiseuille's law (Eq. 9.11b), we obtain

$$\frac{\Delta P}{\Delta x} = \frac{-J_V 8\eta}{r^2} = \frac{-J_V 8\eta}{A/\pi} = \frac{-(1.4\ \text{mm s}^{-1})(8)(1.002 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{Pa s})}{(0.004\ \text{mm}^2/\pi)}$$
$$= -8.8\ \text{Pa mm}^{-1} = -0.0088\ \text{MPa m}^{-1}$$

C. Again using Poiseuille's law, we find

$$J_V = -\frac{r^2}{8\eta}\frac{\Delta P}{\Delta x} = -\frac{(1.0 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{m})^2}{(8)(1.002 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{Pa s})}(-0.0088 \times 10^6\ \text{Pa m}^{-1}) = 1.1 \times 10^{-10}\ \text{m s}^{-1}$$

9.4 A. We can rearrange Equation 1.6 to find the time required for diffusion:

$$\text{For 10 mm}: t_{1/e} = \frac{x^2_{1/e}}{4D_{\text{sucrose}}} = \frac{(1 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{m})^2}{(4)(0.3 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{m}^2\ \text{s}^{-1})} = 8.3 \times 10^4\ \text{s} = 23\ \text{hours}$$

$$\text{For 1 m}: t_{1/e} = \frac{x^2_{1/e}}{4D_{\text{sucrose}}} = \frac{(1\ \text{m})^2}{(4)(0.3 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{m}^2\ \text{s}^{-1})} = 8.3 \times 10^8\ \text{s} = 26\ \text{years}$$

B. We use Poiseuille's law (Eq. 9.11b) to find

$$J_V = -\frac{r^2}{8\eta}\frac{\Delta P}{\Delta x} = -\frac{(10 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m})^2}{(8)(1.5 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{Pa s})}(-0.02 \times 10^6\ \text{Pa m}^{-1})$$
$$= 1.7 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{m s}^{-1} = 0.17\ \text{mm s}^{-1} \quad (0.6\ \text{m hour}^{-1})$$

C. Because J_V is the mean velocity, to travel 10 mm takes [10 mm/(0.17 mm s^{-1})] or 59 s and to travel 1 m takes [1 m/(0.17 × 10^{-3} m s^{-1})] or 5900 s, which is 1.6 hours, considerably less than that calculated for diffusion in A. Also note that the distance traveled in the phloem vessel is proportional to time rather than to the square root of time, as is the case for diffusion (see Eq. 1.6).

D. A vertical sieve tube has a static gradient in the absence of flow and due to gravity of −0.01 MPa m^{-1}. The gradient leading to flow would be either −0.01 MPa m^{-1} (upward) or −0.03 MPa m^{-1} (downward). Thus, J_V is either half that in B, namely, 0.3 m hour^{-1} upward, or 0.9 m hour^{-1} downward.

9.5. A. If we ignore Π^{soil}, then Ψ^{soil} is equal to P^{soil}, which equals $-\sigma\left(\frac{1}{r_1}+\frac{1}{r_2}\right)$ by Equation 9.6. For hemispherical interfaces, r_1 is equal to r_2, so Ψ^{soil} equals $\frac{-2\sigma}{r}$. Therefore, for the wet soil we obtain

$$r = -\frac{2\sigma}{\Psi^{\text{soil}}} = -\frac{(2)(0.0728\ \text{Pa m})}{(-0.01 \times 10^6\ \text{Pa})} = 1.5 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{m} = 15\ \mu\text{m}$$

For the dry soil we obtain

$$r = -\frac{2\sigma}{\Psi^{\text{soil}}} = -\frac{(2)(0.0728\ \text{Pa m})}{(-1.4 \times 10^6\ \text{Pa})} = 1.0 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{m} = 0.10\ \mu\text{m}$$

B. First, we must find J_V of the root from the following relationship based on Equation 9.12:

$$J_V^{\text{root}} = J_V^{\text{xylem}}\frac{A^{\text{xylem}}}{A^{\text{root}}} = (2 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m s}^{-1})\left(\frac{1}{10^5}\right) = 2 \times 10^{-8}\ \text{m s}^{-1}$$

Then assuming cylindrical symmetry we rearrange Equation 9.8 to find the drop in hydrostatic pressure in the wet soil:

$$\Delta P = P_a - P_b = \frac{J_V r \ln(r_a/r_b)}{L^{\text{soil}}}$$
$$= \frac{(2 \times 10^{-8}\ \text{m s}^{-1})(1.5 \times 10^3\ \text{m})\ln\left(\frac{8\ \text{mm} + 1.5\ \text{mm}}{1.5\ \text{mm}}\right)}{(1 \times 10^{-11}\ \text{m}^2\ \text{s}^{-1}\ \text{Pa}^{-1})} = 5.5\ \text{Pa}$$

C. Again, by rearranging Equation 9.8 we find that the drop in hydrostatic pressure is

$$\Delta P = \frac{J_V r \ln(r_a/r_b)}{L^{\text{soil}}} = \frac{(2 \times 10^{-8}\ \text{m s}^{-1})(1.5 \times 10^3\ \text{m})\ln\left(\frac{1.5\ \text{mm}}{1.5\ \text{mm} - 0.5\ \text{mm}}\right)}{(2 \times 10^{-16}\ \text{m}^2\ \text{s}^{-1}\ \text{Pa}^{-1})}$$
$$= 6.1 \times 10^4\ \text{Pa} = 0.061\ \text{MPa}$$

D. First, we should determine the water potential in the root xylem:

$$\Psi^{\text{root xylem}} = \Psi^{\text{soil}} - \Delta\Psi^{\text{soil}} - \Delta\Psi^{\text{root}}$$
$$= (-0.01\ \text{MPa}) - (5.5 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{MPa}) - (0.061\ \text{MPa}) = -0.071\ \text{MPa}$$
$$= P^{\text{root xylem}} - \Pi^{\text{root xylem}} + \rho_w g h = P^{\text{root xylem}}$$

In the leaf 3 m above the ground, ψ^{leaf} (−0.20 MPa) is $P^{\text{leaf}} - \Pi^{\text{leaf}} + \rho_w g h$, which is P^{leaf} − 0 MPa + (0.01 MPa m^{-1})(3 m) or P^{leaf} + 0.03 MPa, so P^{leaf} is −0.20 MPa −0.03 MPa, or −0.23 MPa. Thus the gradient is

$$\frac{\Delta P}{\Delta x} = \frac{P^{\text{leaf}} - P^{\text{root xylem}}}{\Delta x} = \frac{(-0.23\ \text{MPa}) - (0.07\ \text{MPa})}{(3\ \text{m})} = -0.053\ \text{MPa m}^{-1}$$

E. We must first find J_V of the leaf based on Equation 9.12:

$$J_V^{\text{leaf}} = J_V^{\text{xylem}} \frac{A^{\text{xylem}}}{A^{\text{root}}} \frac{A^{\text{root}}}{A^{\text{leaf}}} = (2 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m s}^{-1})(10^{-5})(5) = 1.0 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{m s}^{-1}$$

We must then determine J_V of the mesophyll:

$$J_V^{\text{mes}} = J_V^{\text{leaf}} \frac{A^{\text{leaf}}}{A^{\text{mes}}} = (1.0 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{m s}^{-1})(\tfrac{1}{20}) = 5 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{m s}^{-1}$$

Now we apply Poiseuille's law (Eq. 9.11b) to find the drop in hydrostatic pressure that could account for the rate of transpiration for the plant in the wet soil:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta P &= -\frac{J_V 8\eta\Delta x}{r^2} \\ &= -\frac{(5 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{m s}^{-1})(8)(1.002 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{Pa s})(1 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m})}{(5 \times 10^{-9}\ \text{m})^2} = -1.6\ \text{Pa}\end{aligned}$$

which is very small.

F. If we use Equation 2.23, we find that at 99% relative humidity

$$\Psi^{\text{ta}} = \frac{RT}{\overline{V}_w} \ln \frac{\text{RH}}{100} = (135\ \text{MPa}) \ln\left(\frac{99}{100}\right) = -1.4\ \text{MPa}$$

Because Ψ^{ta} then equals Ψ^{soil}, water will not move from the dry soil to the air through the plant, so J_V^{xylem} is zero.

9.6. A. The total leaf area is equal to the leaf area index times the projected area of one leaf layer, which is $(6)(\pi)(3\ \text{m})^2$ or 170 m^2. Noting that 1 mol of H_2O is 18 g, which occupies 18×10^{-6} m^3, the transpiration rate is

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Transpiration rate} &= J_{wv}(18 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m}^3\ \text{mol}^{-1})A^{\text{leaf}} \\ &= (1 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{mol m}^{-2}\ \text{s}^{-1})(18 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m}^3\ \text{mol}^{-1})(170\ \text{m}^2) \\ &= 3.1 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m}^3\ \text{s}^{-1}\end{aligned}$$

B. We must first determine the amount of water available for transpiration:

$$(1.0 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m} - 0.8 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m})(\pi)(3\ \text{m})^2 = 5.7 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m}^3$$

We can now calculate how long this will last:

$$\frac{(5.7 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m}^{-3})}{(3.1 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m}^3\ \text{s}^{-1})} = 1840\ \text{s} = 31\ \text{minutes}$$

C. We use Equation 9.12 to find R^{trunk} using ψ^{trunk} of -0.3 MPa at the base and -0.5 MPa at midheight:

$$\begin{aligned}R^{\text{trunk}} &= \frac{\Delta\Psi}{J_{wv}A^{\text{leaf}}} = \frac{2(\Psi^{\text{base}} - \Psi^{\text{mid}})}{(J_{wv}A^{\text{leaf}})} = \frac{2[(-0.3\ \text{MPa}) - (-0.5\ \text{MPa})]}{(3.1 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m}^3\ \text{s}^{-1})} \\ &= 1.3 \times 10^5\ \text{MPa s m}^{-3}\end{aligned}$$

D. Using Equation 9.13, we obtain

$$\rho = \frac{R^{\text{trunk}} A^{\text{trunk}}}{\Delta x} = \frac{(1.3 \times 10^5\ \text{MPa s m}^{-3})(0.10\ \text{m}^2)(0.05)}{(3\ \text{m})} = 220\ \text{MPa s m}^{-2}$$

Hydraulic conductivity is the inverse of hydraulic resistivity:

$$\frac{1}{\rho} = \frac{1}{(220\ \text{MPa s m}^{-2})} = 4.6 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m}^2\ \text{s}^{-1}\ \text{MPa}^{-1}$$

E. We use Equation 9.16 to find the capacitance:

$$C^{\text{trunk}} = \frac{\Delta V^{\text{trunk}}}{\Delta \Psi^{\text{day}}} = \frac{(0.10\ \text{m}^2)(3\ \text{m})(0.008)}{(-0.1\ \text{MPa}) - (-0.5\ \text{MPa})} = 60 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m}^3\ \text{MPa}^{-1}$$

We use Equation 9.18 to calculate the time constant for water release from the trunk:

$$\begin{aligned}\tau^{\text{trunk}} &= R^{\text{trunk}} C^{\text{trunk}} = (1.3 \times 10^5\ \text{MPa s m}^{-3})(6 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m}^3\ \text{MPa}^{-1}) \\ &= 780\ \text{s} = 13\ \text{minutes}\end{aligned}$$

This page intentionally left blank

Appendix I

Numerical Values of Constants and Coefficients

Symbol	Description	Magnitude
c	Speed of light in vacuum	2.998×10^8 m s^{-1}
c_{wv}^*	Saturation concentration of water vapor (i.e., at 100% relative humidity)	See end of appendix for values from −30°C to 60°C
C_P^{air}	Volumetric heat capacity of dry air at constant pressure (1 atm, 0.1013 MPa)	1.300 kJ m^{-3} °C^{-1} at 0°C 1.212 kJ m^{-3} °C^{-1} at 20°C 1.136 kJ m^{-3} °C^{-1} at 40°C 1.072 kJ m^{-3} °C^{-1} at 60°C
C_P^{water}	Volumetric heat capacity of water at constant pressure (1 atm, 0.1013 MPa)	4.217 MJ m^{-3} °C^{-1} at 0°C 4.202 MJ m^{-3} °C^{-1} at 5°C 4.191 MJ m^{-3} °C^{-1} at 10°C 4.182 MJ m^{-3} °C^{-1} at 15°C 4.174 MJ m^{-3} °C^{-1} at 20°C 4.167 MJ m^{-3} °C^{-1} at 25°C 4.160 MJ m^{-3} °C^{-1} at 30°C 4.153 MJ m^{-3} °C^{-1} at 35°C 4.146 MJ m^{-3} °C^{-1} at 40°C 4.131 MJ m^{-3} °C^{-1} at 50°C 4.114 MJ m^{-3} °C^{-1} at 60°C
D_{CO_2}	Diffusion coefficient of CO_2 in air (1 atm, 0.1013 MPa)	1.08×10^{-5} m^2 s^{-1} at −30°C 1.16×10^{-5} m^2 s^{-1} at −20°C 1.24×10^{-5} m^2 s^{-1} at −10°C 1.33×10^{-5} m^2 s^{-1} at 0°C 1.42×10^{-5} m^2 s^{-1} at 10°C 1.51×10^{-5} m^2 s^{-1} at 20°C 1.60×10^{-5} m^2 s^{-1} at 30°C 1.70×10^{-5} m^2 s^{-1} at 40°C 1.80×10^{-5} m^2 s^{-1} at 50°C 1.90×10^{-5} m^2 s^{-1} at 60°C
D_{O_2}	Diffusion coefficient of O_2 in air (1 atm, 0.1013 MPa)	1.95×10^{-5} m^2 s^{-1} at 20°C
D_{wv}	Diffusion coefficient of water vapor in air (1 atm, 0.1013 MPa)	1.73×10^{-5} m^2 s^{-1} at −30°C 1.86×10^{-5} m^2 s^{-1} at −20°C 1.99×10^{-5} m^2 s^{-1} at −10°C 2.13×10^{-5} m^2 s^{-1} at 0°C 2.27×10^{-5} m^2 s^{-1} at 10°C

(*continued*)

Symbol	Description	Magnitude
		2.42×10^{-5} m^2 s^{-1} at 20°C 2.57×10^{-5} m^2 s^{-1} at 30°C 2.72×10^{-5} m^2 s^{-1} at 40°C 2.88×10^{-5} m^2 s^{-1} at 50°C 3.04×10^{-5} m^2 s^{-1} at 60°C
e	Base of natural logarithm	2.71828 ($1/e = 0.368$)
	Electronic charge	1.602×10^{-19} coulomb
F	Faraday's constant	9.649×10^4 coulomb mol^{-1} 9.649×10^4 J mol^{-1} V^{-1} 2.306×10^4 cal mol^{-1} V^{-1} 23.06 kcal mol^{-1} V^{-1}
g	Gravitational acceleration	9.780 m s^{-2} (sea level,[a] 0° latitude) 9.807 m s^{-2} (sea level,[a] 45° latitude) 9.832 m s^{-2} (sea level,[a] 90° latitude) 978.0 cm s^{-2} (sea level,[a] 0° latitude) 980.7 cm s^{-2} (sea level,[a] 45° latitude) 983.2 cm s^{-2} (sea level,[a] 90° latitude)
h	Planck's constant	6.626×10^{-34} J s 6.626×10^{-27} erg s 0.4136×10^{-14} eV s 1.584×10^{-37} kcal s
h_c		1.986×10^{-25} J m 1240 eV nm
H_{sub}	Heat of sublimation of water	51.37 kJ mol^{-1} (2.847 MJ kg^{-1}) at −10°C 51.17 kJ mol^{-1} (2.835 MJ kg^{-1}) at −5°C 51.00 kJ mol^{-1} (2.826 MJ kg^{-1}) at 0°C 12.27 kcal mol^{-1} (680 cal g^{-1}) at −10°C 12.22 kcal mol^{-1} (677 cal g^{-1}) at −5°C 12.18 kcal mol^{-1} (675 cal g^{-1}) at 0°C
H_{vap}	Heat of vaporization of water	45.06 kJ mol^{-1} (2.501 MJ kg^{-1}) at 0°C 44.63 kJ mol^{-1} (2.477 MJ kg^{-1}) at 10°C 44.21 kJ mol^{-1} (2.454 MJ kg^{-1}) at 20°C 44.00 kJ mol^{-1} (2.442 MJ kg^{-1}) at 25°C 43.78 kJ mol^{-1} (2.430 MJ kg^{-1}) at 30°C 43.35 kJ mol^{-1} (2.406 MJ kg^{-1}) at 40°C 42.91 kJ mol^{-1} (2.382 MJ kg^{-1}) at 50°C 42.47 kJ mol^{-1} (2.357 MJ kg^{-1}) at 60°C 40.68 kJ mol^{-1} (2.258 MJ kg^{-1}) at 100°C
k	Boltzmann's constant	1.381×10^{-23} J molecule^{-1} K^{-1} 1.381×10^{-16} erg molecule^{-1} K^{-1} 8.617×10^{-5} eV molecule^{-1} K^{-1}
kT		0.02354 eV molecule^{-1} at 0°C 0.02526 eV molecule^{-1} at 20°C 0.02569 eV molecule^{-1} at 25°C 0.02699 eV molecule^{-1} at 40°C
K^{air}	Thermal conductivity coefficient of dry air (1 atm, 0.1013 MPa)[b]	0.0237 W m^{-1} °C^{-1} at −10°C 0.0243 W m^{-1} °C^{-1} at 0°C 0.0250 W m^{-1} °C^{-1} at 10°C 0.0257 W m^{-1} °C^{-1} at 20°C 0.0264 W m^{-1} °C^{-1} at 30°C

Symbol	Description	Magnitude
		0.0270 W m^{-1} °C^{-1} at 40°C 0.0277 W m^{-1} °C^{-1} at 50°C 0.0284 W m^{-1} °C^{-1} at 60°C
	Thermal conductivity coefficient of moist air (100% relative humidity, 1 atm)	0.0242 W m^{-1} °C^{-1} at 0°C 0.0255 W m^{-1} °C^{-1} at 20°C 0.0264 W m^{-1} °C^{-1} at 40°C 0.0269 W m^{-1} °C^{-1} at 60°C
K^{water}	Thermal conductivity coefficient of water	0.565 W m^{-1} °C^{-1} at 0°C 0.583 W m^{-1} °C^{-1} at 10°C 0.599 W m^{-1} °C^{-1} at 20°C 0.614 W m^{-1} °C^{-1} at 30°C 0.627 W m^{-1} °C^{-1} at 40°C 0.640 W m^{-1} °C^{-1} at 50°C 0.652 W m^{-1} °C^{-1} at 60°C
ln 2		0.6931
N	Avogadro's number	6.0220 × 10^{23} entities mol^{-1}
Nhc		0.1196 J mol^{-1} m 119,600 kJ mol^{-1} nm 28.60 kcal mol^{-1} μm 28,600 kcal mol^{-1} nm
N^{*}_{wv}	Saturation mole fraction of water vapor (i.e., at 100% relative humidity) at 1 atm (0.1013 MPa)	See end of appendix for values from −30°C to 60°C
P^{*}_{wv}	Saturation vapor pressure of water	See end of appendix for values from −30°C to 60°C
	Protonic charge	1.602 × 10^{-19} coulomb
R	Gas constant	8.314 J mol^{-1} K^{-1} 1.987 cal mol^{-1} K^{-1} 8.314 m^3 Pa mol^{-1} K^{-1} 8.314 × 10^{-6} m^3 MPa mol^{-1} K^{-1} 0.08205 liter atm mol^{-1} K^{-1} 0.08314 liter bar mol^{-1} K^{-1} 83.14 cm^3 bar mol^{-1} K^{-1}
RT		2.271 × 10^3 J mol^{-1} (m^3 Pa mol^{-1}) at 0°C 2.437 × 10^3 J mol^{-1} (m^3 Pa mol^{-1}) at 20°C 2.479 × 10^3 J mol^{-1} (m^3 Pa mol^{-1}) at 25°C 2.271 × 10^{-3} m^3 MPa mol^{-1} at 0°C 2.437 × 10^{-3} m^3 MPa mol^{-1} at 20°C 2.479 × 10^{-3} m^3 MPa mol^{-1} at 25°C 542.4 cal mol^{-1} at 0°C 582.2 cal mol^{-1} at 20°C 2.271 liter MPa mol^{-1} at 0°C 2.437 liter MPa mol^{-1} at 20°C 22.71 liter bar mol^{-1} at 0°C 24.37 liter bar mol^{-1} at 20°C 22,710 cm^3 bar mol^{-1} at 0°C 24,370 cm^3 bar mol^{-1} at 20°C 22.41 liter atm mol^{-1} at 0°C 24.05 liter atm mol^{-1} at 20°C

(continued)

Symbol	Description	Magnitude
$2.303\ RT$		5.612 kJ mol^{-1} at 20°C 5.708 kJ mol^{-1} at 25°C 1.342 kcal mol^{-1} at 20°C 1.364 kcal mol^{-1} at 25°C 56,120 cm^3 bar mol^{-1} at 20°C
RT/F		25.3 mV at 20°C 25.7 mV at 25°C
$2.303\ RT/F$		58.2 mV at 20°C 59.2 mV at 25°C 60.2 mV at 30°C
$RT/\overline{V}_w$		135.0 MPa at 20°C 137.2 MPa at 25°C 32.31 cal cm^{-3} at 20°C 135.0 J cm^{-3} at 20°C 1330 atm at 20°C 1350 bar at 20°C
$2.303\ RT/\overline{V}_w$		310.9 MPa at 20°C 316.2 MPa at 25°C 3063 atm at 20°C 3109 bar at 20°C
S_c	Solar constant	1366 W m^{-2} 1.958 cal cm^{-2} minute^{-1} 1.366×10^5 erg cm^{-2} s^{-1} 0.1366 W cm^{-2}
	Specific heat (thermal capacity) of water (mass basis)	4218 J kg^{-1} °C^{-1} at 0 °C 4192 J kg^{-1} °C^{-1} at 10°C 4182 J kg^{-1} °C^{-1} at 20°C 4179 J kg^{-1} °C^{-1} at 30°C 4179 J kg^{-1} °C^{-1} at 40°C 4181 J kg^{-1} °C^{-1} at 50°C 4184 J kg^{-1} °C^{-1} at 60°C 1.0074 cal g^{-1} °C^{-1} at 0°C 0.9988 cal g^{-1} °C^{-1} at 20°C 0.9980 cal g^{-1} °C^{-1} at 40°C 0.9991 cal g^{-1} °C^{-1} at 60°C
	Specific heat (thermal capacity) of water (mole basis)	75.99 J mol^{-1} °C^{-1} at 0°C 75.34 J mol^{-1} °C^{-1} at 20°C 75.28 J mol^{-1} °C^{-1} at 40°C 75.39 J mol^{-1} °C^{-1} at 60°C 18.14 cal mol^{-1} °C^{-1} at 0°C 17.99 cal mol^{-1} °C^{-1} at 20°C 17.98 cal mol^{-1} °C^{-1} at 40°C 18.00 cal mol^{-1} °C^{-1} at 60°C
$\overline{V}_w$	Partial molal volume of water	1.805×10^{-5} m^3 mol^{-1} at 20°C 1.807×10^{-5} m^3 mol^{-1} at 25°C 18.05 cm^3 mol^{-1} at 20°C
ε_0	Permittivity of a vacuum	8.854×10^{-12} coulomb^2 m^{-2} N^{-1} 8.854×10^{-12} coulomb m^{-1} V^{-1}

Symbol	Description	Magnitude
η_{air}	Viscosity of air (dry, 1 atm)	1.716×10^{-5} Pa s at 0°C 1.765×10^{-5} Pa s at 10°C 1.813×10^{-5} Pa s at 20°C 1.860×10^{-5} Pa s at 30°C 1.907×10^{-5} Pa s at 40°C 1.953×10^{-5} Pa s at 50°C 1.999×10^{-5} Pa s at 60°C
η_w	Viscosity of water	1.787×10^{-3} Pa s at 0°C 1.519×10^{-3} Pa s at 5°C 1.307×10^{-3} Pa s at 10°C 1.139×10^{-3} Pa s at 15°C 1.002×10^{-3} Pa s at 20° C 0.890×10^{-3} Pa s at 25°C 0.798×10^{-3} Pa s at 30°C 0.719×10^{-3} Pa s at 35°C 0.653×10^{-3} Pa s at 40°C 0.547×10^{-3} Pa s at 50°C 0.467×10^{-3} Pa s at 60°C 0.01002 dyn s cm^{-2} at 20°C 0.01002 poise at 20°C
ν_{air} (= η_{air}/ρ_{air})	Kinematic viscosity of air (dry, 1 atm)	1.327×10^{-5} m^2 s^{-1} at 0°C 1.415×10^{-5} m^2 s^{-1} at 10°C 1.505×10^{-5} m^2 s^{-1} at 20°C 1.597×10^{-5} m^2 s^{-1} at 30°C 1.691×10^{-5} m^2 s^{-1} at 40°C 1.787×10^{-5} m^2 s^{-1} at 50°C 1.886×10^{-5} m^2 s^{-1} at 60°C
$\nu_w (= \eta_w/\rho_w)$	Kinematic viscosity of water	1.787×10^{-6} m^2 s^{-1} at 0°C 1.307×10^{-6} m^2 s^{-1} at 10°C 1.004×10^{-6} m^2 s^{-1} at 20°C 0.801×10^{-6} m^2 s^{-1} at 30°C 0.658×10^{-6} m^2 s^{-1} at 40°C 0.554×10^{-6} m^2 s^{-1} at 50°C 0.475×10^{-6} m^2 s^{-1} at 60°C
π	Circumference/diameter of circle	3.14159
ρ_{air}	Density of air (1 atm, 0.1013 MPa)[c], dry/saturated	1.452/1.451 kg m^{-3} at −30°C 1.395/1.393 kg m^{-3} at −20°C 1.342/1.339 kg m^{-3} at −10°C 1.317/1.312 kg m^{-3} at −5°C 1.293/1.285 kg m^{-3} at 0°C 1.269/1.259 kg m^{-3} at 5°C 1.247/1.232 kg m^{-3} at 10°C 1.225/1.204 kg m^{-3} at 15°C 1.205/1.177 kg m^{-3} at 20°C 1.185/1.147 kg m^{-3} at 25°C 1.165/1.116 kg m^{-3} at 30°C 1.146/1.082 kg m^{-3} at 35°C 1.128/1.045 kg m^{-3} at 40°C 1.093/0.959 kg m^{-3} at 50°C 1.060/0.851 kg m^{-3} at 60°C
ρ_w	Density of water	999.9 kg m^{-3} (0 .9999 g cm^{-3}) at 0°C 1000.0 kg m^{-3} (1.0000 g cm^{-3}) at 4°C 999.7 kg m^{-3} (0.9997 g cm^{-3}) at 10°C

(*continued*)

Symbol	Description	Magnitude
		999.1 kg m^{-3} (0.9991 g cm^{-3}) at 15°C 998.2 kg m^{-3} (0.9982 g cm^{-3}) at 20°C 997.1 kg m^{-3} (0.9971 g cm^{-3}) at 25°C 995.7 kg m^{-3} (0.9957 g cm^{-3}) at 30°C 994.1 kg m^{-3} (0.9941 g cm^{-3}) at 35°C 992.2 kg m^{-3} (0.9922 g cm^{-3}) at 40°C 988.1 kg m^{-3} (0.9881 g cm^{-3}) at 50°C 983.2 kg m^{-3} (0.9832 g cm^{-3}) at 60°C
$\rho_w g$		0.00979 MPa m^{-1} (20 °C, sea level, 45° latitude) 0.0979 bar m^{-1} (20 °C, sea level, 45° latitude) 979 dyn cm^{-3} (20 °C, sea level, 45° latitude) 0.0966 atm m^{-1} (20 °C, sea level, 45° latitude)
σ	Stefan–Boltzmann constant	5.670×10^{-8} W m^{-2} K^{-4} 5.670×10^{-12} W cm^{-2} K^{-4} 8.130×10^{-11} cal cm^{-2} minute^{-1} K^{-4} 5.670×10^{-5} erg cm^{-2} s^{-1} K^{-4}
σ_w	Surface tension of water	0.0756 N m^{-1} (Pa m) at 0°C 0.0749 N m^{-1} (Pa m) at 5°C 0.0742 N m^{-1} (Pa m) at 10°C 0.0735 N m^{-1} (Pa m) at 15°C 0.0728 N m^{-1} (Pa m) at 20°C 0.0720 N m^{-1} (Pa m) at 25°C 0.0712 N m^{-1} (Pa m) at 30°C 0.0704 N m^{-1} (Pa m) at 35°C 0.0696 N m^{-1} (Pa m) at 40°C 0.0679 N m^{-1} (Pa m) at 50°C 0.0612 N m^{-1} (Pa m) at 60°C 7.28×10^{-8} MPa m at 20°C 72.8 dyn cm^{-1} at 20°C 7.18×10^{-5} atm cm at 20°C 7.28×10^{-5} bar cm at 20°C

[a] The correction for height above sea level is -3.09×10^{-6} m s^{-2} per meter of altitude.
[b] The pressure sensitivity is very slight, with K^{air} increasing only about 0.0001 W m^{-1} °C^{-1} per atmosphere (0.1013 MPa) increase in pressure.
[c] Moist air is less dense than dry air at the same temperature and pressure, because the molecular weight of water (18.0) is less than the average molecular weight of air (29.0).

	c^*_{wv}			
Temperature (°C)	(g m^{-3})	(mol m^{-3})	N^*_{wv} (at 1 atm)	P^*_{wv} (kPa)
−30	0.34	0.019	0.00037	0.038
−25	0.55	0.031	0.00062	0.063
−20	0.88	0.049	0.00102	0.103
−19	0.97	0.054	0.00112	0.114
−18	1.06	0.059	0.00123	0.125
−17	1.16	0.064	0.00135	0.137
−16	1.27	0.070	0.00149	0.151
−15	1.39	0.077	0.00163	0.165
−14	1.52	0.084	0.00179	0.181
−13	1.65	0.092	0.00196	0.198
−12	1.80	0.100	0.00214	0.217
−11	1.96	0.109	0.00234	0.238
−10	2.14	0.119	0.00256	0.260

Temperature (°C)	c^*_{wv} (g m^{-3})	c^*_{wv} (mol m^{-3})	N^*_{wv} (at 1 atm)	P^*_{wv} (kPa)
−9	2.33	0.129	0.00280	0.284
−8	2.53	0.141	0.00306	0.310
−7	2.75	0.153	0.00333	0.338
−6	2.99	0.166	0.00364	0.369
−5	3.25	0.180	0.00396	0.402
−4	3.52	0.195	0.00431	0.437
−3	3.82	0.212	0.00469	0.476
−2	4.14	0.230	0.00511	0.517
−1	4.48	0.249	0.00555	0.562
0	4.85	0.269	0.00604	0.611
1	5.20	0.288	0.00649	0.657
2	5.56	0.309	0.00697	0.706
3	5.95	0.330	0.00748	0.758
4	6.36	0.353	0.00803	0.816
5	6.80	0.378	0.00862	0.873
6	7.27	0.403	0.00923	0.935
7	7.76	0.431	0.00989	1.002
8	8.28	0.459	0.01059	1.073
9	8.82	0.490	0.01133	1.148
10	9.41	0.522	0.01212	1.228
11	10.02	0.556	0.01296	1.313
12	10.67	0.592	0.01384	1.403
13	11.35	0.630	0.01478	1.498
14	12.08	0.670	0.01578	1.599
15	12.84	0.713	0.01683	1.706
16	13.64	0.757	0.01795	1.819
17	14.49	0.804	0.01913	1.938
18	15.38	0.854	0.02037	2.064
19	16.32	0.906	0.02169	2.198
20	17.31	0.961	0.02308	2.339
21	18.35	1.018	0.02455	2.488
22	19.44	1.079	0.02610	2.645
23	20.59	1.143	0.02774	2.810
24	21.80	1.210	0.02946	2.985
25	23.07	1.280	0.03128	3.169
26	24.40	1.354	0.03319	3.363
27	25.79	1.432	0.03520	3.567
28	27.26	1.513	0.03723	3.782
29	28.79	1.598	0.03955	4.008
30	30.40	1.687	0.04190	4.246
31	32.08	1.781	0.04437	4.495
32	33.85	1.879	0.04696	4.758
33	35.70	1.981	0.04968	5.034
34	37.63	2.089	0.05253	5.323
35	39.65	2.201	0.05553	5.627
36	41.76	2.318	0.05868	5.945
37	43.97	2.441	0.06197	6.280
38	46.28	2.569	0.06543	6.630
39	48.69	2.703	0.06905	6.997
40	51.21	2.842	0.07285	7.381
41	53.83	2.988	0.07682	7.784
42	56.57	3.140	0.08098	8.205
43	59.43	3.299	0.08533	8.646
44	62.41	3.464	0.08989	9.108
45	65.52	3.637	0.09464	9.590

(*continued*)

Temperature (°C)	c^*_{wv} (g m^{-3})	c^*_{wv} (mol m^{-3})	N^*_{wv} (at 1 atm)	P^*_{wv} (kPa)
46	68.75	3.816	0.09962	10.09
47	72.12	4.003	0.1048	10.62
48	75.63	4.198	0.1102	11.17
49	79.28	4.401	0.1159	11.74
50	83.08	4.611	0.1218	12.34
55	104.5	5.798	0.1555	15.75
60	130.3	7.217	0.1967	19.93

Note: Various equations exist for calculating the saturation vapor pressure P^*_{wv} as a function of temperature T, the standard one being the Goff–Gratch equation (see http://cires.colorado.edu/~voemel/vp.html).

To calculate c_{wv}, N_{wv}, or P_{wv} at a given temperature, simply multiply c^*_{wv}, N^*_{wv}, or P^*_{wv}, as appropriate, by the relative humidity (as a decimal) at that temperature; for example, c^*_{wv} for 60% relative humidity at 20°C is (17.31)(0.60) or 10.39 g m^{-3} and (0.961)(0.60) or 0.577 mol m^{-3}. Also note that c_{wv} and P_{wv} are nearly independent of ambient pressure (see Appendix IV.D), whereas N_{wv} is inversely proportional to it (the above values of N^*_{wv} are for an ambient pressure of 1 atm).

Appendix II

Conversion Factors and Definitions

Quantity	Equals	Quantity	Equals
acre	43,560 ft^2		10.22 m water (at sea level,
	4047 m^2		45° latitude, 20°C)[a]
	0.4047 hectare		14.50 pounds (lb) $inch^{-2}$ (psi)
	4.047×10^{-3} km^2	becquerel (Bq)	1 disintegration s^{-1}
ampere (A)	1 coulomb s^{-1}		2.703×10^{-11} curie
	1 V ohm^{-1}	British thermal	1055 J
angstrom (Å)	10^{-10} m	unit (Btu)	252.0 cal
	0.1 nm	Btu $hour^{-1}$	0.2931 W
	10^{-8} cm	calorie (cal)	4.184 J
atmosphere (atm)	0.1013 MPa		4.184×10^{7} erg
	1.013×10^{5} Pa	cal cm^{-2}	1 langley
	1.013×10^{5} N m^{-2}		4.184×10^{4} J m^{-2}
	1.013×10^{5} J m^{-3}	cal cm^{-2} $minute^{-1}$	697.8 W m^{-2}
	1.013 bar		6.978×10^{5} erg cm^{-2} s^{-1}
	1.013×10^{6} dyn cm^{-2}		1 langley $minute^{-1}$
	1.033×10^{4} kg m^{-2} (at sea	cal cm^{-1} $°C^{-1}$ $minute^{-1}$	6.978 W m^{-1} $°C^{-1}$
	level, 45° latitude)[a]	cal cm^{-1} $°C^{-1}$ s^{-1}	418.4 W m^{-1} $°C^{-1}$
	1.033 kg cm^{-2} (at sea level,	cal cm^{-3}	41.84 bar
	45° latitude)[a]	cal g^{-1}	41.84 J kg^{-1}
	760 mm Hg (at sea level,	cal m^{-2} s^{-1}	4.184 W m^{-2}
	45° latitude)[a]	cal $minute^{-1}$	0.06978 J s^{-1}
	10.35 m water (at sea level,		0.06978 W
	45° latitude, 20°C)[a]	cal s^{-1}	4.184 J s^{-1}
	14.70 pounds (lb) $inch^{-2}$ (psi)		4.184 W
bar	0.1 MPa	candela (cd)	1 lumen $steradian^{-1}$
	100 kPa	°Celsius (°C)	(°C + 273.15) K
	10^{5} Pa		[(9/5)(°C) + 32] °F
	10^{5} N m^{-2}	cm	0.3937 inch
	10^{5} J m^{-3}	cm bar^{-1} s^{-1}	10^{-7} m Pa^{-1} s^{-1}
	10^{6} dyn cm^{-2}	cm^2 bar^{-1} s^{-1}	10^{-9} m^2 Pa^{-1} s^{-1}
	0.9869 atm		10^{-3} m^2 MPa^{-1} s^{-1}
	1.020 kg cm^{-2} (at sea level,	cm s^{-1}	0.01 m s^{-1}
	45° latitude)[a]		10 mm s^{-1}
	750 mm Hg (at sea level,		0.03600 km $hour^{-1}$
	45° latitude)[a]		0.02237 mile $hour^{-1}$

(*continued*)

Quantity	Equals	Quantity	Equals
cm^3	10^{-6} m^3	g cm^{-3}	1000 kg m^{-3}
	1 ml	g dm^{-2} $hour^{-1}$	27.78 mg m^{-2} s^{-1}
CO_2 concentration	see Table 8.2	gallon (British)	4.546 liter
coulomb (C)	1 J V^{-1}		4.546 × 10^{-3} m^3
	1 ampere s	gallon (U.S.)	3.785 liter
coulomb V	1 J		3.785 × 10^{-3} m^3
curie (Ci)	3.7 × 10^{10} Bq		0.1337 ft^3
	3.7 × 10^{10}	gallon (U.S.) $acre^{-1}$	9.354 liter $hectare^{-1}$
	disintegrations s^{-1}	grain (based on wheat)	0.06480 g
dalton (Da)	1.661 × 10^{-24} g	grain $foot^{-3}$	2.288 g m^{-3}
	(1/12 mass of ^{12}C)	hectare (ha)	10^4 m^2
day	86,400 s		2.471 acres
	1440 minutes	hertz (H)	1 cycle s^{-1}
degree (angle) (°)	0.01745 radian	horsepower (hp)	745.7 W
dyn	1 erg cm^{-1}	hour (h)	3600 s
	1 g cm s^{-2}	inch (in.)	25.40 mm
	10^{-5} N	$inch^2$	6.452 × 10^{-4} m^2
dyn cm	1 erg	$inch^3$	1.639 × 10^{-5} m^3
	10^{-7} J		0.01639 liter
dyn cm^{-1}	10^{-3} N m^{-1}	joule (J)	1 N m
dyn cm^{-2}	0.1 N m^{-2}		1 W s
	10^{-6} bar		1 m^3 Pa
einstein	1 mol (6.022 × 10^{23})		1 kg m^2 s^{-2}
	photons		1 coulomb V
erg	1 dyn cm		10^7 erg
	1 g cm^2 s^{-2}		0.2388 cal
	10^{-7} J		10 cm^3 bar
	6.242 × 10^{11} eV	J kg^{-1}	2.388 × 10^{-4} cal g^{-1}
	2.390 × 10^{-8} cal	J mol^{-1}	0.2388 cal mol^{-1}
	2.390 × 10^{-11} kcal	J s^{-1}	W
erg cm^{-2} s^{-1}	10^{-3} J m^{-2} s^{-1}	kcal	4.187 kJ
	10^{-3} W m^{-2}		4.187 × 10^{10} erg
	10^{-7} W cm^{-2}	kcal $hour^{-1}$	1.163 W
	1.433 × 10^{-6} cal cm^{-2}	kcal mol^{-1}	4.187 kJ mol^{-1}
	$minute^{-1}$		0.04339 eV $molecule^{-1}$
eV	1.602 × 10^{-19} J	kDa	1.661 × 10^{-21} g (1000 ×
	1.602 × 10^{-12} erg		1/12 mass of ^{12}C)
eV $molecule^{-1}$	96.49 kJ mol^{-1}	kelvin (K)	(K − 273.15) °C
	23.06 kcal mol^{-1}	kg	2.2046 pounds (lb)[a]
farad (F)	1 coulomb V^{-1}		0.001 tonne (metric ton)
°Fahrenheit (°F)	(°F − 32)(5/9) °C	kg $hectare^{-1}$	0.893 pound (lb) $acre^{-1}$
foot (ft)	30.48 cm	kg m^{-2}	0.1 g cm^{-2}
	0.3048 m		1.422 × 10^{-3} pound (lb) $in.^{-2}$ (psi)
$foot^2$	9.290 × 10^{-2} m^2		9.807 Pa (9.807 N m^{-2}) (at sea level,
$foot^3$	2.832 × 10^{-2} m^3		45° latitude: see *g*, Appendix I)
	28.32 liter	kg m^{-3}	10^{-3} g cm^{-3}
	7.480 gallons	kg H_2O	1 liter H_2O at 4°C
	(U.S.)	kJ mol^{-1}	0.01036 eV $molecule^{-1}$
footcandle (fc)	1 lumen ft^{-2}	km	1000 m
	10.76 lux		0.6214 mile
foot-pound	1.356 J	km^2	100 hectares
foot s^{-1}	1.097 km $hour^{-1}$		247.1 acres
	0.6818 mile $hour^{-1}$		0.3861 $mile^2$
g	1 dyn s^2 cm^{-1}	km $hour^{-1}$	0.2778 m s^{-1}
	10^{-3} N s^2 m^{-1}		27.78 cm s^{-1}
g cm^{-2}	10 kg m^{-2}		0.6214 mile $hour^{-1}$

(*continued*)

Quantity	Equals	Quantity	Equals
knot	1.852 km $hour^{-1}$	m s^{-1}	100 cm s^{-1}
	1.151 mile $hour^{-1}$		3.600 km $hour^{-1}$
kW	1000 J s^{-1}		2.237 mile $hour^{-1}$
	3.600×10^6 J $hour^{-1}$	micron	1 μm
	859.8 kcal $hour^{-1}$	mile	1609 m
kW hour	3.600×10^6 J		1.609 km
	8.598×10^5 cal		5280 ft
lambert	0.3183 candela cm^{-2}	$mile^2$	640 acres
	3183 candela m^{-2}		2.590×10^6 m^2
langley	1 cal cm^{-2}		2.590 km^2
	4.187×10^4 J m^{-2}	mile $hour^{-1}$	0.4470 m s^{-1}
langley day^{-1}	0.4846 W m^{-2}		44.70 cm s^{-1}
langley $minute^{-1}$	697.8 W m^{-2}		1.609 km $hour^{-1}$
lb	pound		
liter	0.001 m^3	MJ	0.2778 kW hour
	0.03531 ft^3	ml	1 cm^3
	0.2200 gallon (British)		10^{-6} m^3
	0.2642 gallon (U.S.)	mm Hg	133.3 Pa
	1.057 quarts	mM	1 mol m^{-3}
liter atm	24.20 cal	month (mean)	2.630×10^6 s
	101.3 J	MPa	10^6 N m^{-2}
liter bar	100 J		10^6 J m^{-3}
	23.88 cal		10 bar
liter $hectare^{-1}$	0.1069 gallon (U.S.) $acre^{-1}$		1.020×10^5 kg m^{-2}
liter H_2O	1 kg H_2O at 4°C		(at sea level, 45° latitude; see *g*,
ln	2.303 log		Appendix I)
log	0.4343 ln		9.872 atm
lumen (L) ft^{-2}	1 footcandle	mol m^{-3}	1 mM
	10.76 lux		1 μmol cm^{-3}
lumen m^{-2}	1 lux	nautical mile	1.151 mile
	0.09290 footcandle	ng cm^{-2} s^{-1}	10 μg m^{-2} s^{-1}
lux (lx)	1 lumen m^{-2}	newton (N)	1 kg m s^{-2}
	0.09290 footcandle		10^5 dyn
m	100 cm	N m	1 J
	3.280 ft	N m^{-1}	10^3 dyn cm^{-1}
	39.37 inch	N m^{-2}	1 Pa
m^2	10.76 ft^2		10^{-6} MPa
	10^{-4} hectare		10 dyn cm^{-2}
m^3	35.32 ft^3		10^{-2} mbar
	1.308 $yard^3$	ounce (avoirdupois)	28.35 g
	220.0 gallons (British)	ounce (troy)	31.10 g
	264.2 gallons (U.S.)	pascal (Pa)	1 N m^{-2}
M	mol $liter^{-1}$		1 J m^{-3}
	1000 mol m^{-3}		1 kg m^{-1} s^{-2}
mbar	0.1 kPa		10^{-5} bar
	100 Pa		9.869×10^{-6} atm
	10^3 dyn cm^{-2}	photosynthesis	see Table 8.2
	0.9869×10^{-3} atm	poise (P)	1 dyn s cm^{-2}
mho	1 ohm^{-1}		0.1 N s m^{-2}
	1 siemens		0.1 Pa s
	1 ampere V^{-1}	pound (lb)[a]	0.4536 kg
mg cm^{-3}	1 kg m^{-3}	pound $acre^{-1}$	1.121 kg $hectare^{-1}$
mg dm^{-2} $hour^{-1}$	2.778×10^{-2} mg m^{-2} s^{-1}		703.1 kg m^{-2}
Mg $hectare^{-1}$	0.4461 ton (U.S.) $hectare^{-1}$		0.07031 kg cm^{-2}

(*continued*)

Quantity	Equals	Quantity	Equals
pound inch^{-2} (psi)	6.895 kPa	transpiration	see Table 8.2
	0.06895 bar	V	1 ampere ohm
	0.06805 atm		1 J coulomb^{-1}
radian (rad)	57.30°	watt (W)	1 J s^{-1}
revolution	6° s^{-1}		1 kg m^{2} s^{-3}
minute^{-1} (rpm)	0.1047 radian s^{-1}		10^{7} erg s^{-1}
s cm^{-1}	100 s m^{-1}		14.33 cal minute^{-1}
s m^{-1}	10^{-2} s cm^{-1}	W cm^{-2}	10^{4} W m^{-2}
siemens (S)	1 mho (ohm^{-1})	W m^{-2}	1 J m^{-2} s^{-1}
	1 ampere V^{-1}		10^{3} erg cm^{-2} s^{-1}
therm	1 × 10^{5} Btu		1.433 × 10^{-3} cal cm^{-2} minute^{-1}
	1.055 × 10^{8} J		1.433 × 10^{-3} langley minute^{-1}
ton (U.S.)	2000 pounds (1b)		0.2388 cal m^{-2} s^{-1}
	907.2 kg		2.388 × 10^{-5} cal cm^{-2} s^{-1}
	1 ton (short)	W m^{-1} °C^{-1}	2.388 × 10^{-3} cal cm^{-1} °C^{-1} s^{-1}
	0.8929 ton (long)		0.1433 cal cm^{-1} °C^{-1} minute^{-1}
ton (U.S.) acre^{-1}	2.242 tonne hectare^{-1}	W s	1 J
	2.242 Mg hectare^{-1}	week	6.048 × 10^{5} s
tonne (metric ton)	1000 kg	yard	0.9144 m
	1 Mg	yard^{2}	0.8361 m^{2}
	1.102 ton (U.S.)	yard^{3}	0.7646 m^{3}
tonne hectare^{-1}	0.4461 ton (U.S.) acre^{-1}	year (normal calendar)	3.154 × 10^{7} s
tonne m^{-3}	1 g cm^{-3}		5.256 × 10^{5} minutes
torr	1 mm Hg		8760 hours
	133.3 Pa (at sea level, 45° latitude; see *g*, Appendix I)		365 days
		year (sidereal)	365.256 days
			3.156 × 10^{7} s
	1.333 mbar (at sea level, 45° latitude; see *g*, Appendix I)	year (solar)	365.242 days
			3.156 × 10^{7} s
		μg cm^{-2} s^{-1}	10 mg m^{-2} s^{-1}
	1333 dyn cm^{-2} (at sea level, 45° latitude; see *g*, Appendix I)		

[a]Sometimes it proves convenient to express force in units of mass. To see why this is possible, consider the force F exerted by gravity on a body of mass m. This force is equal to mg, g being the gravitational acceleration (see Appendix I). Thus F/g can be used to represent a force but the units are those of mass. One atmosphere is quite often defined as 760 mm Hg (or 1.033 kg cm^{-2}), but the elevational and latitudinal effects on g should also be considered (see Appendix I).

Appendix III

Mathematical Relations

III.A. Prefixes (for units of measure)

a	atto	10^{-18}	da[a]	deka	10
f	femto	10^{-15}	h[a]	hecto	10^{2}
p	pico	10^{-12}	k	kilo	10^{3}
n	nano	10^{-9}	M	mega	10^{6}
µ	micro	10^{-6}	G	giga	10^{9}
m	milli	10^{-3}	T	tera	10^{12}
c[a]	centi	10^{-2}	P	peta	10^{15}
d[a]	deci	10^{-1}	E	exa	10^{18}

[a] Not recommended by SI (Système International, the internationally accepted system for units).

III.B. Areas and Volumes

The following relations pertain to a cube of length s on a side, a cylinder of radius r and length along the axis l, and a sphere of radius r.

Shape	Area	Volume	V/A
Cube	$6s^2$	s^3	$s/6$
Cylinder	$2\pi rl + 2\pi r^2$	$\pi r^2 l$	$rl/(2l + 2r)$
Sphere	$4\pi r^2$	$\frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$	$r/3$

III.C. Logarithms

The following relations are presented to facilitate the use of natural and common logarithms, their antilogarithms, and exponential functions. For those readers who are completely unfamiliar with such quantities, a text-book or handbook should be consulted.

$\ln (xy) = \ln x + \ln y$	$\ln x^{a} = a \ln x$
$\ln (x/y) = \ln x - \ln y$	$\ln (1/x^{a}) = a \ln x$
$\ln (1/x) = -\ln x$	$\ln (x/y) = -\ln (y/x)$
$\ln x = 2.303 \log x$	$\log x = (1/2.303) \ln x = 0.434 \ln x$
$\ln 1 = 0$	$\log 1 = 0$
$\ln e = 1$	$\log e = 1/(2.303) = 0.434$
$\ln 10 = 2.303$	$\log 10 = 1$
$\ln e^{x} = x$	$\log 10^{x} = x$
$e^{\ln y} = y$	$10^{\log x} = x$

$$\ln(1+x) = x - \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{x^4}{4} + \cdots \qquad -1 < x \leq 1$$

$$e^x = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \cdots$$

III.D. Quadratic Equation

The quadratic equation has the following form:

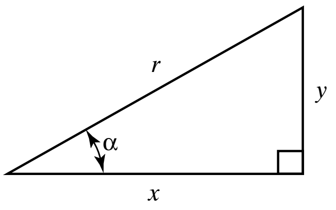
$$ax^2 + bx + c = 0 \qquad (a \neq 0)$$

Its two solutions (two roots) are

$$x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}$$

III.E. Trignometric Functions

Consider a right triangle of hypotenuse r:



α in radians or °
(2π radians = 360°)

$$\sin\alpha = \frac{y}{r} \qquad -1 \leq \sin\alpha \leq 1$$

$$\cos\alpha = \frac{x}{r} \qquad -1 \leq \cos\alpha \leq 1$$

$$\tan\alpha = \frac{y}{x} \qquad -\infty \leq \tan\alpha \leq \infty$$

$$\sin\alpha = \alpha - \frac{\alpha^3}{3!} + \frac{\alpha^5}{5!} - \frac{\alpha^7}{7!} + \cdots \qquad \alpha \text{ in radians}$$

$$\cos\alpha = 1 - \frac{\alpha^2}{2!} + \frac{\alpha^4}{4!} - \frac{\alpha^6}{6!} + \cdots \qquad \alpha \text{ in radians}$$

III.F. Differential Equations

As a final topic in this appendix, we will consider the application of the integral calculus to the solution of differential equations. A *differential equation* expresses the relationship between derivatives (first order as well as higher order) and various variables or functions. The procedure in solving

differential equations is first to put the relation into a form that can be integrated and then to carry out suitable integrations so that the derivatives are eliminated. To complete the solution of a differential equation, we must incorporate the known values of the functions at particular values of the variables, the so-called *boundary conditions*. We will illustrate the handling of differential equations by a simple but extremely useful example.

One of the most important differential equations in biology has the following general form:

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = -ky \tag{III.1}$$

where k is a positive constant and t represents time. We encountered this equation in Chapter 4 (Eq. 4.10) in discussing the various competing pathways for the deexcitation of an excited singlet state. Equation III.1 also describes the process of radioactive decay, where y is the amount of radioisotope present at any time t. The equation indicates that the rate of change in time of the amount of radioactive substance (dy/dt) is linearly proportional to the amount present at that time (y). Because the radioisotope decays in time, dy/dt is negative, and hence there is a minus sign in Equation III.1. Any process that can be described by Equation III.1, such as a chemical reaction, is called a first-order rate process, and k is known as the first-order rate constant.

To put Equation III.1 into a form suitable for integration, we must separate the variables (y and t) so that each one appears on only one side of the equation:

$$\frac{dy}{y} = -k\,dt \tag{III.2}$$

which follows from Equation III.2 upon multiplying each side by dt/y. (Note that the same initial process of separation of variables applies to the integration of a more complicated example in Chapter 3, namely, Eq. 3.12.) When the variables are separated so that a possible integrand, e.g., $-kdt$, is expressed in terms of only one variable, we can integrate that integrand. On the other hand, the integrand $-kydt$ cannot be integrated as it stands — i.e., we cannot perform $\int -kydt$ — because we do not know how y depends on t. In fact, the very purpose of solving Equation III.1 is to determine the functional relationship between y and t.

Next, we will insert integral signs into Equation III.2, replace y with $y(t)$ to emphasize that y depends on the independent variable t, and perform the integration from $t = 0$ to $t = \infty$:

$$\int_{y(0)}^{y(t)} \frac{dy}{y} = \ln y \Big|_{y(0)}^{y(t)} = \ln y(t) - \ln y(0) = -\int_0^t k\,dt = -kt \tag{III.3}$$

When we take exponentials of quantities in Equation III.3, we obtain the following solution to the differential equation represented by Equation III.1:

$$y(t) = y(0)\,e^{-kt} \tag{III.4}$$

Because of the factor e^{-kt}, Equation III.4 indicates that y decays exponentially with time for a first-order rate process (e.g., Fig. 4-11). Moreover, $y(t)$ decreases to $1/e$ of its initial value $[y(0)]$ when t satisfies the following relation:

$$y(\tau) = \frac{1}{e} y(0) = y(0)\, e^{-k\tau} \tag{III.5}$$

where the value of time, τ, that satisfies Equation III.5 is known as the lifetime of the process whose decay or disappearance is being considered. Equation III.5 indicates that e^{-1} equals $e^{-k\tau}$, so the first-order rate constant k is equal to the reciprocal of the lifetime τ (see Eq. 4.14). Therefore, the solution (Eq. III.4) of the partial differential equation (Eq. III.1) describing a first-order rate process becomes

$$y(t) = y(0)\, e^{-t/\tau} \tag{III.6}$$

Appendix IV

Gibbs Free Energy and Chemical Potential

The concept of chemical potential is introduced in Chapter 2 (Section 2.2) and used throughout the rest of the book. In order not to overburden the text with mathematical details, certain points are stated without proof. Here we will derive an expression for the chemical potential, justify the form of the pressure term in the chemical potential, and also provide insight into how the expression for the Gibbs free energy arises.

IV.A. Entropy and Equilibrium

A suitable point of departure is to reconsider the condition for equilibrium. The most general statement we can make concerning the attainment of equilibrium by a system is that it occurs when the entropy of the system plus its surroundings is at a maximum. Unfortunately, entropy has proved to be an elusive concept to master and a difficult quantity to measure. Moreover, reference to the surroundings — the "rest of the universe" in the somewhat grandiloquent language of physics — is a nuisance. Consequently, thermodynamicists sought a function that would help describe equilibrium but would depend only on readily measurable parameters of the system under consideration. As we will see, the Gibbs free energy is such a function for most applications in biology.

The concept of entropy (S) is really part of our day-to-day observations. We know that an isolated system will spontaneously change in certain ways—a system proceeds toward a state that is more random, or less ordered, than the initial one. For instance, neutral solutes will diffuse toward regions where they are less concentrated (Fig. 1-5). In so doing, the system lowers its capacity for further spontaneous change. For all such processes ΔS is positive, whereas ΔS becomes zero and S achieves a maximum at equilibrium. Equilibrium means that no more spontaneous changes will take place; entropy is therefore an index for the capacity for spontaneous change. It would be more convenient in some ways if entropy had been originally defined with the opposite sign. In fact, some authors introduce the quantity *negentropy*, which equals $-S$ and reaches a minimum at equilibrium. In any case, we must ultimately use a precise mathematical definition for entropy, such as $dS = dQ/T$, where dQ refers to the heat gain or loss in some reversible reaction taking place at temperature T.

We can represent the total entropy of the universe, S_u, as the entropy of the system under consideration, S_s, plus the entropy of the rest of the universe, S_r. We can express this in symbols as follows:

$$S_u = S_s + S_r$$

or (IV.1)

$$dS_u = dS_s + dS_r$$

An increase in S_u accompanies all real processes—this is the most succinct way of stating the second law of thermodynamics. S_u is maximum at equilibrium.

The heat absorbed by a system during some process is equal to the heat given up by the rest of the universe. Let us represent the infinitesimal heat exchange of the system by dQ_s. For an isothermal reaction or change, dQ_s is simply $-dQ_r$ because the heat must come from the rest of the universe. From the definition of entropy,[1] $dS = dQ/T$, we can obtain the following relationship:

$$dS_r = \frac{dQ_r}{T} = -\frac{dQ_s}{T} = -\frac{dU_s + PdV_s}{T} \tag{IV.2}$$

The last step in Equation IV.2 derives from the principle of the conservation of energy for the case when the only form of work involved is mechanical—a common assumption in stating the first law of thermodynamics. It is thus possible to express dQ_s as the sum of the change in internal energy (dU_s) plus a work term (PdV_s). The internal energy (U_s) is a function of the state of a system, i.e., its magnitude depends on the characteristics of the system but is independent of how the system got to that state. PV_s is also a well-defined variable. However, heat (Q_s) is not a function of the state of a system.

As we indicated previously, equilibrium occurs when the entropy of the universe is maximum. This means that dS_u then equals zero. By substituting Equation IV.2 into the differential form of Equation IV.1, we can express this equilibrium condition solely in terms of system parameters:

$$0 = dS_s + \left(-\frac{dU_s + PdV_s}{T}\right)$$

or (IV.3)

$$-TdS_S + dU_s + PdV_s = 0$$

Equation IV.3 suggests that there is some function of the system that has an extremum at equilibrium. In other words, we might be able to find some expression determined by the parameters describing the system whose derivative is zero at equilibrium. If so, the abstract statement that the entropy of the universe is a maximum at equilibrium could then be replaced by a statement referring only to measurable attributes of the system—easily measurable ones, we hope.

1. This definition really applies only to reversible reactions, which we can in principle use to approximate a given change; otherwise, dQ is not uniquely related to dS.

In the 1870s Josiah Willard Gibbs—perhaps the most brilliant thermodynamicist to date—chose a simple set of terms that turned out to have the very properties for which we are searching. This function is now referred to as the *Gibbs free energy* and has the symbol G:

$$G = U + PV - TS \tag{IV.4a}$$

which, upon differentiating, yields

$$dG = dU + PdV + VdP - TdS - SdT \tag{IV.4b}$$

Equation IV.4b indicates that, at constant temperature ($dT = 0$) and constant pressure ($dP = 0$), dG is

$$dG = dU + PdV - TdS \qquad \text{at constant } T \text{ and } P \tag{IV.5}$$

By comparing Equation IV.5 with the equilibrium condition expressed by Equation IV.3, we see that dG for a system equals zero at equilibrium at constant temperature and pressure. Moreover, G depends only on U, P, V, T, and S of the system. The extremum condition, $dG = 0$, actually occurs when G reaches a minimum at equilibrium. This useful attribute of the Gibbs free energy is strictly valid only when the overall system is at constant temperature and pressure, conditions that closely approximate those encountered in many biological situations. Thus our criterion for equilibrium shifts from a maximum of the entropy of the universe to a minimum in the Gibbs free energy of the system.

IV.B. Gibbs Free Energy

We will now consider how the internal energy, U, changes when material enters or leaves a system. This will help us derive an expression for the Gibbs free energy that is quite useful for biological applications.

The internal energy of a system changes when substances enter or leave it. For convenience, we will consider a system of fixed volume and at the same temperature as the surroundings so that there are no heat exchanges. If dn_j moles of species j enter such a system, U increases by $\mu_j dn_j$, where μ_j is an intensive variable representing the free energy contribution to the system per mole of species j entering or leaving. Work is often expressed as the product of an intensive quantity (such as μ_j, P, T, E, and h) times an extensive one (dn_j, dV, dS, dQ, and dm, respectively); that is, the amount of any kind of work depends on both some thermodynamic parameter characterizing the internal state of the system and the extent or amount of change for the system. In our current example, the extensive variable describing the amount of change is dn_j, and μ_j represents the contribution to the internal energy of the system per mole of species j. When more than one species crosses the boundary of our system, which is at constant volume and the same temperature as the surroundings, the term $\sum_j \mu_j \, dn_j$ is added to dU, where dn_j is positive if the species enters the system and negative if it leaves. In the general

case, when we consider all of the ways that the internal energy of a system can change, we can represent dU as follows:

$$dU = dQ - PdV + \sum_j \mu_j \, dn_j \tag{IV.6}$$

We now return to the development of a useful relation for the Gibbs free energy of a system. When dU as expressed by Equation IV.6 is substituted into dG as given by Equation IV.5, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} dG &= TdS - PdV + \textstyle\sum_j \mu_j dn_j + PdV - TdS \\ &= \textstyle\sum_j \mu_j dn_j \end{aligned} \tag{IV.7}$$

where dQ has been replaced by TdS. Equation IV.7 indicates that the particular form chosen for the Gibbs free energy leads to a very simple expression for dG at constant T and P—namely, dG then depends only on μ_j and dn_j.

To obtain an expression for G, we must integrate Equation IV.7. To facilitate the integration we will define a new variable, α, such that dn_j is equal to $n_j d\alpha$, where n_j is the total number of moles of species j present in the final system; that is, n_j is a constant describing the final system. The subsequent integration from $\alpha = 0$ to $\alpha = 1$ corresponds to building up the system by a simultaneous addition of all of the components in the same proportions that are present in the final system. (The intensive variable μ_j is also held constant for this integration pathway, i.e., the chemical potential of species j does not depend on the size of the system.) Using Equation IV.7 and this easy integration pathway, we obtain the following expression for the Gibbs free energy:

$$\begin{aligned} G &= \textstyle\int dG = \int \sum_j \mu_j \, dn_j = \int_0^1 \sum_j \mu_j \, n_j \, d\alpha \\ &= \textstyle\sum_j \mu_j \, n_j \int_0^1 d\alpha = \sum_j \mu_j \, n_j \end{aligned} \tag{IV.8}$$

The well-known relation between G and μ_j's in Equation IV.8 can also be obtained by a method that is more elegant mathematically but somewhat involved.

In Chapter 6 (Section 6.1) we presented without proof an expression for the Gibbs free energy (Eq. 6.1 is essentially Eq. IV.8) and also noted some of the properties of G. For instance, at constant temperature and pressure, the direction for a spontaneous change is toward a lower Gibbs free energy; minimum G is achieved at equilibrium. Hence, ΔG is negative for such spontaneous processes. Spontaneous processes can in principle be harnessed to do useful work, where the maximum amount of work possible at constant temperature and pressure is equal to the absolute value of ΔG (some of the energy is dissipated by inevitable inefficiencies such as frictional losses, so $-\Delta G$ represents the maximum work possible). To drive a reaction in the direction opposite to that in which it proceeds spontaneously requires a free energy input of at least ΔG (cf. Fig. 2-6).

IV.C. Chemical Potential

We now examine the properties of the intensive variable μ_j. Equation IV.8 ($G = \sum_j \mu_j n_j$) suggests a very useful way of defining μ_j. In particular, if we keep μ_j and n_i constant, we obtain the following expression:

$$\mu_j = \left(\frac{\partial G}{\partial n_j}\right)_{\mu_i, n_i} = \left(\frac{\partial G}{\partial n_j}\right)_{T,P,E,h,n_i} \tag{IV.9}$$

where n_i and μ_i refer to all species other than species j. Because μ_j can depend on T, P, E (the electrical potential), h (the height in a gravitational field), and n_i, the act of keeping μ_i constant during partial differentiation is the same as that of keeping T, P, E, h, and n_i constant, as is indicated in Equation IV.9. Equation IV.9 indicates that the chemical potential of species j is the partial molal Gibbs free energy of a system with respect to that species, and that it is obtained when T, P, E, h, and the amount of all other species are held constant. Thus μ_j corresponds to the intensive contribution of species j to the extensive quantity G, the Gibbs free energy of the system.

In Chapters 2 and 3 we argued that μ_j depends on T, a_j ($a_j = \gamma_j c_j$; Eq. 2.5), P, E, and h in a solution, and that the partial pressure of species j, P_j, is also involved for the chemical potential in a vapor phase. We can summarize the two relations as follows (see Eqs. 2.4 and 2.21):

$$\mu_j^{\text{liquid}} = \mu_j^* + RT \ln a_j + \overline{V}_j P + z_j FE + m_j gh \tag{IV.10a}$$

$$\mu_j^{\text{vapor}} = \mu_j^* + RT \ln \frac{P_j}{P_j^*} + m_j gh \tag{IV.10b}$$

The forms for the gravitational contribution ($m_j gh$) and the electrical one ($z_j FE$) can be easily understood. We showed in Chapter 3 (Section 3.2A) that $RT \ln a_j$ is the correct form for the concentration term in μ_j. The reasons for the forms of the pressure terms in a liquid ($\overline{V}_j P$) and in a gas $[RT \ln \left(P_j/P_j^*\right)]$ are not so obvious. Therefore, we will examine the pressure dependence of the chemical potential of species j in some detail.

IV.D. Pressure Dependence of μ_j

To derive the pressure terms in the chemical potentials of solvents, solutes, and gases, we must rely on certain properties of partial derivatives as well as on commonly observed effects of pressure. To begin with, we will differentiate the chemical potential in Equation IV.9 with respect to P:

$$\begin{aligned}\left(\frac{\partial \mu_j}{\partial P}\right)_{T,E,h,n_i,n_j} &= \left[\frac{\partial}{\partial P}\left(\frac{\partial G}{\partial n_j}\right)_{T,P,E,h,n_i}\right]_{T,E,h,n_i,n_j} \\ &= \left[\frac{\partial}{\partial n_j}\left(\frac{\partial G}{\partial P}\right)_{T,E,h,n_i,n_j}\right]_{T,P,E,h,n_i}\end{aligned} \tag{IV.11}$$

where we have reversed the order for partial differentiation with respect to P and n_j (this is permissible for functions such as G, which have well-defined and continuous first-order partial derivatives). The differential form of Equation IV.4 ($dG = dU + PdV + VdP - TdS - SdT$) gives us a suitable form for dG. If we substitute dU given by Equation IV.6 ($dU = TdS - PdV + \sum_j \mu_j\, dn_j$, where dQ is replaced by TdS) into this expression for the derivative of the Gibbs free energy, we can express dG in the following useful form:

$$dG = VdP - SdT + \sum_j \mu_j dn_j \tag{IV.12}$$

Using Equation IV.2 we can readily determine the pressure dependence of the Gibbs free energy as needed in the last bracket of Equation IV.11—namely, $(\partial G/\partial P)_{T,E,h,n_i,n_j}$ is equal to V by Equation IV.12. Next, we have to consider the partial derivative of this V with respect to n_j (see the last equality of Eq. IV.11). Equation 2.6 indicates that $\left(\partial V/\partial n_j\right)_{T,P,E,h,n_i}$ is $\overline{V}_j$, the partial molal volume of species j. Substituting these partial derivatives into Equation IV.11 leads to the following useful expression:

$$\left(\frac{\partial \mu_j}{\partial P}\right)_{T,E,h,n_i,n_j} = \overline{V}_j \tag{IV.13}$$

Equation IV.13 is of pivotal importance in deriving the form of the pressure term in the chemical potentials of both liquid and vapor phases.

Let us first consider an integration of Equation IV.13 appropriate for a liquid. We will make use of the observation that the partial molal volume of a species in a solution does not depend on the pressure to any significant extent. For a solvent this means that the liquid generally is essentially incompressible. If we integrate Equation IV.13 with respect to P at constant T, E, h, n_i, and n_j with $\overline{V}_j$ independent of P, we obtain the following relations:

$$\begin{aligned}\int \frac{\partial \mu_j}{\partial P} dP &= \int_{\mu_j^*}^{\mu_j^{\text{liquid}}} d\mu_j = \mu_j^{\text{liquid}} - \mu_j^* \\ &= \int \overline{V}_j\, dP = \overline{V}_j \int dP = \overline{V}_j P + \text{“constant”}\end{aligned} \tag{IV.14}$$

where the definite integral in the top line is taken from the chemical potential of species j in a standard state as the lower limit up to the general μ_j in a liquid as the upper limit. The integration of $\int \overline{V}_j dP$ leads to our pressure term $\overline{V}_j P$ plus a constant. Because the integration was performed while holding T, E, h, n_i, and n_j fixed, the "constant" can depend on all of these variables but not on P.

Equation IV.14 indicates that the chemical potential of a liquid contains a pressure term of the form $\overline{V}_j P$. The other terms (μ_j^*, $RT \ln a_j$, $z_j FE$, and $m_j gh$; see Eq. IV.10a) do not depend on pressure, a condition used throughout this text. The experimental observation that gives us this useful form for μ_j is that $\overline{V}_j$ is generally not influenced very much by pressure; for example, a liquid is often essentially incompressible. If this should prove invalid under

certain situations, $\overline{V}_j P$ would then not be a suitable term in the chemical potential of species j for expressing the pressure dependence in a solution.

Next we discuss the form of the pressure term in the chemical potential of a gas, where the assumption of incompressibility that we used for a liquid is not valid. Our point of departure is the perfect or ideal gas law:

$$P_j V = n_j R T \qquad \text{(IV.15)}$$

where P_j is the partial pressure of species j, and n_j is the number of moles of species j in volume V. Thus we will assume that real gases behave like ideal gases, which is generally justified for biological applications. Based on Equations IV.15 and 2.6 $[\overline{V}_j = (\partial V/\partial n_j)_{T,P,E,h,n_i}]$, the partial molal volume $\overline{V}_j$ for gaseous species j is RT/P_j. We also note that the total pressure P is equal to $\sum_j P_j$, where the summation is over all gases present (Dalton's law of partial pressures); hence, dP equals dP_j when n_i, T, and V are constant. When we integrate Equation IV.13, we thus find that the chemical potential of gaseous species j depends on the logarithm of its partial pressure:

$$\begin{aligned}\int \frac{\partial \mu_j}{\partial P} dP &= \int_{\mu_j^*}^{\mu_j^{\text{vapor}}} d\mu_j = \mu_j^{\text{vapor}} - \mu_j^* = \int \overline{V}_j \, dP = \int \frac{RT}{P_j} dP_j \\ &= R T \ln P_j + \text{“constant”}\end{aligned} \qquad \text{(IV.16)}$$

where the "constant" can depend on T, E, h, and n_i but not on n_j (or P_j). In particular, the "constant" equals $-R T \ln P_j^* + m_j g h$, where P_j^* is the saturation partial pressure for species j at atmospheric pressure and some particular temperature. Hence, the chemical potential for species j in the vapor phase (μ_j^{vapor}) is

$$\mu_j^{\text{vapor}} = \mu_j^* + R T \ln P_j - R T \ln P_j^* + m_j g h = \mu_j^* + R T \ln \frac{P_j}{P_j^*} + m_j g h \qquad \text{(IV.17)}$$

which is essentially the same as Equations 2.21 and IV.10b.

We have defined the standard state for gaseous species j, μ_j^*, as the chemical potential when the gas phase has a partial pressure for species j (P_j) equal to the saturation partial pressure (P_j^*), when we are at atmospheric pressure ($P = 0$) and the zero level for the gravitational term ($h = 0$), and for some specified temperature. Many physical chemistry texts ignore the gravitational term (we calculated that it has only a small effect for water vapor; see Chapter 2, Section 2.4C) and define the standard state for the condition when P_j equals 1 atm and species j is the only species present ($P = P_j$). The chemical potential of such a standard state equals $\mu_j^* - R T \ln P_j^*$ in our symbols.

The partial pressure of some species in a vapor phase in equilibrium with a liquid depends slightly on the total pressure in the system—loosely speaking, when the pressure on the liquid is increased, more molecules are squeezed out of it into the vapor phase. The exact relationship between

the pressures involved, which is known as the Gibbs equation, is as follows for water:

$$\frac{\partial(\ln P_{wv})}{\partial P} = \frac{\overline{V}_w}{RT}$$

or (IV.18)

$$\frac{\partial P_{wv}}{\partial P} = \frac{\overline{V}_w}{\overline{V}_{wv}}$$

where the second equality follows from the derivative of a logarithm $[\partial \ln u/\partial x = (1/u)(\partial u/\partial x)]$ and the ideal or perfect gas law $[P_{wv}V = n_{wv}RT$ (Eq. IV.15), so $\partial V/\partial n_{wv} = \overline{V}_{wv} = RT/P_{wv}]$. Because $\overline{V}_w$ is much less than is $\overline{V}_{wv}$, the effect is quite small (e.g., at 20°C and atmospheric pressure, $\overline{V}_w = 1.8 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{m}^3\ \text{mol}^{-1}$ and $\overline{V}_{wv} = 2.4 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{m}^3\ \text{mol}^{-1}$). From the first equality in Equation IV.18, we see that $\overline{V}_w dP$ equals $RTd\ln P_{wv}$. Hence, if the chemical potential of the liquid phase (μ_w) increases by $\overline{V}_w dP$ as an infinitesimal pressure is applied, then an equal increase, $RTd\ln P_{wv}$, occurs in μ_{wv} (see Eq. IV.10b for a definition of μ_{wv}), and hence we will still be in equilibrium ($\mu_w = \mu_{wv}$). This relation can be integrated to give $RT \ln P_{wv} = \overline{V}_w P +$ constant, where the constant is $RT \ln P^0_{wv}$ and P^0_{wv} is the partial pressure of water vapor at standard atmospheric pressure; hence, $RT \ln P_{wv}/P^0_{wv}$ is equal to $\overline{V}_w P$, a relation used in Chapter 2 (see Section 2.4C). We note that effects of external pressure on P_{wv} can be of the same order of magnitude as deviations from the ideal gas law for water vapor, both of which are usually neglected in biological applications.

IV.E. Concentration Dependence of μ_j

We will complete our discussion of chemical potential by using Equation IV.17 to obtain the logarithmic term in concentration that is found for μ_j in a liquid phase. First, it should be pointed out that Equation IV.17 has no concentration term per se for the chemical potential of species j in a gas phase. However, the partial pressure of a species in a gas phase is really analogous to the concentration of a species in a liquid; e.g., $P_jV = n_jRT$ for gaseous species j (Eq. IV.15), and concentration means number/volume and equals n_j/V, which equals P_j/RT.

Raoult's law states that at equilibrium the partial pressure of a particular gas above its volatile liquid is proportional to the mole fraction of that solvent in the liquid phase. A similar relation more appropriate for solutes is Henry's law, which states that P_j in the vapor phase is proportional to the N_j of that solute in the liquid phase. Although the proportionality coefficients in the two relations are different, they both indicate that P_j^{vapor} depends linearly on N_j^{solution}. For dilute solutions the concentration of species j, c_j, is proportional to its mole fraction, N_j (this is true for both solute and solvent). Thus when P_j^{vapor} changes from one equilibrium condition to another, we expect a similar change in c_j^{solution} because μ_j^{liquid} is equal to μ_j^{vapor} at equilibrium. In particular, Equation IV.17 indicates that μ_j^{vapor} depends on $RT \ln\left(P_j/P_j^*\right)$, and hence the chemical potential of a solvent or solute

should contain a term of the form $RT \ln c_j$, as in fact it does (see Eqs. 2.4 and IV.10). As we discussed in Chapter 2 (Section 2.2B), we should be concerned about the concentration that is thermodynamically active, a_j ($a_j = \gamma_j c_j$; Eq. 2.5), so the actual term in the chemical potential for a solute or solvent is $RT \ln a_j$, not $RT \ln c_j$. In Chapter 3 (Section 3.2A), instead of the present argument based on Raoult's and Henry's laws, we used a comparison with Fick's first law to justify the $RT \ln a_j$ term. Moreover, the Boyle–Van't Hoff relation, which was derived assuming the $RT \ln a_j$ term, has been amply demonstrated experimentally. Consequently, the $RT \ln a_j$ term in the chemical potential for a solute or solvent can be justified or derived in a number of different ways, all of which depend on agreement with experimental observations.

This page intentionally left blank

Index

Page numbers in **boldface** refer to figures or structural formulas (entry also usually mentioned on that text page).

A

A^{mes}/A, **377**, 394–**396**, 397, 403, **419**, 420
abscisic acid (ABA), 373, 427, 429
abscission, leaf, 456, 478, 485
absolute humidity, 386
absolute zero, 18, 326
absorbance, 216
absorptance, 325, 329
  leaf, **328**, 332, 352
absorption band, 214, 218, 266
absorption coefficient, 214–216
  foliar, **454**–456
  molar, 216
  pigments, 216, **221**, **234**, 239, **243**, 244, 266, **267**
absorption spectrum, 192, 209, 213
  carotenoids, **240**
  Chl *a*, **234**
  phycobilins, **243**
  phytochrome, **221**
absorptivity, 325
accessory pigments, 238, 246, 248–249, 296
acclimation, photosynthesis, 426, 431
action spectrum, 209, 214, 219
  O_2 evolution, 256–**257**, **258**
  phytochrome, seed germination, **222**–223
activation energy, **135**–136
active transport, 129, 130–131, 138, 141, 144
    carriers, 149–150, 152
    energy required, 142–143, 293
    membrane resistance, 131
    Michaelis–Menten formalism, 149–151
    Na–K pump, 143, 149
    Nitella, 140–142
    phloem, 483
    proton, 127, 131, 148, **371**–372
activity, thermodynamic, 61, 63, 106–107
activity coefficient, xv, 61, 85, 115
  ions, 106–108
  water, 67, 70
activity (concentration), chemical potential, xv, 60–61, 108, 569
adenine/adenosine, **288**, 294
adenosine diphosphate (ADP) *see* ATP
adenosine triphosphate (ATP), *see* ATP
adhesion, 50, 51, 89
adiabatic lapse rate, 426
ADP, *see* ATP; oxidative phosphorylation; photophosphorylation
advection, 446
aerenchyma, 20
Agave, 356, 410, 421–**422**, **424**
air, 550
  composition, 387
  density, 53, 549
  thermal conductivity, 546–547
  viscosity, 549
air boundary layer, *see* boundary layer
air gap, root-soil, **490**–492
air packets, *see* eddy; eddy diffusion coefficient
albedo, 325
alcohols, reflection coefficients, 162, 169
algae, 5, 24; *see also Chara*; *Chlorella*; *Nitella*
    excitation transfer, 249
    pigments, 233, 240, 241, 245, 258
altitude, *see* elevation
amino acids, 22, 478
anion, mobility, 117–119
anode, 60
antennae, pigments, 245, 258, 259, **272**
antiporter, 145, 301, **309**
aphid stylet, 478
apoplast, 10, 32, 83, 470, 476
aquaporin, 145, 146, 375
Arrhenius equation, 136
Arrhenius plot, **136**–137
atmosphere, transmittance, 325
atmospheric CO_2, 188, 189, 230, 405, 432, 499
atmospheric pressure/diffusion coefficients, 20
atomic orbitals/theory, 196
ATP, 19, 23, 46, 58, 271, **289**
  active transport, 143, 293
  bonds, 288, 292
  energy currency, 183, 278, 286, 292–293
  formation reaction, 230, 276, 287–293, 298
  proton ratio/involvement
    chloroplasts, 300–301
    mitochondria, 309–310
    synthase (ATPase), 148, 288, 302, 308
    turnover, 278
ATP synthase (ATPase), *see* ATP
Avogadro's number, 103, 183, 547

B

bacteria, 25, 233, 241, 251, 259, 293, 301, 307
bacteriochlorophyll, 233, 251, 259
bandwidth, absorption band, 237
basidiomycetes, transpiration, 391
Beer's law, 176, **215**–217, 453
bicarbonate, 398–399
biochemical reaction, 149, 228, 230, 255, 290
biodiversity, **497**, 499
biosphere, energy flow, 177, 278, 310, 313, 315
blackbody, 185, 190, 191, 311, 326–**327**, 329
blue light, 181, 182–183, 185, 200, 216, 352, 372
bleaching (absorption band), 260
bluff body, 335
  boundary layers, 338–339
  heat flux density, 341
Boltzmann energy distribution/factor, 100, **132**–133, 134, 184, 185, 235
    vibrational sublevels, 209, 211
bond energy, chemical, 183, 231
Bouguer–Lambert–Beer law, 216
boundary layer, 26, 318, 333
  air, 336–**339**, **377**
  conductance/resistance/flux density, 364, 368–370, 383, **388**
  cylinder, **338–339**

flat plate, **336**–337, 343
leaf, 318, **336–338**, **373**
sphere, **338–339**
Bowen ratio, 448
Boyle–Van't Hoff relation, 44, 74–76
chloroplasts, 76–78, 167–168
irreversible thermodynamics, 167–168
Brownian movement, 12, 185
buoyancy, 334, 344, 426, 444
bundle sheath cells, **408**, **409**, 477

C

C_3, 303
enzymes, 406, 409
photosynthesis, 404, 406, **407**, 408, **409**, 410, **413**
PPF, 405, **419**
WUE, 425, 429–432, 446
C_4, 303
anatomy, **408**, 477
enzymes, 409
photosynthesis, 404, 408–**409**, 410, **413**
PPF, **419**
WUE, 425, 429–432, 446
C^{13}/C^{12}, 410
cactus, 342, **353**–354, 355, 495
calcium, 33, 127, 148, 289, 373
callose, 477
calomel electrode, 286
Calvin (Calvin–Benson) cycle, **407**, 409
CAM, 73, **409**, 410, 421–**422**, 423, **424**–425, 432
cambium, vascular, **8**, **9**
candela (candle), 185, 186, 312, 553
canopy, 442, 451
capacitance, 104
membrane, electrical, 104–106, 130
water storage, 438, 492–495
leaf, 390, 493, 496
tree trunk, 492–493
capacitor, 104–**105**
capillary/capillary rise, **50**, **51**–53, 461
contact angle, 50, 51–52
height, 44, 52–53
xylem, 53–54
carbohydrate, 230–231, 313
carbon dioxide, 12, 20
atmospheric level, 188, 189, 230, 405, 432, 499
cellular conductance, 419
compensation point, 412–414
concentration
above canopy, 447
leaf, 413, 416
plant community, 452, 456–459
units, 391, 405
conductance/resistance, 392–**393**, 394, 399–403, 404, 416, 418–419
diffusion coefficient, 20, 393, 397, 545
elevated, 432, 497–499
fixation, *see* photosynthesis
flux density
above canopy, 443, 446–447
leaf, 364, 416–418
plant community, 451, 456–459
Michaelis–Menten, 404, 408
partition coefficient, 398–399
permeability coefficient, 397, 401, 500
photosynthesis, 230–231, 253
processing time, 254–255
solubility, 398–399
units, 391, 405
carbonic anhydrase, 398, 408
α-carotene, 240
β-carotene, 240, **241**, 249
absorption spectrum, **240**
carotenes, 240
carotenoids, 238–242, 245
absorption bands, **240**
photochemistry/ photoprotection, 241–**242**
carrier, 24, 144–145, 149–150, 151
Casparian strip, **9**, 10, 470
cathode, 60
cation, mobility, 117–119
cavitation, 54, 473, 489
cell sap, osmotic pressure, 68–69, 77, 80, 333
cellular conductance, 419
cellulose, 3, **33**
microfibrils, **32**, 33, 37, 39
Young's modulus, 39, 40
cell growth, 44, 93–95
cell wall, 3, **4**, 10, 31–**32**
composition, 33–34
diffusion across, 34–35, 399–400
Donnan potential, 127–129
elasticity, 2, 39–40, 80–81
hydrostatic pressure in, 32, 88–90
interstices, 4, **32**, 34
water relations, 53, 70, 88–90, 385, 387, 474–**475**
microfibrils, **32**, 33, 37, 39
middle lamella, **32**, **35**, 470
permeability, 34–36, 399–400
pits, 35
plastic extension, 40, 94
Poiseuille flow, **475**–476
pressure, 88–91, 127
primary, **32**–33, **35**, 470
resistance, CO_2, **393**, 399–400
secondary, **32**–33, **35**, 37, 470
stress-strain relations, 37–39
water, 34, 53, 70, 89–91, 127
water potential, 78, 88–91
yield threshold, 94
Young's modulus, 39, 40
Celsius, 18
central vacuole, 4, 72–74, 81
CF_o/CF_1, **299**, 302, 303
channel, membrane, 145–148, **299**, **308**
potassium, 147–148, **371**–372
Chara, 5, 38, 39
growth, 93–94
membranes, 110–111, 162
charge number, 103
chelate, 289
chemical energy/electrical energy, 283–285
chemical potential, 44, 56–66, 102–103, 113, 115–116, 279, 561, 564–569; *see also* activity, thermodynamic; concentration; electrical term; gravitational term; pressure; standard state
protons, 297–301, 307–309
water, 70
water vapor, 84–87
chemical reaction/conventions, 280–281, 290
chemiosmotic hypothesis
chloroplasts, 299–301
mitochondria, 307–309
chilling-sensitive plants, 136–137
Chl *a*, 232, **233**
absorption spectrum, 233–**234**, 237
excitation transfers, 246
fluorescence, **234–236**, 251
photosystems, 245, 258–259
radiationless transitions, 234
resonance transfer, 248–249
vibrational sublevels, 234, **236**

Chl *b*, 232, 237, 245, 258–259
Chlorella, 5, 256
chlorenchyma, 424
chloride, 123–126, 130, 140–142, **371**
chlorophyll, 24, 232–233; *see also* Chl *a*; Chl *b*; P_{680} / P_{700}
absorption, 190, 199–201, 216–217, **234**, 328
concentration, chloroplasts/leaves, 216–217, 248, 254, 420
deexcitations, **199**–200
electronic states, 199-200
excitation frequency, 253–255
fluorescence, **199**, 208, **234**, **236**, 250
leaves, 216, 245
polarized light, 237, 238
redox properties, 296–297
resonance transfer, 248, 250
structure, **233**
vibrational sublevels, 235, **236**
chloroplasts, **4, 6, 24**; *see also* ATP, electron transfer; photophosphorylation; photosynthesis
bioenergetics, 279, 295–298, 304
chlorophyll, 216, 248, 254
electron transfer chain, 262, 267–269
grana, **24**–25, 259
ions, 77
lamellar membranes, **23**, 236, 267, 271, 295, 301
light absorption, 216–217, 254–255
membranes, 22, **23**, 24, **397**
resistance, **393**
osmotic responses, 75–78, 167–168
photosynthesis, 403–404, 407
photophosphorylation, 271
reflection coefficients, 169
resistance, CO_2, **393**, 400, 402–403
stroma, **24, 393, 397**
thylakoids, **24**, 271–**272**, **299**, 302
volume, 72, 75–78
chromatophore, 25, 271, 301
chromophore, 220, 244, 265
chromoplast, 239
cis–trans isomerization, 198
citric acid cycle, 24, 304, 310
clay, 356, 459, **461**, 464, 473
cloudlight, 322–**323**, 325
clouds, 323, 332–333, 498
CO_2, *see* carbon dioxide
cohesion, 50, 51
cohesion (cohesion–tension) theory, 483
colligative property, 66, 85
colloid, 69, 70, 73–74, 75
color, 180–**181**
companion cell, **8**, **476**–477, 483
compensation point
CO_2, 412–414
light, **414**–415
competitive inhibition, **150**
concentration (activity), chemical potential, xv, 61, 106, 568
condensation (“steam”), **448**–449
conductance, 366, 368
boundary layer, 369–370, 383, **388**
cellular CO_2, 419
CO_2, **393**, 418–419
cuticle, 370, 376, **377, 381, 393**
Fick’s first law, 377–378
intercellular air spaces, 370, 376–**377**, 381, **388, 393**
leaf, 370, **381**, 388
liquid phase, CO_2, 418–419
parallel, 382
pressure dependence, 379–380
series, 382
stomata, 370, 373–375, **393**
temperature dependence, 397–380
conduction (heat), 333
across boundary layer, 345
cylinder, 340–341
flat plate, 340, 345
soil, 357
sphere, 341
conductivity, 366
conductivity coefficient, *see* heat convection coefficient; hydraulic conductivity coefficient; water conductivity coefficient
conjugate forces and fluxes, 158, 159
conjugation, 217–**218**, 219, 220, 232, 239
constant field equation, *see* Goldman equation
contact angle, 50–52
cell wall, 89–90
continuity equation, 15
convection (heat), 334, 340–341
forced versus free, 334, 344
copper, 263, 266, 306
cornfield, **443**, 450–452, 457–459
cortex, root, **9**, 10, 469
cotton, 37, 499
Coulomb’s law, 55
coupling factor, **299**, 301, **308**
coupling sites, *see* oxidative phosphorylation; photophosphorylation
Crassulacean acid metabolism (CAM), 73, **409**, 410, 421–**422**, 423, **424**, 425, 432
crust, soil, 463–**464**
crypt, stomatal, 384
cuticle, leaf, 5, **6**
conductance/resistance, 370, 376, **377, 381, 393**
cuticular transpiration, 371, 376, 381, 390, 392
cutin, 5, 466; *see also* cuticle
cycles, biosphere, 315, 399
cyclic electron flow, **268**–269, **296**, 303
cylinder
area/volume, 557
boundary layer, **338–339**
Fick’s first law, 466
heat flux density, 340–341
volume flux density, 465–467
Cyt *a*, 265, **305**–306
Cyt *b*, 263, 265, 296, **305**–306
Cyt b_6f complex, 263, 264–265, 266, 272, 303, 307
Cyt *c*, **265**, **305**–306
absorption spectra, oxidized and reduced, **267**
Cyt *f*, 263, 266, 267, **296**
cytochrome oxidase, **305**, 306, 307
cytochromes, 245, 264–265
chloroplasts, 263, 266–267, **296**
mitochondria, **305**–307
cytoplasm, **4**, 73; *see also* cytosol
cytoplasmic (protoplasmic) streaming, 19, 25, 27, 137
cytosol, **4**
resistance, CO_2, **393**, 400, 401
water potential components, 70, 73–74, 81

D

daily changes
soil-plant-atmosphere, 495–497
tree water storage, 492–492
dalton (unit), 18
Dalton’s law, partial pressures, 379, 567

damping depth, soil, 358–359
Darcy's law, 112, 438, 462–463
dark reactions, photosynthesis, 230, 298
DCMU, 269, 270
Debye–Hückel equation, 100, 107
decomposition, litter, **497**, 499
deexcitation, 176, 201–206, 559–560
delayed fluorescence, 203, 207
derivative (calculus), 13, 118, 558–559
desert, 88, 356, 421–**422**, 423–424, 430
deuterium, 46, 162
dew formation, 347–348
dew point (dew point temperature), 348, 349
dicotyledon, 7, 373, 413
dielectric, 104–**105**
dielectric constant, 55, 105
differential equation, 15–16, 558–560
diffuse/direct radiation, 324
diffusion, 5, 11–14, 59; *see also* Fick's first law; Fick's second law
effective length, 376, 384–385
energy barrier, 134
facilitated, 151–153
into cell, 29–31, 36
time–distance relationship, 2, 16–19, 30–31, 267
diffusional flux density, 158–159
diffusion coefficient, 13, 16
eddy, 443–444, 445, 449–**450**, 451
gases, 19–20, 545–546
in membranes, 23, 25, 124
pressure dependence, 20, 364, 379
proteins, 18–19, 23
small solutes, 19
temperature dependence, 115, 364, 379
viscosity, 20, 115
diffusion potential, 116
Donnan phase, 127–129
membrane, 119–120, 122–126
micropipettes, 118–**119, 284**
solution, 100, 116, 118, 129
dilute solutions, 67, 158–159, 170
dimensionless numbers, 341–344
dipole, electric, 192, 193, 237, 247–248
Donnan phase, 91, 127–**128**, 129, 144, 459
Donnan potential, 127–129
double bond, 197, 217, 239
cis/*trans*, 198
doublet, 194, 205
drag, form, 334–335, 441
drought, 421, 490–**491**, 492

E

ecosystem, **497**, 499–500
eddy, 334, 337, 440, 442–**443**
eddy diffusion coefficient
above canopy, 443–444, 445
plant community, 449–**450**, 451
effective length, diffusion, 376, 384
efficiency, photosynthesis, 231, 298, 313–314
Einstein relation, 177
elastic modulus
volumetric, 40, 84, 94–95
Young's, 2, 37, 39, 40
electric dipole, 192, 193, 237, 247–248
electrical circuit, 380–**381**, **393**, 410, 411, **412**, 494
electrical energy (work), 104, 283–284
conversion to chemical energy, 283–284
electrical field/force, 55, 107, 179, 192
electrical potential, 59, 62, 103
active transport, 131
capacitor, 105–106
membrane, 102, 108-112, 119
Chara, 110–111
Nitella, 125–126
Nernst, 100, 108–110, 126, 128–129
electrical resistance/resistivity, 112, 367–368; *see also* Ohm's law
electrical term, chemical potential, 60, 62, 102, 108
electrochemical potential, 103
electrodes, 283, **284**, 286; *see also* half-cells; micropipettes
electrogenicity, 127, 130–131, 148, 309
electromagnetic spectrum, 180, **181**, 187
electromagnetic field/wave, 179, 192, **193**
electron
charge, 103, 546
energy/redox reactions, 230, 283–285
orbitals, 194–195, 196–198
role in light absorption, 192–195
spin, 194
electroneutrality, 104, 106, 117, 122, 123
electron transfer (flow), 205; *see also* chloroplasts, mitochondria
elevation, 380
water-use efficiency, 425–426
embolism, 54, 473, 489
Emerson enhancement effect, 256–**257**, **258**, 269
emissivity/emittance, 187, 312, 327
endodermis, root, **9**, 10, 470
endoplasmic reticulum, 25, **35**–36
energy barrier, 134, 136
energy budget/balance
leaf, 320–322, **347**
heat storage terms, 320–321
soil, 357–358
stem, 353–354
energy currencies, 56, 278, 286, 291, 292; *see also* ATP; $NADP^+$–NADPH
energy flow, biosphere, 177, 278, 310, 313, 315
energy level diagram, **209**–213, 236
chlorophyll, **199**
enhancement effect, Emerson, 256–**257**
enthalpy, 231
entropy, 12, 59, 158, 231, 561–562
environmental chamber, 187, 335, 498
environmental productivity index (EPI), 420–422
enzyme activation energy, **135**–136
epidermis
leaf, 5, **6**, 418
pubescence, 333, 384–385
root, **9**, 10, 469
epiphyte, 423, 430
equilibrium, 58, 108, **279**, 281
Gibbs free energy, 59, 278–**279**, 562–564
equilibrium constant, 281, 290
erythrocyte, 21, 28
ester/esterification, 5, 21, 288
etiolation, 220
evapotranspiration, 440, 447–448
exchange diffusion, 152
excitation transfer, 205, 245–247
resonance, 247–250
exodermis, root, 10
extinction coefficient, 214–215; *see also* absorption coefficient

F

F_o/F_1, 302, **308**–309
facilitated diffusion, 151–153
$FAD–FADH_2$, **289**, **305**–306
farad, 104

Faraday's constant, 62, 103, 284, 546
fatty acid, 21, 22, 50
feedback/feedforward, 426–427, 432
Ferocactus, 353, 356, 495
ferredoxin, 263, **268**, 269, **272**, **296**, 298
ferredoxin–NADP$^+$ oxidoreductase, 263, 269, **272**, 298
ferrocytochrome *c*, **267**
fiber cell, **8**, 471
Fick's first law, 2, 12–14, 26, 92, 112, 115
  conductance/resistance, 368, 377–379
  cylindrical/spherical geometry, 466
  solvent, 92
Fick's second law, 2, 15–17
field capacity, soil, 461
fire ecology, 355
first-order process, 135, 202, 206, 207, 559–560
flavin adenine dinucleotide (FAD), **289**, **305**–306
flavin mononucleotide, 305, **306**
flavoprotein, 272, 305
fuence, 187
fluorescence, 202
  chlorophyll, **199**, 208, 269–270; *see also* Chl *a*
  delayed, 203, 207
  depolarization, 238
  lifetime, 202, 213, 250, 251
  resonance transfer, 247–**249**
  variable, 270
fluorescent lamp, 188
flux/flux density, 13–15, 121, 366–367; *see also* carbon dioxide; photosynthesis; transpiration; Ussing–Teorell equation; water vapor
  above canopy, 442–443
  cylindrical symmetry, 340–341, 465–466
  irreversible thermodynamics, 155, 156, 158–159, 169–170
  plant communities, 451–452
  solute, 113–115, 169–170
  spherical symmetry, 341, 467–468
  velocity, 114
  volume, 91, 158–161
  water, 91–92
flux ratio equation, *see* Ussing–Teorell equation
FMN, **305**, 306
foliar absorption coefficient, **454**–456
food chain, 314–315
force-flux relationship, 13, 113, 366–367
  irreversible thermodynamics, 154
form drag, 334–335, 441
Förster mechanism, 247
Fourier's heat-transfer law, 340
Franck–Condon principle, **209**, 211–213
free energy, 56, 313; *see also* chemical potential; Gibbs free energy
free radical, 194, 264
freezing, leaves, 333, 498
freezing point depression, 66, 68
frequency, light, 179–182
friction, 57, 154, 155, 162, 333, 337, 450, 451, 472
frost, 333, 347, 348–349, 498
fucoxanthin, **241**, 245, 249, 257
fugacity, 85
fungus, 391, 470

G

gas constant, 133, 547
gas law, ideal (perfect), 85, 378, 391, 567
gas-phase conductance, 418; *see also* carbon dioxide; conductance; water vapor
gas solubility, 398–399
gate, membrane, 147
germination, seed; *see* seed germination
Gibbs equation, 86, 568
Gibbs free energy, 57, 59, 62, 276, 561–566
  ATP formation, 276, 290–292
  biosphere, flow, 278, 310, 313, 315
  chemical reaction, 278, 280–281
  electrical energy, 283–285
  equilibrium/equilibrium constant, 278, **279**, 281
  glucose oxidation, 231, 310
  photosynthesis, 231
  reaction progress, **279**
girdling (stem), 478
global climate change, 432, 497–500
global irradiation, 324–325, 330
glucose, 36, 231, 310
glycine/glycolate, 406, **407**
glyoxysome, 25
Goldman equation, 100, 125–127
  Nitella, 125–126
Goldman–Hodgkin–Katz equation, 125
gradient (calculus), 13, 26
Graham's law, 20, 410
grana, chloroplast, **24**–25, 259
Grashof number, 344
gravitational term, chemical potential, 60, 62, 71, 85, 87, 112, 293
gravity/gravitational acceleration, 50, 52, 293, 473–474, 546, 550, 556
greenhouse gases, **188**, 326, 498–500
ground state, 195, 200
Grotthus–Draper law, 191, 219
growth equations, cell, 44, 93–95
guard cell, 5, **6**, 36, 147, **371**–373; *see also* stomata
guttation, 485

H

H$^+$, *see* proton
Hagen–Poiseuille law, 472; *see also* Poiseuille's law
half-cells, 119, 283, **284**; *see also* redox potential
  hydrogen, 286
  NADP$^+$–NADPH, 294
  water–oxygen, **296**
half-time, 95, 202
Hatch/Slack pathway, 408
heat, latent/sensible, 322, 346, **347**
heat capacity
  soil, 356
  volumetric, 353, 355, 545
heat conduction/convection, *see* conduction (heat); convection (heat); heat flux density
heat convection coefficient, 342
heat flux density, 318
  conduction/convection, 340, 344, **347**
    cylinder, 340–341
    flat plate, 340, 344
    soil, 357
    sphere, 341
  dew or frost formation, 347–348
  transpiration, 318, 346
heat of fusion/sublimation, ice, 48, 348, 546
heat of vaporization, water, 49, 346, 546
heat storage, 318, 352–353
  inflorescence (spadix), 354

leaf, 321
soil, 356–357
stem, 353–354
time constant, 354–355
heme, **265**
hemicellulose, 34
hemoprotein, 265
Henry's law, 568
Hill reaction, 260
Höfler diagram, 81–**82**
hormones, 336; *see also* abscisic acid
humidity, *see* absolute humidity; relative humidity
Hund's rule, 195
hydathodes, 485
hydraulic conductivity coefficient, 91, 93, 159, 160, 463
root, 490–**491**, 492
seed coat, 469
soil, 462–464, 490–**491**
hydraulic conductivity/resistivity (phloem/xylem), 486–489
hydrogen bond/bonding, 47, **48**, 49, 54–56, 89, 134, 201, 483, 485
hydrogen ion; *see* pH; proton
hydrogen half-cell, 286
hydrophylic/hydrophobic, 21–22, 50, 56, 236
hydroquinone, **264**
hydrostatic pressure, 32, 37, 38, 46, 59, 62, 64, 71, 73, 78, 157, 167; *see also* pressure term, chemical potential
Höfler diagram, 81–**82**
pressure–volume (P–V) curve, 81–82, **83**
stomata, **371**
yield threshold, 94

I

ice, 46, 48, 546
heat of fusion/sublimation, 48, 348, 546
ideal (perfect) gas law, 85, 378, 391, 567
ideal solute/solution/solvent, 61, 67
illuminance/illumination, 187
impermeability, reflection coefficients, 160, 161–163
incandescent lamp, 188, 190, 191
incipient plasmolysis, 78–84
irreversible thermodynamics, 165–167
infrared (IR), 180, **181**, 183, 189, 213, 326
absorption, leaf, 326, 328–329
emission, 191, 328, 352
integration (calculus), 29, 117, 118, 311, 559, 564
intercellular air spaces, 5, **6**, 10, 20, 355
conductance/resistance, 370, 376–**377, 381, 393**
interface, *see* cell wall; colloid; matric pressure
interstices, *see* cell wall
invertase, 136
ionic strength, 105, 290–291
ions, chemical potential, 102–103, 111
IR, *see* infrared
iron, cytochrome, 265, 266
irradiance/irradiation, 187; *see also* global irradiation; solar irradiation; sun/sunlight
irreversible thermodynamics, 153–154; *see also* reflection coefficient
Boyle-Van't Hoff law, 167–168
conjugate forces and fluxes, 158, 159
incipient plasmolysis, 165–167
solute flux density, 156, 169–170
volume flux density, 158–159
isomerization, 198–199
isoprene/isoprenoid, **239**, 264
isotope, 46, 162, 260, 409, 410

K

kelvin unit, 18, 554
kinematic viscosity, 343, 549
kinetic energy, 132, 153, 185
Kirchoff's electrical circuit laws, 411
Kirchoff's radiation law, 329
Kranz anatomy, **408**
Krebs cycle, 24, 304, 310

L

lakes, 189, 244, 342
Lambert–Beer law, 216
lamellar membranes, *see* chloroplasts
lapse rate, 426
latent heat, 322, 346, **347**, 448
leaf, 5–6; *see also* A^{mes}/A; photosynthesis; transpiration
abscission, 456, 478, 485
absorptance, 328, 352
air pressure inside, 388
anatomy (cells), 5–**6**
angle/orientation/size, 330, 351–352, 455
boundary layers, 318, **336–338**, 350
conductance/resistance, 364, 368–370
capacitance, 390, 493, 496
conductance/resistance, 364, 370, **381**, **388**, **393**, 486
energy budget/balance, 318, 320–322, 328
energy (heat) storage, 320–321
freezing, 333, 498
gas fluxes, measurement, **367**
heat conduction/convection, 345, 350
IR absorption and emission, 328, 330–332
net radiation, 320–322, 332
reflectance, 328, 331–332
shaded, 352
shade/sun, 350–**351**, 396, 420
shape versus convection, **338**–339
silvery, 331–333
solar tracking, 351–352
temperature, 330–333, 345, 350–351
water potential, 484, **496**
water vapor, 364, 387–389
wilting, 351, 391, 461, 484, **496**–497
leaf area index, 255, 453
lecithin, **21**
lenticels, 467
lichen, dew, 349
lifetime, 176, 202, 203–204, 207, 560
light, 179–180
absorption, 191–193; *see also* absorption spectrum; photosynthesis
lakes/oceans, 189, 244–245
redox effects, 296–297
time, 201, 212
color, 180, **181**
compensation point, **414**–415, 455–457
electric field, 179, 192
energy, 176, 182–183
meter, 185–186
speed (velocity), 180, 545
units, 185
wave number, 224
wave–particle duality, 178, 182
wavelength, 179–180

light-harvesting antennae, 245, 258, 259, **272**
light intensity, 187
lignin, 33, 470
lipid bilayer, membrane, 21–**22**, 27, 105, 169
liquid-phase conductance, CO_2, 418–419
litter decomposition, **497**, 499
loam, 356, 459, **461**, **464**
lodging, crops, 336
logarithm, 30, 67, 557–558
longwave radiation, 326; *see also* infrared
loop theorem, 411, 415
lumen/lux, 186, 555
lutein, **240**, **241**

M

manganese, 262
magnesium, 77, 233, 265, 289, 290–291, 301
magnetic field/force, 179, 194, 195
maize, **443**, 450–452, 457–459
matric pressure/potential, 69–70, 74, 89, 462
Mehler reaction, 268
membrane, 5, **22**-24
 barrier energy, 134, 136
 capacitance, 104–106, 130
 composition, 22
 permeability, 28, 34
 phase change, 137
 potential, 108–110, 119–120
  Chara, 110–111
  measurement, **119**
  Nitella, 125–126
 resistance, 131
 Q_{10} for diffusion, 100, 133–134
 tensile strength, 73
membrane channel, 145–148, **299**, **308**, 372–373
meristem, **9**
mesophyll cells, 5, **6**, **388**, **397**, **409**
 area (*see also* A^{mes}/A), **377**, 394–**396**, 397
mesophyll resistance, CO_2, **393**, 400, 402
mesophyte, 88, 346, 375, 394
metastable state, 54, 84
methane, 498
micelle, 56
Michaelis–Menten formalism, 100, 149, **150**, 151, 153
  Michaelis constant, 149, **404**–405, 409
  photosynthesis, **404**–405
microbodies, 4, 25
microfibril, *see* cell wall
micropipette, 118–**119**, 146
middle lamella, *see* cell wall
midpoint redox potential, *see* redox potential
Mie scattering, 323
mitochondria, **4**, **23**–24
 bioenergetics, 303–307
 CO_2 flux, 406–**407**, 415
 electron transfer components, 305–307
 membranes, **23**–24
 oxidative phosphorylation, 24, 302, 304, 307–309
 photorespiration, **407**
 protein complexes, **305**–307
 mobility, 113–114, 379
 ions, 116–118
modulus of elasticity, *see* elastic modulus
molal volume (partial), 62
molality, 63, 68
molar absorption coefficient, 216
molarity, xv, 7, 68
mole/molecule basis, 132–133
molecular orbital, 195–**197**, 198
 porphyrin ring, 265
molecular weight, 18, 20
mole fraction, 61, 67, 378, 386
monocotyledon, 7, 373, 383, 413
Monsi/Saeki, 454
Münch hypothesis, 479
mycorrhizae, 470

N

NAD^+–NADH, 293–294, **304**, 307
$NADP^+$–NADPH, 230, 263, **289**, 293, **294**
  energy currency, 278, 286, 298
  redox couple, 263, 294, 298
n electron, 197, 200
Nernst equation, 108–109
Nernst-Planck equation, 115
Nernst potential, 100, 108–110, 126, 128–129
  K^+, *Chara*, 110–111
  Nitella, 126, 140, 143
net primary productivity, 229
net radiation, 318, 330, 332
Newton's law of cooling, 342
Newton's second law, 52, 62
Newton's third law, 155
nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD), *see* NAD^+–NADH
nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate (NADP), *see* $NADP^+$–NADPH
nigericin, 301, 308–**309**
Nitella, 5, 38, 39, **141**
 active transport, 140–142
 cell wall elastic modulus, 37, 39
 growth, 93–94
 membranes, 125–126, 140–142, 162
nitrogen, 421, 460, **497**
Nobel Prizes, 109, 146, 155, 184, 232, 252, 299, 302
node, energy budget, **353**
noncyclic electron flow, **268**, **272**, **296**, 298
nonequilibrium thermodynamics, 154; *see also* irreversible thermodynamics
nonosmotic (nonwater) volume, 74, 75, 78
nonselectivity, reflection coefficients, 160, 161–163
nuclear vibration, 209–212, 250
Nusselt number, 342–**343**
nutrient, 9, 421, 459–460, 470, **497**, 499

O

ocean, 189, 245, 281, 342
Ohm's law, 112, 131, 368, 369, 411, 447
olive oil, 27, 28, 64
Onsager coefficient, 154–155
Onsager reciprocity relation, 155, 156, 159
optical density, 216
optical path length, 215–216
orbital, 194–198, 200
osmolality, 68
osmometer, **65**–66
osmosis, 148, 371
osmotic coefficient, 74, 168
osmotic potential, 65–66, 71; *see also* osmotic pressure
osmotic pressure, 65–69, 70, 71, 157, 162–163
  Boyle–Van't Hoff relation, 44, 74–76, 167–168
  cell sap, 68–69, 77, 80
  chloroplasts, 75–78
  Höfler diagram, 81–**82**
  incipient plasmolysis, 78–81, 166–167
  pressure-volume (*P*–*V*) curves, 81–82, **83**
  stomata, 371
  Van't Hoff relation, 44, 66–67
oxidation–reduction potential, *see* redox potential

oxidative phosphorylation, 24, 302, 304, 307–309
oxidize, 246, 247, 260, 285; *see also* redox potential
oxygen
permeability coefficient, 28
Rubisco, 406–**407**
oxygen evolution, photosynthesis, 46, 228, 253, 256, **257**, **258**, 260, 262, 296, 302
quantum yield, 256
ozone, 188, 190, 498

P

P_{680}/P_{700}, 237, 245, 250, 258, **261**, 263, 266, 296–297
palisade mesophyll, 5–**6**, 395–**396**
PAR, *see* PPF
parallel conductances/resistances, 381–382, 566
partial molal volume, 62, 548
partial pressures, Dalton's law, 379, 567
partition coefficient, 27–28, 64, 120, 162
CO_2, 397–398
patch–clamp technique, 146
Pauli exclusion principle, 194–196
pectic acid/pectin, 32, 33, 127
PEP carboxylase, 408, **409**, 410, 423
perfect (ideal) gas law, 85, 378, 391, 567
perforation plate, **8**, 471, 489
pericycle, root, **9**, 10, 470
periderm, 467
permeability coefficient, 2, 28, 30, 124, 369
cell wall, 34
CO_2, 397, 401, 500
irreversible thermodynamics, 162–**163**, 169, 170
lipid solubility/membranes, 27–28, **163**, 169
Nitella, 126, **163**
plasma membrane, 28, 34, 126
reflection coefficient, **163**, 169
series barriers, 41
water, 28, 92
permittivity of vacuum, 55, 548
peroxisomes, 4, 25, 406–**407**
petiole, 8, 335, 352, 478
pH
ATP formation, 288, 299–301, 307–308
cellular, 148
chemiosmotic hypothesis, 299–301, 307–309
CO_2 solubility, 398–399
Donnan phase, 128
equilibrium constant, 290
phase transition, membrane, 137
phenomenological equation, 155
pheophytin, 262, 297
phloem, 7–**8**, **9**–11, 469, 476
callose, 477
cells, **8**–9, 476–477
contents, 478, 481–482
flow, 479–480, **481**
hydraulic conductivity, 488
hydrostatic pressure, 480, **481**, 482
loading/sink/source/unloading, **476**, 482–483
P protein, **476**–477
sieve cell/plate/tube, **8**–9, **476**–477
solute velocity, 478–479,
water potential, 480–**481**, 482–483
phosphoanhydride, 286, 288
phosphoenolpyruvate (PEP) carboxylase, 408, **409**, 410, 423
phosphate/phosphorus, 292, 309, 470
phospholipid, **21**–22
phosphorescence, **199**, 202
phosphorylation, *see* oxidative phosphorylation; photophosphorylation
photochemistry, 191, 201, 228
laws, 191
photosynthesis, 228, 230, 247, 252, 255, 260, 269–270
reaction, 205, 228, 247
vision, 199
photoelectric effect, 178, 183–**184**
photoisomerization, 198–199, 221
photometer, 185–186
photomorphogenesis, 220
photon, 182; *see also* light
absorption
redox potentials, 296–297
time, 201
meter, 185–186
processing time, 253, 255, 405
photophosphorylation, 260, 271, 272, 284, 300, 372
Gibbs free energy, 292
mechanism, 299–301
photorespiration, 25, 406, **407**, **411**, 430
photostationary state, 223
photosynthate, 477, 483, 499
photosynthesis, 178, 229–232, 367; *see also* carbon dioxide; electron transfer; photophosphorylation
acclimation, 426, 431
action spectrum, **257, 258**
biochemistry, 230–231, 403–405, **407**
canopy (above), 445–446
chloroplasts, 403–404
conductance/resistance, 392–394
dark reactions, 230, 298
efficiency, 231, 298, 313–314
electrical circuit, **393**, 410, **412**
electron flow, 260–271
energy stored, 178, 231, 321
enhancement, 256–**257**
environmental effects, 420–422
fluxes, 410–412, 416
Michaelis–Menten, 404–405
net, 410, 416–418
O_2 evolution, 46, 230, 256–**257, 258**
PPF, 404, **414, 419**, 428
primary events, 230, 245
processing time, 254–255, 405
productivity, 229, 313
quantum requirements, 251, 256, 261, 430
rates, 364, 416–418, 420
red drop, 256–257
temperature, 404, 406, **411**, 421, 430
units, 391, 420
photosynthetically active radiation (PAR), *see* PPF
photosynthetic photon flux/flux density, 187; *see* PPF
photosystem I/II, 245, 257–259, **261**, 262–263, 269, 296
phycobilins, 242–244, 245
phycobilisomes, 243, 259
phycocyanin/phycoerythrin, **243**–**244**, 245, 249
absorption spectra, **243**
enhancement of O_2 evolution, 257, **258**
phytochrome, 188, **220**–223
absorption/action spectrum, **221**–**222**, 223
phytol, **233**, 237
π electron/orbital, 197–198, 200, 217
pits, cell wall, 35
Planck's constant, 182, 194, 546
Planck's radiation distribution formula, 188, 190–191, 311, 329
plant community, gas fluxes, 445–448, 451, 456–459

plant resistance, water flow, 486–489
plasma membrane, **4**, 21, 23, 25, 126
  permeability, 28, 36, 400–401, 475
  resistance, CO_2, **393**, 400–401
plasmodesmata, **35**–36, 469, 477
plasmolysis, 77–**80**, 167
plastic extension, cell wall, 40, 94
plastocyanin, 263, 266, 267, **272**, **296**
plastoquinone, 264, 266, 267, **272**, 297
plastoquinone A, 263, **264**, 297
Poiseuille's law, 112, 163, 438, 471–472
  phloem, 479–480
  soil pores, 472–473
  xylem, 473–475
polarized light, 237, 238
polyhydroxy alcohols, 169
pond water, 94, 140
porphyrin, 233, 237, **265**
porter, 145, 309; *see also* antiporter; symporter
potassium, 110–112, 118–119, 123–126, 140–142, 146–148
  stomata, 147–148, 371–372
PPF, 187, 329
  A^{mes}/A, 396, **419**
  measurement, 186–187
  photosynthetic rates, 404, **414**, **419**, 421
  plant community, 438, 453–456
  processing time, 253–255
  sun/shade leaves, 350–**351**, 396
PPFD, *see* PPF
pressure, *see* atmospheric pressure; pressure, chemical potential; Gibbs free energy; hydrostatic pressure; osmotic pressure
pressure bomb (chamber), **72**, 81–82, 83
pressure, chemical potential, 59, 62, 64, 104, 281, 565–567
  flow, 112, 293, 462–468, 471
pressure potential, 71
pressure probe, **96**
pressure–volume (P–V) curve, 81– **83**
primary cell wall, **32**–33, 35
primary productivity, 229
proteins
  diffusion coefficients, 18–19, 23
  membrane, 22–24
proton, 128
  chemiosmotic hypothesis, 299–301, 307–309
  fluxes, 131, 145, 148, 302, **371**–372, 482
  gradients/differences, 272, 299–301, 307–308
  membrane potentials, 127, 128, 131
  per ATP
    chloroplasts, 300
    mitochondria, 309–310
  pump, 127, 145, 148, 372
  transporter, 145, 301, 309
protoplasmic (cytoplasmic) streaming, 19, 25, 27, 137
protoplast, 3, **4**, 81, 82, 83
pseudocyclic electron flow, **268**, **296**
PS I/PS II, *see* photosystem I/II
pubescence, 333, 384–385
pulvinus, 147, 352
pyrophosphate, **294**
pyrrole, **221**

Q

Q_{10}, 100, 133–134, 405
quadratic equation, 417, 558
quantum, light, 182
quantum mechanics, 178, 192, 194, 195, 211, 218
quantum meter, 185–186
quantum yield (efficiency), 176, 208
  photosynthesis, 251, 256, 270, 303, **414**, 430
quencher, 207
quinol, **264**, 307
quinone, **264**, 271, 297

R

radiance/radiant flux, 187
radiation; *see also* global irradiation; solar irradiation; sun/sunlight
  balance, net, 318, 330, 332
  lakes/oceans, 189–190, 244–245
  terminology, 187
radiation distribution formula, Planck, 188, 190–191, 311, 329
radiationless transition, **199**, 202, 205
radioactivity, 138, 559
radiometer, 185–186
Raoult's law, 85, 568
rate constant, reaction, 135, 207
  first-order, 135, 176, 207, 559–560
  second-order, 205
Rayleigh scattering, 323
reaction
  chemical, 280
  first-order, 202, 206, 207, 559–560
  photochemical, 205
reaction center, **252**–256, 261
reciprocity relation, Onsager, 155, 156, 159
rectangular hyperbola, 149
red blood cell, 21, 28
red drop, photosynthesis, 256–**257**
red light, 200, 216, 231
redox couple, **284**, 285, 287; *see also* redox potential
redox potential, 276, 285–266, 294–295; *see also specific molecules*
  chloroplast components, 263, 295–298
  light absorption, **296**–297
  midpoint, 286, 295
  mitochondrial components, 304–**305**, 306
reduce, 246, 247, 260, 285; *see also* redox potential
reflectance, 325
  leaf, 328, 331–332
reflection coefficient, 100, 160–164
  alcohols, 162, 169
  Boyle–Van't Hoff relation, 167–168
  chloroplast, 169
  impermeability, 160, 161–163
  incipient plasmolysis, 165–167
  nonselectivity, 160, 161–163
  partition/permeability coefficient, 162–163, 169
reflectivity, 325
relative humidity, 84–87, 386; *see also* water vapor
  calculation, 552
  in canopy and above, 447–448, 452
  in leaf, 88, 387–**388**
relative molecular mass, 18
resistance, 112, 366–368
  above canopy, 445
  boundary layer, 369–370
  cell wall, 393, 399–400
  chloroplast, **393**, 394, 400, 402–403

CO_2, **393**–394, 399–403
cuticle, 370, 376
cytosol, **393**, 400, 401–402
effective lengths, 376, 384
electrical, 112, 368
intercellular air spaces, 370, 376–377
leaf, 370, 384
mesophyll, **393**, 394, 400, 402
parallel, 382
photosynthesis, 416–418
plant, 486–489
plant community, 450–451, 456–459
plasma membrane, 131, **393**, 400–401
series, 92, 381
soil–plant–atmosphere, 486–489
stomata, 373–375
storage, **494**–495
transpiration, 380–382
water vapor, 380–382
xylem, 486–489
resistivity, 112, 366–368
resonance/resonance transfer, 192, 193, 247–**249**, 250–251
respiration, 303–304, 354
leaf, 406, **412**
plant, 458–459
soil, 456, 458
reverse osmosis, 159
Reynolds number, 342–**343**, 344
xylem, 472, 474
Rhodopseudomonas, 252, 301
riboflavin, 305–**306**
ribose, **288**
ribulose-1,5-bisphosphate carboxylase/oxygenase (Rubisco), 406–**407**, **409**, 410, 430
rice, 336, 499
Rieske Fe–S center, 266
root, **9**–10, 360, 486
Casparian strip, **9**, 471
cells, **9**–10, 469–470
hairs, **9**, 10, 466, 467
hydraulic conductivity, 490–**491**, 492
pressure, 54, 485
water uptake, 465–467, 486, **491**–492, **496**
root:shoot ratio, **497**, 499
root–soil air gap, **490**–492
rotary motor, 308
rotational sub-sublevels, 214, 235
roughness length, 442
Rubisco, 406–**407**, **409**, 410, 430

S

saltbridge, 119, 284
salt gland, 485
sand, 356, 459, **461**, 464
saturation vapor pressure, 84–87, **386**, 550–552; *see also* water vapor
scaling, 498
seawater, 69
second-order reaction, 205
secondary cell wall, **32**–33, 35, 37
seed coat, 468–469
seed germination, 222–223, 468–469
action spectrum, **222**
water uptake, 467–469
semipermeable membrane, 65, 72
semiquinone, **264**
sensible heat, 322, **347**, 448
series conductances/resistances, 41, 92, 381–382
series expansion, 67, 122, 558
shaded leaf, 352
shade leaf, 350–**351**, 396, 420
shortwave irradiation, 324, 326; *see also* solar irradiation
SI system, xv, 7, 13, 18, 37, 63, 69, 183, 557
sieve cell/plate/tube, **8**–9, **476**–477
σ electron, 197–198, 200
silt, 456, 459
similarity principle, 369, 394, 444
singlet, 194, 199
sky, effective temperature, 326, 331–333
skylight, **323**, **324**, 325
sodium, 118–119, 123–126, 140–142, 184
sodium–potassium pump, 143, 149
soil, 355, 459–460
air gap, **490**–492
air/water interfaces, 69, 70, **460**–462
conductivity, 490–492
crust, 463–**464**
damping depth, 358–359
dry/drying, 463–464, 467, 490–492, **496**
energy balance, 357–358
field capacity, 461
flux/flux density, 462–464
cylinder, 465–467
sphere, 467–469
heat capacity/storage, 356
hydraulic conductivity, 462–464, 473, 490–**491**, 492
hydrostatic pressure, 70, 460–463, 466–467
matric pressure (potential), 69, 70, 462
nutrients, 459–460, 470, **497**, 499
osmotic pressure, 460
particles/pores, 459–**460**, 472–473
respiration, 456, 458
temperature/thermal properties, 318, 356–360, 456
water potential, 460–463, 483–484, **496**
wilting, 461, 484, **496**
water vapor flux, 358, 451, 464, 491
soil–plant–atmosphere continuum, 483–485
solar constant, 188–189, 310, 325, 548
solar irradiation, **188**–190, 313–314, **324**; *see also* sun/sunlight
solar tracking, leaf, 351–352
solid angle, 186
solute, 61; *see also specific substances*
solute flux density, 115, 156, 169–170
solvent, 61, 63, 216
effect on electronic energy levels, **200**, 214, 237
Soret band, **199**, 234, 235, 243, 265
specific activity, 138
specific heat, 321, 548
sphere
area/volume, 557
boundary layer, **338–339**
capacitance, 105–106
Fick's first law, 466
heat flux density, 341
volume flux density, 467–468
spin, electron, 194–195
spin multiplicity, 194–195
spongy mesophyll, 5–**6**, 395–**396**
stable isotopes, 409–410
standard state, chemical potential, 60, 63, 567
starch, 291, 478, 483
Stark–Einstein law, 191
stationary state, 162, 163, 165, 168
steady rate, 468
steady state, 117–118, 120, 139, 468
steam (condensation), **448**–449
Stefan–Boltzmann constant/law, 276, 311–312, 326–**327**, 550
stem, water flow in, 486–487
steradian, 185
Stokes shift, 235
stoma/stomata/stomate, **6**, 147–148

area/frequency, 373, **377**
conductance/resistance/
flux density, 364, 370, 373–375, **431**
control, 371–373, 380, 390–492
photosynthesis, 418
water-use efficiency, 424, 426–429
opening/closing, 147–148, 242, 371–372
hormones, 373, 427
stress/strain (cell wall), 37–39
stroma, *see* chloroplasts
suberin, 10, 466, 470
sublevels, electronic state, 208, **209**, 210–213
subsidiary cells, 147, 371
succinate, **305**
succulents, 353, 356, 423–425, 491–492
sucrose, 8, 108, 136, 162
phloem, 479, 481–482
sun/sunlight, 56, 222
altitude, 325
chlorophyll excitation, 254–255
energy radiated, 177, 311–312
irradiation (light), **188**–190, 321, **323**, 325
surface temperature, 190, **312**
sun leaf, 350–**351**, 396, 420
surface free energy, 49
surface tension, water, 49–50, 51, 550
cell wall, 89
soil, 460
surfactant, 50
symplasm/symplast, 36–37, 83, 469, 476
symporter, 145, 309, 372, 482
Système International (SI), xv, 7, 13, 18, 37, 63, 69, 183, 557

T

temperature, 319–320
absolute zero, 18
change, time constant, 354–355
dew point, 348, 349
diffusion coefficients, 115
kinetic energy, 132
leaf angle/orientation/size, 330, 350–**351**
radiation, 190, 312, **327**
sky, 326, 331–333
soil, 318, 356–360
temperature coefficient (Q_{10}), 100, 133–134, 405
tensile strength, 54, 336
membranes, 73
water, 54
terpenoid, 239, 264
tetrapyrrole, 221, 232, **233**, 234, **244**, 245, 265
thermal capacity, 48, 548
thermal conductivity coefficient, 340
air, 340, 345, 546–547
soil, 357
water, 547
thermal radiation, *see* infrared
thermodynamics, 57
first law, 320
second law, 314
thylakoid, **24**, 271–**272**, **299**, 302
time, light absorption, 201–202, 212; *see also* lifetime
time constant
temperature change, 354–355
volume change, 95
water storage, 494–495
time–distance relationship, diffusion, 2, 16–19, 30–31, 267
tonoplast, **4**, 72, 73
tracheid, 7, 471, 473
tracking, sun, 351–352
translational energy, 214
transmittance, 323, 325, 328
transpiration, 367; *see also* water; water vapor
canopy (above), 445–446
conductance/resistance network, 380–385
cuticular, 371, 376, 381, 390, 392
fungi, 391
heat flux density, 318, 346
leaf, 346, 389–392
units, 391
transpiration ratio, 423; *see also* water-use efficiency
transporter, 24, 145, 152, **309**; *see also* antiporter; symporter
trap chl, 246–247, 250–252; *see also* P_{680}/P_{700}
tree, 7, 335–336, 370, 488
capacitance, 492–494
capillary rise, 52–53
diffuse-porous/ring-porous, 474
tricarboxylic acid (TCA) cycle, 24, 304, 310
trichome, 33, 384–385
trignometric functions, 558
triplet, 194, 200
tritium, 46
tungsten lamp, 188, 190, 191, 312
turbulence/turbulence intensity, 334, 337
turgor loss point, 79–80, 83
turgor/turgor pressure, *see* hydrostatic pressure

U

ubiquinone, **305**, 306, 309
ultrafiltration, 159
ultraviolet (UV), 180, **181**, 183, 189, **497**–499
uncoupler, phosphorylation, 274, 301, 308, 524
unstirred layer, 26–27, 28, 34, 333; *see also* boundary layer
Ussing–Teorell equation, 100, 137–139, 141, 152

V

vacuole (central), **4**, 72–74, 81
valinomycin, 308–**309**
van den Honert relation, 438, 486
van der Waals forces, 48, 55
Van't Hoff relation, 44, 66–67
vapor pressure deficit, 387
variable, extensive/intensive, 282, 563
vascular cambium, 7, **8**
vascular tissue, *see* phloem; xylem
vectorial aspects, electron transport, 271–272, **299**, 302
velocity, mean
solute, 113–114, 158–159
water, 91
xylem/phloem, 473, 478–479
vessel, xylem, 7–**8**, 471, 473
vibrational sublevels, 208, **209**, 210–213, 250
chlorophyll, 235–236
visoelastic, cell wall, 40
viscosity, 54, 471–472, 549
diffusion coefficients, 20, 115
kinematic, 343, 549
temperature, 115
water, 54, 549
visible light, 174
vision, 180, **181**, 189
volume
changes
time constant, 95
chemical reactions, 281
nonosmotic (nonwater), 74, 75, 78
partial molal, 62
water, 64
volume flux density, 91, 100, 158–159, 160–161, 471
cylinder, 465–466

sphere, 467–468
water, 91–92
volumetric elastic modulus, *see* elastic modulus
volumetric heat capacity, 353, 355, 545
von Karman constant, 442

W

water, 45–47; *see also* water potential; water vapor
activity, 65, 69, 70
activity coefficient, 67, 70
capacitance, 438, 492–495
conductivity coefficient, 91–93, 160
dielectric constant, 55
flux density, 91–92, 156
cell wall, 474–475
membrane, 475
resistances and areas, 486–487
xylem, 473–474, 475
heat capacity, 353, 355, 545
heat of fusion, 48
heat of vaporization, 49, 346, 546
hydrogen bonding, 47, **48**, 49, 54, 55, 56
isotopes, 46, 260
light absorption, **188**–189, 244
metastable, 54
oxidation, photosynthesis, 46, 231, 260, **268, 272**, 296
partial molal volume, 64, 548
permeability coefficient, 28, 92, 160
solvent, 46, 55
specific heat, 48, 321, 548
storage, time constant, 494–495
surface tension, 49–50, 550
tensile strength, 54
thermal capacity, 48, 321, 548
velocity, 91, 342
viscosity, 54, 549
volume flux density, 92, 486–487
water conductivity coefficient, 91–93, 160
water–oxygen half-cell, **296**
water potential, 44, 71, 82
air, 44, 85–88
daily changes, 495–**496**, 497
leaf, 83
measurement**, 72**
phloem, 480, **481**, 482–483
soil, 460–463, 483–484, **496**
wilting, 461, 484, **496**
water vapor, 44, 85–87
xylem, 72, **481**, 484
water-use efficiency, 364, 366, 422–423, **497**
C_3 versus C_4 plants, 425, 429–432, 446
elevation, 425–426
plant community, 446
stomatal control, 424, 426–429
water vapor, 84
chemical potential, 84–87
condensation ("steam"), **448**–449
concentration/mole fraction
above canopy, 445–446
leaf, 385–387
plant community, 451–**452**
conductance/resistance
boundary layer, 369–370, 388
cuticle, 370, 376
intercellular air spaces, 370, 376–377, 388
leaf, 370, 388
stomata, 370, 373–375, 388
diffusion coefficient, 19, 393, 545–546
effective length, diffusion, 376, 384
elevation, 87, 426
flux density
above canopy, 446, 447–448
leaf, 367, 389–391
plant community, 451–452
soil, 358, 451, 462–467
light absorption, **188**–189
partial pressure, 84–85, 88
saturation, 84, 348, 386
numerical values, 386, 550–552
soil, 358, 438, 464, 491
temperature, 550–552
water potential, 44, 85–88
wave number, 224, **324**, 327
wavelength, light, **179–181**
wave–particle duality, light, 178, 182
weed, 430, **431**
wheat, 336, 499
Wien's displacement law, 176, 191, 326
wilting, leaf, 351, 391
soil water potential, 461, 484, **496**–497
wind, 334–336, 441
form drag, 334–335, 441, 450
speed, 334, 336, **338**
above canopy, 441–442, 444, 445
boundary layers, 337–339
eddy diffusion coefficient, 443–444, 449–451
free/forced convection, 334, 344
plant community, 450, 459
within plants, 86, 388
wood (*including* heartwood; sapwood), 7, 336, 493
work, 57–58, 278, 563, 564
electrical, 103
WUE; *see* water-use efficiency

X

xanthophyll, 240–242; *see also* fucoxanthin
xanthophyll cycle, 242
xerophyte, 88, 375, 376, 384, 425, 484; *see also* cactus; CAM
xylem, 7–**8**, **9**–11, 469
capillary rise, 53–54
cavitation, 54, 473, 489
cells, 7–**8**, 33, 470–471
diffuse-porous/ring-porous, 474
embolism, 54, 473
hydraulic conductivity/resistivity, 486–489
perforation plate, **8**, 471
pressure gradients, 72, 473–**474**
resistance/resistivity, 486–489
Reynolds number, 472, 474
root, **9**–10, 470–471
sap, 8, 54, 72, 83, 485
tracheid, 7, 471
velocity, 473
vessel, 7–**8**, 471, **475**
water flow, 474–475
water potential, 72, **481**, 484
daily changes, **496**

Y

yield threshold, cell wall, 94
Young–Laplace equation, 438, 462
Young's (Young and Dupré) equation, 51
Young's modulus, 2, 37, 39, 40

Z

Zea mays, **443**, 450–452, 457–459
zero plane displacement, 442